3rd edition

Sheldon Axler

PRECALCULUS

A PRELUDE TO CALCULUS

with Student Solutions Manual

WILEY

WileyPLUS with ORION

Algebra Refresher Module

A personalized, adaptive learning experience.

WileyPLUS with ORION delivers easy-to-use analytics that help educators and students see strengths and weaknesses to give learners the best chance of succeeding in the course.

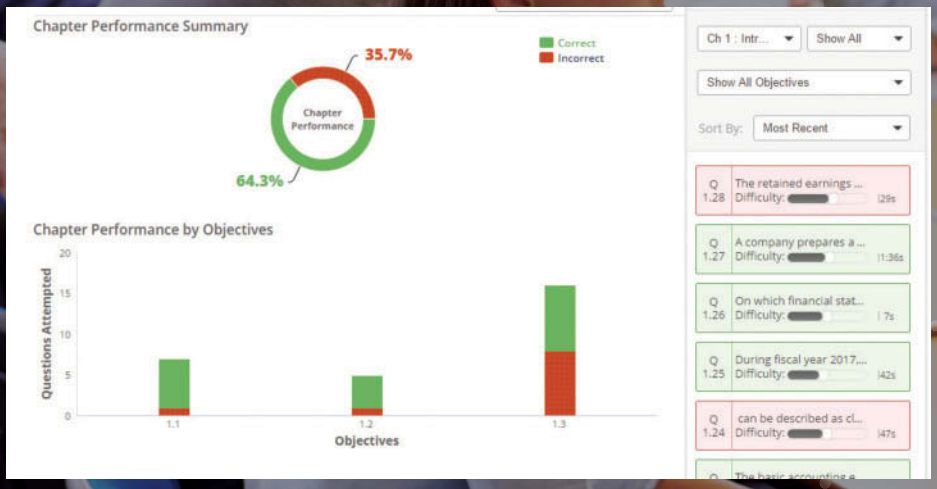


Photo credit: Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock

Identify which students are struggling early in the semester.

Educators assess the real-time engagement and performance of each student to inform teaching decisions. Students always know what they need to work on.

Help students organize their learning and get the practice they need.

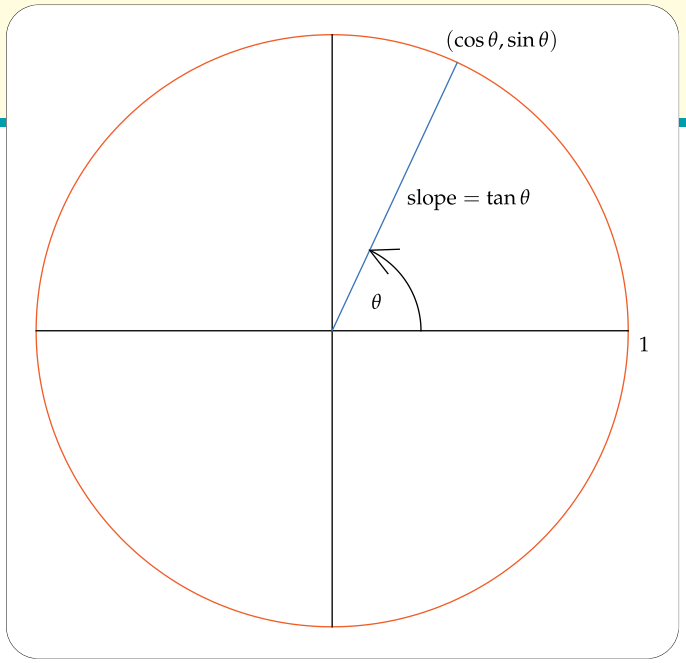
With ORION's adaptive practice, students quickly understand what they know and don't know. They can then decide to study or practice based on their proficiency.

Measure outcomes to promote continuous improvement.

With visual reports, it's easy for both students and educators to gauge problem areas and act on what's most important.

www.ORION.wileyplus.com

WILEY



Precalculus

A Prelude to Calculus

Third edition

with
Student Solutions Manual

Sheldon Axler
San Francisco State University

WILEY

Vice President and Director	Laurie Rosatone
Senior Acquisitions Editor	Joanna Dingle
Sponsoring Editor	Jennifer Brady
Editorial Assistant	Giana Milazzo
Production Editor	Ashley Patterson
Senior Content Manager	Valerie Zaborski
Senior Photo Editor	Mary Ann Price
Marketing Manager	John LaVacca III
Senior Designer	Maureen Eide
Senior Product Designer	David Dietz

This book was typeset in pdfLaTeX by the author.

Text and cover printed and bound by Quad Graphics Versailles.

Founded in 1807, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. has been a valued source of knowledge and understanding for more than 200 years, helping people around the world meet their needs and fulfill their aspirations. Our company is built on a foundation of principles that include responsibility to the communities we serve and where we live and work. In 2008, we launched a Corporate Citizenship Initiative, a global effort to address the environmental, social, economic, and ethical challenges we face in our business. Among the issues we are addressing are carbon impact, paper specifications and procurement, ethical conduct within our business and among our vendors, and community and charitable support. For more information, please visit our website: www.wiley.com/go/citizenship.

Copyright ©2017, 2013, 2009 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923 (website: www.copyright.com). Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at: www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. Return instructions and a free-of-charge return shipping label are available at: www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel. If you have chosen to adopt this textbook for use in your course, please accept this book as your complimentary desk copy. Outside of the United States, please contact your local sales representative.

The inside back cover will contain printing identification and country of origin if omitted from this page. In addition, if the ISBN on the back cover differs from the ISBN on this page, the one on the back cover is correct.

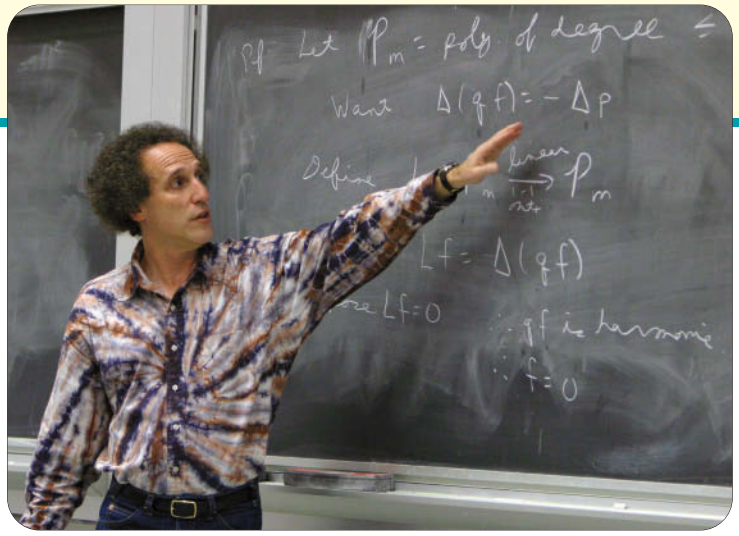
Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Axler, Sheldon Jay, author.
Title: Precalculus : a prelude to calculus / Sheldon Axler.
Description: 3rd edition. | Hoboken, NJ : John Wiley & Sons, 2016. | Includes index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2016033848 (print) | LCCN 2016039164 (ebook) | ISBN 9781119330431 (looseleaf) | ISBN 9781119334767 (pdf) | ISBN 9781119321514 (epub)
Subjects: LCSH: Precalculus.
Classification: LCC QA331 .A98 2016 (print) | LCC QA331 (ebook) | DDC 512/.13–dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2016033848

ISBN-13: 978-1-119-32151-4

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

About the Author



Sheldon Axler

Sheldon Axler was valedictorian of his high school in Miami, Florida. He received his AB from Princeton University with highest honors, followed by a PhD in Mathematics from the University of California at Berkeley.

As a Moore Instructor at MIT, Axler received a university-wide teaching award. He was then an assistant professor, associate professor, and professor in the Mathematics Department at Michigan State University, where he received the first J. Sutherland Frame Teaching Award and the Distinguished Faculty Award.

Axler came to San Francisco State University as Chair of the Mathematics Department in 1997. In 2002, he became Dean of the College of Science & Engineering at SF State, a position he held until returning full-time to mathematics in 2015.

Axler received the Lester R. Ford Award for expository writing from the Mathematical Association of America in 1996. In addition to publishing numerous research papers, Axler is the author of five mathematics textbooks, ranging from freshman to graduate level. His book *Linear Algebra Done Right* has been adopted as a textbook at over 300 universities.

Axler has served as Editor-in-Chief of the *Mathematical Intelligencer* and as Associate Editor of the *American Mathematical Monthly*. He has been a member of the Council of the American Mathematical Society and a member of the Board of Trustees of the Mathematical Sciences Research Institute. Axler currently serves on the editorial board of Springer's series Undergraduate Texts in Mathematics, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, and Universitext.

The American Mathematical Society honored Axler by selecting him as a member of its inaugural group of Fellows in 2013.

About the Cover

The diagram on the cover contains the crucial definitions of trigonometry.

- The 1 shows that the trigonometric functions are defined in the context of the unit circle.
- The arrow shows that angles are measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis.
- The point labeled $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ shows that $\cos\theta$ is the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius corresponding to the angle θ, and $\sin\theta$ is the second coordinate of this endpoint. Because this endpoint is on the unit circle, the identity $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$ follows immediately.
- The equation "slope $=$ $\tan\theta$" shows that $\tan\theta$ is the slope of the radius corresponding to the angle θ; thus $\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$.

Contents

About the Author **v**

Preface to the Instructor **xv**

Acknowledgments **xxi**

Preface to the Student **xxiii**

CHAPTER 0 *The Real Numbers* **1**

0.1 The Real Line 2
- Construction of the Real Line 2
- Is Every Real Number Rational? 3
- Problems 5

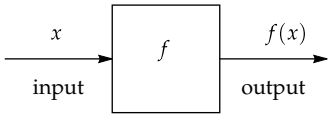
0.2 Algebra of the Real Numbers 6
- Commutativity and Associativity 6
- The Order of Algebraic Operations 7
- The Distributive Property 8
- Additive Inverses and Subtraction 9
- Multiplicative Inverses and the Algebra of Fractions 10
- Symbolic Calculators 13
- Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 15

0.3 Inequalities, Intervals, and Absolute Value 20
- Positive and Negative Numbers 20
- Inequalities 21
- Intervals 23
- Absolute Value 25
- Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 29

Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 35

CHAPTER 1 *Functions and Their Graphs* **37**

1.1 Functions 38
- Definition and Examples 38
- The Domain of a Function 41
- The Range of a Function 42
- Functions via Tables 44
- Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 45



1.2 The Coordinate Plane and Graphs 50
The Coordinate Plane 50
The Graph of a Function 52
Determining the Domain and Range from a Graph 54
Which Sets Are Graphs of Functions? 56
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 56

1.3 Function Transformations and Graphs 63
Vertical Transformations: Shifting, Stretching, and Flipping 63
Horizontal Transformations: Shifting, Stretching, Flipping 66
Combinations of Vertical Function Transformations 68
Even Functions 71
Odd Functions 72
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 73

1.4 Composition of Functions 81
Combining Two Functions 81
Definition of Composition 82
Decomposing Functions 85
Composing More than Two Functions 85
Function Transformations as Compositions 86
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 88

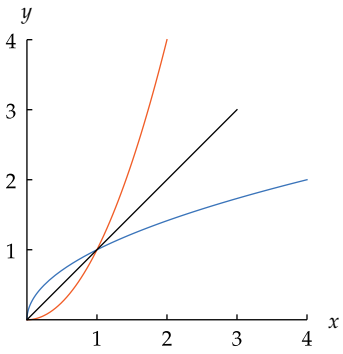
1.5 Inverse Functions 93
The Inverse Problem 93
One-to-one Functions 94
The Definition of an Inverse Function 95
The Domain and Range of an Inverse Function 97
The Composition of a Function and Its Inverse 98
Comments About Notation 99
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 101

1.6 A Graphical Approach to Inverse Functions 106
The Graph of an Inverse Function 106
Graphical Interpretation of One-to-One 107
Increasing and Decreasing Functions 108
Inverse Functions via Tables 110
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 111

Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 115

CHAPTER 2 *Linear, Quadratic, Polynomial, and Rational Functions* **119**

2.1 Lines and Linear Functions 120
Slope 120
The Equation of a Line 121
Parallel Lines 125
Perpendicular Lines 126
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 128



The graphs of x^2 (orange) on $[0,2]$ and its inverse function $\sqrt{x}$ (blue) on $[0,4]$ are symmetric about the line $y = x$.

2.2 Quadratic Functions and Conics 135
Completing the Square and the Quadratic Formula 135
Parabolas and Quadratic Functions 138
Circles 140
Ellipses 142
Hyperbolas 144
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 146

2.3 Exponents 157
Positive Integer Exponents 157
Defining x^0 159
Negative Integer Exponents 160
Roots 161
Rational Exponents 164
Properties of Exponents 165
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 166

2.4 Polynomials 174
The Degree of a Polynomial 174
The Algebra of Polynomials 175
Zeros and Factorization of Polynomials 177
The Behavior of a Polynomial Near $\pm\infty$ 179
Graphs of Polynomials 181
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 182

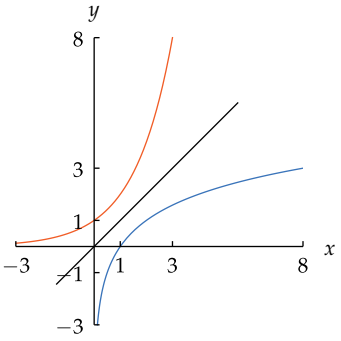
2.5 Rational Functions 187
The Algebra of Rational Functions 187
Division of Polynomials 188
The Behavior of a Rational Function Near $\pm\infty$ 191
Graphs of Rational Functions 194
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 195

Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 201

CHAPTER 3 *Exponential Functions, Logarithms, and e* **203**

3.1 Logarithms as Inverses of Exponential Functions 204
Exponential Functions 204
Logarithms Base 2 206
Logarithms with Any Base 207
Common Logarithms and the Number of Digits 208
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 209

3.2 The Power Rule for Logarithms 214
Logarithm of a Power 214
Radioactive Decay and Half-Life 215
Change of Base 217
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 219



The graphs of 2^x *(orange) on* $[-3,3]$ *and its inverse function* $\log_2 x$ *(blue) on* $[\frac{1}{8},8]$ *are symmetric about the line* $y = x$.

STARRY NIGHT, *painted by Vincent Van Gogh in 1889. The brightness of a star as seen from Earth is measured using a logarithmic scale.*

3.3 The Product and Quotient Rules for Logarithms 223
Logarithm of a Product 223
Logarithm of a Quotient 224
Earthquakes and the Richter Scale 225
Sound Intensity and Decibels 226
Star Brightness and Apparent Magnitude 227
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 228

3.4 Exponential Growth 235
Functions with Exponential Growth 236
Population Growth 239
Compound Interest 241
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 245

3.5 *e* and the Natural Logarithm 250
Estimating Area Using Rectangles 250
Defining *e* 252
Defining the Natural Logarithm 254
Properties of the Exponential Function and Natural Logarithm 255
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 256

3.6 Approximations and Area with *e* and ln 262
Approximation of the Natural Logarithm 262
Approximations with the Exponential Function 263
An Area Formula 265
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 267

3.7 Exponential Growth Revisited 270
Continuously Compounded Interest 270
Continuous Growth Rates 271
Doubling Your Money 272
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 274

Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 278

CHAPTER 4 ***Trigonometric Functions*** **281**

4.1 The Unit Circle 282
The Equation of the Unit Circle 282
Angles in the Unit Circle 283
Negative Angles 284
Angles Greater than 360° 286
Length of a Circular Arc 287
Special Points on the Unit Circle 287
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 289

4.2 Radians 295
A Natural Unit of Measurement for Angles 295
The Radius Corresponding to an Angle 298
Length of a Circular Arc 300
Area of a Slice 301
Special Points on the Unit Circle 301
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 302

4.3 Cosine and Sine 307
Definition of Cosine and Sine 307
The Signs of Cosine and Sine 309
The Key Equation Connecting Cosine and Sine 310
The Graphs of Cosine and Sine 311
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 313

4.4 More Trigonometric Functions 317
Definition of Tangent 317
The Sign of Tangent 318
Connections Among Cosine, Sine, and Tangent 319
The Graph of Tangent 320
Three More Trigonometric Functions 321
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 322

4.5 Trigonometry in Right Triangles 327
Trigonometric Functions via Right Triangles 327
Two Sides of a Right Triangle 328
One Side and One Angle of a Right Triangle 329
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 331

4.6 Trigonometric Identities 336
The Relationship Among Cosine, Sine, and Tangent 336
Trigonometric Identities for the Negative of an Angle 338
Trigonometric Identities with $\frac{\pi}{2}$ 339
Trigonometric Identities Involving a Multiple of π 341
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 343

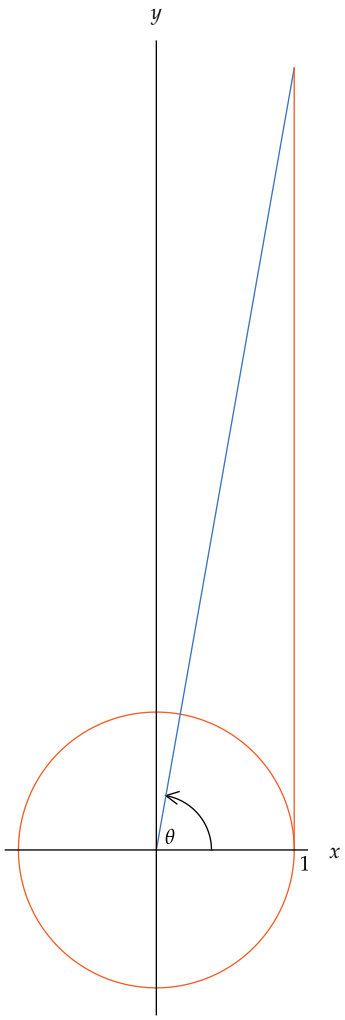
Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 348

CHAPTER 5 *Trigonometric Algebra and Geometry* **351**

5.1 Inverse Trigonometric Functions 352
The Arccosine Function 352
The Arcsine Function 354
The Arctangent Function 357
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 359

5.2 Inverse Trigonometric Identities 365
Composition of Trigonometric Functions and Their Inverses 365
More Inverse Functions 366
More Compositions with Inverse Trigonometric Functions 367
The Arccosine, Arcsine, and Arctangent of $-t$ 369
Arccosine Plus Arcsine 370
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 371

5.3 Using Trigonometry to Compute Area 375
The Area of a Triangle via Trigonometry 375
Ambiguous Angles 376
The Area of a Parallelogram via Trigonometry 377
The Area of a Polygon 378
Trigonometric Approximations 380
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 383



The blue line segment has slope $\tan\theta$. *The orange line segment has length* $\tan\theta$.

5.4 The Law of Sines and the Law of Cosines 388
The Law of Sines 388
The Law of Cosines 390
When to Use Which Law 393
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 395

5.5 Double-Angle and Half-Angle Formulas 402
The Cosine of 2θ 402
The Sine of 2θ 403
The Tangent of 2θ 404
The Cosine and Sine of $\frac{\theta}{2}$ 404
The Tangent of $\frac{\theta}{2}$ 406
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 407

5.6 Addition and Subtraction Formulas 414
The Cosine of a Sum and Difference 414
The Sine of a Sum and Difference 416
The Tangent of a Sum and Difference 417
Products of Trigonometric Functions 418
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 418

5.7 Transformations of Trigonometric Functions 423
Amplitude 423
Period 425
Phase Shift 426
Fitting Transformations of Trigonometric Functions to Data 429
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 430

Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 437

The Greek mathematician Hipparchus, depicted here in a 19th-century illustration, developed trigonometry over 2100 years ago as a tool for calculations in astronomy.

CHAPTER 6 *Sequences, Series, and Limits* **439**

6.1 Sequences 440
Introduction to Sequences 440
Arithmetic Sequences 442
Geometric Sequences 443
Recursively Defined Sequences 445
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 448

6.2 Series 453
Sums of Sequences 453
Arithmetic Series 453
Geometric Series 455
Summation Notation 457
Pascal's Triangle 459
The Binomial Theorem 462
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 465

6.3 Limits 470
Introduction to Limits 470
Infinite Series 473
Decimals as Infinite Series 476

Special Infinite Series 477
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 479

Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 482

CHAPTER 7 *Polar Coordinates, Vectors, and Complex Numbers* **483**

7.1 Polar Coordinates 484
Defining Polar Coordinates 484
Converting from Polar to Rectangular Coordinates 485
Converting from Rectangular to Polar Coordinates 485
Graphs of Polar Equations 488
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 491

7.2 Vectors 494
An Algebraic and Geometric Introduction to Vectors 494
Vector Addition 496
Vector Subtraction 498
Scalar Multiplication 500
The Dot Product 500
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 503

7.3 Complex Numbers 506
The Complex Number System 506
Arithmetic with Complex Numbers 507
Complex Conjugates and Division of Complex Numbers 508
Zeros and Factorization of Polynomials, Revisited 511
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 514

7.4 The Complex Plane 518
Complex Numbers as Points in the Plane 518
Geometric Interpretation of Complex Multiplication and Division 519
De Moivre's Theorem 522
Finding Complex Roots 523
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 524

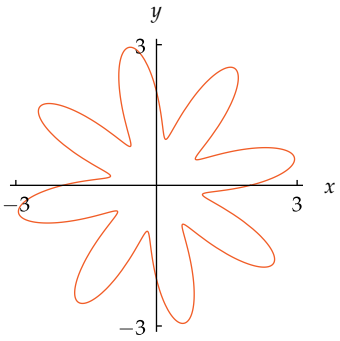
Chapter Summary and Chapter Review Questions 526

Appendix: Area **527**
Circumference 527
Squares, Rectangles, and Parallelograms 528
Triangles and Trapezoids 529
Stretching 531
Circles and Ellipses 531
Exercises, Problems, and Worked-out Solutions 534

Photo Credits **543**

Index **545**

Colophon: Notes on Typesetting **551**



The graph of the polar equation $r = 2 + \sin(8\theta)$ *for* θ *in* $[0, 2\pi]$.

Preface to the Instructor

Goals and Prerequisites

This book seeks to prepare students to succeed in calculus. Thus it focuses on topics that students need for calculus, especially first-semester calculus. Important parts of mathematics that should be known by all educated citizens but that are irrelevant to calculus have been excluded.

Precalculus is a one-semester course at most colleges and universities. Nevertheless, typical precalculus textbooks contain about a thousand pages (not counting a student solutions manual), far more than can be covered in one semester.

By emphasizing topics crucial to success in calculus, this book has a more manageable size even though it includes a student solutions manual. A thinner textbook should indicate to students that they are truly expected to master most of the content of the book.

The prerequisite for this course is the usual course in intermediate algebra. Many students in precalculus classes have had a trigonometry course previously, but this book does not assume students remember any trigonometry. The book is fairly self-contained, starting with a review of the real numbers in Chapter 0, whose numbering is intended to indicate that many instructors will prefer to cover this beginning material quickly or skip it.

Chapter 0 could have been titled **A Prelude to A Prelude to Calculus**.

Different instructors will want to cover different sections of this book. My personal preference is to finish up through Section 6.2 (*Series*). By including the sections on sequences and series, you will give students some experience with using subscript notation and summation notation that will be useful when they get to Riemann integration. The last chapter (*Polar Coordinates, Vectors, and Complex Numbers*) deals with topics that are typically more useful for second-semester calculus. I do not cover this chapter when teaching precalculus because I prefer to focus on getting students ready to succeed in first-semester calculus. Other instructors have different preferences, which is why I have included the last chapter in this book.

A Book Designed to be Read

Mathematics faculty frequently complain, with justification, that most students in lower-division mathematics courses do not read the textbook.

When doing homework, a typical precalculus student looks only at the relevant section of the textbook or the student solutions manual for an example similar to the homework exercise at hand. The student reads enough of that example to imitate the procedure, does the homework exercise, and then follows the same process with the next homework exercise. Little understanding may take place.

In contrast, this book is designed to be read by students. The writing style and layout are meant to induce students to read and understand the material. Explanations are more plentiful than typically found in precalculus books, with examples of the concepts making the ideas concrete whenever possible.

The text often points out to students that understanding the material will be more useful than memorizing it.

As a visual aid to students, boxes in this book are color-coded to show their function. Specifically, boxes with yellow shading give definitions, and boxes with blue shading give results (which in many books are called theorems or corollaries).

Exercises and Problems

Each exercise in this book has a unique correct answer, usually a number or a function. Each problem in this book has multiple correct answers, usually consisting of explanations or examples.

Students learn mathematics by actively working on a wide range of exercises and problems. Ideally, a student who reads and understands the material in a section of this book should be able to do the exercises and problems in that section without further help. However, some of the exercises require application of the ideas in a context that students may not have seen before, and many students will need help with these exercises. This help is available from the complete worked-out solutions to all the odd-numbered exercises that appear at the end of each section.

Because the worked-out solutions were written solely by the author of the textbook, students can expect an unusually consistent approach to the material. Students will be happy to save money by not having to purchase a separate student solutions manual.

This book contains what is usually a separate book called the student solutions manual. Thus it is even thinner in comparison to competing bloated books than is indicated by just a page count.

The exercises (but not the problems) occur in pairs, so that an odd-numbered exercise is followed by an even-numbered exercise whose solution uses the same ideas and techniques. A student stumped by an even-numbered exercise should be able to tackle it after reading the worked-out solution to the corresponding odd-numbered exercise. This arrangement allows the text to focus more centrally on explanations of the material and examples of the concepts.

Many students read the student solutions manual when they are assigned homework, even though they may be reluctant to read the main text. The integration of the student solutions manual within this book may encourage students who would otherwise read only the student solutions manual to drift over and also read the main text. To reinforce this tendency, the worked-out solutions to the odd-numbered exercises at the end of each section are typeset in a slightly less appealing style (smaller type and two-column format) than the main text. The reader-friendly appearance of the main text may nudge students to spend some time there.

Exercises and problems in this book vary greatly in difficulty and purpose. Some exercises and problems are designed to hone algebraic manipulation skills; other exercises and problems are designed to push students to genuine understanding beyond rote algorithmic calculation.

Some exercises and problems intentionally reinforce material from earlier in the book. For example, Exercise 27 in Section 4.3 asks students to find the smallest number x such that $\sin(e^x) = 0$; students will need to understand that they want to choose x so that $e^x = \pi$ and thus $x = \ln \pi$. Although such exercises require more thought than most exercises in the book, they allow students to see crucial concepts more than once, sometimes in unexpected contexts.

For instructors who want to offer online grading to their students, exercises from this book are available via either *WileyPLUS* or *WebAssign*. These online learning systems give students instant feedback and keep records for instructors. Most of the exercises in this book have been translated into algorithmically generated exercises in these two online learning systems, creating an essentially unlimited number of variations. These systems give instructors the flexibility of allowing students who answer an exercise incorrectly to attempt similar exercises requiring the same ideas and techniques.

The Calculator Issue

To aid instructors in presenting the kind of course they want, the symbol *appears with exercises and problems that require students to use a calculator.*

The issue of whether and how calculators should be used by students has generated immense controversy.

Some sections of this book have many exercises and problems designed for calculators—examples include Section 3.4 on exponential growth and Section 5.4 on the law of sines and the law of cosines. However, some sections deal with material not as amenable to calculator use. Throughout the text, the emphasis is on giving students both the understanding and the skills they need to succeed in calculus. Thus the book does not aim for an artificially predetermined percentage of exercises and problems in each section requiring calculator use.

Some exercises and problems that require a calculator are intentionally designed to make students realize that by understanding the material, they can overcome the limitations of calculators. For example, Exercise 15 in Section 3.2 asks students to find the number of digits in the decimal expansion of 7^{4000}. Brute force with a calculator will not work with this problem because the number involved has too many digits. However, a few moments' thought should show students that they can solve this problem by using logarithms (and their calculators!).

The calculator icon can be interpreted for some exercises, depending on the instructor's preference, to mean that the solution should be a decimal approximation rather than the exact answer. For example, Exercise 3 in Section 3.7 asks how much would need to be deposited in a bank account paying 4% interest compounded continuously so that at the end of 10 years the account would contain $10,000. The exact answer to this exercise is $10000/e^{0.4}$ dollars, but it may be more satisfying to the student (after obtaining the exact answer) to use a calculator to see that approximately $6,703 needs to be deposited. For such exercises, instructors can decide whether to ask for exact answers or decimal approximations (the worked-out solutions for the odd-numbered exercises usually contain both types of solutions).

Regardless of what level of calculator use an instructor expects, students should not turn to a calculator to compute something like $\cos 0$, *because then* cos *has become just a button on the calculator.*

Functions

In preparation for writing this book, I asked many calculus instructors what improvements they would like to see in the preparation of their calculus students. The two most common answers I received were (1) better understanding of functions and (2) better algebraic manipulation skills. Both of these goals are intertwined throughout the book.

Because of the importance of functions, Chapter 1 (*Functions and Their Graphs*) is devoted to functions, considerably earlier than in many precalculus books. Particular attention is paid to function transformations, composition of functions, and inverse functions.

A good understanding of the composition of functions will be tremendously useful to students when they get to the chain rule in calculus.

The unifying concept of inverse functions appears several times later in the book. In particular, $y^{1/m}$ is defined as the number that when raised to the m^{th} power gives y (in other words, the function $y \mapsto y^{1/m}$ is the inverse of the function $x \mapsto x^m$; see Section 2.3). Later, a second major use of inverse functions occurs in the definition of $\log_b y$ as the number such that b raised to this number gives y (in other words, the function $y \mapsto \log_b y$ is the inverse of the function $x \mapsto b^x$; see Section 3.1).

Thus students should be comfortable with using inverse functions by the time they reach the inverse trigonometric functions (arccosine, arcsine, and arctangent) in Section 5.1. This familiarity with inverse functions should help students deal with inverse operations (such as antidifferentiation) when they reach calculus.

Chapter 2 (*Linear, Quadratic, Polynomial, and Rational Functions*) should be mostly review of what students learned in their intermediate algebra course. I placed the more demanding Chapter 1 first because there is a serious danger of boring students in a precalculus class if they develop an early feeling that they already know all this material.

Logarithms, e, and Exponential Growth

The base for logarithms in Chapter 3 is arbitrary, although most of the examples and motivation in the early part of Chapter 3 use logs base 2 or logs base 10.

Logarithms play a key role in calculus, but many calculus instructors complain that too many students lack appropriate algebraic manipulation skills with logarithms.

All precalculus textbooks present radioactive decay as an example of exponential decay. Amazingly, the typical precalculus textbook states that if a radioactive isotope has a half-life of h, then the amount left at time t will equal e^{-kt} times the amount at time 0, where $k = \frac{\ln 2}{h}$.

A much clearer formulation would state, as this textbook does, that the amount left at time t will equal $2^{-t/h}$ times the amount at time 0. The unnecessary use of e and $\ln 2$ in this context may suggest to students that e and natural logarithms have only contrived and artificial uses, which is not the message that students should receive from their textbook.

Similarly, many precalculus textbooks consider, for example, a colony of bacteria doubling in size every 3 hours, with the textbook then producing the formula $e^{(t \ln 2)/3}$ for the growth factor after t hours. The simpler and natural formula $2^{t/3}$ seems not to be mentioned in such books. This book presents the more natural approach to such issues of exponential growth and decay.

The crucial concepts of e and natural logarithms are introduced in the second half of Chapter 3. Most precalculus textbooks either present no motivation for e or motivate e via continuously compounding interest or through the limit of an indeterminate expression of the form 1^∞; these concepts are difficult for students at this level to understand.

About half of calculus (namely, integration) deals with area, but most precalculus textbooks barely mention the subject.

Chapter 3 presents a clean and well-motivated approach to e and the natural logarithm. This approach uses the area (intuitively defined) under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = c$.

A similar approach to e and the natural logarithm is common in calculus courses. However, this approach is not usually adopted in precalculus textbooks. Using obvious properties of area, the simple presentation given here shows how these ideas can come through clearly without the technicalities of calculus or the messy notation of Riemann sums. Indeed, this precalculus approach to the exponential function and the natural logarithm shows that a good understanding of these subjects need not wait until the calculus course. Students who have seen the approach given here should be well prepared to deal with these concepts in their calculus courses.

The approach taken here also has the advantage that it easily leads, as shown in Chapter 3, to the approximation $\ln(1+h) \approx h$ for small values of h. Furthermore, the same methods show that if r is any number, then $\left(1 + \frac{r}{x}\right)^x \approx e^r$ for large values of x. A final bonus of this approach is that the connection between continuously compounding interest and e becomes a nice corollary of natural considerations concerning area.

Trigonometry

Trigonometry is the hardest part of precalculus for most students.

This book gives a gentle introduction to trigonometry, making sure that students are comfortable with the unit circle and with radians before defining the trigonometric functions.

Rather than following the practice of most precalculus books of defining six trigonometric functions all at once, this book has a section on the cosine and sine functions. Then the next section introduces the tangent function and finally the secant, cosecant, and cotangent functions. These latter three functions, which are simply the reciprocals of the three key trigonometric functions, add little content or understanding; thus they do not receive much attention here.

Should the trigonometric functions be introduced via the unit circle or via right triangles? Calculus requires the unit-circle approach because, for example, discussing the Taylor series for $\cos x$ requires us to consider negative values of x and values of x that are more than $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians. Thus this textbook uses the unit-circle approach, but quickly gives applications to right triangles. The unit-circle approach also allows for a well-motivated introduction to radians.

Most precalculus textbooks define the trigonometric functions using four symbols: θ or t for the angle and $P(x, y)$ for the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to that angle. Why is that endpoint usually called $P(x, y)$ instead of simply (x, y)? Even better than just dispensing with P, the symbols x and y can also be skipped by denoting the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius as $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$, thus defining the cosine and sine. The standard approach of defining $\cos\theta = x$ and $\sin\theta = y$ causes problems when students get to calculus and need to deal with $\cos x$. If students have memorized the notion that cosine is the x-coordinate, then they will be thinking that $\cos x$ is the x-coordinate of ... oops, this is two different uses of x. To avoid the confusion discussed above, this book uses only one symbol to define the trigonometric functions.

What's New in this Third Edition

- The chapter on systems of linear equations from the previous edition has been eliminated, as has the appendix on parametric curves. Both these items, which deal with topics that are not needed for first-semester calculus, are available as electronic supplements. They are also available in my *Algebra and Trigonometry* book.
- The section on transformations of trigonometric functions has been moved to Chapter 5.
- What are now Chapters 6 and 7 were in the reverse order in the previous edition. Chapter 7 has a new title.
- The main text font has been changed from Lucida to URW Palladio, which is a legal clone of Palatino. The math fonts have been changed from various versions of Lucida to various versions of URW Palladio, Pazo Math, and Computer Modern.

For more information on the typesetting of this book, see the Colophon at the end of the book.

- The paper length has been slightly expanded by three-eighths of an inch.
- The new fonts and new page size mean new page breaks and new line breaks. LaTeX handles line breaks well. However, I had to do extensive rewriting to make page breaks come out well. For example, students almost always have an entire Example visible without turning a page.

The content changes and format changes result in a book that is about one hundred pages shorter than the previous version.

- Each full page of text now contains at least two marginal notes, as compared to at least one marginal note in the previous edition. A figure or photo counts as a marginal note. When a figure or photo has a caption, the caption does not count as an additional marginal note. The word Example does not count as a marginal note.
- Eighteen new photos relevant to the content have been added.
- A new color scheme has been implemented. Definition boxes are now yellow and result boxes are now blue. Example lines are now orange, and example labels are now white inside orange.
- Definition boxes, result boxes, learning objectives boxes, and example label boxes now have rounded corners for a gentler look.
- Definition boxes and result boxes now have their titles in a darker-shaded sub-box for a catchy appearance.
- Numerous improvements have been made throughout the text based upon suggestions from faculty and students who used the previous edition.
- New exercises have been added in almost all sections. The Appendix now includes worked-out solutions to the Appendix's exercises.

Comments Welcome

I seek your help in making this a better book. Please send me your comments and your suggestions for improvements. Thanks!

Sheldon Axler
San Francisco State University

email: precalculus@axler.net
web site: precalculus.axler.net

Acknowledgments

Most of the results in this book belong to the common heritage of mathematics, created over thousands of years by clever and curious people.

As usual in a textbook, little attempt has been made to provide proper credit to the original creators of the ideas presented in this book. Where possible, I have tried to improve on standard approaches to this material. However, the absence of a reference does not imply originality on my part. I thank the many mathematicians who have created and refined our beautiful subject.

Like most mathematicians, I owe huge thanks to Donald Knuth, who invented TEX, and to Leslie Lamport, who invented LATEX, which I used to typeset this book. I am grateful to the authors of the many open-source LATEX packages I used to improve the appearance of the book, especially to Hàn Thế Thành for pdfLATEX, Robert Schlicht for microtype, Frank Mittelbach for multicol, and Till Tantau for TikZ.

Many thanks also to Wolfram Research for producing *Mathematica*, which is the software I used to create the graphics in this book. I am also grateful to Szabolcs Horvát for the *Mathematica* package MaTeX, which allowed me to place LATEX-generated labels in the *Mathematica* figures.

The many instructors and students who used the first two editions of this book provided wonderfully useful feedback—thank you!

Several reviewers gave me excellent suggestions as revisions progressed through various stages of development for both the second and third editions of this book. I am grateful to all the reviewers whose names are listed on the following page.

I chose Wiley as the publisher of this book because of the company's commitment to excellence. The people at Wiley have made outstanding contributions to this project, providing wise editorial advice, superb design expertise, high-level production skill, and insightful marketing savvy. I am truly grateful to the following Wiley folks, all of whom helped make this edition a better book than it would have been otherwise: Jennifer Brady, Joanna Dingle, Maureen Eide, John LaVacca III, Giana Milazzo, Ashley Patterson, Mary Ann Price, Laurie Rosatone.

Jen Blue, the accuracy checker, and Katrina Avery, the copy editor, excelled at catching my mathematical and linguistic mistakes.

My awesome partner Carrie Heeter deserves considerable credit for her astute advice and continual encouragement throughout the long book-writing process.

Many thanks to all of you!

Sheldon

Reviewers

- Theresa Adsit, University of Wisconsin, Green Bay
- Faiz Al-Rubaee, University of North Florida
- Aubie Anisef, Douglas College
- Frank Bäuerle, University of California, Santa Cruz
- Anthony J. Bevelacqua, University of North Dakota
- Seth Braver, South Puget Sound Community College
- Eric Canning, Morningside College
- Hongwei Chen, Christopher Newport University
- Joanne S. Darken, Community College of Philadelphia
- Laura DiMillo Barnes, University of Rhode Island
- Robert Diaz, Fullerton College
- Brian Dietel, Lewis-Clark State College
- Barry Draper, Glendale Community College
- Justin Dunmyre, Frostburg State University
- Tullia Dymarz, University of Wisconsin–Madison
- Mary B. Erb, Georgetown University
- Russell Euler, Northwest Missouri State University
- Michael J. Fisher, West Chester University
- Jenny Freidenreich, Diablo Valley College
- Brian W. Gleason, University of New Hampshire
- Peter Greim, The Citadel
- Klara Grodzinsky, Georgia Institute of Technology
- Maryam Shayegan Hastings, Fordham University
- Laxman Hedge, Frostburg State University
- James Hilsenbeck, Universitiy of Texas at Brownsville
- Larry Huff, Frederick Community College
- Veronica P. Hupper, University of New Hampshire
- Brian Jue, California State University, Stanislaus
- Alexander Kasiukov, Suffolk County Community College, Brentwood
- Nadia Nostrati Kenareh, Simon Fraser University
- Heather C. Knuth, MassBay Community College
- Deborah A. Konkowski, United States Naval Academy
- Cheuk Ying Lam, California State University, Bakersfield
- John LaMaster, Indiana University-Purdue University Fort Wayne
- Albert M. Leisinger, University of Massachusetts, Boston
- Mary Margarita Legner, Riverside City College
- Doron S. Lubinsky, Georgia Institute of Technology
- Natasha Mandryk, University of British Columbia, Okanagan
- Annie Marquise, Douglas College
- Andrey Melnikov, Drexel University
- Richard Mikula, Lock Haven University
- Christopher Nazelli, Wayne State University
- Lauri Papay, Santa Clara University
- Oscar M. Perdomo, Central Connecticut State University
- Edgar E. Perez, California State University, Dominguez Hills
- Peter R. Peterson, John Tyler Community College
- Charlotte Pisors, Baylor University
- Michael Price, University of Oregon
- Mohammed G. Rajah, MiraCosta College
- Joe Rody, Arizona State University
- Pavel Sikorskii, Michigan State University
- Abraham Smith, Fordham University
- Wesley Snider, Douglas College
- Jude T. Socrates, Pasadena City College
- Mark Solomonovich, MacEwan University
- Mary Jane Sterling, Bradley University
- Katalin Szucs, East Carolina University
- Wacław Timoszyk, Norwich University
- Anna N. Tivy, California State University, Channel Islands
- Magdalena Toda, Texas Tech University

Preface to the Student

This book will help prepare you to succeed in calculus. If you master the material in this book, you will have the knowledge, the understanding, and the skills needed to do well in a calculus course.

To learn this material well, you will need to spend serious time reading this book. You cannot expect to absorb mathematics the way you devour a novel. If you read through a section of this book in less than an hour, then you are going too fast. You should pause to ponder and internalize each definition, often by trying to invent some examples in addition to those given in the book. When steps in a calculation are left out in the book, you need to supply the missing pieces, which will require some writing on your part. These activities can be difficult when attempted alone; try to work with a group of a few other students.

Boxes in this book are color-coded to show their function. Specifically, boxes with yellow shading give definitions, and boxes with blue shading give results (which in many books are called theorems, corollaries, etc.).

You will need to spend several hours per section doing the exercises and problems. Make sure that you can do all the exercises and most of the problems, not just the ones assigned for homework. By the way, the difference between an exercise and a problem in this book is that each exercise has a unique correct answer that is a mathematical object such as a number or a function. In contrast, the solutions to problems consist of explanations or examples; thus problems have multiple correct answers.

Have fun, and best wishes in your studies!

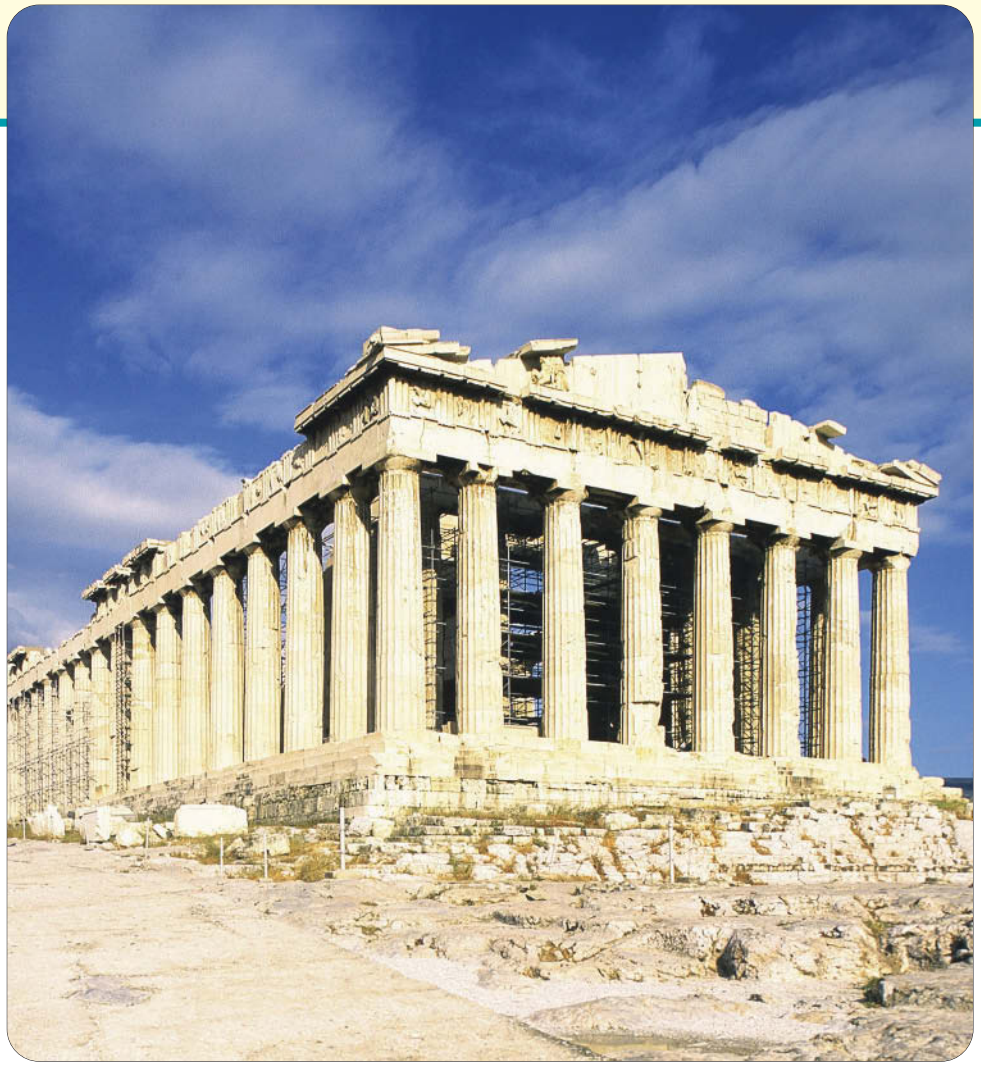
Worked-out solutions to the odd-numbered exercises are given at the end of each section.

The symbol *appears with exercises and problems that require a calculator.*

Sheldon Axler
San Francisco State University

web site: precalculus.axler.net

Chapter
0



The Parthenon, built in Athens over 2400 years ago. The ancient Greeks developed and used remarkably sophisticated mathematics.

The Real Numbers

Success in this course will require a good understanding of the basic properties of the real number system. Thus this book begins with a review of the real numbers. This chapter is labeled Chapter 0 to emphasize its review nature.

The first section of this chapter starts with the construction of the real line. This section contains as an optional highlight the ancient Greek proof that no rational number has a square equal to 2. This beautiful result appears here because everyone should see it at least once.

Although this chapter will be mostly review, a thorough grounding in the real number system will serve you well throughout this course. You will need good algebraic manipulation skills. Thus the second section of this chapter reviews fundamental algebra of the real numbers. You will also need to feel comfortable working with inequalities and absolute values, which are reviewed in the last section of this chapter.

Even if your instructor decides to skip this chapter, you may want to read through it. Make sure that you can do the exercises.

0.1 The Real Line

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- explain the correspondence between the system of real numbers and the real line;
- show that some real numbers are not rational.

The **integers** are the numbers

$$\ldots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots;$$

here the dots indicate that the numbers continue without end in each direction. The sum, difference, and product of any two integers are also integers.

The quotient of two integers is not necessarily an integer. Thus we extend arithmetic to the **rational numbers**, which are numbers of the form

$$\frac{m}{n},$$

The use of a horizontal bar to separate the numerator and denominator of a fraction was introduced by Arabian mathematicians about 900 years ago.

where m and n are integers and $n \neq 0$.

Division is the inverse of multiplication, in the sense that we want the equation

$$\frac{m}{n} \cdot n = m$$

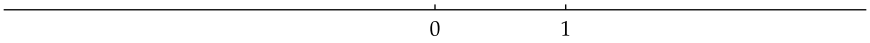
to hold. In the equation above, if we take $n = 0$ and (for example) $m = 1$, we get the nonsensical equation $\frac{1}{0} \cdot 0 = 1$. This equation is nonsensical because multiplying anything by 0 should give 0, not 1. To get around this problem, we leave expressions such as $\frac{1}{0}$ undefined. In other words, division by 0 is prohibited.

The rational numbers form a terrifically useful system. We can add, multiply, subtract, and divide rational numbers (with the exception of division by 0) and stay within the system of rational numbers. Rational numbers suffice for all actual physical measurements, such as length and weight, of any desired accuracy.

However, geometry, algebra, and calculus force us to consider an even richer system of numbers—the real numbers. To see why we need to go beyond the rational numbers, we will investigate the real line.

Construction of the Real Line

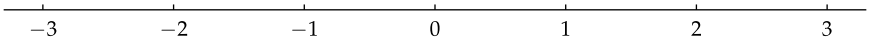
Imagine a horizontal line, extending without end in both directions. Pick a point on this line and label it 0. Pick another point to the right of 0 and label it 1, as in the figure below.



Two key points on the real line.

The symbol for zero was invented in India more than 1100 years ago.

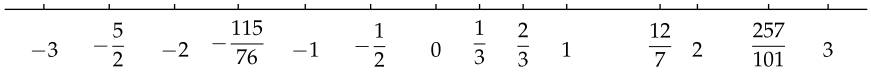
Once the points 0 and 1 have been chosen on the line, everything else is determined by thinking of the distance between 0 and 1 as one unit of length. For example, 2 is one unit to the right of 1. Then 3 is one unit to the right of 2, and so on. The negative integers correspond to moving to the left of 0. Thus -1 is one unit to the left of 0. Then -2 is one unit to the left of -1, and so on.



Integers on the real line.

If n is a positive integer, then $\frac{1}{n}$ is to the right of 0 by the length obtained by dividing the segment from 0 to 1 into n segments of equal length. Then $\frac{2}{n}$ is to the right of $\frac{1}{n}$ by the same length, and $\frac{3}{n}$ is to the right of $\frac{2}{n}$ by the same length again, and so on. The negative rational numbers are placed on the line similarly, but to the left of 0.

In this way, every rational number is associated with a point on the line. No figure can show the labels of all the rational numbers, because we can include only finitely many labels in a figure. The figure below shows the line with labels attached to a few of the points corresponding to rational numbers.



Some rational numbers on the real line.

We will use the intuitive notion that the line has no gaps and that every conceivable distance can be represented by a point on the line. With these concepts in mind, we call the line shown above the **real line**.

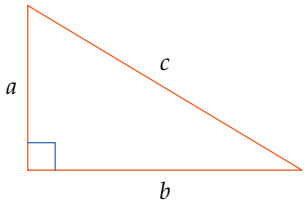
We think of each point on the real line as corresponding to what we call a **real number**. The undefined intuitive notions (such as "no gaps") can be made precise using more advanced mathematics. In this book, we let our intuitive notions of the real line serve to define the system of real numbers.

Is Every Real Number Rational?

We know that every rational number corresponds to some point on the real line. Does every point on the real line correspond to some rational number? In other words, is every real number rational?

Probably the first people to ponder these issues thought that the rational numbers fill up the entire real line. However, the ancient Greeks discovered that this is not true. To see how they came to this conclusion, we make a brief detour into geometry.

Recall that for each right triangle, the sum of the squares of the lengths of the two sides that form the right angle equals the square of the length of the hypotenuse. The next figure illustrates this result, which is called the Pythagorean Theorem.

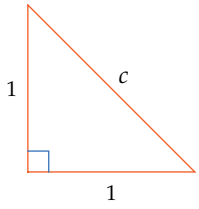


The Pythagorean Theorem for right triangles: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

Pythagoras explaining his work (from The School of Athens, *painted by Raphael around 1510).*

The Pythagorean Theorem is named in honor of the Greek mathematician and philosopher Pythagoras, who lived over 2500 years ago. The Babylonians had discovered this result a thousand years before Pythagoras.

Now consider the special case where both sides that form the right angle have length 1, as in the figure below. In this case, the Pythagorean Theorem states that the length c of the hypotenuse satisfies the equation $c^2 = 2$.



An isosceles right triangle. The Pythagorean Theorem implies that $c^2 = 2$.

We have just seen that there is a positive real number c such that $c^2 = 2$. This raises the question of whether there exists a rational number c such that $c^2 = 2$.

We could try to find a rational number whose square equals 2 by experimentation. One striking example is

$$\left(\frac{99}{70}\right)^2 = \frac{9801}{4900},$$

here the numerator of the right side misses being twice the denominator by only 1. Although $\left(\frac{99}{70}\right)^2$ is close to 2, it is not exactly equal to 2.

Another example is $\frac{9369319}{6625109}$. The square of this rational number is approximately 1.999999999999977, which is very close to 2 but again is not exactly what we seek.

Because we have found rational numbers whose squares are very close to 2, you might suspect that with further cleverness we could find a rational number whose square equals 2. However, the ancient Greeks proved this is impossible.

This course does not focus much on proofs. However, the Greek proof that there is no rational number whose square equals 2 is one of the great intellectual achievements of humanity. It should be experienced by every educated person. Thus this proof is presented below for your enrichment.

What follows is a proof by contradiction. We will start by assuming that there is a rational number whose square equals 2. Using that assumption, we will arrive at a contradiction. So our assumption must have been incorrect. Thus there is no rational number whose square equals 2.

Understanding the logical pattern of thinking that goes into this proof can be a valuable asset in dealing with complex issues.

No rational number has a square equal to 2.

Proof: Suppose there exist integers m and n such that

$$\left(\frac{m}{n}\right)^2 = 2.$$

By canceling any common factors, we can choose m and n to have no factors in common. In other words, $\frac{m}{n}$ is reduced to lowest terms.

The equation above is equivalent to the equation

$$m^2 = 2n^2.$$

This implies that m^2 is even; hence m is even (because the square of each odd number is odd). Thus $m = 2k$ for some integer k. Substituting $2k$ for m in the equation above gives

$$4k^2 = 2n^2,$$

or equivalently

$$2k^2 = n^2.$$

This implies that n^2 is even; hence n is even.

We have now shown that both m and n are even, contradicting our choice of m and n as having no factors in common.

This contradiction means our original assumption that there is a rational number whose square equals 2 must be incorrect. Thus there do not exist integers m and n such that $\left(\frac{m}{n}\right)^2 = 2$.

"When you have excluded the impossible, whatever remains, however improbable, must be the truth."
—Sherlock Holmes

The notation $\sqrt{2}$ is used to denote the positive real number c such that $c^2 = 2$. As we saw earlier, the Pythagorean Theorem implies that there exists a real number $\sqrt{2}$ with the property that

$$(\sqrt{2})^2 = 2.$$

The result above implies that $\sqrt{2}$ is not a rational number. Thus not every real number is a rational number. In other words, not every point on the real line corresponds to a rational number.

Irrational number

A real number that is not rational is called an **irrational number**.

We have just shown that $\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number. The real numbers π and e, which we will encounter in later chapters, are also irrational numbers.

Once we have found one irrational number, finding others is much easier, as shown in the next two examples.

Example 1

Show that $3+\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

The attitude of the ancient Greeks toward irrational numbers persists in our everyday use of the word "irrational" to mean "not based on reason".

solution Suppose $3+\sqrt{2}$ is a rational number. Because

$$\sqrt{2} = (3+\sqrt{2}) - 3,$$

this implies that $\sqrt{2}$ is the difference of two rational numbers, which implies that $\sqrt{2}$ is a rational number, which is not true.

Thus our assumption that $3+\sqrt{2}$ is a rational number was incorrect. In other words, $3+\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

The next example provides another illustration of how to use one irrational number to generate another irrational number.

Example 2

Show that $8\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

solution Suppose $8\sqrt{2}$ is a rational number. Because

$$\sqrt{2} = \frac{8\sqrt{2}}{8},$$

this implies that $\sqrt{2}$ is the quotient of two rational numbers, which implies that $\sqrt{2}$ is a rational number, which is not true.

Thus our assumption that $8\sqrt{2}$ is a rational number was incorrect. In other words, $8\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

Problems

The problems in this section may be harder than typical problems found in the rest of this book.

1 Show that $\frac{6}{7}+\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

2 Show that $5-\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

3 Show that $3\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

4 Show that $\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{5}$ is an irrational number.

5 Show that $4+9\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

6 Explain why the sum of a rational number and an irrational number is an irrational number.

7 Explain why the product of a nonzero rational number and an irrational number is an irrational number.

8 Suppose t is an irrational number. Explain why $\frac{1}{t}$ is also an irrational number.

9 Give an example of two irrational numbers whose sum is an irrational number.

10 Give an example of two irrational numbers whose sum is a rational number.

11 Give an example of three irrational numbers whose sum is a rational number.

12 Give an example of two irrational numbers whose product is an irrational number.

13 Give an example of two irrational numbers whose product is a rational number.

14 Explain why $(\sqrt{2})^3$ is an irrational number.

15 Suppose t is an irrational number. Explain why at least one of t^2 and t^3 is irrational.

0.2 Algebra of the Real Numbers

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- manipulate algebraic expressions using the commutative, associative, and distributive properties;
- recognize the order of algebraic operations and the role of parentheses;
- apply the crucial identities involving additive inverses and fractions;
- explain the importance of being careful about parentheses and the order of operations when using a calculator or computer.

The operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division extend from the rational numbers to the real numbers. We can add, subtract, multiply, and divide any two real numbers and stay within the system of real numbers, again with the exception that division by 0 is prohibited.

In this section we review the basic algebraic properties of the real numbers. Because this material should indeed be review, no effort has been made to show how some of these properties follow from others. Instead, this section focuses on highlighting key properties that should become so familiar to you that you can use them comfortably and without effort.

Commutativity and Associativity

Commutativity is the formal name for the property stating that order does not matter in addition and multiplication.

Neither subtraction nor division is commutative because order matters for these operations. For example, $5-3 \neq 3-5$, *and* $\frac{6}{2} \neq \frac{2}{6}$.

Commutativity

$$a+b=b+a \quad \text{and} \quad ab=ba$$

for all real numbers a and b.

Here (and throughout this section) a, b, and other variables denote either real numbers or expressions that take on values that are real numbers. For example, the commutativity of addition implies that $x^2+\frac{x}{5}=\frac{x}{5}+x^2$.

Associativity is the formal name for the property stating that grouping does not matter in addition and multiplication.

Expressions inside parentheses should be calculated before further computation. For example, $(a+b)+c$ *should be calculated by first adding* a *and* b, *and then adding that sum to* c. *The associative property of addition asserts that this number will be the same as* $a+(b+c)$, *which should be calculated by first adding* b *and* c, *and then adding that sum to* a.

Associativity

$$(a+b)+c=a+(b+c) \quad \text{and} \quad (ab)c=a(bc)$$

for all real numbers a, b, and c.

Because of the associativity of addition, we can dispense with parentheses when adding three or more numbers, writing expressions such as

$$a+b+c+d$$

without worrying about how the terms are grouped. Similarly, because of the associative property of multiplication, we do not need parentheses when multiplying together three or more numbers. Thus we can write expressions such as $abcd$ without specifying the order of multiplication or the grouping.

Neither subtraction nor division is associative because the grouping does matter for those operations. For example,

$$(9-6)-2=3-2=1,$$

but

$$9-(6-2)=9-4=5,$$

which shows that subtraction is not associative.

The standard practice is to evaluate subtractions from left to right unless parentheses indicate otherwise. For example, $9-6-2$ should be interpreted to mean $(9-6)-2$, which equals 1.

The Order of Algebraic Operations

Consider the expression

$$2+3\cdot 7.$$

This expression contains no parentheses to guide us to which operation should be performed first. Should we first add 2 and 3, and then multiply the result by 7? If so, we would interpret the expression above as

$$(2+3)\cdot 7,$$

which equals 35.

Or to evaluate $2+3\cdot 7$ should we first multiply together 3 and 7, and then add 2 to that result? If so, we would interpret $2+3\cdot 7$ as

$$2+(3\cdot 7),$$

Note that $(2+3)\cdot 7$ does not equal $2+(3\cdot 7)$. Thus the order of these operations does matter.

which equals 23.

So does $2+3\cdot 7$ equal $(2+3)\cdot 7$ or $2+(3\cdot 7)$? The answer to this question depends on custom rather than anything inherent in the mathematical situation. Every mathematically literate person would interpret $2+3\cdot 7$ to mean $2+(3\cdot 7)$. In other words, people in the modern era have adopted the convention that multiplications should be performed before additions unless parentheses dictate otherwise. You sholud become accustomed to this convention.

Multiplication and division before addition and subtraction

Unless parentheses indicate otherwise, products and quotients are calculated before sums and differences.

Thus, for example, $a+bc$ is interpreted to mean $a+(bc)$, although almost always we dispense with the parentheses and just write $a+bc$.

As another illustration of the principle above, consider the expression

$$4m+3n+11(p+q).$$

The correct interpretation of this expression is that 4 should be multiplied by m, 3 should be multiplied by n, 11 should be multiplied by $p+q$, and then the three numbers $4m$, $3n$, and $11(p+q)$ should be added together. In other words, the expression above equals

$$(4m)+(3n)+\big(11(p+q)\big).$$

The size of parentheses is sometimes a visual aid to indicate the order of operations. Smaller parentheses are often used for more inner parentheses. Thus expressions enclosed in smaller parentheses should usually be evaluated before expressions enclosed in larger parentheses.

The three new sets of parentheses in the expression above are unnecessary. The version of the same expression without the unnecessary parentheses is cleaner and easier to read.

When parentheses are enclosed within parentheses, expressions in the innermost parentheses are evaluated first.

Evaluate inner parentheses first

In an expression with parentheses inside parentheses, evaluate the innermost parentheses first and then work outward.

Example 1

Evaluate the expression $2\big(6+3(1+4)\big)$.

solution Here the innermost parentheses surround $1+4$. Thus start by evaluating that expression, getting 5:

$$2\big(6+3\underbrace{(1+4)}_{5}\big)=2(6+3\cdot 5).$$

Now to evaluate the expression $6+3\cdot 5$, first evaluate $3\cdot 5$, getting 15, then add that to 6, getting 21. Multiplying by 2 completes our evaluation of this expression:

$$2\Big(6+\underbrace{3\underbrace{(1+4)}_{5}}_{15}\Big)=\underbrace{42}_{21}.$$

The Distributive Property

The distributive property connects addition and multiplication, converting a product with a sum into a sum of two products.

Distributive property

$$a(x+y)=ax+ay \quad \text{and} \quad (a+b)x=ax+bx$$

for all real numbers a, b, x, and y.

The distributive property provides the justification for factoring expressions.

Sometimes you will use the distributive property to transform an expression of the form $a(x+y)$ into $ax+ay$. Sometimes you will use the distributive property in the opposite direction, transforming an expression of the form $ax+ay$ into $a(x+y)$. The direction of the transformation depends on the context. The next example shows the use of the distributive property in both directions.

Example 2

Simplify the expression $2(3m+x)+5x$.

solution First use the distributive property to transform $2(3m+x)$ into $6m+2x$:

$$2(3m+x)+5x=6m+2x+5x.$$

Now use the distributive property again, but in the other direction, to transform $2x+5x$ to $(2+5)x$:

$$\begin{aligned}6m+2x+5x&=6m+(2+5)x\\&=6m+7x.\end{aligned}$$

Thus we have used the distributive property (twice) to transform $2(3m+x)+5x$ into the simpler expression $6m+7x$.

One of the most common algebraic manipulations involves expanding a product of sums, as in the following example.

Example 3

Expand $(a+b)(x+y)$.

solution Think of $(x+y)$ as a single number and then apply the distributive property to the expression above, getting

$$(a+b)(x+y) = a(x+y) + b(x+y).$$

Now apply the distributive property twice more, getting

$$(a+b)(x+y) = ax + ay + bx + by.$$

Note that in the formula found here, every term in the first set of parentheses is multiplied by every term in the second set of parentheses.

By understanding how the identity above was obtained, you should easily be able to find formulas for more complicated expressions such as $(a+b)(x+y+z)$.

To expand $(a+b)(x+y+z)$, multiply each term in $a+b$ by each term in $x+y+z$ and then sum those products.

Example 4

Expand $(a+b)^2$.

solution We have $(a+b)(a+b) = a^2 + ab + ba + b^2$, which with a standard use of commutativity becomes the identity

$$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2.$$

Additive Inverses and Subtraction

The **additive inverse** of a real number a is the number $-a$ such that

$$a + (-a) = 0.$$

The connection between subtraction and additive inverses is captured by the identity

$$a - b = a + (-b).$$

In fact, the equation above can be taken as the definition of subtraction.

You need to be comfortable using the following identities that involve additive inverses and subtraction.

Identities involving additive inverses and subtraction

$$-(-a) = a$$
$$-(a+b) = -a - b$$
$$(-a)(-b) = ab$$
$$(-a)b = a(-b) = -(ab)$$
$$(a-b)x = ax - bx$$
$$a(x-y) = ax - ay$$

for all real numbers a, b, x, and y.

Example 5

Expand $(a+b)(a-b)$.

solution Start by thinking of $(a+b)$ as a single number and applying the distributive property. Then apply the distributive property twice more:

Be sure to distribute the minus signs correctly when using the distributive property, as shown here.

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)(a-b) &= (a+b)a-(a+b)b\\ &= a^2+ba-ab-b^2\\ &= a^2-b^2\end{aligned}$$

You need to become sufficiently comfortable with the following identities so that you can use them with ease.

Identities arising from the distributive property

$$(a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2$$
$$(a-b)^2 = a^2-2ab+b^2$$
$$(a+b)(a-b) = a^2-b^2$$

Example 6

Without using a calculator, evaluate 43×37.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}43\times 37 &= (40+3)(40-3)\\ &= 40^2-3^2\\ &= 1600-9\\ &= 1591\end{aligned}$$

Multiplicative Inverses and the Algebra of Fractions

The multiplicative inverse of b is sometimes called the **reciprocal** *of b.*

The **multiplicative inverse** of a real number $b\neq 0$ is the number $\frac{1}{b}$ such that

$$b\cdot\frac{1}{b}=1.$$

The connection between division and multiplicative inverses is captured by the identity

$$\frac{a}{b}=a\cdot\frac{1}{b}.$$

In fact, the equation above can be taken as the definition of division.

You need to be comfortable using various identities that involve multiplicative inverses and division. We start with the following identities.

Assume all denominators in this subsection are not 0.

Multiplication of fractions and cancellation

$$\frac{a}{b}\cdot\frac{c}{d}=\frac{ac}{bd} \qquad\qquad \frac{ac}{ad}=\frac{c}{d}$$

The first identity above states that the product of two fractions can be computed by multiplying together the numerators and multiplying together the denominators.

The second identity above, when used to transform $\frac{ac}{ad}$ into $\frac{c}{d}$, is the usual simplification of canceling a common factor from the numerator and denominator. When used in the other direction to transform $\frac{c}{d}$ into $\frac{ac}{ad}$, the second identity above becomes the familiar procedure of multiplying the numerator and denominator by the same factor.

Notice that the second identity above follows from the first identity:

$$\frac{ac}{ad} = \frac{a}{a} \cdot \frac{c}{d} = 1 \cdot \frac{c}{d} = \frac{c}{d}.$$

Example 7

Simplify the expression

$$\frac{3}{x^2-1} \cdot \frac{x+1}{x}.$$

solution Using the identities above, we have

$$\frac{3}{x^2-1} \cdot \frac{x+1}{x} = \frac{3(x+1)}{(x^2-1)x}$$

$$= \frac{3(x+1)}{(x+1)(x-1)x}$$

$$= \frac{3}{(x-1)x}.$$

Now we turn to the identity for adding two fractions.

Addition of fractions

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad+bc}{bd}$$

The formula for adding fractions is more complicated than the formula for multiplying fractions.

The derivation of the identity above is straightforward if we accept the formula for adding two fractions with the same denominator, which is

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{b} = \frac{a+c}{b}.$$

To derive this formula, note that

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{b} = a \cdot \frac{1}{b} + c \cdot \frac{1}{b}$$

$$= (a+c) \cdot \frac{1}{b}$$

$$= \frac{a+c}{b}.$$

For example, $\frac{2}{9} + \frac{5}{9} = \frac{7}{9}$, as you can visualize by thinking about a pie divided into 9 equal-size pieces, and then placing 2 pieces (which is $\frac{2}{9}$ of the pie) next to 5 additional pieces ($\frac{5}{9}$ of the pie), getting 7 pieces of the pie ($\frac{7}{9}$ of the pie).

To obtain the formula for adding two fractions with different denominators, we use the multiplication identity to rewrite the fractions so that they have the same denominators:

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{d}{d} + \frac{b}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d}$$

$$= \frac{ad}{bd} + \frac{bc}{bd}$$

$$= \frac{ad+bc}{bd}.$$

Never make the mistake of thinking that $\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d}$ *equals* $\frac{a+c}{b+d}$.

Example 8

Write the sum

$$\frac{2}{w(w+1)} + \frac{3}{w^2}$$

as a single fraction.

solution Using the identity for adding fractions gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2}{w(w+1)} + \frac{3}{w^2} &= \frac{w^2}{w^2}\cdot\frac{2}{w(w+1)} + \frac{3}{w^2}\cdot\frac{w(w+1)}{w(w+1)} \\ &= \frac{2w^2 + 3w(w+1)}{w^3(w+1)} \\ &= \frac{5w^2 + 3w}{w^3(w+1)} \\ &= \frac{w(5w+3)}{ww^2(w+1)} \\ &= \frac{5w+3}{w^2(w+1)}.\end{aligned}$$

remark Sometimes when adding two fractions, it is easier to use a common multiple of the two denominators that is simpler than the product of the two denominators. For example, the two denominators in this example are $w(w+1)$ and w^2. Their product is $w^3(w+1)$, which is the denominator used in the calculation above. However, $w^2(w+1)$ is also a common multiple of the two denominators. Here is the calculation using $w^2(w+1)$ as the denominator:

If you can easily find a common multiple that is simpler than the product of the two denominators, then using it will mean that less cancellation is needed to simplify your final result.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2}{w(w+1)} + \frac{3}{w^2} &= \frac{w}{w}\cdot\frac{2}{w(w+1)} + \frac{3}{w^2}\cdot\frac{w+1}{w+1} \\ &= \frac{2w}{w^2(w+1)} + \frac{3(w+1)}{w^2(w+1)} \\ &= \frac{2w + 3(w+1)}{w^2(w+1)} \\ &= \frac{5w+3}{w^2(w+1)}.\end{aligned}$$

The two methods produced the same answer—either method works fine.

Now we look at the identity for dividing by a fraction.

The sizes of the fraction bars here indicate that

$$\frac{a}{\frac{b}{c}}$$

should be interpreted to mean a divided by $\frac{b}{c}$, which could be written as $a/(b/c)$.

Division by a fraction

$$\frac{a}{\frac{b}{c}} = a\cdot\frac{c}{b}$$

This identity gives the key to unraveling fractions that involve fractions, as shown in the following example.

Example 9

Simplify the expression

$$\frac{\frac{y}{x}}{\frac{b}{c}}.$$

solution The size of the fraction bars indicates that the expression to be simplified is $(y/x)/(b/c)$. We use the identity above (thinking of $\frac{y}{x}$ as a), which shows that dividing by $\frac{b}{c}$ is the same as multiplying by $\frac{c}{b}$. Thus we have

$$\frac{\frac{y}{x}}{\frac{b}{c}} = \frac{y}{x} \cdot \frac{c}{b}$$

$$= \frac{yc}{xb}.$$

When faced with complicated expressions involving fractions that are themselves fractions, remember that division by a fraction is the same as multiplication by the fraction flipped over.

Finally, we conclude this subsection by recording some identities involving fractions and additive inverses.

Fractions and additive inverses

$$\frac{-a}{b} = \frac{a}{-b} = -\frac{a}{b} \qquad \frac{-a}{-b} = \frac{a}{b} \qquad \frac{a}{b} - \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad - bc}{bd}$$

Symbolic Calculators

Correct use of a calculator requires some understanding, particularly of the order of operations. The next example illustrates the importance of paying attention to the order of operations, even when you are using a calculator.

Example 10

Use a calculator to evaluate

$$8.7 + 2.1 \times 5.9.$$

solution On a calculator, you might enter

$$\boxed{8.7} \quad \boxed{+} \quad \boxed{2.1} \quad \boxed{\times} \quad \boxed{5.9}$$

and then on most calculators you need to press the $\boxed{\textit{enter}}$ button or the $\boxed{=}$ button.

Some calculators give 63.72 as the result of entering the items above, while other calculators give 21.09 as the result. Calculators that give the result 63.72 work by first calculating the sum $8.7 + 2.1$, getting 10.8, then multiplying by 5.9 to get 63.72. Thus such calculators interpret the input above to mean $(8.7 + 2.1) \times 5.9$.

Other calculators will interpret the input above to mean $8.7 + (2.1 \times 5.9)$, which equals 21.09 and which is what the expression $8.7 + 2.1 \times 5.9$ should mean.

If your calculator gives the result 63.72 when the items above are entered, then a correct answer for the desired calculation can be obtained by changing the order so that you enter

$$\boxed{2.1} \quad \boxed{\times} \quad \boxed{5.9} \quad \boxed{+} \quad \boxed{8.7}$$

and then the $\boxed{\textit{enter}}$ button or the $\boxed{=}$ button; this sequence of items should be interpreted by all calculators to mean $(2.1 \times 5.9) + 8.7$, giving the correct answer 21.09.

The result of entering these items on a calculator depends upon the calculator!

Make sure you know how your calculator interprets the kind of input shown in the example above, or you may get answers from your calculator that do not reflect the problem you have in mind.

Many calculators have parentheses buttons, which are often needed to control the order of operations. For example, to evaluate $(3.49 + 4.58)(5.67 + 6.76)$ on a calculator with parentheses buttons you can enter

(3.49 + 4.58) × (5.67 + 6.76)

and then the enter button or the = button, getting the correct answer 100.3101.

Some calculators can do rational arithmetic, meaning that

$$\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{5}$$

gives the exact result $\frac{11}{15}$ *instead of the approximate result* 0.7333333.

Calculators and computers have evolved from being able to do arithmetic to having extensive symbolic and graphing abilities. A symbolic calculator can handle symbols as well as numbers. Because of the many varieties of symbolic and graphing calculators available as either hand-held machines or as computer software, showing how all of them work would be impractical.

The examples throughout this book that depend upon symbolic or graphing calculators will use *WolframAlpha* (www.wolframalpha.com), which is a free web-based symbolic and graphing calculator (and much more). You do not necessarily need to use *WolframAlpha* to follow the examples—feel free to use your favorite calculator or software instead.

British mathematician Ada Lovelace (1815–1852), who was a pioneer computer scientist.

WolframAlpha has some unusual capabilities. Thus even if you have your own symbolic calculator, you should take a look at *WolframAlpha* so that you know the kind of computational power that is now easily available. Here are some of the advantages of using *WolframAlpha* at least occasionally:

- *WolframAlpha* is free.
- *WolframAlpha* is more powerful than standard symbolic calculators, allowing certain calculations that cannot be done with a hand-held calculator.
- The larger size, better resolution, and color on a computer screen make graphs produced by *WolframAlpha* more informative than graphs on a typical hand-held graphing calculator.
- *WolframAlpha* is easy to use. In particular, *WolframAlpha* does not have the strict syntax requirements associated with many symbolic calculators. If you are unsure of the vocabulary or syntax that *WolframAlpha* expects, just make a guess—*WolframAlpha* will try to figure out what you meant.

The next example shows how *WolframAlpha* can be used as a web-based symbolic calculator.

Example 11

Use *WolframAlpha* to expand the expression $(x - 2y + 3z)^2$.

As usual on computers, a caret ^ is used to denote a power.

solution Point a web browser to www.wolframalpha.com. Type

expand (x – 2y + 3z)^2

and then press the enter key on your keyboard or click the = box on the right side of the *WolframAlpha* entry box, getting the result

$$x^2 - 4xy + 6xz + 4y^2 - 12yz + 9z^2.$$

The next example is presented mainly to show that parentheses must sometimes be used with symbolic calculators even when parentheses do not appear in the usual mathematical notation.

Example 12

Use *WolframAlpha* to simplify the expression

$$\frac{\dfrac{1}{y-b}-\dfrac{1}{y}}{b}.$$

solution In *WolframAlpha*, type

simplify (1/(y–b) – 1/y)/b

to get the result

$$\frac{1}{y(y-b)}.$$

As shown above, *WolframAlpha* does not mind if you insert extra spaces to make the input more easily readable by humans.

Make sure you understand why both sets of parentheses in the entry box are needed here. This example shows that even if you are using a machine for algebraic manipulation, you must have a good understanding of the order of operations.

Most of the exercises in this section can be done by *WolframAlpha* or a symbolic calculator. However, you should want to acquire the basic algebraic manipulation skills and understanding needed to do these exercises. Very little skill or understanding will come from watching a machine do the exercises.

The best way to use *WolframAlpha* or another symbolic calculator with the exercises is to check your answers and to experiment (and play!) by changing the input to see how the output varies.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–4, determine how many different values can arise by inserting one pair of parentheses into the given expression.

1 $19-12-8-2$

2 $3-7-9-5$

3 $6+3\cdot 4+5\cdot 2$

4 $5\cdot 3\cdot 2+6\cdot 4$

For Exercises 5–22, expand the given expression.

5 $(x-y)(z+w-t)$

6 $(x+y-r)(z+w-t)$

7 $(2x+3)^2$

8 $(3b+5)^2$

9 $(2c-7)^2$

10 $(4a-5)^2$

11 $(x+y+z)^2$

12 $(x-5y-3z)^2$

13 $(x+1)(x-2)(x+3)$

14 $(y-2)(y-3)(y+5)$

15 $(a+2)(a-2)(a^2+4)$

16 $(b-3)(b+3)(b^2+9)$

17 $xy(x+y)\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{y}\right)$

18 $a^2z(z-a)\left(\frac{1}{z}+\frac{1}{a}\right)$

19 $(t-2)(t^2+2t+4)$

20 $(m-2)(m^4+2m^3+4m^2+8m+16)$

21 $(n+3)(n^2-3n+9)$

22 $(y+2)(y^4-2y^3+4y^2-8y+16)$

For Exercises 23–52, simplify the given expression as much as possible.

23 $4(2m+3n)+7m$

24 $3\big(2m+4(n+5p)\big)+6n$

25 $\frac{3}{4}+\frac{6}{7}$

26 $\frac{2}{5}+\frac{7}{8}$

27 $\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{14}{39}$

28 $\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{15}{22}$

29 $\dfrac{\frac{5}{7}}{\frac{2}{3}}$

30 $\dfrac{\frac{6}{5}}{\frac{7}{4}}$

31 $\frac{m+1}{2}+\frac{3}{n}$

32 $\frac{m}{3}+\frac{5}{n-2}$

33 $\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{4}{5}+\frac{3}{4}\cdot 2$

34 $\frac{3}{5}\cdot\frac{2}{7}+\frac{5}{4}\cdot 2$

35 $\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{m+3}{7}+\frac{1}{2}$

36 $\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{n-2}{5}+\frac{7}{3}$

37 $\frac{2}{x+3}+\frac{y-4}{5}$

38 $\frac{x-3}{4}-\frac{5}{y+2}$

39 $\frac{1}{x+2}+\frac{1}{x-2}$

40 $\frac{1}{x+3}-\frac{1}{x-3}$

41 $\frac{4t+1}{t^2}+\frac{3}{t}$

42 $\dfrac{5}{u^2}+\dfrac{1-2u}{u^3}$

43 $\dfrac{3}{v(v-2)}+\dfrac{v+1}{v^3}$

44 $\dfrac{w-1}{w^3}-\dfrac{2}{w(w-3)}$

45 $\dfrac{1}{x-y}\left(\dfrac{x}{y}-\dfrac{y}{x}\right)$

46 $\dfrac{1}{y}\left(\dfrac{1}{x-y}-\dfrac{1}{x+y}\right)$

47 $\dfrac{(x+a)^2-x^2}{a}$

48 $\dfrac{\dfrac{1}{x+a}-\dfrac{1}{x}}{a}$

49 $\dfrac{\dfrac{x-2}{y}}{\dfrac{z}{x+2}}$

50 $\dfrac{\dfrac{x-4}{y+3}}{\dfrac{y-3}{x+4}}$

51 $\dfrac{\dfrac{a-t}{b-c}}{\dfrac{b+c}{a+t}}$

52 $\dfrac{\dfrac{r+m}{u-n}}{\dfrac{n+u}{m-r}}$

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises. Unlike exercises, problems usually have more than one correct answer.

53 Write

$$\frac{u}{v}+\frac{w}{x}+\frac{y}{z}$$

in the form $\frac{a}{b}$, where a and b are appropriate expressions.

54 Show that $(a+1)^2=a^2+1$ if and only if $a=0$.

55 Explain why $(a+b)^2=a^2+b^2$ if and only if $a=0$ or $b=0$.

56 Show that $(a-1)^2=a^2-1$ if and only if $a=1$.

57 Explain why $(a-b)^2=a^2-b^2$ if and only if $b=0$ or $b=a$.

58 Explain how you could show that $51\times 49=2499$ in your head by using the identity $(a+b)(a-b)=a^2-b^2$.

59 Show that

$$a^3+b^3+c^3-3abc$$
$$=(a+b+c)(a^2+b^2+c^2-ab-bc-ac).$$

60 Give an example to show that division does not satisfy the associative property.

61 Suppose shirts are on sale for \$19.99 each. Explain how you could use the distributive property to calculate in your head that six shirts cost \$119.94.

62 The sales tax in San Francisco is 8.5%. Diners in San Francisco often compute a 17% tip on their before-tax restaurant bill by simply doubling the sales tax. For example, a \$64 dollar food and drink bill would come with a sales tax of \$5.44; doubling that amount would lead to a 17% tip of \$10.88 (which might be rounded up to \$11). Explain why this technique is an application of the associativity of multiplication.

63 A quick way to compute a 15% tip on a restaurant bill is first to compute 10% of the bill (by shifting the decimal point) and then add half of that amount for the total tip. For example, 15% of a \$43 restaurant bill is \$4.30 + \$2.15, which equals \$6.45. Explain why this technique is an application of the distributive property.

64 Suppose $b\neq 0$ and $d\neq 0$. Explain why

$$\frac{a}{b}=\frac{c}{d} \quad \text{if and only if} \quad ad=bc.$$

65 The first letters of the phrase "Please excuse my dear Aunt Sally" are used by some people to remember the order of operations: parentheses, exponents (which we will discuss in a later chapter), multiplication, division, addition, subtraction. Make up a catchy phrase that serves the same purpose but with exponents excluded.

66 (a) Verify that

$$\frac{16}{2}-\frac{25}{5}=\frac{16-25}{2-5}.$$

(b) From the example above you may be tempted to think that

$$\frac{a}{b}-\frac{c}{d}=\frac{a-c}{b-d}$$

provided none of the denominators equals 0. Give an example to show that this is not true.

67 Suppose $b\neq 0$ and $d\neq 0$. Explain why

$$\frac{a}{b}-\frac{c}{d}=\frac{ad-bc}{bd}.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

For Exercises 1–4, determine how many different values can arise by inserting one pair of parentheses into the given expression.

1 $19-12-8-2$

solution Here are the possibilities:

$19(-12-8-2) = -418$ $\quad$ $19-(12-8)-2 = 13$

$19(-12-8)-2 = -382$ $\quad$ $19-(12-8-2) = 17$

$19(-12)-8-2 = -238$ $\quad$ $19-12-8(-2) = 23$

$(19-12)-8-2 = -3$ $\quad$ $19-12(-8)-2 = 113$

$19-12-(8-2) = 1$ $\quad$ $19-12(-8-2) = 139$

Other possible ways to insert one pair of parentheses lead to values already included in the list above. Thus ten values are possible; they are -418, -382, -238, -3, 1, 13, 17, 23, 113, and 139.

3 $6+3\cdot 4+5\cdot 2$

solution Here are the possibilities:

$$(6+3\cdot 4+5\cdot 2) = 28$$
$$6+(3\cdot 4+5)\cdot 2 = 40$$
$$(6+3)\cdot 4+5\cdot 2 = 46$$
$$6+3\cdot(4+5\cdot 2) = 48$$
$$6+3\cdot(4+5)\cdot 2 = 60$$

Other possible ways to insert one pair of parentheses lead to values already included in the list above. Thus five values are possible; they are 28, 40, 46, 48, and 60.

For Exercises 5–22, expand the given expression.

5 $(x-y)(z+w-t)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(x-y)(z+w-t) &= x(z+w-t)-y(z+w-t)\\ &= xz+xw-xt-yz-yw+yt\end{aligned}$$

7 $(2x+3)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(2x+3)^2 &= (2x)^2+2\cdot(2x)\cdot 3+3^2\\ &= 4x^2+12x+9\end{aligned}$$

9 $(2c-7)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(2c-7)^2 &= (2c)^2-2\cdot(2c)\cdot 7+7^2\\ &= 4c^2-28c+49\end{aligned}$$

11 $(x+y+z)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}&(x+y+z)^2\\ &\quad= (x+y+z)(x+y+z)\\ &\quad= x(x+y+z)+y(x+y+z)+z(x+y+z)\\ &\quad= x^2+xy+xz+yx+y^2+yz\\ &\qquad\quad +zx+zy+z^2\\ &\quad= x^2+y^2+z^2+2xy+2xz+2yz\end{aligned}$$

13 $(x+1)(x-2)(x+3)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(x+1)(x-2)(x+3) &= \big((x+1)(x-2)\big)(x+3)\\ &= (x^2-2x+x-2)(x+3)\\ &= (x^2-x-2)(x+3)\\ &= x^3+3x^2-x^2-3x-2x-6\\ &= x^3+2x^2-5x-6\end{aligned}$$

15 $(a+2)(a-2)(a^2+4)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(a+2)(a-2)(a^2+4) &= \big((a+2)(a-2)\big)(a^2+4)\\ &= (a^2-4)(a^2+4)\\ &= a^4-16\end{aligned}$$

17 $xy(x+y)\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{y}\right)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}xy(x+y)\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{y}\right) &= xy(x+y)\left(\frac{y}{xy}-\frac{x}{xy}\right)\\ &= xy(x+y)\left(\frac{y-x}{xy}\right)\\ &= (x+y)(y-x)\\ &= y^2-x^2\end{aligned}$$

19 $(t-2)(t^2+2t+4)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(t-2)(t^2+2t+4) &= t(t^2+2t+4)-2(t^2+2t+4)\\ &= t^3+2t^2+4t-2t^2-4t-8\\ &= t^3-8\end{aligned}$$

21 $(n+3)(n^2-3n+9)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(n+3)(n^2-3n+9)&=n(n^2-3n+9)+3(n^2-3n+9)\\&=n^3-3n^2+9n+3n^2-9n+27\\&=n^3+27\end{aligned}$$

For Exercises 23–52, simplify the given expression as much as possible.

23 $4(2m+3n)+7m$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}4(2m+3n)+7m&=8m+12n+7m\\&=15m+12n\end{aligned}$$

25 $\frac{3}{4}+\frac{6}{7}$

solution $\frac{3}{4}+\frac{6}{7}=\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{7}{7}+\frac{6}{7}\cdot\frac{4}{4}=\frac{21}{28}+\frac{24}{28}=\frac{45}{28}$

27 $\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{14}{39}$

solution $\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{14}{39}=\frac{3\cdot14}{4\cdot39}=\frac{7}{2\cdot13}=\frac{7}{26}$

29 $\dfrac{\frac{5}{7}}{\frac{2}{3}}$

solution

$$\frac{\frac{5}{7}}{\frac{2}{3}}=\frac{5}{7}\cdot\frac{3}{2}=\frac{5\cdot3}{7\cdot2}=\frac{15}{14}$$

31 $\frac{m+1}{2}+\frac{3}{n}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{m+1}{2}+\frac{3}{n}&=\frac{m+1}{2}\cdot\frac{n}{n}+\frac{3}{n}\cdot\frac{2}{2}\\&=\frac{(m+1)n+3\cdot2}{2n}\\&=\frac{mn+n+6}{2n}\end{aligned}$$

33 $\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{4}{5}+\frac{3}{4}\cdot2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{4}{5}+\frac{3}{4}\cdot2&=\frac{8}{15}+\frac{3}{2}\\&=\frac{8}{15}\cdot\frac{2}{2}+\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{15}{15}\\&=\frac{16+45}{30}=\frac{61}{30}\end{aligned}$$

35 $\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{m+3}{7}+\frac{1}{2}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{m+3}{7}+\frac{1}{2}&=\frac{2m+6}{35}+\frac{1}{2}\\&=\frac{2m+6}{35}\cdot\frac{2}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{35}{35}\\&=\frac{4m+12+35}{70}\\&=\frac{4m+47}{70}\end{aligned}$$

37 $\frac{2}{x+3}+\frac{y-4}{5}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2}{x+3}+\frac{y-4}{5}&=\frac{2}{x+3}\cdot\frac{5}{5}+\frac{y-4}{5}\cdot\frac{x+3}{x+3}\\&=\frac{2\cdot5+(y-4)(x+3)}{5(x+3)}\\&=\frac{10+yx+3y-4x-12}{5(x+3)}\\&=\frac{xy-4x+3y-2}{5(x+3)}\end{aligned}$$

39 $\frac{1}{x+2}+\frac{1}{x-2}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{x+2}+\frac{1}{x-2}&=\frac{x-2}{(x+2)(x-2)}+\frac{x+2}{(x-2)(x+2)}\\&=\frac{2x}{x^2-4}\end{aligned}$$

41 $\frac{4t+1}{t^2}+\frac{3}{t}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{4t+1}{t^2}+\frac{3}{t}&=\frac{4t+1}{t^2}+\frac{3}{t}\cdot\frac{t}{t}\\&=\frac{4t+1}{t^2}+\frac{3t}{t^2}\\&=\frac{7t+1}{t^2}\end{aligned}$$

43 $\dfrac{3}{v(v-2)} + \dfrac{v+1}{v^3}$

solution

$$\frac{3}{v(v-2)} + \frac{v+1}{v^3} = \frac{v^2}{v^2}\cdot\frac{3}{v(v-2)} + \frac{v+1}{v^3}\cdot\frac{v-2}{v-2}$$

$$= \frac{3v^2}{v^3(v-2)} + \frac{v^2-v-2}{v^3(v-2)}$$

$$= \frac{4v^2-v-2}{v^3(v-2)}$$

45 $\dfrac{1}{x-y}\left(\dfrac{x}{y} - \dfrac{y}{x}\right)$

solution

$$\frac{1}{x-y}\left(\frac{x}{y} - \frac{y}{x}\right) = \frac{1}{x-y}\left(\frac{x}{y}\cdot\frac{x}{x} - \frac{y}{x}\cdot\frac{y}{y}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{x-y}\left(\frac{x^2-y^2}{xy}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{x-y}\left(\frac{(x+y)(x-y)}{xy}\right)$$

$$= \frac{x+y}{xy}$$

47 $\dfrac{(x+a)^2 - x^2}{a}$

solution

$$\frac{(x+a)^2-x^2}{a} = \frac{x^2+2xa+a^2-x^2}{a}$$

$$= \frac{2xa+a^2}{a}$$

$$= 2x + a$$

49 $\dfrac{\dfrac{x-2}{y}}{\dfrac{z}{x+2}}$

solution

$$\frac{\frac{x-2}{y}}{\frac{z}{x+2}} = \frac{x-2}{y}\cdot\frac{x+2}{z}$$

$$= \frac{x^2-4}{yz}$$

51 $\dfrac{\dfrac{a-t}{b-c}}{\dfrac{b+c}{a+t}}$

solution

$$\frac{\frac{a-t}{b-c}}{\frac{b+c}{a+t}} = \frac{a-t}{b-c}\cdot\frac{a+t}{b+c}$$

$$= \frac{a^2-t^2}{b^2-c^2}$$

0.3 Inequalities, Intervals, and Absolute Value

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- apply the algebraic properties involving positive and negative numbers;
- manipulate inequalities;
- use interval notation for the four types of intervals;
- use interval notation involving $-\infty$ and ∞;
- work with unions of intervals;
- manipulate and interpret expressions involving absolute value.

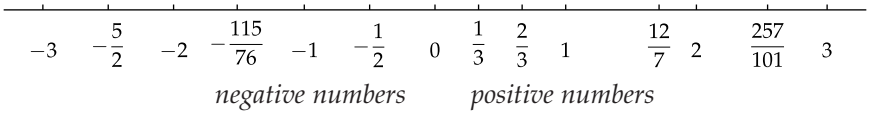
Positive and Negative Numbers

Positive and negative

- A number is called **positive** if it is right of 0 on the real line.
- A number is called **negative** if it is left of 0 on the real line.

From now on, "number" means "real number" unless otherwise stated.

Every number is either right of 0, left of 0, or equal to 0. Thus every number is either positive, negative, or 0.



All of the following properties should already be familiar to you.

Algebraic properties of positive and negative numbers

- The sum of two positive numbers is positive.
- The sum of two negative numbers is negative.
- The additive inverse of a positive number is negative.
- The additive inverse of a negative number is positive.
- The product of two positive numbers is positive.
- The product of two negative numbers is positive.
- The product of a positive number and a negative number is negative.
- The multiplicative inverse of a positive number is positive.
- The multiplicative inverse of a negative number is negative.

Example:

$2+3=5$

$(-2)+(-3)=-5$

-2 *is negative*

$-(-2)$ *is positive*

$2\cdot 3=6$

$(-2)\cdot(-3)=6$

$2\cdot(-3)=-6$

$\frac{1}{2}$ *is positive*

$\frac{1}{-2}$ *is negative*

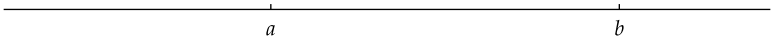
Inequalities

Less than, greater than

Suppose a and b are numbers.

- a is **less than** b, written $a < b$, if a is left of b on the real line.
- a is **less than or equal to** b, written $a \le b$, if $a < b$ or $a = b$.
- b is **greater than** a, written $b > a$, if b is right of a on the real line.
- b is **greater than or equal to** a, written $b \ge a$, if $b > a$ or $b = a$.

In the figure below, a is left of b on the real line; thus $a < b$.



$a < b$.

Note that $a < b$ if and only if $b - a$ is positive. In particular, b is positive if and only if $0 < b$. Note also that $b > a$ means the same as $a < b$. Similarly, $b \ge a$ means the same as $a \le b$.

Be sure to distinguish between the symbols $<$ and $\le$. For example, the statement $x < 4$ is true if x equals 3 but false if x equals 4, whereas the statement $x \le 4$ is true if x equals 3 and also true if x equals 4.

We now begin discussion of a series of simple but crucial properties of inequalities. The first property we will discuss is called transitivity.

Transitivity

If $a < b$ and $b < c$, then $a < c$.

For example, from the inequalities

$$\sqrt{15} < 4 \quad \textit{and} \quad 4 < \frac{21}{5}$$

we can conclude that

$$\sqrt{15} < \frac{21}{5}.$$

To see why transitivity holds, suppose $a < b$ and $b < c$. Then a is left of b on the real line and b is left of c. This implies that a is left of c, which means that $a < c$; see the figure below.

Transitivity: $a < b$ and $b < c$ implies that $a < c$.

Often multiple inequalities are written together as a single string of inequalities. Thus $a < b < c$ means the same thing as $a < b$ and $b < c$.

Our next result shows that we can add inequalities.

Addition of inequalities

If $a < b$ and $c < d$, then $a + c < b + d$.

For example, from the inequalities

$$\sqrt{8} < 3 \quad \textit{and} \quad 4 < \sqrt{17}$$

we can conclude that

$$\sqrt{8} + 4 < 3 + \sqrt{17}.$$

To see why this is true, note that if $a < b$ and $c < d$, then $b - a$ and $d - c$ are positive numbers. Because the sum of two positive numbers is positive, this implies that $(b - a) + (d - c)$ is positive. In other words, $(b + d) - (a + c)$ is positive. This means that $a + c < b + d$, as desired.

The next result states that we can multiply both sides of an inequality by a positive number and preserve the inequality. However, if both sides of an inequality are multiplied by a negative number, then the direction of the inequality must be reversed.

Multiplication of an inequality

Suppose $a < b$.

- If $c > 0$, then $ac < bc$.
- If $c < 0$, then $ac > bc$.

For example, from the inequality

$$\sqrt{7} < \sqrt{8}$$

we can conclude that

$$3\sqrt{7} < 3\sqrt{8}$$

and

$$(-3)\sqrt{7} > (-3)\sqrt{8}.$$

To see why this is true, first suppose $c > 0$. We are assuming that $a < b$, which means that $b - a$ is positive. Because the product of two positive numbers is positive, this implies that $(b - a)c$ is positive. In other words, $bc - ac$ is positive, which means that $ac < bc$, as desired.

Now consider the case where $c < 0$. We are still assuming that $a < b$, which means that $b - a$ is positive. Because the product of a positive number and a negative number is negative, this implies that $(b - a)c$ is negative. In other words, $bc - ac$ is negative, which means that $ac > bc$, as desired.

The next example illustrates the extra care that must be taken when multiplying inequalities.

Example 1

Find all numbers x such that

$$\frac{x - 8}{x - 4} < 3.$$

solution The natural first step here is to multiply this inequality by $x - 4$. The direction of the inequality will remain unchanged if $x - 4$ is positive but should be reversed if $x - 4$ is negative. Thus we consider these two cases separately.

The case $x - 4 = 0$ need not be considered because division by 0 is not allowed.

First consider the case where $x - 4$ is positive; thus $x > 4$. Multiplying both sides of the inequality above by $x - 4$ then gives the equivalent inequality

$$x - 8 < 3x - 12.$$

Subtracting x from both sides and then adding 12 to both sides gives the equivalent inequality $4 < 2x$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x > 2$. However, not all numbers $x > 2$ satisfy our original inequality above (for example, if $x = 3$, then the left side of the original inequality equals 5). We have been working under the assumption that $x > 4$. Because $4 > 2$, we see that in this case the original inequality holds if $x > 4$.

Now consider the case where $x - 4$ is negative; thus $x < 4$. Multiplying both sides of the original inequality above by $x - 4$ then gives the equivalent inequality

The direction of the inequality has been reversed because we have multiplied by a negative number.

$$x - 8 > 3x - 12.$$

Subtracting x from both sides and then adding 12 to both sides gives the equivalent inequality $4 > 2x$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x < 2$. If $x < 2$, then $x < 4$, which is the case under consideration. Thus the original inequality holds if $x < 2$.

Conclusion: The inequality above holds if $x < 2$ or $x > 4$.

Multiplying both sides of an inequality by -1 and reversing the direction of the inequality gives the following result.

Additive inverse and inequalities

If $a < b$, then $-a > -b$.

For example, from the inequality $2 < 3$ we can conclude that $-2 > -3$.

In other words, the direction of an inequality must be reversed when taking additive inverses of both sides.

The next result shows that the direction of an inequality must also be reversed when taking multiplicative inverses of both sides, unless one side is negative and the other side is positive.

Multiplicative inverse and inequalities

Suppose $a < b$.

- If a and b are both positive or both negative, then $\frac{1}{a} > \frac{1}{b}$.
- If $a < 0 < b$, then $\frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{b}$.

For example, from the inequality $2 < 3$ we can conclude that $\frac{1}{2} > \frac{1}{3}$.

To see why this is true, first suppose a and b are both positive or both negative. In either case, ab is positive. Thus

$$\frac{1}{ab} > 0.$$

Hence we can multiply both sides of the inequality $a < b$ by $\frac{1}{ab}$, preserving the direction of the inequality. This gives

$$a \cdot \frac{1}{ab} < b \cdot \frac{1}{ab},$$

which is the same as $\frac{1}{b} < \frac{1}{a}$, or equivalently $\frac{1}{a} > \frac{1}{b}$, as desired.

The case where $a < 0 < b$ is even easier. In this case $\frac{1}{a}$ is negative and $\frac{1}{b}$ is positive. Thus $\frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{b}$, as desired.

Intervals

We begin this subsection with an imprecise definition.

Set

A **set** is a collection of objects.

This definition is imprecise because the words "collection" and "objects" are vague.

The collection of positive numbers is an example of a set, as is the collection of odd negative integers. Almost all of the sets considered in this book are collections of real numbers, which at least removes some of the vagueness from the word "objects".

If a set contains only finitely many objects, then the objects in the set can be explicitly displayed between the symbols $\{\ \}$. For example, the set consisting of the numbers 4, $-\frac{17}{7}$, and $\sqrt{2}$ can be denoted by

$$\{4, -\tfrac{17}{7}, \sqrt{2}\}.$$

Sets can also be denoted by a property that characterizes objects of the set. For example, the set of real numbers greater than 2 can be denoted by

$$\{x : x > 2\}.$$

Here we use the convention that the notation $\{x : \dots\}$ should be read to mean "the set of real numbers x such that" and then whatever follows. There is no particular x here. The variable is simply a convenient device to describe a property, and the symbol used for the variable does not matter. Thus $\{x : x > 2\}$ and $\{y : y > 2\}$ and $\{t : t > 2\}$ all denote the same set, which can also be described (without mentioning any variables) as the set of real numbers greater than 2.

A special type of set occurs so often in mathematics that it gets its own name.

Interval

An **interval** is a set of real numbers that contains all numbers between any two numbers in the set.

The set of rational numbers is not an interval because 1 and 2 are in this set but $\sqrt{2}$, which is between 1 and 2, is not in this set.

For example, the set of positive numbers is an interval because all numbers between any two positive numbers are positive. As a nonexample, the set of integers is not an interval because 0 and 1 are in this set, but $\frac{2}{3}$, which is between 0 and 1, is not in this set.

For $a < b$, we define the following four intervals with endpoints a and b.

Open, closed, and half-open intervals

- The **open interval** (a,b) with endpoints a and b is the set of numbers between a and b, not including either endpoint:
$$(a,b) = \{x : a < x < b\}.$$

The definition of $[a,b]$ also makes sense when $a = b$; the interval $[a,a]$ consists of the single number a.

- The **closed interval** $[a,b]$ with endpoints a and b is the set of numbers between a and b, including both endpoints:
$$[a,b] = \{x : a \le x \le b\}.$$

- The **half-open interval** $[a,b)$ with endpoints a and b is the set of numbers between a and b, including a but not including b:
$$[a,b) = \{x : a \le x < b\}.$$

The term "half-closed" would make as much sense as "half-open".

- The **half-open interval** $(a,b]$ with endpoints a and b is the set of numbers between a and b, including b but not including a:
$$(a,b] = \{x : a < x \le b\}.$$

With this notation, a parenthesis indicates that the corresponding endpoint is not in the set; a straight bracket indicates that the corresponding endpoint is in the set. Thus the interval $(3,7]$ includes the numbers 4.1, 5, and the endpoint 7 (along with many other numbers), but does not include the numbers 2 or 9 or the endpoint 3.

The half-open interval $(3,7]$.

Suppose a is a real number. We define the following four intervals.

Intervals extending arbitrarily far

- The interval (a,∞) is the set of numbers greater than a:
$$(a,\infty) = \{x : x > a\}.$$

Example: $(0,\infty)$ denotes the set of positive numbers.

- The interval $[a,\infty)$ is the set of numbers greater than or equal to a:
$$[a,\infty) = \{x : x \ge a\}.$$

- The interval $(-\infty,a)$ is the set of numbers less than a:
$$(-\infty,a) = \{x : x < a\}.$$

Example: $(-\infty,0)$ denotes the set of negative numbers.

- The interval $(-\infty,a]$ is the set of numbers less than or equal to a:
$$(-\infty,a] = \{x : x \le a\}.$$

Here the symbol ∞, called **infinity**, should be thought of simply as a notational convenience. Neither ∞ nor $-\infty$ is a real number; these symbols have no meaning in this context other than as notational shorthand. For example, the interval $(2, \infty)$ is defined to be the set of real numbers greater than 2 (note that ∞ is not mentioned in this definition). The notation $(2, \infty)$ is often used because writing $(2, \infty)$ is easier than writing $\{x : x > 2\}$.

As before, a parenthesis indicates that the corresponding endpoint is not included in the set, and a straight bracket indicates that the corresponding endpoint is included in the set. Thus the interval $(2, \infty)$ does not include the endpoint 2, but the interval $[2, \infty)$ does include the endpoint 2. Both of the intervals $(2, \infty)$ and $[2, \infty)$ include 2.5 and 98765 (along with many other numbers); neither of these intervals includes 1.5 or -857.

There do not exist intervals with a straight bracket adjacent to $-\infty$ or ∞. For example, $[-\infty, 2]$ and $[2, \infty]$ do not make sense because the straight brackets indicate that both endpoints should be included. The symbols $-\infty$ and ∞ can never be included in a set of real numbers because these symbols do not denote real numbers.

The notation $(-\infty, \infty)$ is sometimes used to denote the set of real numbers.

A party invitation states that guests can arrive any time after 4 PM on June 30. Suppose that time is measured in hours from noon on June 30. If the invitation is taken literally, write an interval to represent acceptable times for guests to arrive.

Example 2

solution Any time greater than 4 hours from noon on June 30 is acceptable. Thus the interval of acceptable times is $(4, \infty)$.

In later chapters we will occasionally find it useful to work with the union of two intervals. Here is the definition of union.

Union

The **union** of two sets A and B, denoted $A \cup B$, is the set of objects that are contained in at least one of the sets A and B.

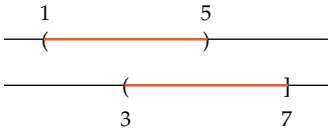
Similarly, the union of three or more sets is the collection of objects that are contained in at least one of the sets.

Thus $A \cup B$ consists of the objects (usually numbers) that belong either to A or to B or to both A and B.

Write $(1, 5) \cup (3, 7]$ as an interval.

Example 3

solution The figure here shows that every number in the interval $(1, 7]$ is either in $(1, 5)$ or is in $(3, 7]$ or is in both $(1, 5)$ and $(3, 7]$. The figure shows that $(1, 5) \cup (3, 7] = (1, 7]$.



The next example goes in the other direction, starting with a set and then writing it as a union of intervals.

Write the set of nonzero real numbers as the union of two intervals.

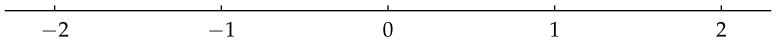
Example 4

solution The set of nonzero real numbers is the union of the set of negative numbers and the set of positive numbers. In other words, the set of nonzero real numbers equals $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$.

See Exercises 47–56 and the instructions for those exercises for the definition and examples of the intersection of intervals.

Absolute Value

The **absolute value** of a number is its distance from 0; here we are thinking of numbers as points on the real line. For example, the absolute value of 2 equals 2. More interestingly, the absolute value of -2 equals 2.



The absolute value of a number is its distance to 0. Thus both 2 and −2 have absolute value 2.

Here is the formal definition of absolute value.

Absolute value

The **absolute value** of a number b, denoted $|b|$, is defined by

$$|b| = \begin{cases} b & \text{if } b \geq 0 \\ -b & \text{if } b < 0. \end{cases}$$

This definition implies that $|b| \geq 0$ for every real number b.

For example, the formula above shows that $|2| = 2$ and $|-2| = 2$.

The concept of absolute value is fairly simple—just strip away the minus sign from any number that happens to have one. However, this rule can be applied only to numbers, not to expressions whose value is unknown.

$|-x| = |x|$ regardless of the value of x, as you are asked to explain in Problem 78.

For example, if we encounter the expression $|-x|$, we cannot simplify this expression to x unless we know that $x \geq 0$. If x happens to be a negative number, then $|-x| = -x$; stripping away the minus sign would be incorrect in this case.

Inequalities involving absolute values can be written without using an absolute value, as shown in the following example.

Example 5

(a) Write the inequality $|x| < 2$ without using an absolute value.

(b) Write the set $\{x : |x| < 2\}$ as an interval.

solution

(a) A number has absolute value less than 2 if and only if its distance from 0 is less than 2, and this happens if and only if the number is between -2 and 2. Hence the inequality $|x| < 2$ could be written as

$$-2 < x < 2.$$

(b) The inequality above implies that the set $\{x : |x| < 2\}$ equals the open interval $(-2, 2)$.

In the next example, we end up with an interval not centered at 0.

Example 6

(a) Write the inequality $|x - 5| < 1$ without using an absolute value.

(b) Write the set $\{x : |x - 5| < 1\}$ as an interval.

$|x - 5|$ is the distance between x and 5. Thus $\{x : |x - 5| < 1\}$ is the set of points on the real line whose distance to 5 is less than 1.

solution

(a) The absolute value of a number is less than 1 precisely when the number is between -1 and 1. Thus the inequality $|x - 5| < 1$ is equivalent to

$$-1 < x - 5 < 1.$$

Adding 5 to all three parts of the inequality above transforms it to the inequality

$$4 < x < 6.$$

The open interval $(4, 6)$.

(b) The inequality above implies that the set $\{x : |x - 5| < 1\}$ equals the open interval $(4, 6)$.

In the next example, we deal with a slightly more abstract situation, using symbols rather than specific numbers. To get a good understanding of an abstract piece of mathematics, start by looking at an example using concrete numbers, as in Example 6, before going on to a more abstract setting, as in Example 7.

Example 7

Suppose b is a real number and $h > 0$.

(a) Write the inequality $|x - b| < h$ without using an absolute value.

(b) Write the set $\{x : |x - b| < h\}$ as an interval.

$|x - b|$ is the distance between x and b. Thus $\{x : |x - b| < h\}$ is the set of points on the real line whose distance to b is less than h.

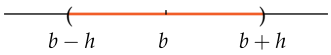
solution

(a) The absolute value of a number is less than h precisely when the number is between $-h$ and h. Thus the inequality $|x - b| < h$ is equivalent to

$$-h < x - b < h.$$

Adding b to all three parts of the inequality above transforms it to the inequality

$$b - h < x < b + h.$$



$\{x : |x - b| < h\}$ is the open interval of length $2h$ centered at b.

(b) The inequality above implies that the set $\{x : |x - b| < h\}$ equals the open interval $(b - h, b + h)$.

The set of numbers satisfying an inequality involving an absolute value may be the union of two intervals, as shown in the next example.

Example 8

Ball bearings need to have extremely accurate sizes to work correctly. The ideal diameter of a particular ball bearing is 0.8 cm, but a ball bearing is declared acceptable if the error in the diameter size is less than 0.001 cm.

(a) Write an inequality using absolute values and the diameter d of a ball bearing (measured in cm, which is an abbreviation for centimeters) that gives the condition for a ball bearing to be unacceptable.

(b) Write the set of numbers satisfying the inequality produced in part (a) as the union of two intervals.

Ball bearings.

solution

(a) The error in the diameter size is $|d - 0.8|$. Thus a ball bearing with diameter d is unacceptable if

$$|d - 0.8| \geq 0.001.$$

(b) Because

$$0.8 - 0.001 = 0.799 \quad \text{and} \quad 0.8 + .001 = 0.801,$$

the set of numbers d such that $|d - 0.8| \geq 0.001$ is

$$(-\infty, 0.799] \cup [0.801, \infty).$$

Equations involving absolute values must often be solved by considering multiple possibilities. Here is a simple example.

Example 9

Find all numbers t such that $|3t - 4| = 10$.

solution The equation $|3t - 4| = 10$ implies that

$$3t - 4 = 10 \quad \text{or} \quad 3t - 4 = -10.$$

Solving these equations for t gives $t = \frac{14}{3}$ or $t = -2$. Substituting these values for t back into the original equation shows that both $\frac{14}{3}$ and -2 are indeed solutions.

The next example illustrates the procedure for dealing with an inequality involving an absolute value.

Example 10

Find all numbers x such that $\left|\frac{3x - 5}{x - 1}\right| < 2$.

solution The inequality above is equivalent to

$$(*) \qquad -2 < \frac{3x - 5}{x - 1} < 2.$$

Finding solutions to equations or inequalities involving absolute values often requires considering various cases, as is done here.

First consider the case where $x - 1$ is positive; thus $x > 1$. Multiplying all three parts of the inequality above by $x - 1$ gives

$$2 - 2x < 3x - 5 < 2x - 2.$$

Writing the conditions above as two separate inequalities, we have

$$2 - 2x < 3x - 5 \quad \text{and} \quad 3x - 5 < 2x - 2.$$

German mathematician Karl Weierstrass (1815–1897), pictured above, introduced the modern notation $|b|$ to denote the absolute value of b.

The first inequality above is equivalent to the inequality $7 < 5x$, or equivalently $\frac{7}{5} < x$. The second inequality above is equivalent to the inequality $x < 3$. Thus the two inequalities above are equivalent to the inequalities

$$\frac{7}{5} < x < 3,$$

which is equivalent to the statement that x is in the interval $\left(\frac{7}{5}, 3\right)$. We have been working under the assumption that $x > 1$, which is indeed the case for all x in the interval $\left(\frac{7}{5}, 3\right)$.

Now consider the case where $x - 1$ is negative; thus $x < 1$. Multiplying all three parts of $(*)$ by $x - 1$ (and reversing the direction of the inequalities) gives

$$2 - 2x > 3x - 5 > 2x - 2.$$

Writing the conditions above as two separate inequalities, we have

$$2 - 2x > 3x - 5 \quad \text{and} \quad 3x - 5 > 2x - 2.$$

Adding $-2x$ and then 5 to the second inequality gives $x > 3$, which is inconsistent with our assumption that $x < 1$. Hence under the assumption that $x < 1$, there are no values of x satisfying this inequality.

Thus the original inequality holds if and only if x is in the interval $\left(\frac{7}{5}, 3\right)$.

Exercises

1 Evaluate $|-4|+|4|$.

2 Evaluate $|5|+|-6|$.

3 Find all numbers with absolute value 9.

4 Find all numbers with absolute value 10.

In Exercises 5–18, find all numbers x satisfying the given equation.

5 $|2x-6|=11$

6 $|5x+8|=19$

7 $\left|\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right|=2$

8 $\left|\frac{3x+2}{x-4}\right|=5$

9 $|x-3|+|x-4|=9$

10 $|x+1|+|x-2|=7$

11 $|x-3|+|x-4|=1$

12 $|x+1|+|x-2|=3$

13 $|x-3|+|x-4|=\frac{1}{2}$

14 $|x+1|+|x-2|=2$

15 $|x+3|=x+3$

16 $|x-5|=5-x$

17 $|x|=x+1$

18 $|x+3|=x+5$

In Exercises 19–28, write each union as a single interval.

19 $[2,7)\cup[5,20)$

20 $[-8,-3)\cup[-6,-1)$

21 $[-2,8]\cup(-1,4)$

22 $(-9,-2)\cup[-7,-5]$

23 $(3,\infty)\cup[2,8]$

24 $(-\infty,4)\cup(-2,6]$

25 $(-\infty,-3)\cup[-5,\infty)$

26 $(-\infty,-6]\cup(-8,12)$

27 $(-3,\infty)\cup[-5,\infty)$

28 $(-\infty,-10]\cup(-\infty,-8]$

29 Give four examples of pairs of real numbers a and b such that $|a+b|=2$ and $|a|+|b|=8$.

30 Give four examples of pairs of real numbers a and b such that $|a+b|=3$ and $|a|+|b|=11$.

31 A medicine is known to decompose and become ineffective if its temperature ever reaches 103 degrees Fahrenheit or more. Write an interval to represent the temperatures (in degrees Fahrenheit) at which the medicine is ineffective.

32 At normal atmospheric pressure, water boils at all temperatures of 100 degrees Celsius and higher. Write an interval to represent the temperatures (in degrees Celsius) at which water boils.

33 A shoelace manufacturer guarantees that its 33-inch shoelaces will be 33 inches long, with an error of at most 0.1 inch.

(a) Write an inequality using absolute values and the length s of a shoelace that gives the condition that the shoelace does not meet the guarantee.

(b) Write the set of numbers satisfying the inequality in part (a) as a union of two intervals.

34 A copying machine works with paper that is 8.5 inches wide, provided that the error in the paper width is less than 0.06 inch.

(a) Write an inequality using absolute values and the width w of the paper that gives the condition that the paper's width fails the requirements of the copying machine.

(b) Write the set of numbers satisfying the inequality in part (a) as a union of two intervals.

In Exercises 35–46, write each set as an interval or as a union of two intervals.

35 $\{x:|x-4|<\frac{1}{10}\}$

36 $\{x:|x+2|<\frac{1}{100}\}$

37 $\{x:|x+4|<\frac{\varepsilon}{2}\}$; here $\varepsilon>0$
[*Mathematicians often use the Greek letter ε, which is called* **epsilon**, *to denote a small positive number.*]

38 $\{x:|x-2|<\frac{\varepsilon}{3}\}$; here $\varepsilon>0$

39 $\{y:|y-a|<\varepsilon\}$; here $\varepsilon>0$

40 $\{y:|y+b|<\varepsilon\}$; here $\varepsilon>0$

41 $\{x:|3x-2|<\frac{1}{4}\}$

42 $\{x:|4x-3|<\frac{1}{5}\}$

43 $\{x:|x|>2\}$

44 $\{x:|x|>9\}$

45 $\{x:|x-5|\geq 3\}$

46 $\{x:|x+6|\geq 2\}$

The* intersection *of two sets of numbers consists of all numbers that are in both sets. If A and B are sets, then their intersection is denoted by $A\cap B$. In Exercises 47–56, write each intersection as a single interval.

47 $[2,7)\cap[5,20)$

48 $[-8,-3)\cap[-6,-1)$

49 $[-2,8]\cap(-1,4)$

50 $(-9,-2)\cap[-7,-5]$

51 $(3,\infty)\cap[2,8]$

52 $(-\infty,4)\cap(-2,6]$

53 $(-\infty,-3)\cap[-5,\infty)$

54 $(-\infty,-6]\cap(-8,12)$

55 $(-3,\infty)\cap[-5,\infty)$

56 $(-\infty,-10]\cap(-\infty,-8]$

In Exercises 57–62, find all numbers x satisfying the given inequality.

57 $\dfrac{2x+1}{x-3}<4$

58 $\dfrac{x-2}{3x+1}<2$

59 $\dfrac{x}{x-1}\geq 3$

60 $\dfrac{x+1}{2x}\geq 5$

61 $\left|\dfrac{5x-3}{x+2}\right|<1$

62 $\left|\dfrac{4x+1}{x+3}\right|<2$

Problems

63 Suppose a and b are numbers. Explain why either $a < b$, $a = b$, or $a > b$.

64 Show that if $a < b$ and $c \leq d$, then $a + c < b + d$.

65 Show that if b is a positive number and $a < b$, then

$$\frac{a}{b} < \frac{a+1}{b+1}.$$

66 In contrast to Problem 66 in Section 0.2, show that there do not exist positive numbers a, b, c, and d such that

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{a+c}{b+d}.$$

67 Explain why every open interval containing 0 contains an open interval centered at 0.

68 Give an example of an open interval and a closed interval whose union equals the interval $(2,5)$.

69 (a) True or false:

$$\text{If } a < b \text{ and } c < d, \text{ then } c - b < d - a.$$

(b) Explain your answer to part (a). This means that if the answer to part (a) is "true", then you should explain why $c - b < d - a$ whenever $a < b$ and $c < d$; if the answer to part (a) is "false", then you should give an example of numbers a, b, c, and d such that $a < b$ and $c < d$ but $c - b \geq d - a$.

70 (a) True or false:

$$\text{If } a < b \text{ and } c < d, \text{ then } ac < bd.$$

(b) Explain your answer to part (a). This means that if the answer to part (a) is "true", then you should explain why $ac < bd$ whenever $a < b$ and $c < d$; if the answer to part (a) is "false", then you should give an example of numbers a, b, c, and d such that $a < b$ and $c < d$ but $ac \geq bd$.

71 (a) True or false:

$$\text{If } 0 < a < b \text{ and } 0 < c < d, \text{ then } \frac{a}{d} < \frac{b}{c}.$$

(b) Explain your answer to part (a). This means that if the answer to part (a) is "true", then you should explain why $\frac{a}{d} < \frac{b}{c}$ whenever $0 < a < b$ and $0 < c < d$; if the answer to part (a) is "false", then you should give an example of numbers a, b, c, and d such that $0 < a < b$ and $0 < c < d$ but

$$\frac{a}{d} \geq \frac{b}{c}.$$

72 Give an example of an open interval and a closed interval whose intersection equals the interval $(2,5)$.

73 Give an example of an open interval and a closed interval whose union equals the interval $[-3,7]$.

74 Give an example of an open interval and a closed interval whose intersection equals the interval $[-3,7]$.

75 Explain why the equation

$$|8x - 3| = -2$$

has no solutions.

76 Explain why

$$|a^2| = a^2$$

for every real number a.

77 Explain why

$$|ab| = |a||b|$$

for all real numbers a and b.

78 Explain why

$$|-a| = |a|$$

for all real numbers a.

79 Explain why

$$\left|\frac{a}{b}\right| = \frac{|a|}{|b|}$$

for all real numbers a and b (with $b \neq 0$).

80 Give an example of a set of real numbers such that the average of any two numbers in the set is in the set, but the set is not an interval.

81 (a) Show that if $a \geq 0$ and $b \geq 0$, then $|a + b| = |a| + |b|$.

(b) Show that if $a \geq 0$ and $b < 0$, then $|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$.

(c) Show that if $a < 0$ and $b \geq 0$, then $|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$.

(d) Show that if $a < 0$ and $b < 0$, then $|a + b| = |a| + |b|$.

(e) Explain why the previous four items imply that

$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$$

for all real numbers a and b.

82 Show that if a and b are real numbers such that

$$|a + b| < |a| + |b|,$$

then $ab < 0$.

83 Show that

$$\Big||a| - |b|\Big| \leq |a - b|$$

for all real numbers a and b.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Evaluate $|-4|+|4|$.

solution $|-4|+|4| = 4+4 = 8$

3 Find all numbers with absolute value 9.

solution The only numbers whose absolute value equals 9 are 9 and -9.

In Exercises 5–18, find all numbers x satisfying the given equation.

5 $|2x-6| = 11$

solution The equation $|2x-6| = 11$ implies that $2x-6 = 11$ or $2x-6 = -11$. Solving these equations for x gives $x = \frac{17}{2}$ or $x = -\frac{5}{2}$.

7 $\left|\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right| = 2$

solution The equation $\left|\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right| = 2$ implies that $\frac{x+1}{x-1} = 2$ or $\frac{x+1}{x-1} = -2$. Solving these equations for x gives $x = 3$ or $x = \frac{1}{3}$.

9 $|x-3|+|x-4| = 9$

solution First, consider numbers x such that $x > 4$. In this case, we have $x-3 > 0$ and $x-4 > 0$, which implies that $|x-3| = x-3$ and $|x-4| = x-4$. Thus the original equation becomes

$$x-3+x-4 = 9,$$

which can be rewritten as $2x-7 = 9$, which can easily be solved to yield $x = 8$. Substituting 8 for x in the original equation shows that $x = 8$ is indeed a solution (make sure you do this check).

Second, consider numbers x such that $x < 3$. In this case, we have $x-3 < 0$ and $x-4 < 0$, which implies that $|x-3| = 3-x$ and $|x-4| = 4-x$. Thus the original equation becomes

$$3-x+4-x = 9,$$

which can be rewritten as $7-2x = 9$, which can easily be solved to yield $x = -1$. Substituting -1 for x in the original equation shows that $x = -1$ is indeed a solution (make sure you do this check).

Third, we need to consider the only remaining possibility, which is that $3 \le x \le 4$. In this case, we have $x-3 \ge 0$ and $x-4 \le 0$, which implies that $|x-3| = x-3$ and $|x-4| = 4-x$. Thus the original equation becomes

$$x-3+4-x = 9,$$

which can be rewritten as $1 = 9$, which holds for no values of x.

Thus we can conclude that 8 and -1 are the only values of x that satisfy the original equation.

11 $|x-3|+|x-4| = 1$

solution If $x > 4$, then the distance from x to 3 is bigger than 1, and thus $|x-3| > 1$ and thus $|x-3|+|x-4| > 1$. Hence there are no solutions to the equation above with $x > 4$.

If $x < 3$, then the distance from x to 4 is bigger than 1, and thus $|x-4| > 1$ and thus $|x-3|+|x-4| > 1$. Hence there are no solutions to the equation above with $x < 3$.

The only remaining possibility is that $3 \le x \le 4$. In this case, we have $x-3 \ge 0$ and $x-4 \le 0$, which implies that $|x-3| = x-3$ and $|x-4| = 4-x$, which implies that

$$|x-3|+|x-4| = (x-3)+(4-x) = 1.$$

Thus the set of numbers x such that $|x-3|+|x-4| = 1$ is the interval $[3,4]$.

13 $|x-3|+|x-4| = \frac{1}{2}$

solution As we saw in the solution to Exercise 11, if $x > 4$ or $x < 3$, then $|x-3|+|x-4| > 1$, and in particular $|x-3|+|x-4| \ne \frac{1}{2}$.

We also saw in the solution to Exercise 11 that if $3 \le x \le 4$, then $|x-3|+|x-4| = 1$, and in particular $|x-3|+|x-4| \ne \frac{1}{2}$.

Thus there are no numbers x such that $|x-3|+|x-4| = \frac{1}{2}$.

15 $|x+3| = x+3$

solution Note that $|x+3| = x+3$ if and only if $x+3 \ge 0$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x \ge -3$. Thus the set of numbers x such that $|x+3| = x+3$ is the interval $[-3,\infty)$.

17 $|x| = x+1$

solution If $x \ge 0$, then $|x| = x$ and the equation above becomes the equation $x = x+1$, which has no solutions.

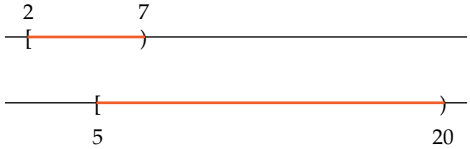
If $x < 0$, then $|x| = -x$ and the equation above becomes the equation $-x = x+1$, which has the solution $x = -\frac{1}{2}$. Substituting $-\frac{1}{2}$ for x in the equation above shows that $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ is indeed a solution to the equation.

Thus the only number x satisfying $|x| = x+1$ is $-\frac{1}{2}$.

In Exercises 19–28, write each union as a single interval.

19 $[2,7) \cup [5,20)$

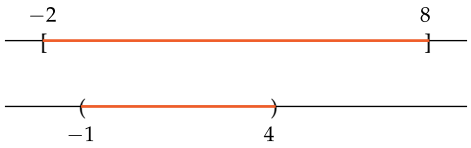
solution The first interval is $\{x : 2 \le x < 7\}$, which includes the left endpoint 2 but does not include the right endpoint 7. The second interval is $\{x : 5 \le x < 20\}$, which includes the left endpoint 5 but does not include the right endpoint 20. The set of numbers in at least one of these sets equals $\{x : 2 \le x < 20\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $[2,7) \cup [5,20) = [2,20)$.

21 $[-2,8] \cup (-1,4)$

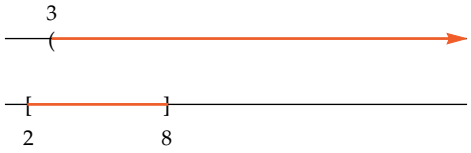
solution The first interval $[-2, 8]$ is the set $\{x : -2 \le x \le 8\}$, which includes both endpoints. The second interval is $\{x : -1 < x < 4\}$, which does not include either endpoint. The set of numbers in at least one of these sets equals $\{x : -2 \le x \le 8\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $[-2, 8] \cup (-1, 4) = [-2, 8]$.

23 $(3, \infty) \cup [2, 8]$

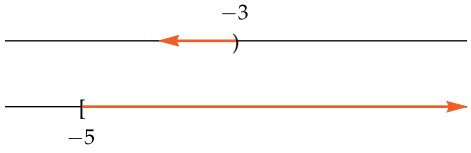
solution The first interval is $\{x : 3 < x\}$, which does not include the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The second interval is $\{x : 2 \le x \le 8\}$, which includes both endpoints. The set of numbers in at least one of these sets equals $\{x : 2 \le x\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $(3, \infty) \cup [2, 8] = [2, \infty)$.

25 $(-\infty, -3) \cup [-5, \infty)$

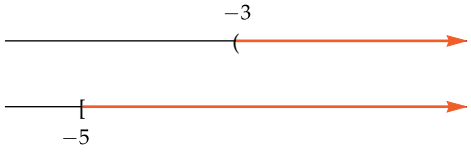
solution The first interval is $\{x : x < -3\}$, which has no left endpoint and which does not include the right endpoint. The second interval is $\{x : -5 \le x\}$, which includes the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The set of numbers in at least one of these sets equals the entire real line, as can be seen below:



Thus $(-\infty, -3) \cup [-5, \infty) = (-\infty, \infty)$.

27 $(-3, \infty) \cup [-5, \infty)$

solution The first interval is $\{x : -3 < x\}$, which does not include the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The second interval is $\{x : -5 \le x\}$, which includes the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The set of numbers that are in at least one of these sets equals $\{x : -5 \le x\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $(-3, \infty) \cup [-5, \infty) = [-5, \infty)$.

29 Give four examples of pairs of real numbers a and b such that $|a + b| = 2$ and $|a| + |b| = 8$.

solution First consider the case where $a \ge 0$ and $b \ge 0$. In this case, we have $a + b \ge 0$. Thus the equations above become

$$a + b = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a + b = 8.$$

There are no solutions to the simultaneous equations above, because $a + b$ cannot simultaneously equal both 2 and 8.

Next consider the case where $a < 0$ and $b < 0$. In this case, we have $a + b < 0$. Thus the equations above become

$$-a - b = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad -a - b = 8.$$

There are no solutions to the simultaneous equations above, because $-a - b$ cannot simultaneously equal both 2 and 8.

Now consider the case where $a \ge 0$, $b < 0$, and $a + b \ge 0$. In this case the equations above become

$$a + b = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a - b = 8.$$

Solving these equations for a and b, we get $a = 5$ and $b = -3$.

Now consider the case where $a \ge 0$, $b < 0$, and $a + b < 0$. In this case the equations above become

$$-a - b = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a - b = 8.$$

Solving these equations for a and b, we get $a = 3$ and $b = -5$.

Now consider the case where $a < 0$, $b \ge 0$, and $a + b \ge 0$. In this case the equations above become

$$a + b = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad -a + b = 8.$$

Solving these equations for a and b, we get $a = -3$ and $b = 5$.

Now consider the case where $a < 0$, $b \ge 0$, and $a + b < 0$. In this case the equations above become

$$-a - b = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad -a + b = 8.$$

Solving these equations for a and b, we get $a = -5$ and $b = 3$.

At this point, we have considered all possible cases. Thus the only solutions are $a = 5$, $b = -3$, or $a = 3$, $b = -5$, or $a = -3$, $b = 5$, or $a = -5$, $b = 3$.

31 A medicine is known to decompose and become ineffective if its temperature ever reaches 103 degrees Fahrenheit or more. Write an interval to represent the temperatures (in degrees Fahrenheit) at which the medicine is ineffective.

solution The medicine is ineffective at all temperatures of 103 degrees Fahrenheit or greater, which corresponds to the interval $[103, \infty)$.

33 A shoelace manufacturer guarantees that its 33-inch shoelaces will be 33 inches long, with an error of at most 0.1 inch.

(a) Write an inequality using absolute values and the length s of a shoelace that gives the condition that the shoelace does not meet the guarantee.

(b) Write the set of numbers satisfying the inequality in part (a) as a union of two intervals.

solution

(a) The error in shoelace length is $|s-33|$. Thus a shoelace with length s does not meet the guarantee if $|s-33|>0.1$.

(b) Because $33-0.1=32.9$ and $33+0.1=33.1$, the set of numbers s such that $|s-33|>0.1$ is $(-\infty,32.9)\cup(33.1,\infty)$.

In Exercises 35–46, write each set as an interval or as a union of two intervals.

35 $\{x:|x-4|<\frac{1}{10}\}$

solution The inequality $|x-4|<\frac{1}{10}$ is equivalent to the inequality

$$-\frac{1}{10}<x-4<\frac{1}{10}.$$

Add 4 to all parts of this inequality, getting

$$4-\frac{1}{10}<x<4+\frac{1}{10},$$

which is the same as

$$\frac{39}{10}<x<\frac{41}{10}.$$

Thus $\{x:|x-4|<\frac{1}{10}\}=(\frac{39}{10},\frac{41}{10})$.

37 $\{x:|x+4|<\frac{\varepsilon}{2}\}$; here $\varepsilon>0$

solution The inequality $|x+4|<\frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ is equivalent to the inequality

$$-\frac{\varepsilon}{2}<x+4<\frac{\varepsilon}{2}.$$

Add -4 to all parts of this inequality, getting

$$-4-\frac{\varepsilon}{2}<x<-4+\frac{\varepsilon}{2}.$$

Thus $\{x:|x+4|<\frac{\varepsilon}{2}\}=(-4-\frac{\varepsilon}{2},-4+\frac{\varepsilon}{2})$.

39 $\{y:|y-a|<\varepsilon\}$; here $\varepsilon>0$

solution The inequality $|y-a|<\varepsilon$ is equivalent to the inequality $-\varepsilon<y-a<\varepsilon$. Add a to all parts of this inequality, getting

$$a-\varepsilon<y<a+\varepsilon.$$

Thus $\{y:|y-a|<\varepsilon\}=(a-\varepsilon,a+\varepsilon)$.

41 $\{x:|3x-2|<\frac{1}{4}\}$

solution The inequality $|3x-2|<\frac{1}{4}$ is equivalent to the inequality $-\frac{1}{4}<3x-2<\frac{1}{4}$. Add 2 to all parts of this inequality, getting

$$\frac{7}{4}<3x<\frac{9}{4}.$$

Now divide all parts of this inequality by 3, getting

$$\frac{7}{12}<x<\frac{3}{4}.$$

Thus $\{x:|3x-2|<\frac{1}{4}\}=(\frac{7}{12},\frac{3}{4})$.

43 $\{x:|x|>2\}$

solution The inequality $|x|>2$ means that $x>2$ or $x<-2$. Thus $\{x:|x|>2\}=(-\infty,-2)\cup(2,\infty)$.

45 $\{x:|x-5|\geq 3\}$

solution The inequality $|x-5|\geq 3$ means that $x-5\geq 3$ or $x-5\leq -3$. Adding 5 to both sides of these equalities shows that $x\geq 8$ or $x\leq 2$. Thus $\{x:|x-5|\geq 3\}=(-\infty,2]\cup[8,\infty)$.

The* intersection *of two sets of numbers consists of all numbers that are in both sets. If A and B are sets, then their intersection is denoted by $A\cap B$. In Exercises 47–56, write each intersection as a single interval.

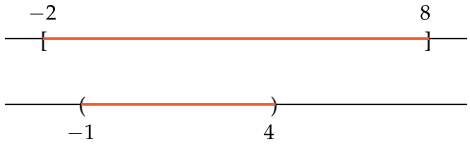
47 $[2,7)\cap[5,20)$

solution The first interval is the set $\{x:2\leq x<7\}$, which includes the left endpoint 2 but does not include the right endpoint 7. The second interval is the set $\{x:5\leq x<20\}$, which includes the left endpoint 5 but does not include the right endpoint 20. The set of numbers that are in both these sets equals $\{x:5\leq x<7\}$, as can be seen below:

Thus $[2,7)\cap[5,20)=[5,7)$.

49 $[-2,8]\cap(-1,4)$

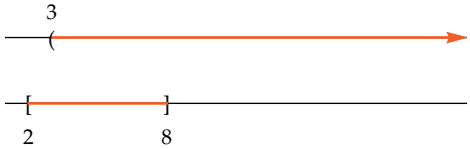
solution The first interval is the set $\{x:-2\leq x\leq 8\}$, which includes both endpoints. The second interval is the set $\{x:-1<x<4\}$, which includes neither endpoint. The set of numbers that are in both these sets equals $\{x:-1<x<4\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $[-2,8]\cap(-1,4)=(-1,4)$.

51 $(3,\infty)\cap[2,8]$

solution The first interval is $\{x:3<x\}$, which does not include the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The second interval is $\{x:2\leq x\leq 8\}$, which includes both endpoints. The set of numbers in both sets equals $\{x:3<x\leq 8\}$, as can be seen below:

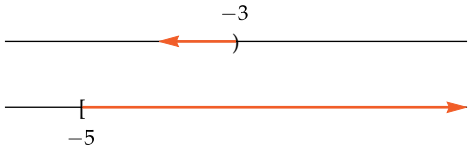


Thus $(3,\infty)\cap[2,8]=(3,8]$.

53 $(-\infty,-3)\cap[-5,\infty)$

solution The first interval is $\{x:x<-3\}$, which has no left endpoint and which does not include the right endpoint. The second interval is $\{x:-5\leq x\}$,

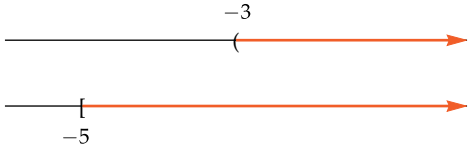
which includes the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The set of numbers in both sets equals $\{x : -5 \le x < -3\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $(-\infty, -3) \cap [-5, \infty) = [-5, -3)$.

55 $(-3, \infty) \cap [-5, \infty)$

solution The first interval is $\{x : -3 < x\}$, which does not include the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The second interval is $\{x : -5 \le x\}$, which includes the left endpoint and which has no right endpoint. The set of numbers in both sets equals $\{x : -3 < x\}$, as can be seen below:



Thus $(-3, \infty) \cap [-5, \infty) = (-3, \infty)$.

In Exercises 57–62, find all numbers x satisfying the given inequality.

57 $\dfrac{2x+1}{x-3} < 4$

solution First consider the case where $x - 3$ is positive; thus $x > 3$. Multiplying both sides of the inequality above by $x - 3$ then gives the equivalent inequality

$$2x + 1 < 4x - 12.$$

Subtracting $2x$ from both sides and then adding 12 to both sides gives the equivalent inequality $13 < 2x$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x > \frac{13}{2}$. If $x > \frac{13}{2}$, then $x > 3$, which is the case under consideration. Thus the original inequality holds if $x > \frac{13}{2}$.

Now consider the case where $x - 3$ is negative; thus $x < 3$. Multiplying both sides of the original inequality above by $x - 3$ (and reversing the direction of the inequality) then gives the equivalent inequality

$$2x + 1 > 4x - 12.$$

Subtracting $2x$ from both sides and then adding 12 to both sides gives the equivalent inequality $13 > 2x$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x < \frac{13}{2}$. We have been working under the assumption that $x < 3$. Because $3 < \frac{13}{2}$, we see that in this case the original inequality holds if $x < 3$.

Conclusion: The inequality above holds if $x < 3$ or $x > \frac{13}{2}$; in other words, the inequality holds for x in $(-\infty, 3) \cup (\frac{13}{2}, \infty)$.

59 $\dfrac{x}{x-1} \ge 3$

solution First consider the case where $x - 1 > 0$; thus $x > 1$. Multiplying both sides of the inequality above by $x - 1$ then gives the equivalent inequality

$$x \ge 3x - 3.$$

Subtracting x from both sides and then adding 3 to both sides gives the equivalent inequality $3 \ge 2x$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x \le \frac{3}{2}$. We have been working under the assumption that $x > 1$. Thus we see that in this case the original inequality holds if $1 < x \le \frac{3}{2}$.

Now consider the case where $x - 1 < 0$; thus $x < 1$. Multiplying both sides of the original inequality above by $x - 1$ (and reversing the direction of the inequality) then gives the equivalent inequality

$$x \le 3x - 3.$$

Subtracting x from both sides and then adding 3 to both sides gives the equivalent inequality $3 \le 2x$, which is equivalent to the inequality $x \ge \frac{3}{2}$, which cannot be satisfied by any x in this case where $x < 1$.

Conclusion: The inequality above holds if $1 < x \le \frac{3}{2}$; in other words, the inequality holds for all x in $(1, \frac{3}{2}]$.

61 $\left|\dfrac{5x-3}{x+2}\right| < 1$

solution The inequality above is equivalent to

$$(*) \qquad -1 < \frac{5x-3}{x+2} < 1.$$

First consider the case where $x + 2$ is positive; thus $x > -2$. Multiplying all three parts of the inequality above by $x + 2$ gives

$$-x - 2 < 5x - 3 < x + 2.$$

Writing the conditions above as two separate inequalities, we have

$$-x - 2 < 5x - 3 \quad \text{and} \quad 5x - 3 < x + 2.$$

Adding x and then 3 to both sides of the first inequality above gives $1 < 6x$, or equivalently $\frac{1}{6} < x$. Adding $-x$ and then 3 to both sides of the second inequality above gives $4x < 5$, or equivalently $x < \frac{5}{4}$. Thus the two inequalities above are equivalent to the inequalities $\frac{1}{6} < x < \frac{5}{4}$, which is equivalent to the statement that x is in the interval $(\frac{1}{6}, \frac{5}{4})$. We have been working under the assumption that $x > -2$, which is indeed the case for all x in the interval $(\frac{1}{6}, \frac{5}{4})$.

Now consider the case where $x + 2$ is negative; thus $x < -2$. Multiplying all three parts of $(*)$ by $x + 2$ (and reversing the direction of the inequalities) gives

$$-x - 2 > 5x - 3 > x + 2.$$

Writing the conditions above as two separate inequalities, we have

$$-x - 2 > 5x - 3 \quad \text{and} \quad 5x - 3 > x + 2.$$

Adding $-x$ and then 3 to the second inequality gives $4x > 5$, or equivalently $x > \frac{5}{4}$, which is inconsistent with our assumption that $x < -2$. Thus under the assumption that $x < -2$, there are no values of x satisfying this inequality.

Conclusion: The original inequality holds for all numbers x in the interval $(\frac{1}{6}, \frac{5}{4})$.

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Explain the correspondence between the system of real numbers and the real line.
- Simplify algebraic expressions using commutative, associative, and distributive properties.
- List the order of algebraic operations.
- Explain how parentheses are used to alter the order of algebraic operations.
- Use the identities involving additive inverses and multiplicative inverses.
- Manipulate inequalities.
- Use interval notation for open intervals, closed intervals, and half-open intervals.
- Use interval notation involving $-\infty$ and ∞, with the understanding that $-\infty$ and ∞ are not real numbers.
- Write inequalities involving an absolute value without using an absolute value.
- Compute the union of intervals.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Explain how the points on the real line correspond to the set of real numbers.

2 Show that $7 - 6\sqrt{2}$ is an irrational number.

3 What is the commutative property for addition?

4 What is the commutative property for multiplication?

5 What is the associative property for addition?

6 What is the associative property for multiplication?

7 Expand $(t + w)^2$.

8 Expand $(u - v)^2$.

9 Expand $(x - y)(x + y)$.

10 Expand $(a + b)(x - y - z)$.

11 Expand $(a + b - c)^2$.

12 Simplify the expression $\dfrac{\frac{1}{t-b} - \frac{1}{t}}{b}$.

13 Simplify the expression $\dfrac{\frac{1}{(x+h)^2} - \frac{1}{x^2}}{h}$.

14 Find all real numbers x such that $|3x - 4| = 5$.

15 Give an example of two numbers x and y such that $|x + y|$ does not equal $|x| + |y|$.

16 Suppose $0 < a < b$ and $0 < c < d$. Explain why $ac < bd$.

17 Write the set $\{t : |t - 3| < \frac{1}{4}\}$ as an interval.

18 Write the set $\{w : |5w + 2| < \frac{1}{3}\}$ as an interval.

19 Explain why the sets $\{x : |8x - 5| < 2\}$ and $\{t : |5 - 8t| < 2\}$ are the same set.

20 Write $[-5, 6) \cup [-1, 9)$ as an interval.

21 Write $(-\infty, 4] \cup (3, 8]$ as an interval.

22 Find two different intervals whose union is the interval $(1, 4]$.

23 Explain why $[7, \infty]$ is not an interval of real numbers.

24 Write the set $\{t : |2t + 7| \geq 5\}$ as a union of two intervals.

25 Suppose you put \$5.21 into a jar on June 22. Then you added one penny to the jar every day until the jar contained \$5.95. Is the set $\{5.21, 5.22, 5.23, \ldots, 5.95\}$ of all amounts of money (measured in dollars) that were in the jar during the summer an interval? Explain your answer.

26 Is the set of all real numbers x such that $x^2 > 3$ an interval? Explain your answer.

27 Find all numbers x such that $\left|\dfrac{x - 3}{3x + 2}\right| < 2$.

Chapter
1

René Descartes explaining his work to Queen Christina of Sweden. In 1637 Descartes published his invention of the coordinate system described in this chapter.

Functions and Their Graphs

Functions lie at the heart of modern mathematics. This chapter begins by introducing the notion of a function, along with its domain and range.

By combining algebra and geometry, analytic geometry provides a tremendously powerful tool for visualizing functions. Thus we discuss the coordinate plane, which can be thought of as a two-dimensional analogue of the real line. Although functions are algebraic objects, often we can understand a function better by viewing its graph in the coordinate plane.

The third section of this chapter shows how algebraic transformations of a function change its domain, range, and graph.

The fourth section of this chapter deals with the composition of functions, which allows us to write complicated functions in terms of simpler functions. This idea has applications throughout wide areas of mathematics.

Inverse functions and their graphs become the center of attention in the last two sections of this chapter. Inverse functions will be key tools later in our treatment of roots, logarithms, and inverse trigonometric functions.

1.1 Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- evaluate functions defined by formulas;
- determine when two functions are equal;
- determine the domain of a function;
- determine the range of a function;
- use functions defined by tables.

Definition and Examples

Although we do not need to do so in this book, functions can be defined more generally to deal with objects other than real numbers.

Function and domain

A **function** associates every number in some set of real numbers, called the **domain** of the function, with exactly one real number.

We usually denote functions by letters such as f, g, and h. If f is a function and x is a number in the domain of f, then the number that f associates with x is denoted by $f(x)$ and is called the value of f at x.

Often (although not always) a function is defined by a single formula, as in the next example.

Example 1

Suppose a function f is defined by the formula

$$f(x) = x^2$$

for every real number x. Evaluate each of the following:

(a) $f(3)$

(b) $f\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)$

(c) $f(1+t)$

(d) $f\left(\frac{x-5}{\pi}\right)$

The use of informal language when discussing functions is acceptable if the meaning is clear. For example, a textbook or your instructor might refer to "the function x^2" or "the function $f(x) = x^2$". Both these phrases are shorthand for the more formally correct "the function f defined by $f(x) = x^2$".

solution Here the domain of f is the set of real numbers, and f is the function that associates every real number with its square. To evaluate f at any number, we simply square that number, as shown by the solutions below.

(a) $f(3) = 3^2 = 9$

(b) $f\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}$

(c) $f(1+t) = (1+t)^2 = 1 + 2t + t^2$

(d) $f\left(\frac{x-5}{\pi}\right) = \left(\frac{x-5}{\pi}\right)^2 = \frac{x^2-10x+25}{\pi^2}$

A function need not be defined by a single algebraic expression, as shown by the following example.

Example 2

The U.S. 2016 federal income tax for a single person with taxable income x dollars (this is the net income after allowable deductions and exemptions) is $g(x)$ dollars, where g is the function defined by federal law as follows:

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 0.1x & \text{if } 0 \le x \le 9275 \\ 0.15x - 463.75 & \text{if } 9275 < x \le 37650 \\ 0.25x - 4228.75 & \text{if } 37650 < x \le 91150 \\ 0.28x - 6963.25 & \text{if } 91150 < x \le 190150 \\ 0.33x - 16470.75 & \text{if } 190150 < x \le 413350 \\ 0.35x - 24737.75 & \text{if } 413350 < x \le 415050 \\ 0.396x - 43830.05 & \text{if } 415050 < x. \end{cases}$$

This function changes each year, depending upon inflation and changes in the law.

What was the 2016 federal income tax for a single person whose taxable income that year was

(a) \$25,000?

(b) \$50,000?

solution

(a) Because 25000 is between 9275 and 37650, use the second line of the definition of g:

$$\begin{aligned} g(25000) &= 0.15 \times 25000 - 463.75 \\ &= 3286.25. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the 2016 federal income tax for a single person with \$25,000 taxable income that year was \$3,286.25.

(b) Because 50000 is between 37650 and 91150, use the third line of the definition of g:

$$\begin{aligned} g(50000) &= 0.25 \times 50000 - 4228.75 \\ &= 8271.25. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the 2016 federal income tax for a single person with \$50,000 taxable income that year was \$8,271.25.

The next example shows that using the flexibility offered by functions can be quicker than dealing with single algebraic expressions.

Example 3

Give an example of a function h whose domain is the set of real numbers and such that $h(1) = 10$, $h(3) = 2$, and $h(9) = 26$.

solution The function h could be defined as follows:

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} 10 & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 2 & \text{if } x = 3 \\ 26 & \text{if } x = 9 \\ 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is a real number other than 1, 3, or 9.} \end{cases}$$

The function h defined by

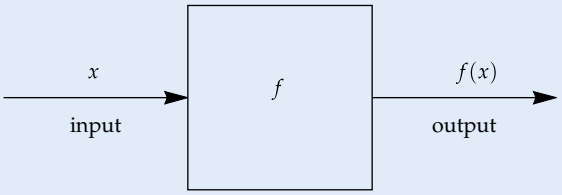
$$h(x) = x^2 - 8x + 17$$

for all real numbers x provides another correct solution (as you can verify). However, finding this algebraic expression requires serious effort.

You might sometimes find it useful to think of a function f as a machine:

Functions as machines

A function f can be visualized as a machine that takes an input x and produces an output $f(x)$.



This machine might work using a formula, or it might work more mysteriously, in which case it is sometimes called a "black box".

For example, suppose f is the function whose domain is the interval $[-4, 6]$, with f defined by the formula $f(x) = x^2$ for every x in the interval $[-4, 6]$. Then giving input 3 to this machine produces output 9. The same input must always produce the same output; thus inputting 3 to this machine at a later time must again produce the output 9. Although each input has just one output, a given output may arise from more than one input. For example, the inputs -3 and 3 both produce the output 9 for this function.

When thinking of a function as the machine pictured above, the domain of the function is the set of numbers that the machine accepts as allowable inputs.

What if the number 8 is input to the machine described in the paragraph above? Because 8 is not in the domain of this function f, the machine does not produce an output for this input; the machine should produce an error message stating that 8 is not an allowable input.

Here is what it means for two functions to be equal:

Equality of functions

Two functions are **equal** if and only if they have the same domain and the same value at every number in that domain.

Example 4

Suppose f is the function whose domain is the set of real numbers, with f defined on this domain by

$$f(x) = x^2.$$

Suppose g is the function whose domain is the set of positive numbers, with g defined on this domain by

$$g(x) = x^2.$$

Are f and g equal functions?

Two functions with different domains are not equal as functions, even if they are defined by the same formula.

solution Note that, for example, $f(-3) = 9$, but the expression $g(-3)$ makes no sense because $g(x)$ has not been defined when x is negative. Because f and g have different domains, these two functions are not equal.

The next example shows that considering only the formula defining a function can be deceptive.

Example 5

Suppose f and g are functions whose domain is the set consisting of the two numbers $\{1, 2\}$, with f and g defined on this domain by the formulas

$$f(x) = x^2 \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = 3x - 2.$$

Are f and g equal functions?

solution Here f and g have the same domain—the set $\{1,2\}$. Thus it is at least possible that f equals g. Because f and g have different formulas, the natural inclination is to assume f is not equal to g. However,

$$f(1) = 1^2 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad g(1) = 3 \cdot 1 - 2 = 1$$

and

$$f(2) = 2^2 = 4 \quad \text{and} \quad g(2) = 3 \cdot 2 - 2 = 4.$$

Thus

$$f(1) = g(1) \quad \text{and} \quad f(2) = g(2).$$

Because f and g have the same value at every number in their domain $\{1,2\}$, the functions f and g are equal.

Although the variable x is commonly used to denote the input for a function, other symbols can also be used.

Notation

The variable used for inputs when defining a function is irrelevant.

Example 6

Suppose f and g are functions whose domain is the set of real numbers, with f and g defined on this domain by the formulas

$$f(x) = 3 + x^2 \quad \text{and} \quad g(t) = 3 + t^2.$$

Are f and g equal functions?

The symbols x and t here are simply placeholders to indicate that f and g associate with any number 3 plus the square of that number.

solution Because f and g have the same domain and the same value at every number in that domain, f and g are equal functions.

Mathematical notation is sometime ambiguous, with proper interpretation depending upon the context. For example, consider the expression

$$y(x+2).$$

If y and x denote numbers, then the expression above equals $yx + 2y$. However, if y is a function, then the parentheses above do not indicate multiplication but instead indicate that the function y is evaluated at $x + 2$.

If f is a function, then the parentheses in

$$\frac{f(2x)}{f(x)}$$

do not indicate multiplication. Thus if f is a function, then neither f nor x can be canceled from the expression above.

The Domain of a Function

Although the domain of a function is a formal part of characterizing the function, often we are loose about the domain of a function. Usually the domain is clear from the context or from a formula defining a function. Use the following informal rule when the domain is not specified.

Domain not specified

If a function is defined by a formula, with no domain specified, then the domain is assumed to be the set of all real numbers for which the formula makes sense and produces a real number.

The next three examples illustrate this rule.

Example 7

Find the domain of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = (3x - 1)^2.$$

solution No domain has been specified, but the formula above makes sense for all real numbers x. Thus unless the context indicates otherwise, we assume the domain for this function is the set of real numbers.

The following example shows that avoiding division by 0 can determine the domain of a function.

Example 8

Here h is a function and $h(t)$ denotes the value of the function h at a number t.

Find the domain of the function h defined by

$$h(t) = \frac{t^2 + 3t + 7}{t - 4}.$$

solution No domain has been specified, but the formula above does not make sense when $t = 4$, which would lead to division by 0. Thus unless the context indicates otherwise, we assume the domain for this function is the set of real numbers that do not equal 4, which could be written as $(-\infty, 4) \cup (4, \infty)$.

The following example illustrates the requirement of the informal rule that the formula must produce a real number.

Example 9

Find the domain of the function g defined by

$$g(x) = \sqrt{|x| - 5}.$$

solution No domain has been specified, but the formula above produces a real number only for numbers x with absolute value greater than or equal to 5. Thus unless the context indicates otherwise, we assume the domain for this function is $(-\infty, -5] \cup [5, \infty)$.

The Range of a Function

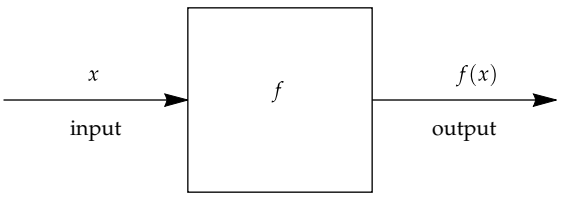
Another important set associated with a function, along with the domain, is the range. The range of a function is the set of all values taken on by the function.

Range

The **range** of a function f is the set of all numbers y such that $f(x) = y$ for at least one x in the domain of f.

Some books use the word **image** *instead of* **range**.

In other words, if we think of a function f as the machine below, then the range of f is the set of numbers that the machine produces as outputs (and the domain is the set of allowable inputs).



The set of inputs acceptable by this machine is the domain of f. The set of outputs is the range of f.

Example 10

Suppose the domain of f is the interval $[2,5]$, with f defined on this interval by the equation $f(x) = 3x + 1$.

(a) Is 10 in the range of f?

(b) Is 19 in the range of f?

(c) What is the range of f?

solution

(a) We need to determine whether $f(x) = 10$ for some x in the interval $[2,5]$, which is the domain of f. In other words, we need to determine whether the equation

$$3x + 1 = 10$$

has a solution x in the interval $[2,5]$. The only solution to the equation above is $x = 3$, which is in the interval $[2,5]$. Thus 10 is in the range of f.

(b) We need to determine whether $f(x) = 19$ for some x in the interval $[2,5]$, which is the domain of f. In other words, we need to determine whether the equation

$$3x + 1 = 19$$

has a solution x in the interval $[2,5]$. The only solution to the equation above is $x = 6$, which is not in the interval $[2,5]$. Thus 19 is not in the range of f.

(c) Suppose y is a real number. To decide whether y is in the range of f, we need to determine whether $f(x) = y$ for some x in the interval $[2,5]$. In other words, we need to determine whether the equation

$$3x + 1 = y$$

has a solution x in the interval $[2,5]$. The solution to the equation above is $x = \frac{y-1}{3}$. Thus we need to determine whether

$$2 \le \frac{y-1}{3} \le 5.$$

Multiplying all three parts of the inequality above by 3 and then adding 1 to all three parts gives the inequality $7 \le y \le 16$. Thus the range of f is the interval $[7,16]$.

In the next section, we will see a graphical interpretation of the range of a function.

For a number y to be in the range of a function f, there is no requirement that the equation $f(x) = y$ have just one solution x in the domain of f. The requirement is that there be at least one solution. The next example shows that multiple solutions can easily arise.

Example 11

Suppose the domain of g is the interval $[1,20]$, with g defined on this interval by the equation $g(x) = |x - 5|$. Is 2 in the range of g?

solution We need to determine whether the equation

$$|x - 5| = 2$$

has at least one solution x in the interval $[1,20]$. The equation above has two solutions, $x = 7$ and $x = 3$, both of which are in the domain of g. We have $g(7) = g(3) = 2$. Thus 2 is in the range of g.

This equation implies that $x - 5 = 2$ or $x - 5 = -2$.

Functions via Tables

If the domain of a function consists of only finitely many numbers, then all the values of the function can be listed in a table.

Example 12

The common format shown here uses a table with two columns. The left column shows each number in the domain of the function, and the right column shows the corresponding value of the function.

Describe the function f whose domain consists of the three numbers $\{2, 7, 13\}$ and whose values are given by the following table:

x	$f(x)$
2	3
7	$\sqrt{2}$
13	-4

solution For this function we have

$$f(2) = 3, \quad f(7) = \sqrt{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad f(13) = -4.$$

The equations above give a complete description of the function f.

Thinking about why the result below holds should be a good review of the concepts of domain and range.

All the values of a function can be listed in a table only when the function has only finitely many numbers in its domain.

Domain and range from a table

Suppose all the values of the function are listed in a table using the format from the example above. Then

- the domain of the function is the set of numbers that appear in the left column of the table;
- the range of the function is the set of numbers that appear in the right column of the table.

When describing a function by a table, there should be no repetitions in the left column, which shows the numbers in the domain of the function. However, repetitions can occur in the right column, which shows the numbers in the range of the function, as in the following example.

Example 13

Suppose f is the function completely determined by the table below.

x	$f(x)$
1	6
2	6
3	-7
5	6

For this function we have $f(1) = f(2) = f(5) = 6$ *and* $f(3) = -7$.

(a) What is the domain of f?

(b) What is the range of f?

solution

(a) The left column of the table contains the numbers 1, 2, 3, and 5. Thus the domain of f is the set $\{1, 2, 3, 5\}$.

(b) The right column of the table contains only two distinct numbers, 6 and -7. Thus the range of f is the set $\{6, -7\}$.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–12, assume

$$f(x) = \frac{x+2}{x^2+1}$$

for every real number x. Evaluate and simplify each of the following expressions.

1 $f(0)$
2 $f(1)$
3 $f(-1)$
4 $f(-2)$
5 $f(2a)$
6 $f(\frac{b}{3})$
7 $f(2a+1)$
8 $f(3a-1)$
9 $f(x^2+1)$
10 $f(2x^2+3)$
11 $f(\frac{a}{b}-1)$
12 $f(\frac{2a}{b}+3)$

For Exercises 13–18, assume

$$g(x) = \frac{x-1}{x+2}.$$

13 Find a number b such that $g(b) = 4$.

14 Find a number b such that $g(b) = 3$.

15 Simplify the expression

$$\frac{g(x)-g(2)}{x-2}.$$

16 Simplify the expression

$$\frac{g(x)-g(3)}{x-3}.$$

17 Simplify the expression

$$\frac{g(a+t)-g(a)}{t}.$$

18 Simplify the expression

$$\frac{g(x+b)-g(x-b)}{2b}.$$

For Exercises 19–26, assume f is the function defined by

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 2t+9 & \text{if } t < 0 \\ 3t-10 & \text{if } t \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

19 Evaluate $f(1)$.
20 Evaluate $f(2)$.
21 Evaluate $f(-3)$.
22 Evaluate $f(-4)$.
23 Evaluate $f(|x|+1)$.
24 Evaluate $f(|x-5|+2)$.

25 Find two different values of t such that $f(t) = 0$.

26 Find two different values of t such that $f(t) = 4$.

27 Using the tax function given in Example 2, find the 2016 federal income tax for a single person whose taxable income that year was \$60,000.

28 Using the tax function given in Example 2, find the 2016 federal income tax for a single person whose taxable income that year was \$120,000.

For Exercises 29–32, find a number b such that the function f equals the function g.

29 The function f has domain the set of positive numbers and is defined by $f(x) = 5x^2 - 7$; the function g has domain (b, ∞) and is defined by $g(x) = 5x^2 - 7$.

30 The function f has domain the set of numbers with absolute value less than 4 and is defined by $f(x) = \frac{3}{x+5}$; the function g has domain the interval $(-b, b)$ and is defined by $g(x) = \frac{3}{x+5}$.

31 Both f and g have domain $\{3, 5\}$, with f defined on this domain by the formula $f(x) = x^2 - 3$ and g defined on this domain by the formula $g(x) = \frac{18}{x} + b(x-3)$.

32 Both f and g have domain $\{-3, 4\}$, with f defined on this domain by the formula $f(x) = 3x + 5$ and g defined on this domain by the formula $g(x) = 15 + \frac{8}{x} + b(x-4)$.

For Exercises 33–38, a formula has been given defining a function f but no domain has been specified. Find the domain of each function f, assuming that the domain is the set of real numbers for which the formula makes sense and produces a real number.

33 $f(x) = \dfrac{2x+1}{3x-4}$
34 $f(x) = \dfrac{4x-9}{7x+5}$
35 $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x-5}}{x-7}$
36 $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{2x+3}}{x-6}$
37 $f(x) = \sqrt{|x-6|-1}$
38 $f(x) = \sqrt{|x+5|-3}$

39 Suppose the domain of F is the interval $[3, 7]$, with F defined on this domain by the equation $F(x) = -2x + 5$. Find the range of F.

40 Suppose the domain of G is the interval $[-2, 3]$, with G defined on this domain by the equation $G(x) = -4x - 6$. Find the range of G.

For Exercises 41–46, find the range of h if h is defined by

$$h(t) = |t| + 1$$

and the domain of h is the indicated set.

41 $(1, 4]$
42 $[-8, -3)$
43 $[-3, 5]$
44 $[-8, 2]$
45 $(0, \infty)$
46 $(-\infty, 0)$

For Exercises 47–54, assume f and g are functions completely defined by the following tables:

x	$f(x)$
3	13
4	-5
6	$\frac{3}{5}$
7.3	-5

x	$g(x)$
3	3
8	$\sqrt{7}$
8.4	$\sqrt{7}$
12.1	$-\frac{2}{7}$

47 Evaluate $f(6)$.

48 Evaluate $g(8)$.

49 What is the domain of f?

50 What is the domain of g?

51 What is the range of f?

52 What is the range of g?

53 Find two different values of x such that $f(x) = -5$.

54 Find two different values of x such that $g(x) = \sqrt{7}$.

55 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is the set $\{2, 9\}$ and whose range is the set $\{4, 6\}$.

56 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is the set $\{5, 8\}$ and whose range is the set $\{1, 3\}$.

57 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is $\{1, 2, 4\}$ and whose range is $\{-2, 1, \sqrt{3}\}$.

58 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is $\{-1, 0, \pi\}$ and whose range is $\{-3, \sqrt{2}, 5\}$.

59 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is $\{3, 5, 9\}$ and whose range is $\{2, 4\}$.

60 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is $\{0, 2, 8\}$ and whose range is $\{6, 9\}$.

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

61 Suppose the only information you know about a function f is that the domain of f is the set of real numbers and

$$f(1) = 1,\ f(2) = 4,\ f(3) = 9,\ \text{ and } f(4) = 16.$$

What can you say about the value of $f(5)$?
[*Hint:* The answer to this problem is not "25". The shortest correct answer is just one word.]

62 Suppose g and h are functions whose domain is the set of real numbers, with g and h defined on this domain by

$$g(y) = \frac{4y}{y^2 + 5} \quad \text{and} \quad h(r) = \frac{4r}{r^2 + 5}.$$

Are g and h equal functions? Explain.

63 Give an example of a function whose domain is $\{2, 5, 7\}$ and whose range is $\{-2, 3, 4\}$.

64 Give an example of a function whose domain is $\{3, 4, 7, 9\}$ and whose range is $\{-1, 0, 3\}$.

65 Find two different functions whose domain is $\{3, 8\}$ and whose range is $\{-4, 1\}$.

66 Explain why there does not exist a function whose domain is $\{-1, 0, 3\}$ and whose range is $\{3, 4, 7, 9\}$.

67 Give an example of a function f whose domain is the set of real numbers and such that the values of $f(-1)$, $f(0)$, and $f(2)$ are given by the following table:

x	$f(x)$
-1	$\sqrt{2}$
0	19
2	-5

68 Give an example of a function F whose domain is the interval $[0, 2]$ and such that $F(0) = 0$ and $F(2) = 2$ but 1 is not in the range of F.

69 Give an example of two different functions f and g, both of which have the set of real numbers as their domain, such that $f(x) = g(x)$ for every rational number x.

70 Give an example of a function whose domain equals the set of real numbers and whose range equals the set $\{-1, 0, 1\}$.

71 Give an example of a function whose domain equals the set of real numbers and whose range equals the set of integers.

72 Give an example of a function whose domain is the interval $[0, 1]$ and whose range is the interval $(0, 1)$.

73 Give an example of a function whose domain is the interval $(0, 1)$ and whose range is the interval $[0, 1]$.

74 Give an example of a function whose domain is the set of positive integers and whose range is the set of positive even integers.

75 Give an example of a function whose domain is the set of positive even integers and whose range is the set of positive odd integers.

76 Give an example of a function whose domain is the set of integers and whose range is the set of positive integers.

77 Give an example of a function whose domain is the set of positive integers and whose range is the set of integers.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

For Exercises 1–12, assume

$$f(x) = \frac{x + 2}{x^2 + 1}$$

for every real number x. Evaluate and simplify each of the following expressions.

1 $f(0)$

solution $f(0) = \frac{0+2}{0^2+1} = \frac{2}{1} = 2$

3 $f(-1)$

solution $f(-1) = \frac{-1+2}{(-1)^2+1} = \frac{1}{1+1} = \frac{1}{2}$

5 $f(2a)$

solution $f(2a) = \frac{2a+2}{(2a)^2+1} = \frac{2a+2}{4a^2+1}$

7 $f(2a+1)$

solution

$$f(2a+1) = \frac{(2a+1)+2}{(2a+1)^2+1} = \frac{2a+3}{4a^2+4a+2}$$

9 $f(x^2+1)$

solution

$$f(x^2+1) = \frac{(x^2+1)+2}{(x^2+1)^2+1} = \frac{x^2+3}{x^4+2x^2+2}$$

11 $f(\frac{a}{b}-1)$

solution We have

$$f(\frac{a}{b}-1) = \frac{(\frac{a}{b}-1)+2}{(\frac{a}{b}-1)^2+1} = \frac{\frac{a}{b}+1}{\frac{a^2}{b^2}-2\frac{a}{b}+2}$$

$$= \frac{ab+b^2}{a^2-2ab+2b^2},$$

where the last expression was obtained by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the previous expression by b^2.

For Exercises 13–18, assume

$$g(x) = \frac{x-1}{x+2}.$$

13 Find a number b such that $g(b) = 4$.

solution We want to find a number b such that

$$\frac{b-1}{b+2} = 4.$$

Multiply both sides of the equation above by $b+2$, getting

$$b-1 = 4b+8.$$

Now solve this equation for b, getting $b = -3$.

15 Simplify the expression

$$\frac{g(x)-g(2)}{x-2}.$$

solution We begin by evaluating the numerator:

$$g(x)-g(2) = \frac{x-1}{x+2} - \frac{1}{4}$$

$$= \frac{4(x-1)-(x+2)}{4(x+2)}$$

$$= \frac{4x-4-x-2}{4(x+2)}$$

$$= \frac{3x-6}{4(x+2)}$$

$$= \frac{3(x-2)}{4(x+2)}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{g(x)-g(2)}{x-2} = \frac{3(x-2)}{4(x+2)} \cdot \frac{1}{x-2}$$

$$= \frac{3}{4(x+2)}.$$

17 Simplify the expression

$$\frac{g(a+t)-g(a)}{t}.$$

solution We begin by computing the numerator:

$$g(a+t)-g(a)$$

$$= \frac{(a+t)-1}{(a+t)+2} - \frac{a-1}{a+2}$$

$$= \frac{(a+t-1)(a+2)-(a-1)(a+t+2)}{(a+t+2)(a+2)}$$

$$= \frac{3t}{(a+t+2)(a+2)}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{g(a+t)-g(a)}{t} = \frac{3}{(a+t+2)(a+2)}.$$

For Exercises 19–26, assume f is the function defined by

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 2t+9 & \text{if } t < 0 \\ 3t-10 & \text{if } t \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

19 Evaluate $f(1)$.

solution Because $1 \geq 0$, we have

$$f(1) = 3 \cdot 1 - 10 = -7.$$

21 Evaluate $f(-3)$.

solution Because $-3 < 0$, we have

$$f(-3) = 2(-3)+9 = 3.$$

23 Evaluate $f(|x|+1)$.

solution Because $|x|+1 \geq 1 > 0$, we have

$$f(|x|+1) = 3(|x|+1)-10 = 3|x|-7.$$

25 Find two different values of t such that $f(t) = 0$.

solution If $t < 0$, then $f(t) = 2t+9$. We want to find t such that $f(t) = 0$, which means that we need to solve the equation $2t+9 = 0$ and hope that the solution satisfies $t < 0$. Subtracting 9 from both sides of $2t+9 = 0$ and then dividing both sides by 2 gives $t = -\frac{9}{2}$. This value of t satisfies the inequality $t < 0$, and we do indeed have $f(-\frac{9}{2}) = 0$.

If $t \ge 0$, then $f(t) = 3t - 10$. We want to find t such that $f(t) = 0$, which means that we need to solve the equation $3t - 10 = 0$ and hope that the solution satisfies $t \ge 0$. Adding 10 to both sides of $3t - 10 = 0$ and then dividing both sides by 3 gives $t = \frac{10}{3}$. This value of t satisfies the inequality $t \ge 0$, and we do indeed have $f(\frac{10}{3}) = 0$.

27 Using the tax function given in Example 2, find the 2016 federal income tax for a single person whose taxable income that year was \$60,000.

solution Because 60000 is between 37650 and 91150, use the third line of the definition of g in Example 2:

$$g(60000) = 0.25 \times 60000 - 4228.75$$
$$= 10771.25.$$

Thus the 2016 federal income tax for a single person with \$60,000 taxable income that year was \$10,771.25.

For Exercises 29–32, find a number b such that the function f equals the function g.

29 The function f has domain the set of positive numbers and is defined by $f(x) = 5x^2 - 7$; the function g has domain (b, ∞) and is defined by $g(x) = 5x^2 - 7$.

solution For two functions to be equal, they must at least have the same domain. Because the domain of f is the set of positive numbers, which equals the interval $(0, \infty)$, we must have $b = 0$.

31 Both f and g have domain $\{3, 5\}$, with f defined on this domain by the formula $f(x) = x^2 - 3$ and g defined on this domain by the formula $g(x) = \frac{18}{x} + b(x - 3)$.

solution Note that

$$f(3) = 3^2 - 3 = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad f(5) = 5^2 - 3 = 22.$$

Also,

$$g(3) = \frac{18}{3} + b(3 - 3) = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad g(5) = \frac{18}{5} + 2b.$$

Thus regardless of the choice of b, we have $f(3) = g(3)$. To make the function f equal the function g, we must also have $f(5) = g(5)$, which means that we must have

$$22 = \frac{18}{5} + 2b.$$

Solving this equation for b, we get $b = \frac{46}{5}$.

For Exercises 33–38, a formula has been given defining a function f but no domain has been specified. Find the domain of each function f, assuming that the domain is the set of real numbers for which the formula makes sense and produces a real number.

33 $f(x) = \dfrac{2x + 1}{3x - 4}$

solution The formula above does not make sense when $3x - 4 = 0$, which would lead to division by 0. The equation $3x - 4 = 0$ is equivalent to $x = \frac{4}{3}$. Thus the domain of f is the set of real numbers not equal to $\frac{4}{3}$. In other words, the domain of f equals $(-\infty, \frac{4}{3}) \cup (\frac{4}{3}, \infty)$.

35 $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x - 5}}{x - 7}$

solution The formula above does not make sense when $x < 5$ because we cannot take the square root of a negative number. The formula above also does not make sense when $x = 7$, which would lead to division by 0. Thus the domain of f is the set of real numbers greater than or equal to 5 and not equal to 7. In other words, the domain of f equals $[5, 7) \cup (7, \infty)$.

37 $f(x) = \sqrt{|x - 6| - 1}$

solution Because we cannot take the square root of a negative number, we must have $|x - 6| - 1 \ge 0$. This inequality is equivalent to $|x - 6| \ge 1$, which means that $x - 6 \ge 1$ or $x - 6 \le -1$. Adding 6 to both sides of these inequalities, we see that the formula above makes sense only when $x \ge 7$ or $x \le 5$. In other words, the domain of f equals $(-\infty, 5] \cup [7, \infty)$.

39 Suppose the domain of F is the interval $[3, 7]$, with F defined on this domain by the equation $F(x) = -2x + 5$. Find the range of F.

solution Suppose y is a real number. To decide whether y is in the range of F, we need to determine whether $F(x) = y$ for some x in the interval $[3, 7]$. In other words, we need to determine whether the equation

$$-2x + 5 = y$$

has a solution x in the interval $[3, 7]$. The solution to the equation above is $x = \frac{5 - y}{2}$. Thus we need to determine whether

$$3 \le \frac{5 - y}{2} \le 7.$$

Multiplying all three parts of the inequality above by -2 (reversing directions of the inequality) and then adding 5 to all three parts gives the inequality $-1 \ge y \ge -9$. Thus the range of F is the interval $[-9, -1]$.

For Exercises 41–46, find the range of h if h is defined by

$$h(t) = |t| + 1$$

and the domain of h is the indicated set.

41 $(1, 4]$

solution For each number t in the interval $(1, 4]$, we have $h(t) = t + 1$. Thus the range of h is obtained by adding 1 to each number in the interval $(1, 4]$. This implies that the range of h is the interval $(2, 5]$.

43 $[-3, 5]$

solution For each number t in the interval $[-3, 0)$, we have $h(t) = -t + 1$, and for each number t in the interval $[0, 5]$ we have $h(t) = t + 1$. Thus the range of h consists of the numbers obtained by multiplying each number in the interval $[-3, 0)$ by -1 and then adding 1 (this produces the interval $(1, 4]$), along with the numbers obtained by adding 1 to each number in the interval $[0, 5]$ (this produces the interval $[1, 6]$). This implies that the range of h is the interval $[1, 6]$.

45 $(0, \infty)$

solution For each positive number t we have $h(t) = t + 1$. Thus the range of h is the set obtained by adding 1 to each positive number. Hence the range of h is the interval $(1, \infty)$.

For Exercises 47–54, assume f and g are functions completely defined by the following tables:

x	$f(x)$
3	13
4	-5
6	$\frac{3}{5}$
7.3	-5

x	$g(x)$
3	3
8	$\sqrt{7}$
8.4	$\sqrt{7}$
12.1	$-\frac{2}{7}$

47 Evaluate $f(6)$.

solution Looking at the table, we see that $f(6) = \frac{3}{5}$.

49 What is the domain of f?

solution The domain of f is the set of numbers in the first column of the table defining f. Thus the domain of f is the set $\{3, 4, 6, 7.3\}$.

51 What is the range of f?

solution The range of f is the set of numbers that appear in the second column of the table defining f. Numbers that appear more than once in the second column need to be listed only once when finding the range. Thus the range of f is the set $\{13, -5, \frac{3}{5}\}$.

53 Find two different values of x such that $f(x) = -5$.

solution Looking at the table, we see that $f(4) = -5$ and $f(7.3) = -5$.

55 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is the set $\{2, 9\}$ and whose range is the set $\{4, 6\}$.

solution Because we seek functions f whose domain is the set $\{2, 9\}$, the first column of the table for any such function must have 2 appear once and must have 9 appear once. In other words, the table must start like this:

x	$f(x)$
2	
9	

or this

x	$f(x)$
9	
2	

The order of the rows in a table that defines a function does not matter. For convenience, we choose the first possibility above.

Because the range must be the set $\{4, 6\}$, the second column must contain 4 and 6. There are only two slots in which to put these numbers in the first table above, and thus each one must appear exactly once in the second column. Thus there are only two functions whose domain is the set $\{2, 9\}$ and whose range is the set $\{4, 6\}$; these functions are given by the following two tables:

x	$f(x)$
2	4
9	6

x	$f(x)$
2	6
9	4

The first function above is the function f defined by $f(2) = 4$ and $f(9) = 6$; the second function above is the function f defined by $f(2) = 6$ and $f(9) = 4$.

57 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is $\{1, 2, 4\}$ and whose range is $\{-2, 1, \sqrt{3}\}$.

solution Because we seek functions f whose domain is $\{1, 2, 4\}$, the first column of the table for any such function must have 1 appear once, must have 2 appear once, and must have 4 appear once. The order of the rows in a table that defines a function does not matter. For convenience, we put the first column in numerical order 1, 2, 4.

Because the range must be $\{-2, 1, \sqrt{3}\}$, the second column must contain -2, 1, and $\sqrt{3}$. There are only three slots in which to put these three numbers, and thus each one must appear exactly once in the second column. There are six ways in which these three numbers can be ordered. Thus the six functions whose domain is $\{1, 2, 4\}$ and whose range is $\{-2, 1, \sqrt{3}\}$ are given by the following tables:

x	$f(x)$
1	-2
2	1
4	$\sqrt{3}$

x	$f(x)$
1	-2
2	$\sqrt{3}$
4	1

x	$f(x)$
1	1
2	-2
4	$\sqrt{3}$

x	$f(x)$
1	1
2	$\sqrt{3}$
4	-2

x	$f(x)$
1	$\sqrt{3}$
2	-2
4	1

x	$f(x)$
1	$\sqrt{3}$
2	1
4	-2

59 Find all functions (displayed as tables) whose domain is $\{3, 5, 9\}$ and whose range is $\{2, 4\}$.

solution Because we seek functions f whose domain is $\{3, 5, 9\}$, the first column of the table for any such function must have 3 appear once, must have 5 appear once, and must have 9 appear once. The order of the rows in a table that defines a function does not matter. For convenience, we put the first column in numerical order 3, 5, 9.

Because the range must be $\{2, 4\}$, the second column must contain 2 and 4. There are three slots in which to put these three numbers, and thus one of them must be repeated. There are six ways to do this. Thus the six functions whose domain is $\{3, 5, 9\}$ and whose range is $\{2, 4\}$ are given by the following tables:

x	$f(x)$
3	2
5	2
9	4

x	$f(x)$
3	2
5	4
9	2

x	$f(x)$
3	4
5	2
9	2

x	$f(x)$
3	4
5	4
9	2

x	$f(x)$
3	4
5	2
9	4

x	$f(x)$
3	2
5	4
9	4

1.2 The Coordinate Plane and Graphs

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

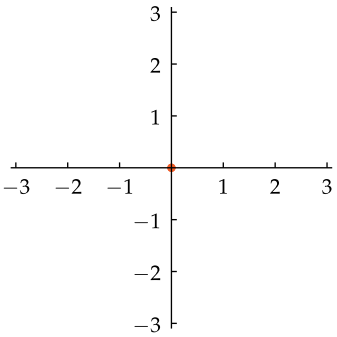
- locate points in the coordinate plane;
- sketch the graph of a function, possibly using technology;
- estimate values of a function from its graph;
- determine the domain of a function from its graph;
- determine the range of a function from its graph;
- use the vertical line test to determine whether or not a curve is the graph of some function.

The Coordinate Plane

The coordinate plane is constructed in a fashion similar to our construction of the real line (see Section 0.1). However, in constructing the coordinate plane we use a horizontal line and a vertical line rather than just a horizontal line.

The coordinate plane

- The **coordinate plane** is constructed by starting with a horizontal line and a vertical line in a plane. These lines are called the **coordinate axes**.
- The intersection point of the coordinate axes is called the **origin**; it receives a label of 0 on both axes.
- On the horizontal axis, pick a point to the right of the origin and label it 1. Then label other points on the horizontal axis using the scale determined by the origin and 1.
- Similarly, on the vertical axis, pick a point above the origin and label it 1. Then label other points on the vertical axis using the scale determined by the origin and 1.



The coordinate plane, with a dot at the origin.

The same scale has been used on both axes in the figure here. However, sometimes it is more convenient to have different scales on the two axes.

A point in the plane is identified with its coordinates. The coordinates are written as an ordered pair of numbers surrounded by parentheses, as described below.

Coordinates

- The first coordinate indicates the horizontal distance from the origin, with positive numbers corresponding to points right of the origin and negative numbers corresponding to points left of the origin.
- The second coordinate indicates the vertical distance from the origin, with positive numbers corresponding to points above the origin and negative numbers corresponding to points below the origin.

The plane with this system of labeling is often called the **Cartesian plane** *in honor of the French mathematician René Descartes (1596–1650), who described this technique in his 1637 book* Discourse on Method.

The coordinates of the origin are $(0, 0)$.

The coordinate axes divide the plane into four pieces, which are called **quadrants**. The next example shows one point in each of the four quadrants.

Example 1

Locate on a coordinate plane the following points:

(a) $(2,1)$; (b) $(-1,2.5)$; (c) $(-2.5,-2.5)$; (d) $(3,-2)$.

solution

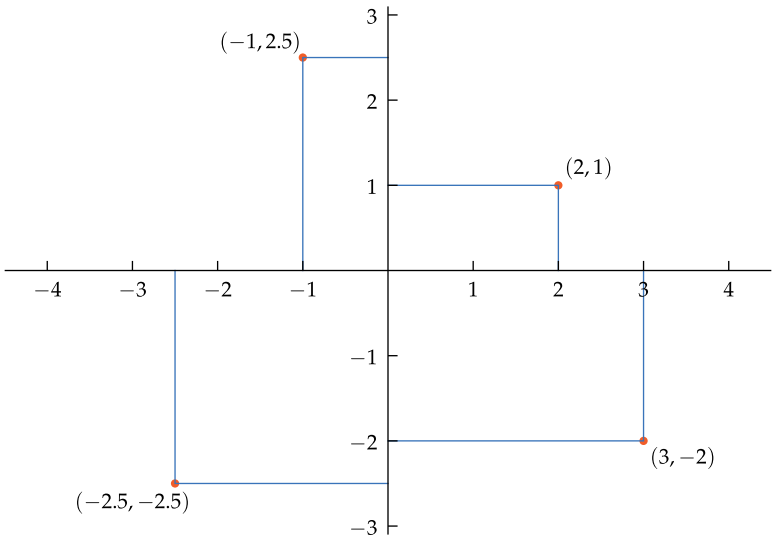
(a) The point $(2,1)$ can be located by starting at the origin, moving 2 units to the right along the horizontal axis, and then moving up 1 unit; see the figure below.

(b) The point $(-1,2.5)$ can be located by starting at the origin, moving 1 unit to the left along the horizontal axis, and then moving up 2.5 units; see the figure below.

The notation $(-1,2.5)$ could denote either the point with coordinates $(-1,2.5)$ or the open interval $(-1,2.5)$. You should be able to tell from the context which meaning is intended.

(c) The point $(-2.5,-2.5)$ can be located by starting at the origin, moving 2.5 units to the left along the horizontal axis, and then moving down 2.5 units; see the figure below.

(d) The point $(3,-2)$ can be located by starting at the origin, moving 3 units to the right along the horizontal axis, and then moving down 2 units; see the figure below.



These coordinates are sometimes called **rectangular coordinates** *because each point's coordinates are determined by a rectangle, as shown in this figure.*

The horizontal axis is often called the ***x*-axis** and the vertical axis is often called the ***y*-axis**. In this case, the coordinate plane can be called the ***xy*-plane**. However, other variables can also be used, depending on the problem at hand.

The terms **horizontal axis** *and* **vertical axis** *are often better than the terms* ***x*-axis** *and* ***y*-axis**.

If the horizontal axis has been labeled the x-axis, then the first coordinate of a point is often called the ***x*-coordinate**. Similarly, if the vertical axis has been labeled the y-axis, then the second coordinate is often called the ***y*-coordinate**.

The potential confusion of this terminology becomes apparent when we want to consider a point whose coordinates are (y,x); here y is the x-coordinate and x is the y-coordinate. Furthermore, always calling the first coordinate the x-coordinate will lead to confusion when the horizontal axis is labeled with another variable such as t or θ. Regardless of the names of the axes, keep in mind the following:

Similarly, the terms **first coordinate** *and* **second coordinate** *are often better than the terms* ***x*-coordinate** *and* ***y*-coordinate**.

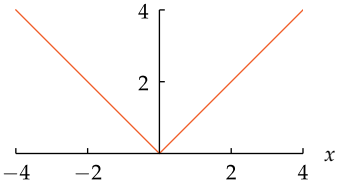
- The first coordinate corresponds to horizontal distance from the origin. A positive first coordinate indicates a point to the right of the origin; a negative first coordinate indicates a point to the left of the origin.
- The second coordinate corresponds to vertical distance from the origin. A positive second coordinate indicates a point above the origin; a negative second coordinate indicates a point below the origin.

The Graph of a Function

A function can be visualized by its graph, which we now define.

The graph of a function

The **graph** of a function f is the set of points of the form $(x, f(x))$ as x varies over the domain of f.



The graph of $|x|$ on the interval $[-4, 4]$.

Thus in the xy-plane, the graph of a function f is the set of points (x, y) satisfying the equation $y = f(x)$ with x in the domain of f.

The figure here shows the graph of the function f whose domain is $[-4, 4]$, with f defined by

$$f(x) = |x|.$$

The point $(-2, 2)$ is on this graph because -2 is in the domain of f and $f(-2) = 2$. Similarly, the origin $(0, 0)$ is on this graph because 0 is in the domain of f and $f(0) = 0$. Note that this graph has a corner at the origin.

In the next chapter we will learn how to graph linear and quadratic functions, so we will not take up those topics here.

Sketching the graph of a complicated function usually requires the aid of a computer or calculator. The next example uses *WolframAlpha* in the solution, but you could use a graphing calculator or any other technology instead.

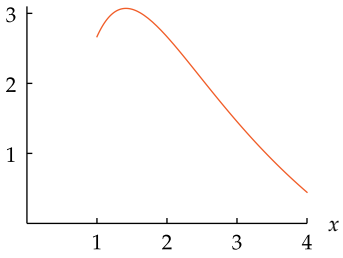
Example 2

Let f be the function defined by

$$f(x) = \frac{4(5x - x^2 - 2)}{x^2 + 2}.$$

(a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[1, 4]$.

(b) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-4, 4]$.



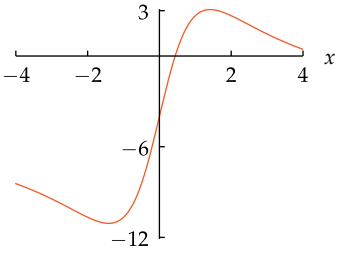
The graph of $\dfrac{4(5x - x^2 - 2)}{x^2 + 2}$ on the interval $[1, 4]$.

solution

(a) Point a web browser to www.wolframalpha.com. In the one-line entry box, type

graph 4(5x – x^2 – 2)/(x^2 + 2) from x=1 to 4

and then press the enter key on your keyboard or click the = box on the right side of the *WolframAlpha* entry box. This procedure produces a graph on your computer screen that should allow you to sketch a figure like the one shown here.



The graph of the same function $\dfrac{4(5x - x^2 - 2)}{x^2 + 2}$ on the interval $[-4, 4]$.

(b) In the *WolframAlpha* entry box from part (a), change 1 to –4, producing a graph like the one shown here.

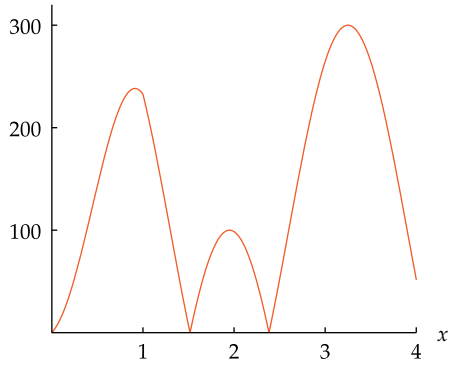
The horizontal and vertical axes have different scales in this graph. The graph would become too large in the vertical direction if the same scale was used on both axes.

Using different scales on the two axes makes the size of the graph more appropriate, but be aware that it changes the apparent shape of the curve. Specifically, the part of the graph on the interval $[1, 4]$ appears flatter in part (b) than the graph in part (a).

Sometimes the only information we have about a function is a sketch of its graph. The next example illustrates the procedure for finding approximate values of a function from a sketch of its graph.

Example 3

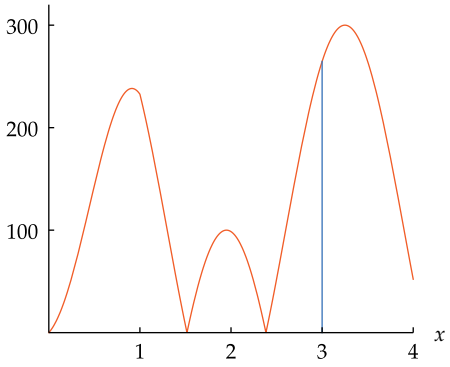
The web site for the 4-mile HillyView race shows the graph below of the function f, where $f(x)$ is the altitude in feet when the race path is x miles from the starting line. Estimate the altitude when the race path is three miles from the starting line.



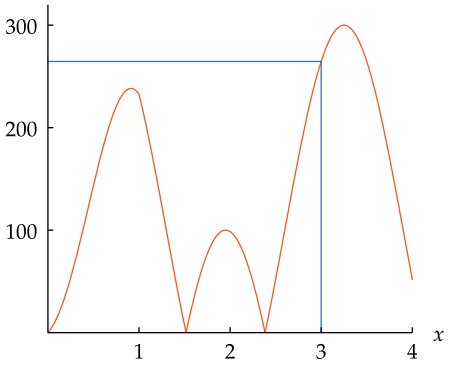
The graph of the function that gives altitude.

Here the scale on the horizontal axis is in miles, and the scale on the vertical axis is in feet.

solution We need to estimate the value of $f(3)$. To do this, draw a vertical line segment from the point 3 on the x-axis until it intersects the graph. The length of that line segment will equal $f(3)$, as shown below on the left.



The vertical line segment has length $f(3)$.



$f(3)$ is approximately 265.

This procedure gives only an estimate of the value of $f(3)$. You cannot find the intersection points exactly if the only information you have is a sketch of the graph.

Usually the easiest way to estimate the value of $f(3)$ is to draw the horizontal line shown above on the right. The point where this horizontal line intersects the vertical axis then gives the value of $f(3)$.

From the figure on the right, we see that $f(3)$ is a bit more than halfway between 200 and 300. Thus 265 is a good estimate of $f(3)$. In other words, the altitude is about 265 feet when the race path is three miles from the starting line.

The standard procedure that was used in the example above can be summarized as follows.

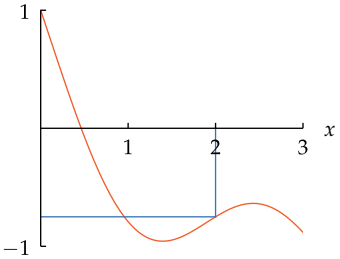
Finding values of a function from its graph

To evaluate $f(b)$ given only the graph of f in the xy-plane,

(a) find the point where the vertical line $x = b$ intersects the graph of f;

(b) draw a horizontal line from that point to the y-axis;

(c) the intersection of that horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $f(b)$.



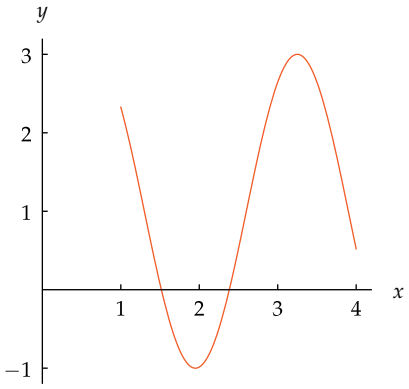
In this graph, we see that $f(2) \approx -0.8$. The vertical line $x = 2$ intersects the graph below the horizontal axis, and thus in this case $f(2)$ is the negative of the length of the vertical line segment.

Determining the Domain and Range from a Graph

The next example shows how the domain of a function can be determined from its graph.

Example 4

Suppose all we know about a function f is the sketch of its graph shown here.

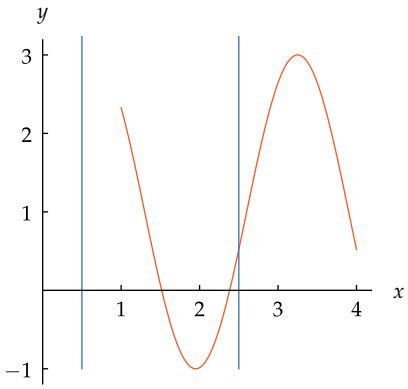


(a) Is 0.5 in the domain of f?

(b) Is 2.5 in the domain of f?

(c) Make a reasonable guess of the domain of f.

solution Recall that the graph of f consists of all points of the form $(b, f(b))$ as b varies over the domain of f. Thus the line $x = b$ in the xy-plane intersects the graph of f if and only if b is in the domain of f. The next figure, in addition to the graph of f, contains the lines $x = 0.5$ and $x = 2.5$.



The vertical lines that intersect the graph correspond to numbers in the domain.

Unlikely but possible: Perhaps a tiny hole in this graph, too small for us to see, implies that 2.5 is not in the domain of this function. Thus caution must be used when working with graphs.

(a) The figure above shows that the line $x = 0.5$ does not intersect the graph of f. Thus 0.5 is not in the domain of f.

(b) The line $x = 2.5$ does intersect the graph of f. Thus 2.5 is in the domain of f.

(c) A reasonable guess for the domain of f is the interval $[1, 4]$. The open interval $(1, 4)$ would also be a reasonable guess for the domain of f. A graph can give only a good approximation of the domain. The actual domain of f might be $[1, 4.001)$ or an even more unusual set such as all numbers in the interval $[1, 4]$ except $\sqrt{2}$ and 2.5; our eyes could not detect such subtle differences from a sketch of the graph.

Do not be afraid to draw reasonable conclusions that would be valid unless something weird is happening.

The technique used above can be summarized as follows.

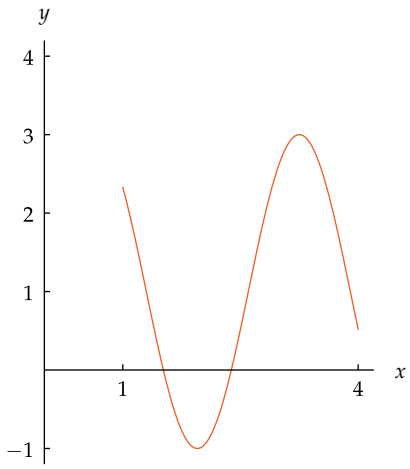
Determining the domain from the graph

A number b is in the domain of a function f if and only if the line $x = b$ in the xy-plane intersects the graph of f.

Recall that the range of a function is the set of all values taken on by the function. Thus the range of a function can be determined by the horizontal lines that intersect the graph of the function, as shown by the next example.

Example 5

Suppose f is the function with domain $[1,4]$ whose graph is shown here.



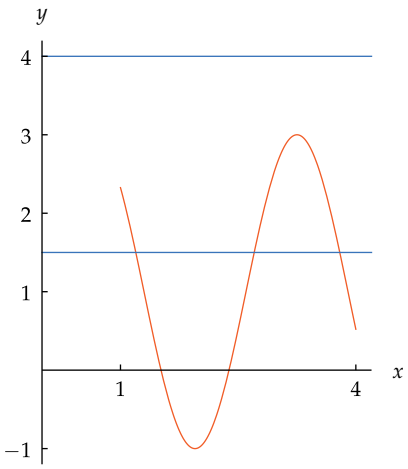
(a) Is 1.5 in the range of f?

(b) Is 4 in the range of f?

(c) Make a reasonable guess of the range of f.

solution

(a) The figure below shows that the line $y = 1.5$ intersects the graph of f in three points. Thus 1.5 is in the range of f.



Horizontal lines that intersect the graph of f correspond to numbers in the range of f. The lower blue line $y = 1.5$ intersects the graph; thus 1.5 is in the range of f. The upper blue line $y = 4$ does not intersect the graph; thus 1.5 is not in the range of f.

The lower blue line shows that the equation

$$f(x) = 1.5$$

has three solutions for x in the domain of f. We need one or more such solutions for 1.5 to be in the range of f.

(b) The figure above shows that the line $y = 4$ does not intersect the graph of f. In other words, the equation $f(x) = 4$ has no solutions for x in the domain of f. Thus 4 is not in the range of f.

(c) By drawing horizontal lines, we can see that the range of this function appears to be the interval $[-1,3]$.

The actual range of this function might be slightly different from the interval $[-1,3]$ given in the solution to part (c)—we would not be able to notice the difference from the sketch of the graph if the range actually equaled the interval $[-1.02, 3.001]$.

The technique used above can be summarized as follows.

Determining the range from the graph

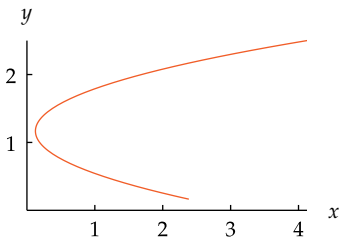
A number c is in the range of a function f if and only if the horizontal line $y = c$ in the xy-plane intersects the graph of f.

Which Sets Are Graphs of Functions?

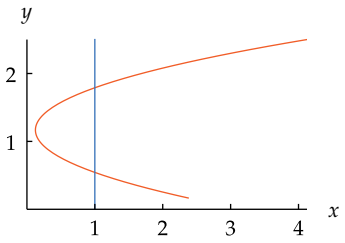
Not every curve in the plane is the graph of some function, as illustrated by the following example.

Example 6

Is this curve shown here the graph of some function?



solution If this curve were the graph of some function f, then we could find the value of $f(1)$ by seeing where the line $x = 1$ intersects the curve. However, the figure below shows that the line $x = 1$ intersects the curve at two points. The definition of a function requires that $f(1)$ be a single number, not a pair of numbers. Thus this curve is not the graph of any function.



The line $x = 1$ intersects the curve at two points. Thus this curve is not the graph of a function.

More generally, any set in the coordinate plane that intersects some vertical line in more than one point cannot be the graph of a function. Conversely, a set in the plane that intersects each vertical line in at most one point is the graph of some function f, with the values of f determined as in Example 3 and the domain of f determined as in Example 4.

The condition for a set in the coordinate plane to be the graph of some function can be summarized as follows.

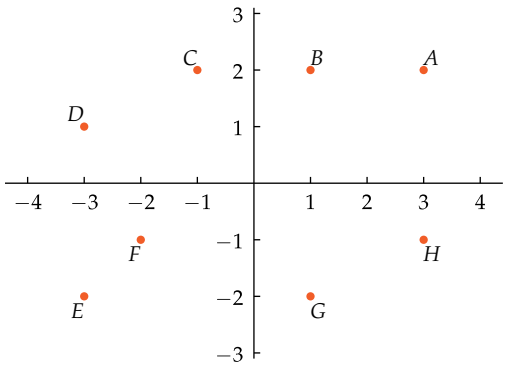
The vertical line test shows, for example, that no function has a graph that is a circle.

Vertical line test

A set of points in the coordinate plane is the graph of some function if and only if every vertical line intersects the set in at most one point.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–8, give the coordinates of the specified point using the figure below:



1 A **3** C **5** E **7** G

2 B **4** D **6** F **8** H

9 Sketch a coordinate plane showing the following four points, their coordinates, and the rectangles determined by each point (as in Example 1): $(1,2)$, $(-2,2)$, $(-3,-1)$, $(2,-3)$.

10 Sketch a coordinate plane showing the following four points, their coordinates, and the rectangles determined by each point (as in Example 1): $(2.5,1)$, $(-1,3)$, $(-1.5,-1.5)$, $(1,-3)$.

11 Suppose F is the function defined by $F(x) = x^2 + 5$. Find a number t such that $(3,t)$ is on the graph of F.

12 Suppose G is the function defined by $G(x) = 2x^2 - 3$. Find a number r such that $(5,r)$ is on the graph of G.

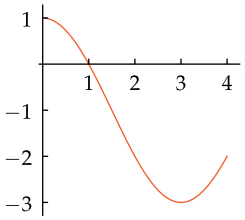
13 Suppose G is the function defined by $G(x) = 3x + 2$. Find a number r such that $(r,17)$ is on the graph of G.

14 Suppose F is the function defined by $F(x) = 5x - 3$. Find a number t such that $(t, -23)$ is on the graph of F.

15 Shown below is the graph of a function f.

(a) What is the domain of f?

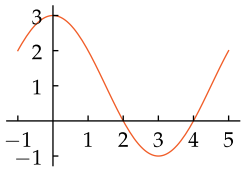
(b) What is the range of f?



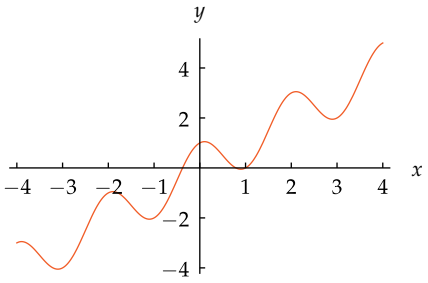
16 Shown below is the graph of a function f.

(a) What is the domain of f?

(b) What is the range of f?



For Exercises 17–28, assume f is the function with domain $[-4, 4]$ whose graph is shown below:



The graph of f.

17 Estimate the value of $f(-4)$.

18 Estimate the value of $f(-3)$.

19 Estimate the value of $f(-2)$.

20 Estimate the value of $f(-1)$.

21 Estimate the value of $f(2)$.

22 Estimate the value of $f(0)$.

23 Estimate the value of $f(4)$.

24 Estimate the value of $f(3)$.

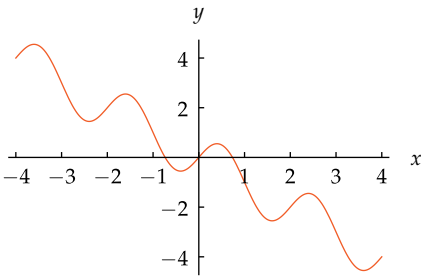
25 Estimate a number b such that $f(b) = 4$.

26 Estimate a negative number b such that $f(b) = 0.5$.

27 How many values of x satisfy the equation $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}$?

28 How many values of x satisfy the equation $f(x) = -3.5$?

For Exercises 29–40, assume g is the function with domain $[-4, 4]$ whose graph is shown below:



The graph of g.

29 Estimate the value of $g(-4)$.

30 Estimate the value of $g(-3)$.

31 Estimate the value of $g(-2)$.

32 Estimate the value of $g(-1)$.

33 Estimate the value of $g(2)$.

34 Estimate the value of $g(1)$.

35 Estimate the value of $g(2.5)$.

36 Estimate the value of $g(1.5)$.

37 Estimate a number b such that $g(b) = 3.5$.

38 Estimate a number b such that $g(b) = -3.5$.

39 How many values of x satisfy the equation $g(x) = -2$?

40 How many values of x satisfy the equation $g(x) = 0$?

For Exercises 41–44, use appropriate technology to sketch the graph of the function f defined by the given formula on the given interval.

41 $f(x) = 2x^3 - 9x^2 + 12x - 3$
on the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}]$

42 $f(x) = 0.6x^5 - 7.5x^4 + 35x^3 - 75x^2 + 72x - 20$
on the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{9}{2}]$

43 $f(t) = \dfrac{t^2 + 1}{t^5 + 2}$
on the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, 2]$

44 $f(t) = \dfrac{8t^3 - 5}{t^4 + 2}$
on the interval $[-1, 3]$

For Exercises 45–50, assume g and h are the functions completely defined by the tables below:

x	$g(x)$
−3	−1
−1	1
1	2.5
3	−2

x	$h(x)$
−4	2
−2	−3
2	−1.5
3	1

45 What is the domain of g?

46 What is the domain of h?

47 What is the range of g?

48 What is the range of h?

49 Draw the graph of g.

50 Draw the graph of h.

Problems

51 Sketch the graph of a function whose domain is the interval $[1,3]$ and whose range is the interval $[-2,4]$.

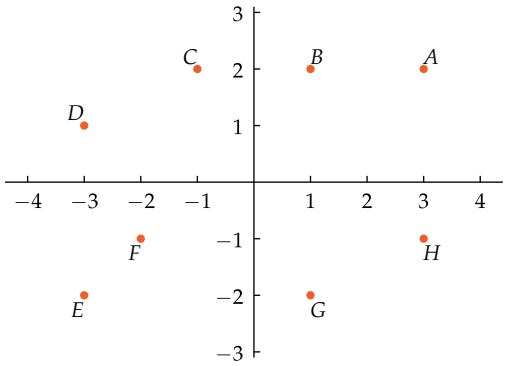
52 Sketch the graph of a function whose domain is the interval $[0,4]$ and whose range is the set of two numbers $\{2,3\}$.

53 Give an example of a line in the coordinate plane that is not the graph of any function.

54 Give an example of a set consisting of two points in the coordinate plane that is not the graph of any function.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–8, give the coordinates of the specified point using the figure below:



1 A

solution To get to the point A starting at the origin, we must move 3 units right and 2 units up. Thus A has coordinates $(3,2)$.

Numbers obtained from a figure should be considered approximations. Thus the actual coordinates of A might be $(3.01, 1.98)$.

3 C

solution To get to the point C starting at the origin, we must move 1 unit left and 2 units up. Thus C has coordinates $(-1,2)$.

5 E

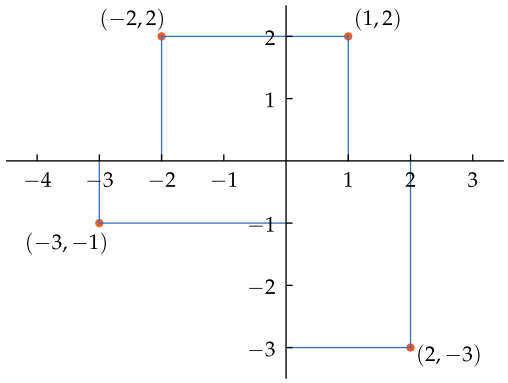
solution To get to the point E starting at the origin, we must move 3 units left and 2 units down. Thus E has coordinates $(-3,-2)$.

7 G

solution To get to the point G starting at the origin, we must move 1 unit right and 2 units down. Thus G has coordinates $(1,-2)$.

9 Sketch a coordinate plane showing the following four points, their coordinates, and the rectangles determined by each point (as in Example 1): $(1,2)$, $(-2,2)$, $(-3,-1)$, $(2,-3)$.

solution



11 Suppose F is the function defined by $F(x) = x^2 + 5$. Find a number t such that $(3,t)$ is on the graph of F.

solution Because $(3,t)$ is on the graph of F, we see that $t = F(3) = 3^2 + 5$. Thus $t = 14$.

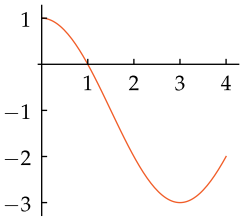
13 Suppose G is the function defined by $G(x) = 3x + 2$. Find a number r such that $(r,17)$ is on the graph of G.

solution Because $(r,17)$ is on the graph of G, we see that $17 = G(r) = 3r + 2$. Solving this equation for r, we have $r = 5$.

15 Shown below is the graph of a function f.

(a) What is the domain of f?

(b) What is the range of f?

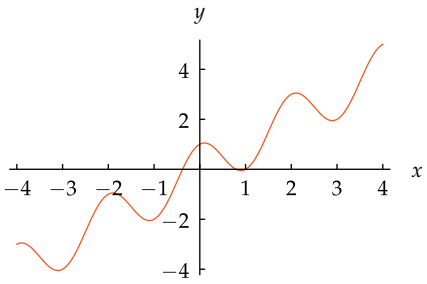


solution

(a) From the figure, it appears that the domain of f is $[0,4]$. The word "appears" is used here because a figure cannot provide precision. The actual domain of f might be $[0, 4.001]$ or $[0, 3.99]$ or $(0,4)$.

(b) From the figure, it appears that the range of f is $[-3,1]$.

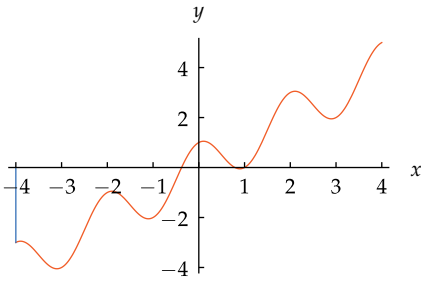
For Exercises 17–28, assume f is the function with domain $[-4,4]$ whose graph is shown below:



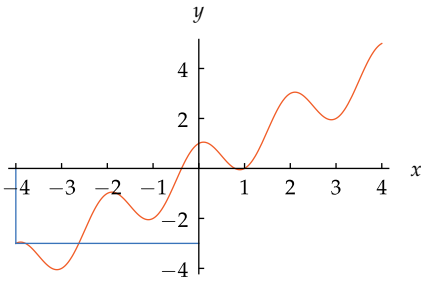
The graph of f.

17 Estimate the value of $f(-4)$.

solution To estimate the value of $f(-4)$, draw a vertical line from the point -4 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



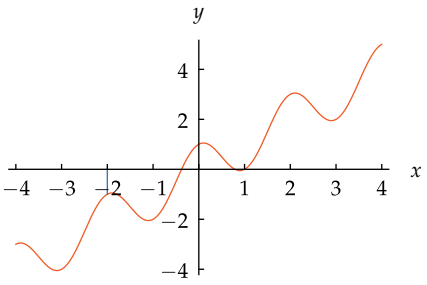
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



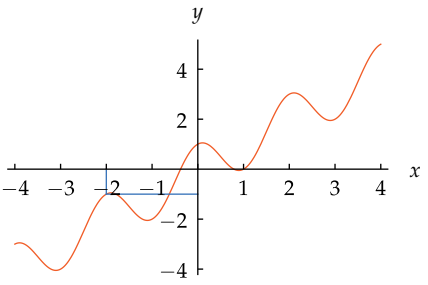
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $f(-4)$. Thus we see that $f(-4) \approx -3$ (the symbol $\approx$ means "is approximately", which is the best that can be done when using a graph).

19 Estimate the value of $f(-2)$.

solution To estimate the value of $f(-2)$, draw a vertical line from the point -2 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



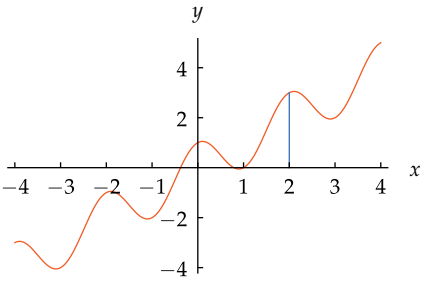
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



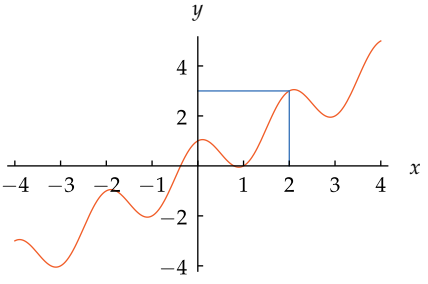
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $f(-2)$. Thus we see that $f(-2) \approx -1$.

21 Estimate the value of $f(2)$.

solution To estimate the value of $f(2)$, draw a vertical line from the point 2 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



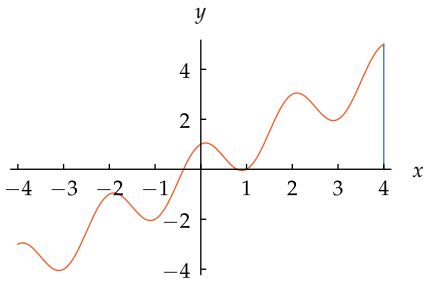
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



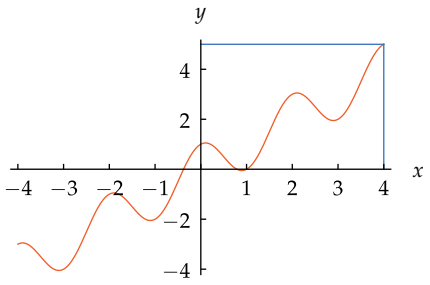
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $f(2)$. Thus we see that $f(2) \approx 3$.

23 Estimate the value of $f(4)$.

solution To estimate the value of $f(4)$, draw a vertical line from the point 4 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



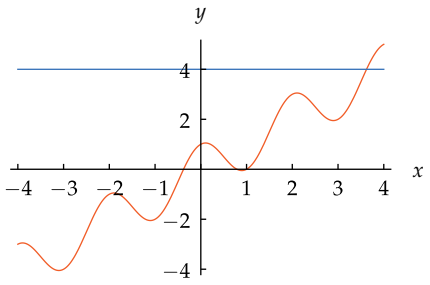
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



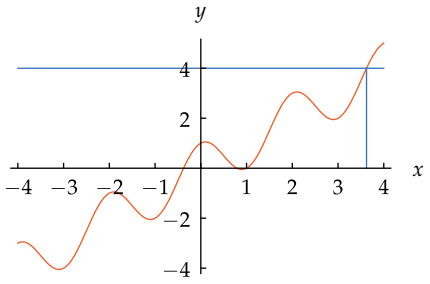
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $f(4)$. Thus we see that $f(4) \approx 5$.

25 Estimate a number b such that $f(b) = 4$.

solution Draw the horizontal line $y = 4$, as shown below:



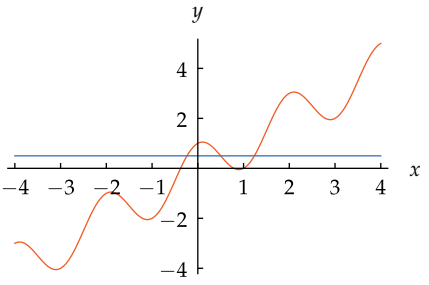
Then draw a vertical line from where this horizontal line intersects the graph to the x-axis:



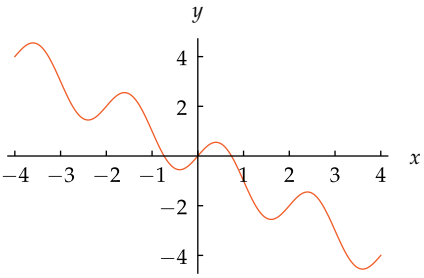
The intersection of the vertical line with the x-axis gives the value of b such that $f(b) = 4$. Thus we see that $b \approx 3.6$.

27 How many values of x satisfy the equation $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}$?

solution Draw the horizontal line $y = \frac{1}{2}$, as shown below. This horizontal line intersects the graph at three points. Thus there exist three values of x such that $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}$.



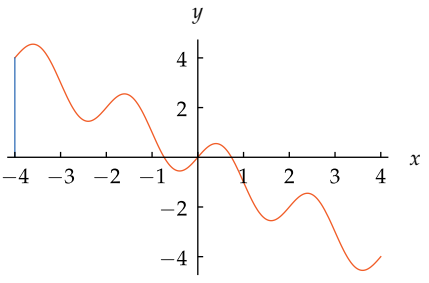
For Exercises 29–40, assume g is the function with domain $[-4, 4]$ whose graph is shown below:



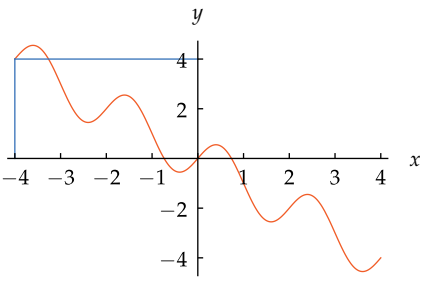
The graph of g.

29 Estimate the value of $g(-4)$.

solution To estimate the value of $g(-4)$, draw a vertical line from the point -4 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



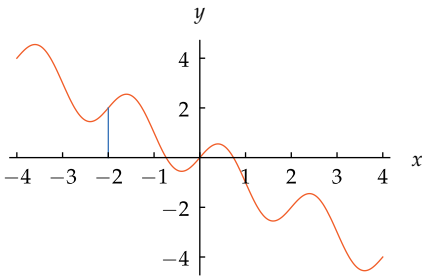
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



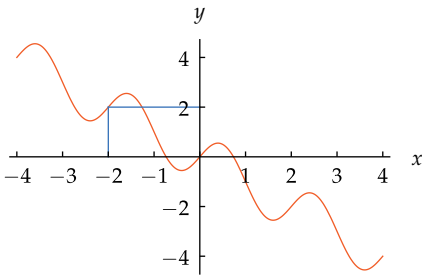
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $g(-4)$. Thus we see that $g(-4) \approx 4$.

31 Estimate the value of $g(-2)$.

solution To estimate the value of $g(-2)$, draw a vertical line from the point -2 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



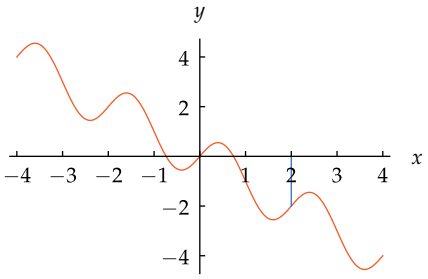
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



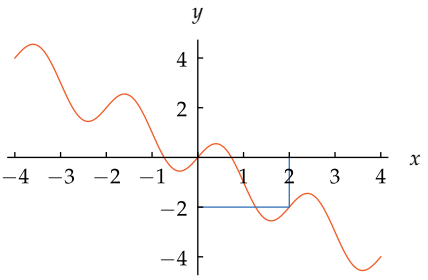
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $g(-2)$. Thus we see that $g(-2) \approx 2$.

33 Estimate the value of $g(2)$.

solution To estimate the value of $g(2)$, draw a vertical line from the point 2 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



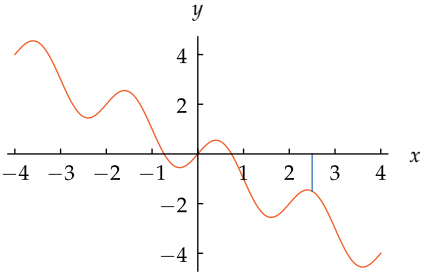
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



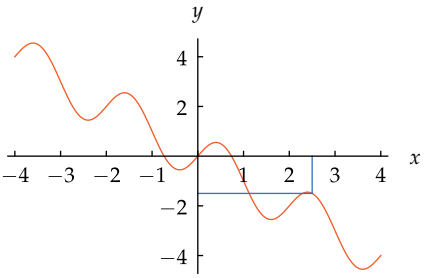
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $g(2)$. Thus $g(2) \approx -2$.

35 Estimate the value of $g(2.5)$.

solution To estimate the value of $g(2.5)$, draw a vertical line from the point 2.5 on the x-axis to the graph, as shown below:



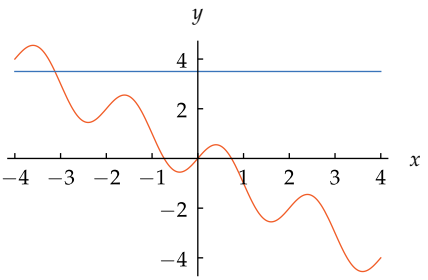
Then draw a horizontal line from where the vertical line intersects the graph to the y-axis:



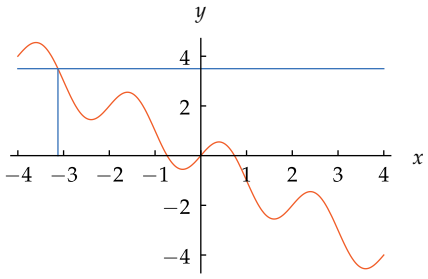
The intersection of the horizontal line with the y-axis gives the value of $g(2.5)$. Thus we see that $g(2.5) \approx -1.5$.

37 Estimate a number b such that $g(b) = 3.5$.

solution Draw the horizontal line $y = 3.5$, as shown below:



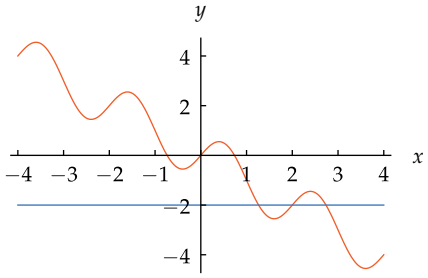
Then draw a vertical line from where this horizontal line intersects the graph to the x-axis:



The intersection of the vertical line with the x-axis gives the value of b such that $g(b) = 3.5$. Thus we see that $b \approx -3.1$.

39 How many values of x satisfy the equation $g(x) = -2$?

solution Draw the horizontal line $y = -2$, as shown here. This horizontal line intersects the graph at three points. Thus there exist three values of x such that $g(x) = -2$.



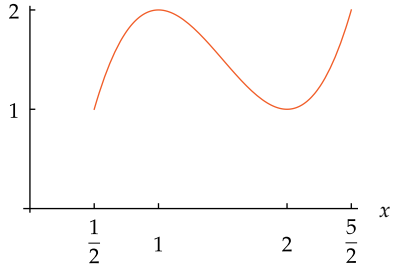
For Exercises 41–44, use appropriate technology to sketch the graph of the function f defined by the given formula on the given interval.

41 $f(x) = 2x^3 - 9x^2 + 12x - 3$
on the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}]$

solution If using *WolframAlpha*, type

graph 2x^3 – 9x^2 + 12x – 3 from x=1/2 to 5/2,

or use your preferred software or graphing calculator to produce a graph like the one below.

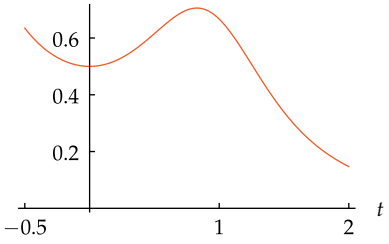


43 $f(t) = \dfrac{t^2 + 1}{t^5 + 2}$
on the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, 2]$

solution If using *WolframAlpha*, type

graph (t^2 + 1)/(t^5 + 2) from t=–1/2 to 2,

or use your preferred software or graphing calculator to produce a graph like the one here.



For Exercises 45–50, assume g and h are the functions completely defined by the tables below:

x	$g(x)$
−3	−1
−1	1
1	2.5
3	−2

x	$h(x)$
−4	2
−2	−3
2	−1.5
3	1

45 What is the domain of g?

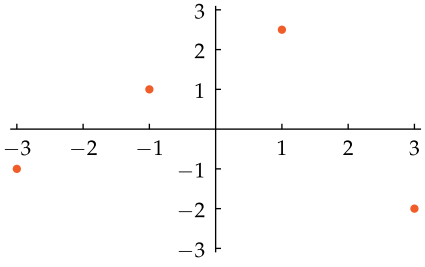
solution The domain of g is the set of numbers in the first column of the table defining g. Thus the domain of g is the set $\{-3, -1, 1, 3\}$.

47 What is the range of g?

solution The range of g is the set of numbers that appear in the second column of the table defining g. Thus the range of g is the set $\{-1, 1, 2.5, -2\}$.

49 Draw the graph of g.

solution The graph of g consists of the four points with coordinates $(-3, -1)$, $(-1, 1)$, $(1, 2.5)$, $(3, -2)$, as shown below:



1.3 Function Transformations and Graphs

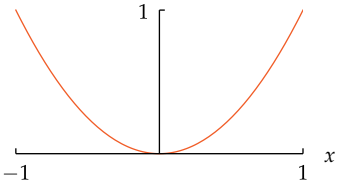
Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- use the vertical function transformations, which shift a graph up or down, stretch a graph vertically, or flip a graph across the horizontal axis;
- use the horizontal function transformations, which shift a graph left or right, stretch a graph horizontally, or flip a graph across the vertical axis;
- combine multiple function transformations;
- determine the domain, range, and graph of a transformed function;
- recognize even functions and odd functions.

In this section we investigate various transformations of functions and learn the effect of such transformations on the domain, range, and graph of a function. To illustrate these ideas, throughout this section we will use the function f defined by $f(x) = x^2$, with the domain of f being the interval $[-1, 1]$. Thus the graph of f is part of a familiar parabola.

In Section 5.7 we will revisit many of the ideas in this section, using trigonometric functions as the examples.



The graph of $f(x) = x^2$, with domain $[-1, 1]$. The range of f is $[0, 1]$.

Vertical Transformations: Shifting, Stretching, and Flipping

This subsection focuses on vertical function transformations, which change the vertical shape or location of the graph of a function. Because vertical function transformations affect the graph only vertically, the vertical function transformations do not change the domain of the function.

We begin with an example showing the procedure for shifting the graph of a function up.

Example 1

Define a function g by

$$g(x) = f(x) + 1,$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(a) Find the domain of g.

(b) Find the range of g.

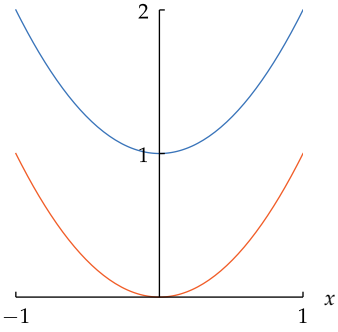
(c) Sketch the graph of g.

solution

(a) The formula defining g shows that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the domain of g equals the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(b) Recall that the range of g is the set of values taken on by $g(x)$ as x varies over the domain of g. Because $g(x)$ equals $f(x) + 1$, the range of g is obtained by adding 1 to each number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1, 2]$.

(c) A typical point on the graph of f has the form (x, x^2), where x is in the interval $[-1, 1]$. Because $g(x) = x^2 + 1$, a typical point on the graph of g has the form $(x, x^2 + 1)$, where x is in the interval $[-1, 1]$. In other words, each point on the graph of g is obtained by adding 1 to the second coordinate of a point on the graph of f. Thus the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 1 unit, as shown here.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange) and $g(x) = x^2 + 1$ (blue), each with domain $[-1, 1]$.

Shifting the graph of a function down follows a similar pattern, with a minus sign replacing the plus sign, as shown in the following example.

Example 2

Define a function h by

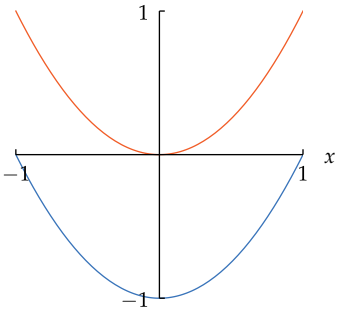
$$h(x) = f(x) - 1,$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(a) Find the domain of h.

(b) Find the range of h.

(c) Sketch the graph of h.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange) and $h(x) = x^2 - 1$ (blue), each with domain $[-1, 1]$.

solution

(a) The formula above shows that $h(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the domain of h equals the domain of f. Thus the domain of h is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(b) Because $h(x)$ equals $f(x) - 1$, the range of h is obtained by subtracting 1 from each number in the range of f. Thus the range of h is the interval $[-1, 0]$.

(c) Because $h(x) = x^2 - 1$, a typical point on the graph of h has the form $(x, x^2 - 1)$, where x is in the interval $[-1, 1]$. Thus the graph of h is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 1 unit, as shown here.

We could have used any positive number a instead of 1 in these examples when defining $g(x)$ as $f(x) + 1$ and defining $h(x)$ as $f(x) - 1$. Similarly, there is nothing special about the particular function f that we used. Thus the following results hold in general.

Instead of memorizing the conclusions in all the result boxes in this section, try to understand how these conclusions arise. Then you can figure out what you need depending on the problem at hand.

Shifting a graph up or down

Suppose f is a function and $a > 0$. Define functions g and h by

$$g(x) = f(x) + a \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = f(x) - a.$$

Then

- the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up a units;
- the graph of h is obtained by shifting the graph of f down a units.

The next example shows how to stretch (or shrink) the graph of a function in the vertical direction.

Example 3

Define functions g and h by

$$g(x) = 2f(x) \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}f(x),$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(a) Find the domain of g and the domain of h.

(b) Find the range of g.

(c) Find the range of h.

(d) Sketch the graphs of g and h.

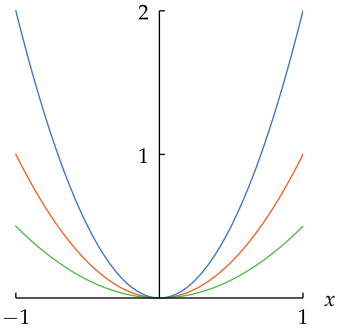
solution

(a) The formulas defining g and h show that $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ are defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the domain of g and the domain of h both equal the domain of f. Thus the domain of g and the domain of h both equal the interval $[-1,1]$.

(b) Because $g(x)$ equals $2f(x)$, the range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 2. Thus the range of g is the interval $[0,2]$.

(c) Because $h(x)$ equals $\frac{1}{2}f(x)$, the range of h is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by $\frac{1}{2}$. Thus the range of h is the interval $[0,\frac{1}{2}]$.

(d) For each x in the interval $[-1,1]$, the point $(x,2x^2)$ is on the graph of g and the point $(x,\frac{1}{2}x^2)$ is on the graph of h. Thus the graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, and the graph of h is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, as shown here.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange) and $g(x) = 2x^2$ (blue) and $h(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2$ (green), each with domain $[-1,1]$.

In the last part of the example above, we noted that the graph of h is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$. This terminology may seem a bit strange because the word "stretch" often has the connotation of something getting larger. However, we will find it convenient to use the word "stretch" in the wider sense of multiplying by some positive number, which might be less than 1.

Perhaps the word "shrink" would be more appropriate here.

We could have used any positive number c instead of 2 or $\frac{1}{2}$ in the example above. Similarly, there is nothing special about the particular function f that we used. Thus the following result holds in general.

Stretching a graph vertically

Suppose f is a function and $c > 0$. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = cf(x).$$

Then the graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of c.

The procedure for flipping the graph of a function across the horizontal axis is illustrated by the following example.

Example 4

Define a function g by

$$g(x) = -f(x),$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1,1]$.

(a) Find the domain of g.

(b) Find the range of g.

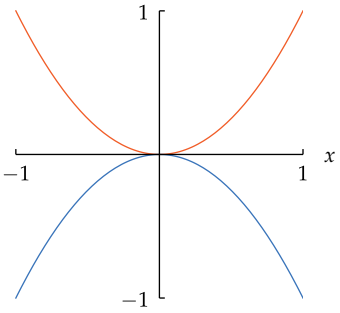
(c) Sketch the graph of g.

solution

(a) The formula defining g shows that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the domain of g equals the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-1,1]$.

(b) Because $g(x)$ equals $-f(x)$, the values taken on by g are the negatives of the values taken on by f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-1,0]$.

(c) Note that $g(x) = -x^2$ for each x in the interval $[-1,1]$. For each point (x,x^2) on the graph of f, the point $(x,-x^2)$ is on the graph of g. Thus the graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis, as shown here.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange) and $g(x) = -x^2$ (blue), each with domain $[-1,1]$.

The following result holds for every function f.

Many books use the word **reflect** *instead of* **flip**. *However,* flipping *seems to be a more accurate description of how the blue graph above is obtained from the orange graph. Reflecting, as happens with a mirror, would not produce the desired graph.*

Flipping a graph across the horizontal axis

Suppose f is a function. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = -f(x).$$

Then the graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis.

Horizontal Transformations: Shifting, Stretching, Flipping

Vertical transformations work pretty much as you would expect. As you will soon see, the actions of horizontal transformation are less intuitive.

Now we focus on horizontal function transformations, which change the horizontal shape or location of the graph of a function. Because horizontal function transformations affect the graph only horizontally, the horizontal function transformations do not change the range of the function.

We begin with an example showing the procedure for shifting the graph of a function to the left.

Example 5

Define a function g by

$$g(x) = f(x+1),$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1,1]$.

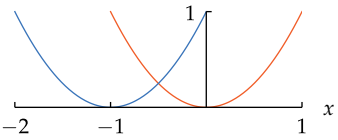
(a) Find the domain of g.

(b) Find the range of g.

(c) Sketch the graph of g.

solution

(a) The formula defining g shows that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x+1)$ is defined, which means that $x+1$ must be in the interval $[-1,1]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[-2,0]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-2,0]$.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange, with domain $[-1,1]$) and $g(x) = (x+1)^2$ (blue, with domain $[-2,0]$). The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 1 unit.

(b) Because $g(x)$ equals $f(x+1)$, the values taken on by g are the same as the values taken on by f. Thus the range of g equals the range of f, which is the interval $[0,1]$.

(c) Note that $g(x) = (x+1)^2$ for each x in the interval $[-2,0]$. For each point (x, x^2) on the graph of f, the point $(x-1, x^2)$ is on the graph of g (because $g(x-1) = x^2$). Thus the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 1 unit, as shown here.

Suppose we define a function h by

$$h(x) = f(x-1),$$

where f is again the function defined by $f(x) = x^2$, with the domain of f the interval $[-1,1]$. Then everything works as in the example above, except that the domain and graph of h are obtained by shifting the domain and graph of f right 1 unit (instead of left 1 unit as in the example above).

More generally, we could have used any positive number b instead of 1 in these examples when defining $g(x)$ as $f(x+1)$ and defining $h(x)$ as $f(x-1)$. Similarly, there is nothing special about the particular function f that we used. Thus the following results hold in general.

Shifting a graph left or right

Suppose f is a function and $b > 0$. Define functions g and h by

$$g(x) = f(x + b) \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = f(x - b).$$

Then

- the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left b units;
- the graph of h is obtained by shifting the graph of f right b units.

The next example shows the procedure for horizontally stretching a graph.

Example 6

Define functions g and h by

$$g(x) = f(2x) \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = f(\tfrac{1}{2}x),$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(a) Find the domain of g.

(b) Find the domain of h.

(c) Find the range of g and the range of h.

(d) Sketch the graphs of g and h.

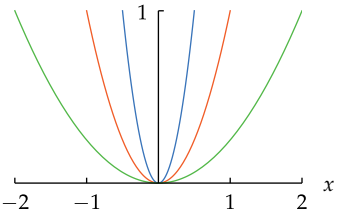
solution

(a) The formula defining g shows that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(2x)$ is defined, which means that $2x$ must be in the interval $[-1, 1]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$.

(b) The formula defining h shows that $h(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(\frac{1}{2}x)$ is defined, which means that $\frac{1}{2}x$ must be in the interval $[-1, 1]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[-2, 2]$. Thus the domain of h is the interval $[-2, 2]$.

(c) The formulas defining g and h show that the values taken on by g and h are the same as the values taken on by f. Thus the range of g and the range of h both equal the range of f, which is the interval $[0, 1]$.

(d) For each point (x, x^2) on the graph of f, the point $(\frac{x}{2}, x^2)$ is on the graph of g (because $g(\frac{x}{2}) = x^2$) and the point $(2x, x^2)$ is on the graph of h (because $h(2x) = x^2$) . Thus the graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, and the graph of h is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, as shown here.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange, with domain $[-1, 1]$) and $g(x) = (2x)^2$ (blue, with domain $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$) and $h(x) = (\frac{1}{2}x)^2$ (green, with domain $[-2, 2]$).

We could have used any positive number c instead of 2 or $\frac{1}{2}$ when defining $g(x)$ as $f(2x)$ and defining $h(x)$ as $f(\frac{1}{2}x)$ in the example above. Similarly, nothing special about the particular function f was used. Thus the following result holds.

Stretching a graph horizontally

Suppose f is a function and $c > 0$. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = f(cx).$$

Then the graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{c}$.

Note that if $c > 1$, then $\frac{1}{c} < 1$, which means that stretching the graph by a factor of $\frac{1}{c}$ actually shrinks the graph.

The procedure for flipping the graph of a function across the vertical axis is illustrated by the following example. To show the ideas more clearly, the domain of f has been changed to the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, 1]$.

Example 7

Define a function g by

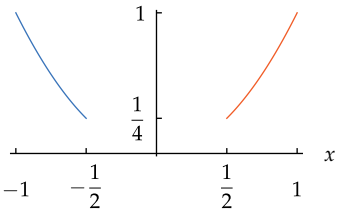
$$g(x) = f(-x),$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, 1]$.

(a) Find the domain of g.

(b) Find the range of g.

(c) Sketch the graph of g.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange, with domain $[\frac{1}{2}, 1]$) and $g(x) = (-x)^2 = x^2$ (blue, with domain $[-1, -\frac{1}{2}]$). The graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the vertical axis.

solution

(a) The formula defining g shows that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(-x)$ is defined, which means that $-x$ must be in the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, 1]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[-1, -\frac{1}{2}]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-1, -\frac{1}{2}]$.

(b) Because $g(x)$ equals $f(-x)$, the values taken on by g are the same as the values taken on by f. Thus the range of g equals the range of f, which is the interval $[\frac{1}{4}, 1]$.

(c) Note that $g(x) = (-x)^2 = x^2$ for each x in the interval $[-1, -\frac{1}{2}]$. For each point (x, x^2) on the graph of f, the point $(-x, x^2)$ is on the graph of g (because $g(-x) = x^2$). Thus the graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the vertical axis.

The result in the example holds for any function f, not just the specific function in the example above. In other words, we have the following result.

The values taken on by g are the same as the values taken on by f. In other words, the range of g equals the range of f.

Flipping a graph across the vertical axis

Suppose f is a function. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = f(-x).$$

Then the graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the vertical axis. Also, the domain of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the domain of f by -1.

Combinations of Vertical Function Transformations

When dealing with combinations of vertical function transformations, the order in which those transformations are applied can be crucial. The following simple procedure can be used to find the graph.

Combinations of vertical function transformations

To obtain the graph of a function defined by combinations of vertical function transformations, apply the transformations in the same order as the corresponding operations when evaluating the function.

Example 8

Define a function g by

$$g(x) = -2f(x) + 1,$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(a) List the order of operations used to evaluate $g(x)$ after $f(x)$ has been evaluated.

(b) Find the domain of g.

(c) Find the range of g.

(d) Sketch the graph of g.

solution

(a) Because $g(x) = -2f(x) + 1$, operations should be done in the following order to evaluate $g(x)$:

1. Multiply $f(x)$ by 2.
2. Multiply the number obtained in the previous step by -1.
3. Add 1 to the number obtained in the previous step.

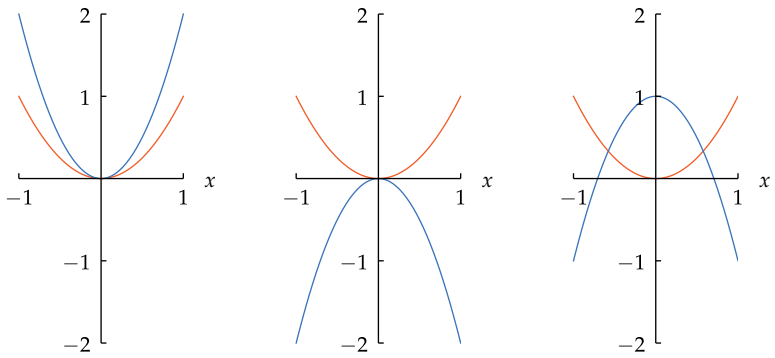
The order of steps 1 and 2 could be interchanged. However, the operation of adding 1 must be the last step.

(b) The formula defining g shows that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the domain of g equals the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(c) The range of g is obtained by applying the operations from the answer to part (a), in the same order, to the range of f, which is the interval $[0, 1]$:

1. Multiplying each number in $[0, 1]$ by 2 gives the interval $[0, 2]$.
2. Multiplying each number in $[0, 2]$ by -1 gives the interval $[-2, 0]$.
3. Adding 1 to each number in $[-2, 0]$ gives the interval $[-1, 1]$, which is the range of g.

(d) Applying function transformations in the same order as in the answer to part (a), we see that the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, then flipping the resulting graph across the horizontal axis, then shifting the resulting graph up 1 unit, as follows.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange), $2f(x)$ (blue, left), $-2f(x)$ (blue, center), and $-2f(x) + 1$ (blue, right), each with domain $[-1, 1]$.

The operations listed in the solutions to part (a) of this example and the next example are the same, differing only in the order. However, the different order produces different graphs.

Comparing the example above to the next example shows the importance of applying the operations in the appropriate order.

Example 9

Define a function h by

$$h(x) = -2\big(f(x) + 1\big),$$

where $f(x) = x^2$ and the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(a) List the order of operations used to evaluate $h(x)$ after $f(x)$ has been evaluated.

(b) Find the domain of h.

(c) Find the range of h.

(d) Sketch the graph of h.

solution

(a) Because $h(x) = -2\big(f(x) + 1\big)$, operations should be done in the following order to evaluate $h(x)$:

The order of steps 2 and 3 could be interchanged. However, the operation of adding 1 must be the first step.

1. Add 1 to $f(x)$.
2. Multiply the number obtained in the previous step by 2.
3. Multiply the number obtained in the previous step by -1.

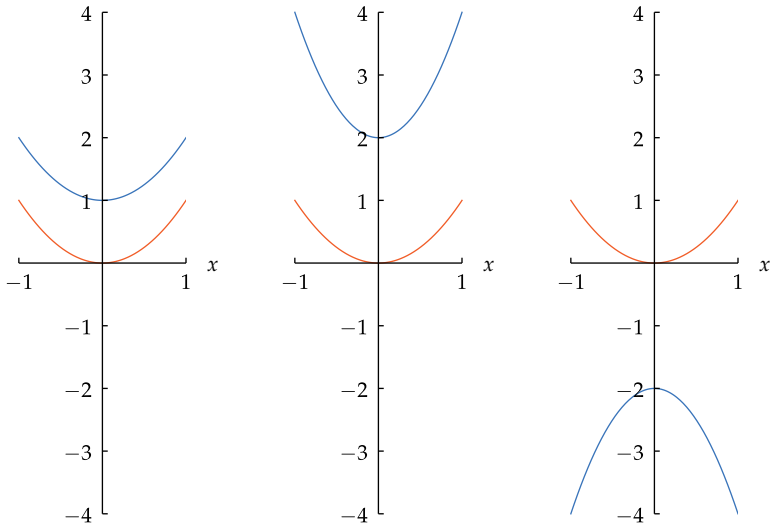
(b) The formula defining h shows that $h(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the domain of h equals the domain of f. Thus the domain of h is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(c) The range of h is obtained by applying the operations from the answer to part (a), in the same order, to the range of f, which is the interval $[0, 1]$:

1. Adding 1 to each number in $[0, 1]$ gives the interval $[1, 2]$.
2. Multiplying each number in $[1, 2]$ by 2 gives the interval $[2, 4]$.
3. Multiplying each number in $[2, 4]$ by -1 gives the interval $[-4, -2]$, which is the range of h.

(d) Applying function transformations in the same order as in the answer to part (a), we see that the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 1 unit, then vertically stretching the resulting graph by a factor of 2, then flipping the resulting graph across the horizontal axis, producing the graph shown here.

Notice how the graph of $-2\big(f(x) + 1\big)$ in this example differs from the graph of $-2f(x) + 1$ in the previous example.



The graphs of $f(x) = x^2$ (orange), $f(x) + 1$ (blue, left), $2\big(f(x) + 1\big)$ (blue, center), and $-2\big(f(x) + 1\big)$ (blue, right), each with domain $[-1, 1]$.

When dealing with a combination of a vertical function transformation and a horizontal function transformation, the transformations can be applied in either order. For a combination of multiple vertical function transformations and a single horizontal function transformation, be sure to apply the vertical function transformations in the proper order; the horizontal function transformation can be applied either after or before the vertical function transformations.

Combinations of multiple horizontal function transformations, possibly combined with vertical function transformations, are more complicated. If you are interested in these kinds of multiple function transformations, then see the worked-out solutions to Exercises 45, 47, 49, 51, 53, and 55 for examples of the proper technique.

Even Functions

Suppose $f(x) = x^2$ for every real number x. Notice that

$$f(-x) = (-x)^2 = x^2 = f(x).$$

This property is sufficiently important that we give it a name.

Even function

A function f is called **even** if

$$f(-x) = f(x)$$

for every x in the domain of f.

If n is an integer, then the function f defined by $f(x) = x^n$ is an even function if and only if n is an even integer.

For the equation $f(-x) = f(x)$ to hold for every x in the domain of f, the expression $f(-x)$ must make sense. Thus $-x$ must be in the domain of f for every x in the domain of f. For example, a function whose domain is the interval $[-3, 5]$ cannot possibly be an even function, but a function whose domain is the interval $(-4, 4)$ may or may not be an even function.

As we have already observed, x^2 is an even function. Here is another simple example.

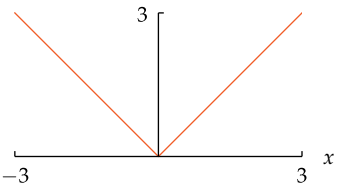
Example 10

Show that the function f defined by $f(x) = |x|$ for every real number x is an even function.

solution This function is even because

$$f(-x) = |-x| = |x| = f(x)$$

for every real number x.



The graph of $|x|$ on the interval $[-3, 3]$.

Suppose f is an even function. As we know, flipping the graph of f across the vertical axis gives the graph of the function h defined by $h(x) = f(-x)$. Because f is even, we actually have $h(x) = f(-x) = f(x)$, which implies that $h = f$.

In other words, flipping the graph of an even function f across the vertical axis gives us back the graph of f. Thus the graph of an even function is symmetric about the vertical axis. This symmetry can be seen, for example, in the graph shown above of $|x|$ on the interval $[-3, 3]$.

The graph of an even function

A function is even if and only if its graph is unchanged when flipped across the vertical axis.

Odd Functions

Consider now the function defined by $f(x) = x^3$ for every real number x. Notice that

$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= (-x)^3 \\ &= -(x^3) \\ &= -f(x). \end{aligned}$$

This property is sufficiently important that we also give it an appropriate descriptive name.

If n is an integer, then the function f defined by $f(x) = x^n$ is an odd function if and only if n is an odd integer.

Odd function

A function f is called **odd** if

$$f(-x) = -f(x)$$

for every x in the domain of f.

As was the case for even functions, for a function to be odd $-x$ must be in the domain of f for every x in the domain of f, because otherwise there is no possibility that the equation $f(-x) = -f(x)$ can hold for every x in the domain of f. Thus, for example, the interval $[-2, 2]$ can be the domain of an odd function, but the interval $[-2, 3]$ cannot be the domain of an odd function.

As we have already observed, x^3 is an odd function. Here is another simple example.

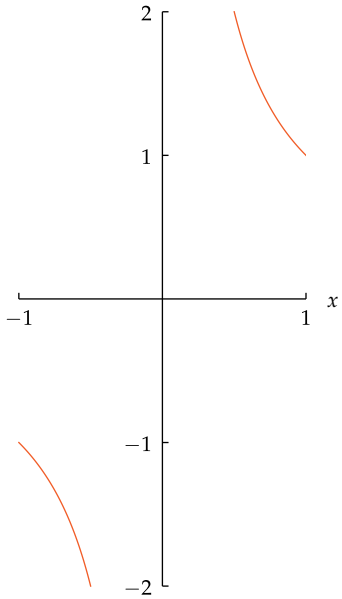
Example 11

Show that the function f defined by $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$ for every real number $x \neq 0$ is an odd function.

solution This function is odd because

$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= \frac{1}{-x} \\ &= -\frac{1}{x} \\ &= -f(x) \end{aligned}$$

for every real number $x \neq 0$.



The graph of $\frac{1}{x}$ on $[-1, -\frac{1}{2}] \cup [\frac{1}{2}, 1]$.

Suppose f is an odd function. If x is a number in the domain of f, then $(x, f(x))$ is a point on the graph of f. Because $f(-x) = -f(x)$, the point $(-x, -f(x))$ also is on the graph of f.

In other words, flipping a point $(x, f(x))$ on the graph of an odd function f across the origin gives a point $(-x, -f(x))$ that is also on the graph of f. Thus the graph of an odd function is symmetric about the origin. This symmetry can be seen, for example, in the graph shown here of $\frac{1}{x}$ on $[-1, -\frac{1}{2}] \cup [\frac{1}{2}, 1]$.

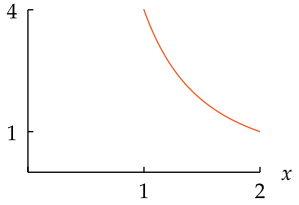
Flipping a point (c, d) across the origin gives the point $(-c, -d)$.

The graph of an odd function

A function is odd if and only if its graph is unchanged when flipped across the origin.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–14, assume f is the function defined on the interval $[1,2]$ by the formula $f(x) = \frac{4}{x^2}$. Thus the domain of f is the interval $[1,2]$ and the range of f is the interval $[1,4]$. The graph of f is shown here.



The graph of the function f defined on the interval $[1,2]$ by $f(x) = \frac{4}{x^2}$.

For each function g described below:

- **(a)** ***Sketch the graph of g.***
- **(b)** ***Find the domain of g (the endpoints of this interval should be shown on the horizontal axis of your sketch of the graph of g).***
- **(c)** ***Give a formula for g.***
- **(d)** ***Find the range of g (the endpoints of this interval should be shown on the vertical axis of your sketch of the graph of g).***

1 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 1 unit.

2 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 3 units.

3 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 3 units.

4 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 2 units.

5 The graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.

6 The graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 3.

7 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 3 units.

8 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 4 units.

9 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 1 unit.

10 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 3 units.

11 The graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.

12 The graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$.

13 The graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis.

14 The graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the vertical axis.

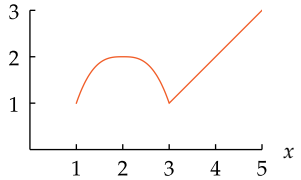
15 Suppose g is an even function whose domain is $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$ and whose graph on the interval $[1,2]$ is the graph used in the instructions for Exercises 1–14. Sketch the graph of g on $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$.

16 Suppose g is an even function whose domain is $[-5,-1] \cup [1,5]$ and whose graph on the interval $[1,5]$ is the graph used in the instructions for Exercises 19–56. Sketch the graph of g on $[-5,-1] \cup [1,5]$.

17 Suppose h is an odd function whose domain is $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$ and whose graph on the interval $[1,2]$ is the graph used in the instructions for Exercises 1–14. Sketch the graph of h on $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$.

18 Suppose h is an odd function whose domain is $[-5,-1] \cup [1,5]$ and whose graph on the interval $[1,5]$ is the graph used in the instructions for Exercises 19–56. Sketch the graph of h on $[-5,-1] \cup [1,5]$.

For Exercises 19–56, assume f is a function whose domain is the interval $[1,5]$, whose range is the interval $[1,3]$, and whose graph is the figure below.



The graph of f.

For each given function g:

- **(a)** ***Find the domain of g.***
- **(b)** ***Find the range of g.***
- **(c)** ***Sketch the graph of g.***

19 $g(x) = f(x) + 1$

20 $g(x) = f(x) + 3$

21 $g(x) = f(x) - 3$

22 $g(x) = f(x) - 5$

23 $g(x) = 2f(x)$

24 $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x)$

25 $g(x) = f(x+2)$

26 $g(x) = f(x+3)$

27 $g(x) = f(x-1)$

28 $g(x) = f(x-2)$

29 $g(x) = f(2x)$

30 $g(x) = f(3x)$

31 $g(x) = f(\frac{x}{2})$

32 $g(x) = f(\frac{5x}{8})$

33 $g(x) = 2f(x) + 1$

34 $g(x) = 3f(x) + 2$

35 $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x) - 1$

36 $g(x) = \frac{2}{3}f(x) - 2$

37 $g(x) = 3 - f(x)$

38 $g(x) = 2 - f(x)$

39 $g(x) = -f(x-1)$

40 $g(x) = -f(x-3)$

41 $g(x) = f(x+1) + 2$

42 $g(x) = f(x+2) + 1$

43 $g(x) = f(2x) + 1$

44 $g(x) = f(3x) + 2$

45 $g(x) = f(2x+1)$

46 $g(x) = f(3x+2)$

47 $g(x) = 3f(2x+1)$

48 $g(x) = 2f(3x+2)$

49 $g(x) = 2f(\frac{x}{2}+1)$

50 $g(x) = 3f(\frac{2x}{5}+2)$

51 $g(x) = 2f(\frac{x}{2}+1) - 3$

52 $g(x) = 3f(\frac{2x}{5}+2) + 1$

53 $g(x) = 2f(\frac{x}{2}+3)$

54 $g(x) = 3f(\frac{2x}{5}-2)$

55 $g(x) = 6 - 2f(\frac{x}{2}+3)$

56 $g(x) = 1 - 3f(\frac{2x}{5}-2)$

For Exercises 57–60, suppose f is a function whose domain is the interval $[-5,5]$ and

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{x+3}$$

for every x in the interval $[0,5]$.

57 Suppose f is an even function. Evaluate $f(-2)$.

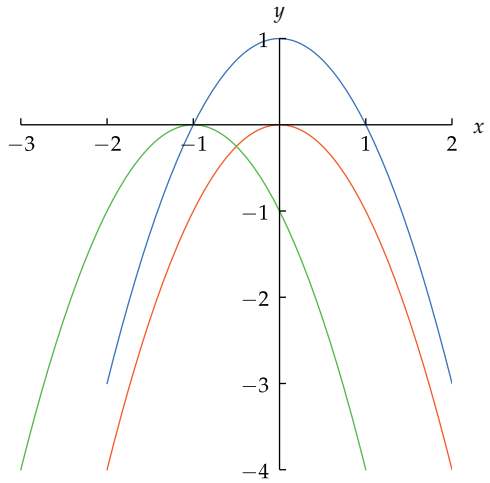
58 Suppose f is an even function. Evaluate $f(-3)$.

59 Suppose f is an odd function. Evaluate $f(-2)$.

60 Suppose f is an odd function. Evaluate $f(-3)$.

Problems

61 The figure below shows the graphs of $-x^2$, $-x^2+1$, and $-(x+1)^2$.



The graphs of $-x^2$, $-x^2+1$, and $-(x+1)^2$.

(a) What color is the graph of $-x^2$?

(b) What color is the graph of $-x^2+1$?

(c) What color is the graph of $-(x+1)^2$?

For Problems 62–65, suppose that to provide additional funds for higher education, the federal government adopts a new income tax plan that consists of the 2016 income tax plus an additional $100 per taxpayer. Let g be the function such that $g(x)$ is the 2016 federal income tax for a single person with taxable income x dollars, and let h be the corresponding function for the new income tax plan.

62 Is h obtained from g by a vertical function transformation or by a horizontal function transformation?

63 Write a formula for $h(x)$ in terms of $g(x)$.

64 Using the explicit formula for $g(x)$ given in Example 2 in Section 1.1, give an explicit formula for $h(x)$.

65 Under the new income tax plan, what will be the income tax for a single person whose annual taxable income is $75,000?

For Problems 66–69, suppose that to pump more money into the economy during a recession, the federal government adopts a new income tax plan that makes income taxes 90% of the 2016 income tax. Let g be the function such that $g(x)$ is the 2016 federal income tax for a single person with taxable income x dollars, and let h be the corresponding function for the new income tax plan.

66 Is h obtained from g by a vertical function transformation or by a horizontal function transformation?

67 Write a formula for $h(x)$ in terms of $g(x)$.

68 Using the explicit formula for $g(x)$ given in Example 2 in Section 1.1, give an explicit formula for $h(x)$.

69 Under the new income tax plan, what will be the income tax for a single person whose annual taxable income is $40,000?

70 Find the only function whose domain is the set of real numbers and is both even and odd.

71 Show that if f is an odd function such that 0 is in the domain of f, then $f(0)=0$.

72 The result box following Example 2 could have been made more complete by including explicit information about the domain and range of the functions g and h. For example, the more complete result box might have looked like the one shown here:

> ***Shifting a graph up or down***
>
> Suppose f is a function and $a>0$. Define functions g and h by
>
> $$g(x)=f(x)+a \quad \text{and} \quad h(x)=f(x)-a.$$
>
> Then
>
> - g and h have the same domain as f;
> - the range of g is obtained by adding a to every number in the range of f;
> - the range of h is obtained by subtracting a from every number in the range of f;
> - the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up a units;
> - the graph of h is obtained by shifting the graph of f down a units.

Construct similar complete result boxes, including explicit information about the domain and range of the functions g and h, for each of the other five result boxes in this section that deal with function transformations.

73 True or false: If f is an odd function whose domain is the set of real numbers and a function g is defined by

$$g(x)=\begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } x\geq 0 \\ -f(x) & \text{if } x<0, \end{cases}$$

then g is an even function. Explain your answer.

74 True or false: If f is an even function whose domain is the set of real numbers and a function g is defined by

$$g(x)=\begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } x\geq 0 \\ -f(x) & \text{if } x<0, \end{cases}$$

then g is an odd function. Explain your answer.

75 (a) True or false: Just as every integer is either even or odd, every function whose domain is the set of integers is either an even function or an odd function.

(b) Explain your answer to part (a). This means that if the answer is "true", then you should explain why every function whose domain is the set of integers is either an even function or an odd function; if the answer is "false", then you should give an example of a function whose domain is the set of integers but is neither even nor odd.

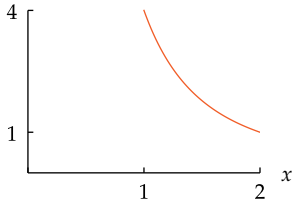
76 Show that the function f defined by $f(x)=mx+b$ is an odd function if and only if $b=0$.

77 Show that the function f defined by $f(x)=mx+b$ is an even function if and only if $m=0$.

78 Show that the function f defined by $f(x)=ax^2+bx+c$ is an even function if and only if $b=0$.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–14, assume f is the function defined on the interval $[1,2]$ by the formula $f(x) = \frac{4}{x^2}$. Thus the domain of f is the interval $[1,2]$ and the range of f is the interval $[1,4]$. The graph of f is shown here.



The graph of the function f defined on the interval $[1,2]$ by $f(x) = \frac{4}{x^2}$.

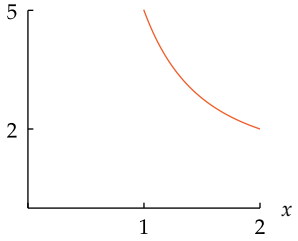
For each function g described below:

- **(a)** ***Sketch the graph of g.***
- **(b)** ***Find the domain of g (the endpoints of this interval should be shown on the horizontal axis of your sketch of the graph of g).***
- **(c)** ***Give a formula for g.***
- **(d)** ***Find the range of g (the endpoints of this interval should be shown on the vertical axis of your sketch of the graph of g).***

1 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 1 unit.

solution

(a)



Shifting the graph of f up 1 unit gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is the same as the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,2]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 1 unit, we have $g(x) = f(x) + 1$. Thus

$$g(x) = \frac{4}{x^2} + 1$$

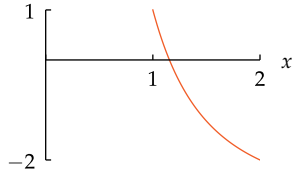
for each number x in the interval $[1,2]$.

(d) The range of g is obtained by adding 1 to each number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[2,5]$.

3 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 3 units.

solution

(a)



Shifting the graph of f down 3 units gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is the same as the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,2]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 3 units, we have $g(x) = f(x) - 3$. Thus

$$g(x) = \frac{4}{x^2} - 3$$

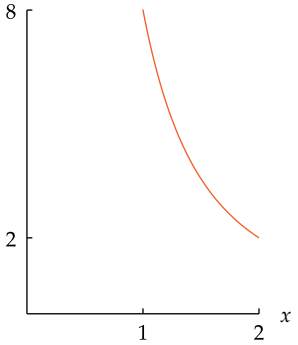
for each number x in the interval $[1,2]$.

(d) The range of g is obtained by subtracting 3 from each number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-2,1]$.

5 The graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.

solution

(a)



Vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2 gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is the same as the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,2]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, we have $g(x) = 2f(x)$. Thus

$$g(x) = \frac{8}{x^2}$$

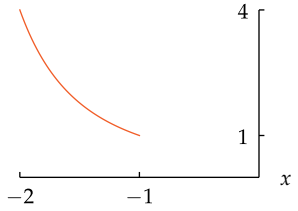
for each number x in the interval $[1,2]$.

(d) The range of g is obtained by multiplying every number in the range of f by 2. Thus the range of g is the interval $[2,8]$.

7 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 3 units.

solution

(a)



Shifting the graph of f left 3 units gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is obtained by subtracting 3 from every number in domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-2,-1]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 3 units, we have $g(x) = f(x+3)$. Thus

$$g(x) = \frac{4}{(x+3)^2}$$

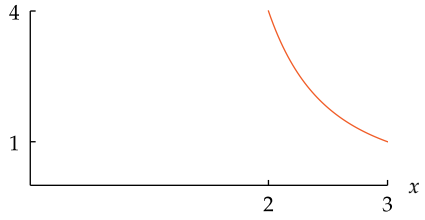
for each number x in the interval $[-2,-1]$.

(d) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1,4]$.

9 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 1 unit.

solution

(a)



Shifting the graph of f right 1 unit gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is obtained by adding 1 to every number in domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[2,3]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 1 unit, we have $g(x) = f(x-1)$. Thus

$$g(x) = \frac{4}{(x-1)^2}$$

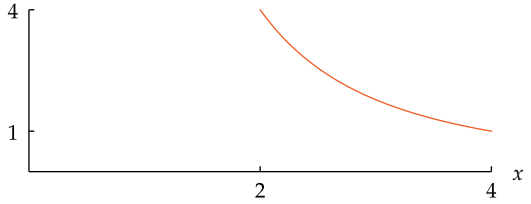
for each number x in the interval $[2,3]$.

(d) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1,4]$.

11 The graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.

solution

(a)



Horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2 gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is obtained by multiplying every number in the domain of f by 2. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[2,4]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, we have $g(x) = f(x/2)$. Thus

$$g(x) = \frac{4}{(x/2)^2} = \frac{16}{x^2}$$

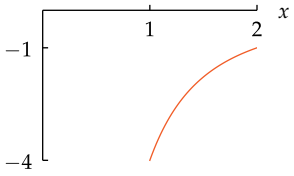
for each number x in the interval $[2,4]$.

(d) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1,4]$.

13 The graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis.

solution

(a)



Flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis gives this graph.

(b) The domain of g is the same as the domain of f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,2]$.

(c) Because the graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis, we have $g(x) = -f(x)$. Thus

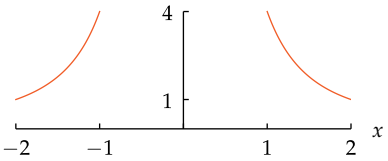
$$g(x) = -\frac{4}{x^2}$$

for each number x in the interval $[1,2]$.

(d) The range of g is obtained by multiplying every number in the range of f by -1. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-4,-1]$.

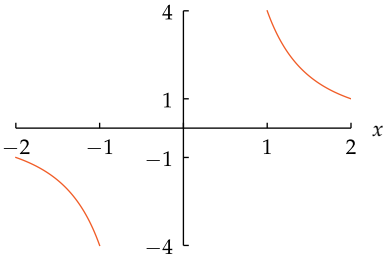
15 Suppose g is an even function whose domain is $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$ and whose graph on the interval $[1,2]$ is the graph used in the instructions for Exercises 1–14. Sketch the graph of g on $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$.

solution Because g is an even function, its graph is unchanged when flipped across the vertical axis. Thus we can find the graph of g on the interval $[-2,-1]$ by flipping the graph on the interval $[1,2]$ across the vertical axis, producing the following graph of g:

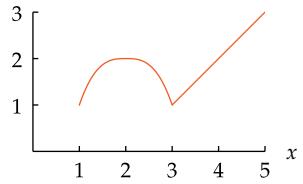


17 Suppose h is an odd function whose domain is $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$ and whose graph on the interval $[1,2]$ is the graph used in the instructions for Exercises 1–14. Sketch the graph of h on $[-2,-1] \cup [1,2]$.

solution Because h is an odd function, its graph is unchanged when flipped across the origin. Thus we can find the graph of h on the interval $[-2,-1]$ by flipping the graph on the interval $[1,2]$ across the origin, producing the following graph of h:



For Exercises 19–56, assume f is a function whose domain is the interval $[1,5]$, whose range is the interval $[1,3]$, and whose graph is the figure below.



The graph of f.

For each given function g:

(a) *Find the domain of g.*

(b) *Find the range of g.*

(c) *Sketch the graph of g.*

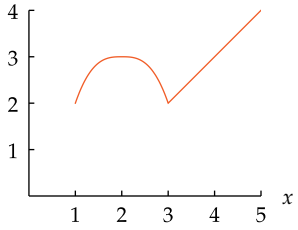
19 $g(x) = f(x) + 1$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the function g has the same domain as f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1, 5]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by adding 1 to every number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[2, 4]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 1 unit.



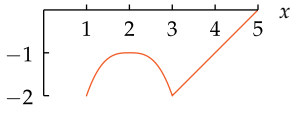
21 $g(x) = f(x) - 3$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the function g has the same domain as f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1, 5]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by subtracting 3 from each number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-2, 0]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 3 units.



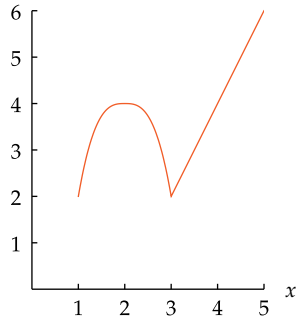
23 $g(x) = 2f(x)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the function g has the same domain as f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1, 5]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 2. Thus the range of g is the interval $[2, 6]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.



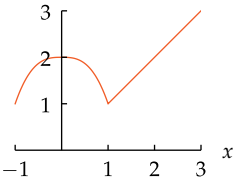
25 $g(x) = f(x + 2)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $x + 2$ is in the interval $[1, 5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[-1, 3]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-1, 3]$.

(b) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1, 3]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 2 units.



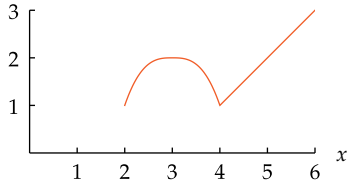
27 $g(x) = f(x - 1)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $x - 1$ is in the interval $[1, 5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[2, 6]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[2, 6]$.

(b) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1, 3]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 1 unit.



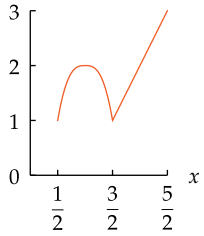
29 $g(x) = f(2x)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $2x$ is in the interval $[1, 5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}]$.

(b) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1, 3]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$.



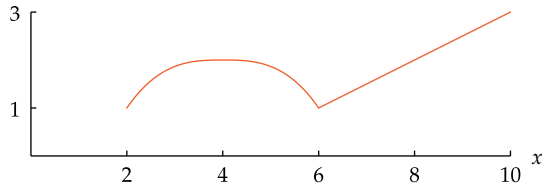
31 $g(x) = f(\frac{x}{2})$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $\frac{x}{2}$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[2,10]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[2,10]$.

(b) The range of g is the same as the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1,3]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown below, is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.



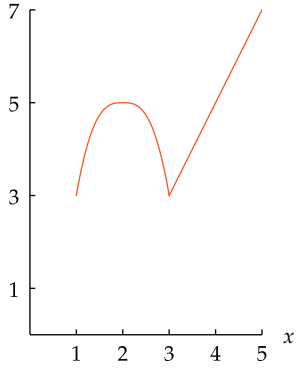
33 $g(x) = 2f(x) + 1$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the function g has the same domain as f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,5]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 2, which gives the interval $[2,6]$, and then adding 1 to each number in this interval, which gives the interval $[3,7]$. Thus the range of g is the interval $[3,7]$.

(c) Note that $g(x)$ is evaluated by evaluating $f(x)$, then multiplying by 2, and then adding 1. Applying function transformations in the same order, we see that the graph of g, shown here, is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, then shifting up 1 unit.



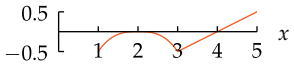
35 $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x) - 1$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the function g has the same domain as f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,5]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by $\frac{1}{2}$, which gives the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}]$, and then subtracting 1 from each number in this interval, which gives the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$.

(c) Note that $g(x)$ is evaluated by evaluating $f(x)$, then multiplying by $\frac{1}{2}$, and then subtracting 1. Applying function transformations in the same order, we see that the graph of g, shown here, is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, then shifting down 1 unit.



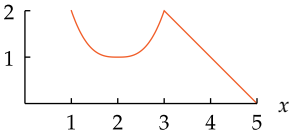
37 $g(x) = 3 - f(x)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined precisely when $f(x)$ is defined. In other words, the function g has the same domain as f. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[1,5]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by -1, which gives the interval $[-3,-1]$, and then adding 3 to each number in this interval, which gives the interval $[0,2]$. Thus the range of g is the interval $[0,2]$.

(c) Note that $g(x)$ is evaluated by evaluating $f(x)$, then multiplying by -1, and then adding 3. Applying function transformations in the same order, we see that the graph of g, shown here, is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis, then shifting up 3 units.



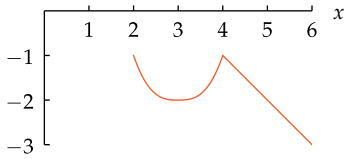
39 $g(x) = -f(x-1)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $x-1$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[2,6]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[2,6]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by -1. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-3,-1]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 1 unit, then flipping across the horizontal axis.



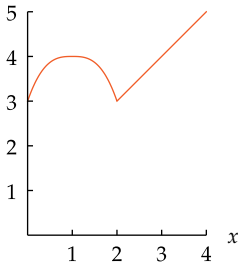
41 $g(x) = f(x+1) + 2$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $x+1$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[0,4]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[0,4]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by adding 2 to each number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[3,5]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 1 unit, then shifting up 2 units.



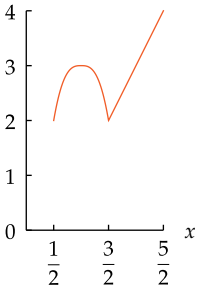
43 $g(x) = f(2x) + 1$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $2x$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that x must be in the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}]$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by adding 1 to each number in the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[2,4]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown here, is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, then shifting up 1 unit.



45 $g(x) = f(2x + 1)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $2x + 1$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that

$$1 \le 2x + 1 \le 5.$$

Adding -1 to each part of the inequality above gives $0 \le 2x \le 4$, and then dividing each part by 2 produces $0 \le x \le 2$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[0,2]$.

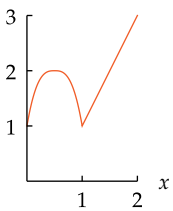
(b) The range of g equals the range of f. Thus the range of g is the interval $[1,3]$.

(c) Define a function h by $h(x) = f(2x)$. The graph of h is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$. Note that

$$g(x) = f(2x+1) = f\big(2(x+\tfrac{1}{2})\big) = h(x+\tfrac{1}{2}).$$

Thus the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of h left $\frac{1}{2}$ unit.

Putting this together, we see that the graph of g, shown here, is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, then shifting left $\frac{1}{2}$ unit.



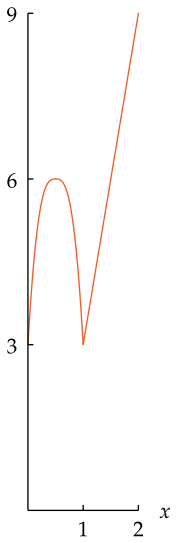
47 $g(x) = 3f(2x + 1)$

solution

(a) The function in this exercise is 3 times the function in Exercise 45. Thus this function has the same domain as the function in Exercise 45. In other words, the domain of this function g is the interval $[0,2]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 3. Thus the range of g is the interval $[3,9]$.

(c) The graph of this function g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of the function in Exercise 45 by a factor of 3, obtaining the graph shown here.



49 $g(x) = 2f(\frac{x}{2} + 1)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $\frac{x}{2} + 1$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that

$$1 \le \frac{x}{2} + 1 \le 5.$$

Adding -1 to each part of the inequality above gives $0 \le \frac{x}{2} \le 4$, and then multiplying each part by 2 produces $0 \le x \le 8$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[0,8]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 2. Thus the range of g is the interval $[2,6]$.

(c) Define a function h by

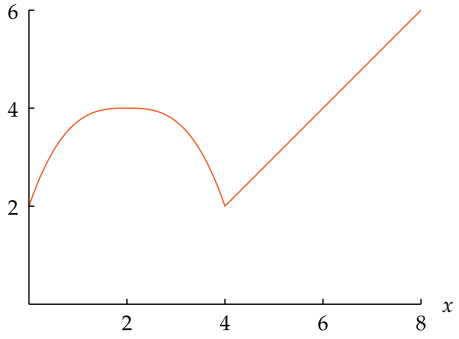
$$h(x) = f(\tfrac{x}{2}).$$

The graph of h is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2. Note that

$$g(x) = 2f(\tfrac{x}{2} + 1) = 2f(\tfrac{x+2}{2}) = 2h(x+2).$$

Thus the graph of g is obtained from the graph of h by shifting left 2 units and stretching vertically by a factor of 2.

Putting this together, we see that the graph of g, shown below, is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, shifting left 2 units, and then vertically stretching by a factor of 2.



51 $g(x) = 2f(\frac{x}{2}+1) - 3$

solution

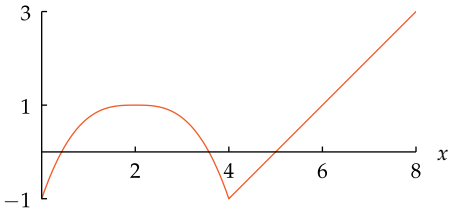
(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $\frac{x}{2}+1$ is in $[1,5]$, which means that

$$1 \le \frac{x}{2}+1 \le 5.$$

Adding -1 to each part of this inequality gives the inequality $0 \le \frac{x}{2} \le 4$, and then multiplying by 2 gives $0 \le x \le 8$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[0,8]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 2 and then subtracting 3. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-1,3]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown below, is obtained by shifting the graph in the solution to Exercise 49 down 3 units.



53 $g(x) = 2f(\frac{x}{2}+3)$

solution

(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $\frac{x}{2}+3$ is in $[1,5]$, which means that

$$1 \le \frac{x}{2}+3 \le 5.$$

Adding -3 to each part of this inequality gives the inequality $-2 \le \frac{x}{2} \le 2$, and then multiplying by 2 gives $-4 \le x \le 4$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-4,4]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by 2. Thus the range of g is $[2,6]$.

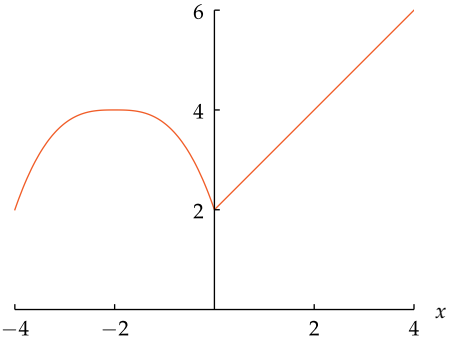
(c) Define a function h by

$$h(x) = f(\tfrac{x}{2}).$$

The graph of h is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2. Note that

$$g(x) = 2f(\tfrac{x}{2}+3) = 2f(\tfrac{x+6}{2}) = 2h(x+6).$$

Thus the graph of g is obtained from the graph of h by shifting left 6 units and stretching vertically by a factor of 2. Putting this together, we see that the graph of g, shown below, is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, shifting left 6 units, and then vertically stretching by a factor of 2.



55 $g(x) = 6 - 2f(\frac{x}{2}+3)$

solution

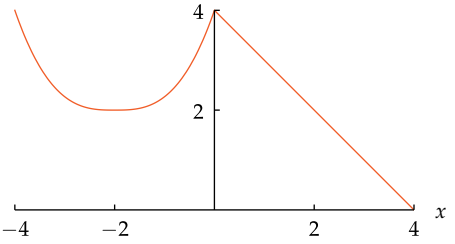
(a) Note that $g(x)$ is defined when $\frac{x}{2}+3$ is in the interval $[1,5]$, which means that

$$1 \le \frac{x}{2}+3 \le 5.$$

Adding -3 to each part of this inequality gives the inequality $-2 \le \frac{x}{2} \le 2$, and then multiplying by 2 gives $-4 \le x \le 4$. Thus the domain of g is the interval $[-4,4]$.

(b) The range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of f by -2, giving the interval $[-6,-2]$, and then adding 6 to each number in this interval, which gives the interval $[0,4]$.

(c) The graph of g, shown below, is obtained by flipping across the horizontal axis the graph obtained in the solution to Exercise 53, then shifting up 6 units.



For Exercises 57–60, suppose f is a function whose domain is the interval $[-5,5]$ and

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{x+3}$$

for every x in the interval $[0,5]$.

57 Suppose f is an even function. Evaluate $f(-2)$.

solution Because 2 is in the interval $[0,5]$, we can use the formula above to evaluate $f(2)$. We have

$$f(2) = \frac{2}{2+3} = \frac{2}{5}.$$

Because f is an even function, we have

$$f(-2) = f(2) = \frac{2}{5}.$$

59 Suppose f is an odd function. Evaluate $f(-2)$.

solution Because f is an odd function, we have

$$f(-2) = -f(2) = -\frac{2}{5}.$$

1.4 Composition of Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- combine two functions using the usual algebraic operations;
- compute the composition of two functions;
- write a complicated function as the composition of simpler functions;
- express a function transformation as a composition of functions.

Combining Two Functions

Suppose f and g are functions. We define a new function, called the **sum** of f and g and denoted by $f+g$, by letting $f+g$ be the function whose value at a number x is given by the equation

$$(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x).$$

For $f(x)+g(x)$ to make sense, both $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ must make sense. Thus the domain of $f+g$ is the intersection of the domain of f and the domain of g.

Similarly, we can define the difference, product, and quotient of two functions in the expected manner. Here are the formal definitions.

Algebra of functions

Suppose f and g are functions. Then the **sum**, **difference**, **product**, and **quotient** of f and g are the functions denoted $f+g$, $f-g$, fg, and $\frac{f}{g}$ defined by

$$(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$$
$$(f-g)(x) = f(x) - g(x)$$
$$(fg)(x) = f(x)g(x)$$
$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}.$$

Addition and multiplication of functions are commutative and associative operations; subtraction and division of functions have neither of these properties.

The domain of the first three functions above is the intersection of the domain of f and the domain of g. To avoid division by 0, the domain of $\frac{f}{g}$ is the set of numbers x such that x is in the domain of f and x is in the domain of g and $g(x) \neq 0$.

Example 1

Suppose f and g are the functions defined by

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x-3} \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = \sqrt{8-x}.$$

(a) Evaluate $(f+g)(5)$.

(b) Find a formula for $(f+g)(x)$.

(c) Evaluate $(fg)(5)$.

(d) Find a formula for $(fg)(x)$.

Negative numbers do not have square roots in the real number system. Thus the domain of f is the interval $[3,\infty)$ and the domain of g is the interval $(-\infty,8]$.

solution

(a) Using the definition of $f+g$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(f+g)(5) &= f(5) + g(5)\\ &= \sqrt{5-3} + \sqrt{8-5}\\ &= \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}.\end{aligned}$$

The domain of $f+g$ is the intersection of the domain of f and the domain of g. Thus the domain of $f+g$ is the interval $[3,8]$.

(b) Using the definition of $f+g$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(f+g)(x) &= f(x)+g(x)\\ &= \sqrt{x-3}+\sqrt{8-x}.\end{aligned}$$

(c) Using the definition of fg, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(fg)(5) &= f(5)g(5)\\ &= \sqrt{5-3}\,\sqrt{8-5}\\ &= \sqrt{2}\,\sqrt{3}.\end{aligned}$$

(d) Using the definition of fg, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(fg)(x) &= f(x)g(x)\\ &= \sqrt{x-3}\,\sqrt{8-x}.\end{aligned}$$

Definition of Composition

Now we turn to a new way of combining two functions.

Example 2

Consider the function h defined by

$$h(x) = \sqrt{x+3}.$$

The domain of h is the interval $[-3,\infty)$.

The value of $h(x)$ is computed by carrying out two steps: first add 3 to x, and then take the square root of that sum. Write h in terms of two simpler functions that correspond to these two steps.

solution Define

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x} \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = x+3.$$

Then

$$h(x) = \sqrt{x+3} = \sqrt{g(x)} = f\big(g(x)\big).$$

In the last term above, $f\big(g(x)\big)$, we evaluate f at $g(x)$. This kind of construction occurs so often that it has been given a name and notation.

Composition

If f and g are functions, then the **composition** of f and g, denoted $f\circ g$, is the function defined by

$$(f\circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big).$$

When evaluating $(f\circ g)(x)$, *first we evaluate* $g(x)$, *then we evaluate* $f\big(g(x)\big)$.

The domain of $f\circ g$ is the set of numbers x such that $f\big(g(x)\big)$ makes sense. Thus the domain of $f\circ g$ is the set of numbers x in the domain of g such that $g(x)$ is in the domain of f.

Not everyone follows these conventions. Thus elsewhere you may sometimes see $f(g(x))$, *which means the same as* $f\big(g(x)\big)$ *but with slightly different typography.*

In this book, outer parentheses are slightly larger than inner parentheses, to provide a visual clue of the grouping. Also, in the expression $f\big(g(x)\big)$, and in similar functional evaluations with parentheses inside parentheses, this book adds a bit of space after the first open parenthesis and before the last close parenthesis to emphasize that we are evaluating f at some number.

Example 3

Suppose

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x-4} \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = x^2.$$

(a) Evaluate $(f \circ g)(3)$.

(b) Evaluate $(g \circ f)(3)$.

(c) Find a formula for the composition $f \circ g$.

(d) Find a formula for the composition $g \circ f$.

(e) What is the domain of $f \circ g$?

(f) What is the domain of $g \circ f$?

solution

(a) Using the definition of composition, we have

$$(f \circ g)(3) = f\big(g(3)\big) = f(3^2) = f(9) = \tfrac{1}{9-4} = \tfrac{1}{5}.$$

(b) Using the definition of composition, we have

$$(g \circ f)(3) = g\big(f(3)\big) = g\big(\tfrac{1}{3-4}\big) = g(-1) = (-1)^2 = 1.$$

Comparing the results of parts (a) and (b), we see that composition is not commutative—order matters.

(c) Using the definition of composition, we have

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(x^2) = \frac{1}{x^2-4}.$$

(d) Using the definition of composition, we have

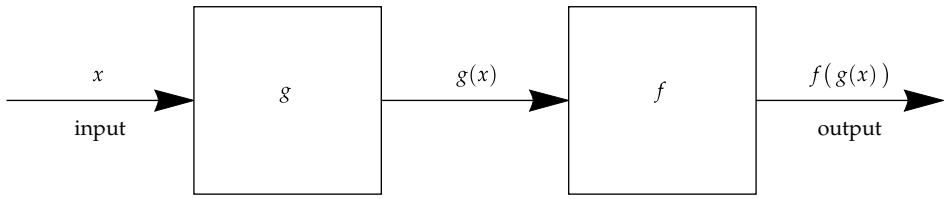
$$(g \circ f)(x) = g\big(f(x)\big) = g\Big(\frac{1}{x-4}\Big) = \Big(\frac{1}{x-4}\Big)^2.$$

Comparing the results of parts (c) and (d), we see again that composition is not commutative—order matters.

(e) The domain of f equals the set of real numbers except 4, and the domain of g equals the set of real numbers. From part (c), we see that $f\big(g(x)\big)$ makes sense provided $x^2 \neq 4$. Thus the domain of $f \circ g$ equals the set of all real numbers except -2 and 2.

(f) From part (d), we see that $g\big(f(x)\big)$ makes sense provided $x \neq 4$. Thus the domain of $g \circ f$ equals the set of all real numbers except 4.

In Section 1.1 we saw that a function g can be thought of as a machine that takes an input x and produces an output $g(x)$. The composition $f \circ g$ can then be thought of as the machine that feeds the output of the g machine into the f machine:



The composition $f \circ g$ as the combination of two machines.

Here $g(x)$ is the output of the g machine and $g(x)$ is also the input of the f machine.

Example 4

*In this example, the functions are called p and t to help you remember that p is the function giving the amount charged by your **phone** company and t is the function giving the **total** cost, including tax.*

(a) Suppose your cell phone company charges \$0.05 per minute plus \$0.47 for each call to China. Find a function p that gives the amount charged by your cell phone company for a call to China as a function of the number of minutes.

(b) Suppose the tax on cell phone bills is 6% plus \$0.01 for each call. Find a function t that gives your total cost, including tax, for a call to China as a function of the amount charged by your cell phone company.

(c) Explain why the composition $t \circ p$ gives your total cost, including tax, of making a cell phone call to China as a function of the number of minutes.

(d) Compute a formula for $t \circ p$.

(e) What is your total cost for a ten-minute call to China?

solution

Most cell phone companies round up any extra seconds to the next highest minute. Thus only positive integer values for m should be used in this formula.

(a) For a call of m minutes to China, the amount $p(m)$ in dollars charged by your cell phone company will be

$$p(m) = 0.05m + 0.47,$$

consisting of \$0.05 times the number of minutes plus \$0.47.

(b) For an amount of y dollars charged by your phone company for a phone call, your total cost in dollars, including tax, will be

$$t(y) = 1.06y + 0.01.$$

(c) Your total cost for a call of m minutes to China is computed by first calculating the amount $p(m)$ charged by the phone company, and then calculating the total cost (including tax) of $t\big(\,p(m)\,\big)$, which equals $(t \circ p)(m)$.

(d) The composition $t \circ p$ is given by the formula

$$\begin{aligned}(t \circ p)(m) &= t\big(\,p(m)\,\big)\\ &= t(0.05m + 0.47)\\ &= 1.06(0.05m + 0.47) + 0.01\\ &= 0.053m + 0.5082.\end{aligned}$$

(e) Using the formula above from part (d), we have

$$(t \circ p)(10) = 0.053 \times 10 + 0.5082 = 1.0382.$$

Thus your total cost for a ten-minute call to China is \$1.04.

The simple function defined below plays an important role with composition.

Identity function

The **identity function** is the function I defined by

$$I(x) = x$$

for every number x.

If f is any function and x is any number in the domain of f, then

$$(f \circ I)(x) = f\big(I(x)\big) = f(x) \quad \text{and} \quad (I \circ f)(x) = I\big(f(x)\big) = f(x).$$

Thus we have the following result.

The function I is the identity for composition

If f is any function, then $f \circ I = I \circ f = f$.

This result explains why I is called the identity function.

Decomposing Functions

The following example illustrates the process of starting with a function and writing it as the composition of two simpler functions.

Example 5

Suppose

$$T(y) = \left|\frac{y^2 - 3}{y^2 - 7}\right|.$$

Write T as the composition of two simpler functions. In other words, find two functions f and g, each of them simpler than T, such that $T = f \circ g$.

solution There is no rigorous definition of "simpler". Certainly it is easy to write T as the composition of two functions, because $T = T \circ I$, where I is the identity function, but that decomposition is unlikely to be useful.

Typically a function can be decomposed into the composition of other functions in many different ways.

Because evaluating an absolute value is the last operation done in computing $T(y)$, one reasonable possibility is to define

$$f(y) = |y| \quad \text{and} \quad g(y) = \frac{y^2 - 3}{y^2 - 7}.$$

You should verify that with these definitions of f and g, we indeed have $T = f \circ g$. Furthermore, both f and g seem to be simpler functions than T.

Because y appears in the formula defining T only in the expression y^2, another reasonable possibility is to define

$$f(y) = \left|\frac{y - 3}{y - 7}\right| \quad \text{and} \quad g(y) = y^2.$$

Both potential solutions discussed here are correct. Choosing one or the other may depend on the context or on one's taste.

Again you should verify that with these definitions of f and g, we have $T = f \circ g$; both f and g seem to be simpler functions than T.

See Example 6, where T is decomposed into three simpler functions.

Composing More than Two Functions

Although composition is not commutative, it is associative.

Composition is associative

If f, g, and h are functions, then

$$(f \circ g) \circ h = f \circ (g \circ h).$$

To prove the associativity of composition, note that

$$\big((f \circ g) \circ h\big)(x) = (f \circ g)\big(h(x)\big) = f\big(g(h(x))\big)$$

and

$$\big(f \circ (g \circ h)\big)(x) = f\big((g \circ h)(x)\big) = f\big(g(h(x))\big).$$

The domain of $f \circ g \circ h$ is the set of numbers x in the domain of h such that $h(x)$ is in the domain of g and $g\big(h(x)\big)$ is in the domain of f.

The equations above show that the functions $(f \circ g) \circ h$ and $f \circ (g \circ h)$ have the same value at every number x in their domain. Thus $(f \circ g) \circ h = f \circ (g \circ h)$.

Because composition is associative, we can dispense with the parentheses and simply write $f \circ g \circ h$, which is the function whose value at a number x is $f\big(g(h(x))\big)$.

Example 6

Suppose

$$T(x) = \left|\frac{x^2 - 3}{x^2 - 7}\right|.$$

Write T as the composition of three simpler functions.

solution We want to choose reasonably simple functions f, g, and h such that $T = f \circ g \circ h$. Probably the best choice here is to take

$$f(x) = |x|, \quad g(x) = \frac{x - 3}{x - 7}, \quad h(x) = x^2.$$

With these choices, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f\big(g(h(x))\big) &= f\big(g(x^2)\big) \\ &= f\left(\frac{x^2 - 3}{x^2 - 7}\right) \\ &= \left|\frac{x^2 - 3}{x^2 - 7}\right|, \end{aligned}$$

as desired.

Here is how to come up with the choices made above for f, g, and h: Because x appears in the formula defining T only in the expression x^2, we start by taking $h(x) = x^2$. To make $(g \circ h)(x)$ equal $\frac{x^2-3}{x^2-7}$, we then take $g(x) = \frac{x-3}{x-7}$. Finally, because evaluating an absolute value is the last operation done in computing $T(x)$, we take $f(x) = |x|$.

Function Transformations as Compositions

All the function transformations discussed in Section 1.3 can be considered to be compositions with linear functions, which we now define.

Linear function

A **linear function** is a function h of the form

$$h(x) = mx + b,$$

where m and b are numbers.

The term **linear function** *is used because the graph of any such function is a line, as we will see in Chapter 2.*

Vertical function transformations can be expressed as compositions with a linear function on the left, as shown in the next example.

Example 7

Suppose f is a function. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = -2f(x) + 1.$$

(a) Write g as the composition of a linear function with f.

(b) Describe how the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f.

solution

(a) Define a linear function h by

$$h(x) = -2x + 1.$$

For x in the domain of f, we have

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= -2f(x) + 1 \\ &= h\big(f(x)\big) \\ &= (h \circ f)(x). \end{aligned}$$

Thus $g = h \circ f$.

(b) As discussed in the solution to Example 8 in Section 1.3, the graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2, then flipping the resulting graph across the horizontal axis, then shifting the resulting graph up 1 unit.

Example 8 in Section 1.3 shows a figure of this function transformation.

Horizontal function transformations can be expressed as compositions with a linear function on the right, as shown in the next example.

Example 8

Suppose f is a function. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = f(2x).$$

(a) Write g as the composition of f with a linear function.

(b) Describe how the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f.

solution

(a) Define a linear function h by

$$h(x) = 2x.$$

For x in the domain of f, we have

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= f(2x) \\ &= f\big(h(x)\big) \\ &= (f \circ h)(x). \end{aligned}$$

Thus $g = f \circ h$.

(b) As discussed in the solution to Example 6 in Section 1.3, the graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$.

Example 6 in Section 1.3 shows a figure of this function transformation.

Combinations of vertical function transformations and horizontal function transformations can be expressed as compositions with a linear function on the left and a linear function on the right, as shown in the next example.

Example 9

Suppose f is a function. Define a function g by

$$g(x) = f(2x) + 1.$$

(a) Write g as the composition of a linear function, f, and another linear function.

(b) Describe how the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f.

solution

(a) Define linear functions h and p by

$$h(x) = x + 1 \quad \text{and} \quad p(x) = 2x.$$

For x in the domain of g, we have

$$g(x) = f(2x) + 1 = h\big(f(2x)\big) = h\big(f(p(x))\big) = (h \circ f \circ p)(x).$$

Thus $g = h \circ f \circ p$.

The solution to Exercise 43 in Section 1.3 shows a figure of this function transformation.

(b) As discussed in the solution to Exercise 43 in Section 1.3, the graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, then shifting up 1 unit.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–20, evaluate the indicated expression assuming that

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad g(x) = \frac{x+1}{x+2}, \quad h(x) = |x-1|.$$

1 $(f+g)(3)$
2 $(g+h)(6)$
3 $(gh)(7)$
4 $(fh)(9)$
5 $\left(\frac{f}{h}\right)(10)$
6 $\left(\frac{h}{g}\right)(11)$
7 $(f \circ g)(4)$
8 $(f \circ g)(5)$
9 $(g \circ f)(4)$
10 $(g \circ f)(5)$
11 $(f \circ h)(-3)$
12 $(f \circ h)(-15)$
13 $(f \circ g \circ h)(0)$
14 $(h \circ g \circ f)(0)$
15 $(f \circ g)(0.23)$
16 $(f \circ g)(3.85)$
17 $(g \circ f)(0.23)$
18 $(g \circ f)(3.85)$
19 $(h \circ f)(0.3)$
20 $(h \circ f)(0.7)$

In Exercises 21–26, for the given functions f and g find formulas for (a) $f \circ g$ and (b) $g \circ f$. Simplify your results as much as possible.

21 $f(x) = x^2 + 1, \quad g(x) = \frac{1}{x}$

22 $f(x) = (x+1)^2, \quad g(x) = \frac{3}{x}$

23 $f(x) = \frac{x-1}{x+1}, \quad g(x) = x^2 + 2$

24 $f(x) = \frac{x+2}{x-3}, \quad g(x) = \frac{1}{x+1}$

25 $f(t) = \frac{t-1}{t^2+1}, \quad g(t) = \frac{t+3}{t+4}$

26 $f(t) = \frac{t-2}{t+3}, \quad g(t) = \frac{1}{(t+2)^2}$

For Exercises 27–36, evaluate the indicated expression assuming that f, g, and h are the functions completely defined by these tables:

x	$f(x)$
1	4
2	1
3	2
4	2

x	$g(x)$
1	2
2	4
3	1
4	3

x	$h(x)$
1	3
2	3
3	4
4	1

27 $(f \circ g)(1)$
28 $(f \circ g)(3)$
29 $(g \circ f)(1)$
30 $(g \circ f)(3)$
31 $(f \circ f)(2)$
32 $(f \circ f)(4)$
33 $(g \circ g)(4)$
34 $(g \circ g)(2)$
35 $(f \circ g \circ h)(2)$
36 $(h \circ g \circ f)(2)$

37 Find a number b such that $f \circ g = g \circ f$, where $f(x) = 2x + b$ and $g(x) = 3x + 4$.

38 Find a number c such that $f \circ g = g \circ f$, where $f(x) = 5x - 2$ and $g(x) = cx - 3$.

39 Suppose

$$h(x) = \left(\frac{x^2+1}{x-1} - 1\right)^3.$$

(a) If $f(x) = x^3$, then find a function g such that $h = f \circ g$.

(b) If $f(x) = (x-1)^3$, then find a function g such that $h = f \circ g$.

40 Suppose

$$h(x) = \sqrt{\frac{1}{x^2+1} + 2}.$$

(a) If $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, then find a function g such that $h = f \circ g$.

(b) If $f(x) = \sqrt{x+2}$, then find a function g such that $h = f \circ g$.

41 Suppose

$$h(t) = 2 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{t^2+1}}.$$

(a) If $g(t) = \frac{1}{t^2+1}$, then find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.

(b) If $g(t) = t^2$, then find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.

42 Suppose

$$h(t) = \left(\frac{t^2+1}{t-1} - 1\right)^3.$$

(a) If $g(t) = \frac{t^2+1}{t-1} - 1$, then find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.

(b) If $g(t) = \frac{t^2+1}{t-1}$, then find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.

In Exercises 43–46, find functions f and g, each simpler than the given function h, such that $h = f \circ g$.

43 $h(x) = (x^2-1)^2$

44 $h(x) = \sqrt{x^2-1}$

45 $h(x) = \dfrac{3}{2+x^2}$

46 $h(x) = \dfrac{2}{3+\sqrt{1+x}}$

In Exercises 47–50, find functions f, g, and h, each simpler than the given function T, such that $T = f \circ g \circ h$.

47 $T(x) = \dfrac{4}{5+x^2}$

48 $T(x) = \sqrt{4+x^2}$

49 $T(x) = \sqrt{6+\sqrt{x}}$

50 $T(x) = \dfrac{3}{\sqrt{7+\sqrt{x}}}$

For Exercises 51–56, suppose f is a function and a function g is defined by the given expression.

(a) ***Write g as the composition of f and one or two linear functions.***

(b) ***Describe how the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f.***

51 $g(x) = 3f(x) - 2$

52 $g(x) = -4f(x) - 7$

53 $g(x) = f(5x)$

54 $g(x) = f\left(-\frac{2}{3}x\right)$

55 $g(x) = 2f(3x) + 4$

56 $g(x) = -5f\left(-\frac{4}{3}x\right) - 8$

Problems

For Problems 57–61, suppose you are exchanging currency in the London airport. The currency exchange service there only makes transactions in which one of the two currencies is British pounds, but you want to exchange dollars for Euros. Thus you first need to exchange dollars for British pounds, then exchange British pounds for Euros. At the time you want to make the exchange, the function f for exchanging dollars for British pounds is given by the formula

$$f(d) = 0.69d - 1$$

and the function g for exchanging British pounds for Euros is given by the formula

$$g(p) = 1.28p - 2.$$

The subtraction of 1 or 2 in the number of British pounds or Euros that you receive is the fee charged by the currency exchange service for each transaction.

57 Is the function describing the exchange of dollars for Euros $f \circ g$ or $g \circ f$? Explain your answer in terms of which function is evaluated first when computing a value for a composition.

58 Find a formula for the function given by your answer to Problem 57.

59 How many Euros would you receive for exchanging \$100 after going through this two-step exchange process?

60 How many Euros would you receive for exchanging \$200 after going through this two-step exchange process?

61 Which process gives you more Euros: exchanging \$100 for Euros twice or exchanging \$200 for Euros once?

62 Suppose $f(x) = ax + b$ and $g(x) = cx + d$, where a, b, c, and d are numbers. Show that $f \circ g = g \circ f$ if and only if $d(a-1) = b(c-1)$.

63 Suppose f and g are functions. Show that the composition $f \circ g$ has the same domain as g if and only if the range of g is contained in the domain of f.

64 Show that the sum of two even functions (with the same domain) is an even function.

65 Show that the product of two even functions (with the same domain) is an even function.

66 True or false: The product of an even function and an odd function (with the same domain) is an odd function. Explain your answer.

67 True or false: The sum of an even function and an odd function (with the same domain) is an odd function. Explain your answer.

68 Suppose g is an even function and f is any function. Show that $f \circ g$ is an even function.

69 Suppose f is an even function and g is an odd function. Show that $f \circ g$ is an even function.

70 Suppose f and g are both odd functions. Is the composition $f \circ g$ even, odd, or neither? Explain.

71 Show that if f, g, and h are functions, then

$$(f+g)\circ h = f\circ h + g\circ h.$$

72 Find functions f, g, and h such that

$$f\circ(g+h) \neq f\circ g + f\circ h.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–20, evaluate the indicated expression assuming that

$$f(x)=\sqrt{x},\quad g(x)=\frac{x+1}{x+2},\quad h(x)=|x-1|.$$

1 $(f+g)(3)$

solution $(f+g)(3) = f(3)+g(3) = \sqrt{3}+\frac{4}{5}$

3 $(gh)(7)$

solution $(gh)(7) = g(7)h(7) = \frac{8}{9}\cdot 6 = \frac{16}{3}$

5 $\left(\frac{f}{h}\right)(10)$

solution $\left(\frac{f}{h}\right)(10) = \frac{f(10)}{h(10)} = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{9}$

7 $(f\circ g)(4)$

solution $(f\circ g)(4) = f\big(g(4)\big) = f(\frac{5}{6}) = \sqrt{\frac{5}{6}}$

9 $(g\circ f)(4)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(g\circ f)(4) &= g\big(f(4)\big)\\ &= g(\sqrt{4}) = g(2) = \tfrac{2+1}{2+2} = \tfrac{3}{4}\end{aligned}$$

11 $(f\circ h)(-3)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f\circ h)(-3) &= f\big(h(-3)\big) = f(|-3-1|)\\ &= f(|-4|) = f(4) = \sqrt{4} = 2\end{aligned}$$

13 $(f\circ g\circ h)(0)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f\circ g\circ h)(0) &= f\big(g(h(0))\big)\\ &= f\big(g(1)\big) = f(\tfrac{2}{3}) = \sqrt{\tfrac{2}{3}}\end{aligned}$$

15 $(f\circ g)(0.23)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f\circ g)(0.23) &= f\big(g(0.23)\big) = f(\tfrac{0.23+1}{0.23+2})\\ &\approx f(0.55157) = \sqrt{0.55157} \approx 0.74268\end{aligned}$$

17 $(g\circ f)(0.23)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(g\circ f)(0.23) &= g\big(f(0.23)\big) = g(\sqrt{0.23})\\ &\approx g(0.47958) = \tfrac{0.47958+1}{0.47958+2}\\ &\approx 0.59671\end{aligned}$$

19 $(h\circ f)(0.3)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(h\circ f)(0.3) &= h\big(f(0.3)\big) = h(\sqrt{0.3})\\ &\approx h(0.547723) = |0.547723-1|\\ &= |-0.452277| = 0.452277\end{aligned}$$

In Exercises 21–26, for the given functions f and g find formulas for (a) $f\circ g$ and (b) $g\circ f$. Simplify your results as much as possible.

21 $f(x)=x^2+1,\quad g(x)=\frac{1}{x}$

solution

(a)
$$\begin{aligned}(f\circ g)(x) &= f\big(g(x)\big)\\ &= f(\tfrac{1}{x})\\ &= \left(\tfrac{1}{x}\right)^2+1\\ &= \tfrac{1}{x^2}+1\end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned}(g\circ f)(x) &= g\big(f(x)\big)\\ &= g(x^2+1)\\ &= \tfrac{1}{x^2+1}\end{aligned}$$

23 $f(x) = \dfrac{x-1}{x+1}$, $g(x) = x^2 + 2$

solution

(a)
$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(x) &= f\big(g(x)\big) \\ &= f(x^2+2) \\ &= \frac{(x^2+2)-1}{(x^2+2)+1} \\ &= \frac{x^2+1}{x^2+3}\end{aligned}$$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned}(g \circ f)(x) &= g\big(f(x)\big) \\ &= g\Big(\frac{x-1}{x+1}\Big) \\ &= \Big(\frac{x-1}{x+1}\Big)^2 + 2\end{aligned}$$

25 $f(t) = \dfrac{t-1}{t^2+1}$, $g(t) = \dfrac{t+3}{t+4}$

solution

(a) We have

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(t) &= f\big(g(t)\big) \\ &= f\big(\tfrac{t+3}{t+4}\big) \\ &= \frac{\frac{t+3}{t+4} - 1}{\big(\frac{t+3}{t+4}\big)^2 + 1} \\ &= \frac{(t+3)(t+4) - (t+4)^2}{(t+3)^2 + (t+4)^2} \\ &= \frac{t^2+7t+12-t^2-8t-16}{t^2+6t+9+t^2+8t+16} \\ &= \frac{-t-4}{2t^2+14t+25}.\end{aligned}$$

In going from the third line above to the fourth line, both numerator and denominator were multiplied by $(t+4)^2$.

(b) We have

$$\begin{aligned}(g \circ f)(t) &= g\big(f(t)\big) \\ &= g\big(\tfrac{t-1}{t^2+1}\big) \\ &= \frac{\frac{t-1}{t^2+1} + 3}{\frac{t-1}{t^2+1} + 4} \\ &= \frac{t-1+3(t^2+1)}{t-1+4(t^2+1)} \\ &= \frac{3t^2+t+2}{4t^2+t+3}.\end{aligned}$$

In going from the third line above to the fourth line, both numerator and denominator were multiplied by t^2+1.

For Exercises 27–36, evaluate the indicated expression assuming that f, g, and h are the functions completely defined by these tables:

x	$f(x)$
1	4
2	1
3	2
4	2

x	$g(x)$
1	2
2	4
3	1
4	3

x	$h(x)$
1	3
2	3
3	4
4	1

27 $(f \circ g)(1)$

solution $(f \circ g)(1) = f\big(g(1)\big) = f(2) = 1$

29 $(g \circ f)(1)$

solution $(g \circ f)(1) = g\big(f(1)\big) = g(4) = 3$

31 $(f \circ f)(2)$

solution $(f \circ f)(2) = f\big(f(2)\big) = f(1) = 4$

33 $(g \circ g)(4)$

solution $(g \circ g)(4) = g\big(g(4)\big) = g(3) = 1$

35 $(f \circ g \circ h)(2)$

solution
$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g \circ h)(2) &= f\big(g(h(2))\big) \\ &= f\big(g(3)\big) = f(1) = 4\end{aligned}$$

37 Find a number b such that $f \circ g = g \circ f$, where $f(x) = 2x + b$ and $g(x) = 3x + 4$.

solution We will compute $(f \circ g)(x)$ and $(g \circ f)(x)$, then set those two expressions equal to each other and solve for b. We begin with $(f \circ g)(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(x) &= f\big(g(x)\big) = f(3x+4) \\ &= 2(3x+4) + b = 6x + 8 + b.\end{aligned}$$

Next we compute $(g \circ f)(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned}(g \circ f)(x) &= g\big(f(x)\big) = g(2x+b) \\ &= 3(2x+b) + 4 = 6x + 3b + 4.\end{aligned}$$

Looking at the expressions for $(f \circ g)(x)$ and $(g \circ f)(x)$, we see that they equal each other if

$$8 + b = 3b + 4.$$

Solving this equation for b, we get $b = 2$.

39 Suppose

$$h(x) = \Big(\frac{x^2+1}{x-1} - 1\Big)^3.$$

(a) If $f(x) = x^3$, then find a function g such that $h = f \circ g$.

(b) If $f(x) = (x-1)^3$, then find a function g such that $h = f \circ g$.

solution

(a) We want the following equation to hold: $h(x) = f(g(x))$. Replacing h and f with the formulas for them, we have

$$\left(\frac{x^2+1}{x-1} - 1\right)^3 = (g(x))^3.$$

Looking at the equation above, we see that we want

$$g(x) = \frac{x^2+1}{x-1} - 1.$$

(b) We want the following equation to hold: $h(x) = f(g(x))$. Replacing h and f with the formulas for them, we have

$$\left(\frac{x^2+1}{x-1} - 1\right)^3 = (g(x) - 1)^3.$$

Looking at the equation above, we see that we want

$$g(x) = \frac{x^2+1}{x-1}.$$

41 Suppose

$$h(t) = 2 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{t^2+1}}.$$

(a) If $g(t) = \frac{1}{t^2+1}$, then find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.

(b) If $g(t) = t^2$, then find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.

solution

(a) We want the following equation to hold: $h(t) = f(g(t))$. Replacing h and g with the formulas for them, we have

$$2 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{t^2+1}} = f\left(\frac{1}{t^2+1}\right).$$

Looking at the equation above, we see that we want to choose $f(t) = 2 + \sqrt{t}$.

(b) We want the following equation to hold: $h(t) = f(g(t))$. Replacing h and g with the formulas for them, we have

$$2 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{t^2+1}} = f(t^2).$$

Looking at the equation above, we see that we want to choose

$$f(t) = 2 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{t+1}}.$$

In Exercises 43–46, find functions f and g, each simpler than the given function h, such that $h = f \circ g$.

43 $h(x) = (x^2-1)^2$

solution The last operation performed in the computation of $h(x)$ is squaring. Thus the most natural way to write h as a composition of two functions f and g is to choose $f(x) = x^2$, which then suggests that we choose $g(x) = x^2 - 1$.

45 $h(x) = \dfrac{3}{2+x^2}$

solution The last operation performed in the computation of $h(x)$ is dividing 3 by a certain expression. Thus the most natural way to write h as a composition of two functions f and g is to choose $f(x) = \frac{3}{x}$, which then requires that we choose $g(x) = 2 + x^2$.

In Exercises 47–50, find functions f, g, and h, each simpler than the given function T, such that $T = f \circ g \circ h$.

47 $T(x) = \dfrac{4}{5+x^2}$

solution A good solution is to take

$$f(x) = \frac{4}{x}, \quad g(x) = 5 + x, \quad h(x) = x^2.$$

49 $T(x) = \sqrt{6+\sqrt{x}}$

solution A good solution is to take

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad g(x) = 6 + x, \quad h(x) = \sqrt{x}.$$

For Exercises 51–56, suppose f is a function and a function g is defined by the given expression.

(a) ***Write g as the composition of f and one or two linear functions.***

(b) ***Describe how the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f.***

51 $g(x) = 3f(x) - 2$

solution

(a) Define a linear function h by

$$h(x) = 3x - 2.$$

Then $g = h \circ f$.

(b) The graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 3, then shifting down 2 units.

53 $g(x) = f(5x)$

solution

(a) Define a linear function h by

$$h(x) = 5x.$$

Then $g = f \circ h$.

(b) The graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{5}$.

55 $g(x) = 2f(3x) + 4$

solution

(a) Define linear functions h and p by

$$h(x) = 2x + 4 \quad \text{and} \quad p(x) = 3x$$

Then $g = h \circ f \circ p$.

(b) The graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{3}$, then vertically stretching by a factor of 2, then shifting up 4 units.

1.5 Inverse Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- determine which functions have inverses;
- find a formula for an inverse function (when possible);
- use the composition of a function and its inverse to check that an inverse function has been found correctly;
- find the domain and range of an inverse function.

The Inverse Problem

The concept of an inverse function will play a key role in this book in defining roots, logarithms, and inverse trigonometric functions. To motivate this concept, we begin with some simple examples.

Suppose f is the function defined by $f(x) = 3x$. Given a value of x, we can find the value of $f(x)$ by using the formula defining f. For example, taking $x = 5$, we see that $f(5)$ equals 15.

In the inverse problem, we are given the value of $f(x)$ and asked to find the value of x. The following example illustrates the idea of an inverse problem.

Example 1

Suppose f is the function defined by

$$f(x) = 3x.$$

(a) Find x such that $f(x) = 6$.

(b) Find x such that $f(x) = 300$.

(c) For each number y, find a number x such that $f(x) = y$.

solution

(a) Solving the equation $3x = 6$ for x, we get $x = 2$.

(b) Solving the equation $3x = 300$ for x, we get $x = 100$.

(c) Solving the equation $3x = y$ for x, we get $x = \frac{y}{3}$.

For each number y, part (c) of the example above asks for the number x such that $f(x) = y$. That number x is called $f^{-1}(y)$ (pronounced "f inverse of y"). The example above shows that if $f(x) = 3x$, then $f^{-1}(6) = 2$ and $f^{-1}(300) = 100$ and, more generally, $f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y}{3}$ for every number y.

Inverse functions will be defined more precisely after we work through some examples.

To see how inverse functions can arise in real-world problems, suppose you know that a temperature of x degrees Celsius corresponds to $\frac{9}{5}x + 32$ degrees Fahrenheit (we will derive this formula in Example 5 in Section 2.1). In other words, you know that the function f that converts the Celsius temperature scale to the Fahrenheit temperature scale is given by the formula

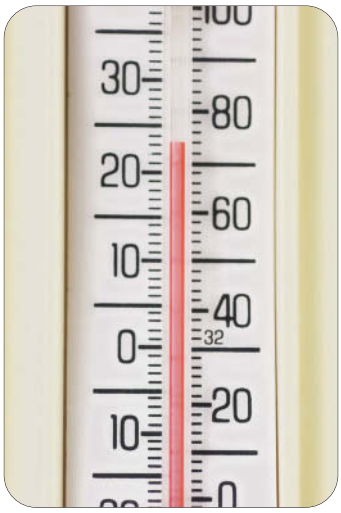
For example, because $f(20) = 68$, this formula shows that 20 degrees Celsius corresponds to 68 degrees Fahrenheit.

$$f(x) = \frac{9}{5}x + 32.$$

If you are given a temperature on the Fahrenheit scale and asked to convert it to Celsius, then you are facing the problem of finding the inverse of the function above, as shown in the following example.

Example 2

The Fahrenheit temperature scale was invented around 1712 by the German physicist and engineer Daniel Fahrenheit.



This thermometer shows Celsius degrees on the left, Fahrenheit degrees on the right.

The house in what is now the Polish city of Gdańsk in which Daniel Fahrenheit lived as a child.

(a) Convert 95 degrees Fahrenheit to the Celsius scale.

(b) For each temperature y on the Fahrenheit scale, what is the corresponding temperature on the Celsius scale?

solution Let

$$f(x) = \frac{9}{5}x + 32.$$

Thus x degrees Celsius corresponds to $f(x)$ degrees Fahrenheit.

(a) We need to find x such that $f(x) = 95$. Solving the equation $\frac{9}{5}x + 32 = 95$ for x, we get $x = 35$. Thus 35 degrees Celsius corresponds to 95 degrees Fahrenheit.

(b) For each number y, we need to find x such that $f(x) = y$. Solving the equation

$$\frac{9}{5}x + 32 = y$$

for x, we get

$$x = \frac{5}{9}(y - 32).$$

Thus $\frac{5}{9}(y - 32)$ degrees Celsius corresponds to y degrees Fahrenheit.

In the example above we have $f(x) = \frac{9}{5}x + 32$. For each number y, part (b) of the example above asks for the number x such that $f(x) = y$. We call that number $f^{-1}(y)$. Part (a) of the example above shows that $f^{-1}(95) = 35$; part (b) shows more generally that

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{5}{9}(y - 32).$$

In this example, the function f converts from Celsius to Fahrenheit, and the function f^{-1} goes in the other direction, converting from Fahrenheit to Celsius.

One-to-one Functions

To see the difficulties that can arise with inverse problems, consider the function g, with domain the set of real numbers, defined by the formula

$$g(x) = x^2.$$

Suppose we are told that x is a number such that $g(x) = 16$, and we are asked to find the value of x. Of course $g(4) = 16$, but also $g(-4) = 16$. Thus with the information given we have no way to determine a unique value of x such that $g(x) = 16$. Hence in this case an inverse function does not exist.

The difficulty with the lack of a unique solution to an inverse problem can often be fixed by changing the domain. For example, consider the function f, with domain the set of nonnegative numbers (a number is called **nonnegative** if it is either positive or 0), defined by the formula

$$f(x) = x^2.$$

Note that f is defined by the same formula as g in the previous paragraph, but these two functions are not the same because they have different domains. Now if we are told that x is a number in the domain of f such that $f(x) = 16$ and we are asked to find x, we can assert that $x = 4$. More generally, given any nonnegative number y, we can ask for the number x in the domain of f such that $f(x) = y$. This number x, which depends on y, is denoted $f^{-1}(y)$, and is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}.$$

We saw earlier that the function g defined by $g(x) = x^2$ (and with domain equal to the set of real numbers) does not have an inverse because, in particular, the equation $g(x) = 16$ has more than one solution. A function is called **one-to-one** if this situation does not arise.

One-to-one

A function f is called **one-to-one** if for each number y in the range of f there is exactly one number x in the domain of f such that $f(x) = y$.

Functions that are one-to-one are precisely the functions that have inverses.

For example, the function g, with domain the set of real numbers, defined by $g(x) = x^2$ is not one-to-one because there are two distinct numbers x in the domain of g such that $f(x) = 16$ (we could have used any positive number instead of 16 to show that g is not one-to-one). In contrast, the function f, with domain the set of nonnegative numbers, defined by $f(x) = x^2$ is one-to-one.

The set of nonnegative numbers is the interval $[0, \infty)$.

The Definition of an Inverse Function

We are now ready to give the formal definition of an inverse function.

Inverse function

Suppose f is a one-to-one function.

- If y is in the range of f, then $f^{-1}(y)$ is defined to be the number x such that $f(x) = y$.
- The function f^{-1} is called the **inverse function** of f.

Short version:

- $f^{-1}(y) = x$ means $f(x) = y$.

Example of the short version:
$\sqrt{y} = x$ *means* $x^2 = y$.
Here f is the function whose domain is the set of nonnegative numbers, $f(x) = x^2$, and $f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}$.

Example 3

Suppose $f(x) = 2x + 3$.

(a) Evaluate $f^{-1}(11)$.

(b) Find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$.

solution

(a) To evaluate $f^{-1}(11)$, we must find the number x such that $f(x) = 11$. In other words, we must solve the equation $2x + 3 = 11$. The solution to this equation is $x = 4$. Thus $f(4) = 11$, and hence $f^{-1}(11) = 4$.

(b) Fix a number y. To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we must find the number x such that $f(x) = y$. In other words, we must solve the equation

$$2x + 3 = y$$

for x. The solution to this equation is $x = \frac{y-3}{2}$. Thus $f(\frac{y-3}{2}) = y$, and hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y-3}{2}.$$

The inverse function is not defined for a function that is not one-to-one.

If f is a one-to-one function, then for each y in the range of f we have a uniquely defined number $f^{-1}(y)$. Thus f^{-1} is itself a function.

Think of f^{-1} as undoing whatever f does. This list gives some examples of a function f and its inverse f^{-1}.

f	f^{-1}
$f(x) = x + 2$	$f^{-1}(y) = y - 2$
$f(x) = 3x$	$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y}{3}$
$f(x) = x^2$	$f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}$
$f(x) = \sqrt{x}$	$f^{-1}(y) = y^2$

The first entry in the list above shows that if f is the function that adds 2 to a number, then f^{-1} is the function that subtracts 2 from a number.

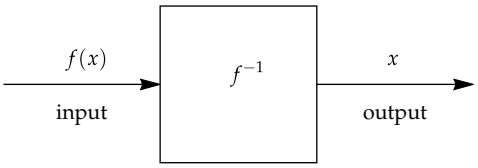
The second entry in the list above shows that if f is the function that multiplies a number by 3, then f^{-1} is the function that divides a number by 3.

Similarly, the third entry in the list above shows that if f is the function that squares a number, then f^{-1} is the function that takes the square root of a number (here the domain of f is assumed to be the nonnegative numbers, so that we have a one-to-one function).

Finally, the fourth entry in the list above shows that if f is the function that takes the square root of a number, then f^{-1} is the function that squares a number (here the domain of f is assumed to be the nonnegative numbers, because the square root of a negative number is not defined as a real number).

In Section 1.1 we saw that a function f can be thought of as a machine that takes an input x and produces an output $f(x)$. Similarly, we can think of f^{-1} as a machine that takes an input $f(x)$ and produces an output x.

Thought of as a machine, f^{-1} reverses the action of f.



The procedure for finding a formula for an inverse function can be described as follows.

Finding a formula for an inverse function

Suppose f is a one-to-one function. To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, solve the equation $f(x) = y$ for x in terms of y.

Example 4

Suppose

$$f(x) = \frac{4x + 5}{2x + 3}$$

for every $x \neq -\frac{3}{2}$. Find a formula for f^{-1}.

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we need to solve the equation

$$\frac{4x + 5}{2x + 3} = y$$

for x in terms of y. This can be done be multiplying both sides of the equation above by $2x + 3$, getting

$$4x + 5 = 2xy + 3y,$$

which can then be rewritten as

$$(4-2y)x = 3y-5,$$

which can then be solved for x, getting

$$x = \frac{3y-5}{4-2y}.$$

Thus

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{3y-5}{4-2y}$$

for every $y \neq 2$.

The equation $f(x) = 2$ has no solution (try to solve it to see why), and thus $f^{-1}(2)$ is not defined.

The Domain and Range of an Inverse Function

The domain and range of a one-to-one function are nicely related to the domain and range of its inverse. To understand this relationship, consider a one-to-one function f. Note that $f^{-1}(y)$ is defined precisely when y is in the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f.

Similarly, because f^{-1} reverses the action of f, a moment's thought shows that the range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. We can summarize the relationship between the domains and ranges of functions and their inverses as follows.

Domain and range of an inverse function

If f is a one-to-one function, then

- the domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f;
- the range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f.

Example 5

Suppose the domain of f is the interval $[0,2]$, with f defined on this domain by the equation $f(x) = x^2$.

(a) What is the range of f?

(b) Find a formula for the inverse function f^{-1}.

(c) What is the domain of the inverse function f^{-1}?

(d) What is the range of the inverse function f^{-1}?

solution

(a) The range of f is the interval $[0,4]$ because that interval is equal to the set of squares of numbers in the interval $[0,2]$.

(b) Suppose y is in the range of f, which is the interval $[0,4]$. To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we have to solve for x in the equation $f(x) = y$. In other words, we have to solve the equation $x^2 = y$ for x. The solution x must be in the domain of f, which is $[0,2]$, and in particular x must be nonnegative. Thus we have $x = \sqrt{y}$. In other words, $f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}$.

(c) The domain of the inverse function f^{-1} is the interval $[0,4]$, which is the range of f.

(d) The range of the inverse function f^{-1} is the interval $[0,2]$, which is the domain of f.

This example illustrates how the inverse function interchanges the domain and range of the original function.

The Composition of a Function and Its Inverse

The following example will help motivate our next result.

Example 6

Suppose f is the function whose domain is the set of real numbers, with f defined by $f(x) = 2x + 3$.
(a) Find a formula for $f \circ f^{-1}$. (b) Find a formula for $f^{-1} \circ f$.

solution As we saw in Example 3, $f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y-3}{2}$. Thus we have the following:

(a) $(f \circ f^{-1})(y) = f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big) = f\big(\frac{y-3}{2}\big) = 2\big(\frac{y-3}{2}\big) + 3 = y$

(b) $(f^{-1} \circ f)(x) = f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = f^{-1}(2x+3) = \frac{(2x+3)-3}{2} = x$

Similar equations hold for the composition of any one-to-one function and its inverse.

The composition of a function and its inverse

Suppose f is a one-to-one function. Then

- $f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big) = y$ for every y in the range of f;
- $f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = x$ for every x in the domain of f.

Example:

$$(\sqrt{y})^2 = y$$
$$\sqrt{x^2} = x$$

for all nonnegative numbers x and y. Here f is the function whose domain is the set of nonnegative numbers, $f(x) = x^2$, and $f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}$.

To see why these results hold, first suppose y is a number in the range of f. Let $x = f^{-1}(y)$. Then $f(x) = y$. Thus

$$f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big) = f(x) = y,$$

as claimed above.

To verify the second conclusion in the box above, suppose x is a number in the domain of f. Let $y = f(x)$. Then $f^{-1}(y) = x$. Thus

$$f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = f^{-1}(y) = x,$$

as claimed.

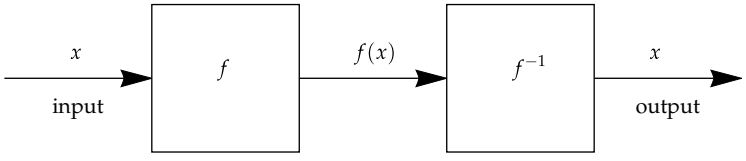
Recall that I is the identity function defined by $I(x) = x$ (where we have left the domain vague), or we could equally well define I by the equation $I(y) = y$. The results in the box above could be expressed by the equations

$$f \circ f^{-1} = I \quad \text{and} \quad f^{-1} \circ f = I.$$

Here the I in the first equation above has domain equal to the range of f (which equals the domain of f^{-1}), and the I in the second equation above has the same domain as f. The equations above explain why the terminology "inverse" is used for the inverse function: f^{-1} is the inverse of f under composition in the sense that the composition of f and f^{-1} in either order gives the identity function.

The figure below illustrates the equation $f^{-1} \circ f = I$, thinking of f and f^{-1} as machines.

Here we start with x as input and end with x as output. Thus this figure illustrates the equation $f^{-1} \circ f = I$.



We start with x as the input. The first machine produces output $f(x)$, which then becomes the input for the second machine. When $f(x)$ is input into the second machine, the output is x because the second machine, which is based on f^{-1}, reverses the action of f.

Suppose you need to compute the inverse of a function f. As discussed earlier, to find a formula for f^{-1} you need to solve the equation $f(x) = y$ for x in terms of y. Once you have obtained a formula for f^{-1}, a good way to check your result is to verify one or both of the equations in the box above.

Example 7

Suppose

$$f(x) = \frac{9}{5}x + 32,$$

which is the formula for converting the Celsius temperature scale to the Fahrenheit scale. We computed earlier that the inverse to this function is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{5}{9}(y - 32).$$

Check that this formula is correct by verifying that $f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big) = y$ for every real number y.

solution To check that we have the right formula for f^{-1}, we compute as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big) &= f\big(\tfrac{5}{9}(y - 32)\big) \\ &= \tfrac{9}{5}\big(\tfrac{5}{9}(y - 32)\big) + 32 \\ &= (y - 32) + 32 \\ &= y. \end{aligned}$$

To be doubly sure that we are not making an algebraic manipulation error, we could also verify that

$$f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = x$$

for every real number x. However, one check is usually good enough.

Thus $f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big) = y$, which means that our formula for f^{-1} is correct. If our computation of $f\big(f^{-1}(y)\big)$ had simplified to anything other than y, we would know that we had made a mistake in computing f^{-1}.

Comments About Notation

The notation $y = f(x)$ leads naturally to the notation $f^{-1}(y)$. Recall, however, that in defining a function the variable is simply a placeholder. Thus we could use other letters, including x, as the variable for the inverse function. For example, consider the function f, with domain equal to the set of positive numbers, defined by the equation

$$f(x) = x^2.$$

As we know, the inverse function is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y}.$$

However, the inverse function could also be characterized by the formula

$$f^{-1}(x) = \sqrt{x}.$$

Other letters could also be used as the placeholder. For example, we might also characterize the inverse function by the formula $f^{-1}(t) = \sqrt{t}$.

The notation f^{-1} for the inverse of a function (which means the inverse under composition) should not be confused with the multiplicative inverse $\frac{1}{f}$. In other words, $f^{-1} \neq \frac{1}{f}$. However, if the exponent -1 is placed anywhere other than immediately after a function symbol, then it should probably be interpreted as a multiplicative inverse.

Do not confuse $f^{-1}(y)$ with $\big(f(y)\big)^{-1}$.

Example 8

Suppose $f(x) = x^2 - 1$, with the domain of f being the set of positive numbers.

(a) Evaluate $f^{-1}(8)$.

(b) Evaluate $\big(f(8)\big)^{-1}$.

(c) Evaluate $f(8^{-1})$.

solution

Notice that the answers to (a), (b), and (c) differ from one another.

(a) To evaluate $f^{-1}(8)$, we must find a positive number x such that $f(x) = 8$. In other words, we must solve the equation $x^2 - 1 = 8$. The solution to this equation is $x = 3$. Thus $f(3) = 8$, and hence $f^{-1}(8) = 3$.

(b)
$$\big(f(8)\big)^{-1} = \frac{1}{f(8)} = \frac{1}{8^2-1} = \frac{1}{63}$$

(c)
$$f(8^{-1}) = f\left(\tfrac{1}{8}\right) = \left(\tfrac{1}{8}\right)^2 - 1 = \frac{1}{64} - 1 = -\frac{63}{64}$$

When dealing with real-world problems, you may want to choose the notation to reflect the context. The next example illustrates this idea, with the use of the variable d to denote distance and t to denote time.

Example 9

Suppose you ran a marathon (26.2 miles) in exactly 4 hours. Let f be the function with domain $[0, 26.2]$ such that $f(d)$ is the number of minutes since the start of the race at which you reached distance d miles from the starting line.

(a) What is the range of f?

(b) What is the domain of the inverse function f^{-1}?

(c) What is the meaning of $f^{-1}(t)$ for a number t in the domain of f^{-1}?

solution

(a) Because 4 hours equals 240 minutes, the range of f is the interval $[0, 240]$.

(b) As usual, the domain of f^{-1} is the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $[0, 240]$.

(c) The function f^{-1} reverses the roles of the input and the output as compared to the function f. Thus $f^{-1}(t)$ is the distance in miles you had run from the starting line at time t minutes after the start of the race.

Philippides giving news to the people of Athens in 490 BC of the Greek victory over Persia at the Battle of Marathon. According to legend, Philippides ran the 26 miles from Marathon to Athens, leading to our modern term for a race of that length.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–8, check your answer by evaluating the appropriate function at your answer.

1 Suppose $f(x) = 4x + 6$. Evaluate $f^{-1}(5)$.

2 Suppose $f(x) = 7x - 5$. Evaluate $f^{-1}(-3)$.

3 Suppose $g(x) = \frac{x+2}{x+1}$. Evaluate $g^{-1}(3)$.

4 Suppose $g(x) = \frac{x-3}{x-4}$. Evaluate $g^{-1}(2)$.

5 Suppose $f(x) = 3x + 2$. Find a formula for f^{-1}.

6 Suppose $f(x) = 8x - 9$. Find a formula for f^{-1}.

7 Suppose $h(t) = \frac{1+t}{2-t}$. Find a formula for h^{-1}.

8 Suppose $h(t) = \frac{2-3t}{4+5t}$. Find a formula for h^{-1}.

9 Suppose $f(x) = 2 + \frac{x-5}{x+6}$.

(a) Evaluate $f^{-1}(4)$.

(b) Evaluate $\big(f(4)\big)^{-1}$.

(c) Evaluate $f(4^{-1})$.

10 Suppose $h(x) = 3 - \frac{x+4}{x-7}$.

(a) Evaluate $h^{-1}(9)$.

(b) Evaluate $\big(h(9)\big)^{-1}$.

(c) Evaluate $h(9^{-1})$.

11 Suppose $g(x) = x^2 + 4$, with the domain of g being the set of positive numbers. Evaluate $g^{-1}(7)$.

12 Suppose $g(x) = 3x^2 - 5$, with the domain of g being the set of positive numbers. Evaluate $g^{-1}(8)$.

13 Suppose $h(x) = 5x^2 + 7$, where the domain of h is the set of positive numbers. Find a formula for h^{-1}.

14 Suppose $h(x) = 3x^2 - 4$, where the domain of h is the set of positive numbers. Find a formula for h^{-1}.

For each of the functions f given in Exercises 15–24:

(a) ***Find the domain of f.***

(b) ***Find the range of f.***

(c) ***Find a formula for f^{-1}.***

(d) ***Find the domain of f^{-1}.***

(e) ***Find the range of f^{-1}.***

You can check your solutions to part (c) by verifying that $f^{-1} \circ f = I$ and $f \circ f^{-1} = I$ (recall that I is the function defined by $I(x) = x$).

15 $f(x) = 3x + 5$

16 $f(x) = 2x - 7$

17 $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{3x+2}$

18 $f(x) = \dfrac{4}{5x-3}$

19 $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{x+3}$

20 $f(x) = \dfrac{3x-2}{4x+5}$

21 $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 4x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$

22 $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ x^2 & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$

23 $f(x) = x^2 + 8$, where the domain of f equals $(0, \infty)$.

24 $f(x) = 2x^2 + 5$, where the domain of f equals $(0, \infty)$.

25 Suppose $f(x) = x^5 + 2x^3$. Which of the numbers listed below equals $f^{-1}(8.10693)$?

$$1.1, \quad 1.2, \quad 1.3, \quad 1.4$$

[*For this particular function, it is not possible to find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$.*]

26 Suppose $f(x) = 3x^5 + 4x^3$. Which of the numbers listed below equals $f^{-1}(0.28672)$?

$$0.2, \quad 0.3, \quad 0.4, \quad 0.5$$

[*For this particular function, it is not possible to find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$.*]

For Exercises 27–28, use the U.S. 2016 federal income tax function for a single person as defined in Example 2 of Section 1.1.

27 What is the taxable income of a single person who paid $10,000 in federal taxes for 2016?

28 What is the taxable income of a single person who paid $20,000 in federal taxes for 2016?

29 Suppose $F(x) = x^8 + 5x^2$. Evaluate

$$\big(F^{-1}(3)\big)^8 + 5\big(F^{-1}(3)\big)^2.$$

30 Suppose $G(x) = 9x^5 - 4x$. Evaluate

$$9\big(G^{-1}(6)\big)^5 - 4G^{-1}(6).$$

31 Suppose $g(x) = x^7 + x^3$. Evaluate

$$\big(g^{-1}(4)\big)^7 + \big(g^{-1}(4)\big)^3 + 1.$$

32 Suppose $g(x) = 8x^9 + 7x^3$. Evaluate

$$8\big(g^{-1}(5)\big)^9 + 7\big(g^{-1}(5)\big)^3 - 3.$$

33 Suppose $F^{-1}(y) = 2y + 3$. Evaluate $F(4)$.

34 Suppose $F^{-1}(y) = 3y - 5$. Evaluate $F(2)$.

Problems

35 The exact number of meters in y yards is $f(y)$, where f is the function defined by

$$f(y) = 0.9144y.$$

(a) Find a formula for $f^{-1}(m)$.

(b) What is the meaning of $f^{-1}(m)$?

36 The exact number of kilometers in M miles is $f(M)$, where f is the function defined by

$$f(M) = 1.609344M.$$

(a) Find a formula for $f^{-1}(k)$.

(b) What is the meaning of $f^{-1}(k)$?

37 A temperature F degrees Fahrenheit corresponds to $g(F)$ degrees on the Kelvin temperature scale, where

$$g(F) = \frac{5}{9}F + 255.37.$$

(a) Find a formula for $g^{-1}(K)$.

(b) What is the meaning of $g^{-1}(K)$?

(c) Evaluate $g^{-1}(0)$. (This is absolute zero, the lowest possible temperature, because all molecular activity stops at 0 degrees Kelvin.)

38 Suppose g is the federal income tax function given by Example 2 of Section 1.1. What is the meaning of the function g^{-1}?

39 Suppose f is the function whose domain is the set of real numbers, with f defined on this domain by the formula

$$f(x) = |x + 6|.$$

Explain why f is not a one-to-one function.

40 Suppose g is the function whose domain is the interval $[-2, 2]$, with g defined on this domain by the formula

$$g(x) = (5x^2 + 3)^{7777}.$$

Explain why g is not a one-to-one function.

41 Show that if f is the function defined by $f(x) = mx + b$, where $m \neq 0$, then f is a one-to-one function.

42 Show that if f is the function defined by $f(x) = mx + b$, where $m \neq 0$, then the inverse function f^{-1} is defined by the formula $f^{-1}(y) = \frac{1}{m}y - \frac{b}{m}$.

43 Consider the function h whose domain is the interval $[-4, 4]$, with h defined on this domain by the formula

$$h(x) = (2 + x)^2.$$

Does h have an inverse? If so, find it, along with its domain and range. If not, explain why not.

44 Consider the function h whose domain is the interval $[-3, 3]$, with h defined on this domain by the formula

$$h(x) = (3 + x)^2.$$

Does h have an inverse? If so, find it, along with its domain and range. If not, explain why not.

45 Suppose f is a one-to-one function. Explain why the inverse of the inverse of f equals f. In other words, explain why

$$(f^{-1})^{-1} = f.$$

46 The function f defined by

$$f(x) = x^5 + x^3$$

is one-to-one (here the domain of f is the set of real numbers). Compute $f^{-1}(y)$ for four different values of y of your choice.
[*For this particular function, it is not possible to find a formula for* $f^{-1}(y)$.]

47 Suppose f is a function whose domain equals $\{2, 4, 7, 8, 9\}$ and whose range equals $\{-3, 0, 2, 6, 7\}$. Explain why f is a one-to-one function.

48 Suppose f is a function whose domain equals $\{2, 4, 7, 8, 9\}$ and whose range equals $\{-3, 0, 2, 6\}$. Explain why f is not a one-to-one function.

49 Show that the composition of two one-to-one functions is a one-to-one function.

50 Give an example to show that the sum of two one-to-one functions is not necessarily a one-to-one function.

51 Give an example to show that the product of two one-to-one functions is not necessarily a one-to-one function.

52 Give an example of a function f such that the domain of f and the range of f both equal the set of integers, but f is not a one-to-one function.

53 Give an example of a one-to-one function whose domain equals the set of integers and whose range equals the set of positive integers.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–8, check your answer by evaluating the appropriate function at your answer.

1 Suppose $f(x) = 4x + 6$. Evaluate $f^{-1}(5)$.

solution We need to find a number x such that $f(x) = 5$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$4x + 6 = 5.$$

This equation has solution $x = -\frac{1}{4}$. Thus we have $f^{-1}(5) = -\frac{1}{4}$.

check To check that $f^{-1}(5) = -\frac{1}{4}$, we need to verify that $f(-\frac{1}{4}) = 5$. We have

$$f(-\tfrac{1}{4}) = 4(-\tfrac{1}{4}) + 6 = 5,$$

as desired.

3 Suppose $g(x) = \frac{x+2}{x+1}$. Evaluate $g^{-1}(3)$.

solution We need to find a number x such that $g(x) = 3$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$\frac{x+2}{x+1} = 3.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $x+1$ gives the equation

$$x+2 = 3x+3,$$

which has solution $x = -\frac{1}{2}$. Thus $g^{-1}(3) = -\frac{1}{2}$.

check To check that $g^{-1}(3) = -\frac{1}{2}$, we need to verify that $g(-\frac{1}{2}) = 3$. We have

$$g\big(-\tfrac{1}{2}\big) = \frac{-\frac{1}{2}+2}{-\frac{1}{2}+1} = \frac{\frac{3}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}} = 3,$$

as desired.

5 Suppose $f(x) = 3x+2$. Find a formula for f^{-1}.

solution For each number y, we need to find a number x such that $f(x) = y$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$3x+2 = y$$

for x in terms of y. Subtracting 2 from both sides of the equation above and then dividing both sides by 3 gives

$$x = \frac{y-2}{3}.$$

Thus

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y-2}{3}$$

for every number y.

check To check that $f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y-2}{3}$, we need to verify that $f(\frac{y-2}{3}) = y$. We have

$$f\big(\tfrac{y-2}{3}\big) = 3\big(\tfrac{y-2}{3}\big) + 2$$
$$= y,$$

as desired.

7 Suppose $h(t) = \frac{1+t}{2-t}$. Find a formula for h^{-1}.

solution For each number y, we need to find a number t such that $h(t) = y$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$\frac{1+t}{2-t} = y$$

for t in terms of y. Multiplying both sides of this equation by $2-t$ and then collecting all the terms with t on one side gives

$$t+yt = 2y-1.$$

Rewriting the left side as $(1+y)t$ and then dividing both sides by $1+y$ gives $t = \frac{2y-1}{1+y}$. Thus

$$h^{-1}(y) = \frac{2y-1}{1+y}$$

for every number $y \neq -1$.

check To check that $h^{-1}(y) = \frac{2y-1}{1+y}$, we need to verify that $h\big(\frac{2y-1}{1+y}\big) = y$. We have

$$h\Big(\frac{2y-1}{1+y}\Big) = \frac{1+\frac{2y-1}{1+y}}{2-\frac{2y-1}{1+y}}.$$

Multiplying numerator and denominator of the expression on the right by $1+y$ gives

$$h\Big(\frac{2y-1}{1+y}\Big) = \frac{1+y+2y-1}{2+2y-2y+1} = \frac{3y}{3} = y,$$

as desired.

9 Suppose $f(x) = 2 + \frac{x-5}{x+6}$.

(a) Evaluate $f^{-1}(4)$.

(b) Evaluate $\big(f(4)\big)^{-1}$.

(c) Evaluate $f(4^{-1})$.

solution

(a) We need to find a number x such that $f(x) = 4$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$2 + \frac{x-5}{x+6} = 4.$$

Subtracting 2 from both sides and then multiplying both sides by $x+6$ gives the equation

$$x-5 = 2x+12,$$

which has solution $x = -17$. Thus $f^{-1}(4) = -17$.

(b) Note that

$$f(4) = 2 + \frac{4-5}{4+6} = \frac{20}{10} - \frac{1}{10} = \frac{19}{10}.$$

Thus $\big(f(4)\big)^{-1} = \frac{10}{19}$.

(c)

$$f(4^{-1}) = f\big(\tfrac{1}{4}\big) = 2 + \frac{\frac{1}{4}-5}{\frac{1}{4}+6} = \frac{31}{25}$$

11 Suppose $g(x) = x^2+4$, with the domain of g being the set of positive numbers. Evaluate $g^{-1}(7)$.

solution We need to find a positive number x such that $g(x) = 7$. In other words, we need to find a positive solution to the equation

$$x^2+4 = 7,$$

which is equivalent to the equation

$$x^2 = 3.$$

The equation above has solutions

$$x = \sqrt{3} \quad \text{and} \quad x = -\sqrt{3}.$$

Because the domain of g is the set of positive numbers, the value of x that we seek must be positive. The second solution above is negative; thus it can be discarded, giving $g^{-1}(7) = \sqrt{3}$.

13 Suppose $h(x) = 5x^2 + 7$, where the domain of h is the set of positive numbers. Find a formula for h^{-1}.

solution For each number y, we need to find a number x such that $h(x) = y$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$5x^2 + 7 = y$$

for x in terms of y. Subtracting 7 from both sides of the equation above and then dividing both sides by 5 and taking square roots gives

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{y-7}{5}},$$

where we chose the positive square root because x is required to be a positive number. Thus

$$h^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{\frac{y-7}{5}}$$

for every number $y > 7$ (the restriction that $y > 7$ is required to ensure that we get a positive number when evaluating the formula above).

For each of the functions f given in Exercises 15–24:

- **(a)** ***Find the domain of f.***
- **(b)** ***Find the range of f.***
- **(c)** ***Find a formula for f^{-1}.***
- **(d)** ***Find the domain of f^{-1}.***
- **(e)** ***Find the range of f^{-1}.***

You can check your solutions to part (c) by verifying that $f^{-1} \circ f = I$ and $f \circ f^{-1} = I$ (recall that I is the function defined by $I(x) = x$).

15 $f(x) = 3x + 5$

solution

(a) The expression $3x + 5$ makes sense for all real numbers x. Thus the domain of f is the set of real numbers.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that

$$y = 3x + 5$$

for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a real number x. Solving the equation above for x, we get

$$x = \frac{y-5}{3}.$$

The expression above on the right makes sense for every real number y. Thus the range of f is the set of real numbers.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{y-5}{3}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

17 $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{3x+2}$

solution

(a) The expression $\frac{1}{3x+2}$ makes sense except when $3x + 2 = 0$. Solving this equation for x gives $x = -\frac{2}{3}$. Thus the domain of f is the set $\{x : x \neq -\frac{2}{3}\}$.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that

$$y = \frac{1}{3x+2}$$

for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a real number $x \neq -\frac{2}{3}$. To solve this equation for x, multiply both sides by $3x + 2$, getting

$$3xy + 2y = 1.$$

Now subtract $2y$ from both sides, then divide by $3y$, getting

$$x = \frac{1-2y}{3y}.$$

The expression above on the right makes sense for every real number $y \neq 0$ and produces a number $x \neq -\frac{2}{3}$ (because the equation $-\frac{2}{3} = \frac{1-2y}{3y}$ leads to nonsense, as you can verify if you try to solve it for y). Thus the range of f is the set $\{y : y \neq 0\}$.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{1-2y}{3y}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set $\{y : y \neq 0\}$.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set $\{x : x \neq -\frac{2}{3}\}$.

19 $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{x+3}$

solution

(a) The expression $\frac{2x}{x+3}$ makes sense except when $x = -3$. Thus the domain of f is the set $\{x : x \neq -3\}$.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that

$$y = \frac{2x}{x+3}$$

for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a real number $x \neq -3$. To solve this equation for x, multiply both sides by $x + 3$, getting

$$xy + 3y = 2x.$$

Now subtract xy from both sides, getting

$$3y = 2x - xy = x(2 - y).$$

Dividing by $2 - y$ gives

$$x = \frac{3y}{2-y}.$$

The expression above on the right makes sense for every real number $y \neq 2$ and produces a number $x \neq -3$ (because the equation $-3 = \frac{3y}{2-y}$ leads to nonsense, as you can verify if you try to solve it for y). Thus the range of f is the set $\{y : y \neq 2\}$.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{3y}{2-y}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set $\{y : y \neq 2\}$.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set $\{x : x \neq -3\}$.

21 $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 4x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$

solution

(a) The expression defining $f(x)$ makes sense for all real numbers x. Thus the domain of f is the set of real numbers.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that $y = f(x)$ for some real number x. From the definition of f, we see that if $y < 0$, then $y = f(\frac{y}{3})$, and if $y \geq 0$, then $y = f(\frac{y}{4})$. Thus every real number y is in the range of f. In other words, the range of f is the set of real numbers.

(c) From the paragraph above, we see that f^{-1} is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{y}{3} & \text{if } y < 0 \\ \frac{y}{4} & \text{if } y \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

23 $f(x) = x^2 + 8$, where the domain of f equals $(0, \infty)$.

solution

(a) As part of the definition of the function f, the domain has been specified to be the interval $(0, \infty)$, which is the set of positive numbers.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that

$$y = x^2 + 8$$

for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a positive number x. To solve this equation for x, subtract 8 from both sides and then take square roots of both sides, getting

$$x = \sqrt{y-8},$$

where we chose the positive square root of $y - 8$ because x is required to be a positive number.

The expression above on the right makes sense and produces a positive number x for every number $y > 8$. Thus the range of f is the interval $(8, \infty)$.

(c) The expression above shows that $f^{-1}(y) = \sqrt{y-8}$.

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $(8, \infty)$.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the interval $(0, \infty)$, which is the set of positive numbers.

25 Suppose $f(x) = x^5 + 2x^3$. Which of the numbers listed below equals $f^{-1}(8.10693)$?

$$1.1, \quad 1.2, \quad 1.3, \quad 1.4$$

solution First we test whether or not $f^{-1}(8.10693)$ equals 1.1 by checking whether or not $f(1.1)$ equals 8.10693. Using a calculator, we find that $f(1.1) = 4.27251$, which means that $f^{-1}(8.10693) \neq 1.1$.

Next we test whether or not $f^{-1}(8.10693)$ equals 1.2 by checking whether or not $f(1.2)$ equals 8.10693. Using a calculator, we find that $f(1.2) = 5.94432$, which means that $f^{-1}(8.10693) \neq 1.2$.

Next we test whether or not $f^{-1}(8.10693)$ equals 1.3 by checking whether or not $f(1.3)$ equals 8.10693. Using a calculator, we find that

$$f(1.3) = 8.10693,$$

which means that $f^{-1}(8.10693) = 1.3$.

For Exercises 27–28, use the U.S. 2016 federal income tax function for a single person as defined in Example 2 of Section 1.1.

27 What is the taxable income of a single person who paid \$10,000 in federal taxes for 2016?

solution Let g be the income tax function as defined in Example 2 of Section 1.1. We need to evaluate $g^{-1}(10000)$. Letting $t = g^{-1}(10000)$, this means that we need to solve the equation $g(t) = 10000$ for t.

Determining which formula to apply requires a bit of experimentation. Using the definition of g, we can calculate that $g(9275) = 927.50$, $g(37650) = 5183.75$, and $g(91150) = 18558.75$. Because 10000 is between 5183.75 and 18558.75, this means that t is between 37650 and 91150. Thus $g(t) = 0.25t - 4228.75$. Solving the equation

$$0.25t - 4228.75 = 10000$$

for t, we get $t = 56915$. Thus a single person whose federal tax bill was \$10,000 had a taxable income of \$56,915.

29 Suppose $F(x) = x^8 + 5x^2$. Evaluate

$$\left(F^{-1}(3)\right)^8 + 5\left(F^{-1}(3)\right)^2.$$

solution The expression above equals $F\left(F^{-1}(3)\right)$, which equals 3.

31 Suppose $g(x) = x^7 + x^3$. Evaluate

$$\left(g^{-1}(4)\right)^7 + \left(g^{-1}(4)\right)^3 + 1.$$

solution We are asked to evaluate $g\left(g^{-1}(4)\right) + 1$. Because $g\left(g^{-1}(4)\right) = 4$, the quantity above equals 5.

33 Suppose $F^{-1}(y) = 2y + 3$. Evaluate $F(4)$.

solution If $F(4) = y$, then

$$4 = F^{-1}(y) = 2y + 3.$$

Solving the equation above for y, we have $y = \frac{1}{2}$. Thus $F(4) = \frac{1}{2}$.

1.6 A Graphical Approach to Inverse Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- sketch the graph of f^{-1} from the graph of f;
- use the horizontal line test to determine whether a function has an inverse;
- recognize increasing functions and decreasing functions;
- compute an inverse function for a function defined by a table.

The Graph of an Inverse Function

We begin with an example that illustrates how the graph of an inverse function is related to the graph of the original function.

Example 1

Suppose f is the function with domain $[0,2]$ defined by

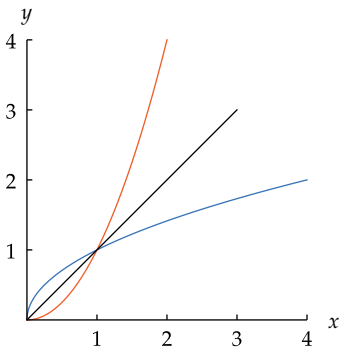
$$f(x) = x^2.$$

What is the relationship between the graph of f and the graph of f^{-1}?

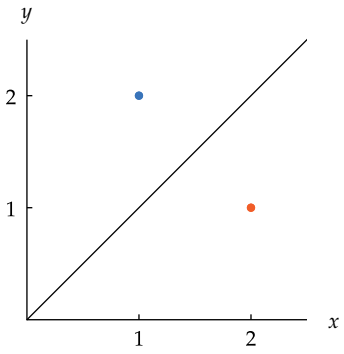
solution The graph of f is part of the familiar parabola defined by $y = x^2$. The range of f is the interval $[0,4]$. The inverse function f^{-1} has domain $[0,4]$, with

$$f^{-1}(x) = \sqrt{x}.$$

The graphs of f and f^{-1}, shown here, are symmetric about the line $y = x$, meaning that we could obtain either graph by flipping the other graph across this line.



The graphs of x^2 (orange) and its inverse $\sqrt{x}$ (blue) are symmetric about the line $y = x$ (black).



Flipping $(2,1)$ (orange) across the line $y = x$ gives $(1,2)$ (blue).

Here we are assuming that we are working in the xy-plane and that the same scale is used on both axes.

The relationship above between the graphs of x^2 and its inverse $\sqrt{x}$ holds for the graphs of any one-to-one function and its inverse. For example, suppose the point $(2,1)$ is on the graph of some one-to-one function f. This means that $f(2) = 1$, which is equivalent to the equation $f^{-1}(1) = 2$, which means that $(1,2)$ is on the graph of f^{-1}. The point $(1,2)$ can be obtained by flipping the point $(2,1)$ across the line $y = x$.

More generally, a point (a,b) is on the graph of a one-to-one function f if and only if (b,a) is on the graph of its inverse function f^{-1}. In other words, the graph of f^{-1} can be obtained by interchanging the first and second coordinates of each point on the graph of f. If we are working in the xy-plane, then interchanging first and second coordinates amounts to flipping across the line $y = x$.

The graph of a one-to-one function and its inverse

- A point (a,b) is on the graph of a one-to-one function if and only if (b,a) is on the graph of its inverse function.
- The graph of a one-to-one function and the graph of its inverse are symmetric about the line $y = x$.
- Each graph can be obtained from the other by flipping across the line $y = x$.

Sometimes an explicit formula cannot be found for f^{-1} because the equation $f(x) = y$ cannot be solved for x even though f is a one-to-one function. However, even in such cases we can obtain the graph of f^{-1}.

Example 2

Suppose f is the function with domain $[0,1]$ defined by $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^5 + \frac{3}{2}x^3$. Sketch the graphs of f and f^{-1}.

solution The graph of f shown here (in orange) was produced by a computer program that can graph a function if given a formula for the function.

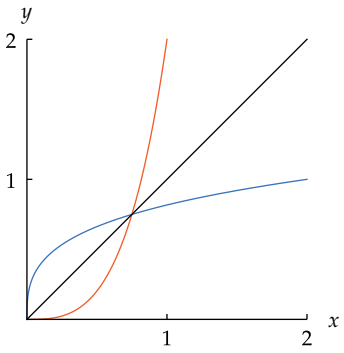
Even though f is a one-to-one function, neither humans nor computers can solve the equation

$$\frac{1}{2}x^5 + \frac{3}{2}x^3 = y$$

for x in terms of y. Thus in this case there is no formula for f^{-1} that a computer can use to produce the graph of f^{-1}.

However, we can find the graph of f^{-1} by flipping the graph of f across the line $y = x$ (shown in black), producing the blue curve as the graph of f^{-1}. Specifically, a typical point on the graph of f has the form $(x, \frac{1}{2}x^5 + \frac{3}{2}x^3)$ for x in the interval $[0,1]$. Interchanging the coordinates, we thus see that a typical point on the graph of f^{-1} has the form $(\frac{1}{2}x^5 + \frac{3}{2}x^3, x)$ for x in the interval $[0,1]$. Hence the following command in *WolframAlpha* produces the graph of f^{-1} (without a formula for f^{-1}!).

ParametricPlot ((1/2)x^5 + (3/2)x^3, x) from x = 0 to 1



The graph of f^{-1} (blue) can be obtained by flipping the graph of f (orange) across the line $y = x$.

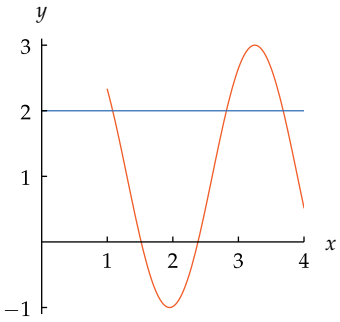
Graphical Interpretation of One-to-One

The graph of a function can be used to determine whether or not the function is one-to-one (and thus whether or not the function has an inverse).

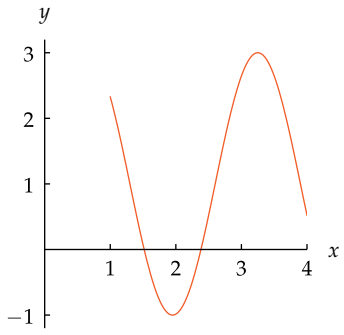
Example 3

Suppose f is the function with domain $[1,4]$ whose graph is shown here. Is f a one-to-one function?

solution For f to be one-to-one, for each number y there must be at most one number x such that $f(x) = y$. Draw the line $y = 2$ on the same coordinate plane as the graph, as shown below.



The line $y = 2$ intersects the graph of f in three points, as shown here. Thus there are three numbers x in the domain of f such that $f(x) = 2$. Hence f is not a one-to-one function.



The graph of f.

The method used above can be used with the graph of any function.

Horizontal line test

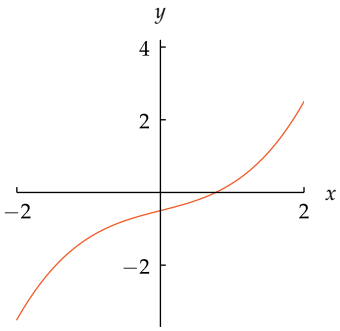
A function is one-to-one if and only if every horizontal line intersects the graph of the function in at most one point.

The functions that have inverses are precisely the one-to-one functions. Thus the horizontal line test can be used to determine whether or not a function has an inverse.

If you find even one horizontal line that intersects the graph at more than one point, then the function is not one-to-one. However, finding one horizontal line that intersects the graph at most once does not imply anything concerning whether or not the function is one-to-one. For the function to be one-to-one, *every* horizontal line must intersect the graph at most once.

Example 4

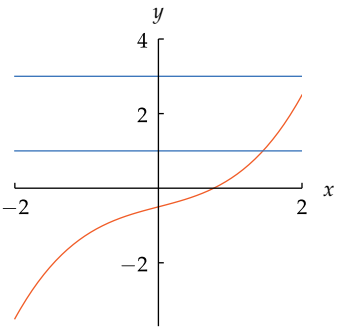
Suppose f is the function with domain $[-2, 2]$ whose graph is shown here. Is f a one-to-one function?



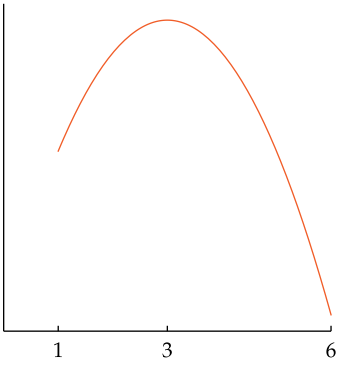
The graph of f.

solution For f to be one-to-one, each horizontal line must intersect the graph of f in at most one point. The figure below shows the graph of f along with the horizontal lines $y = 1$ and $y = 3$.

The line $y = 1$ intersects the graph of f at one point, and the line $y = 3$ does not intersect the graph, as shown here. Furthermore, as can be seen from the figure, each horizontal line intersects the graph at most once. Hence we conclude that f is a one-to-one function.



Increasing and Decreasing Functions



The graph of a function that is increasing on the interval $[1, 3]$, decreasing on the interval $[3, 6]$.

The domain of the function shown here is the interval $[1, 6]$. On the interval $[1, 3]$, the graph of this function gets higher from left to right; thus we say that this function is **increasing** on the interval $[1, 3]$. On the interval $[3, 6]$, the graph of this function gets lower from left to right; thus we say that this function is **decreasing** on the interval $[3, 6]$. Here are the formal definitions.

Increasing on an interval

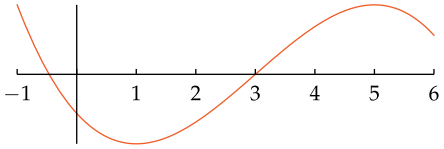
A function f is called **increasing** on an interval if $f(a) < f(b)$ whenever $a < b$ and a, b are in the interval.

Decreasing on an interval

A function f is called **decreasing** on an interval if $f(a) > f(b)$ whenever $a < b$ and a, b are in the interval.

Example 5

The function f whose graph is shown here has domain $[-1, 6]$.



(a) Find the largest interval on which f is increasing.

(b) Find the largest interval on which f is decreasing.

(c) Find the largest interval containing 6 on which f is decreasing.

solution

(a) We see that $[1, 5]$ is the largest interval on which f is increasing.

(b) We see that $[-1, 1]$ is the largest interval on which f is decreasing.

(c) We see that $[5, 6]$ is the largest interval containing 6 on which f is decreasing.

A function is called **increasing** if its graph gets higher from left to right on its entire domain. Here is the formal definition.

Increasing function

A function f is called **increasing** if $f(a) < f(b)$ whenever $a < b$ and a, b are in the domain of f.

Sometimes the terms "increasing" and "decreasing" are used without referring to an interval, as explained here.

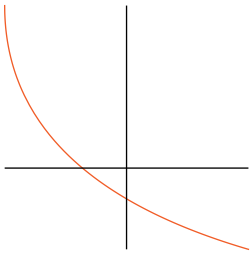
Similarly, a function is called **decreasing** if its graph gets lower from left to right on its entire domain, as defined below.

Decreasing function

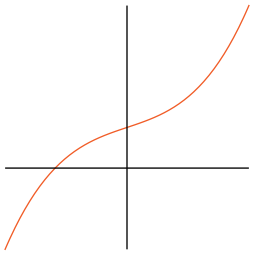
A function f is called **decreasing** if $f(a) > f(b)$ whenever $a < b$ and a, b are in the domain of f.

Example 6

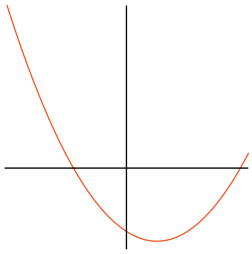
Shown below are the graphs of three functions; each function is graphed on its entire domain.



The graph of f.



The graph of g.



The graph of h.

(a) Is f increasing, decreasing, or neither?

(b) Is g increasing, decreasing, or neither?

(c) Is h increasing, decreasing, or neither?

solution

(a) The graph of f gets lower from left to right on its entire domain. Thus f is decreasing.

(b) The graph of g gets higher from left to right on its entire domain. Thus g is increasing.

(c) The graph of h gets lower from left to right on part of its domain and gets higher from left to right on another part of its domain. Thus h is neither increasing nor decreasing.

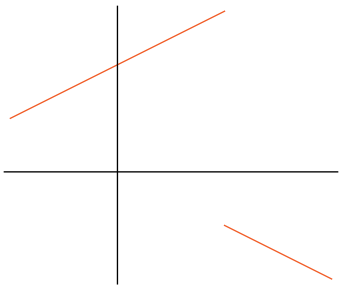
Some functions are neither increasing nor decreasing.

Every horizontal line intersects the graph of an increasing function in at most one point, and similarly for the graph of a decreasing function. The horizontal line test thus implies the following result.

Increasing and decreasing functions are one-to-one

- Every increasing function is one-to-one.
- Every decreasing function is one-to-one.

This result implies that a function that is either increasing or decreasing has an inverse.



The graph of a one-to-one function that is neither increasing nor decreasing.

The result above raises the question of whether every one-to-one function must be increasing or decreasing. The graph shown here answers this question. Specifically, this function is one-to-one because each horizontal line intersects the graph in at most one point. However, this function is neither increasing nor decreasing.

The graph in the example shown here is not one connected piece—you cannot sketch it without lifting your pencil from the paper. A one-to-one function whose graph consists of just one connected piece must be either increasing or decreasing. However, a rigorous explanation of why this result holds requires tools from calculus.

Suppose f is an increasing function and a and b are numbers in the domain of f with $a < b$. Thus $f(a) < f(b)$. Recall that $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are numbers in the domain of f^{-1}. We have

$$f^{-1}\big(f(a)\big) < f^{-1}\big(f(b)\big)$$

because $f^{-1}\big(f(a)\big) = a$ and $f^{-1}\big(f(b)\big) = b$. The inequality above shows that f^{-1} is an increasing function.

In other words, we have just shown that the inverse of an increasing function is increasing. The figure of a function and its inverse in Example 2 illustrates this result graphically. A similar result holds for decreasing functions.

Inverses of increasing and decreasing functions

- The inverse of an increasing function is increasing.
- The inverse of a decreasing function is decreasing.

Inverse Functions via Tables

For functions whose domain consists of only finitely many numbers, tables provide good insight into the notion of an inverse function.

Example 7

Suppose f is the function whose domain is the set of four numbers $\{\sqrt{2}, 8, 17, 18\}$, with the values of f given in the table shown here.

x	$f(x)$
$\sqrt{2}$	3
8	-5
17	6
18	1

(a) What is the range of f?

(b) Explain why f is a one-to-one function.

(c) What is the table for the function f^{-1}?

solution

(a) The range of f is the set of numbers appearing in the second column of the table defining f. Thus the range of f is the set $\{3, -5, 6, 1\}$.

(b) A function is one-to-one if and only if each number in its range corresponds to only one number in the domain. This means that a function defined by a table is one-to-one if and only if no number is repeated in the second column of the table defining the function. Because the second column of the table above contains no repetitions, we conclude that f is a one-to-one function.

(c) To evaluate $f^{-1}(3)$, we need to find a number x such that $f(x) = 3$. Looking in the table above at the column labeled $f(x)$, we see that $f(\sqrt{2}) = 3$. Thus $f^{-1}(3) = \sqrt{2}$, which means that in the table for f^{-1} the positions of $\sqrt{2}$ and 3 should be interchanged from their positions in the table for f.

More generally, the table for f^{-1} is obtained by interchanging the columns in the table for f, producing the table shown here.

y	$f^{-1}(y)$
3	$\sqrt{2}$
-5	8
6	17
1	18

The ideas used in the example above apply to any function defined by a table.

Inverse functions via tables

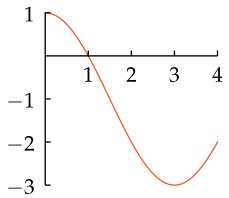
Suppose f is a function defined by a table. Then:

- f is one-to-one if and only if the table defining f has no repetitions in the second column.
- If f is one-to-one, then the table for f^{-1} is obtained by interchanging the columns of the table defining f.

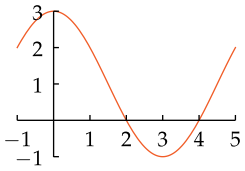
Here we are assuming, as usual throughout this book, that the numbers in the domain of f are listed in the first column of the table, with the corresponding values of f in the second column.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–12, use the following graphs:



The graph of f.



The graph of g.

Here f has domain $[0, 4]$ and g has domain $[-1, 5]$.

1 What is the largest interval contained in the domain of f on which f is increasing?

2 What is the largest interval contained in the domain of g on which g is increasing?

3 Let F denote the function obtained from f by restricting the domain to the interval in Exercise 1. What is the domain of F^{-1}?

4 Let G denote the function obtained from g by restricting the domain to the interval in Exercise 2. What is the domain of G^{-1}?

5 With F as in Exercise 3, what is the range of F^{-1}?

6 With G as in Exercise 4, what is the range of G^{-1}?

7 What is the largest interval contained in the domain of f on which f is decreasing?

8 What is the largest interval contained in the domain of g on which g is decreasing?

9 Let H denote the function obtained from f by restricting the domain to the interval in Exercise 7. What is the domain of H^{-1}?

10 Let J denote the function obtained from g by restricting the domain to the interval in Exercise 8. What is the domain of J^{-1}?

11 With H as in Exercise 9, what is the range of H^{-1}?

12 With J as in Exercise 10, what is the range of J^{-1}?

13 Suppose $f(x) = x^3 + x$. Which of the following points is on the graph of f^{-1}?

$$(4, 1), \quad (2, 10), \quad (10, 2)$$

14 Suppose $f(x) = x^4 - 3x$. Which of the following points is on the graph of f^{-1}?

$$(2, 1), \quad (-1, 4), \quad (4, -1)$$

For Exercises 15–38 suppose f and g are functions, each with domain of four numbers, with f and g defined by the tables below:

x	$f(x)$
1	4
2	5
3	2
4	3

x	$g(x)$
2	3
3	2
4	4
5	1

15 What is the domain of f?

16 What is the domain of g?

17 What is the range of f?

18 What is the range of g?

19 Sketch the graph of f.

20 Sketch the graph of g.

21 Give the table of values for f^{-1}.

22 Give the table of values for g^{-1}.

23 What is the domain of f^{-1}?

24 What is the domain of g^{-1}?

25 What is the range of f^{-1}?

26 What is the range of g^{-1}?

27 Sketch the graph of f^{-1}.

28 Sketch the graph of g^{-1}.

29 Give the table of values for $f^{-1} \circ f$.

30 Give the table of values for $g^{-1} \circ g$.

31 Give the table of values for $f \circ f^{-1}$.

32 Give the table of values for $g \circ g^{-1}$.

33 Give the table of values for $f \circ g$.

34 Give the table of values for $g \circ f$.

35 Give the table of values for $(f \circ g)^{-1}$.

36 Give the table of values for $(g \circ f)^{-1}$.

37 Give the table of values for $g^{-1} \circ f^{-1}$.

38 Give the table of values for $f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$.

Problems

39 Suppose f is the function whose domain is the interval $[-2,2]$, with f defined by the following formula:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -\frac{x}{3} & \text{if } -2 \le x < 0 \\ 2x & \text{if } 0 \le x \le 2. \end{cases}$$

(a) Sketch the graph of f.

(b) Explain why the graph of f shows that f is not a one-to-one function.

(c) Give an explicit example of two distinct numbers a and b such that $f(a) = f(b)$.

40 Draw the graph of a function that is increasing on the interval $[-2,0]$ and decreasing on the interval $[0,2]$.

41 Draw the graph of a function that is decreasing on the interval $[-2,1]$ and increasing on the interval $[1,5]$.

42 Give an example of an increasing function whose domain is the interval $[0,1]$ but whose range does not equal the interval $[f(0), f(1)]$.

43 Show that the sum of two increasing functions is increasing.

44 Give an example of two increasing functions whose product is not increasing.
[*Hint:* There are no such examples where both functions are positive everywhere.]

45 Give an example of two decreasing functions whose product is increasing.

46 Show that the composition of two increasing functions is increasing.

47 Explain why it is important as a matter of social policy that the income tax function g in Example 2 of Section 1.1 be an increasing function.

48 Suppose the income tax function in Example 2 of Section 1.1 is changed so that

$$g(x) = 0.15x - 500 \quad \text{if } 9275 < x \le 37650,$$

with the other parts of the definition of g left unchanged. Show that if this change is made, then the income tax function g would no longer be an increasing function.

49 Suppose the income tax function in Example 2 of Section 1.1 is changed so that

$$g(x) = 0.14x - 463.75 \quad \text{if } 9275 < x \le 37650,$$

with the other parts of the definition of g left unchanged. Show that if this change is made, then the income tax function g would no longer be an increasing function.

50 Explain why an even function whose domain contains a nonzero number cannot be a one-to-one function.

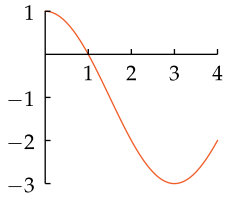
51 The solutions to Exercises 35 and 37 are the same, suggesting that

$$(f \circ g)^{-1} = g^{-1} \circ f^{-1}.$$

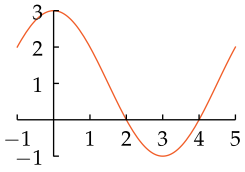
Explain why the equation above holds whenever f and g are one-to-one functions such that the range of g equals the domain of f.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–12, use the following graphs:



The graph of f.



The graph of g.

Here f has domain $[0,4]$ and g has domain $[-1,5]$.

1 What is the largest interval contained in the domain of f on which f is increasing?

solution As can be seen from the graph, $[3,4]$ is the largest interval on which f is increasing.

As usual when obtaining information solely from graphs, this answer (as well as the answers to the other parts of this exercise) should be considered an approximation. An expanded graph at a finer scale might show that $[2.99,4]$ or $[3.01,4]$ would be a more accurate answer than $[3,4]$.

3 Let F denote the function obtained from f by restricting the domain to the interval in Exercise 1. What is the domain of F^{-1}?

solution The domain of F^{-1} equals the range of F. Because F is the function f with domain restricted to the interval $[3,4]$, we see from the graph above that the range of F is the interval $[-3,-2]$. Thus the domain of F^{-1} is the interval $[-3,-2]$.

5 With F as in Exercise 3, what is the range of F^{-1}?

solution The range of F^{-1} equals the domain of F. Thus the range of F^{-1} is the interval $[3,4]$.

7 What is the largest interval contained in the domain of f on which f is decreasing?

solution As can be seen from the graph, $[0,3]$ is the largest interval on which f is decreasing.

9 Let H denote the function obtained from f by restricting the domain to the interval in Exercise 7. What is the domain of H^{-1}?

solution The domain of H^{-1} equals the range of H. Because H is the function f with domain restricted to the interval $[0,3]$, we see from the graph above that the range of H is the interval $[-3,1]$. Thus the domain of H^{-1} is the interval $[-3,1]$.

11 With H as in Exercise 9, what is the range of H^{-1}?

solution The range of H^{-1} equals the domain of H. Thus the range of H^{-1} is the interval $[0,3]$.

13 Suppose $f(x) = x^3 + x$. Which of the following points is on the graph of f^{-1}?

$$(4,1), \quad (2,10), \quad (10,2)$$

solution A point (c,d) is on the graph of f^{-1} if and only if $f^{-1}(c) = d$, which happens if and only if $f(d) = c$.

Thus to check whether $(4,1)$ is on the graph of f^{-1}, we ask whether $f(1)$ equals 4. However, $f(1) = 2$; thus $(4,1)$ is not on the graph of f^{-1}. Similarly, $f(10) = 1010$; thus $(2,10)$ is not on the graph of f^{-1}. However, $f(2) = 10$; thus $(10,2)$ is on the graph of f^{-1}.

For Exercises 15–38 suppose f and g are functions, each with domain of four numbers, with f and g defined by the tables below:

x	$f(x)$
1	4
2	5
3	2
4	3

x	$g(x)$
2	3
3	2
4	4
5	1

15 What is the domain of f?

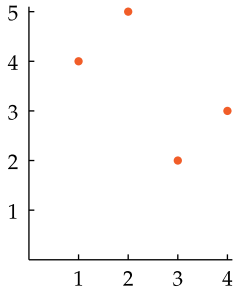
solution The domain of f equals the set of numbers in the left column of the table defining f. Thus the domain of f equals $\{1,2,3,4\}$.

17 What is the range of f?

solution The range of f equals the set of numbers in the right column of the table defining f. Thus the range of f equals $\{2,3,4,5\}$.

19 Sketch the graph of f.

solution The graph of f consists of all points of the form $\big(x, f(x)\big)$ as x varies over the domain of f. Thus the graph of f, shown below, consists of the four points $(1,4)$, $(2,5)$, $(3,2)$, and $(4,3)$.



21 Give the table of values for f^{-1}.

solution The table for the inverse of a function is obtained by interchanging the two columns of the table for the function (after which one can, if desired, reorder the rows, as has been done below):

y	$f^{-1}(y)$
2	3
3	4
4	1
5	2

23 What is the domain of f^{-1}?

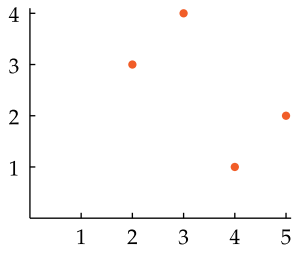
solution The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set $\{2,3,4,5\}$.

25 What is the range of f^{-1}?

solution The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set $\{1,2,3,4\}$.

27 Sketch the graph of f^{-1}.

solution The graph of f^{-1} consists of all points of the form $\big(x, f^{-1}(x)\big)$ as x varies over the domain of f^{-1}. Thus the graph of f^{-1}, shown below, consists of the four points $(4,1)$, $(5,2)$, $(2,3)$, and $(3,4)$.



29 Give the table of values for $f^{-1} \circ f$.

solution We know that $f^{-1} \circ f$ is the identity function on the domain of f; thus no computations are necessary. However, because this function f has only four numbers in its domain, it may be instructive to compute $(f^{-1} \circ f)(x)$ for each value of x in the domain of f. Here is that computation:

$$(f^{-1} \circ f)(1) = f^{-1}\big(f(1)\big) = f^{-1}(4) = 1$$

$$(f^{-1} \circ f)(2) = f^{-1}\big(f(2)\big) = f^{-1}(5) = 2$$

$$(f^{-1} \circ f)(3) = f^{-1}\big(f(3)\big) = f^{-1}(2) = 3$$

$$(f^{-1} \circ f)(4) = f^{-1}\big(f(4)\big) = f^{-1}(3) = 4$$

Thus, as expected, the table of values for $f^{-1} \circ f$ is as shown here.

x	$(f^{-1} \circ f)(x)$
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4

31 Give the table of values for $f \circ f^{-1}$.

solution We know that $f \circ f^{-1}$ is the identity function on the range of f (which equals the domain of f^{-1}); thus no computations are necessary. However, because this function f has only four numbers in its range, it may be instructive to compute $(f \circ f^{-1})(y)$ for each value of y in the range of f. Here is that computation:

$$(f \circ f^{-1})(2) = f(\,f^{-1}(2)\,) = f(3) = 2$$

$$(f \circ f^{-1})(3) = f(\,f^{-1}(3)\,) = f(4) = 3$$

$$(f \circ f^{-1})(4) = f(\,f^{-1}(4)\,) = f(1) = 4$$

$$(f \circ f^{-1})(5) = f(\,f^{-1}(5)\,) = f(2) = 5$$

Thus, as expected, the table of values for $f \circ f^{-1}$ is as shown here.

y	$(f \circ f^{-1})(y)$
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5

33 Give the table of values for $f \circ g$.

solution We need to compute $(f \circ g)(x)$ for every x in the domain of g. Here is that computation:

$$(f \circ g)(2) = f(\,g(2)\,) = f(3) = 2$$

$$(f \circ g)(3) = f(\,g(3)\,) = f(2) = 5$$

$$(f \circ g)(4) = f(\,g(4)\,) = f(4) = 3$$

$$(f \circ g)(5) = f(\,g(5)\,) = f(1) = 4$$

Thus the table of values for $f \circ g$ is as shown here.

x	$(f \circ g)(x)$
2	2
3	5
4	3
5	4

35 Give the table of values for $(f \circ g)^{-1}$.

solution The table of values for $(f \circ g)^{-1}$ is obtained by interchanging the two columns of the table for $(f \circ g)$ (after which one can, if desired, reorder the rows, as has been done below).

Thus the table for $(f \circ g)^{-1}$ is as shown here.

y	$(f \circ g)^{-1}(y)$
2	2
3	4
4	5
5	3

37 Give the table of values for $g^{-1} \circ f^{-1}$.

solution We need to compute $(g^{-1} \circ f^{-1})(y)$ for every y in the domain of f^{-1}. Here is that computation:

$$(g^{-1} \circ f^{-1})(2) = g^{-1}(\,f^{-1}(2)\,) = g^{-1}(3) = 2$$

$$(g^{-1} \circ f^{-1})(3) = g^{-1}(\,f^{-1}(3)\,) = g^{-1}(4) = 4$$

$$(g^{-1} \circ f^{-1})(4) = g^{-1}(\,f^{-1}(4)\,) = g^{-1}(1) = 5$$

$$(g^{-1} \circ f^{-1})(5) = g^{-1}(\,f^{-1}(5)\,) = g^{-1}(2) = 3$$

Thus the table of values for $g^{-1} \circ f^{-1}$ is as shown here.

y	$(g^{-1} \circ f^{-1})(y)$
2	2
3	4
4	5
5	3

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Explain the concept of a function, including its domain.
- Define the range of a function.
- Locate points on the coordinate plane.
- Explain the relationship between a function and its graph.
- Determine the domain and range of a function from its graph.
- Use the vertical line test to determine if a curve is the graph of some function.
- Determine whether a function transformation shifts the graph up, down, left, or right.
- Determine whether a function transformation stretches the graph vertically or horizontally.
- Determine whether a function transformation flips the graph vertically or horizontally.
- Determine the domain, range, and graph of a transformed function.
- Determine whether a function is even or odd or neither.
- Compute the composition of two functions.
- Write a complicated function as the composition of simpler functions.
- Explain the concept of an inverse function.
- Explain which functions have inverses.
- Find a formula for an inverse function (when possible).
- Sketch the graph of f^{-1} from the graph of f.
- Use the horizontal line test to determine whether a function has an inverse.
- Construct a table of values of f^{-1} from a table of values of f.
- Recognize from a graph whether a function is increasing or decreasing or neither on an interval.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Suppose f is a function. Explain what it means to say that $\frac{3}{2}$ is in the domain of f.

2 Suppose f is a function. Explain what it means to say that $\frac{3}{2}$ is in the range of f.

3 Write the domain of

$$\frac{x^7+4}{(x+2)(x-3)}$$

as a union of intervals.

4 Give an example of a function whose domain consists of seven numbers and whose range consists of three numbers.

5 Give an example of a function whose domain is the set of real numbers and whose range is not an interval.

6 Suppose f is defined by $f(x) = x^2$.

(a) What is the range of f if the domain of f is the interval $[1,3]$?

(b) What is the range of f if the domain of f is the interval $[-2,3]$?

(c) What is the range of f if the domain of f is the set of positive numbers?

(d) What is the range of f if the domain of f is the set of negative numbers?

(e) What is the range of f if the domain of f is the set of real numbers?

7 Explain how to find the domain of a function from its graph.

8 Explain how to find the range of a function from its graph.

9 Explain why no function has a graph that is a circle.

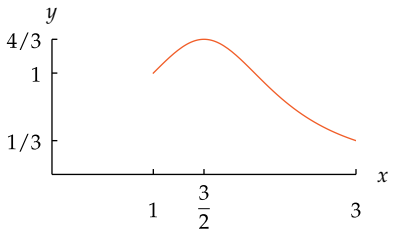
10 Explain how to use the vertical line test to determine whether or not a curve in the plane is the graph of some function.

11 Sketch a curve in the coordinate plane that is not the graph of any function.

For Questions 12–19, assume f is the function defined on the interval $[1,3]$ by the formula

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 - 3x + 3}.$$

The domain of f is the interval $[1,3]$, the range of f is the interval $[\frac{1}{3}, \frac{4}{3}]$, and the graph of f is shown below.



The graph of f.

For each function g described below:

- **(a)** ***Sketch the graph of g.***
- **(b)** ***Find the domain of g (the endpoints of this interval should be shown on the horizontal axis of your sketch of the graph of g).***
- **(c)** ***Give a formula for g.***
- **(d)** ***Find the range of g (the endpoints of this interval should be shown on the vertical axis of your sketch of the graph of g).***

12 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up 2 units.

13 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f down 2 units.

14 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f left 2 units.

15 The graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f right 2 units.

16 The graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 3.

17 The graph of g is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 2.

18 The graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizontal axis.

19 The graph of g is obtained by flipping the graph of f across the vertical axis.

20 Suppose f is a one-to-one function with domain $[1,3]$ and range $[2,5]$. Define functions g and h by

$$g(t) = 3f(t) \quad \text{and} \quad h(t) = f(4t).$$

(a) What is the domain of g?
(b) What is the range of g?
(c) What is the domain of h?
(d) What is the range of h?
(e) What is the domain of f^{-1}?
(f) What is the range of f^{-1}?

21 Suppose f is a one-to-one function such that the point $(3,2)$ is on the graph of f. Which two of the following statements must be true?

(a) $f(2) = 3$
(b) $f(3) = 2$
(c) $f^{-1}(2) = 3$
(d) $f^{-1}(3) = 2$

22 Suppose the domain of f is the set of four numbers $\{1,2,3,4\}$, with f defined by the table shown here. Draw the graph of f.

x	$f(x)$
1	2
2	3
3	−1
4	1

23 Show that the sum of two odd functions is also an odd function.

24 Explain why the product of two odd functions is an even function.

25 Define the composition of two functions.

26 Suppose f and g are functions. Explain why the domain of $f \circ g$ is contained in the domain of g.

27 Suppose f and g are functions. Explain why the range of $f \circ g$ is contained in the range of f.

28 Suppose f is a function and g is a linear function. Explain why the domain of $g \circ f$ is the same as the domain of f.

29 Suppose

$$h(x) = \sqrt{\frac{1+\sqrt{x}}{2+\sqrt{x}}} \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = \sqrt{x}.$$

(a) Find a function f such that $h = f \circ g$.
(b) Find a function f such that $h = g \circ f$.

30 Suppose

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2+3}{5x^2-9}.$$

Find two functions g and h, each simpler than f, such that $f = g \circ h$.

31 Find a number c such that the function g defined by

$$g(t) = 2t + c$$

has the property that $(g \circ g)(3) = 17$.

32 Explain how to use the horizontal line test to determine whether or not a function is one-to-one.

33 Draw the graph of a function that is decreasing on the interval $[1,2]$ and increasing on the interval $[2,5]$.

For Questions 34–39, suppose

$$h(x) = |2x + 3| + x^2 \quad \textit{and} \quad f(x) = 3x - 5.$$

34 Evaluate $(\frac{h}{f})(-2)$.

35 Find a formula for $(f + h)(4 + t)$.

36 Evaluate $(h \circ f)(3)$.

37 Evaluate $(f \circ h)(-4)$.

38 Find a formula for $h \circ f$.

39 Find a formula for $f \circ h$.

40 Suppose

$$f(x) = \frac{2x + 1}{3x - 4}.$$

Evaluate $f^{-1}(-5)$.

41 Suppose

$$g(x) = 3 + \frac{x}{2x - 3}.$$

Find a formula for g^{-1}.

42 Suppose f is a one-to-one function. Explain the relationship between the graph of f and the graph of f^{-1}.

43 Suppose f is a one-to-one function. Explain the relationship between the domain and range of f and the domain and range of f^{-1}.

44 Explain the different meanings of the notations $f^{-1}(x)$, $\big(f(x)\big)^{-1}$, and $f(x^{-1})$.

45 The function f defined by

$$f(x) = x^5 + 2x^3 + 2$$

is an increasing function and thus is one-to-one (here the domain of f is the set of real numbers).

(a) Evaluate $f^{-1}\big(f(1)\big)$

(b) Evaluate $f\big(f^{-1}(4)\big)$.

(c) Compute $f^{-1}(y)$ for four different values of y of your choice.

46 Make up a table that defines a one-to-one function g whose domain consists of five numbers.

(a) Sketch the graph of g.

(b) Give the table for g^{-1}.

(c) Sketch the graph of g^{-1}.

47 The exact number of yards in c centimeters is $f(c)$, where f is the function defined by

$$f(c) = \frac{c}{91.44}.$$

(a) Find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$.

(b) What is the meaning of $f^{-1}(y)$?

48 A sign at the currency exchange booth in the Rome airport states that if you exchange d dollars you will receive $f(d)$ Euros, where f is the function defined by

$$f(d) = 0.88d - 3.$$

Here 0.88 represents the exchange rate and the subtraction of 3 represents the commission of the currency exchange booth. Suppose you want to end up with 200 Euros.

(a) Explain why you should compute $f^{-1}(200)$.

(b) Evaluate $f^{-1}(200)$.

Chapter
2

Statue of the Persian mathematician and poet Omar Khayyam, whose algebra book written in 1070 contained the first serious study of cubic polynomials.

Linear, Quadratic, Polynomial, and Rational Functions

In this chapter we focus on four important special classes of functions.

Linear functions form our first special class of functions. Lines and their slopes, although simple concepts, have immense importance.

We then turn to quadratic functions, our second class of special functions. We will see how to complete the square and solve quadratic equations. Quadratic expressions will lead us to the conic sections: parabolas, ellipses, and hyperbolas. We will learn how to find the vertex of a parabola, and we will see the geometric properties of ellipses and hyperbolas.

Then we will take a brief diversion to study exponents. We will see why x^0 is defined to be 1, why x^{-m} is defined to be $\frac{1}{x^m}$, and why $x^{1/m}$ is defined to be the number whose m^{th} power equals x.

Our work with exponents will allow us to deal with the polynomial functions, our third special class of functions. We will see how to determine the behavior of a polynomial near $\pm\infty$.

From polynomials we will move on to rational functions, our fourth special class of functions. We will learn how to divide polynomials, and we will see that the graph of a rational function can have asymptotes.

2.1 Lines and Linear Functions

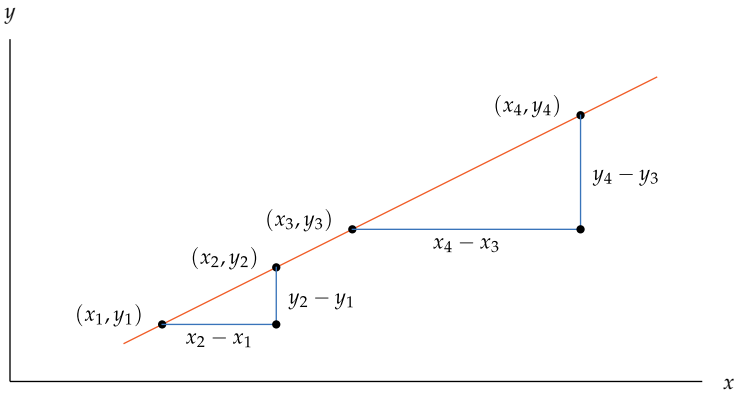
Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- find the slope of a line;
- find the equation of a line given its slope and a point on it;
- find the equation of a line given two points on it;
- find the equation of a line parallel to a given line and containing a given point;
- find the equation of a line perpendicular to a given line and containing a given point.

Slope

Consider a line in the xy-plane, along with four points (x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), (x_3, y_3), and (x_4, y_4) on the line. Draw two right triangles with horizontal and vertical edges as below.



Similar triangles.

The two right triangles in the figure above are similar because their angles are equal. Thus the ratios of the corresponding sides of the two triangles are equal. Taking the ratio of the vertical side and horizontal side for each triangle, we have

$$\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{y_4 - y_3}{x_4 - x_3}.$$

"When I was young I liked mathematics. When this became too difficult for me I took to philosophy and when philosophy became too difficult I took to politics."

–Bertrand Russell (*winner of Nobel Prize in Literature, 1950*)

Thus for any pair of points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) on the line, the ratio $\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ does not depend on the particular pair of points chosen on the line. If we choose another pair of points on the line, say (x_3, y_3) and (x_4, y_4) instead of (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2), then the difference of second coordinates divided by the difference of first coordinates remains the same.

We have shown that the ratio $\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ is a number depending only on the line and not on the particular points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) chosen on the line. This number is called the **slope** of the line.

Slope

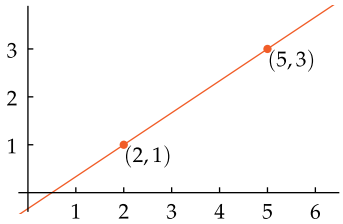
If (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) are any two points on a line with $x_1 \neq x_2$, then the **slope** of the line is

$$\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}.$$

Example 1

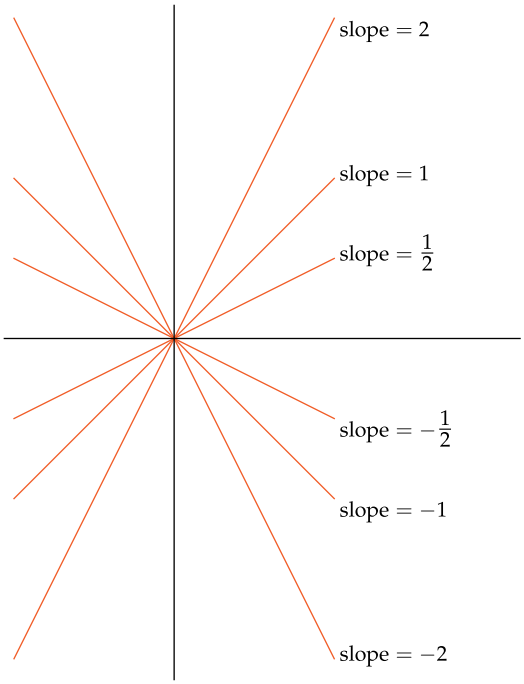
Find the slope of the line containing the points $(2,1)$ and $(5,3)$.

solution The line containing $(2,1)$ and $(5,3)$ is shown here. The slope of this line is $\frac{3-1}{5-2}$, which equals $\frac{2}{3}$.



This line has slope $\frac{2}{3}$.

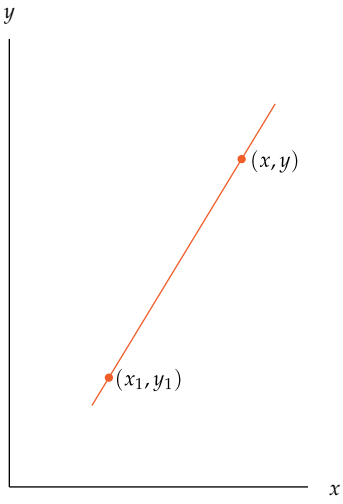
A line with positive slope slants up from left to right; a line with negative slope slants down from left to right. Lines whose slopes have larger absolute value are steeper than lines whose slopes have smaller absolute value. The figure below shows some lines and their slopes; the same scale has been used on both axes.



The horizontal axis has slope 0, as does every horizontal line. Vertical lines, including the vertical axis, do not have a slope, because a vertical line does not contain two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) with $x_1 \neq x_2$.

The Equation of a Line

Consider a line with slope m, and suppose (x_1, y_1) is a point on this line. Let (x, y) denote any other point on the line, as shown here.



Because this line has slope m, we have

$$\frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = m.$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by $x - x_1$, we get the following formula.

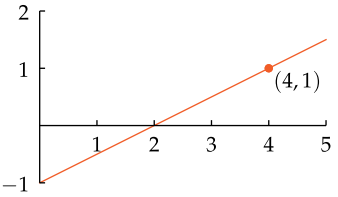
The equation of a line, given its slope and one point on it

The line in the xy-plane that has slope m and contains the point (x_1, y_1) is given by the equation

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1).$$

The equation above can be solved for y to get an equation of the line in the form $y = mx + b$, as shown in the next example.

Example 2



The line with slope $\frac{1}{2}$ that contains the point $(4,1)$.

Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that has slope $\frac{1}{2}$ and contains $(4,1)$.

solution In this case the equation above becomes $y-1=\frac{1}{2}(x-4)$. Adding 1 to both sides and simplifying, we get

$$y=\frac{1}{2}x-1.$$

As a special case of finding the equation of a line when given its slope and one point on it, suppose we want to find the equation of the line in the xy-plane with slope m that intersects the y-axis at the point $(0,b)$. In this case, the formula above becomes

$$y-b=m(x-0).$$

Solving this equation for y, we have the following result.

The point where a line intersects the y-axis is often called the ***y*-intercept**.

The equation of a line, given its slope and y-intercept

The line in the xy-plane with slope m that intersects the y-axis at $(0,b)$ is given by the equation

$$y=mx+b.$$

Suppose that we want to find the equation of the line containing two specific points. We can reduce this problem to a problem we have already solved by computing the slope of the line and then using a previous result.

Specifically, suppose we want to find the equation of the line containing the points (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2), where $x_1\neq x_2$. This line has slope

$$\frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}.$$

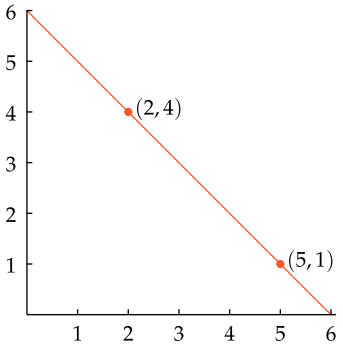
Thus our formula for the equation of a line when given its slope and one point on it gives the following result.

The equation of a line, given two points on it

The line in the xy-plane that contains the points (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2), where $x_1\neq x_2$, is given by the equation

$$y-y_1=\left(\frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}\right)(x-x_1).$$

Example 3



Line containing $(2,4)$ and $(5,1)$.

Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the points $(2,4)$ and $(5,1)$.

solution In this case the equation above becomes

$$y-4=\left(\frac{1-4}{5-2}\right)(x-2).$$

Solving this equation for y, we get

$$y=-x+6.$$

check If we take $x=2$ in the equation above, we get $y=4$, and if we take $x=5$ in the equation above, we get $y=1$. Thus the points $(2,4)$ and $(5,1)$ are indeed on this line.

We have seen that a line in the xy-plane with slope m is characterized by the equation $y = mx + b$, where b is some number. To restate this conclusion in terms of functions, let f be the function defined by

$$f(x) = mx + b,$$

where m and b are numbers. Then the graph of f is a line with slope m. Functions of this form are so important that they have a name—linear functions. Although we gave this definition in Section 1.4, it is sufficiently important to be worth repeating here.

Linear function

A **linear function** is a function f of the form

$$f(x) = mx + b,$$

where m and b are numbers.

Differential calculus focuses on approximating an arbitrary function on a small part of its domain by a linear function.

Conversion between different units of measurement is usually done by a linear function, as shown in the next two examples.

Example 4

A pound is officially defined to be exactly 0.45359237 kilograms.

(a) Find a function f such that $f(p)$ is the weight in kilograms of an object weighing p pounds.

(b) What is the interpretation of the inverse function f^{-1}?

(c) Find a formula for the inverse function f^{-1}.

solution

(a) Start with the equation

$$1 \text{ pound} = 0.45359237 \text{ kilograms}.$$

Multiply both sides by p, getting

$$p \text{ pounds} = 0.45359237p \text{ kilograms}.$$

Thus the desired function is given by the formula

$$f(p) = 0.45359237p.$$

(b) The function f converts pounds to kilograms. Thus the inverse function f^{-1} converts kilograms to pounds. Specifically, $f^{-1}(k)$ is the weight in pounds of an object weighing k kilograms.

(c) Solving the equation $k = 0.45359237p$ for p, we get $p = \dfrac{k}{0.45359237}$. Thus

$$f^{-1}(k) = \frac{k}{0.45359237}.$$

Because

$$\frac{1}{0.45359237} \approx 2.20462,$$

the approximate formula $f^{-1}(k) = 2.2k$ *is often used to convert kilograms to pounds in place of the exact formula given here.*

Most quantities such as weights, lengths, and currency have the same zero point regardless of the units used. For example, without knowing the conversion rate, you know that 0 centimeters is the same length as 0 inches. Conversion between temperature scales is unusual because the zero temperature on one scale does not correspond to the zero temperature on another scale.

The next example shows how to find a formula for converting from Celsius temperatures to Fahrenheit temperatures.

Example 5

The Celsius temperature scale is named in honor of the 18th-century Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius, who originally proposed a temperature scale with 0 as the boiling point of water and 100 as the freezing point. Later this was reversed, giving us the familiar scale in which higher numbers correspond to hotter temperatures.

Find the function f such that $f(x)$ equals the temperature on the Fahrenheit scale corresponding to temperature x on the Celsius scale.

solution Changing from one system of units to another system of units is modeled by a linear function. Thus f has the form

$$f(x) = mx + b$$

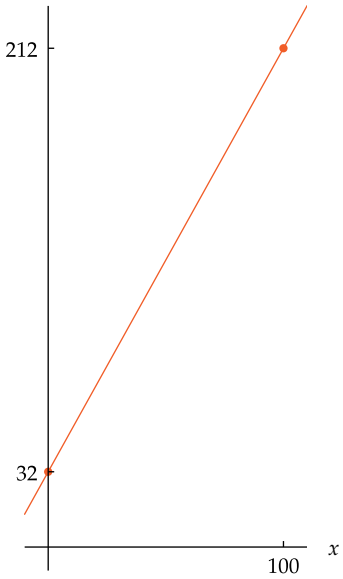
for some numbers m and b.

To find m and b, recall that the freezing temperature of water equals 0 degrees Celsius and 32 degrees Fahrenheit; also, the boiling point of water equals 100 degrees Celsius and 212 degrees Fahrenheit. Thus

$$f(0) = 32 \quad \text{and} \quad f(100) = 212.$$

But $f(0) = b$, and thus $b = 32$. Now we know that $f(x) = mx + 32$. Hence $f(100) = 100m + 32$. Setting this last quantity equal to 212 and then solving for m shows that $m = \frac{9}{5}$. Thus

$$f(x) = \frac{9}{5}x + 32.$$



The graph of the function f that converts Celsius to Fahrenheit. Notice that $f(0) = 32$ and $f(100) = 212$.

A special type of linear function is obtained when considering functions of the form $f(x) = mx + b$ with $m = 0$.

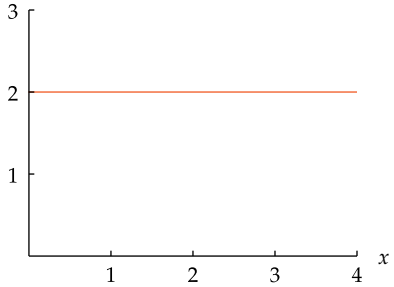
Constant function

A **constant function** is a function f of the form

$$f(x) = b,$$

where b is a number.

The graph of a constant function is a horizontal line, which has slope 0.

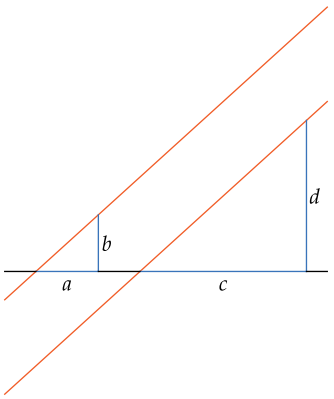


The orange horizontal line is the graph of the constant function f defined by $f(x) = 2$ on the interval $[0, 4]$.

Parallel Lines

Consider two parallel lines in the coordinate plane, as shown here. Because the two lines are parallel, the corresponding angles in the two right triangles are equal, and thus the two right triangles are similar. This implies that

$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}.$$



Parallel lines.

Because $\frac{b}{a}$ is the slope of the top line and $\frac{d}{c}$ is the slope of the bottom line, we conclude that these parallel lines have the same slope.

The logic used in the paragraph above is reversible. Specifically, instead of starting with the assumption that the two lines in the figure above are parallel, suppose we start with the assumption that the two lines have the same slope. Thus $\frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}$, which implies that the two right triangles in the figure above are similar. Hence the two lines make equal angles with the horizontal axis, which implies that the two lines are parallel.

The figure and reasoning above do not work if both lines are horizontal or both lines are vertical. But horizontal lines all have slope 0, and slope is not defined for vertical lines. Thus we summarize our characterization of parallel lines as follows.

Parallel lines

Two nonvertical lines in the coordinate plane are parallel if and only if they have the same slope.

The phrase "if and only if" connecting two statements means that the two statements are either both true or both false. For example, $x + 1 > 6$ if and only if $x > 5$.

For example, the lines

$$y = 4x - 5 \quad \text{and} \quad y = 4x + 9$$

are parallel (both have slope 4). As another example, the lines

$$y = 6x + 5 \quad \text{and} \quad y = 7x + 5$$

are not parallel (the first line has slope 6; the second line has slope 7).

Example 6

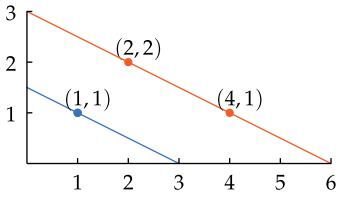
Find the equation of the line that contains the point $(1,1)$ and that is parallel to the line containing the points $(2,2)$ and $(4,1)$.

solution The line containing $(2,2)$ and $(4,1)$ has slope $\frac{2-1}{2-4}$, which equals $-\frac{1}{2}$. Thus the parallel line that contains $(1,1)$ also has slope $-\frac{1}{2}$ and thus has equation

$$y - 1 = -\frac{1}{2}(x - 1),$$

which can be rewritten as

$$y = -\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{2}.$$



The line containing $(2,2)$ and $(4,1)$ (orange), and the parallel line containing $(1,1)$ (blue).

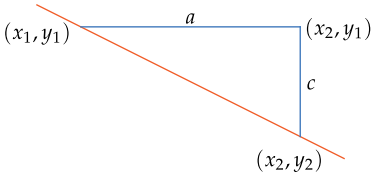
Example 7

Explain why two distinct nonvertical lines in the xy-plane are parallel if and only if they do not intersect.

solution Suppose $y = m_1x + b_1$ and $y = m_2x + b_2$ are the equations of two distinct nonvertical lines in the xy-plane. These lines intersect if and only if we can solve the equation $m_1x + b_1 = m_2x + b_2$. This equation has solution $x = \frac{b_2 - b_1}{m_1 - m_2}$ if $m_1 \neq m_2$ (which implies that the lines are not parallel) but has no solution if $m_1 = m_2$ (which implies the lines are parallel).

Perpendicular Lines

Before beginning our treatment of perpendicular lines, we take a brief detour to make clear the geometry of a line with negative slope. A line with negative slope slants down from left to right. The figure below shows a line with negative slope; to avoid clutter the coordinate axes are not shown.



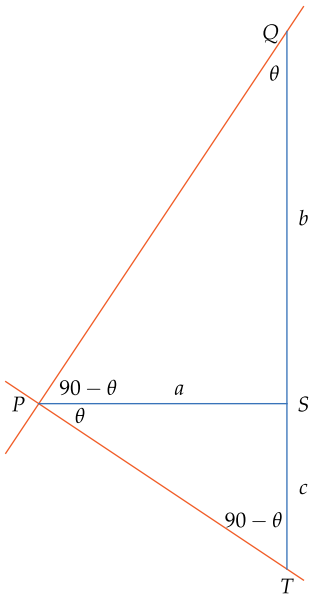
A line with slope $-\frac{c}{a}$.

In the figure above, a is the length of the horizontal line segment and c is the length of the vertical line segment. Of course a and c are positive numbers, because lengths are positive. In terms of the coordinates as shown in the figure above, we have $a = x_2 - x_1$ and $c = y_1 - y_2$. The slope of this line equals $(y_2 - y_1)/(x_2 - x_1)$, which equals $-\frac{c}{a}$.

The following result gives a useful characterization of perpendicular lines.

Perpendicular lines

Two nonvertical lines are perpendicular if and only if the product of their slopes equals -1.



To explain why the result above holds, consider two perpendicular lines as shown in orange in the figure here. In addition to the two perpendicular lines in orange, the figure shows the horizontal line segment PS and the vertical line segment QT, which intersect at S.

We assume the angle PQT is θ degrees. To check that the other three labeled angles in the figure are labeled correctly, first note that the two angles labeled $90 - \theta$ are each the third angle in a right triangle (the right triangles are PSQ and QPT), one of whose angles is θ. Consideration of the right angle QPT now shows that angle TPS is θ degrees, as labeled.

Consider the right triangles PSQ and TSP in the figure. These triangles have the same angles, and thus they are similar. Thus the ratios of corresponding sides are equal. Specifically, we have

$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{a}{c}.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $-\frac{c}{a}$, we get

$$\left(\frac{b}{a}\right) \cdot \left(-\frac{c}{a}\right) = -1.$$

The figure shows that the line containing the points P and Q has slope $\frac{b}{a}$. Our brief discussion of lines with negative slope shows that the line containing the points P and T has slope $-\frac{c}{a}$. Thus the equation above implies that the product of the slopes of these two perpendicular lines equals -1, as desired.

The logic used above is reversible. Specifically, suppose instead of starting with the assumption that the two lines in orange are perpendicular, we start with the assumption that the product of their slopes equals -1. This implies that $\frac{b}{a} = \frac{a}{c}$, which implies that the two right triangles PSQ and TSP are similar; thus these two triangles have the same angles. This implies that the angles are labeled correctly in the figure above (assuming that we start by declaring that angle PQS measures θ degrees). This then implies that angle QPT measures 90°. Thus the two lines in orange are perpendicular, as desired.

Numbers m_1 and m_2 such that $m_1 m_2 = -1$ are sometimes called **negative reciprocals** *of each other.*

Example 8

Show that the lines given by the following equations are perpendicular:

$$y = 4x - 5 \quad \text{and} \quad y = -\tfrac{1}{4}x + 18.$$

solution The first line has slope 4; the second line has slope $-\frac{1}{4}$. The product of these slopes is $4 \cdot (-\frac{1}{4})$, which equals -1. Because the product of the two slopes equals -1, the two lines are perpendicular.

To show that two lines are perpendicular, we only need to know the slopes of the lines, not their full equations, as shown by the following example.

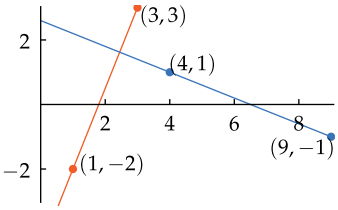
Example 9

Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(1,-2)$ and $(3,3)$ is perpendicular to the line containing the points $(9,-1)$ and $(t,1)$.

solution The line containing $(1,-2)$ and $(3,3)$ has slope $\frac{3-(-2)}{3-1}$, which equals $\frac{5}{2}$. The line containing $(9,-1)$ and $(t,1)$ has slope $\frac{1-(-1)}{t-9}$, which equals $\frac{2}{t-9}$. We want the product of these two slopes to equal -1. In other words, we want

$$\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)\left(\frac{2}{t-9}\right) = -1.$$

Solving the equation above for t gives $t = 4$.



The orange line containing $(1,-2)$ and $(3,3)$ is perpendicular to the blue line containing $(9,-1)$ and $(4,1)$.

Sometimes we use different scales on the two coordinate axes to keep the size of a figure within reasonable bounds. Using different scales distorts angles, as stated in the result below and as demonstrated in the example below. Use caution when dealing with coordinate axes with unequal scales.

Angles are distorted by unequal scales on coordinate axes

In graphs with unequal scales on the two coordinate axes, angles are not accurately represented.

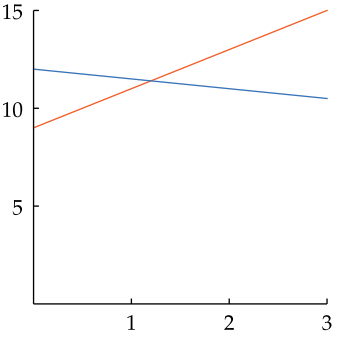
Example 10

The figure here shows the lines $y = 2x + 9$ (orange) and $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 12$ (blue) for x in the interval $[0,3]$. Because $2 \cdot (-\frac{1}{2}) = -1$, these lines are perpendicular. However, they do not appear to be perpendicular in the figure. Explain why.

solution The horizontal axis shown here goes from 0 to 3, while the vertical axis shown here goes from 0 to 15. Thus although the two coordinate axes shown in the figure have the same physical size, they have different scales.

The differing scales on the horizontal and vertical axes causes distortion of angles. Thus the lines really are perpendicular, and they would indeed look perpendicular if we used the same scale on the vertical axis as on the horizontal axis. However, using the same scale would require a very tall figure that is five times as high as it is wide, which is why using different scales is sometimes more convenient.

As another indication that angles are distorted in this figure, note that the orange line has slope 2, which means that it is steeper than the line $y = x$ which makes a 45° angle with the positive horizontal axis. However, because of the distortion here caused by the differing scales, the orange line appears to make an angle of less than 45° with the horizontal axis.



The perpendicular lines $y = 2x + 9$ (orange) and $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 12$ (blue).

Exercises

1 What are the coordinates of the unlabeled vertex of the smaller of the two right triangles in the figure at the beginning of this section?

2 What are the coordinates of the unlabeled vertex of the larger of the two right triangles in the figure at the beginning of this section?

3 Find the slope of the line that contains the points $(3,4)$ and $(7,13)$.

4 Find the slope of the line that contains the points $(2,11)$ and $(6,-5)$.

5 Find a number w such that the line containing the points $(1,w)$ and $(3,7)$ has slope 5.

6 Find a number d such that the line containing the points $(d,4)$ and $(-2,9)$ has slope -3.

7 Suppose the tuition per semester at Euphoria State University is \$525 plus \$200 for each unit taken.

(a) What is the tuition for a semester in which a student is taking 10 units?

(b) Find a linear function t such that $t(u)$ is the tuition in dollars for a semester in which a student is taking u units.

(c) Find the total tuition for a student who takes 12 semesters to accumulate the 120 units needed to graduate.

(d) Find a linear function g such that $g(s)$ is the total tuition for a student who takes s semesters to accumulate the 120 units needed to graduate.

8 Suppose the tuition per semester at Luxim University is \$900 plus \$850 for each unit taken.

(a) What is the tuition for a semester in which a student is taking 15 units?

(b) Find a linear function t such that $t(u)$ is the tuition in dollars for a semester in which a student is taking u units.

(c) Find the total tuition for a student who takes 8 semesters to accumulate the 120 units needed to graduate.

(d) Find a linear function g such that $g(s)$ is the total tuition for a student who takes s semesters to accumulate the 120 units needed to graduate.

9 Suppose your cell phone company offers two calling plans. The pay-per-call plan charges \$14 per month plus 3 cents for each minute. The unlimited-calling plan charges a flat rate of \$29 per month for unlimited calls.

(a) What is your monthly cost in dollars for making 400 minutes per month of calls on the pay-per-call plan?

(b) Find a linear function c such that $c(m)$ is your monthly cost in dollars for making m minutes of phone calls per month on the pay-per-call plan.

(c) How many minutes per month must you use for the unlimited-calling plan to become cheaper?

10 Suppose your cell phone company offers two calling plans. The pay-per-call plan charges \$11 per month plus 4 cents for each minute. The unlimited-calling plan charges a flat rate of \$25 per month for unlimited calls.

(a) What is your monthly cost in dollars for making 600 minutes per month of calls on the pay-per-call plan?

(b) Find a linear function c such that $c(m)$ is your monthly cost in dollars for making m minutes of phone calls per month on the pay-per-call plan.

(c) How many minutes per month must you use for the unlimited-calling plan to become cheaper?

11 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane with slope 2 that contains the point $(7,3)$.

12 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane with slope -4 that contains the point $(-5,-2)$.

13 Find the equation of the line that contains the points $(2,-1)$ and $(4,9)$.

14 Find the equation of the line that contains the points $(-3,2)$ and $(-5,7)$.

15 Find a number t such that the point $(3,t)$ is on the line containing the points $(7,6)$ and $(14,10)$.

16 Find a number t such that the point $(-2,t)$ is on the line containing the points $(5,-2)$ and $(10,-8)$.

17 Find a function s such that $s(d)$ is the number of seconds in d days.

18 Find a function s such that $s(w)$ is the number of seconds in w weeks.

19 Find a function f such that $f(m)$ is the number of inches in m miles.

20 Find a function m such that $m(f)$ is the number of miles in f feet.

The exact conversion between the English measurement system and the metric system for length is given by the equation* 1 *inch* = 2.54 *centimeters.

21 Find a function k such that $k(m)$ is the number of kilometers in m miles.

22 Find a function M such that $M(m)$ is the number of miles in m meters.

23 Find a function f such that $f(c)$ is the number of inches in c centimeters.

24 Find a function m such that $m(f)$ is the number of meters in f feet.

25 Find a number c such that the point $(c,13)$ is on the line containing the points $(-4,-17)$ and $(6,33)$.

26 Find a number c such that the point $(c,-19)$ is on the line containing the points $(2,1)$ and $(4,9)$.

27 Find a number t such that the point $(t,2t)$ is on the line containing the points $(3,-7)$ and $(5,-15)$.

28 Find a number t such that the point $(t,\frac{t}{2})$ is on the line containing the points $(2,-4)$ and $(-3,-11)$.

29 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(3,2)$ and that is parallel to the line $y=4x-1$.

30 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(-4,-5)$ and that is parallel to the line $y=-2x+3$.

31 Find the equation of the line that contains the point $(2,3)$ and that is parallel to the line containing the points $(7,1)$ and $(5,6)$.

32 Find the equation of the line that contains the point $(-4,3)$ and that is parallel to the line containing the points $(3,-7)$ and $(6,-9)$.

33 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(t,2)$ and $(3,5)$ is parallel to the line containing the points $(-1,4)$ and $(-3,-2)$.

34 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(-3,t)$ and $(2,-4)$ is parallel to the line containing the points $(5,6)$ and $(-2,4)$.

35 Find the intersection in the xy-plane of the lines $y = 5x + 3$ and $y = -2x + 1$.

36 Find the intersection in the xy-plane of the lines $y = -4x + 5$ and $y = 5x - 2$.

37 Find a number b such that the three lines in the xy-plane given by the equations $y = 2x + b$, $y = 3x - 5$, and $y = -4x + 6$ have a common intersection point.

38 Find a number m such that the three lines in the xy-plane given by the equations $y = mx + 3$, $y = 4x + 1$, and $y = 5x + 7$ have a common intersection point.

39 Find a number m such that the line $y = mx + \pi$ does not intersect the line in the xy-plane containing the points $(3,1)$ and $(5,4)$.

40 Find a number m such that the line $y = mx + \sqrt{7}$ does not intersect the line in the xy-plane containing the points $(2,-1)$ and $(-3,7)$.

41 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(4,1)$ and that is perpendicular to the line $y = 3x + 5$.

42 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(-3,2)$ and that is perpendicular to the line $y = -5x + 1$.

43 Find a number t such that the line in the xy-plane containing the points $(t,4)$ and $(2,-1)$ is perpendicular to the line $y = 6x - 7$.

44 Find a number t such that the line in the xy-plane containing the points $(-3,t)$ and $(4,3)$ is perpendicular to the line $y = -5x + 999$.

45 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(4,t)$ and $(-1,6)$ is perpendicular to the line that contains the points $(3,5)$ and $(1,-2)$.

46 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(t,-2)$ and $(-3,5)$ is perpendicular to the line that contains the points $(4,7)$ and $(1,11)$.

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

47 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that has slope m and intersects the x-axis at $(c,0)$.

48 Show that the composition of two linear functions is a linear function.

49 Show that if f and g are linear functions, then the graphs of $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$ have the same slope.

50 Show that a linear function is increasing if and only if the slope of its graph is positive.

51 Show that a linear function is decreasing if and only if the slope of its graph is negative.

52 Show that every nonconstant linear function is a one-to-one function.

53 Show that if f is the linear function defined by $f(x) = mx + b$, where $m \neq 0$, then the inverse function f^{-1} is defined by the formula $f^{-1}(y) = \frac{1}{m}y - \frac{b}{m}$.

54 Show that the linear function f defined by $f(x) = mx + b$ is an odd function if and only if $b = 0$.

55 Show that the linear function f defined by $f(x) = mx + b$ is an even function if and only if $m = 0$.

56 Let g denote the income tax function given in Example 2 of Section 1.1. The graph of g consists of parts of seven different lines corresponding to the seven tax brackets.

(a) List the slopes of the seven lines that are used to construct the graph of g, in order as income moves from a lower amount to a higher amount.

(b) What is the social policy behind the increase in slopes in the list in part (a) as income moves from a lower amount to a higher amount?

57 Suppose a and b are nonzero numbers. Where does the line in the xy-plane given by the equation

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$$

intersect the coordinate axes?

58 Show that the points $(-84,-14)$, $(21,1)$, and $(98,12)$ lie on a line.

59 Show that the points $(-8,-65)$, $(1,52)$, and $(3,77)$ do not lie on a line.

60 Change just one of the six numbers in the problem above so that the resulting three points lie on a line.

61 Show that for every number t, the point $(5-3t, 7-4t)$ is on the line containing the points $(2,3)$ and $(5,7)$.

62 Suppose (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2) are the endpoints of a line segment.

(a) Show that the line containing the point $(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1+y_2}{2})$ and the endpoint (x_1,y_1) has slope $\frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}$.

(b) Show that the line containing the point $(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1+y_2}{2})$ and the endpoint (x_2,y_2) has slope $\frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}$.

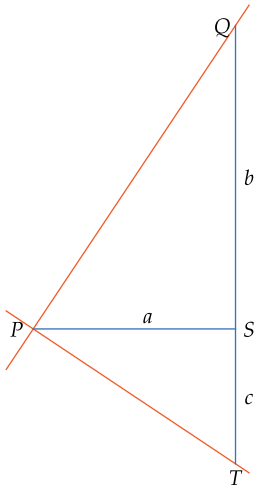
(c) Explain why parts (a) and (b) of this problem imply that the point $(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1+y_2}{2})$ lies on the line containing the endpoints (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2).

63 The Kelvin temperature scale is defined by $K = C + 273.15$, where K is the temperature on the Kelvin scale and C is the temperature on the Celsius scale. (Thus -273.15 degrees Celsius, which is the temperature at which all atomic movement ceases and thus is the lowest possible temperature, corresponds to 0 on the Kelvin scale.)

(a) Find a function F such that $F(x)$ equals the temperature on the Fahrenheit scale corresponding to temperature x on the Kelvin scale.

(b) Explain why the graph of the function F from part (a) is parallel to the graph of the function f obtained in Example 5.

64 We used similar triangles to show that the product of the slopes of two perpendicular lines equals -1. The steps below outline an alternative proof that avoids the use of similar triangles but uses more algebra instead. Use the figure below, which is the same as the figure used earlier except that there is now no need to label the angles.



QP is perpendicular to PT.

(a) Apply the Pythagorean Theorem to triangle PSQ to find the length of the line segment PQ in terms of a and b.

(b) Apply the Pythagorean Theorem to triangle PST to find the length of the line segment PT in terms of a and c.

(c) Apply the Pythagorean Theorem to triangle QPT to find the length of the line segment QT in terms of the lengths of the line segments of PQ and PT calculated in the first two parts of this problem.

(d) As can be seen from the figure, the length of the line segment QT equals $b + c$. Thus set the formula for the length of the line segment QT, as calculated in the previous part of this problem, equal to $b + c$, and solve the resulting equation for c in terms of a and b.

(e) Use the result in the previous part of this problem to show that the slope of the line containing P and Q times the slope of the line containing P and T equals -1.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

1 What are the coordinates of the unlabeled vertex of the smaller of the two right triangles in the figure at the beginning of this section?

solution Drawing vertical and horizontal lines from the point in question to the coordinate axes shows that the coordinates of the point are (x_2, y_1).

3 Find the slope of the line that contains the points $(3, 4)$ and $(7, 13)$.

solution The line containing the points $(3, 4)$ and $(7, 13)$ has slope

$$\frac{13-4}{7-3},$$

which equals $\frac{9}{4}$.

5 Find a number w such that the line containing the points $(1, w)$ and $(3, 7)$ has slope 5.

solution The slope of the line containing the points $(1, w)$ and $(3, 7)$ equals

$$\frac{7-w}{3-1},$$

which equals $\frac{7-w}{2}$. We want this slope to equal 5. Thus we must find a number w such that

$$\frac{7-w}{2} = 5.$$

Solving this equation for w, we get $w = -3$.

7 Suppose the tuition per semester at Euphoria State University is \$525 plus \$200 for each unit taken.

(a) What is the tuition for a semester in which a student is taking 10 units?

(b) Find a linear function t such that $t(u)$ is the tuition in dollars for a semester in which a student is taking u units.

(c) Find the total tuition for a student who takes 12 semesters to accumulate the 120 units needed to graduate.

(d) Find a linear function g such that $g(s)$ is the total tuition for a student who takes s semesters to accumulate the 120 units needed to graduate.

solution

(a) For a semester in which a student is taking 10 units, the tuition is $200 \times 10 + 525$, which equals \$2525.

(b) The desired function t is defined by

$$t(u) = 200u + 525.$$

(c) Taking 120 units over 12 semesters will cost $525 \times 12 + 200 \times 120$ dollars, which equals \$30,300.

(d) The desired function g is defined by

$$g(s) = 525s + 24000.$$

9 Suppose your cell phone company offers two calling plans. The pay-per-call plan charges \$14 per month plus 3 cents for each minute. The unlimited-calling plan charges a flat rate of \$29 per month for unlimited calls.

(a) What is your monthly cost in dollars for making 400 minutes per month of calls on the pay-per-call plan?

(b) Find a linear function c such that $c(m)$ is your monthly cost in dollars for making m minutes of phone calls per month on the pay-per-call plan.

(c) How many minutes per month must you use for the unlimited-calling plan to become cheaper?

solution

(a) Converting 3 cents to \$0.03, we see that 400 minutes per month of calls costs $(0.03)(400) + 14$ dollars, which equals \$26.

(b) The desired function c is defined by

$$c(m) = 0.03m + 14.$$

(c) The two plans cost the same amount for m minutes if $c(m) = 29$. To find this value of m, solve the equation $0.03m + 14 = 29$, getting

$$m = \frac{29-14}{0.03} = \frac{15}{0.03} = \frac{1500}{3} = 500.$$

Thus the two plans cost the same amount if 500 minutes per month are used. If more than 500 minutes per month are used, then the unlimited-calling plan is cheaper.

11 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane with slope 2 that contains the point $(7,3)$.

solution If (x,y) denotes a typical point on the line with slope 2 that contains the point $(7,3)$, then

$$\frac{y-3}{x-7} = 2.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $x-7$ and then adding 3 to both sides gives the equation

$$y = 2x - 11.$$

check The line $y = 2x - 11$ has slope 2. We should also check that the point $(7,3)$ is on this line. In other words, we need to verify the alleged equation

$$3 \stackrel{?}{=} 2 \cdot 7 - 11.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that this is indeed true.

13 Find the equation of the line that contains the points $(2,-1)$ and $(4,9)$.

solution The line that contains the points $(2,-1)$ and $(4,9)$ has slope

$$\frac{9-(-1)}{4-2},$$

which equals 5. Thus if (x,y) denotes a typical point on this line, then

$$\frac{y-9}{x-4} = 5.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $x-4$ and then adding 9 to both sides gives the equation

$$y = 5x - 11.$$

check We need to check that both $(2,-1)$ and $(4,9)$ are on the line $y = 5x - 11$. In other words, we need to verify the alleged equations

$$-1 \stackrel{?}{=} 5 \cdot 2 - 11 \quad \text{and} \quad 9 \stackrel{?}{=} 5 \cdot 4 - 11.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that both alleged equations are indeed true.

15 Find a number t such that the point $(3,t)$ is on the line containing the points $(7,6)$ and $(14,10)$.

solution The line containing $(7,6)$ and $(14,10)$ has slope $\frac{10-6}{14-7}$, which equals $\frac{4}{7}$. Thus for the point $(3,t)$ to be on this line, the slope of the line containing $(3,t)$ and $(7,6)$ must equal $\frac{4}{7}$. In other words, we must have

$$\frac{t-6}{3-7} = \frac{4}{7}.$$

Solving this equation for t gives $t = \frac{26}{7}$.

17 Find a function s such that $s(d)$ is the number of seconds in d days.

solution Each minute has 60 seconds, and each hour has 60 minutes. Thus each hour has 60×60 seconds, or 3600 seconds. Each day has 24 hours; thus each day has 24×3600 seconds, or 86400 seconds. Thus

$$s(d) = 86400d.$$

19 Find a function f such that $f(m)$ is the number of inches in m miles.

solution Each foot has 12 inches, and each mile has 5280 feet. Thus each mile has 5280×12 inches, or 63360 inches. Thus

$$f(m) = 63360m.$$

The exact conversion between the English measurement system and the metric system for length is given by the equation 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters.

21 Find a function k such that $k(m)$ is the number of kilometers in m miles.

solution Multiplying both sides of the equation

$$1 \text{ inch} = 2.54 \text{ centimeters}$$

by 12 gives

$$1 \text{ foot} = 12 \times 2.54 \text{ centimeters}$$

$$= 30.48 \text{ centimeters}.$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by 5280 gives

$$1 \text{ mile} = 5280 \times 30.48 \text{ centimeters}$$

$$= 160934.4 \text{ centimeters}$$

$$= 1609.344 \text{ meters}$$

$$= 1.609344 \text{ kilometers}.$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by a number m shows that m miles $= 1.609344m$ kilometers. In other words,

$$k(m) = 1.609344m.$$

remark The formula above is exact. However, the approximation $k(m) = 1.61m$, or the slightly less accurate approximation $k(m) = \frac{8}{5}m$, is often used.

23 Find a function f such that $f(c)$ is the number of inches in c centimeters.

solution Dividing both sides of the equation 1 inch $= 2.54$ centimeters by 2.54 gives

$$1 \text{ centimeter} = \frac{1}{2.54} \text{ inches}.$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by a number c shows that c centimeters $= \frac{c}{2.54}$ inches. In other words,

$$f(c) = \frac{c}{2.54}.$$

25 Find a number c such that the point $(c, 13)$ is on the line containing the points $(-4, -17)$ and $(6, 33)$.

solution First we find the equation of the line containing the points $(-4, -17)$ and $(6, 33)$. To do this, note that the line containing those two points has slope

$$\frac{33-(-17)}{6-(-4)},$$

which equals 5. Thus if (x, y) denotes a typical point on this line, then

$$\frac{y-33}{x-6} = 5.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $x - 6$ and then adding 33 gives the equation

$$y = 5x + 3.$$

Now we can find a number c such that the point $(c, 13)$ is on the line given by the equation above. To do this, in the equation above replace x by c and y by 13, getting

$$13 = 5c + 3.$$

Solving this equation for c, we get $c = 2$.

check We should check that the three points $(-4, -17)$, $(6, 33)$, and $(2, 13)$ are all on the line $y = 5x + 3$. In other words, we need to verify the alleged equations

$$-17 \stackrel{?}{=} 5 \cdot (-4) + 3, \quad 33 \stackrel{?}{=} 5 \cdot 6 + 3, \quad 13 \stackrel{?}{=} 5 \cdot 2 + 3.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that all three alleged equations are indeed true.

27 Find a number t such that the point $(t, 2t)$ is on the line containing the points $(3, -7)$ and $(5, -15)$.

solution First we find the equation of the line containing the points $(3, -7)$ and $(5, -15)$. To do this, note that the line containing those two points has slope

$$\frac{-7-(-15)}{3-5},$$

which equals -4. Thus if (x, y) denotes a point on this line, then

$$\frac{y-(-7)}{x-3} = -4.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $x - 3$ and then subtracting 7 gives the equation

$$y = -4x + 5.$$

Now we can find a number t such that the point $(t, 2t)$ is on the line given by the equation above. To do this, in the equation above replace x by t and y by $2t$, getting

$$2t = -4t + 5.$$

Solving this equation for t, we get $t = \frac{5}{6}$.

check We should check that the three points $(3, -7)$, $(5, -15)$, and $\left(\frac{5}{6}, 2 \cdot \frac{5}{6}\right)$ are all on the line $y = -4x + 5$. In other words, we need to verify the alleged equations

$$-7 \stackrel{?}{=} -4 \cdot 3 + 5, \quad -15 \stackrel{?}{=} -4 \cdot 5 + 5, \quad \frac{5}{3} \stackrel{?}{=} -4 \cdot \frac{5}{6} + 5.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that all three alleged equations are indeed true.

29 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(3,2)$ and that is parallel to the line $y = 4x - 1$.

solution The line in the xy-plane whose equation is $y = 4x - 1$ has slope 4. Thus each line parallel to it also has slope 4 and hence has the form

$$y = 4x + b$$

for some number b.

Thus we need to find a number b such that the point $(3,2)$ is on the line given by the equation above. Replacing x by 3 and replacing y by 2 in the equation above, we have

$$2 = 4 \cdot 3 + b.$$

Solving this equation for b, we get $b = -10$. Thus the line that we seek is described by the equation

$$y = 4x - 10.$$

31 Find the equation of the line that contains the point $(2,3)$ and that is parallel to the line containing the points $(7,1)$ and $(5,6)$.

solution The line containing the points $(7,1)$ and $(5,6)$ has slope

$$\frac{6-1}{5-7},$$

which equals $-\frac{5}{2}$. Thus each line parallel to it also has slope $-\frac{5}{2}$ and hence has the form

$$y = -\frac{5}{2}x + b$$

for some number b.

Thus we need to find a number b such that the point $(2,3)$ is on the line given by the equation above. Replacing x by 2 and replacing y by 3 in the equation above, we have

$$3 = -\frac{5}{2} \cdot 2 + b.$$

Solving this equation for b, we get $b = 8$. Thus the line that we seek is described by the equation

$$y = -\frac{5}{2}x + 8.$$

33 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(t,2)$ and $(3,5)$ is parallel to the line containing the points $(-1,4)$ and $(-3,-2)$.

solution The line containing the points $(-1,4)$ and $(-3,-2)$ has slope

$$\frac{4-(-2)}{-1-(-3)},$$

which equals 3. Thus each line parallel to it also has slope 3.

The line containing the points $(t,2)$ and $(3,5)$ has slope

$$\frac{5-2}{3-t},$$

which equals $\frac{3}{3-t}$. From the paragraph above, we want this slope to equal 3. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$\frac{3}{3-t} = 3.$$

Dividing both sides of the equation above by 3 and then multiplying both sides by $3 - t$ gives the equation $1 = 3 - t$. Thus $t = 2$.

35 Find the intersection in the xy-plane of the lines $y = 5x + 3$ and $y = -2x + 1$.

solution Setting the two right sides of the equations above equal to each other, we get

$$5x + 3 = -2x + 1.$$

To solve this equation for x, add $2x$ to both sides and then subtract 3 from both sides, getting $7x = -2$. Thus $x = -\frac{2}{7}$.

To find the value of y at the intersection point, we can plug the value $x = -\frac{2}{7}$ into either of the equations of the two lines. Choosing the first equation, we have $y = -5 \cdot \frac{2}{7} + 3$, which implies that $y = \frac{11}{7}$. Thus the two lines intersect at the point $(-\frac{2}{7}, \frac{11}{7})$.

check We can substitute the value $x = -\frac{2}{7}$ into the equation for the second line to see if that also gives the value $y = \frac{11}{7}$. In other words, we need to verify the alleged equation

$$\frac{11}{7} \stackrel{?}{=} -2(-\frac{2}{7}) + 1.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that this is true. Thus we indeed have the correct solution.

37 Find a number b such that the three lines in the xy-plane given by the equations $y = 2x + b$, $y = 3x - 5$, and $y = -4x + 6$ have a common intersection point.

solution The unknown b appears in the first equation; thus our first step will be to find the point of intersection of the last two lines. To do this, we set the right sides of the last two equations equal to each other, getting

$$3x - 5 = -4x + 6.$$

To solve this equation for x, add $4x$ to both sides and then add 5 to both sides, getting $7x = 11$. Thus $x = \frac{11}{7}$. Substituting this value of x into the equation $y = 3x - 5$, we get

$$y = 3 \cdot \frac{11}{7} - 5.$$

Thus $y = -\frac{2}{7}$.

At this stage, we have shown that the lines given by the equations $y = 3x - 5$ and $y = -4x + 6$ intersect at the point $(\frac{11}{7}, -\frac{2}{7})$. We want the line given by the equation $y = 2x + b$ also to contain this point. Thus we set $x = \frac{11}{7}$ and $y = -\frac{2}{7}$ in this equation, getting

$$-\frac{2}{7} = 2 \cdot \frac{11}{7} + b.$$

Solving this equation for b, we get $b = -\frac{24}{7}$.

check As a check that the line given by the equation $y = -4x + 6$ contains the point $(\frac{11}{7}, -\frac{2}{7})$, we can substitute the value $x = \frac{11}{7}$ into the equation for that line and see if it gives the value $y = -\frac{2}{7}$. In other words, we need to verify the alleged equation

$$-\frac{2}{7} \stackrel{?}{=} -4 \cdot \frac{11}{7} + 6.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that this is true. Thus we indeed found the correct point of intersection.

We chose the line $y = -4x + 6$ for this check because the other two lines had been used in direct calculations in our solution.

39 Find a number m such that the line $y = mx + \pi$ does not intersect the line in the xy-plane containing the points $(3, 1)$ and $(5, 4)$.

solution The line containing the points $(3, 1)$ and $(5, 4)$ has slope $\frac{4-1}{5-3}$, which equals $\frac{3}{2}$. Thus we take $m = \frac{3}{2}$, so that the line $y = \frac{3}{2}x + \pi$ is parallel to the line containing the points $(3, 1)$ and $(5, 4)$. The line $y = \frac{3}{2}x + \pi$ does not contain the point $(3, 1)$ because $1 \neq \frac{3}{2} \cdot 3 + \pi$. Thus the line $y = \frac{3}{2}x + \pi$ and the line containing the points $(3, 1)$ and $(5, 4)$ are parallel but not the same line. Thus the two lines do not intersect.

41 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(4, 1)$ and that is perpendicular to the line $y = 3x + 5$.

solution The line in the xy-plane whose equation is $y = 3x + 5$ has slope 3. Thus every line perpendicular to it has slope $-\frac{1}{3}$. Hence the equation of the line that we seek has the form

$$y = -\frac{1}{3}x + b$$

for some number b. We want the point $(4, 1)$ to be on this line. Substituting $x = 4$ and $y = 1$ into the equation above, we have

$$1 = -\frac{1}{3} \cdot 4 + b.$$

Solving this equation for b, we get $b = \frac{7}{3}$. Thus the equation of the line that we seek is

$$y = -\frac{1}{3}x + \frac{7}{3}.$$

43 Find a number t such that the line in the xy-plane containing the points $(t, 4)$ and $(2, -1)$ is perpendicular to the line $y = 6x - 7$.

solution The line in the xy-plane whose equation is $y = 6x - 7$ has slope 6. Thus every line perpendicular to it has slope $-\frac{1}{6}$. Thus we want the line containing the points $(t, 4)$ and $(2, -1)$ to have slope $-\frac{1}{6}$. In other words, we want

$$\frac{4 - (-1)}{t - 2} = -\frac{1}{6}.$$

Solving this equation for t, we get $t = -28$.

45 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(4, t)$ and $(-1, 6)$ is perpendicular to the line that contains the points $(3, 5)$ and $(1, -2)$.

solution The line containing the points $(3, 5)$ and $(1, -2)$ has slope

$$\frac{5 - (-2)}{3 - 1},$$

which equals $\frac{7}{2}$. Thus every line perpendicular to it has slope $-\frac{2}{7}$. Thus we want the line containing the points $(4, t)$ and $(-1, 6)$ to have slope $-\frac{2}{7}$. In other words, we want

$$\frac{t - 6}{4 - (-1)} = -\frac{2}{7}.$$

Solving this equation for t, we get $t = \frac{32}{7}$.

2.2 Quadratic Functions and Conics

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- use the completing-the-square technique;
- use the quadratic formula;
- find the vertex of a parabola;
- find the center and radius of a circle from its equation;
- recognize and use equations of ellipses and hyperbolas.

Completing the Square and the Quadratic Formula

Consider the problem of finding the numbers x such that

$$x^2 + 6x - 4 = 0.$$

Nothing obvious works here.

However, a technique called **completing the square** can be used to deal with equations such as the one above. The key to this technique is the identity

$$\left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 = x^2 + bx + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2,$$

which can be rewritten as the following identity.

Completing the square

$$x^2 + bx = \left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2$$

For example, if $b = 6$, then $x^2 + 6x = (x+3)^2 - 9$.

The next example illustrates the technique of completing the square.

Example 1

Find the numbers x such that

$$x^2 + 6x - 4 = 0.$$

solution Taking $b = 6$ in the completing-the-square identity, we can replace $x^2 + 6x$ in the equation above by $(x+3)^2 - 9$, getting

$$(x+3)^2 - 9 - 4 = 0.$$

Now add 13 to both sides of the equation above, getting $(x+3)^2 = 13$, which implies that

$$x + 3 = \pm\sqrt{13}.$$

Here $\pm$ indicates that we can choose either the plus sign or the minus sign.

Finally, add -3 to both sides, concluding that $x = -3 \pm \sqrt{13}$.

You do not necessarily need to memorize the completing-the-square identity. You only need to remember that the coefficient of x (or whatever variable) will need to be divided by 2, and then the appropriate number will need to be subtracted to get a correct identity.

Example 2

Write the expression $3x^2 - 30x + 1$ in the form $a(x-h)^2 + k$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned} 3x^2 - 30x + 1 &= 3(x^2 - 10x) + 1 \\ &= 3\big((x-5)^2 - 25\big) + 1 \\ &= 3(x-5)^2 - 75 + 1 \\ &= 3(x-5)^2 - 74 \end{aligned}$$

Note that the term that is subtracted is always positive because $(\frac{b}{2})^2$ is positive regardless of whether b is positive or negative.

In the next example, we complete the square to derive the quadratic formula.

Example 3

Suppose a, b, and c are numbers with $a \neq 0$. Find all real numbers x such that

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0.$$

solution Factor out a from the first two terms and then complete the square:

$$\begin{aligned} ax^2 + bx + c &= a\left(x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x\right) + c \\ &= a\left(\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 - \frac{b^2}{4a^2}\right) + c \\ &= a\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 - \frac{b^2}{4a} + c \\ &= a\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 - \frac{b^2 - 4ac}{4a}. \end{aligned}$$

Setting the last expression equal to 0 and then dividing both sides by a gives

$$\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 = \frac{b^2 - 4ac}{4a^2}.$$

Regardless of the value of x, the left side of the last equation is a positive number or 0. Thus if the right side is negative, the equation does not hold for any real number x. In other words, if $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, then the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ has no real solutions.

If $b^2 - 4ac \geq 0$, then we can take the square root of both sides of the last equation, getting

$$x + \frac{b}{2a} = \pm\frac{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

Adding $-\frac{b}{2a}$ to both sides gives

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

The quadratic formula first appeared in the year 628 in a book written by the Indian mathematician Brahmagupta.

Summarizing the result in the last example, we have the following.

Quadratic formula

Consider the equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0,$$

where a, b, and c are real numbers with $a \neq 0$.

- If $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, then the equation above has no (real) solutions.
- If $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, then the equation above has one solution:

$$x = -\frac{b}{2a}.$$

- If $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, then the equation above has two solutions:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

The following example illustrates the use of the quadratic formula.

Example 4

The Babylonians were able to solve this problem about four thousand years ago.

Find two numbers whose sum equals 7 and whose product equals 8.

solution Let's call the two numbers s and t. We want

$$s + t = 7 \quad \text{and} \quad st = 8.$$

Solving the first equation for s, we have $s = 7 - t$. Substituting this expression for s into the second equation gives $(7 - t)t = 8$, which is equivalent to the equation

$$t^2 - 7t + 8 = 0.$$

Using the quadratic formula to solve this equation for t gives

$$t = \frac{7 \pm \sqrt{7^2 - 4 \cdot 8}}{2} = \frac{7 \pm \sqrt{17}}{2}.$$

Let's choose the solution $t = \frac{7+\sqrt{17}}{2}$. Plugging this value of t into the equation $s = 7 - t$ then gives $s = \frac{7-\sqrt{17}}{2}$.

Thus two numbers whose sum equals 7 and whose product equals 8 are $\frac{7-\sqrt{17}}{2}$ and $\frac{7+\sqrt{17}}{2}$.

You should verify that if we had chosen

$$t = \frac{7-\sqrt{17}}{2},$$

then we would have ended up with the same pair of numbers.

check To check that this solution is correct, note that

$$\frac{7 - \sqrt{17}}{2} + \frac{7 + \sqrt{17}}{2} = \frac{14}{2} = 7$$

and

$$\frac{7 - \sqrt{17}}{2} \cdot \frac{7 + \sqrt{17}}{2} = \frac{7^2 - \sqrt{17}^2}{4} = \frac{49 - 17}{4} = \frac{32}{4} = 8.$$

Parabolas and Quadratic Functions

"I'm very well acquainted too with matters mathematical,
I understand equations, both the simple and quadratical."
–Gilbert and Sullivan, The Pirates of Penzance

Section 2.1 dealt with linear functions. Now we move up one level of complexity to deal with quadratic functions. We begin with the definition.

Quadratic function

A **quadratic function** is a function f of the form

$$f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c,$$

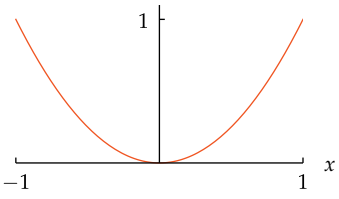
where a, b, and c are numbers, with $a \neq 0$.

The simplest quadratic function is the function f defined by $f(x) = x^2$; this function arises by taking $a = 1$, $b = 0$, and $c = 0$ in the definition above.

Parabolas can be defined geometrically, but for our purposes it is simpler to define a parabola algebraically.

Parabola

A **parabola** is the graph of a quadratic function.



The graph of $f(x) = x^2$ on the interval $[-1, 1]$.

For example, the graph of the quadratic function f defined by $f(x) = x^2$ is the familiar parabola shown here. This parabola is symmetric about the vertical axis, meaning that the parabola is unchanged if it is flipped across the vertical axis. Note that this line of symmetry intersects this parabola at the origin, which is the lowest point on this parabola.

Every parabola is symmetric about some line. The point where this line of symmetry intersects the parabola is sufficiently important to deserve a name.

Vertex

The **vertex** of a parabola is the point where the line of symmetry of the parabola intersects the parabola.

The vertex of the parabola shown above is the origin.

Example 5

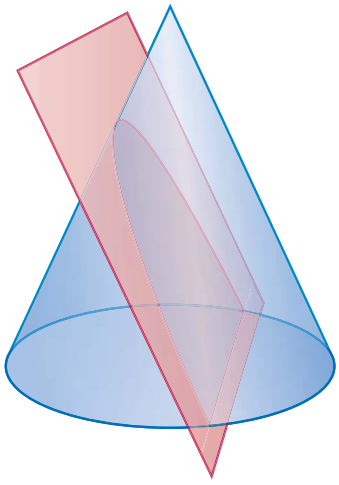
Suppose $f(x) = x^2 + 6x + 11$.

(a) For what value of x does $f(x)$ attain its minimum value?

(b) What is the minimum value of $f(x)$?

(c) Sketch the graph of f.

(d) Find the vertex of the graph of f.



The ancient Greeks discovered that the intersection of a cone and an appropriately positioned plane is a parabola.

solution

(a) First complete the square, as follows:

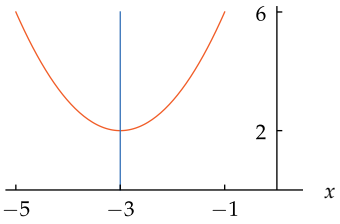
$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^2 + 6x + 11 \\ &= (x+3)^2 - 9 + 11 \\ &= (x+3)^2 + 2. \end{aligned}$$

Because $(x+3)^2$ equals 0 when $x = -3$ and is positive for all other values of x, the last expression shows that $f(x)$ takes on its minimum value when $x = -3$.

(b) From the expression above, we see that $f(-3) = 2$. Thus the minimum value of $f(x)$ is 2.

(c) The expression found for $f(x)$ in part (a) shows that the graph of f is obtained by shifting the graph of x^2 left 3 units and up 2 units, giving the graph shown here. The line of symmetry for this graph is $x = -3$, which is shown in blue.

(d) The vertex of the graph of f is the point $(-3, 2)$, obtained by shifting the origin (which is the vertex of the graph of x^2) left 3 units and up 2 units, as can be seen in the graph shown here.



The graph of $f(x) = x^2 + 6x + 11$ *on the interval* $[-5, -1]$.

The procedure used in the example above can be summarized as follows.

Parabola

Suppose f is a quadratic function. Complete the square to write f in the form

$$f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k.$$

- If $a > 0$, then $f(x)$ attains its minimum value k when $x = h$, and the graph of f is a parabola that opens upward.
- If $a < 0$, then $f(x)$ attains its maximum value k when $x = h$, and the graph of f is a parabola that opens downward.
- The vertex of the graph of f is the point (h, k).

The next example illustrates the use of the procedure above when $a < 0$.

Example 6

Suppose $f(x) = -3x^2 + 12x - 8$.

(a) For what value of x does $f(x)$ attain its maximum value?

(b) What is the maximum value of $f(x)$?

(c) Sketch the graph of f.

(d) Find the vertex of the graph of f.

solution

(a) First complete the square, as follows:

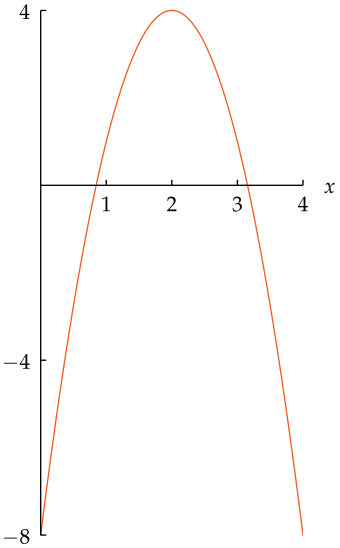
$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= -3x^2 + 12x - 8 \\ &= -3\left(x^2 - 4x\right) - 8 \\ &= -3\left((x-2)^2 - 4\right) - 8 \\ &= -3(x-2)^2 + 4. \end{aligned}$$

Because $-3(x-2)^2$ equals 0 when $x = 2$ and is negative for all other values of x, the last expression shows that $f(x)$ takes on its maximum value when $x = 2$.

(b) From the expression above, we see that the maximum value of $f(x)$ is 4.

(c) The expression found for $f(x)$ in part (a) shows that the graph of f is obtained by shifting the graph of $-3x^2$ right 2 units and up 4 units, giving the graph shown here.

(d) The vertex of the graph of f is the point $(2, 4)$, obtained by shifting the origin (which is the vertex of the graph of $-3x^2$) right 2 units and up 4 units.



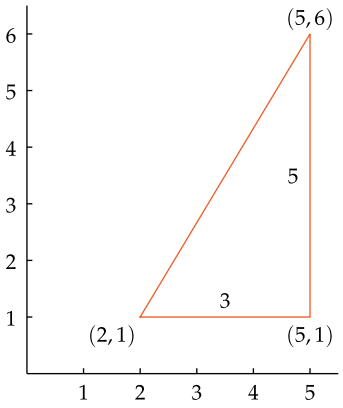
The graph of $f(x) = -3x^2 + 12x - 8$ *on the interval* $[0, 4]$.

Circles

We start with a concrete example before getting to the formula for the distance between two points.

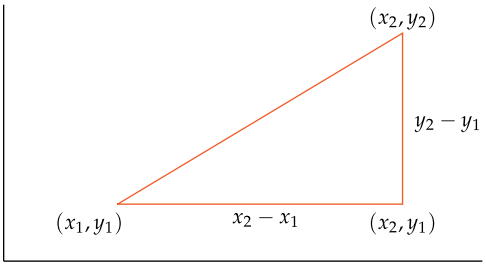
Example 7

Find the distance between the points $(5,6)$ and $(2,1)$.



solution The distance between the points $(5,6)$ and $(2,1)$ is the length of the hypotenuse in the right triangle shown here. The horizontal side of this triangle has length $5-2$, which equals 3, and the vertical side of this triangle has length $6-1$, which equals 5. By the Pythagorean Theorem, the hypotenuse has length $\sqrt{3^2+5^2}$, which equals $\sqrt{34}$.

More generally, to find the formula for the distance between two points (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2), consider the right triangle in the figure below.



The length of the hypotenuse equals the distance between (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2).

Starting with the points (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2) in the figure above, make sure you understand why the third point in the triangle (the vertex at the right angle) has coordinates (x_2,y_1). Also, verify that the horizontal side of the triangle has length x_2-x_1 and the vertical side of the triangle has length y_2-y_1, as indicated in the figure above. The Pythagorean Theorem then gives the length of the hypotenuse, leading to the following formula.

Distance between two points

The distance between the points (x_1,y_1) and (x_2,y_2) is

$$\sqrt{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2}.$$

As a special case of this formula, the distance between a point (x,y) and the origin is $\sqrt{x^2+y^2}$.

Using the formula above, we can now find the distance between two points without drawing a figure.

Example 8

Find the distance between the points $(3,1)$ and $(-4,-99)$.

solution The distance between these two points is

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{\big(3-(-4)\big)^2+\big(1-(-99)\big)^2} &= \sqrt{7^2+100^2}\\ &= \sqrt{49+10000}\\ &= \sqrt{10049}.\end{aligned}$$

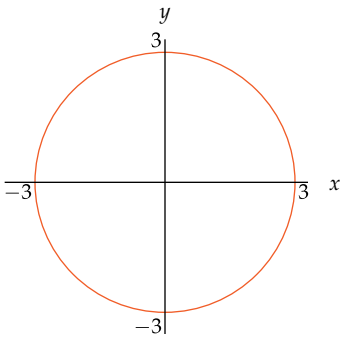
The set of points that have distance 3 from the origin in a coordinate plane is the circle with radius 3 centered at the origin. The next example shows how to find an equation that describes this circle.

Example 9

Find an equation that describes the circle with radius 3 centered at the origin in the xy-plane.

solution Recall that the distance from a point (x, y) to the origin is $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$. Hence a point (x, y) has distance 3 from the origin if and only if $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = 3$. Squaring both sides, we get

$$x^2 + y^2 = 9.$$



The circle with radius 3 centered at the origin.

More generally, suppose r is a positive number. Using the same reasoning as above, we see that

$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2$$

is the equation of the circle with radius r centered at the origin in the xy-plane.

We can also consider circles centered at points other than the origin.

Example 10

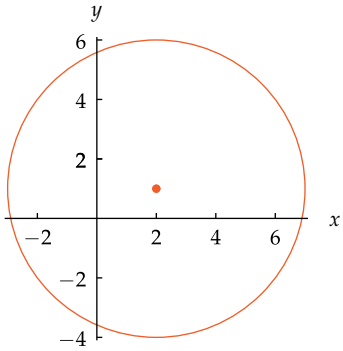
Find the equation of the circle in the xy-plane centered at $(2, 1)$ with radius 5.

solution This circle is the set of points whose distance from $(2, 1)$ equals 5. Thus this circle is the set of points (x, y) satisfying the equation

$$\sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y-1)^2} = 5.$$

Squaring both sides, we can more conveniently describe this circle as the set of points (x, y) such that

$$(x-2)^2 + (y-1)^2 = 25.$$



The circle centered at $(2, 1)$ with radius 5.

Using the same reasoning as in the example above, we get the following result.

Equation of a circle

The circle with center (h, k) and radius r is the set of points (x, y) satisfying the equation

$$(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 = r^2.$$

For example, the equation

$$(x-3)^2 + (y+5)^2 = 7$$

describes the circle in the xy-plane with radius $\sqrt{7}$ centered at $(3, -5)$.

Sometimes the equation of a circle may be in a form in which the radius and center are not obvious. You may then need to complete the square to find the radius and center. The next example illustrates this procedure.

Example 11

Find the radius and center of the circle described by $x^2 + 4x + y^2 - 6y = 12$.

solution Completing the square, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 12 &= x^2 + 4x + y^2 - 6y \\ &= (x+2)^2 - 4 + (y-3)^2 - 9 \\ &= (x+2)^2 + (y-3)^2 - 13. \end{aligned}$$

Here the completing-the-square technique has been applied separately to the x and y variables.

Adding 13 to the first and last sides of the equation above shows that

$$(x+2)^2 + (y-3)^2 = 25.$$

Thus we have a circle with radius 5 centered at $(-2, 3)$.

Ellipses

Ellipse

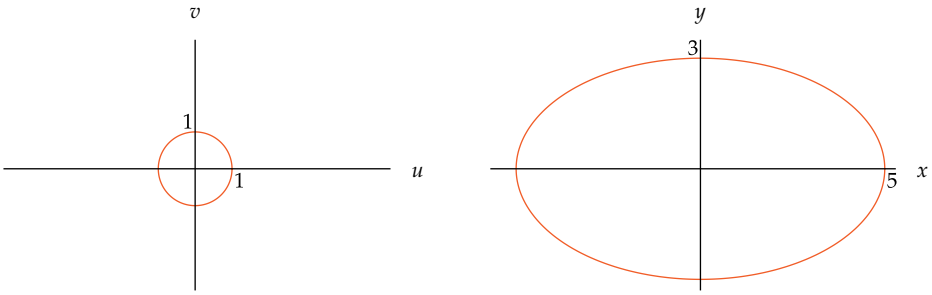
Stretching a circle horizontally and/or vertically produces a curve called an **ellipse**.

Example 12

Find the equation of the ellipse produced by stretching a circle with radius 1 centered at the origin horizontally by a factor of 5 and vertically by a factor of 3.

The German mathematician Johannes Kepler, who in 1609 published his discovery that orbits of the planets are ellipses, not circles or combinations of circles as previously thought.

solution The equation of the circle with radius 1 centered at the origin in the uv-plane is $u^2 + v^2 = 1$.



Stretching horizontally by a factor of 5 and vertically by a factor of 3 transforms the circle on the left into the ellipse on the right.

Stretching horizontally by a factor of 5 and stretching vertically by a factor of 3 transforms a point (u, v) to the point (x, y), where $x = 5u$ and $y = 3v$. Thus $u = \frac{x}{5}$ and $v = \frac{y}{3}$. Rewriting the equation $u^2 + v^2 = 1$ in terms of x and y gives

$$\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1,$$

which is the equation of the ellipse shown above. The points $(\pm 5, 0)$ and $(0, \pm 3)$ satisfy this equation and thus lie on the ellipse, as can also be seen from the figure.

Viewing an ellipse as a stretched circle leads to the formula for the area inside an ellipse, as shown in the Appendix.

More generally, suppose a and b are positive numbers. Suppose the circle with radius 1 centered at the origin is stretched horizontally by a factor of a and stretched vertically by a factor of b. Using the same reasoning as above (replace 5 by a and replace 3 by b), we see that the equation of the resulting ellipse in the xy-plane is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

The points $(\pm a, 0)$ and $(0, \pm b)$ satisfy this equation and lie on the ellipse.

Planets have orbits that are ellipses. You may be surprised to learn that the sun is *not* located at the center of those orbits. Instead, the sun is located at what is called a **focus** of each elliptical orbit. The plural of focus is **foci**, which we now define.

Foci of an ellipse

The **foci** of an ellipse are two points with the property that the sum of the distances from the foci to a point on the ellipse is a constant independent of the point on the ellipse.

As we will see in the next example, the foci of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ are the points $(-4, 0)$ and $(4, 0)$.

Example 13

(a) Find a formula in terms of x for the distance from a typical point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ to the point $(4, 0)$.

(b) Find a formula in terms of x for the distance from a typical point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ to the point $(-4, 0)$.

(c) Show that $(4, 0)$ and $(-4, 0)$ are foci of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$.

Isaac Newton showed that the equations of gravity imply that a planet's orbit around a star is an ellipse with the star at one of the foci. For example, if units are chosen so that the orbit of a planet is the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$, then the star must be located at either $(4, 0)$ or $(-4, 0)$.

solution

(a) The distance from (x, y) to the point $(4, 0)$ (the length of the shorter blue line segment in the figure below) is $\sqrt{(x-4)^2 + y^2}$, which equals

$$\sqrt{x^2 - 8x + 16 + y^2}.$$

We want an answer solely in terms of x, assuming that (x, y) lies on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$. Solving the ellipse equation for y^2, we have

$$y^2 = 9 - \tfrac{9}{25}x^2.$$

Substituting this expression for y^2 into the expression above shows that the distance from (x, y) to $(4, 0)$ equals

$$\sqrt{25 - 8x + \tfrac{16}{25}x^2},$$

which equals $\sqrt{(5 - \frac{4}{5}x)^2}$, which equals $5 - \frac{4}{5}x$.

"The universe cannot be read until we have learned the language and become familiar with the characters in which it is written. It is written in mathematical language, and the letters are triangles, circles and other geometrical figures, without which means it is humanly impossible to comprehend a single word."
—Galileo

(b) The distance from (x, y) to the point $(-4, 0)$ (the length of the longer blue line segment in the figure below) is $\sqrt{(x+4)^2 + y^2}$, which equals

$$\sqrt{x^2 + 8x + 16 + y^2}.$$

Now proceed as in the solution to part (a), with $-8x$ replaced by $8x$, concluding that the distance from (x, y) to $(-4, 0)$ is $5 + \frac{4}{5}x$.

(c) The previous parts of this example show that if (x, y) is a point on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$, then

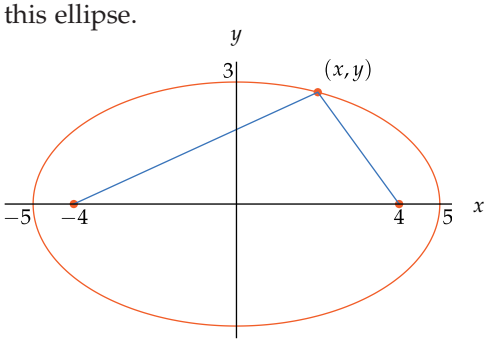
$$\text{distance from } (x, y) \text{ to } (4, 0) \text{ is } 5 - \tfrac{4}{5}x$$

and

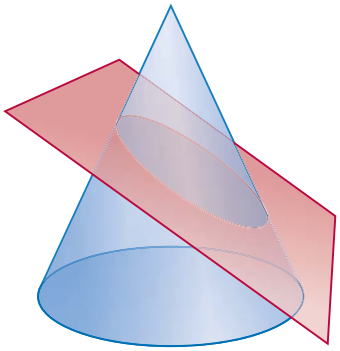
$$\text{distance from } (x, y) \text{ to } (-4, 0) \text{ is } 5 + \tfrac{4}{5}x.$$

Adding these distances, we see that the sum equals 10, which is a constant independent of the point (x, y) on the ellipse. Thus $(4, 0)$ and $(-4, 0)$ are foci of this ellipse.

No pair of points other than $(4, 0)$ and $(-4, 0)$ has the property that the sum of the distances to points on this ellipse is constant.



For every point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$, the sum of the lengths of the two blue line segments equals 10.



The ancient Greeks discovered that the intersection of a cone and an appropriately positioned plane is an ellipse.

The next result generalizes the example above. Problems 107–112 outline the verification of this result using the ideas from the example above.

Formula for the foci of an ellipse

- If $a > b > 0$, then the foci of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ are the points

$$\left(\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \left(-\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0\right).$$

- If $b > a > 0$, then the foci of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ are the points

$$\left(0, \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \left(0, -\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\right).$$

Hyperbolas

A comet whose orbit lies on a hyperbola will come near Earth at most once. A comet whose orbit is an ellipse will return periodically.

Some comets and all planets travel in orbits that are ellipses. However, many comets have orbits that are not ellipses but instead lie on hyperbolas.

Hyperbolas can be defined geometrically, but we will restrict our attention to hyperbolas in the xy-plane that can be defined in the following simple fashion.

Hyperbola

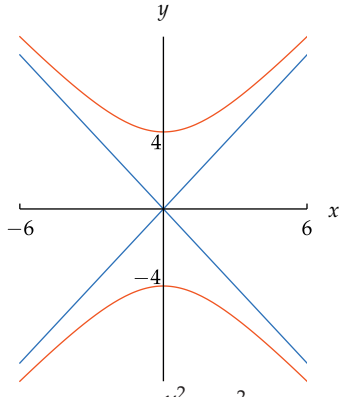
The graph of an equation of the form

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = c,$$

where a, b, and c are nonzero numbers, is called a **hyperbola**.

The figure below shows the graph of the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ in orange for $-6 \le x \le 6$. Note that this hyperbola consists of two branches rather than the single curve we get for ellipses and parabolas. Some key properties of this graph, which are typical of hyperbolas, are discussed in the next example.

Example 14



The hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ in orange for $-6 \le x \le 6$, along with the lines $y = \frac{4}{3}x$ and $y = -\frac{4}{3}x$ in blue.

Consider the hyperbola

$$\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1.$$

Explain why points (x, y) on the hyperbola for large values of x and y are near the line $y = \frac{4}{3}x$ or the line $y = -\frac{4}{3}x$.

solution If x and y are large, then the number 1 is insignificant in comparison to the size of $\frac{y^2}{16}$ and $\frac{x^2}{9}$. Thus if x and y are large, then the equation above implies that

$$\frac{y^2}{16} \approx \frac{x^2}{9}.$$

Taking square roots then shows that $\frac{y}{4} \approx \pm\frac{x}{3}$, which implies that $y \approx \pm\frac{4}{3}x$.

Each branch of a hyperbola looks a bit like a parabola, but these curves are not parabolas—a parabola cannot have the behavior described in the example above.

Compare the following definition of the foci of a hyperbola with the definition earlier in this section of the foci of an ellipse.

Foci of a hyperbola

The **foci** of a hyperbola are two points with the property that the difference of the distances from the foci to a point on the hyperbola is a constant independent of the point on the hyperbola.

As we will see in the next example, the foci of the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ are the points $(0, -5)$ and $(0, 5)$.

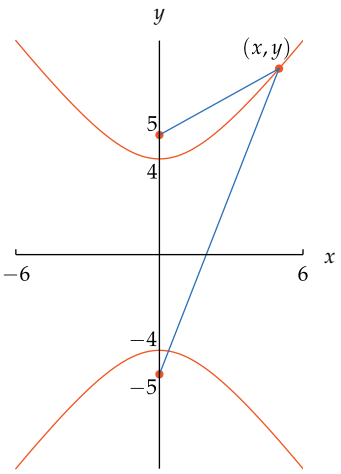
Problems 116–119 show why the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x}$ is also called a hyperbola.

Example 15

(a) Find a formula in terms of y for the distance from a typical point (x, y) with $y > 0$ on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ to the point $(0, -5)$.

(b) Find a formula in terms of y for the distance from a typical point (x, y) with $y > 0$ on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ to the point $(0, 5)$.

(c) Show that $(0, -5)$ and $(0, 5)$ are foci of the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$.



For every point (x, y) on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$, the difference of the lengths of the two blue line segments equals 8.

solution

(a) The distance from (x, y) to the point $(0, -5)$ is $\sqrt{x^2 + (y + 5)^2}$, which equals

$$\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + 10y + 25}.$$

We want an answer solely in terms of y, assuming that (x, y) lies on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ and $y > 0$. Solving the hyperbola equation for x^2, we have

$$x^2 = \frac{9}{16}y^2 - 9.$$

Substituting this expression for x^2 into the expression above shows that the distance from (x, y) to $(0, -5)$ equals $\sqrt{\frac{25}{16}y^2 + 10y + 16}$, which equals $\sqrt{(\frac{5}{4}y + 4)^2}$, which equals $\frac{5}{4}y + 4$.

(b) The distance from (x, y) to the point $(0, 5)$ is $\sqrt{x^2 + (y - 5)^2}$, which equals

$$\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 - 10y + 25}.$$

Now proceed as in the solution to part (a), with $10y$ replaced by $-10y$, concluding that the distance from (x, y) to $(0, 5)$ is $\frac{5}{4}y - 4$.

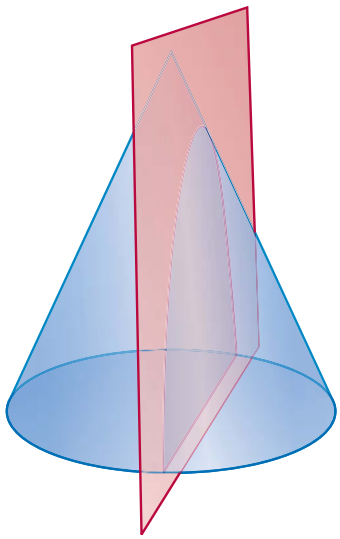
(c) As we know from the previous two parts of this example, if (x, y) is a point on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$ and $y > 0$, then

$$\text{distance from } (x, y) \text{ to } (0, -5) \text{ is } \frac{5}{4}y + 4$$

and

$$\text{distance from } (x, y) \text{ to } (0, 5) \text{ is } \frac{5}{4}y - 4.$$

Subtracting these distances, we see that the difference equals 8, which is a constant independent of the point (x, y) on the hyperbola. Thus $(0, -5)$ and $(0, 5)$ are foci of this hyperbola.



The ancient Greeks discovered that the intersection of a cone and an appropriately positioned plane is a hyperbola.

Isaac Newton showed that a comet's orbit around a star lies either on an ellipse or on a parabola (rare) or on a hyperbola with the star at one of the foci. For example, if units are chosen so that the orbit of a comet is the upper branch of the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$, then the star must be located at $(0,5)$.

The next result generalizes the example above. The verification of this result is outlined in Problems 113–115. To do this verification, simply use the ideas from the example above.

Formula for the foci of a hyperbola

If a and b are nonzero numbers, then the foci of the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1$ are the points

$$\left(0, -\sqrt{a^2+b^2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \left(0, \sqrt{a^2+b^2}\right).$$

Sometimes when a new comet is discovered, there are not enough observations to determine whether the comet is in an elliptical orbit or in a hyperbolic orbit. The distinction is important, because a comet in a hyperbolic orbit will disappear and never again be visible from Earth.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–12, use the following information: If an object is thrown straight up into the air from height H feet at time 0 with initial velocity V feet per second, then at time t seconds the height of the object is $h(t)$ feet, where

$$h(t) = -16.1t^2 + Vt + H.$$

This formula uses only gravitational force, ignoring air friction. It is valid only until the object hits the ground or some other object.

1 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet with initial velocity 20 feet per second.

(a) How long before the ball hits the ground?

(b) How long before the ball reaches its maximum height?

(c) What is the ball's maximum height?

2 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 4 feet with initial velocity 40 feet per second.

(a) How long before the ball hits the ground?

(b) How long before the ball reaches its maximum height?

(c) What is the ball's maximum height?

3 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball stay in the air for 4 seconds?

4 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 4 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball stay in the air for 3 seconds?

5 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball reach its maximum height after 1 second?

6 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 4 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball reach its maximum height after 2 seconds?

7 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball reach a height of 50 feet?

8 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 4 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball reach a height of 70 feet?

9 Suppose a notebook computer is accidentally knocked off a shelf that is six feet high. How long before the computer hits the ground?

10 Suppose a notebook computer is accidentally knocked off a desk that is three feet high. How long before the computer hits the ground?

Some notebook computers have a sensor that detects sudden changes in motion and stops the notebook's hard drive, protecting it from damage.

11 Suppose the motion detection/protection mechanism of a notebook computer takes 0.3 seconds to work after the computer starts to fall. What is the minimum height from which the notebook computer can fall and have the protection mechanism work?

12 Suppose the motion detection/protection mechanism of a notebook computer takes 0.4 seconds to work after the computer starts to fall. What is the minimum height from which the notebook computer can fall and have the protection mechanism work?

13 Find all numbers x such that

$$\frac{x-1}{x+3} = \frac{2x-1}{x+2}.$$

14 Find all numbers x such that

$$\frac{3x+2}{x-2} = \frac{2x-1}{x-1}.$$

15 Find two numbers w such that the points $(3,1)$, $(w,4)$, and $(5,w)$ all lie on a straight line.

16 Find two numbers r such that the points $(-1,4)$, $(r,2r)$, and $(1,r)$ all lie on a straight line.

For Exercises 17–22, find the vertex of the graph of the given function f.

17 $f(x) = 7x^2 - 12$

18 $f(x) = -9x^2 - 5$

19 $f(x) = (x-2)^2 - 3$

20 $f(x) = (x+3)^2 + 4$

21 $f(x) = (2x-5)^2 + 6$

22 $f(x) = (7x+3)^2 + 5$

23 Find a quadratic function f such that the graph of f contains the point $(1,4)$ and has vertex at $(3,2)$.

24 Find a quadratic function F such that the graph of F contains the point $(2,-3)$ and has vertex at $(-1,-4)$.

25 Find the only numbers x and y such that

$$x^2 - 6x + y^2 + 8y = -25.$$

26 Find the only numbers x and y such that

$$x^2 + 5x + y^2 - 3y = -\frac{17}{2}.$$

27 Find the point on the line $y = 3x + 1$ in the xy-plane that is closest to the point $(2,4)$.

28 Find the point on the line $y = 2x - 3$ in the xy-plane that is closest to the point $(5,1)$.

29 Find a number t such that the distance between $(2,3)$ and $(t,2t)$ is as small as possible.

30 Find a number t such that the distance between $(-2,1)$ and $(3t,2t)$ is as small as possible.

For Exercises 31–34, for the given function f:

- **(a)** ***Write $f(x)$ in the form $a(x-h)^2 + k$.***
- **(b)** ***Find the value of x where $f(x)$ attains its minimum value or its maximum value.***
- **(c)** ***Sketch the graph of f on an interval of length 2 centered at the number where f attains its minimum or maximum value.***
- **(d)** ***Find the vertex of the graph of f.***

31 $f(x) = x^2 + 7x + 12$

32 $f(x) = 5x^2 + 2x + 1$

33 $f(x) = -2x^2 + 5x - 2$

34 $f(x) = -3x^2 + 5x - 1$

35 Find a number c such that the graph of $y = x^2 + 6x + c$ has its vertex on the x-axis.

36 Find a number c such that the graph of $y = x^2 + 5x + c$ in the xy-plane has its vertex on the line $y = x$.

37 Find two numbers whose sum equals 10 and whose product equals 7.

38 Find two numbers whose sum equals 6 and whose product equals 4.

39 Find two positive numbers whose difference equals 3 and whose product equals 20.

40 Find two positive numbers whose difference equals 4 and whose product equals 15.

41 Find the minimum value of $x^2 - 6x + 2$.

42 Find the minimum value of $3x^2 + 5x + 1$.

43 Find the maximum value of $7 - 2x - x^2$.

44 Find the maximum value of $9 + 5x - 4x^2$.

45 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at $(3,2)$. Suppose $g(x) = 4x + 5$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$?

46 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at $(-5,4)$. Suppose $g(x) = 3x - 1$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$?

47 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at $(3,2)$. Suppose $g(x) = 4x + 5$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $g \circ f$?

48 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at $(-5,4)$. Suppose $g(x) = 3x - 1$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $g \circ f$?

49 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at (t,s). Suppose $g(x) = ax + b$, where a and b are numbers with $a \neq 0$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$?

50 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at (t,s). Suppose $g(x) = ax + b$, where a and b are numbers with $a \neq 0$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $g \circ f$?

51 Suppose $h(x) = x^2 + 3x + 4$, with the domain of h being the set of positive numbers. Evaluate $h^{-1}(7)$.

52 Suppose $h(x) = x^2 + 2x - 5$, with the domain of h being the set of positive numbers. Evaluate $h^{-1}(4)$.

53 Suppose f is the function whose domain is the interval $[1,\infty)$ with

$$f(x) = x^2 + 3x + 5.$$

(a) What is the range of f?

(b) Find a formula for f^{-1}.

(c) What is the domain of f^{-1}?

(d) What is the range of f^{-1}?

54 Suppose g is the function whose domain is the interval $[1,\infty)$ with

$$g(x) = x^2 + 4x + 7.$$

(a) What is the range of g?

(b) Find a formula for g^{-1}.

(c) What is the domain of g^{-1}?

(d) What is the range of g^{-1}?

55 Suppose $F(x) = x^2 - 2x - 1$, with the domain of F being the interval $[0,3]$. Find the range of F.

56 Suppose $F(x) = x^2 - 4x + 1$, with the domain of F being the interval $[0,6]$. Find the range of F.

57 Find all numbers t such that $|t^2 - 2t - 4| = 3$.

58 Find all numbers y such that $|y^2 - 3y - 5| = 4$.

59 Suppose

$$f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 11.$$

Find the smallest number b such that f is increasing on the interval $[b,\infty)$.

60 Suppose

$$f(x) = x^2 + 8x + 5.$$

Find the smallest number b such that f is increasing on the interval $[b,\infty)$.

61 Find the distance between the points $(3,-2)$ and $(-1,4)$.

62 Find the distance between the points $(-4,-7)$ and $(-8,-5)$.

63 Find two choices for t such that the distance between $(2,-1)$ and $(t,3)$ equals 7.

64 Find two choices for t such that the distance between $(3,-2)$ and $(1,t)$ equals 5.

65 Find two choices for b such that $(4, b)$ has distance 5 from $(3, 6)$.

66 Find two choices for b such that $(b, -1)$ has distance 4 from $(3, 2)$.

67 Find two points on the horizontal axis whose distance from $(3, 2)$ equals 7.

68 Find two points on the horizontal axis whose distance from $(1, 4)$ equals 6.

69 Find two points on the vertical axis whose distance from $(5, -1)$ equals 8.

70 Find two points on the vertical axis whose distance from $(2, -4)$ equals 5.

71 A ship sails north for 2 miles and then west for 5 miles. How far is the ship from its starting point?

72 A ship sails east for 7 miles and then south for 3 miles. How far is the ship from its starting point?

73 Find the equation of the circle in the xy-plane centered at $(3, -2)$ with radius 7.

74 Find the equation of the circle in the xy-plane centered at $(-4, 5)$ with radius 6.

75 Find two choices for b such that $(5, b)$ is on the circle with radius 4 centered at $(3, 6)$.

76 Find two choices for b such that $(b, 4)$ is on the circle with radius 3 centered at $(-1, 6)$.

77 Find the center and radius of the circle

$$x^2 - 8x + y^2 + 2y = -14.$$

78 Find the center and radius of the circle

$$x^2 + 5x + y^2 - 6y = 3.$$

79 Find the two points where the circle with radius 2 centered at the origin intersects the circle with radius 3 centered at $(3, 0)$.

80 Find the two points where the circle with radius 3 centered at the origin intersects the circle with radius 4 centered at $(5, 0)$.

81 Find the intersection of the line containing the points $(2, 3)$ and $(4, 7)$ and the circle with radius $\sqrt{15}$ centered at $(3, -3)$.

82 Find the intersection of the line containing the points $(3, 4)$ and $(1, 8)$ and the circle with radius $\sqrt{3}$ centered at $(2, 9)$.

83 Suppose units are chosen so that the orbit of a planet around a star is the ellipse

$$4x^2 + 5y^2 = 1.$$

What is the location of the star? (Assume that the first coordinate of the star is positive.)

84 Suppose units are chosen so that the orbit of a planet around a star is the ellipse

$$3x^2 + 7y^2 = 1.$$

What is the location of the star? (Assume that the first coordinate of the star is positive.)

85 Suppose units are chosen so that the orbit of a comet around a star is the upper branch of the hyperbola

$$3y^2 - 2x^2 = 5.$$

What is the location of the star?

86 Suppose units are chosen so that the orbit of a comet around a star is the upper branch of the hyperbola

$$4y^2 - 5x^2 = 7.$$

What is the location of the star?

Problems

87 Show that

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

if and only if $a = 0$ or $b = 0$.

88 Explain why

$$x^2 + 4x + y^2 - 10y \geq -29$$

for all real numbers x and y.

89 Show that a quadratic function f defined by $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ is an even function if and only if $b = 0$.

90 Show that if f is a nonconstant linear function and g is a quadratic function, then $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$ are both quadratic functions.

91 Suppose

$$2x^2 + 3x + c > 0$$

for every real number x. Show that $c > \frac{9}{8}$.

92 Suppose

$$3x^2 + bx + 7 > 0$$

for every real number x. Show that $|b| < 2\sqrt{21}$.

93 Suppose

$$at^2 + 5t + 4 > 0$$

for every real number t. Show that $a > \frac{25}{16}$.

94 Suppose $a \neq 0$ and $b^2 \geq 4ac$. Verify by direct substitution that if

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a},$$

then $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$.

95 Suppose $a \neq 0$ and $b^2 \geq 4ac$. Verify by direct calculation that

$$ax^2 + bx + c =$$

$$a\left(x - \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}\right)\left(x - \frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}\right).$$

96 Suppose $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, where $a \neq 0$. Show that the vertex of the graph of f is the point $\left(-\frac{b}{2a}, \frac{4ac - b^2}{4a}\right)$.

97 Suppose b and c are numbers such that the equation

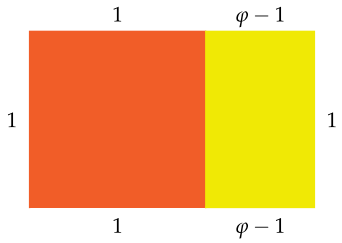
$$x^2 + bx + c = 0$$

has no real solutions. Explain why the equation

$$x^2 + bx - c = 0$$

has two real solutions.

98 Find a number φ such that in the figure below, the yellow rectangle is similar to the large rectangle formed by the union of the orange square and the yellow rectangle.



[*The number φ that solves this problem is called the* **golden ratio** (*the symbol φ is the Greek letter phi*). *Rectangles whose ratio between the length of the long side and the length of the short side equals φ are supposedly the most aesthetically pleasing rectangles. The large rectangle formed by the union of the orange square and the yellow rectangle has the golden ratio, as does the yellow rectangle. Many works of art feature rectangles with the golden ratio.*]

99 Show that there do not exist two real numbers whose sum is 7 and whose product is 13.

100 Suppose f is a quadratic function such that the equation $f(x) = 0$ has exactly one solution. Show that this solution is the first coordinate of the vertex of the graph of f and that the second coordinate of the vertex equals 0.

101 Suppose f is a quadratic function such that the equation $f(x) = 0$ has two real solutions. Show that the average of these two solutions is the first coordinate of the vertex of the graph of f.

102 Find two points, one on the horizontal axis and one on the vertical axis, such that the distance between these two points equals 15.

103 Explain why there does not exist a point on the horizontal axis whose distance from $(5, 4)$ equals 3.

104 Find the distance between the points $(-21, -15)$ and $(17, 28)$.
[*In WolframAlpha, you can do this by typing* distance from (–21, –15) to (17, 28) *in an entry box. Note that in addition to the distance in both exact and approximate form, you get a figure showing the two points. Experiment with finding the distance between other pairs of points.*]

105 Find six distinct points whose distance from the origin equals 3.

106 Find six distinct points whose distance from $(3, 1)$ equals 4.

107 Suppose $a > b > 0$. Find a formula in terms of x for the distance from a typical point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ to the point $\left(\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0\right)$.

108 Suppose $a > b > 0$. Find a formula in terms of x for the distance from a typical point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ to the point $\left(-\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0\right)$.

109 Suppose $a > b > 0$. Use the results of the two previous problems to show that $\left(\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0\right)$ and $\left(-\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0\right)$ are foci of the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

110 Suppose $b > a > 0$. Find a formula in terms of y for the distance from a typical point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ to the point $\left(0, \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\right)$.

111 Suppose $b > a > 0$. Find a formula in terms of y for the distance from a typical point (x, y) on the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ to the point $\left(0, -\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\right)$.

112 Suppose $b > a > 0$. Use the results of the two previous problems to show that $\left(0, \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\right)$ and $\left(0, -\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\right)$ are foci of the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

113 Suppose a and b are nonzero numbers. Find a formula in terms of y for the distance from a typical point (x, y) with $y > 0$ on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1$ to the point $\left(0, -\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\right)$.

114 Suppose a and b are nonzero numbers. Find a formula in terms of y for the distance from a typical point (x, y) with $y > 0$ on the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1$ to the point $\left(0, \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\right)$.

115 Suppose a and b are nonzero numbers. Use the results of the two previous problems to show that $\left(0, -\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\right)$ and $\left(0, \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\right)$ are foci of the hyperbola

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1.$$

116 Suppose $x > 0$. Show that the distance from $\left(x, \frac{1}{x}\right)$ to the point $(-\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2})$ is $x + \frac{1}{x} + \sqrt{2}$.
[*See Example 6 in Section 2.3 for a graph of* $y = \frac{1}{x}$.]

117 Suppose $x > 0$. Show that the distance from $\left(x, \frac{1}{x}\right)$ to the point $(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$ is $x + \frac{1}{x} - \sqrt{2}$.

118 Suppose $x > 0$. Show that the distance from $\left(x, \frac{1}{x}\right)$ to $(-\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2})$ minus the distance from $\left(x, \frac{1}{x}\right)$ to $(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$ equals $2\sqrt{2}$.

119 Explain why the result of the previous problem justifies calling the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$ a hyperbola with foci at $(-\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2})$ and $(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$.

120 Show that the right triangle with sides of length 3, 4, and 5 is the only right triangle in which the side lengths differ by 1 (meaning that the sides have length d, $d + 1$, and $d + 2$ for some number d).

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–12, use the following information: If an object is thrown straight up into the air from height H feet at time 0 with initial velocity V feet per second, then at time t seconds the height of the object is $h(t)$ feet, where

$$h(t) = -16.1t^2 + Vt + H.$$

This formula uses only gravitational force, ignoring air friction. It is valid only until the object hits the ground or some other object.

1 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet with initial velocity 20 feet per second.

(a) How long before the ball hits the ground?

(b) How long before the ball reaches its maximum height?

(c) What is the ball's maximum height?

solution

(a) Here we have

$$h(t) = -16.1t^2 + 20t + 5.$$

The ball hits the ground when $h(t) = 0$; the quadratic formula shows that this happens when $t \approx 1.46$ seconds (the other solution produced by the quadratic formula has been discarded because it is negative).

(b) Completing the square, we have

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= -16.1t^2 + 20t + 5 \\ &= -16.1\left(t^2 - \frac{20}{16.1}t\right) + 5 \\ &= -16.1\left(\left(t - \frac{10}{16.1}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{10}{16.1}\right)^2\right) + 5 \\ &= -16.1\left(t - \frac{10}{16.1}\right)^2 + \frac{100}{16.1} + 5. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the ball reaches its maximum height when $t = \frac{10}{16.1} \approx 0.62$ seconds.

(c) The solution to part (b) shows that the maximum height of the ball is $\frac{100}{16.1} + 5 \approx 11.2$ feet.

3 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball stay in the air for 4 seconds?

solution Suppose the initial velocity of the ball is V feet per second. Then the height $h(t)$ of the ball at time t is given by the formula

$$h(t) = -16.1t^2 + Vt + 5.$$

We want $h(4) = 0$, because the ball hits the ground when its height is 0. In other words, we want

$$-16.1 \times 4^2 + 4V + 5 = 0.$$

Solving this equation for V gives $V = 63.15$ feet per second.

5 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball reach its maximum height after 1 second?

solution Suppose the initial velocity of the ball is V feet per second. Then the height of the ball at time t is

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= -16.1t^2 + Vt + 5 \\ &= -16.1\left(t^2 - \frac{Vt}{16.1}\right) + 5 \\ &= -16.1\left(\left(t - \frac{V}{32.2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{V}{32.2}\right)^2\right) + 5 \\ &= -16.1\left(t - \frac{V}{32.2}\right)^2 + \frac{V^2}{64.4} + 5. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the ball reaches its maximum height when $t - \frac{V}{32.2} = 0$. We want this to happen when $t = 1$. In other words, we want $1 - \frac{V}{32.2} = 0$, which implies that $V = 32.2$ feet per second.

7 Suppose a ball is tossed straight up into the air from height 5 feet. What should be the initial velocity to have the ball reach a height of 50 feet?

solution Suppose the initial velocity of the ball is V feet per second. As can be seen from the solution to Exercise 5, the maximum height of the ball is $\frac{V^2}{64.4} + 5$, which we want to equal 50. Solving the equation

$$\frac{V^2}{64.4} + 5 = 50$$

for V gives $V \approx 53.83$ feet per second.

9 Suppose a notebook computer is accidentally knocked off a shelf that is six feet high. How long before the computer hits the ground?

solution In this case, we have $V = 0$ and $H = 6$, and thus the height $h(t)$ at time t is given by the formula

$$h(t) = -16.1t^2 + 6.$$

We want to know the time t at which $h(t) = 0$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$-16.1t^2 + 6 = 0.$$

The solutions to the equation are $t = \pm\sqrt{\frac{6}{16.1}}$. The negative value makes no sense here, and thus $t = \sqrt{\frac{6}{16.1}} \approx 0.61$ seconds.

Some notebook computers have a sensor that detects sudden changes in motion and stops the notebook's hard drive, protecting it from damage.

11 Suppose the motion detection/protection mechanism of a notebook computer takes 0.3 seconds to work after the computer starts to fall. What is the minimum height from which the notebook computer can fall and have the protection mechanism work?

solution We want to find the initial height H such that the notebook computer will hit the ground (meaning have height 0) after 0.3 seconds. In other words, we want

$$-16.1 \times 0.3^2 + H = 0.$$

Thus $H = 16.1 \times 0.3^2 = 1.449$ feet.

13 Find all numbers x such that

$$\frac{x-1}{x+3} = \frac{2x-1}{x+2}.$$

solution The equation above is equivalent to the equation

$$(x-1)(x+2) = (2x-1)(x+3).$$

Expanding and then collecting all terms on one side leads to the equation

$$x^2 + 4x - 1 = 0.$$

The quadratic formula now shows that $x = -2 \pm \sqrt{5}$.

15 Find two numbers w such that the points $(3,1)$, $(w,4)$, and $(5,w)$ all lie on a straight line.

solution The slope of the line containing $(3,1)$ and $(w,4)$ is $\frac{3}{w-3}$. The slope of the line containing $(3,1)$ and $(5,w)$ is $\frac{w-1}{2}$. We need these two slopes to be equal, which means that

$$\frac{3}{w-3} = \frac{w-1}{2}.$$

Thus $2 \cdot 3 = (w-1)(w-3)$, which means that

$$w^2 - 4w - 3 = 0.$$

The quadratic formula now shows that $w = 2 \pm \sqrt{7}$.

For Exercises 17–22, find the vertex of the graph of the given function f.

17 $f(x) = 7x^2 - 12$

solution The value of $7x^2 - 12$ is minimized when $x = 0$. The value of $f(0)$ is -12. Thus the vertex of the graph of f is $(0,-12)$.

19 $f(x) = (x-2)^2 - 3$

solution The value of $(x-2)^2 - 3$ is minimized when $x = 2$. The value of $f(2)$ is -3. Thus the vertex of the graph of f is $(2,-3)$.

21 $f(x) = (2x-5)^2 + 6$

solution The value of $(2x-5)^2 + 6$ is minimized when $2x - 5 = 0$. This happens when $x = \frac{5}{2}$. The value of $f\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)$ is 6. Thus the vertex of the graph of f is $\left(\frac{5}{2}, 6\right)$.

23 Find a quadratic function f such that the graph of f contains the point $(1,4)$ and has vertex at $(3,2)$.

solution Because $(3,2)$ is the vertex of the graph of f, we know that

$$f(x) = a(x-3)^2 + 2$$

for some number a. Thus

$$4 = f(1) = a(1-3)^2 + 2 = 4a + 2.$$

Solving for a, we have $a = \frac{1}{2}$. Thus

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2}(x-3)^2 + 2.$$

25 Find the only numbers x and y such that

$$x^2 - 6x + y^2 + 8y = -25.$$

solution We complete the square to rewrite the equation above:

$$\begin{aligned} -25 &= x^2 - 6x + y^2 + 8y \\ &= (x-3)^2 - 9 + (y+4)^2 - 16 \\ &= (x-3)^2 + (y+4)^2 - 25. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the original equation can be rewritten as $(x-3)^2 + (y+4)^2 = 0$. The only solution to this equation is $x = 3$ and $y = -4$. Thus $(3,-4)$ is the only point on the graph of this equation.

27 Find the point on the line $y = 3x + 1$ in the xy-plane that is closest to the point $(2,4)$.

solution A typical point on the line $y = 3x + 1$ in the xy-plane has coordinates $(x, 3x+1)$. The distance between this point and $(2,4)$ equals

$$\sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (3x+1-4)^2},$$

which with a bit of algebra can be rewritten as

$$\sqrt{10x^2 - 22x + 13}.$$

We want to make the quantity above as small as possible, which means that we need to make $10x^2 - 22x$ as small as possible. This can be done by completing the square:

$$\begin{aligned} 10x^2 - 22x &= 10\left(x^2 - \frac{11}{5}x\right) \\ &= 10\left(\left(x - \frac{11}{10}\right)^2 - \frac{121}{100}\right). \end{aligned}$$

The last quantity will be as small as possible when $x = \frac{11}{10}$. Plugging $x = \frac{11}{10}$ into the equation $y = 3x + 1$ gives $y = \frac{43}{10}$. Thus $\left(\frac{11}{10}, \frac{43}{10}\right)$ is the point on the line $y = 3x + 1$ that is closest to the point $(2,4)$.

29 Find a number t such that the distance between $(2,3)$ and $(t,2t)$ is as small as possible.

solution The distance between $(2,3)$ and $(t,2t)$ equals

$$\sqrt{(t-2)^2 + (2t-3)^2}.$$

We want to make this as small as possible, which happens when

$$(t-2)^2 + (2t-3)^2$$

is as small as possible. Note that

$$(t-2)^2 + (2t-3)^2 = 5t^2 - 16t + 13.$$

This will be as small as possible when $5t^2 - 16t$ is as small as possible. To find when that happens, we complete the square:

$$\begin{aligned} 5t^2 - 16t &= 5\left(t^2 - \frac{16}{5}t\right) \\ &= 5\left(\left(t - \frac{8}{5}\right)^2 - \frac{64}{25}\right). \end{aligned}$$

This quantity is made smallest when $t = \frac{8}{5}$.

For Exercises 31–34, for the given function f:

- **(a)** ***Write $f(x)$ in the form $a(x-h)^2 + k$.***
- **(b)** ***Find the value of x where $f(x)$ attains its minimum value or its maximum value.***
- **(c)** ***Sketch the graph of f on an interval of length 2 centered at the number where f attains its minimum or maximum value.***
- **(d)** ***Find the vertex of the graph of f.***

31 $f(x) = x^2 + 7x + 12$

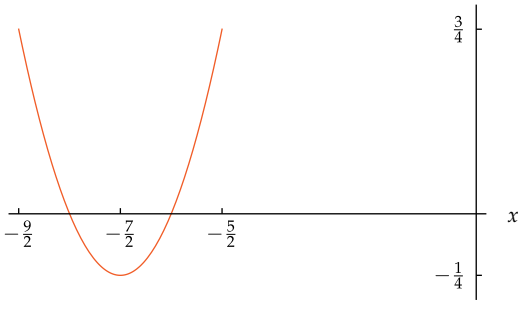
solution

(a) By completing the square, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^2 + 7x + 12 \\ &= (x + \tfrac{7}{2})^2 - \tfrac{49}{4} + 12 \\ &= (x + \tfrac{7}{2})^2 - \tfrac{1}{4}. \end{aligned}$$

(b) The expression above shows that the value of $f(x)$ is minimized when $x = -\frac{7}{2}$.

(c) The expression above for f implies that the graph of f is obtained from the graph of x^2 by shifting left $\frac{7}{2}$ units and then shifting down $\frac{1}{4}$ units. This produces the following graph on the interval $[-\frac{9}{2}, -\frac{5}{2}]$, which is the interval of length 2 centered at $-\frac{7}{2}$.



(d) The figure above shows that the vertex of the graph of f is the point $(-\frac{7}{2}, -\frac{1}{4})$. We could have computed this even without the figure by noting that f takes on its minimum value at $-\frac{7}{2}$ and that $f(-\frac{7}{2}) = -\frac{1}{4}$. Or we could have noted that the graph of f is obtained from the graph of x^2 by shifting left $\frac{7}{2}$ units and then shifting down $\frac{1}{4}$ units, which moves the origin (which is the vertex of the graph of x^2) to the point $(-\frac{7}{2}, -\frac{1}{4})$.

33 $f(x) = -2x^2 + 5x - 2$

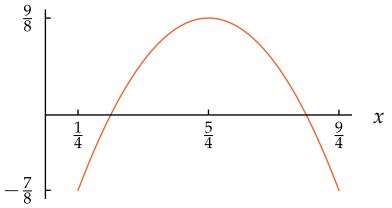
solution

(a) By completing the square, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= -2x^2 + 5x - 2 \\ &= -2\left(x^2 - \tfrac{5}{2}x\right) - 2 \\ &= -2\left((x - \tfrac{5}{4})^2 - \tfrac{25}{16}\right) - 2 \\ &= -2(x - \tfrac{5}{4})^2 + \tfrac{25}{8} - 2 \\ &= -2(x - \tfrac{5}{4})^2 + \tfrac{9}{8}. \end{aligned}$$

(b) The expression above shows that the value of $f(x)$ is maximized when $x = \frac{5}{4}$.

(c) The expression in part (a) implies that the graph of f is obtained from the graph of x^2 by shifting right $\frac{5}{4}$ units, then stretching vertically by a factor of 2, then reflecting through the horizontal axis, and then shifting up $\frac{9}{8}$ units. This produces the following graph on the interval $[\frac{1}{4}, \frac{9}{4}]$, which is the interval of length 2 centered at $\frac{5}{4}$.



(d) The figure above shows that the vertex of the graph of f is the point $(\frac{5}{4}, \frac{9}{8})$. We could have computed this even without the figure by noting that f takes on its maximum value at $\frac{5}{4}$ and that $f(\frac{5}{4}) = \frac{9}{8}$. Or we could have noted that the graph of f is obtained from the graph of x^2 by shifting right $\frac{5}{4}$ units, then stretching vertically by a factor of 2, then reflecting through the horizontal axis, and then shifting up $\frac{9}{8}$ units, which moves the origin (which is the vertex of the graph of x^2) to the point $(\frac{5}{4}, \frac{9}{8})$.

35 Find a number c such that the graph of $y = x^2 + 6x + c$ has its vertex on the x-axis.

solution First we find the vertex of the graph of $y = x^2 + 6x + c$. To do this, complete the square:

$$x^2 + 6x + c = (x+3)^2 - 9 + c.$$

Thus the value of $x^2 + 6x + c$ is minimized when $x = -3$. When $x = -3$, the value of $x^2 + 6x + c$ equals $-9 + c$. Thus the vertex of $y = x^2 + 6x + c$ is $(-3, -9 + c)$.

The x-axis consists of the points whose second coordinate equals 0. Thus the vertex of the graph of $y = x^2 + 6x + c$ will be on the x-axis when $-9 + c = 0$, or equivalently when $c = 9$.

37 Find two numbers whose sum equals 10 and whose product equals 7.

solution Let's call the two numbers s and t. We want

$$s + t = 10 \quad \text{and} \quad st = 7.$$

Solving the first equation for s, we have $s = 10 - t$. Substituting this expression for s into the second equation gives $(10 - t)t = 7$, which is equivalent to the equation

$$t^2 - 10t + 7 = 0.$$

Using the quadratic formula to solve this equation for t gives

$$t = \frac{10 \pm \sqrt{10^2 - 4 \cdot 7}}{2} = \frac{10 \pm \sqrt{72}}{2}$$
$$= \frac{10 \pm \sqrt{36 \cdot 2}}{2} = 5 \pm 3\sqrt{2}.$$

Let's choose the solution $t = 5 + 3\sqrt{2}$. Plugging this value of t into the equation $s = 10 - t$ then gives $s = 5 - 3\sqrt{2}$.

Thus two numbers whose sum equals 10 and whose product equals 7 are $5 - 3\sqrt{2}$ and $5 + 3\sqrt{2}$.

39 Find two positive numbers whose difference equals 3 and whose product equals 20.

solution Let's call the two numbers s and t. We want

$$s - t = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad st = 20.$$

Solving the first equation for s, we have $s = t + 3$. Substituting this expression for s into the second equation gives $(t + 3)t = 20$, which is equivalent to the equation

$$t^2 + 3t - 20 = 0.$$

Using the quadratic formula to solve this equation for t gives

$$t = \frac{-3 \pm \sqrt{3^2 + 4 \cdot 20}}{2} = \frac{-3 \pm \sqrt{89}}{2}.$$

Choosing the minus sign in the plus-or-minus expression above would lead to a negative value for t. Because this exercise requires that t be positive, we choose $t = \frac{-3+\sqrt{89}}{2}$. Plugging this value of t into the equation $s = t + 3$ then gives $s = \frac{3+\sqrt{89}}{2}$.

Thus two numbers whose difference equals 3 and whose product equals 20 are $\frac{3+\sqrt{89}}{2}$ and $\frac{-3+\sqrt{89}}{2}$.

check To check that this solution is correct, note that

$$\frac{3 + \sqrt{89}}{2} - \frac{-3 + \sqrt{89}}{2} = \frac{6}{2} = 3$$

and

$$\frac{3 + \sqrt{89}}{2} \cdot \frac{-3 + \sqrt{89}}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{89} + 3}{2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{89} - 3}{2}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{89}^2 - 3^2}{4} = \frac{80}{4} = 20.$$

41 Find the minimum value of $x^2 - 6x + 2$.

solution By completing the square, we can write

$$x^2 - 6x + 2 = (x - 3)^2 - 9 + 2$$
$$= (x - 3)^2 - 7.$$

The expression above shows that the minimum value of $x^2 - 6x + 2$ is -7 (and that this minimum value occurs when $x = 3$).

43 Find the maximum value of $7 - 2x - x^2$.

solution By completing the square, we can write

$$7 - 2x - x^2 = -(x^2 + 2x) + 7$$
$$= -\big((x + 1)^2 - 1\big) + 7$$
$$= -(x + 1)^2 + 8.$$

The expression above shows that the maximum value of $7 - 2x - x^2$ is 8 (and that this maximum value occurs when $x = -1$).

45 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at $(3, 2)$. Suppose $g(x) = 4x + 5$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$?

solution Note that

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(4x + 5).$$

Because $f(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value when $x = 3$, we see from the equation above that $(f \circ g)(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value when $4x + 5 = 3$. Solving this equation for x, we see that $(f \circ g)(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value when $x = -\frac{1}{2}$. The equation displayed above shows that this minimum or maximum value of $(f \circ g)(x)$ is the same as the minimum or maximum value of f, which equals 2. Thus the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$ is $(-\frac{1}{2}, 2)$.

47 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at $(3, 2)$. Suppose $g(x) = 4x + 5$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $g \circ f$?

solution Note that

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g\big(f(x)\big) = 4f(x) + 5.$$

Because $f(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value (which equals 2) when $x = 3$, we see from the equation above that $(g \circ f)(x)$ also attains its minimum or maximum value when $x = 3$. We have

$$(g \circ f)(3) = g\big(f(3)\big) = 4f(3) + 5 = 4 \cdot 2 + 5 = 13.$$

Thus the vertex of the graph of $g \circ f$ is $(3, 13)$.

49 Suppose the graph of f is a parabola with vertex at (t, s). Suppose $g(x) = ax + b$, where a and b are numbers with $a \neq 0$. What are the coordinates of the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$?

solution Note that

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(ax + b).$$

Because $f(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value when $x = t$, we see from the equation above that $(f \circ g)(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value when $ax + b = t$. Thus $(f \circ g)(x)$ attains its minimum or maximum value when $x = \frac{t-b}{a}$. The equation displayed above shows that this minimum or maximum value of $(f \circ g)(x)$ is the same as the minimum or maximum value of f, which equals s. Thus the vertex of the graph of $f \circ g$ is $\left(\frac{t-b}{a}, s\right)$.

51 Suppose $h(x) = x^2 + 3x + 4$, with the domain of h being the set of positive numbers. Evaluate $h^{-1}(7)$.

solution We need to find a positive number x such that $h(x) = 7$. In other words, we need to find a positive solution to the equation $x^2 + 3x + 4 = 7$, which is equivalent to the equation

$$x^2 + 3x - 3 = 0.$$

The quadratic formula shows that the equation above has solutions

$$x = \frac{-3 + \sqrt{21}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad x = \frac{-3 - \sqrt{21}}{2}.$$

Because the domain of h is the set of positive numbers, the value of x that we seek must be positive. The second solution above is negative; thus it can be discarded, giving $h^{-1}(7) = \frac{-3+\sqrt{21}}{2}$.

check To check that $h^{-1}(7) = \frac{-3+\sqrt{21}}{2}$, we must verify that $h\left(\frac{-3+\sqrt{21}}{2}\right) = 7$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} h\left(\frac{-3+\sqrt{21}}{2}\right) &= \left(\frac{-3+\sqrt{21}}{2}\right)^2 + 3\left(\frac{-3+\sqrt{21}}{2}\right) + 4 \\ &= \frac{15-3\sqrt{21}}{2} + \frac{-9+3\sqrt{21}}{2} + 4 \\ &= 7, \end{aligned}$$

as desired.

53 Suppose f is the function whose domain is the interval $[1, \infty)$ with

$$f(x) = x^2 + 3x + 5.$$

(a) What is the range of f?

(b) Find a formula for f^{-1}.

(c) What is the domain of f^{-1}?

(d) What is the range of f^{-1}?

solution

(a) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that

$$y = x^2 + 3x + 5$$

for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a number $x \geq 1$. To solve this equation for x, subtract y from both sides, getting the equation

$$x^2 + 3x + (5 - y) = 0.$$

Using the quadratic equation to solve this equation for x, we get

$$x = \frac{-3 \pm \sqrt{3^2 - 4(5-y)}}{2} = \frac{-3 \pm \sqrt{4y - 11}}{2}.$$

Choosing the negative sign in the equation above would give a negative value for x, which is not possible because x is required to be in the domain of f, which is the interval $[1, \infty)$. Thus we must have

$$x = \frac{-3 + \sqrt{4y - 11}}{2}.$$

Because x is required to be in the domain of f, which is the interval $[1, \infty)$, we must have

$$\frac{-3 + \sqrt{4y - 11}}{2} \geq 1.$$

Multiplying both sides of this inequality by 2 and then adding 3 to both sides gives the inequality

$$\sqrt{4y - 11} \geq 5.$$

Thus $4y - 11 \geq 25$, which implies that $4y \geq 36$, which implies that $y \geq 9$. Thus the range of f is the interval $[9, \infty)$.

(b) The expression derived in the solution to part (a) shows that f^{-1} is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{-3 + \sqrt{4y - 11}}{2}.$$

(c) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $[9, \infty)$.

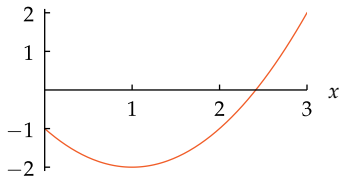
(d) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the interval $[1, \infty)$.

55 Suppose $F(x) = x^2 - 2x - 1$, with the domain of F being the interval $[0, 3]$. Find the range of F.

solution By completing the square, we write

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= x^2 - 2x - 1 \\ &= (x-1)^2 - 1 - 1 \\ &= (x-1)^2 - 2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the vertex of F is $(1, -2)$. We also note that $F(0) = -1$ and $F(3) = 2$. We now have enough information to sketch the graph of F.



From the figure above, we see that the range of F is the interval $[-2, 2]$.

57 Find all numbers t such that $|t^2 - 2t - 4| = 3$.

solution A number t satisfies the equation $|t^2 - 2t - 4| = 3$ if and only if $t^2 - 2t - 4 = 3$ or $t^2 - 2t - 4 = -3$. We will solve each of these equations separately.

The quadratic formula tells us that the equation $t^2 - 2t - 4 = 3$ is equivalent to $t = 1 \pm 2\sqrt{2}$.

The quadratic formula tells us that the equation $t^2 - 2t - 4 = -3$ is equivalent to $t = 1 \pm \sqrt{2}$.

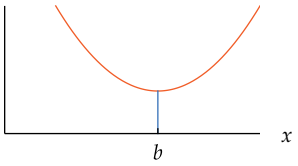
Thus our original equation has four solutions: $1 + \sqrt{2}, 1 - \sqrt{2}, 1 + 2\sqrt{2}, 1 - 2\sqrt{2}$.

59 Suppose

$$f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 11.$$

Find the smallest number b such that f is increasing on the interval $[b, \infty)$.

solution The graph of f is a parabola shaped like this:



The largest interval on which f is increasing is $[b, \infty)$, where b is the first coordinate of the vertex of the graph of f.

As can be seen from the figure above, the smallest number b such that f is increasing on the interval $[b, \infty)$ is the first coordinate of the vertex of the graph of f. To find this number, we complete the square:

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - 6x + 11 &= (x-3)^2 - 9 + 11 \\ &= (x-3)^2 + 2 \end{aligned}$$

The equation above shows that the first coordinate of the vertex of the parabola is 3. Thus we take $b = 3$.

61 Find the distance between the points $(3, -2)$ and $(-1, 4)$.

solution The distance between the points $(3, -2)$ and $(-1, 4)$ equals

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{(-1-3)^2 + (4-(-2))^2} &= \sqrt{(-4)^2 + 6^2} \\ &= \sqrt{16 + 36} \\ &= \sqrt{52} \\ &= \sqrt{4 \cdot 13} \\ &= \sqrt{4} \cdot \sqrt{13} \\ &= 2\sqrt{13}. \end{aligned}$$

63 Find two choices for t such that the distance between $(2, -1)$ and $(t, 3)$ equals 7.

solution The distance between $(2, -1)$ and $(t, 3)$ equals

$$\sqrt{(t-2)^2 + 16}.$$

We want this to equal 7, which means that we must have

$$(t-2)^2 + 16 = 49.$$

Subtracting 16 from both sides of the equation above gives

$$(t-2)^2 = 33,$$

which implies that $t - 2 = \pm\sqrt{33}$. Thus $t = 2 + \sqrt{33}$ or $t = 2 - \sqrt{33}$.

65 Find two choices for b such that $(4, b)$ has distance 5 from $(3, 6)$.

solution The distance between $(4, b)$ and $(3, 6)$ equals

$$\sqrt{1 + (6-b)^2}.$$

We want this to equal 5, which means that we must have

$$1 + (6-b)^2 = 25.$$

Subtracting 1 from both sides of the equation above gives

$$(6-b)^2 = 24.$$

Hence $6 - b = \pm\sqrt{24}$. Thus $b = 6 - \sqrt{24} = 6 - 2\sqrt{6}$ or $b = 6 + \sqrt{24} = 6 + 2\sqrt{6}$.

67 Find two points on the horizontal axis whose distance from $(3, 2)$ equals 7.

solution A typical point on the horizontal axis has coordinates $(x, 0)$. The distance from this point to $(3, 2)$ is $\sqrt{(x-3)^2 + (0-2)^2}$. Thus we need to solve the equation

$$\sqrt{(x-3)^2 + 4} = 7.$$

Squaring both sides of the equation above and then subtracting 4 from both sides gives

$$(x-3)^2 = 45.$$

Thus $x - 3 = \pm\sqrt{45} = \pm 3\sqrt{5}$. Thus $x = 3 \pm 3\sqrt{5}$. Hence the two points on the horizontal axis whose distance from $(3, 2)$ equals 7 are $(3 + 3\sqrt{5}, 0)$ and $(3 - 3\sqrt{5}, 0)$.

69 Find two points on the vertical axis whose distance from $(5, -1)$ equals 8.

solution A typical point on the vertical axis has coordinates $(0, y)$. The distance from this point to $(5, -1)$ is $\sqrt{(0-5)^2 + (y-(-1))^2}$. Thus we need to solve the equation

$$\sqrt{25 + (y+1)^2} = 8.$$

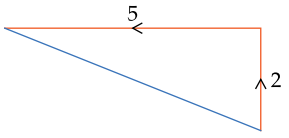
Squaring both sides of the equation above, and then subtracting 25 from both sides gives

$$(y+1)^2 = 39.$$

Thus $y + 1 = \pm\sqrt{39}$. Thus $y = -1 \pm \sqrt{39}$. Hence the two points on the vertical axis whose distance from $(5, -1)$ equals 8 are $(0, -1 + \sqrt{39})$ and $(0, -1 - \sqrt{39})$.

71 A ship sails north for 2 miles and then west for 5 miles. How far is the ship from its starting point?

solution The figure below shows the path of the ship. The length of the blue line is the distance of the ship from its starting point. By the Pythagorean Theorem, this distance is $\sqrt{2^2 + 5^2}$ miles, which equals $\sqrt{29}$ miles.



We have assumed that the surface of the earth is part of a plane rather than part of a sphere. For distances of less than a few hundred miles, this is a good approximation.

73 Find the equation of the circle in the xy-plane centered at $(3,-2)$ with radius 7.

solution The equation of this circle is

$$(x-3)^2+(y+2)^2=49.$$

75 Find two choices for b such that $(5,b)$ is on the circle with radius 4 centered at $(3,6)$.

solution The equation of the circle with radius 4 centered at $(3,6)$ is

$$(x-3)^2+(y-6)^2=16.$$

The point $(5,b)$ is on this circle if and only if

$$(5-3)^2+(b-6)^2=16,$$

which is equivalent to the equation $(b-6)^2=12$. Thus

$$b-6=\pm\sqrt{12}=\pm\sqrt{4\cdot 3}=\pm\sqrt{4}\sqrt{3}=\pm 2\sqrt{3}.$$

Thus $b=6+2\sqrt{3}$ or $b=6-2\sqrt{3}$.

77 Find the center and radius of the circle

$$x^2-8x+y^2+2y=-14.$$

solution Completing the square, we can rewrite the left side of the equation above as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}x^2-8x+y^2+2y&=(x-4)^2-16+(y+1)^2-1\\&=(x-4)^2+(y+1)^2-17.\end{aligned}$$

Substituting this expression into the left side of the original equation and then adding 17 to both sides shows that the original equation is equivalent to the equation

$$(x-4)^2+(y+1)^2=3.$$

Thus this circle has center $(4,-1)$ and radius $\sqrt{3}$.

79 Find the two points where the circle with radius 2 centered at the origin intersects the circle with radius 3 centered at $(3,0)$.

solution The equations of these two circles are

$$x^2+y^2=4 \quad \text{and} \quad (x-3)^2+y^2=9.$$

Subtracting the first equation from the second equation, we get

$$(x-3)^2-x^2=5,$$

which simplifies to the equation $-6x+9=5$, whose solution is $x=\frac{2}{3}$. Plugging this value of x into either of the equations above and solving for y gives $y=\pm\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3}$. Thus the two circles intersect at the points $\left(\frac{2}{3},\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{2}{3},-\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3}\right)$.

81 Find the intersection of the line containing the points $(2,3)$ and $(4,7)$ and the circle with radius $\sqrt{15}$ centered at $(3,-3)$.

solution First we find the equation of the line containing the points $(2,3)$ and $(4,7)$. This line will have slope $\frac{7-3}{4-2}$, which equals 2. Thus the equation of this line will have the form $y=2x+b$. Because $(2,3)$ is on this line, we can substitute $x=2$ and $y=3$ into the last equation and then solve for b, getting $b=-1$. Thus the equation of the line containing the points $(2,3)$ and $(4,7)$ is

$$y=2x-1.$$

The equation of the circle with radius $\sqrt{15}$ centered at $(3,-3)$ is

$$(x-3)^2+(y+3)^2=15.$$

To find the intersection of the circle and the line, we replace y by $2x-1$ in the equation above, getting

$$(x-3)^2+(2x+2)^2=15.$$

Expanding the terms in the equation above and then collecting terms gives the equation

$$5x^2+2x-2=0.$$

Using the quadratic formula, we then find that

$$x=\frac{-1+\sqrt{11}}{5} \quad \text{or} \quad x=\frac{-1-\sqrt{11}}{5}.$$

Substituting these values of x into the equation $y=2x-1$ shows that the line intersects the circle at the points

$$\left(\frac{-1+\sqrt{11}}{5},\frac{-7+2\sqrt{11}}{5}\right)$$

and

$$\left(\frac{-1-\sqrt{11}}{5},\frac{-7-2\sqrt{11}}{5}\right).$$

83 Suppose units are chosen so that the orbit of a planet around a star is the ellipse

$$4x^2+5y^2=1.$$

What is the location of the star? (Assume that the first coordinate of the star is positive.)

solution To put the equation above in the standard form for an ellipse, rewrite it as

$$\frac{x^2}{\frac{1}{4}}+\frac{y^2}{\frac{1}{5}}=1.$$

The star is located at a focus of the ellipse. The focus with a positive first coordinate is $\left(\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{5}},0\right)$, which equals $\left(\sqrt{\frac{1}{20}},0\right)$, which equals $\left(\frac{\sqrt{5}}{10},0\right)$.

85 Suppose units are chosen so that the orbit of a comet around a star is the upper branch of the hyperbola

$$3y^2-2x^2=5.$$

What is the location of the star?

solution To put the equation above in the standard form for a hyperbola, rewrite it as

$$\frac{y^2}{\frac{5}{3}}-\frac{x^2}{\frac{5}{2}}=1.$$

The star is located at a focus of the hyperbola. The focus with a positive second coordinate (needed because the orbit is on the upper branch of the hyperbola) is $\left(0,\sqrt{\frac{5}{3}+\frac{5}{2}}\right)$, which equals $\left(0,\sqrt{\frac{25}{6}}\right)$, which equals $\left(0,\frac{5\sqrt{6}}{6}\right)$.

2.3 Exponents

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- explain why x^0 is defined to equal 1 (for $x \neq 0$);
- explain why x^{-m} is defined to equal $\frac{1}{x^m}$ (for m a positive integer and $x \neq 0$);
- explain why $x^{1/m}$ is defined to equal a number whose m^{th} power equals x (for m a positive integer and $x \geq 0$ if m is even);
- explain why $x^{n/m}$ is defined to equal $(x^{1/m})^n$ (for appropriate choices of m, n, and x);
- manipulate and simplify expressions involving exponents.

Positive Integer Exponents

Multiplication by a positive integer is repeated addition, in the sense that if x is a real number and m is a positive integer, then mx equals the sum with x appearing m times:

$$mx = \underbrace{x + x + \cdots + x}_{x \text{ appears } m \text{ times}}.$$

Just as multiplication by a positive integer is defined as repeated addition, positive integer exponents denote repeated multiplication.

Positive integer exponent

If x is a real number and m is a positive integer, then x^m is defined to be the product with x appearing m times:

$$x^m = \underbrace{x \cdot x \cdot \cdots \cdot x}_{x \text{ appears } m \text{ times}}.$$

The next section deals with polynomials. To understand polynomials, you will need a good understanding of the meaning of the expression x^m.

Example 1

(a) Evaluate $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^4$.

(b) Expand $(x+2)^3$.

solution

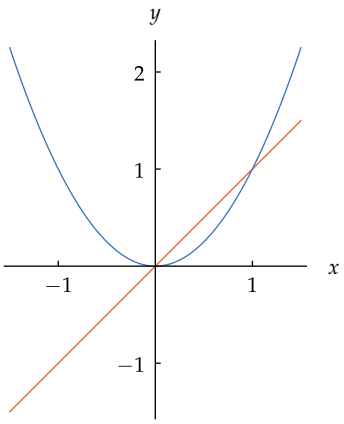
(a) $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^4 = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{16}$

(b) $$(x+2)^3 = (x+2)(x+2)(x+2) = \big((x+2)(x+2)\big)(x+2)$$
$$= (x^2 + 4x + 4)(x+2) = x^3 + 6x^2 + 12x + 8$$

If m is a positive integer, then we can define a function f by

$$f(x) = x^m.$$

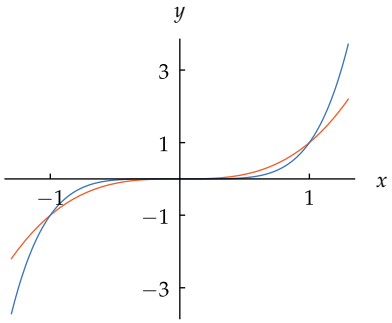
For $m = 1$, the graph of the function defined by $f(x) = x$ is a line through the origin with slope 1. For $m = 2$, the graph of the function defined by $f(x) = x^2$ is the familiar parabola with vertex at the origin, as shown here.



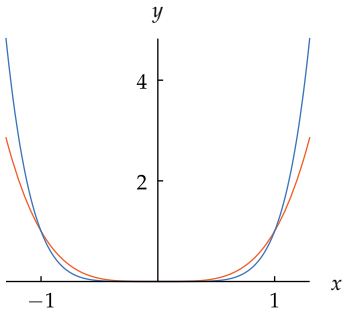
The graphs of x (orange) and x^2 (blue) on $[-1.5, 1.5]$.

The graphs of x^3, x^4, x^5, and x^6 are shown next, separated into two groups according to their shape. Note that x^3 and x^5 are increasing functions, but x^4 and x^6 are decreasing on the interval $(-\infty, 0]$ and increasing on the interval $[0, \infty)$.

Although the graphs of x^4 and x^6 have a parabola-type shape, these graphs are not true parabolas.



The graphs of x^3 (orange) and x^5 (blue) on $[-1.3, 1.3]$.



The graphs of x^4 (orange) and x^6 (blue) on $[-1.3, 1.3]$.

We have now seen graphs of x^m for $m = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$. For larger odd values of m, the graph of x^m has roughly the same shape as the graphs of x^3 and x^5; for larger even values of m, the graph of x^m has roughly the same shape as the graphs of x^2, x^4, and x^6.

The properties of positive integer exponents follow from the definition of x^m as repeated multiplication.

Example 2

Suppose x is a real number and m and n are positive integers. Explain why

$$x^m x^n = x^{m+n}.$$

solution We have

$$x^m x^n = \underbrace{x \cdot x \cdot \cdots \cdot x}_{x \text{ appears } m \text{ times}} \cdot \underbrace{x \cdot x \cdot \cdots \cdot x}_{x \text{ appears } n \text{ times}}.$$

Thus $x^m x^n = x^{m+n}$ because x appears a total of $m + n$ times in the product above.

*The expression x^m is called the m^{th} **power** of x.*

Taking $n = m$ in the example above, we see that $x^m x^m = x^{m+m}$, which can be rewritten as $(x^m)^2 = x^{2m}$. The next example generalizes this equation, replacing 2 by any positive integer.

Example 3

Suppose x is a real number and m and n are positive integers. Explain why

$$(x^m)^n = x^{mn}.$$

solution We have

$$(x^m)^n = \underbrace{x^m \cdot x^m \cdot \cdots \cdot x^m}_{x^m \text{ appears } n \text{ times}}.$$

Each x^m on the right side of the equation above equals the product with x appearing m times, and x^m appears n times. Thus x appears a total of mn times in the product above, which shows that $(x^m)^n = x^{mn}$.

The next example provides a formula for raising the product of two numbers to a power.

Example 4

Suppose x and y are real numbers and m is a positive integer. Explain why

$$(xy)^m = x^m y^m.$$

solution We have

$$(xy)^m = \underbrace{(xy) \cdot (xy) \cdot \cdots \cdot (xy)}_{(xy) \text{ appears } m \text{ times}}.$$

Because of the associativity and commutativity of multiplication, the product above can be rearranged to show that

$$(xy)^m = \underbrace{x \cdot x \cdot \cdots \cdot x}_{x \text{ appears } m \text{ times}} \cdot \underbrace{y \cdot y \cdot \cdots \cdot y}_{y \text{ appears } m \text{ times}}.$$

Thus we see that $(xy)^m = x^m y^m$.

The three previous examples show that positive integer exponents obey the following rules. Soon we will extend these rules to exponents that are not necessarily positive integers.

Properties of positive integer exponents

Suppose x and y are numbers and m and n are positive integers. Then

$$x^m x^n = x^{m+n},$$
$$(x^m)^n = x^{mn},$$
$$x^m y^m = (xy)^m.$$

We have defined x^m as the product with x appearing m times. This definition makes sense only when m is a positive integer. To define x^m for other values of m, we will choose definitions so that the properties listed here for positive integer exponents continue to hold.

Defining x^0

We begin by considering how x^0 might be defined. Recall that if x is a real number and m and n are positive integers, then

$$x^m x^n = x^{m+n}.$$

We would like to choose the definition of x^0 so that the equation above holds even if $m = 0$. In other words, we would like to define x^0 so that

$$x^0 x^n = x^{0+n}.$$

Rewriting this equation as

$$x^0 x^n = x^n,$$

we see that if $x \neq 0$, then we have no choice but to define x^0 to equal 1.

The previous paragraph shows how we should define x^0 for $x \neq 0$, but what happens when $x = 0$? Unfortunately, finding a definition for 0^0 that preserves other properties of exponents turns out to be impossible. Two conflicting considerations point to two possible definitions for 0^0:

- The equation $x^0 = 1$, valid for all $x \neq 0$, suggests that we should define 0^0 to equal 1.
- The equation $0^m = 0$, valid for all positive integers m, suggests that we should define 0^0 to equal 0.

"The reasoning of mathematicians is founded on certain and infallible principles. Every word they use conveys a determinate idea, and by accurate definitions they excite the same ideas in the mind of the reader that were in the mind of the writer."

–John Adams (*second President of the United States*)

If we choose to define 0^0 to equal 1, as suggested by the first point above, then we violate the equation $0^m = 0$ suggested by the second point. If we choose to define 0^0 to equal 0, as suggested by the second point above, then we violate the equation $x^0 = 1$ suggested by the first point. Either way, we cannot maintain the consistency of our algebraic properties involving exponents.

Understanding that 0^0 is undefined will be important when you learn calculus.

To solve this dilemma, mathematicians leave 0^0 undefined rather than choose a definition that will violate some of our algebraic properties. Mathematicians take a similar position with respect to division by 0: The equations $x \cdot \frac{y}{x} = y$ and $0 \cdot \frac{y}{x} = 0$ cannot both be satisfied if $x = 0$ and $y = 1$, regardless of how we define $\frac{1}{0}$. Thus $\frac{1}{0}$ is left undefined.

In summary, here is our definition of x^0.

x^0

- If $x \neq 0$, then $x^0 = 1$.
- The expression 0^0 is undefined.

For example, $4^0 = 1$.

Negative Integer Exponents

As with the definition of a zero exponent, we will let consistency with previous algebraic properties force upon us the meaning of negative integer exponents.

At this stage, we have defined x^m whenever $x \neq 0$ and m is a positive integer or zero. We now turn our attention to defining the meaning of negative integer exponents.

Recall that if $x \neq 0$ and m and n are nonnegative integers, then

$$x^m x^n = x^{m+n}.$$

We would like to choose the meaning of negative integer exponents so that the equation above holds whenever m and n are integers (including the possibility that one or both of m and n might be negative). In the equation above, if we take $n = -m$, we get

$$x^m x^{-m} = x^{m+(-m)}.$$

Because $x^0 = 1$, this equation can be rewritten as

$$x^m x^{-m} = 1.$$

Thus we see that we have no choice but to define x^{-m} to equal the multiplicative inverse of x^m.

Negative integer exponent

If $x \neq 0$ and m is a positive integer, then x^{-m} is defined to be the multiplicative inverse of x^m:

$$x^{-m} = \frac{1}{x^m}.$$

To avoid division by 0, we cannot allow x to equal 0 in this definition. Thus if m is a positive integer, then 0^{-m} is undefined.

Example 5

Evaluate 3^{-2}.

solution

$$3^{-2} = \frac{1}{3^2} = \frac{1}{9}$$

We can gain some insight into the behavior of the function x^m, for m a negative integer, by looking at its graph.

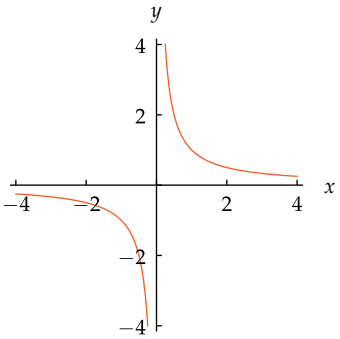
Compare the graphs of x^{-1} and x^{-2}.

Example 6

solution The figures here show that the absolute value of $\frac{1}{x}$ and $\frac{1}{x^2}$ are both large for values of x near 0. Conversely, $\frac{1}{x}$ and $\frac{1}{x^2}$ are both near 0 for x with large absolute value.

Both $\frac{1}{x}$ and $\frac{1}{x^2}$ are decreasing on $(0, \infty)$.

However, $\frac{1}{x}$ is decreasing on $(-\infty, 0)$, but $\frac{1}{x^2}$ is increasing on $(-\infty, 0)$. Another difference between these graphs is that the graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ lies entirely above the x-axis.



The graph of $\frac{1}{x}$ *on* $[-4, -\frac{1}{4}] \cup [\frac{1}{4}, 4]$.

If m is a positive integer, then the graph of $\frac{1}{x^m}$ behaves like the graph of $\frac{1}{x}$ if m is odd and like the graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ if m is even. Larger values of m correspond to functions whose graphs get closer to the x-axis more rapidly for large values of x and closer to the vertical axis more rapidly for values of x near 0.

Roots

Suppose x is a real number and m is a positive integer. How should we define $x^{1/m}$? To answer this question, we will let the algebraic properties of exponents force the definition upon us, as we did in defining the meaning of negative integer exponents.

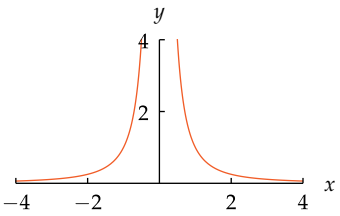
Recall that if x is a real number and m and n are positive integers, then

$$(x^n)^m = x^{nm}.$$

We would like the equation above to hold even when m and n are not positive integers. In particular, if we take n equal to $1/m$, the equation above becomes

$$(x^{1/m})^m = x.$$

Thus we see that we should define $x^{1/m}$ to be a number that when raised to the m^{th} power gives x.



The graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ *on* $[-4, -\frac{1}{2}] \cup [\frac{1}{2}, 4]$.

How should $8^{1/3}$ be defined?

Example 7

The expression x^3 *is called the* **cube** *of* x.

solution Taking $x = 8$ and $m = 3$ in the equation above, we get

$$(8^{1/3})^3 = 8.$$

Thus $8^{1/3}$ should be defined to be a number that when cubed gives 8. The only such number is 2; thus we should define $8^{1/3}$ to equal 2.

Similarly, $(-8)^{1/3}$ should be defined to equal -2, because -2 is the only number that when cubed gives -8. The next example shows that special care must be used when defining $x^{1/m}$ if m is an even integer.

How should $9^{1/2}$ be defined?

Example 8

solution In the equation $(x^{1/m})^m = x$, take $x = 9$ and $m = 2$ to get

$$(9^{1/2})^2 = 9.$$

Thus $9^{1/2}$ should be defined to be a number that when squared gives 9. Both 3 and -3 have a square equal to 9; thus we have a choice. When this happens, we will always choose the positive possibility. Thus $9^{1/2}$ is defined to equal 3.

The next example shows the problem that arises when trying to define $x^{1/m}$ if x is negative and m is an even integer.

Example 9

Complex numbers were invented so that meaning could be given to expressions such as $(-9)^{1/2}$, but we restrict our attention here to real numbers.

How should $(-9)^{1/2}$ be defined?

solution In the equation $(x^{1/m})^m = x$, take $x = -9$ and $m = 2$ to get

$$((-9)^{1/2})^2 = -9.$$

Thus $(-9)^{1/2}$ should be defined to be a number that when squared gives -9. But no such real number exists, because no real number has a square that is negative. Hence we leave $(-9)^{1/2}$ undefined when working only with real numbers.

With the experience of the previous examples, we are now ready to give the formal definition of $x^{1/m}$.

m^{th} root

If m is a positive integer and x is a real number, then $x^{1/m}$ is defined to be the real number satisfying the equation

$$(x^{1/m})^m = x,$$

subject to the following conditions:

- If $x < 0$ and m is an even integer, then $x^{1/m}$ is undefined.
- If $x > 0$ and m is an even integer, then $x^{1/m}$ is chosen to be the positive number satisfying the equation above.

The number $x^{1/m}$ is called the $\boldsymbol{m}^{\text{th}}$ **root** of x.

Thus the m^{th} root of x is the number that when raised to the m^{th} power gives x, with the understanding that if m is even and x is positive, then we choose the positive number with this property.

For example, the square root of $\frac{16}{9}$ equals $\frac{4}{3}$, and the cube root of 125 equals 5.

The number $x^{1/2}$ is called the **square root** of x, and $x^{1/3}$ is called the **cube root** of x. The notation $\sqrt{x}$ denotes the square root of x, and the notation $\sqrt[3]{x}$ denotes the cube root of x. For example, $\sqrt{9} = 3$ and $\sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{8}} = \frac{1}{2}$. More generally, the notation $\sqrt[m]{x}$ denotes the m^{th} root of x.

Notation for roots

$$\sqrt{x} = x^{1/2};$$

$$\sqrt[m]{x} = x^{1/m}.$$

The expression $\sqrt{2}$ cannot be simplified any further—there does not exist a rational number whose square equals 2 (see Section 0.1). Thus the expression $\sqrt{2}$ is usually left simply as $\sqrt{2}$, unless a numeric calculation is needed. The key property of $\sqrt{2}$ is that $(\sqrt{2})^2 = 2$.

Suppose x and y are positive numbers. Then

$$(\sqrt{x}\sqrt{y})^2 = (\sqrt{x})^2(\sqrt{y})^2 = xy.$$

Thus $\sqrt{x}\sqrt{y}$ is a positive number whose square equals xy. Our definition of square root now implies that $\sqrt{xy}$ equals $\sqrt{x}\sqrt{y}$, so we have the following result.

Square root of a product

If x and y are positive numbers, then

$$\sqrt{x}\sqrt{y} = \sqrt{xy}.$$

Never make the mistake of thinking that $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y}$ equals $\sqrt{x+y}$.

The last result is used twice in the next example, once in each direction.

Example 10

Simplify $\sqrt{2}\sqrt{6}$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{2}\sqrt{6} &= \sqrt{12}\\ &= \sqrt{4\cdot 3}\\ &= \sqrt{4}\sqrt{3}\\ &= 2\sqrt{3}\end{aligned}$$

The next example should help solidify your understanding of square roots.

Example 11

Show that $\sqrt{7+4\sqrt{3}} = 2+\sqrt{3}$.

solution No one knows a nice way to simplify an expression of the form $\sqrt{a+b\sqrt{c}}$. Thus we have no way to work with the left side of the equation above. However, to say that the square root of $7+4\sqrt{3}$ equals $2+\sqrt{3}$ means that the square of $2+\sqrt{3}$ equals $7+4\sqrt{3}$. Thus to verify the equation above, we will square the right side and see if we get $7+4\sqrt{3}$. Here is the calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(2+\sqrt{3}\right)^2 &= 2^2 + 2\cdot 2\cdot\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{3}^2\\ &= 4 + 4\sqrt{3} + 3\\ &= 7 + 4\sqrt{3}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $\sqrt{7+4\sqrt{3}} = 2+\sqrt{3}$.

The key point to understand in the definition of $x^{1/m}$ is that the m^{th} root function is simply the inverse function of the m^{th} power function. Although we did not use this language when we defined m^{th} roots, we could have done so, because we defined $y^{1/m}$ as the number that makes the equation $\left(y^{1/m}\right)^m = y$ hold, exactly as done in the definition of an inverse function (see Section 1.5). Here is a restatement of m^{th} roots in terms of inverse functions.

m^{th} root as an inverse function

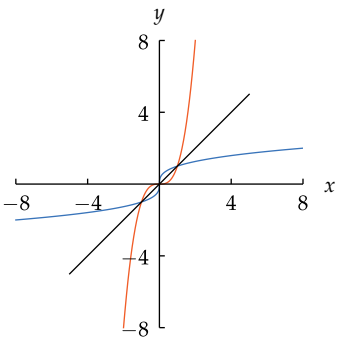
Suppose m is a positive integer and f is the function defined by

$$f(x) = x^m,$$

with the domain of f being the set of real numbers if m is odd and the domain of f being $[0,\infty)$ if m is even. Then the inverse function f^{-1} is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = y^{1/m}.$$

If m is even, the domain of f is restricted to $[0,\infty)$ to obtain a one-to-one function.



The graph of $\sqrt[3]{x}$ (blue) is obtained by flipping the graph of x^3 (orange) across the line $y = x$.

Because the function $x^{1/m}$ is the inverse of the function x^m, we can obtain the graph of $x^{1/m}$ by flipping the graph of x^m across the line $y = x$, as is the case with any one-to-one function and its inverse. For the case when $m = 2$, we already did this, obtaining the graph of $\sqrt{x}$ by flipping the graph of x^2 across the line $y = x$; see Example 1 in Section 1.6. The corresponding graph for x^3 and its inverse $\sqrt[3]{x}$ is shown here.

The inverse of an increasing function is increasing. Thus the function $x^{1/m}$ is increasing for every positive integer m.

Rational Exponents

Having defined the meaning of exponents of the form $1/m$, where m is a positive integer, we will now find it easy to define the meaning of rational exponents.

Recall from Example 3 that if n and p are positive integers, then

$$x^{np} = (x^p)^n$$

for every real number x. If we assume the equation above should hold even when p is not a positive integer, we are led to the meaning of rational exponents. Specifically, suppose m is a positive integer and we take $p = 1/m$ in the equation above, getting

$$x^{n/m} = (x^{1/m})^n.$$

The left side of the equation above does not yet make sense, because we have not yet given meaning to a rational exponent. But the right side of the equation above does make sense, because we have defined $x^{1/m}$ and we have defined the n^{th} power of every number. Thus we can use the right side of the equation above to define the left side, which we now do.

Rational exponent

If n/m is a fraction in reduced form, where m and n are integers and $m > 0$, then $x^{n/m}$ is defined by the equation

$$x^{n/m} = (x^{1/m})^n$$

whenever this makes sense.

The phrase "whenever this makes sense" excludes the case where $x < 0$ and m is even (because then $x^{1/m}$ is undefined) and the case where $x = 0$ and $n \le 0$ (because then 0^n is undefined).

Example 12

(a) Evaluate $16^{3/2}$.

(b) Evaluate $27^{2/3}$.

(c) Evaluate $16^{-3/4}$.

(d) Evaluate $27^{-4/3}$.

(e) Simplify $(t^3)^{7/3}$.

(f) Simplify $(b^{1/5})^{15}$.

solution

(a) $16^{3/2} = (16^{1/2})^3 = 4^3 = 64$

(b) $27^{2/3} = (27^{1/3})^2 = 3^2 = 9$

(c) $16^{-3/4} = (16^{1/4})^{-3} = 2^{-3} = \frac{1}{2^3} = \frac{1}{8}$

(d) $27^{-4/3} = (27^{1/3})^{-4} = 3^{-4} = \frac{1}{3^4} = \frac{1}{81}$

(e) $(t^3)^{7/3} = ((t^3)^{1/3})^7 = t^7$

(f) $(b^{1/5})^{15} = ((b^{1/5})^5)^3 = b^3$

Properties of Exponents

The definition of x^p when p is a rational number was chosen so that the key identities for integer exponents also hold for rational exponents, as shown below.

Algebraic properties of exponents

Suppose p, q are rational numbers and x, y are positive numbers. Then

$$x^p x^q = x^{p+q},$$

$$x^p y^p = (xy)^p,$$

$$(x^p)^q = x^{pq},$$

$$x^0 = 1,$$

$$x^{-p} = \frac{1}{x^p},$$

$$\frac{x^p}{x^q} = x^{p-q},$$

$$\frac{x^p}{y^p} = \left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^p.$$

As an example of how these identities can fail if x is not positive, the equation

$$(x^2)^{1/2} = x$$

does not hold if $x = -1$.

Example 13

Simplify the expression $\left(\dfrac{(x^{-3}y^4)^2}{x^{-9}y^3}\right)^{2/5}$.

To simplify fractions that involve exponents, keep in mind that an exponent changes sign when we move it from the numerator to the denominator or from the denominator to the numerator.

solution First we simplify the numerator inside the large parentheses. We have

$$(x^{-3}y^4)^2 = x^{-6}y^8.$$

The expression inside the large parentheses is thus equal to

$$\frac{x^{-6}y^8}{x^{-9}y^3}.$$

Now bring the terms in the denominator to the numerator, getting

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{x^{-6}y^8}{x^{-9}y^3} &= x^{-6}x^9y^8y^{-3}\\ &= x^{-6+9}y^{8-3}\\ &= x^3y^5.\end{aligned}$$

Thus the expression inside the large parentheses equals x^3y^5. Raising that expression to the power $2/5$, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{(x^{-3}y^4)^2}{x^{-9}y^3}\right)^{2/5} &= (x^3y^5)^{2/5}\\ &= x^{6/5}y^2.\end{aligned}$$

Exercises

For Exercises 1–6, evaluate the given expression. Do not use a calculator.

1 $2^5 - 5^2$

2 $4^3 - 3^4$

3 $\dfrac{3^{-2}}{2^{-3}}$

4 $\dfrac{2^{-6}}{6^{-2}}$

5 $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{-4}$

6 $\left(\frac{5}{4}\right)^{-3}$

The numbers in Exercises 7–14 are too large to be handled by a calculator. These exercises require an understanding of the concepts.

7 Write 9^{3000} as a power of 3.

8 Write 27^{4000} as a power of 3.

9 Write 5^{4000} as a power of 25.

10 Write 2^{3000} as a power of 8.

11 Write $2^5 \cdot 8^{1000}$ as a power of 2.

12 Write $5^3 \cdot 25^{2000}$ as a power of 5.

13 Write $2^{100} \cdot 4^{200} \cdot 8^{300}$ as a power of 2.

14 Write $3^{500} \cdot 9^{200} \cdot 27^{100}$ as a power of 3.

For Exercises 15–20, simplify the given expression by writing it as a power of a single variable.

15 $x^5(x^2)^3$

16 $y^4(y^3)^5$

17 $y^4\left(y^2(y^5)^2\right)^{3/5}$

18 $x\left(x^4(x^3)^2\right)^{5/3}$

19 $t^4\left(t^3(t^{-2})^5\right)^4$

20 $w^3\left(w^4(w^{-3})^6\right)^2$

21 Write $\dfrac{8^{1000}}{2^5}$ as a power of 2.

22 Write $\dfrac{25^{2000}}{5^3}$ as a power of 5.

23 Find integers m and n such that $2^m \cdot 5^n = 16000$.

24 Find integers m and n such that $2^m \cdot 5^n = 0.0032$.

For Exercises 25–32, simplify the given expression.

25 $\dfrac{(x^2)^3y^8}{x^5(y^4)^3}$

26 $\dfrac{x^{11}(y^3)^2}{(x^3)^5(y^2)^4}$

27 $\dfrac{(x^{-2})^3y^8}{x^{-5}(y^4)^{-3}}$

28 $\dfrac{x^{-11}(y^3)^{-2}}{(x^{-3})^5(y^2)^4}$

29 $\dfrac{(x^2y^{4/5})^3}{(x^5y^2)^{-4}}$

30 $\dfrac{(x^4y^{3/4})^{-3}}{(x^5y^{-2})^4}$

31 $\left(\dfrac{(x^2y^{-5})^{-4}}{(x^5y^{-2})^{-3}}\right)^2$

32 $\left(\dfrac{(x^{-3}y^5)^{-4}}{(x^{-5}y^{-2})^{-3}}\right)^{-2}$

For Exercises 33–44, find a formula for $f \circ g$ given the indicated functions f and g.

33 $f(x) = x^2, g(x) = x^3$

34 $f(x) = x^5, g(x) = x^4$

35 $f(x) = 4x^2, g(x) = 5x^3$

36 $f(x) = 3x^5, g(x) = 2x^4$

37 $f(x) = 4x^{-2}, g(x) = 5x^3$

38 $f(x) = 3x^{-5}, g(x) = 2x^4$

39 $f(x) = 4x^{-2}, g(x) = -5x^{-3}$

40 $f(x) = 3x^{-5}, g(x) = -2x^{-4}$

41 $f(x) = x^{1/2}, g(x) = x^{3/7}$

42 $f(x) = x^{5/3}, g(x) = x^{4/9}$

43 $f(x) = 3 + x^{5/4}, g(x) = x^{2/7}$

44 $f(x) = x^{2/3} - 7, g(x) = x^{9/16}$

For Exercises 45–56, expand the expression.

45 $(2+\sqrt{3})^2$

46 $(3+\sqrt{2})^2$

47 $(2-3\sqrt{5})^2$

48 $(3-5\sqrt{2})^2$

49 $(2+\sqrt{3})^4$

50 $(3+\sqrt{2})^4$

51 $(3+\sqrt{x})^2$

52 $(5+\sqrt{x})^2$

53 $(3-\sqrt{2x})^2$

54 $(5-\sqrt{3x})^2$

55 $(1+2\sqrt{3x})^2$

56 $(3+2\sqrt{5x})^2$

For Exercises 57–64, find all real numbers x that satisfy the indicated equation.

57 $x - 5\sqrt{x} + 6 = 0$

58 $x - 7\sqrt{x} + 12 = 0$

59 $x - \sqrt{x} = 6$

60 $x - \sqrt{x} = 12$

61 $x^{2/3} - 6x^{1/3} = -8$

62 $x^{2/3} + 3x^{1/3} = 10$

63 $x^4 - 3x^2 = 10$

64 $x^4 - 8x^2 = -15$

65 Evaluate 3^{-2x} if x is a number such that $3^x = 4$.

66 Evaluate 2^{-4x} if x is a number such that $2^x = \frac{1}{3}$.

67 Evaluate 8^x if x is a number such that $2^x = 5$.

68 Evaluate $\left(\frac{1}{9}\right)^x$ if x is a number such that $3^x = 5$.

For Exercises 69–78, sketch the graph of the given function f on the interval $[-1.3, 1.3]$.

69 $f(x) = x^3 + 1$

70 $f(x) = x^4 + 2$

71 $f(x) = x^4 - 1.5$

72 $f(x) = x^3 - 0.5$

73 $f(x) = 2x^3$

74 $f(x) = 3x^4$

75 $f(x) = -2x^4$

76 $f(x) = -3x^3$

77 $f(x) = -2x^4 + 3$

78 $f(x) = -3x^3 + 4$

For Exercises 79–88, evaluate the indicated quantities. Do not use a calculator—pushing buttons for these exercises will not help you understand rational powers.

79 $25^{3/2}$

80 $8^{5/3}$

81 $32^{3/5}$

82 $81^{3/4}$

83 $32^{-4/5}$

84 $8^{-5/3}$

85 $(-8)^{7/3}$

86 $(-27)^{4/3}$

87 $(3^{1/5})^{10}$

88 $(2^{1/3})^{12}$

For Exercises 89–100, find a formula for the inverse function f^{-1} of the indicated function f.

89 $f(x) = x^9$

90 $f(x) = x^{12}$

91 $f(x) = x^{1/7}$

92 $f(x) = x^{1/11}$

93 $f(x) = x^{-2/5}$

94 $f(x) = x^{-17/7}$

95 $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4}{81}$

96 $f(x) = 32x^5$

97 $f(x) = 6 + x^3$

98 $f(x) = x^6 - 5$

99 $f(x) = 4x^{3/7} - 1$

100 $f(x) = 7 + 8x^{5/9}$

For Exercises 101–110, sketch the graph of the given function f on the domain $[-3,-\frac{1}{3}]\cup[\frac{1}{3},3]$.

101 $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x}+1$

102 $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2}+2$

103 $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2}-2$

104 $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x}-3$

105 $f(x)=\dfrac{2}{x}$

106 $f(x)=\dfrac{3}{x^2}$

107 $f(x)=-\dfrac{2}{x^2}$

108 $f(x)=-\dfrac{3}{x}$

109 $f(x)=-\dfrac{2}{x^2}+3$

110 $f(x)=-\dfrac{3}{x}+4$

111 Find an integer m such that

$$\left((3+2\sqrt{5})^2-m\right)^2$$

is an integer.

112 Find an integer m such that

$$\left((5-2\sqrt{3})^2-m\right)^2$$

is an integer.

Problems

113 Suppose m is a positive integer. Explain why 10^m, when written out in the usual decimal notation, is the digit 1 followed by m 0's.

114 Suppose m is an odd integer. Show that the function f defined by $f(x)=x^m$ is an odd function.

115 Suppose m is an even integer. Show that the function f defined by $f(x)=x^m$ is an even function.

116 (a) Verify that $(2^2)^2=2^{(2^2)}$.

(b) Show that if m is an integer greater than 2, then

$$(m^m)^m\neq m^{(m^m)}.$$

117 What is the domain of the function $(3+x)^{1/4}$?

118 What is the domain of the function $(1+x^2)^{1/8}$?

119 Suppose p and q are rational numbers. Define functions f and g by $f(x)=x^p$ and $g(x)=x^q$. Explain why

$$(f\circ g)(x)=x^{pq}.$$

120 Suppose x is a real number and m, n, and p are positive integers. Explain why

$$x^{m+n+p}=x^mx^nx^p.$$

121 Suppose x is a real number and m, n, and p are positive integers. Explain why

$$\left((x^m)^n\right)^p=x^{mnp}.$$

122 Suppose x, y, and z are real numbers and m is a positive integer. Explain why

$$x^my^mz^m=(xyz)^m.$$

123 Show that if $x\neq 0$, then

$$|x^n|=|x|^n$$

for all integers n.

124 Sketch the graph of the functions $\sqrt{x}+1$ and $\sqrt{x+1}$ on the interval $[0,4]$.

125 Explain why the spoken phrase "the square root of x plus one" could be interpreted in two different ways that would not give the same result.

126 Sketch the graphs of the functions $2x^{1/3}$ and $(2x)^{1/3}$ on the interval $[0,8]$.

127 Sketch the graphs of the functions $x^{1/4}$ and $x^{1/5}$ on the interval $[0,81]$.

128 Show that $\sqrt{5}\cdot 5^{3/2}=25$.

129 Show that $\sqrt{2^3}\sqrt{8^3}=64$.

130 Show that $3^{3/2}12^{3/2}=216$.

131 Show that $\sqrt{3}+\sqrt{48}=\sqrt{75}$.

132 Show that $\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{72}=\sqrt{98}$.

133 Show that $\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}=\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}+\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$.

134 Show that $\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}=\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}-\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$.

135 Show that $\sqrt{9-4\sqrt{5}}=\sqrt{5}-2$.

136 Show that $(23-8\sqrt{7})^{1/2}=4-\sqrt{7}$.

137 Make up a problem similar in form to the problem above, without duplicating anything in this book.

138 Show that $(99+70\sqrt{2})^{1/3}=3+2\sqrt{2}$.

139 Show that $(-37+30\sqrt{3})^{1/3}=-1+2\sqrt{3}$.

140 Show that if x and y are positive numbers with $x\neq y$, then

$$\frac{x-y}{\sqrt{x}-\sqrt{y}}=\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{y}.$$

141 Explain why

$$10^{100}(\sqrt{10^{200}+1}-10^{100})$$

is approximately $\frac{1}{2}$.

142 Explain why the equation $\sqrt{x^2}=x$ is not valid for all real numbers x and should be replaced by the equation $\sqrt{x^2}=|x|$.

143 Explain why the equation $\sqrt{x^8}=x^4$ is valid for all real numbers x, with no need to use absolute value.

144 Show that if x and y are positive numbers, then

$$\sqrt{x+y}<\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{y}.$$

[*In particular, if x and y are positive numbers, then* $\sqrt{x+y}\neq\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{y}$.]

145 Show that if $0 < x < y$, then

$$\sqrt{y} - \sqrt{x} < \sqrt{y - x}.$$

146 Explain why

$$\sqrt{x} < \sqrt[3]{x} \quad \text{if} \quad 0 < x < 1$$

and

$$\sqrt{x} > \sqrt[3]{x} \quad \text{if} \quad x > 1.$$

Sketch the graphs of the functions $\sqrt{x}$ and $\sqrt[3]{x}$ on the interval $[0, 4]$.

147 Using the result that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational (proved in Section 0.1), show that $2^{5/2}$ is irrational.

148 Using the result that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational, explain why $2^{1/6}$ is irrational.

149 Give an example of three irrational numbers x, y, and z such that xyz is a rational number.

150 Suppose t is an irrational number. Explain why at least one of t^2 and t^5 is an irrational number.

151 Suppose t is an irrational number. Explain why at least one of t^5 and t^8 is an irrational number.

152 Suppose you have a calculator that can only compute square roots. Explain how you could use this calculator to compute $7^{1/8}$.

153 Suppose you have a calculator that can only compute square roots and can multiply. Explain how you could use this calculator to compute $7^{3/4}$.

Fermat's Last Theorem states that if n is an integer greater than 2, then there do not exist positive integers x, y, and z such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

Fermat's Last Theorem was not proved until 1994, although mathematicians had been trying to find a proof for centuries.

154 Use Fermat's Last Theorem to show that if n is an integer greater than 2, then there do not exist positive rational numbers x and y such that

$$x^n + y^n = 1.$$

[*Hint:* Use proof by contradiction: Assume there exist rational numbers $x = \frac{m}{p}$ and $y = \frac{q}{r}$ such that $x^n + y^n = 1$; then show that this assumption leads to a contradiction of Fermat's Last Theorem.]

155 Use Fermat's Last Theorem to show that if n is an integer greater than 2, then there do not exist positive rational numbers x, y, and z such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

[*The equation* $3^2 + 4^2 = 5^2$ *shows the necessity of the hypothesis that* $n > 2$.]

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–6, evaluate the given expression. Do not use a calculator.

1 $2^5 - 5^2$

solution $2^5 - 5^2 = 32 - 25 = 7$

3 $\dfrac{3^{-2}}{2^{-3}}$

solution $\dfrac{3^{-2}}{2^{-3}} = \dfrac{2^3}{3^2} = \dfrac{8}{9}$

5 $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{-4}$

solution $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{-4} = \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^4 = \frac{3^4}{2^4} = \frac{81}{16}$

The numbers in Exercises 7–14 are too large to be handled by a calculator. These exercises require an understanding of the concepts.

7 Write 9^{3000} as a power of 3.

solution $9^{3000} = (3^2)^{3000} = 3^{6000}$

9 Write 5^{4000} as a power of 25.

solution

$$\begin{aligned} 5^{4000} &= 5^{2 \cdot 2000} \\ &= (5^2)^{2000} \\ &= 25^{2000} \end{aligned}$$

11 Write $2^5 \cdot 8^{1000}$ as a power of 2.

solution

$$\begin{aligned} 2^5 \cdot 8^{1000} &= 2^5 \cdot (2^3)^{1000} \\ &= 2^5 \cdot 2^{3000} \\ &= 2^{3005} \end{aligned}$$

13 Write $2^{100} \cdot 4^{200} \cdot 8^{300}$ as a power of 2.

solution

$$\begin{aligned} 2^{100} \cdot 4^{200} \cdot 8^{300} &= 2^{100} \cdot (2^2)^{200} \cdot (2^3)^{300} \\ &= 2^{100} \cdot 2^{400} \cdot 2^{900} \\ &= 2^{1400} \end{aligned}$$

For Exercises 15–20, simplify the given expression by writing it as a power of a single variable.

15 $x^5(x^2)^3$

solution $x^5(x^2)^3 = x^5 x^6 = x^{11}$

17 $y^4\left(y^2(y^5)^2\right)^{3/5}$

solution

$$y^4\left(y^2(y^5)^2\right)^{3/5} = y^4(y^2y^{10})^{3/5}$$
$$= y^4(y^{12})^{3/5}$$
$$= y^4y^{36/5}$$
$$= y^{56/5}$$

19 $t^4\left(t^3(t^{-2})^5\right)^4$

solution

$$t^4\left(t^3(t^{-2})^5\right)^4 = t^4(t^3t^{-10})^4$$
$$= t^4(t^{-7})^4$$
$$= t^4t^{-28}$$
$$= t^{-24}$$

21 Write $\dfrac{8^{1000}}{2^5}$ as a power of 2.

solution
$$\frac{8^{1000}}{2^5} = \frac{(2^3)^{1000}}{2^5}$$
$$= \frac{2^{3000}}{2^5}$$
$$= 2^{2995}$$

23 Find integers m and n such that $2^m \cdot 5^n = 16000$.

solution Note that

$$16000 = 16 \cdot 1000$$
$$= 2^4 \cdot 10^3$$
$$= 2^4 \cdot (2 \cdot 5)^3$$
$$= 2^4 \cdot 2^3 \cdot 5^3$$
$$= 2^7 \cdot 5^3.$$

Thus if we want to find integers m and n such that $2^m \cdot 5^n = 16000$, we should choose $m = 7$ and $n = 3$.

For Exercises 25–32, simplify the given expression.

25 $\dfrac{(x^2)^3y^8}{x^5(y^4)^3}$

solution
$$\frac{(x^2)^3y^8}{x^5(y^4)^3} = \frac{x^6y^8}{x^5y^{12}}$$
$$= \frac{x^{6-5}}{y^{12-8}}$$
$$= \frac{x}{y^4}$$

27 $\dfrac{(x^{-2})^3y^8}{x^{-5}(y^4)^{-3}}$

solution
$$\frac{(x^{-2})^3y^8}{x^{-5}(y^4)^{-3}} = \frac{x^{-6}y^8}{x^{-5}y^{-12}}$$
$$= \frac{y^{8+12}}{x^{6-5}}$$
$$= \frac{y^{20}}{x}$$

29 $\dfrac{(x^2y^{4/5})^3}{(x^5y^2)^{-4}}$

solution
$$\frac{(x^2y^{4/5})^3}{(x^5y^2)^{-4}} = \frac{x^6y^{12/5}}{x^{-20}y^{-8}}$$
$$= x^{6+20}y^{12/5+8}$$
$$= x^{26}y^{52/5}$$

31 $\left(\dfrac{(x^2y^{-5})^{-4}}{(x^5y^{-2})^{-3}}\right)^2$

solution
$$\left(\frac{(x^2y^{-5})^{-4}}{(x^5y^{-2})^{-3}}\right)^2 = \frac{(x^2y^{-5})^{-8}}{(x^5y^{-2})^{-6}}$$
$$= \frac{x^{-16}y^{40}}{x^{-30}y^{12}}$$
$$= x^{30-16}y^{40-12}$$
$$= x^{14}y^{28}$$

For Exercises 33–44, find a formula for $f \circ g$ given the indicated functions f and g.

33 $f(x) = x^2$, $g(x) = x^3$

solution
$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(\,g(x)\,) = f(x^3) = (x^3)^2 = x^6$$

35 $f(x) = 4x^2$, $g(x) = 5x^3$

solution
$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(\,g(x)\,) = f(5x^3)$$
$$= 4(5x^3)^2 = 4 \cdot 5^2(x^3)^2 = 100x^6$$

37 $f(x) = 4x^{-2}, g(x) = 5x^3$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(5x^3)$$
$$= 4(5x^3)^{-2} = 4 \cdot 5^{-2}(x^3)^{-2} = \frac{4}{25}x^{-6}$$

39 $f(x) = 4x^{-2}, g(x) = -5x^{-3}$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(-5x^{-3})$$
$$= 4(-5x^{-3})^{-2} = 4(-5)^{-2}(x^{-3})^{-2} = \frac{4}{25}x^6$$

41 $f(x) = x^{1/2}, g(x) = x^{3/7}$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(x^{3/7}) = (x^{3/7})^{1/2}$$
$$= x^{3/14}$$

43 $f(x) = 3 + x^{5/4}, g(x) = x^{2/7}$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(x^{2/7}) = 3 + (x^{2/7})^{5/4}$$
$$= 3 + x^{5/14}$$

For Exercises 45–56, expand the expression.

45 $(2 + \sqrt{3})^2$

solution

$$(2 + \sqrt{3})^2 = 2^2 + 2 \cdot 2 \cdot \sqrt{3} + \sqrt{3}^2$$
$$= 4 + 4\sqrt{3} + 3$$
$$= 7 + 4\sqrt{3}$$

47 $(2 - 3\sqrt{5})^2$

solution

$$(2 - 3\sqrt{5})^2 = 2^2 - 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \sqrt{5} + 3^2 \cdot \sqrt{5}^2$$
$$= 4 - 12\sqrt{5} + 9 \cdot 5$$
$$= 49 - 12\sqrt{5}$$

49 $(2 + \sqrt{3})^4$

solution Note that

$$(2 + \sqrt{3})^4 = \big((2 + \sqrt{3})^2\big)^2.$$

Thus first we need to compute $(2 + \sqrt{3})^2$. We already did that in Exercise 45, getting

$$(2 + \sqrt{3})^2 = 7 + 4\sqrt{3}.$$

Thus

$$(2 + \sqrt{3})^4 = \big((2 + \sqrt{3})^2\big)^2$$
$$= (7 + 4\sqrt{3})^2$$
$$= 7^2 + 2 \cdot 7 \cdot 4 \cdot \sqrt{3} + 4^2 \cdot \sqrt{3}^2$$
$$= 49 + 56\sqrt{3} + 16 \cdot 3$$
$$= 97 + 56\sqrt{3}.$$

51 $(3 + \sqrt{x})^2$

solution

$$(3 + \sqrt{x})^2 = 3^2 + 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \sqrt{x} + \sqrt{x}^2$$
$$= 9 + 6\sqrt{x} + x$$

53 $(3 - \sqrt{2x})^2$

solution

$$(3 - \sqrt{2x})^2 = 3^2 - 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \sqrt{2x} + \sqrt{2x}^2$$
$$= 9 - 6\sqrt{2x} + 2x$$

55 $(1 + 2\sqrt{3x})^2$

solution

$$(1 + 2\sqrt{3x})^2 = 1^2 + 2 \cdot 2 \cdot \sqrt{3x} + 2^2 \cdot \sqrt{3x}^2$$
$$= 1 + 4\sqrt{3x} + 4 \cdot 3x$$
$$= 1 + 4\sqrt{3x} + 12x$$

For Exercises 57–64, find all real numbers x that satisfy the indicated equation.

57 $x - 5\sqrt{x} + 6 = 0$

solution This equation involves $\sqrt{x}$; thus we make the substitution $\sqrt{x} = y$. Squaring both sides of the equation $\sqrt{x} = y$ gives $x = y^2$. With these substitutions, the equation above becomes

$$y^2 - 5y + 6 = 0.$$

Factoring the left side gives

$$(y - 2)(y - 3) = 0.$$

Thus $y = 2$ or $y = 3$ (as could also have been discovered by using the quadratic formula).

Substituting $\sqrt{x}$ for y now shows that $\sqrt{x} = 2$ or $\sqrt{x} = 3$. Thus $x = 4$ or $x = 9$.

59 $x - \sqrt{x} = 6$

solution This equation involves $\sqrt{x}$; thus we make the substitution $\sqrt{x} = y$. Squaring both sides of the equation $\sqrt{x} = y$ gives $x = y^2$. Making these substitutions and subtracting 6 from both sides, we have

$$y^2 - y - 6 = 0.$$

The quadratic formula gives

$$y = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1+24}}{2} = \frac{1 \pm 5}{2}.$$

Thus $y = 3$ or $y = -2$ (the same result could have been obtained by factoring).

Substituting $\sqrt{x}$ for y now shows that

$$\sqrt{x} = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad \sqrt{x} = -2.$$

The first possibility corresponds to the solution $x = 9$. There are no real numbers x such that $\sqrt{x} = -2$. Thus $x = 9$ is the only solution to this equation.

61 $x^{2/3} - 6x^{1/3} = -8$

solution This equation involves $x^{1/3}$ and $x^{2/3}$; thus we make the substitution $x^{1/3} = y$. Squaring both sides of the equation $x^{1/3} = y$ gives $x^{2/3} = y^2$. Making these substitutions and adding 8 to both sides, we have

$$y^2 - 6y + 8 = 0.$$

Factoring the left side gives

$$(y-2)(y-4) = 0.$$

Thus $y = 2$ or $y = 4$ (as could also have been discovered by using the quadratic formula).

Substituting $x^{1/3}$ for y now shows that

$$x^{1/3} = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad x^{1/3} = 4.$$

Thus $x = 2^3$ or $x = 4^3$. In other words, $x = 8$ or $x = 64$.

63 $x^4 - 3x^2 = 10$

solution This equation involves x^2 and x^4; thus we make the substitution $x^2 = y$. Squaring both sides of the equation $x^2 = y$ gives $x^4 = y^2$. Making these substitutions and subtracting 10 from both sides, we have

$$y^2 - 3y - 10 = 0.$$

Factoring the left side gives

$$(y-5)(y+2) = 0.$$

Thus $y = 5$ or $y = -2$ (as could also have been discovered by using the quadratic formula).

Substituting x^2 for y now shows that $x^2 = 5$ or $x^2 = -2$. The first of these equations implies that

$$x = \sqrt{5} \quad \text{or} \quad x = -\sqrt{5};$$

the second equation is not satisfied by any real value of x. In other words, the original equation implies that $x = \sqrt{5}$ or $x = -\sqrt{5}$.

65 Evaluate 3^{-2x} if x is a number such that $3^x = 4$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned} 3^{-2x} &= (3^x)^{-2} \\ &= 4^{-2} \\ &= \frac{1}{4^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} \end{aligned}$$

67 Evaluate 8^x if x is a number such that $2^x = 5$.

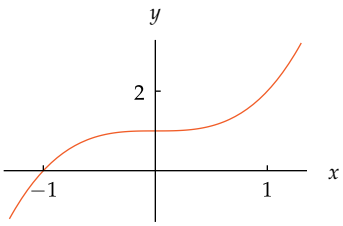
solution

$$\begin{aligned} 8^x &= (2^3)^x \\ &= 2^{3x} \\ &= (2^x)^3 \\ &= 5^3 \\ &= 125 \end{aligned}$$

For Exercises 69–78, sketch the graph of the given function f on the interval $[-1.3, 1.3]$.

69 $f(x) = x^3 + 1$

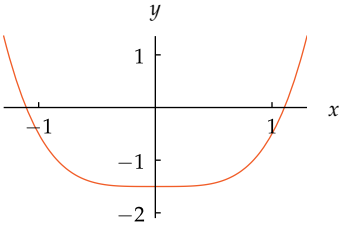
solution Shift the graph of x^3 up 1 unit, getting this graph:



The graph of $x^3 + 1$.

71 $f(x) = x^4 - 1.5$

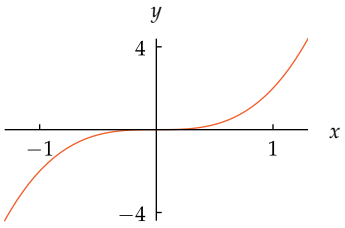
solution Shift the graph of x^4 down 1.5 units, getting this graph:



The graph of $x^4 - 1.5$.

73 $f(x) = 2x^3$

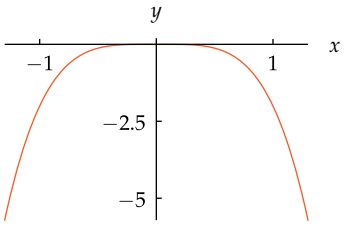
solution Vertically stretch the graph of x^3 by a factor of 2, getting this graph:



The graph of $2x^3$.

75 $f(x) = -2x^4$

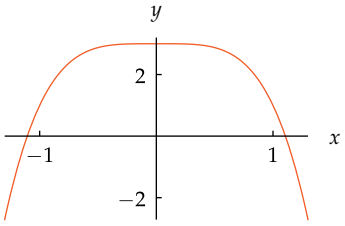
solution Vertically stretch the graph of x^4 by a factor of 2 and then flip across the x-axis, getting this graph:



The graph of $-2x^4$.

77 $f(x) = -2x^4 + 3$

solution Vertically stretch the graph of x^4 by a factor of 2, then flip across the x-axis, and then shift up 3 units, getting this graph:



The graph of $-2x^4 + 3$.

For Exercises 79–88, evaluate the indicated quantities. Do not use a calculator—pushing buttons for these exercises will not help you understand rational powers.

79 $25^{3/2}$

solution $25^{3/2} = (25^{1/2})^3 = 5^3 = 125$

81 $32^{3/5}$

solution $32^{3/5} = (32^{1/5})^3 = 2^3 = 8$

83 $32^{-4/5}$

solution $32^{-4/5} = (32^{1/5})^{-4} = 2^{-4} = \frac{1}{2^4} = \frac{1}{16}$

85 $(-8)^{7/3}$

solution
$$\begin{aligned}(-8)^{7/3} &= \left((-8)^{1/3}\right)^7 \\ &= (-2)^7 \\ &= -128\end{aligned}$$

87 $(3^{1/5})^{10}$

solution $(3^{1/5})^{10} = 3^{10/5} = 3^2 = 9$

For Exercises 89–100, find a formula for the inverse function f^{-1} of the indicated function f.

89 $f(x) = x^9$

solution By the definition of roots, the inverse of f is the function f^{-1} defined by

$$f^{-1}(y) = y^{1/9}.$$

91 $f(x) = x^{1/7}$

solution By the definition of roots, $f = g^{-1}$, where g is the function defined by $g(y) = y^7$. Thus $f^{-1} = (g^{-1})^{-1} = g$. In other words,

$$f^{-1}(y) = y^7.$$

93 $f(x) = x^{-2/5}$

solution To find a formula for f^{-1}, we solve the equation $x^{-2/5} = y$ for x. Raising both sides of this equation to the power $-\frac{5}{2}$, we get $x = y^{-5/2}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = y^{-5/2}.$$

95 $f(x) = \frac{x^4}{81}$

solution To find a formula for f^{-1}, we solve the equation $\frac{x^4}{81} = y$ for x. Multiplying both sides by 81 and then raising both sides of this equation to the power $\frac{1}{4}$, we get $x = (81y)^{1/4} = 81^{1/4}y^{1/4} = 3y^{1/4}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = 3y^{1/4}.$$

97 $f(x) = 6 + x^3$

solution To find a formula for f^{-1}, we solve the equation $6 + x^3 = y$ for x. Subtracting 6 from both sides and then raising both sides of this equation to the power $\frac{1}{3}$, we get $x = (y-6)^{1/3}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = (y-6)^{1/3}.$$

99 $f(x) = 4x^{3/7} - 1$

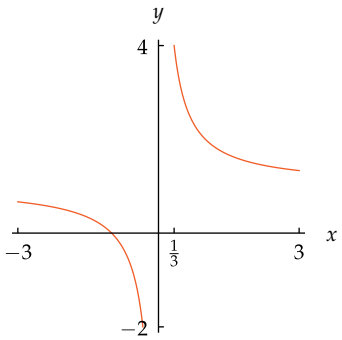
solution To find a formula for f^{-1}, we solve the equation $4x^{3/7} - 1 = y$ for x. Adding 1 to both sides, then dividing both sides by 4, and then raising both sides of this equation to the power $\frac{7}{3}$, we get $x = \left(\frac{y+1}{4}\right)^{7/3}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \left(\frac{y+1}{4}\right)^{7/3}.$$

For Exercises 101–110, sketch the graph of the given function f on the domain $[-3,-\frac{1}{3}]\cup[\frac{1}{3},3]$.

101 $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x}+1$

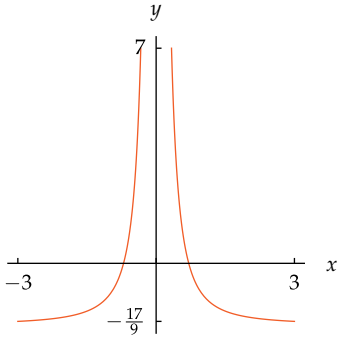
solution Shift the graph of $\frac{1}{x}$ up 1 unit, getting this graph:



The graph of $\frac{1}{x}+1$.

103 $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2}-2$

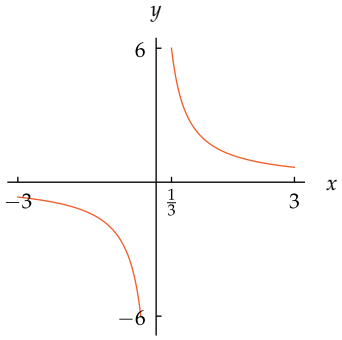
solution Shift the graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ down 2 units, getting this graph:



The graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}-2$.

105 $f(x)=\dfrac{2}{x}$

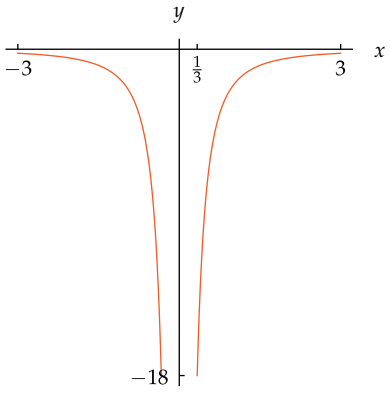
solution Vertically stretch the graph of $\frac{1}{x}$ by a factor of 2, getting this graph:



The graph of $\frac{2}{x}$.

107 $f(x)=-\dfrac{2}{x^2}$

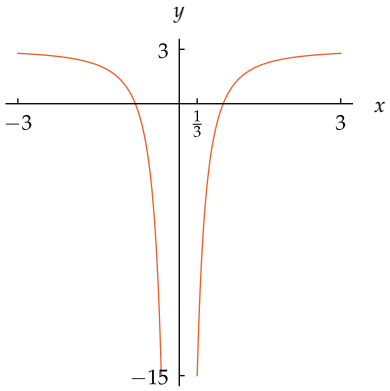
solution Vertically stretch the graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ by a factor of 2 and then flip across the x-axis, getting this graph:



The graph of $-\frac{2}{x^2}$.

109 $f(x)=-\dfrac{2}{x^2}+3$

solution Vertically stretch the graph of $\frac{1}{x^2}$ by a factor of 2, then flip across the x-axis, and then shift up 3 units, getting this graph:



The graph of $-\frac{2}{x^2}+3$.

111 Find an integer m such that

$$\left((3+2\sqrt{5})^2-m\right)^2$$

is an integer.

solution First we evaluate $(3+2\sqrt{5})^2$:

$$\begin{aligned}(3+2\sqrt{5})^2 &= 3^2+2\cdot 3\cdot 2\cdot\sqrt{5}+2^2\cdot\sqrt{5}^2\\ &= 9+12\sqrt{5}+4\cdot 5\\ &= 29+12\sqrt{5}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\left((3+2\sqrt{5})^2-m\right)^2=(29+12\sqrt{5}-m)^2.$$

If we choose $m=29$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned}\left((3+2\sqrt{5})^2-m\right)^2 &= (12\sqrt{5})^2\\ &= 12^2\cdot\sqrt{5}^2\\ &= 12^2\cdot 5,\end{aligned}$$

which is an integer. Any integer other than $m=29$ will leave a term involving $\sqrt{5}$ when $(29+12\sqrt{5}-m)^2$ is expanded. Thus $m=29$ is the only solution to this exercise.

2.4 Polynomials

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- recognize the degree of a polynomial;
- manipulate polynomials algebraically;
- explain the connection between factorization and the zeros of a polynomial;
- determine the behavior of $p(x)$ when p is a polynomial and $|x|$ is large.

We have previously looked at linear functions and quadratic functions, which are among the simplest polynomials. In this section we will deal with more general polynomials. We begin with the definition of a polynomial.

Polynomial

A **polynomial** is a function p such that

$$p(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \cdots + a_nx^n,$$

where n is a nonnegative integer and $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are numbers.

The expression defining a polynomial makes sense for every real number. Thus assume that the domain of a polynomial is the set of real numbers unless another domain has been specified.

An example of a polynomial is the function p defined by

$$p(x) = 3 - 7x^5 + 2x^6.$$

Here, using the definition's notation, $a_0 = 3, a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = a_4 = 0, a_5 = -7, a_6 = 2$.

The Degree of a Polynomial

The highest exponent in the expression defining a polynomial plays a key role in determining the behavior of the polynomial. Thus the following definition is useful.

Degree of a polynomial

Suppose p is a polynomial defined by

$$p(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \cdots + a_nx^n.$$

If $a_n \neq 0$, then we say that p has **degree** n. The degree of p is denoted by $\deg p$.

The numbers

$$a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$$

are called the **coefficients** *of the polynomial p.*

Example 1

(a) Give an example of a polynomial of degree 0. Describe its graph.

(b) Give an example of a polynomial of degree 1. Describe its graph.

(c) Give an example of a polynomial of degree 2. Describe its graph.

(d) Give an example of a polynomial of degree 4. Use technology to graph it.

solution

Polynomials of degree 0 are constant functions.

(a) The function p defined by

$$p(x) = 4$$

is a polynomial of degree 0. Its graph is a horizontal line.

(b) The function p defined by

$$p(x) = 2 + \tfrac{1}{2}x$$

is a polynomial of degree 1. Its graph is a nonhorizontal line.

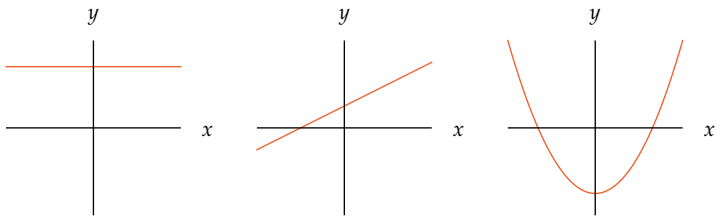
Polynomials of degree 1 *are linear functions.*

(c) The function p defined by

$$p(x) = -3 + 5x^2$$

is a polynomial of degree 2. Its graph is a parabola.

Polynomials of degree 2 *are quadratic functions.*

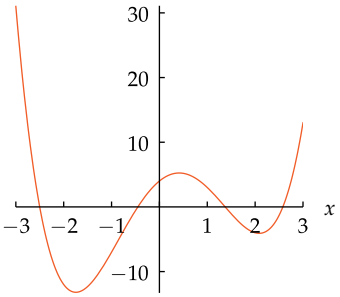


The graph of a polynomial of degree 0 (*left*), *a polynomial of degree* 1 (*center*), *and a polynomial of degree* 2 (*right*).

(d) The function p defined by

$$p(x) = 4 + 6x - 7x^2 - x^3 + x^4$$

is a polynomial of degree 4. To obtain a graph similar to the one shown here, enter graph 4 + 6x – 7x^2 – x^3 + x^4 in a *WolframAlpha* entry box, or use your favorite technology.



The graph of $4 + 6x - 7x^2 - x^3 + x^4$ *on the interval* $[-3, 3]$.

The Algebra of Polynomials

We saw in Section 1.4 that two functions can be added, subtracted, or multiplied, producing another function. Specifically, if p and q are functions, then the functions $p + q$, $p - q$, and pq are defined by

$$(p+q)(x) = p(x) + q(x);$$
$$(p-q)(x) = p(x) - q(x);$$
$$(pq)(x) = p(x)q(x).$$

When the two functions being added or subtracted or multiplied are both polynomials, then the result is also a polynomial, as illustrated by the next two examples.

Example 2

Suppose p and q are polynomials defined by

$$p(x) = 2 - 7x^2 + 5x^3 \quad \text{and} \quad q(x) = 1 + 9x + x^2 + 5x^3.$$

(a) What is $\deg p$?

(b) What is $\deg q$?

(c) Find a formula for $p + q$.

(d) What is $\deg(p + q)$?

(e) Find a formula for $p - q$.

(f) What is $\deg(p - q)$?

solution

(a) The term with highest exponent in the expression defining p is $5x^3$. Thus $\deg p = 3$.

(b) The term with highest exponent in the expression defining q is $5x^3$. Thus $\deg q = 3$.

(c) Adding together the expressions defining p and q, we have

$$(p+q)(x) = 3 + 9x - 6x^2 + 10x^3.$$

(d) The term with highest exponent in the expression above for $p+q$ is $10x^3$. Thus $\deg(p+q) = 3$.

(e) Subtracting the expression defining q from the expression defining p, we have

$$(p-q)(x) = 1 - 9x - 8x^2.$$

(f) The term with highest exponent in the expression above for $p-q$ is $-8x^2$. Thus $\deg(p-q) = 2$.

More generally, we have the following result.

The constant polynomial p defined by $p(x) = 0$ for every number x has no nonzero coefficients. Thus the degree of this polynomial is undefined. Sometimes it is convenient to write $\deg 0 = -\infty$ to avoid trivial exceptions to various results.

Degree of the sum and difference of two polynomials

If p and q are nonzero polynomials, then

$$\deg(p+q) \le \text{maximum}\{\deg p, \deg q\}$$

and

$$\deg(p-q) \le \text{maximum}\{\deg p, \deg q\}.$$

This result holds because neither $p+q$ nor $p-q$ can contain an exponent larger than the largest exponent in p or q.

Due to cancellation, the degree of $p+q$ or the degree of $p-q$ can be less than the maximum of the degree of p and the degree of q, as shown in part (f) of the example above.

Example 3

Suppose p and q are polynomials defined by

$$p(x) = 2 - 3x^2 \quad \text{and} \quad q(x) = 4x + 7x^5.$$

(a) What is $\deg p$?

(b) What is $\deg q$?

(c) Find a formula for pq.

(d) What is $\deg(pq)$?

"I at once gave up my former occupations, set down natural history and all its progeny as a deformed and abortive creation, and entertained the greatest disdain for a would-be science which could never even step within the threshold of real knowledge. In this mood I betook myself to the mathematics and the branches of study appertaining to that science as being built upon secure foundations, and so worthy of my consideration."

–Frankenstein, *written by* Mary Shelley

solution

(a) The term with highest exponent in the expression defining p is $-3x^2$. Thus $\deg p = 2$.

(b) The term with highest exponent in the expression defining q is $7x^5$. Thus $\deg q = 5$.

(c)
$$(pq)(x) = (2 - 3x^2)(4x + 7x^5)$$
$$= 8x - 12x^3 + 14x^5 - 21x^7$$

(d) The term with highest exponent in the expression above for pq is $-21x^7$. Thus $\deg(pq) = 7$.

More generally, we have the following result.

Degree of the product of two polynomials

If p and q are nonzero polynomials, then

$$\deg(pq) = \deg p + \deg q.$$

This equality holds because when the highest-exponent term in p is multiplied by the highest-exponent term in q, the exponents are added.

Zeros and Factorization of Polynomials

Zeros of a function

A number t is called a **zero** of a function p if $p(t) = 0$.

The zeros of a function are also sometimes called the **roots** *of the function.*

For example, if $p(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6$, then 2 and 3 are zeros of p because

$$p(2) = 2^2 - 5 \cdot 2 + 6 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad p(3) = 3^2 - 5 \cdot 3 + 6 = 0.$$

The quadratic formula (see Section 2.2) can be used to find the zeros of a polynomial of degree 2. There is a cubic formula to find the zeros of a polynomial of degree 3 and a quartic formula to find the zeros of a polynomial of degree 4. However, these complicated formulas have little practical value—most mathematicians do not know these formulas.

Remarkably, mathematicians have proved that no formula exists for the zeros of polynomials of degree 5 or higher. But computers and calculators can use clever numerical methods to find good approximations to the zeros of any polynomial, even when exact zeros cannot be found. For example, no one will ever be able to give an exact formula for a zero of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = x^5 - 5x^4 - 6x^3 + 17x^2 + 4x - 7.$$

However, a computer or symbolic calculator that can find approximate zeros of polynomials will produce the following five approximate zeros of p:

$$-1.87278 \quad -0.737226 \quad 0.624418 \quad 1.47289 \quad 5.51270$$

(for example, enter

`solve x^5 – 5 x^4 – 6 x^3 + 17 x^2 + 4 x – 7 = 0`

in a *WolframAlpha* entry box, or use your favorite technology, to find the zeros of this polynomial).

The cubic formula, which was discovered in the 16th century, is presented below for your amusement only. Do not memorize it.

Suppose

$$p(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d,$$

where $a \neq 0$. *Set*

$$u = \frac{bc}{6a^2} - \frac{b^3}{27a^3} - \frac{d}{2a}$$

and then set

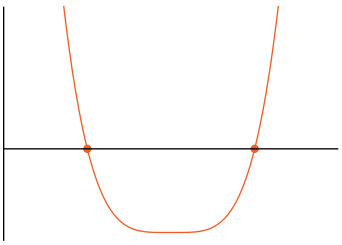
$$v = u^2 + \left(\frac{c}{3a} - \frac{b^2}{9a^2}\right)^3.$$

Suppose $v \geq 0$. *Then*

$$-\frac{b}{3a} + \sqrt[3]{u + \sqrt{v}} + \sqrt[3]{u - \sqrt{v}}$$

is a zero of p.

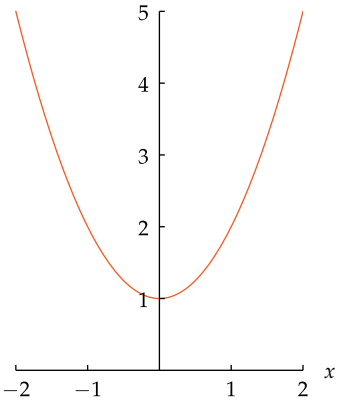
The zeros of a function have a nice graphical interpretation. Specifically, suppose p is a function and t is a zero of p. Then $p(t) = 0$ and thus $(t, 0)$ is on the graph of p; note that $(t, 0)$ is also on the horizontal axis. We conclude that each zero of p corresponds to a point where the graph of p intersects the horizontal axis.



The function whose graph is shown here has two zeros, corresponding to the two points where the graph intersects the horizontal axis.

Example 4

Explain why the polynomial p defined by $p(x) = x^2 + 1$ has no (real) zeros.



The graph of $x^2 + 1$ does not intersect the x-axis.

solution In this case, the equation $p(x) = 0$ leads to the equation $x^2 = -1$, which has no real solutions because the square of a real number cannot be negative. Thus this polynomial p has no (real) zeros.

The graph also shows that p has no (real) zeros, because the graph does not intersect the horizontal axis.

Complex numbers were invented to provide solutions to the equation $x^2 = -1$. This book deals mostly with real numbers, but Section 7.3 will introduce complex numbers and complex zeros.

We now turn to the intimate connection between finding the zeros of a polynomial and finding factors of the polynomial of the form $x - t$.

Factor

Suppose p is a polynomial and t is a real number. Then $x - t$ is called a **factor** of $p(x)$ if there exists a polynomial G such that

$$p(x) = (x - t)G(x)$$

for every real number x.

Example 5

Suppose p is the polynomial of degree 4 defined by

$$p(x) = (x - 2)(x - 5)(x^2 + 1).$$

(a) Explain why $x - 2$ is a factor of $p(x)$.

(b) Explain why $x - 5$ is a factor of $p(x)$.

(c) Show that 2 and 5 are zeros of p.

(d) Show that p has no (real) zeros except 2 and 5.

solution

Italian mathematician Niccolò Tartaglia (1499–1557), who discovered the cubic formula.

(a) Because

$$p(x) = (x - 2)\big((x - 5)(x^2 + 1)\big)$$

and $(x - 5)(x^2 + 1)$ is a polynomial, we see that $x - 2$ is a factor of $p(x)$.

(b) Because

$$p(x) = (x - 5)\big((x - 2)(x^2 + 1)\big)$$

and $(x - 2)(x^2 + 1)$ is a polynomial, we see that $x - 5$ is a factor of $p(x)$.

(c) If 2 is substituted for x in the expression $p(x) = (x - 2)\big((x - 5)(x^2 + 1)\big)$, then without doing any computation we see that $p(2) = 0$. Thus 2 is a zero of p.

Similarly, setting x to equal 5 in the expression $p(x) = (x - 5)\big((x - 2)(x^2 + 1)\big)$ shows that $p(5) = 0$. Thus 5 is a zero of p.

(d) Suppose x is a real number other than 2 or 5. Then none of the numbers $x - 2$, $x - 5$, and $x^2 + 1$ equals 0. Hence $p(x)$ (which is the product of $x - 2$, $x - 5$, and $x^2 + 1$) does not equal 0. Hence p has no (real) zeros except 2 and 5.

The example above provides a good illustration of the following result.

Zeros and factors of a polynomial

Suppose p is a polynomial and t is a real number. Then t is a zero of p if and only if $x - t$ is a factor of $p(x)$.

This result shows that the problem of finding the zeros of a polynomial is really the same as the problem of finding factors of the polynomial of the form $x - t$.

To see why the "if" part of the result above holds, suppose p is a polynomial and t is a real number such that $x - t$ is a factor of $p(x)$. Then there is a polynomial G such that $p(x) = (x - t)G(x)$. Now $p(t) = (t - t)G(t) = 0$. Hence we conclude that t is a zero of p.

Section 2.5 will provide an explanation of why the "only if" part of the result above holds.

The result above implies that to find the zeros of a polynomial, we need only factor the polynomial. However, there is no easy way to factor a typical polynomial other than by finding its zeros.

Without using a computer or calculator, you should be able to quickly factor expressions such as

$$x^2 + 2x + 1,$$

which equals $(x + 1)^2$, and

$$x^2 - 9,$$

which equals $(x + 3)(x - 3)$. However, for most quadratic and higher-degree polynomials (not counting the artificial examples often found in textbooks) it will usually be easier to use the quadratic formula or a computer or calculator to find zeros than to try to recognize factors of the form $x - t$.

A polynomial of degree 1 has exactly one zero because the equation $ax + b = 0$ has exactly one solution $x = -\frac{b}{a}$. We know from the quadratic formula that a polynomial of degree 2 has at most two zeros. More generally, we have the following result.

Number of zeros of a polynomial

A nonzero polynomial has at most as many zeros as its degree.

Thus, for example, a polynomial of degree 15 has at most 15 zeros. This result holds because each (real) zero of a polynomial p corresponds to at least one term $x - t_j$ in a factorization of the form

$$p(x) = (x - t_1)(x - t_2) \dots (x - t_m)G(x),$$

where G is a polynomial with no (real) zeros. If the polynomial p had more zeros than its degree, then the right side of the equation above would have a higher degree than the left side, which would be a contradiction.

The Behavior of a Polynomial Near $\pm\infty$

We now turn to an investigation of the behavior of a polynomial near ∞ and near $-\infty$. To say that x is near ∞ is just an informal way of saying that x is very large. Similarly, to say that x is near $-\infty$ is just an informal way of saying that x is negative and $|x|$ is very large. The phrase "very large" has no precise meaning; even its informal meaning can depend on the context. Our focus will be on determining whether a polynomial takes on positive or negative values near ∞ and near $-\infty$.

Important: Always remember that neither ∞ nor $-\infty$ is a real number.

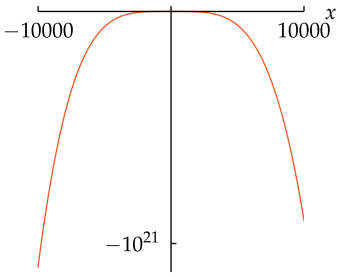
Example 6

Let p be the polynomial defined by

$$p(x) = x^5 - 99999x^4 - 9999x^3 - 999x^2 - 99x - 9.$$

Is $p(x)$ positive or is $p(x)$ negative for x near ∞? In other words, if x is very large, is $p(x) > 0$ or is $p(x) < 0$?

solution If x is positive, then the x^5 term in $p(x)$ is also positive but the other terms in $p(x)$ are all negative. If $x > 1$, then x^5 is larger than x^4, but perhaps the $-99999x^4$ term along with the other terms will still make $p(x)$ negative. To get a feeling for the behavior of p, we can collect some evidence by evaluating $p(x)$ for some values of x, as in the table below:



The graph of p on the interval $[-10000, 10000]$.

x	$p(x)$
1	−111104
10	−1009989899
100	−9999908999909
1000	−99008999999099009
10000	−899999999099900990009

The evidence in this table indicates that $p(x)$ is negative for positive values of x.

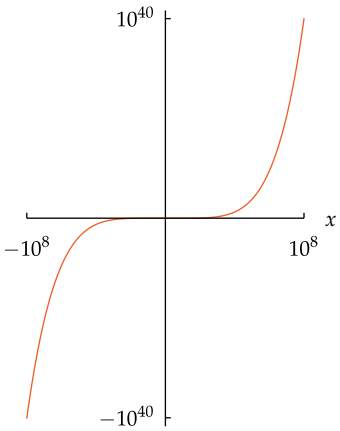
From the table above, it appears that $p(x)$ is negative when x is positive, and more decisively negative for larger values of x, as shown in the graph here.

However, a bit of thought shows that this first impression is wrong. To see this, factor out x^5, the highest-degree term in the expression defining p, getting

$$p(x) = x^5\left(1 - \frac{99999}{x} - \frac{9999}{x^2} - \frac{999}{x^3} - \frac{99}{x^4} - \frac{9}{x^5}\right)$$

for all $x \neq 0$. If x is a very large number, say $x > 10^7$, then the five negative terms in the expression above are all small. Thus if $x > 10^7$, then the expression in parentheses above is approximately 1. This means that $p(x)$ behaves like x^5 for very large values of x. In particular, this analysis implies that $p(x)$ is positive for very large values of x, which is not what we expected from the table above and graph above.

Extending the table above to larger values of x, we find that $p(x)$ is positive for large values of x, as expected from the previous paragraph:



The graph of p on the interval $[-100000000, 100000000]$. At this scale, the difference between the graph of p and the graph of x^5 is too tiny to see.

x	$p(x)$
1	−111104
10	−1009989899
100	−9999908999909
1000	−99008999999099009
10000	−899999999099900990009
100000	900009900099990099991
1000000	900000990000999000999900999991
10000000	990000099900009999000099999009999991
100000000	999000009999000099999000999999099999991

Graphing p over an interval 10,000 times as large as the interval used in the previous graph shows that $p(x)$ is indeed positive for large values of x.

The procedure used in the example above works with any polynomial, as stated in the next result.

Behavior of a polynomial near $\pm\infty$

- To determine the behavior of a polynomial near ∞ or near $-\infty$, factor out the term with highest degree.
- If cx^n is the term with highest degree of a polynomial p, then $p(x)$ behaves like cx^n when $|x|$ is very large.

The next example shows how to discover that an interval contains a zero.

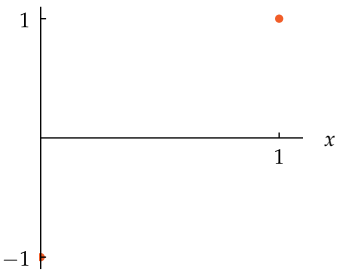
Example 7

Let p be the polynomial defined by

$$p(x) = x^5 + x^2 - 1.$$

Explain why p has a zero in the interval $(0, 1)$.

solution Because $p(0) = -1$ and $p(1) = 1$, the points $(0, -1)$ and $(1, 1)$ are on the graph of p (see figure). The graph of p is a curve connecting these two points. As is intuitively clear (and can be rigorously proved using advanced mathematics), this curve must cross the horizontal axis at some point where the first coordinate is between 0 and 1. Thus p has a zero in the interval $(0, 1)$.



Two points on the graph of $x^5 + x^2 - 1$.

The reasoning used in the example above leads to the following result.

Zero in an interval

Suppose p is a polynomial and a, b are real numbers with $a < b$. Suppose one of the numbers $p(a)$, $p(b)$ is negative and the other is positive. Then p has a zero in the interval (a, b).

This result is a special case of what is called the Intermediate Value Theorem.

The result above holds not just for polynomials but also for what are called **continuous** functions on an interval. A function whose graph consists of just one connected curve is continuous.

Suppose p is a polynomial with odd degree n. For simplicity, let's assume x^n is the term of p with highest degree (if we care only about the zeros of p, we can always satisfy this condition by dividing p by the coefficient of x^n). We know that $p(x)$ behaves like x^n when $|x|$ is very large. Because n is an odd positive integer, this implies that $p(x)$ is negative for x near $-\infty$ and positive for x near ∞. Thus there is a negative number a such that $p(a)$ is negative and a positive number b such that $p(b)$ is positive. The result above now allows us to conclude that p has a zero in the interval (a, b).

Our examination of the behavior near ∞ and near $-\infty$ of a polynomial with odd degree has led us to the following result.

Zeros for polynomials with odd degree

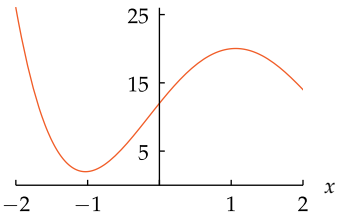
Every polynomial with odd degree has at least one (real) zero.

If we use complex numbers, then every nonconstant polynomial has a zero; see Section 7.3.

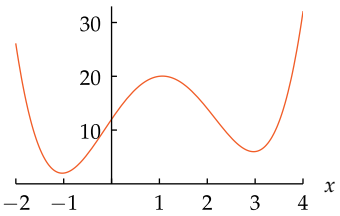
Graphs of Polynomials

Computers can draw graphs of polynomials better than humans. However, some human thought is usually needed to select an appropriate interval on which to graph a polynomial.

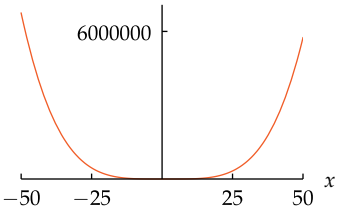
Example 8



The graph of p on $[-2,2]$.



The graph of p on $[-2,4]$.



The graph of p on $[-50,50]$.

Let p be the polynomial defined by

$$p(x) = x^4 - 4x^3 - 2x^2 + 13x + 12.$$

Find an interval that does a good job of illustrating the key features (peaks, valleys, and behavior near $\pm\infty$) of the graph of p.

solution If we ask a computer to graph this polynomial on the interval $[-2,2]$, we obtain the the first graph shown here. Because $p(x)$ behaves like x^4 for very large values of x, this first graph does not depict enough features of p.

Often a bit of experimentation is needed to find an appropriate interval to illustrate the key features of the graph. For this polynomial p, the interval $[-2,4]$ works well, as shown in the second graph here.

The second graph here shows the graph of p beginning to look like the graph of x^4 when $|x|$ is large. Thus the interval $[-2,4]$ provides a more complete representation of the behavior of p than does $[-2,2]$, which was the first interval we used.

We also now see that the graph of p above contains three points that might be thought of as either the top of a peak (at $x \approx 1$) or the bottom of a valley (at $x \approx -1$ and $x \approx 3$).

To search for additional behavior of p, we might try graphing p on a much larger interval, as shown in the third graph here.

The third graph shows no peaks or valleys, even though we know that it contains at least three peaks and valleys. The scale needed to display the graph on the interval $[-50,50]$ made the peaks and valleys so small that we cannot see them. Thus using this large interval hid some key features that were visible when we used the interval $[-2,4]$.

Conclusion: A good choice for graphing this function is the interval $[-2,4]$.

Exercises

Suppose $p(x) = x^2 + 5x + 2,$

$q(x) = 2x^3 - 3x + 1, \quad s(x) = 4x^3 - 2.$

In Exercises 1–18, write the indicated expression as a polynomial.

1 $(p+q)(x)$

2 $(p-q)(x)$

3 $(3p-2q)(x)$

4 $(4p+5q)(x)$

5 $(pq)(x)$

6 $(ps)(x)$

7 $\big(p(x)\big)^2$

8 $\big(q(x)\big)^2$

9 $\big(p(x)\big)^2 s(x)$

10 $\big(q(x)\big)^2 s(x)$

11 $(p \circ q)(x)$

12 $(q \circ p)(x)$

13 $(p \circ s)(x)$

14 $(s \circ p)(x)$

15 $(q \circ (p+s))(x)$

16 $((q+p) \circ s)(x)$

17 $\dfrac{q(2+x) - q(2)}{x}$

18 $\dfrac{s(1+x) - s(1)}{x}$

19 Factor $x^8 - y^8$ as nicely as possible.

20 Factor $x^{16} - y^8$ as nicely as possible.

21 Find all real numbers x such that $x^6 - 8x^3 + 15 = 0$.

22 Find all real numbers x such that $x^6 - 3x^3 - 10 = 0$.

23 Find all real numbers x such that $x^4 - 2x^2 - 15 = 0$.

24 Find all real numbers x such that $x^4 + 5x^2 - 14 = 0$.

25 Find all real numbers x such that

$$x^{2/3} - 3x^{1/3} + 2 = 0.$$

26 Find all real numbers x such that

$$x^{2/5} - 5x^{1/5} + 6 = 0.$$

27 Find a number b such that 3 is a zero of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = 1 - 4x + bx^2 + 2x^3.$$

28 Find a number c such that -2 is a zero of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = 5 - 3x + 4x^2 + cx^3.$$

29 Find a polynomial p of degree 3 such that -1, 2, and 3 are zeros of p and $p(0) = 1$.

30 Find a polynomial p of degree 3 such that -2, -1, and 4 are zeros of p and $p(1) = 2$.

31 Find all choices of b, c, and d such that 1 and 4 are the only zeros of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = x^3 + bx^2 + cx + d.$$

32 Find all choices of b, c, and d such that -3 and 2 are the only zeros of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = x^3 + bx^2 + cx + d.$$

Problems

33 Give an example of two polynomials of degree 4 whose sum has degree 3.

34 Find a polynomial p of degree 2 with integer coefficients such that 2.1 and 4.1 are zeros of p.

35 Find a polynomial p with integer coefficients such that $2^{3/5}$ is a zero of p.

36 Show that if p and q are nonzero polynomials with $\deg p < \deg q$, then $\deg(p+q) = \deg q$.

37 Give an example of polynomials p and q such that $\deg(pq) = 8$ and $\deg(p+q) = 5$.

38 Give an example of polynomials p and q such that $\deg(pq) = 8$ and $\deg(p+q) = 2$.

39 Suppose $q(x) = 2x^3 - 3x + 1$.

(a) Show that the point $(2, 11)$ is on the graph of q.

(b) Show that the slope of a line containing $(2, 11)$ and a point on the graph of q very close to $(2, 11)$ is approximately 21.

[*Hint:* Use the result of Exercise 17.]

40 Suppose $s(x) = 4x^3 - 2$.

(a) Show that the point $(1, 2)$ is on the graph of s.

(b) Give an estimate for the slope of a line containing $(1, 2)$ and a point on the graph of s very close to $(1, 2)$.

[*Hint:* Use the result of Exercise 18.]

41 Give an example of polynomials p and q of degree 3 such that $p(1) = q(1)$, $p(2) = q(2)$, and $p(3) = q(3)$, but $p(4) \neq q(4)$.

42 Suppose p and q are polynomials of degree 3 such that $p(1) = q(1)$, $p(2) = q(2)$, $p(3) = q(3)$, and $p(4) = q(4)$. Explain why $p = q$.

43 Explain why the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = x^6 + 7x^5 - 2x - 3$$

has a zero in the interval $(0, 1)$.

For Problems 44–45, let p be the polynomial defined by

$$\boldsymbol{p(x) = x^6 - 87x^4 - 92x + 2.}$$

44 (a) Use a computer or calculator to sketch a graph of p on the interval $[-5, 5]$.

(b) Is $p(x)$ positive or negative for x near ∞?

(c) Is $p(x)$ positive or negative for x near $-\infty$?

(d) Explain why the graph from part (a) does not accurately show the behavior of $p(x)$ for large values of x.

45 (a) Evaluate $p(-2)$, $p(-1)$, $p(0)$, and $p(1)$.

(b) Explain why the results from part (a) imply that p has a zero in the interval $(-2, -1)$ and p has a zero in the interval $(0, 1)$.

(c) Show that p has at least four zeros in the interval $[-10, 10]$.
[*Hint:* We already know from part (b) that p has at least two zeros is the interval $[-10, 10]$. You can show the existence of other zeros by finding integers n such that one of the numbers $p(n)$, $p(n+1)$ is positive and the other is negative.]

46 A new snack shop on campus finds that the number of students following it on *Twitter* at the end of each of its first five weeks in business is 23, 89, 223, 419, and 647. A clever employee discovers that the number of students following the new snack shop on *Twitter* after w weeks is $p(w)$, where p is defined by

$$p(w) = 7 + 3w + 5w^2 + 9w^3 - w^4.$$

Indeed, with p defined as above, we have $p(1) = 23$, $p(2) = 89$, $p(3) = 223$, $p(4) = 419$, and $p(5) = 647$. Explain why the polynomial p defined above cannot give accurate predictions for the number of followers on *Twitter* for weeks far into the future.

47 A textbook states that the rabbit population on a small island is observed to be

$$1000 + 120t - 0.4t^4,$$

where t is the time in months since observations of the island began. Explain why the formula above cannot correctly give the number of rabbits on the island for large values of t.

48 Verify that $(x+y)^3 = x^3 + 3x^2y + 3xy^2 + y^3$.

49 Verify that $x^3 - y^3 = (x-y)(x^2 + xy + y^2)$.

50 Verify that $x^3 + y^3 = (x+y)(x^2 - xy + y^2)$.

51 Verify that $x^4 + 1 = (x^2 + \sqrt{2}x + 1)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}x + 1)$.

52 Write the polynomial $x^4 + 16$ as the product of two polynomials of degree 2.
[*Hint:* Use the result from the previous problem with x replaced by $\frac{x}{2}$.]

53 Show that

$$(a+b)^3 = a^3 + b^3$$

if and only if $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ or $a = -b$.

54 Suppose d is a real number. Show that

$$(d+1)^4 = d^4 + 1$$

if and only if $d = 0$.

55 Without doing any calculations or using a calculator, explain why

$$x^2 + 87559743x - 787727821$$

has no integer zeros.
[*Hint:* If x is an odd integer, is the expression above even or odd? If x is an even integer, is the expression above even or odd?]

56 Suppose M and N are odd integers. Explain why

$$x^2 + Mx + N$$

has no integer zeros.

57 Suppose M and N are odd integers. Explain why

$$x^2 + Mx + N$$

has no rational zeros.

58 Suppose $p(x) = 3x^7 - 5x^3 + 7x - 2$.

(a) Show that if m is a zero of p, then

$$\frac{2}{m} = 3m^6 - 5m^2 + 7.$$

(b) Show that the only possible integer zeros of p are -2, -1, 1, and 2.

(c) Show that no integer is a zero of p.

59 Suppose a, b, and c are integers and that

$$p(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + 9.$$

Explain why every zero of p that is an integer is contained in the set $\{-9, -3, -1, 1, 3, 9\}$.

60 Suppose $p(x) = 2x^5 + 5x^4 + 2x^3 - 1$. Show that -1 is the only integer zero of p.

61 Suppose $p(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_nx^n$, where $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are integers. Suppose m is a nonzero integer that is a zero of p. Show that $\frac{a_0}{m}$ is an integer.
[*This result shows that to find integer zeros of a polynomial with integer coefficients, we need only look at divisors of its constant term.*]

62 Suppose $p(x) = 2x^6 + 3x^5 + 5$.

(a) Show that if $\frac{M}{N}$ is a zero of p, then

$$2M^6 + 3M^5N + 5N^6 = 0.$$

(b) Show that if M and N are integers with no common factors and $\frac{M}{N}$ is a zero of p, then $\frac{5}{M}$ and $\frac{2}{N}$ are integers.

(c) Show that the only possible rational zeros of p are -5, -1, $-\frac{1}{2}$, and $-\frac{5}{2}$.

(d) Show that no rational number is a zero of p.

63 Suppose $p(x) = 2x^4 + 9x^3 + 1$.

(a) Show that if $\frac{M}{N}$ is a zero of p, then

$$2M^4 + 9M^3N + N^4 = 0.$$

(b) Show that if M and N are integers with no common factors and $\frac{M}{N}$ is a zero of p, then $M = -1$ or $M = 1$.

(c) Show that if M and N are integers with no common factors and $\frac{M}{N}$ is a zero of p, then $N = -2$ or $N = 2$ or $N = -1$ or $N = 1$.

(d) Show that $-\frac{1}{2}$ is the only rational zero of p.

64 Suppose $p(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_nx^n$, where $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are integers. Suppose M and N are nonzero integers with no common factors and $\frac{M}{N}$ is a zero of p. Show that $\frac{a_0}{M}$ and $\frac{a_n}{N}$ are integers.
[*Thus to find rational zeros of a polynomial with integer coefficients, we need only look at fractions whose numerator is a divisor of the constant term and whose denominator is a divisor of the coefficient of highest degree. This result is called the* **Rational Zeros Theorem** *or the* **Rational Roots Theorem**.]

65 Apply the Rational Zeros Theorem to the equation $7 - x^3 = 0$ to show that there is no rational number whose cube equals 7.

66 Explain why the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = x^6 + 100x^2 + 5$$

has no real zeros.

67 Give an example of a polynomial of degree 5 that has exactly two zeros.

68 Give an example of a polynomial of degree 8 that has exactly three zeros.

69 Give an example of a polynomial p of degree 4 such that $p(7) = 0$ and $p(x) \geq 0$ for all real numbers x.

70 Give an example of a polynomial p of degree 6 such that $p(0) = 5$ and $p(x) \geq 5$ for all real numbers x.

71 Give an example of a polynomial p of degree 8 such that $p(2) = 3$ and $p(x) \geq 3$ for all real numbers x.

72 Explain why there does not exist a polynomial p of degree 7 such that $p(x) \geq -100$ for every real number x.

73 Explain why the composition of two polynomials is a polynomial.

74 Show that if p and q are nonzero polynomials, then

$$\deg(p \circ q) = (\deg p)(\deg q).$$

75 In the first figure in the solution to Example 6, the graph of the polynomial p clearly lies below the x-axis for x in the interval $[5000, 10000]$. Yet in the second figure in the same solution, the graph of p seems to be on or above the x-axis for all values of p in the interval $[0, 1000000]$. Explain.

76 Suppose t is a zero of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = 3x^5 + 7x^4 + 2x + 6.$$

Show that $\frac{1}{t}$ is a zero of the polynomial q defined by

$$q(x) = 3 + 7x + 2x^4 + 6x^5.$$

77 Generalize the problem above.

78 Suppose q is a polynomial of degree 4 such that $q(0) = -1$. Define p by

$$p(x) = x^5 + q(x).$$

Explain why p has a zero on the interval $(0, \infty)$.

79 Suppose q is a polynomial of degree 5 such that $q(1) = -3$. Define p by

$$p(x) = x^6 + q(x).$$

Explain why p has at least two zeros.

80 Suppose

$$p(x) = x^5 + 2x^3 + 1.$$

(a) Find two distinct points on the graph of p.

(b) Explain why p is an increasing function.

(c) Find two distinct points on the graph of p^{-1}.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Suppose $p(x) = x^2 + 5x + 2,$

$$q(x) = 2x^3 - 3x + 1, \quad s(x) = 4x^3 - 2.$$

In Exercises 1–18, write the indicated expression as a polynomial.

1 $(p+q)(x)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(p+q)(x) &= (x^2+5x+2) + (2x^3-3x+1)\\ &= 2x^3 + x^2 + 2x + 3\end{aligned}$$

3 $(3p-2q)(x)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(3p-2q)(x) &= 3(x^2+5x+2) - 2(2x^3-3x+1)\\ &= 3x^2 + 15x + 6 - 4x^3 + 6x - 2\\ &= -4x^3 + 3x^2 + 21x + 4\end{aligned}$$

5 $(pq)(x)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(pq)(x) &= (x^2+5x+2)(2x^3-3x+1)\\ &= x^2(2x^3-3x+1)\\ &\quad + 5x(2x^3-3x+1) + 2(2x^3-3x+1)\\ &= 2x^5 - 3x^3 + x^2\\ &\quad + 10x^4 - 15x^2 + 5x + 4x^3 - 6x + 2\\ &= 2x^5 + 10x^4 + x^3 - 14x^2 - x + 2\end{aligned}$$

7 $\big(p(x)\big)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\big(p(x)\big)^2 &= (x^2+5x+2)(x^2+5x+2)\\ &= x^2(x^2+5x+2) + 5x(x^2+5x+2)\\ &\quad + 2(x^2+5x+2)\\ &= x^4 + 5x^3 + 2x^2 + 5x^3 + 25x^2\\ &\quad + 10x + 2x^2 + 10x + 4\\ &= x^4 + 10x^3 + 29x^2 + 20x + 4\end{aligned}$$

9 $\big(p(x)\big)^2 s(x)$

solution Using the expression that we computed for $\big(p(x)\big)^2$ in the solution to Exercise 7, we have

$$\begin{aligned}&\big(p(x)\big)^2 s(x)\\ &\quad = (x^4 + 10x^3 + 29x^2 + 20x + 4)(4x^3 - 2)\\ &\quad = 4x^3(x^4 + 10x^3 + 29x^2 + 20x + 4)\\ &\qquad - 2(x^4 + 10x^3 + 29x^2 + 20x + 4)\\ &\quad = 4x^7 + 40x^6 + 116x^5 + 80x^4 + 16x^3\\ &\qquad - 2x^4 - 20x^3 - 58x^2 - 40x - 8\\ &\quad = 4x^7 + 40x^6 + 116x^5 + 78x^4\\ &\qquad - 4x^3 - 58x^2 - 40x - 8.\end{aligned}$$

11 $(p \circ q)(x)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(p \circ q)(x) &= p\big(q(x)\big)\\ &= p(2x^3 - 3x + 1)\\ &= (2x^3 - 3x + 1)^2 + 5(2x^3 - 3x + 1) + 2\\ &= (4x^6 - 12x^4 + 4x^3 + 9x^2 - 6x + 1)\\ &\quad + (10x^3 - 15x + 5) + 2\\ &= 4x^6 - 12x^4 + 14x^3 + 9x^2 - 21x + 8\end{aligned}$$

13 $(p \circ s)(x)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(p \circ s)(x) &= p\big(s(x)\big)\\ &= p(4x^3 - 2)\\ &= (4x^3 - 2)^2 + 5(4x^3 - 2) + 2\\ &= (16x^6 - 16x^3 + 4) + (20x^3 - 10) + 2\\ &= 16x^6 + 4x^3 - 4\end{aligned}$$

15 $\big(q \circ (p+s)\big)(x)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\big(q \circ (p+s)\big)(x) &= q\big((p+s)(x)\big)\\ &= q\big(p(x) + s(x)\big)\\ &= q(4x^3 + x^2 + 5x)\\ &= 2(4x^3 + x^2 + 5x)^3 - 3(4x^3 + x^2 + 5x) + 1\\ &= 2(4x^3 + x^2 + 5x)^2(4x^3 + x^2 + 5x)\\ &\quad - 12x^3 - 3x^2 - 15x + 1\\ &= 2(16x^6 + 8x^5 + 41x^4 + 10x^3 + 25x^2)\\ &\quad \times (4x^3 + x^2 + 5x) - 12x^3 - 3x^2 - 15x + 1\\ &= 128x^9 + 96x^8 + 504x^7 + 242x^6 + 630x^5\\ &\quad + 150x^4 + 238x^3 - 3x^2 - 15x + 1\end{aligned}$$

17 $\dfrac{q(2+x)-q(2)}{x}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{q(2+x)-q(2)}{x}\\ &=\frac{2(2+x)^3-3(2+x)+1-(2\cdot 2^3-3\cdot 2+1)}{x}\\ &=\frac{2x^3+12x^2+21x}{x}\\ &=2x^2+12x+21\end{aligned}$$

19 Factor x^8-y^8 as nicely as possible.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}x^8-y^8&=(x^4-y^4)(x^4+y^4)\\ &=(x^2-y^2)(x^2+y^2)(x^4+y^4)\\ &=(x-y)(x+y)(x^2+y^2)(x^4+y^4)\end{aligned}$$

21 Find all real numbers x such that $x^6-8x^3+15=0$.

solution This equation involves x^3 and x^6; thus we make the substitution $x^3=y$. Squaring both sides of the equation $x^3=y$ gives $x^6=y^2$. With these substitutions, the equation above becomes

$$y^2-8y+15=0.$$

This new equation can now be solved either by factoring the left side or by using the quadratic formula. Let's factor the left side, getting

$$(y-3)(y-5)=0.$$

Thus $y=3$ or $y=5$ (the same result could have been obtained by using the quadratic formula).

Substituting x^3 for y now shows that $x^3=3$ or $x^3=5$. Thus $x=3^{1/3}$ or $x=5^{1/3}$.

23 Find all real numbers x such that $x^4-2x^2-15=0$.

solution This equation involves x^2 and x^4; thus we make the substitution $x^2=y$. Squaring both sides of the equation $x^2=y$ gives $x^4=y^2$. With these substitutions, the equation above becomes

$$y^2-2y-15=0.$$

This new equation can now be solved either by factoring the left side or by using the quadratic formula. Let's use the quadratic formula, getting

$$y=\frac{2\pm\sqrt{4+60}}{2}=\frac{2\pm 8}{2}.$$

Thus $y=5$ or $y=-3$ (the same result could have been obtained by factoring).

Substituting x^2 for y now shows that $x^2=5$ or $x^2=-3$. The equation $x^2=5$ implies that $x=\sqrt{5}$ or $x=-\sqrt{5}$. The equation $x^2=-3$ has no solutions in the real numbers. Thus the only solutions to our original equation $x^4-2x^2-15=0$ are $x=\sqrt{5}$ or $x=-\sqrt{5}$.

25 Find all real numbers x such that

$$x^{2/3}-3x^{1/3}+2=0.$$

solution Make the substitution $x^{1/3}=y$; thus $x^{2/3}=y^2$. With these substitutions, the equation above becomes

$$y^2-3y+2=0.$$

Using the quadratic formula (or factoring), we see that $y=1$ or $y=2$.

Thus $x^{1/3}=1$ or $x^{1/3}=2$. Thus $x=1$ or $x=8$.

27 Find a number b such that 3 is a zero of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x)=1-4x+bx^2+2x^3.$$

solution Note that

$$\begin{aligned}p(3)&=1-4\cdot 3+b\cdot 3^2+2\cdot 3^3\\ &=43+9b.\end{aligned}$$

We want $p(3)$ to equal 0. Thus we solve the equation $0=43+9b$, getting $b=-\frac{43}{9}$.

29 Find a polynomial p of degree 3 such that -1, 2, and 3 are zeros of p and $p(0)=1$.

solution If p is a polynomial of degree 3 and -1, 2, and 3 are zeros of p, then

$$p(x)=c(x+1)(x-2)(x-3)$$

for some number c. We have $p(0)=c(0+1)(0-2)(0-3)=6c$. Thus to make $p(0)=1$ we must choose $c=\frac{1}{6}$. Thus

$$p(x)=\frac{(x+1)(x-2)(x-3)}{6},$$

which by multiplying together the terms in the numerator can also be written in the form

$$p(x)=1+\frac{x}{6}-\frac{2x^2}{3}+\frac{x^3}{6}.$$

31 Find all choices of b, c, and d such that 1 and 4 are the only zeros of the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x)=x^3+bx^2+cx+d.$$

solution Because 1 and 4 are zeros of p, there is a polynomial q such that

$$p(x)=(x-1)(x-4)q(x).$$

Because p has degree 3, the polynomial q must have degree 1. Thus q has a zero, which must equal 1 or 4 because those are the only zeros of p. Furthermore, the coefficient of x in the polynomial q must equal 1 because the coefficient of x^3 in the polynomial p equals 1.

Thus $q(x)=x-1$ or $q(x)=x-4$. In other words, $p(x)=(x-1)^2(x-4)$ or $p(x)=(x-1)(x-4)^2$. Multiplying out these expressions, we see that $p(x)=x^3-6x^2+9x-4$ or $p(x)=x^3-9x^2+24x-16$.

Thus $b=-6$, $c=9$, $d=-4$ or $b=-9$, $c=24$, $c=-16$.

2.5 Rational Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- manipulate rational functions algebraically;
- decompose a rational function into a polynomial plus a rational function whose numerator has degree less than its denominator;
- determine the behavior of a rational function near $\pm\infty$;
- recognize the asymptotes of the graph of a rational function.

The Algebra of Rational Functions

Just as a rational number is the ratio of two integers, a **rational function** is the ratio of two polynomials.

Rational function

A **rational function** is a function r such that

$$r(x) = \frac{p(x)}{q(x)},$$

where p and q are polynomials, with $q \neq 0$.

Every polynomial is also a rational function because a polynomial can be written as the ratio of itself with the constant polynomial 1.

Unless some other domain has been specified, assume the domain of a rational function is the set of real numbers where the expression defining the rational function makes sense. Because division by 0 is not defined, the domain of a rational function $\frac{p}{q}$ excludes all zeros of q, as shown in the following example.

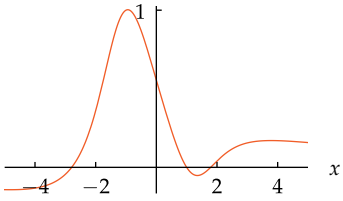
Example 1

Find the domains of the rational functions r and s defined by

$$r(x) = \frac{3x^5 + x^4 - 6x^3 - 2}{x^2 - 9} \quad \text{and} \quad s(x) = \frac{x^3 - 6x + 5}{x^4 + 9}.$$

solution The denominator of the expression defining r is 0 if $x = 3$ or $x = -3$. Thus unless stated otherwise, we should assume the domain of r is the set of real numbers other than 3 and -3.

The denominator of the expression defining s is nonzero for every real number x. Thus unless stated otherwise, we should assume the domain of s is the set of real numbers.



The graph of $s(x) = \frac{x^3-6x+5}{x^4+9}$ *on the interval* $[-5, 5]$.

The procedure for adding or subtracting rational functions is the same as for adding or subtracting rational numbers—multiply numerator and denominator by the same factor to get common denominators.

Example 2

Suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1} \quad \text{and} \quad s(x) = \frac{3x + 2}{x^3 + 5}.$$

Write $r + s$ as the ratio of two polynomials.

solution

$$(r+s)(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2+1} + \frac{3x+2}{x^3+5}$$

The product of the denominators always works as a common denominator.

$$= \frac{(2x)(x^3+5)}{(x^2+1)(x^3+5)} + \frac{(3x+2)(x^2+1)}{(x^2+1)(x^3+5)}$$

$$= \frac{(2x)(x^3+5)+(3x+2)(x^2+1)}{(x^2+1)(x^3+5)}$$

$$= \frac{2x^4+3x^3+2x^2+13x+2}{x^5+x^3+5x^2+5}$$

The procedure for multiplying or dividing rational functions is the same as for multiplying or dividing rational numbers. In particular, dividing by a rational function $\frac{p}{q}$ is the same as multiplying by $\frac{q}{p}$.

Example 3

Suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2+1} \quad \text{and} \quad s(x) = \frac{3x+2}{x^3+5}.$$

Write $\frac{r}{s}$ as the ratio of two polynomials.

solution

$$\left(\frac{r}{s}\right)(x) = \frac{\frac{2x}{x^2+1}}{\frac{3x+2}{x^3+5}}$$

Note that dividing by $\frac{3x+2}{x^3+5}$ is the same as multiplying by $\frac{x^3+5}{3x+2}$.

$$= \frac{2x}{x^2+1} \cdot \frac{x^3+5}{3x+2}$$

$$= \frac{2x(x^3+5)}{(x^2+1)(3x+2)}$$

$$= \frac{2x^4+10x}{3x^3+2x^2+3x+2}$$

Division of Polynomials

Sometimes it is useful to express a rational number as an integer plus a rational number for which the numerator is less than the denominator. For example, $\frac{17}{3} = 5 + \frac{2}{3}$.

Similarly, sometimes it is useful to express a rational function as a polynomial plus a rational function for which the degree of the numerator is less than the degree of the denominator. For example,

$$\frac{x^5-7x^4+3x^2+6x+4}{x^2} = (x^3-7x^2+3) + \frac{6x+4}{x^2};$$

here the numerator of the rational function $\frac{6x+4}{x^2}$ has degree 1 and the denominator has degree 2.

To consider a more complicated example, suppose we want to express

$$\frac{x^5+6x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4}$$

as a polynomial plus a rational function of the form $\frac{ax+b}{x^2+4}$. Entering

simplify (x^5 + 6x^3 + 11x + 7) / (x^2 + 4)

in a *WolframAlpha* entry box produces the desired result. The next example shows how you could obtain the result by hand, giving you some insight into how a computer can get the result.

A procedure similar to long division of integers can be used with polynomials. The procedure below, which is really just long division in slight disguise, has the advantage that you can understand why it works.

Example 4

Write

$$\frac{x^5+6x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4}$$

in the form $G(x)+\frac{ax+b}{x^2+4}$, where G is a polynomial and a, b are numbers.

solution The highest-degree term in the numerator is x^5; the denominator equals x^2+4. To get an x^5 term from x^2+4, multiply x^2+4 by x^3, writing

$$x^5 = x^3(x^2+4) - 4x^3.$$

The idea throughout this procedure is to concentrate on the highest-degree term in the numerator.

The $-4x^3$ term above cancels the $4x^3$ term that arises when $x^3(x^2+4)$ is expanded to x^5+4x^3. Using the equation above, we write

$$\frac{x^5+6x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4} = \frac{x^3(x^2+4)-4x^3+6x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4}$$

$$= x^3 + \frac{2x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4}.$$

The highest-degree term remaining in the numerator is now $2x^3$. To get a $2x^3$ term from x^2+4, multiply x^2+4 by $2x$, writing

Again, we concentrate on the highest-degree term in the numerator.

$$2x^3 = 2x(x^2+4) - 8x.$$

The $-8x$ term above cancels the $8x$ term that arises when $2x(x^2+4)$ is expanded to $2x^3+8x$. Using the equations above, write

$$\frac{x^5+6x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4} = x^3 + \frac{2x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4}$$

$$= x^3 + \frac{(2x)(x^2+4)-8x+11x+7}{x^2+4}$$

$$= x^3 + 2x + \frac{3x+7}{x^2+4}.$$

Thus we have written $\frac{x^5+6x^3+11x+7}{x^2+4}$ in the desired form.

The procedure carried out in the example above can be applied to the ratio of any two polynomials, as stated in the next result. For more examples of how to carry out this procedure, see the worked-out solutions to Exercises 37, 39, and 41 at the end of this chapter.

Procedure for dividing polynomials

(a) Express the highest-degree term in the numerator as a single term times the denominator, plus whatever adjustment terms are necessary.

(b) Simplify the quotient using the numerator as rewritten in part (a).

(c) Repeat steps (a) and (b) on the remaining rational function until the degree of the numerator is less than the degree of the denominator or the numerator is 0.

The result of the procedure above is the decomposition of a rational function into a polynomial plus a rational function for which the degree of the numerator is less than the degree of the denominator (or the numerator is 0). This gives the following result.

Division of polynomials

The symbol R is used because this term is analogous to the remainder term in division of integers.

If p and q are polynomials, with $q \neq 0$, then there exist polynomials G and R such that

$$\frac{p}{q} = G + \frac{R}{q}$$

and $\deg R < \deg q$ or $R = 0$.

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by q gives a useful alternative way to state the conclusion.

Division of polynomials

If p and q are polynomials, with $q \neq 0$, then there exist polynomials G and R such that

$$p = qG + R$$

and $\deg R < \deg q$ or $R = 0$.

As a special case of the result above, fix a real number t and let q be the polynomial defined by $q(x) = x - t$. Because $\deg q = 1$, we will have $\deg R = 0$ or $R = 0$ in the result above; either way, R will be a constant polynomial. In other words, the result above implies that if p is a polynomial, then there exist a polynomial G and a number c such that

$$p(x) = (x - t)G(x) + c$$

for every real number x. Taking $x = t$ in the equation above, we get $p(t) = c$, and thus the equation above can be rewritten as

$$p(x) = (x - t)G(x) + p(t).$$

Recall that t is called a zero of p if and only if $p(t) = 0$, which happens if and only if the equation above can be rewritten as $p(x) = (x - t)G(x)$. Thus we now see why the following result from Section 2.4 holds.

In the previous section, we saw why the "if" part of this result holds. Now we understand why the "only if" part holds.

Zeros and factors of a polynomial

Suppose p is a polynomial and t is a real number. Then t is a zero of p if and only if $x - t$ is a factor of $p(x)$.

The Behavior of a Rational Function Near $\pm\infty$

We now turn to an investigation of the behavior of a rational function near ∞ and near $-\infty$. Recall that to determine the behavior of a polynomial near ∞ or near $-\infty$, we factored out the term with highest degree. The procedure is the same for rational functions, except that the term of highest degree should be separately factored out of the numerator and the denominator. The next example illustrates this procedure.

Neither ∞ nor $-\infty$ is a real number. The informal phrase "x is near ∞" means that x is very large. Similarly, "x is near $-\infty$" means that x is negative and $|x|$ is very large.

Example 5

Suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{9x^5 - 2x^3 + 1}{x^8 + x + 1}.$$

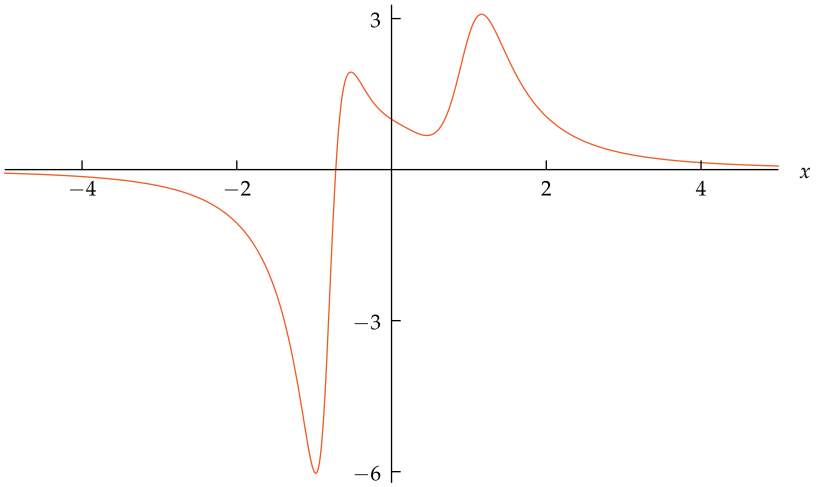
Discuss the behavior of $r(x)$ for x near ∞ and for x near $-\infty$.

solution The term of highest degree in the numerator is $9x^5$; the term of highest degree in the denominator is x^8. Factoring out these terms and considering only values of x near ∞ or near $-\infty$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} r(x) &= \frac{9x^5\left(1 - \frac{2}{9x^2} + \frac{1}{9x^5}\right)}{x^8\left(1 + \frac{1}{x^7} + \frac{1}{x^8}\right)} \\ &= \frac{9}{x^3} \cdot \frac{\left(1 - \frac{2}{9x^2} + \frac{1}{9x^5}\right)}{\left(1 + \frac{1}{x^7} + \frac{1}{x^8}\right)} \\ &\approx \frac{9}{x^3}. \end{aligned}$$

For $|x|$ very large, $\left(1 - \frac{2}{9x^2} + \frac{1}{9x^5}\right)$ and $\left(1 + \frac{1}{x^7} + \frac{1}{x^8}\right)$ are both very close to 1, which explains how we got the approximation above.

The calculation above indicates that $r(x)$ should behave like $\frac{9}{x^3}$ for x near ∞ or near $-\infty$. In particular, if x is near ∞, then $\frac{9}{x^3}$ is positive but very close to 0; thus $r(x)$ has the same behavior. If x is near $-\infty$, then $\frac{9}{x^3}$ is negative but very close to 0; thus $r(x)$ has the same behavior. As the graph here shows, for this function we do not even need to take $|x|$ particularly large to see this behavior.



The graph of $\frac{9x^5-2x^3+1}{x^8+x+1}$ on the interval $[-5, 5]$. As can be seen here, the graph of a rational function can be unexpectedly beautiful and complex.

In general, the same procedure used in the example above works with any rational function, as stated in the next result.

Behavior of a rational function near $\pm\infty$

To determine the behavior of a rational function near ∞ or near $-\infty$, separately factor out the term with highest degree in the numerator and the denominator.

Example 6

The percentage survival rate of a seedling of a particular tropical tree can be modeled by the equation

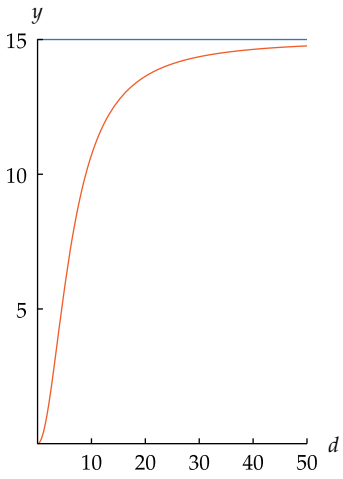
$$s(d) = \frac{15d^2}{d^2 + 40},$$

where a seedling has an $s(d)$ percent chance of survival if it is d meters distance from its parent tree.

(a) At approximately what distance is a seedling's survival rate 10%?

(b) What survival rate does this model predict for seedlings growing very far from their parent tree?

As can be seen from the graph below, s is an increasing function. The chance of survival increases as the distance from the parent tree increases because at a greater distance, the seedling competes less with its parent tree for water and nutrients.



The graph of $\frac{15d^2}{d^2+40}$ (orange) and the line $y = 15$ (blue) on the interval $[0, 50]$. As can be seen here, if d is large then $s(d) \approx 15$.

solution

(a) We need to find d such that $\frac{15d^2}{d^2+40} = 10$. Multiplying both sides of this equation by $d^2 + 40$ and then subtracting $10d^2$ from both sides leads to the equation $5d^2 = 400$. Thus $d^2 = 80$, which means that $d = \sqrt{80} \approx 9$. Thus a seedling should be about 9 meters from its parent in order to have a 10% chance of survival.

(b) We need to estimate $s(d)$ for large values of d. If d is a large number, then

$$\begin{aligned} s(d) &= \frac{15d^2}{d^2 + 40} \\ &= \frac{15d^2}{d^2\left(1 + \frac{40}{d^2}\right)} \\ &= \frac{15}{1 + \frac{40}{d^2}} \\ &\approx 15. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the model predicts that seedlings growing very far from their parent tree have approximately a 15% chance of survival.

The line $y = 15$ plays a special role in understanding the behavior of the graph above. Such lines are sufficiently important to have a name. Although the definition below is not precise (because "arbitrarily close" is vague), its meaning should be clear to you.

Asymptote

A line is called an **asymptote** of a graph if the graph becomes and stays arbitrarily close to the line in at least one direction along the line.

Thus the line $y = 15$ is an asymptote of the graph of $y = \frac{15d^2}{d^2+40}$, as can be seen from the graph above. As another example, the x-axis is an asymptote of the graph of the function $\frac{9x^5-2x^3+1}{x^8+x+1}$, as we saw in Example 5.

The next example gives another illustration of an asymptote.

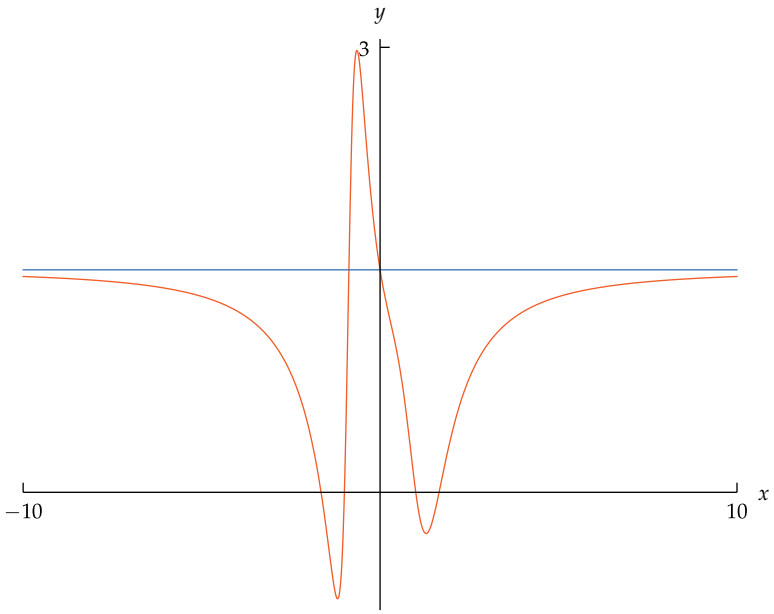
Example 7

Suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{3x^6 - 9x^4 + 6}{2x^6 + 4x + 3}.$$

Find an asymptote of the graph of r.

solution The graph below shows that the line $y = \frac{3}{2}$ appears to be an asymptote of the graph of r.



The graph of $\frac{3x^6-9x^4+6}{2x^6+4x+3}$ *(orange) and the line* $y = \frac{3}{2}$ *(blue) on the interval* $[-10, 10]$.

Here again we see that the graph of a rational function can be unexpectedly beautiful and complex.

To verify that we indeed have an asymptote here, we will investigate the behavior of $r(x)$ for x near $\pm\infty$. The term of highest degree in the numerator is $3x^6$; the term of highest degree in the denominator is $2x^6$. Factoring out these terms and considering only values of x near ∞ or near $-\infty$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} r(x) &= \frac{3x^6\left(1 - \frac{3}{x^2} + \frac{2}{x^6}\right)}{2x^6\left(1 + \frac{2}{x^5} + \frac{3}{2x^6}\right)} \\ &= \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{\left(1 - \frac{3}{x^2} + \frac{2}{x^6}\right)}{\left(1 + \frac{2}{x^5} + \frac{3}{2x^6}\right)} \\ &\approx \frac{3}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

For $|x|$ very large, $\left(1 - \frac{3}{x^2} + \frac{2}{x^6}\right)$ and $\left(1 + \frac{2}{x^5} + \frac{3}{2x^6}\right)$ are both very close to 1, which explains how we got the approximation above.

The calculation above indicates that $r(x)$ should equal approximately $\frac{3}{2}$ for x near ∞ or near $-\infty$. As the graph above shows, for this function we do not even need to take $|x|$ particularly large to see this behavior.

So far we have looked at the behavior of a rational function whose numerator has smaller degree than its denominator, and we have looked at rational functions whose numerator and denominator have equal degree. The next example illustrates the behavior near $\pm\infty$ of a rational function whose numerator has larger degree than its denominator. In this next example, the graph has no asymptotes, but it does get close to the graph of the simpler function $2x^4$ for large values of $|x|$.

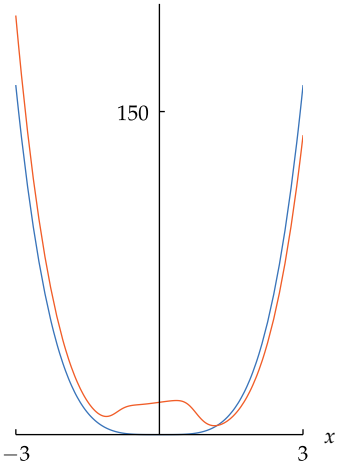
"At a very early age, I made an assumption that a successful physicist only needs to know elementary mathematics. At a later time, with great regret, I realized that the assumption of mine was completely wrong."
–Albert Einstein

Example 8

Suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{4x^{10} - 2x^3 + 3x + 15}{2x^6 + x^5 + 1}.$$

Discuss the behavior of $r(x)$ for x near ∞ and for x near $-\infty$.



The graphs of $\frac{4x^{10}-2x^3+3x+15}{2x^6+x^5+1}$ *(orange) and* $2x^4$ *(blue) on the interval* $[-3, 3]$.

solution The term of highest degree in the numerator is $4x^{10}$; the term of highest degree in the denominator is $2x^6$. Factoring out these terms and considering only values of x near ∞ or near $-\infty$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} r(x) &= \frac{4x^{10}\left(1 - \frac{1}{2x^7} + \frac{3}{4x^9} + \frac{15}{4x^{10}}\right)}{2x^6\left(1 + \frac{1}{2x} + \frac{1}{2x^6}\right)} \\ &= 2x^4 \cdot \frac{\left(1 - \frac{1}{2x^7} + \frac{3}{4x^9} + \frac{15}{4x^{10}}\right)}{\left(1 + \frac{1}{2x} + \frac{1}{2x^6}\right)} \\ &\approx 2x^4. \end{aligned}$$

For $|x|$ very large, $\left(1 - \frac{1}{2x^7} + \frac{3}{4x^9} + \frac{15}{4x^{10}}\right)$ and $\left(1 + \frac{1}{2x} + \frac{1}{2x^6}\right)$ are both very close to 1, which explains how we got the approximation above.

The calculation above indicates that $r(x)$ should behave like $2x^4$ for x near ∞ or near $-\infty$. In particular, $r(x)$ should be positive and large for x near ∞ or near $-\infty$. As the graph here shows, for this function we do not even need to take $|x|$ particularly large to see this behavior.

Graphs of Rational Functions

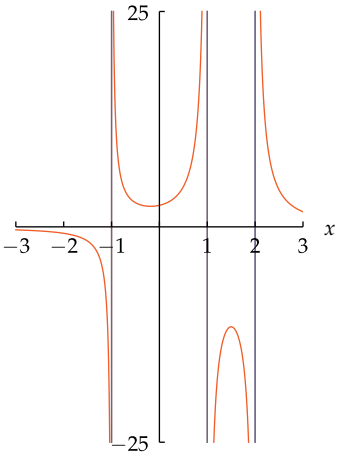
Just as with polynomials, the task of graphing a rational function can be performed better by computers than by humans. We have already seen the graphs of several rational functions and discussed the behavior of rational functions near $\pm\infty$.

The graph of a rational function can look strikingly different from the graph of a polynomial in one important aspect that we have not yet discussed, as shown in the following example.

Example 9

Discuss the asymptotes of the graph of the rational function r defined by

$$r(x) = \frac{x^2 + 5}{x^3 - 2x^2 - x + 2}.$$



The graph of r *on the interval* $[-3, 3]$, *truncated on the vertical axis to the interval* $[-25, 25]$.

solution Because the numerator of $r(x)$ has degree less than the denominator, $r(x)$ is close to 0 for x near ∞ and for x near $-\infty$. Thus the x-axis is an asymptote of the graph of r, as can be seen in the graph here.

The strikingly different behavior of the graph here as compared to previous graphs that we have seen occurs near $x = -1$, $x = 1$, and $x = 2$; those three lines are shown here in blue. To understand what is happening here, verify that the denominator of $r(x)$ is zero if $x = -1$, $x = 1$, or $x = 2$. Thus the numbers -1, 1, and 2 are not in the domain of r, because division by 0 is not defined.

For values of x very close to $x = -1$, $x = 1$, or $x = 2$, the denominator of $r(x)$ is very close to 0, but the numerator is always at least 5. Dividing a number larger than 5 by a number very close to 0 produces a number with very large absolute value, which explains the behavior of the graph of r near $x = -1$, $x = 1$, and $x = 2$. In other words, the lines $x = -1$, $x = 1$, and $x = 2$ (shown in blue) are asymptotes of the graph of r.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–4, write the domain of the given function r as a union of intervals.

1 $r(x) = \dfrac{5x^3 - 12x^2 + 13}{x^2 - 7}$

2 $r(x) = \dfrac{x^5 + 3x^4 - 6}{2x^2 - 5}$

3 $r(x) = \dfrac{4x^7 + 8x^2 - 1}{x^2 - 2x - 6}$

4 $r(x) = \dfrac{6x^9 + x^5 + 8}{x^2 + 4x + 1}$

For Exercises 5–8, find the asymptotes of the graph of the given function r.

5 $r(x) = \dfrac{6x^4 + 4x^3 - 7}{2x^4 + 3x^2 + 5}$

6 $r(x) = \dfrac{6x^6 - 7x^3 + 3}{3x^6 + 5x^4 + x^2 + 1}$

7 $r(x) = \dfrac{3x + 1}{x^2 + x - 2}$

8 $r(x) = \dfrac{9x + 5}{x^2 - x - 6}$

In Exercises 9–26, write the indicated expression as a ratio of polynomials, assuming that

$$r(x) = \frac{3x+4}{x^2+1}, \quad s(x) = \frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}, \quad t(x) = \frac{5}{4x^3+3}.$$

9 $(r+s)(x)$

10 $(r-s)(x)$

11 $(s-t)(x)$

12 $(s+t)(x)$

13 $(3r-2s)(x)$

14 $(4r+5s)(x)$

15 $(rs)(x)$

16 $(rt)(x)$

17 $\big(r(x)\big)^2$

18 $\big(s(x)\big)^2$

19 $\big(r(x)\big)^2 t(x)$

20 $\big(s(x)\big)^2 t(x)$

21 $(r \circ s)(x)$

22 $(s \circ r)(x)$

23 $(r \circ t)(x)$

24 $(t \circ r)(x)$

25 $\dfrac{s(1+x)-s(1)}{x}$

26 $\dfrac{t(x-1)-t(-1)}{x}$

For Exercises 27–32, suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{x+1}{x^2+3} \quad \textit{and} \quad s(x) = \frac{x+2}{x^2+5}.$$

27 What is the domain of r?

28 What is the domain of s?

29 Find two distinct numbers x such that $r(x) = \frac{1}{4}$.

30 Find two distinct numbers x such that $s(x) = \frac{1}{8}$.

31 What is the range of r?

32 What is the range of s?

33 Find a number c such that $r(10^{100}) \approx 6$, where

$$r(x) = \frac{cx^3 + 20x^2 - 15x + 17}{5x^3 + 4x^2 + 18x + 7}.$$

34 Find a number c such that $r(2^{1000}) \approx 5$, where

$$r(x) = \frac{3x^4 - 2x^3 + 8x + 7}{cx^4 - 9x + 2}.$$

35 Find numbers c, d, and m such that the graph of $y = \dfrac{cx^m + x^2 + 7}{x^3 + d}$ has $y = 2$ and $x = 3$ as asymptotes.

36 Find numbers c, d, and m such that the graph of $y = \dfrac{x^5 + 3x + 9}{cx^m + d}$ has $y = 3$ and $x = 2$ as asymptotes.

In Exercises 37–42, write each expression as the sum of a polynomial and a rational function whose numerator has smaller degree than its denominator.

37 $\dfrac{2x+1}{x-3}$

38 $\dfrac{4x-5}{x+7}$

39 $\dfrac{x^2}{3x-1}$

40 $\dfrac{x^2}{4x+3}$

41 $\dfrac{x^6 + 3x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5}$

42 $\dfrac{x^6 - 4x^2 + 5}{x^2 - 3x + 1}$

43 A bicycle company finds that its average cost per bicycle for producing n thousand bicycles is $a(n)$ dollars, where

$$a(n) = 700\frac{4n^2 + 3n + 50}{16n^2 + 3n + 35}.$$

What will be the approximate cost per bicycle when the company is producing many bicycles?

44 A bicycle company finds that its average cost per bicycle for producing n thousand bicycles is $a(n)$ dollars, where

$$a(n) = 800\frac{3n^2 + n + 40}{16n^2 + 2n + 45}.$$

What will be the approximate cost per bicycle when the company is producing many bicycles?

45 Suppose you start driving a car on a chilly fall day. As you drive, the heater in the car makes the temperature inside the car $F(t)$ degrees Fahrenheit at time t minutes after you started driving, where

$$F(t) = 40 + \frac{30t^3}{t^3 + 100}.$$

(a) What was the temperature in the car when you started driving?

(b) What was the approximate temperature in the car ten minutes after you started driving?

(c) What will be the approximate temperature in the car after you have been driving for a long time?

46 Suppose you start driving a car on a hot summer day. As you drive, the air conditioner in the car makes the temperature inside the car $F(t)$ degrees Fahrenheit at time t minutes after you started driving, where

$$F(t) = 90 - \frac{18t^2}{t^2 + 65}.$$

(a) What was the temperature in the car when you started driving?

(b) What was the approximate temperature in the car 15 minutes after you started driving?

(c) What will be the approximate temperature in the car after you have been driving for a long time?

Problems

47 Show that

$$\frac{1}{(x-a)(x-b)} = \frac{1}{a-b}\left(\frac{1}{x-a} - \frac{1}{x-b}\right)$$

if $x \neq a$, $x \neq b$, and $a \neq b$.

48 Suppose $s(x) = \frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}$.

(a) Show that the point $(1,3)$ is on the graph of s.

(b) Show that the slope of a line containing $(1,3)$ and a point on the graph of s very close to $(1,3)$ is approximately -4.

[*Hint:* Use the result of Exercise 25.]

49 Suppose $t(x) = \frac{5}{4x^3+3}$.

(a) Show that the point $(-1,-5)$ is on the graph of t.

(b) Give an estimate for the slope of a line containing $(-1,-5)$ and a point on the graph of t very close to $(-1,-5)$.

[*Hint:* Use the result of Exercise 26.]

50 Explain why the composition of a polynomial and a rational function (in either order) is a rational function.

51 Explain why the composition of two rational functions is a rational function.

52 Suppose p is a polynomial and t is a number. Explain why there is a polynomial G such that

$$\frac{p(x)-p(t)}{x-t} = G(x)$$

for every number $x \neq t$.

53 Suppose r is the function with domain $(0,\infty)$ defined by

$$r(x) = \frac{1}{x^4+2x^3+3x^2}$$

for each positive number x.

(a) Find two distinct points on the graph of r.

(b) Explain why r is a decreasing function on $(0,\infty)$.

(c) Find two distinct points on the graph of r^{-1}.

54 Suppose p is a nonzero polynomial with at least one (real) zero. Explain why

- there exist real numbers $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_m$ and a polynomial G such that G has no (real) zeros and

$$p(x) = (x-t_1)(x-t_2)\ldots(x-t_m)G(x)$$

for every real number x;

- each of the numbers $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_m$ is a zero of p;
- p has no zeros other than $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_m$.

55 Suppose p and q are polynomials and the horizonal axis is an asymptote of the graph of $\frac{p}{q}$. Explain why

$$\deg p < \deg q.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–4, write the domain of the given function r as a union of intervals.

1 $r(x) = \dfrac{5x^3-12x^2+13}{x^2-7}$

solution Because we have no other information about the domain of r, we assume the domain of r is the set of numbers where the expression defining r makes sense, which means where the denominator is not 0. The denominator of the expression defining r is 0 if $x = -\sqrt{7}$ or $x = \sqrt{7}$. Thus the domain of r is the set of numbers other than $-\sqrt{7}$ and $\sqrt{7}$. In other words, the domain of r is $(-\infty,-\sqrt{7}) \cup (-\sqrt{7},\sqrt{7}) \cup (\sqrt{7},\infty)$.

3 $r(x) = \dfrac{4x^7+8x^2-1}{x^2-2x-6}$

solution To find where the expression defining r does not make sense, apply the quadratic formula to the equation $x^2-2x-6=0$, getting $x = 1-\sqrt{7}$ or $x = 1+\sqrt{7}$. Thus the domain of r is the set of numbers other than $1-\sqrt{7}$ and $1+\sqrt{7}$. In other words, the domain of r is $(-\infty,1-\sqrt{7}) \cup (1-\sqrt{7},1+\sqrt{7}) \cup (1+\sqrt{7},\infty)$.

For Exercises 5–8, find the asymptotes of the graph of the given function r.

5 $r(x) = \dfrac{6x^4+4x^3-7}{2x^4+3x^2+5}$

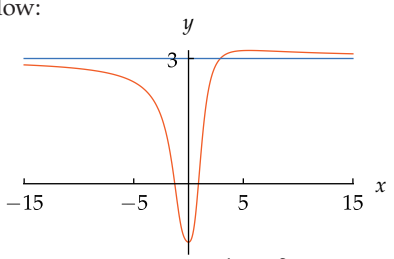
solution The denominator of this rational function is never 0, so we only need to worry about the behavior of r near $\pm\infty$. For $|x|$ very large, we have

$$r(x) = \frac{6x^4+4x^3-7}{2x^4+3x^2+5}$$

$$= \frac{6x^4\left(1+\frac{2}{3x}-\frac{7}{6x^4}\right)}{2x^4\left(1+\frac{3}{2x^2}+\frac{5}{2x^4}\right)}$$

$$\approx 3.$$

Thus the line $y = 3$ is an asymptote of the graph of r, as shown below:



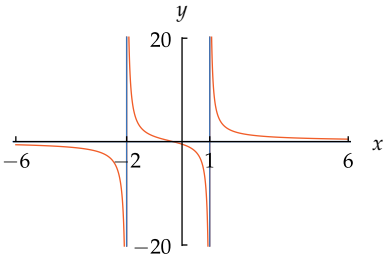
The graph of $\frac{6x^4+4x^3-7}{2x^4+3x^2+5}$ *on the interval* $[-15,15]$.

7 $r(x) = \dfrac{3x+1}{x^2+x-2}$

solution The denominator of this rational function is 0 when

$$x^2 + x - 2 = 0.$$

Solving this equation either by factoring or using the quadratic formula, we get $x = -2$ or $x = 1$. Because the degree of the numerator is less than the degree of the denominator, the value of this function is close to 0 when $|x|$ is large. Thus the asymptotes of the graph of r are the lines $x = -2$, $x = 1$, and $y = 0$, as shown below:



The graph of $\dfrac{3x+1}{x^2+x-2}$ *on the interval* $[-6, 6]$, *truncated on the vertical axis to the interval* $[-20, 20]$.

In Exercises 9–26, write the indicated expression as a ratio of polynomials, assuming that

$$r(x) = \frac{3x+4}{x^2+1}, \quad s(x) = \frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}, \quad t(x) = \frac{5}{4x^3+3}.$$

9 $(r+s)(x)$

solution

$$(r+s)(x) = \frac{3x+4}{x^2+1} + \frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}$$

$$= \frac{(3x+4)(2x-1)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)} + \frac{(x^2+2)(x^2+1)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)}$$

$$= \frac{(3x+4)(2x-1) + (x^2+2)(x^2+1)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)}$$

$$= \frac{6x^2 - 3x + 8x - 4 + x^4 + x^2 + 2x^2 + 2}{2x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1}$$

$$= \frac{x^4 + 9x^2 + 5x - 2}{2x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1}$$

11 $(s-t)(x)$

solution

$$(s-t)(x) = \frac{x^2+2}{2x-1} - \frac{5}{4x^3+3}$$

$$= \frac{(x^2+2)(4x^3+3)}{(2x-1)(4x^3+3)} - \frac{5(2x-1)}{(2x-1)(4x^3+3)}$$

$$= \frac{(x^2+2)(4x^3+3) - 5(2x-1)}{(2x-1)(4x^3+3)}$$

$$= \frac{4x^5 + 8x^3 + 3x^2 - 10x + 11}{8x^4 - 4x^3 + 6x - 3}$$

13 $(3r-2s)(x)$

solution

$$(3r-2s)(x) = 3\left(\frac{3x+4}{x^2+1}\right) - 2\left(\frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{9x+12}{x^2+1} - \frac{2x^2+4}{2x-1}$$

$$= \frac{(9x+12)(2x-1)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)} - \frac{(2x^2+4)(x^2+1)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)}$$

$$= \frac{(9x+12)(2x-1) - (2x^2+4)(x^2+1)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)}$$

$$= \frac{18x^2 - 9x + 24x - 12 - 2x^4 - 6x^2 - 4}{2x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1}$$

$$= \frac{-2x^4 + 12x^2 + 15x - 16}{2x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1}$$

15 $(rs)(x)$

solution

$$(rs)(x) = \frac{3x+4}{x^2+1} \cdot \frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}$$

$$= \frac{(3x+4)(x^2+2)}{(x^2+1)(2x-1)}$$

$$= \frac{3x^3 + 4x^2 + 6x + 8}{2x^3 - x^2 + 2x - 1}$$

17 $(r(x))^2$

solution

$$(r(x))^2 = \left(\frac{3x+4}{x^2+1}\right)^2$$

$$= \frac{(3x+4)^2}{(x^2+1)^2}$$

$$= \frac{9x^2 + 24x + 16}{x^4 + 2x^2 + 1}$$

19 $(r(x))^2 t(x)$

solution Using the expression that we computed for $(r(x))^2$ in the solution to Exercise 17, we have

$$(r(x))^2 t(x) = \frac{9x^2+24x+16}{x^4+2x^2+1} \cdot \frac{5}{4x^3+3}$$

$$= \frac{5(9x^2+24x+16)}{(x^4+2x^2+1)(4x^3+3)}$$

$$= \frac{45x^2+120x+80}{4x^7+8x^5+3x^4+4x^3+6x^2+3}.$$

21 $(r \circ s)(x)$

solution We have

$$(r \circ s)(x) = r\big(s(x)\big)$$

$$= r\Big(\frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}\Big)$$

$$= \frac{3\Big(\frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}\Big)+4}{\Big(\frac{x^2+2}{2x-1}\Big)^2+1}.$$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator of the expression above by $(2x-1)^2$ gives

$$(r \circ s)(x) = \frac{3(x^2+2)(2x-1)+4(2x-1)^2}{(x^2+2)^2+(2x-1)^2}$$

$$= \frac{6x^3+13x^2-4x-2}{x^4+8x^2-4x+5}.$$

23 $(r \circ t)(x)$

solution We have

$$(r \circ t)(x) = r\big(t(x)\big)$$

$$= r\Big(\frac{5}{4x^3+3}\Big)$$

$$= \frac{3\Big(\frac{5}{4x^3+3}\Big)+4}{\Big(\frac{5}{4x^3+3}\Big)^2+1}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{15}{4x^3+3}+4}{\frac{25}{(4x^3+3)^2}+1}.$$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator of the expression above by $(4x^3+3)^2$ gives

$$(r \circ t)(x) = \frac{15(4x^3+3)+4(4x^3+3)^2}{25+(4x^3+3)^2}$$

$$= \frac{64x^6+156x^3+81}{16x^6+24x^3+34}.$$

25 $\frac{s(1+x)-s(1)}{x}$

solution Note that $s(1)=3$. Thus

$$\frac{s(1+x)-s(1)}{x} = \frac{\frac{(1+x)^2+2}{2(1+x)-1}-3}{x}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{x^2+2x+3}{2x+1}-3}{x}.$$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator of the expression above by $2x+1$ gives

$$\frac{s(1+x)-s(1)}{x} = \frac{x^2+2x+3-6x-3}{x(2x+1)}$$

$$= \frac{x^2-4x}{x(2x+1)}$$

$$= \frac{x-4}{2x+1}.$$

For Exercises 27–32, suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{x+1}{x^2+3} \quad \textit{and} \quad s(x) = \frac{x+2}{x^2+5}.$$

27 What is the domain of r?

solution The denominator of the expression defining r is a nonzero number for every real number x, and thus the expression defining r makes sense for every real number x. Because we have no other indication of the domain of r, we thus assume the domain of r is the set of real numbers.

29 Find two distinct numbers x such that $r(x) = \frac{1}{4}$.

solution We need to solve the equation

$$\frac{x+1}{x^2+3} = \frac{1}{4}$$

for x. Multiplying both sides by x^2+3 and then multiplying both sides by 4 and collecting all the terms on one side, we have

$$x^2-4x-1=0.$$

Using the quadratic formula, we get the solutions $x = 2-\sqrt{5}$ and $x = 2+\sqrt{5}$.

31 What is the range of r?

solution To find the range of r, we must find all numbers y such that

$$\frac{x+1}{x^2+3} = y$$

for at least one number x. Thus we will solve the equation above for x and then determine for which numbers y we get an expression for x that makes sense. Multiplying both sides of the equation above by x^2+3 and then collecting terms gives

$$yx^2 - x + (3y - 1) = 0.$$

If $y = 0$, then this equation has the solution $x = -1$. If $y \neq 0$, then use the quadratic formula to solve the equation above for x, getting

$$x = \frac{1 + \sqrt{1 + 4y - 12y^2}}{2y}$$

or

$$x = \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 + 4y - 12y^2}}{2y}.$$

These expressions for x make sense precisely when $1 + 4y - 12y^2 \geq 0$. Completing the square, we can rewrite this inequality as

$$-12\left((y - \tfrac{1}{6})^2 - \tfrac{1}{9}\right) \geq 0.$$

Thus we must have $(y - \frac{1}{6})^2 \leq \frac{1}{9}$, which is equivalent to $-\frac{1}{3} \leq y - \frac{1}{6} \leq \frac{1}{3}$. Adding $\frac{1}{6}$ to each side of these inequalities gives $-\frac{1}{6} \leq y \leq \frac{1}{2}$.

Thus the range of r is the interval $[-\frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{2}]$.

33 Find a number c such that $r(10^{100}) \approx 6$, where

$$r(x) = \frac{cx^3 + 20x^2 - 15x + 17}{5x^3 + 4x^2 + 18x + 7}.$$

solution Because 10^{100} is a very large number, we need to estimate the value of $r(x)$ for very large values of x. The highest-degree term in the numerator of r is cx^3 (unless we choose $c = 0$); the highest-degree term in the denominator of r is $5x^3$. Factoring out these terms and considering only very large values of x, we have

$$\begin{aligned} r(x) &= \frac{cx^3\left(1 + \frac{20}{cx} - \frac{15}{cx^2} + \frac{17}{cx^3}\right)}{5x^3\left(1 + \frac{4}{5x} + \frac{18}{5x^2} + \frac{7}{5x^3}\right)} \\ &= \frac{c}{5} \cdot \frac{\left(1 + \frac{20}{cx} - \frac{15}{cx^2} + \frac{17}{cx^3}\right)}{\left(1 + \frac{4}{5x} + \frac{18}{5x^2} + \frac{7}{5x^3}\right)} \\ &\approx \frac{c}{5}. \end{aligned}$$

For x very large, both $\left(1 + \frac{20}{cx} - \frac{15}{cx^2} + \frac{17}{cx^3}\right)$ and $\left(1 + \frac{4}{5x} + \frac{18}{5x^2} + \frac{7}{5x^3}\right)$ are very close to 1, which explains how we got the approximation above.

The approximation above shows that $r(10^{100}) \approx \frac{c}{5}$. Hence we want to choose c so that $\frac{c}{5} = 6$. Thus we take $c = 30$.

35 Find numbers c, d, and m such that the graph of $y = \frac{cx^m + x^2 + 7}{x^3 + d}$ has $y = 2$ and $x = 3$ as asymptotes.

solution We have

$$\frac{cx^m + x^2 + 7}{x^3 + d} = \frac{cx^m\left(1 + \frac{1}{cx^{m-2}} + \frac{7}{cx^m}\right)}{x^3\left(1 + \frac{d}{x^3}\right)}$$

For $y = 2$ to be an asymptote of this graph, we need for $cx^m = 2x^3$. Thus we take $c = 2$ and $m = 3$.

For $x = 3$ to be an asymptote of the graph, the denominator needs to equal 0 when $x = 3$. In other words, we must have $3^3 + d = 0$, which implies that $d = -27$.

In Exercises 37–42, write each expression as the sum of a polynomial and a rational function whose numerator has smaller degree than its denominator.

37 $\dfrac{2x + 1}{x - 3}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2x + 1}{x - 3} &= \frac{2(x - 3) + 6 + 1}{x - 3} \\ &= 2 + \frac{7}{x - 3} \end{aligned}$$

39 $\dfrac{x^2}{3x - 1}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^2}{3x - 1} &= \frac{\frac{x}{3}(3x - 1) + \frac{x}{3}}{3x - 1} \\ &= \frac{x}{3} + \frac{\frac{x}{3}}{3x - 1} \\ &= \frac{x}{3} + \frac{\frac{1}{9}(3x - 1) + \frac{1}{9}}{3x - 1} \\ &= \frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{9(3x - 1)} \end{aligned}$$

41 $\dfrac{x^6 + 3x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{x^6 + 3x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &= \frac{x^4(x^2 + 2x + 5) - 2x^5 - 5x^4 + 3x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &= x^4 + \frac{-2x^5 - 5x^4 + 3x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &= x^4 + \frac{(-2x^3)(x^2 + 2x + 5)}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &\quad + \frac{4x^4 + 10x^3 - 5x^4 + 3x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &= x^4 - 2x^3 + \frac{-x^4 + 13x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &= x^4 - 2x^3 + \frac{(-x^2)(x^2 + 2x + 5)}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &\quad + \frac{2x^3 + 5x^2 + 13x^3 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \\ &= x^4 - 2x^3 - x^2 + \frac{15x^3 + 5x^2 + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} \end{aligned}$$

$$= x^4 - 2x^3 - x^2$$

$$+ \frac{15x(x^2+2x+5) - 30x^2 - 75x + 5x^2 + 1}{x^2+2x+5}$$

$$= x^4 - 2x^3 - x^2 + 15x + \frac{-25x^2 - 75x + 1}{x^2+2x+5}$$

$$= x^4 - 2x^3 - x^2 + 15x$$

$$+ \frac{-25(x^2+2x+5) + 50x + 125 - 75x + 1}{x^2+2x+5}$$

$$= x^4 - 2x^3 - x^2 + 15x - 25 + \frac{-25x + 126}{x^2+2x+5}$$

43 A bicycle company finds that its average cost per bicycle for producing n thousand bicycles is $a(n)$ dollars, where

$$a(n) = 700\frac{4n^2+3n+50}{16n^2+3n+35}.$$

What will be the approximate cost per bicycle when the company is producing many bicycles?

solution For n large we have

$$a(n) = 700\frac{4n^2+3n+50}{16n^2+3n+35}$$

$$= 700\frac{4n^2\left(1+\frac{3}{4n}+\frac{25}{2n^2}\right)}{16n^2\left(1+\frac{3}{16n}+\frac{35}{16n^2}\right)}$$

$$= 700\frac{4\left(1+\frac{3}{4n}+\frac{25}{2n^2}\right)}{16\left(1+\frac{3}{16n}+\frac{35}{16n^2}\right)}$$

$$\approx 700 \cdot \frac{4}{16}$$

$$= 175.$$

Thus the average cost to produce each bicycle will be about \$175 when the company is producing many bicycles.

45 Suppose you start driving a car on a chilly fall day. As you drive, the heater in the car makes the temperature inside the car $F(t)$ degrees Fahrenheit at time t minutes after you started driving, where

$$F(t) = 40 + \frac{30t^3}{t^3+100}.$$

(a) What was the temperature in the car when you started driving?

(b) What was the approximate temperature in the car ten minutes after you started driving?

(c) What will be the approximate temperature in the car after you have been driving for a long time?

solution

(a) Because $F(0) = 40$, the temperature in the car was 40 degrees Fahrenheit when you started driving.

(b) Because $F(10) \approx 67.3$, the temperature in the car was approximately 67.3 degrees Fahrenheit ten minutes after you started driving.

(c) Suppose t is a large number. Then

$$F(t) = 40 + \frac{30t^3}{t^3+100}$$

$$= 40 + \frac{30t^3}{t^3\left(1+\frac{100}{t^3}\right)}$$

$$\approx 40 + 30$$

$$= 70.$$

Thus the temperature in the car will be approximately 70 degrees Fahrenheit after you have been driving for a long time.

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Find the equation of a line given its slope and a point on it.
- Find the equation of a line given two points on it.
- Find the equation of a line parallel to a given line and containing a given point.
- Find the equation of a line perpendicular to a given line and containing a given point.
- Use the completing-the-square technique with quadratic expressions.
- Solve quadratic equations.
- Compute the distance between two points.
- Find the equation of a circle, given its center and radius.
- Find the vertex of a parabola.
- Manipulate and simplify expressions involving exponents.
- Explain how x^0, x^{-m}, and $x^{1/m}$ are defined.
- Explain the connection between the linear factors of a polynomial and its zeros.
- Determine the behavior of a polynomial near $-\infty$ and near ∞.
- Compute the sum, difference, product, and quotient of two rational functions (and thus of two polynomials).
- Write a rational function as the sum of a polynomial and a rational function whose numerator has smaller degree than its denominator.
- Determine the behavior of a rational function near $-\infty$ and near ∞.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Explain how to find the slope of a line if given coordinates of two points on the line.

2 Given the slopes of two lines, how can you determine whether or not the lines are parallel?

3 Given the slopes of two lines, how can you determine whether or not the lines are perpendicular?

4 Find a number t such that the line containing the points $(3,-5)$ and $(-4,t)$ has slope -6.

5 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that has slope -4 and contains the point $(3,-7)$.

6 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the points $(-6,1)$ and $(-1,-8)$.

7 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that is perpendicular to the line $y = 6x - 7$ and that contains the point $(-2,9)$.

8 Suppose f is a function and g is a nonconstant linear function. Explain why the range of $f \circ g$ is the same as the range of f.

9 Find the vertex of the graph of the equation

$$y = 5x^2 + 2x + 3.$$

10 Give an example of numbers a, b, and c such that the graph of $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ has its vertex at the point $(-4,7)$.

11 Find a number c such that the equation

$$x^2 + cx + 3 = 0$$

has exactly one solution.

12 Find a number x such that

$$\frac{x+1}{x-2} = 3x.$$

13 Find the distance between the points $(5,-6)$ and $(-2,-4)$.

14 Find two points, one on the horizontal axis and one on the vertical axis, such that the distance between these two points equals 21.

15 Find the equation of the circle in the xy-plane centered at $(-4,3)$ that has radius 6.

16 Suppose a newly discovered planet is orbiting a far-away star and that units and a coordinate system have been chosen so that planet's orbit is described by the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{29} + \frac{y^2}{20} = 1.$$

What are the two possible locations of the star?

17 Find the center and radius of the circle in the xy-plane described by $x^2 - 8x + y^2 + 10y = 2$.

18 Which is larger: 10^{100} or 100^{10}?

19 Write $\dfrac{3^{800} \cdot 9^{30}}{27^7}$ as a power of 3.

20 Write $y^{-5}\left(y^6(y^3)^4\right)^2$ as a power of y.

21 Simplify the expression $\dfrac{(t^3w^5)^{-3}}{(t^{-3}w^2)^4}$.

22 Simplify the expression $\left(\dfrac{y^5\sqrt{y}}{y^9}\right)^{3/7}$.

23 Explain why 3^0 is defined to equal 1.

24 Explain why 3^{-44} is defined to equal $\frac{1}{3^{44}}$.

25 Explain why $\sqrt{5}^2 = 5$.

26 Give an example of a number t such that $\sqrt{t^2} \neq t$.

27 Show that $(29 + 12\sqrt{5})^{1/2} = 3 + 2\sqrt{5}$.

28 Evaluate $32^{7/5}$.

29 Expand $(4 - 3\sqrt{5x})^2$.

30 What is the domain of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = x^{3/5}?$$

31 What is the domain of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = (x-5)^{3/4}?$$

32 Find the inverse of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = 3 + 2x^{4/5}.$$

33 Sketch the graph of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = -5x^4 + 7$$

on the interval $[-1, 1]$.

34 Sketch the graph of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = -\frac{4}{x} + 6$$

on $[-2, -\frac{1}{2}] \cup [\frac{1}{2}, 2]$.

35 Give an example of two polynomials of degree 9 whose sum has degree 4.

36 Find a polynomial whose zeros are -3, 2, and 5.

37 Find a polynomial p such that $p(-1) = 0$, $p(4) = 0$, and $p(2) = 3$.

38 Explain why $x^7 + 9999x^6 - 88x^5 + 77x^4 - 6x^3 + 55$ is negative for negative values of x with very large absolute value.

39 Explain why there is a positive number x such that

$$x^7 - 5x^4 - 1 = 0.$$

40 Explain why the polynomial $x^6 - 5x^5 - 2$ has at least one positive zero and at least one negative zero.

41 Find a polynomial p of degree 3 with integer coefficients such that 2.1, 3.1, and 4.1 are zeros of p.

42 Write

$$\frac{3x^{80} + 2}{x^6 - 5} + \frac{x^7 + 10}{x^2 + 9}$$

as a ratio of two polynomials.

43 Write

$$\frac{3x^{80} + 2}{x^6 - 5} \Big/ \frac{x^7 + 10}{x^2 + 9}$$

as a ratio of two polynomials.

44 Suppose

$$r(x) = \frac{300x^{80} + 299}{x^{76} - 101} \quad \text{and} \quad s(x) = \frac{x^7 + 1}{x^2 + 9}.$$

Which is larger, $r(10^{100})$ or $s(10^{100})$?

45 Write the domain of $\frac{x^5+2}{x^2+7x-1}$ as a union of intervals.

46 Suppose p is a polynomial. Explain why there is a polynomial G such that

$$p(x) - p(2) = (x-2)G(x).$$

47 Write

$$\frac{4x^5 - 2x^4 + 3x^2 + 1}{2x^2 - 1}$$

in the form $G(x) + \dfrac{R(x)}{2x^2-1}$, where G is a polynomial and R is a linear function.

48 Find the asymptotes of the graph of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = \frac{3x^2 + 5x + 1}{x^2 + 7x + 10}.$$

49 Give an example of a rational function whose graph in the xy-plane has as asymptotes the lines $x = 2$ and $x = 5$, with no other asymptotes..

50 Give an example of a rational function whose graph in the xy-plane has as asymptotes the lines $x = 2$, $x = 5$, and $y = 3$.

51 Suppose p and q are polynomials with

$$\deg p < \deg q.$$

Explain why the horizontal axis is an asymptote of the graph of $\frac{p}{q}$.

Chapter
3

STARRY NIGHT, *painted by Vincent Van Gogh in 1889. The brightness of a star as seen from Earth is measured using a logarithmic scale.*

Exponential Functions, Logarithms, and e

This chapter focuses on exponents and logarithms, along with applications of these crucial concepts.

Each positive number $b \neq 1$ leads to an exponential function b^x. The inverse of this function is the logarithm base b. Thus $\log_b y = x$ means $b^x = y$.

We will see that the important algebraic properties of logarithms follow directly from the algebraic properties of exponents. In particular, we will emphasize the nice formulas for the logarithm of a power, the logarithm of a product, and the logarithm of a quotient.

We will use exponents and logarithms to model radioactive decay, earthquake intensity, sound intensity, and star brightness. We will also see how functions with exponential growth describe population growth and compound interest.

Our approach to the magical number e and the natural logarithm lead to several important approximations that show the special properties of e. These approximations demonstrate why the natural logarithm deserves its name.

This chapter concludes by looking again at exponential growth through the lens of our new knowledge of e. We will see how e is used to model continuously compounded interest and continuous growth rates.

3.1 Logarithms as Inverses of Exponential Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- use exponential functions;
- evaluate logarithms in simple cases;
- use logarithms to find inverses of functions involving b^x;
- compute the number of digits in a positive integer from its common logarithm.

Exponential Functions

We defined the meaning of a rational exponent in Section 2.3, but an expression such as $7^{\sqrt{2}}$ has not yet been defined. Nevertheless, the following example should make sense to you as the only reasonable (rational?) way to think of an irrational exponent.

By the end of this chapter, you will understand how your calculator uses logarithms to evaluate expressions such as $7^{1.41421356}$.

Example 1 Find an approximation of $7^{\sqrt{2}}$.

solution Because $\sqrt{2}$ is approximately 1.414, we expect that $7^{\sqrt{2}}$ should be approximately $7^{1.414}$ (which has been defined, because 1.414 is a rational number). A calculator shows that $7^{1.414} \approx 15.66638$.

If we use a better approximation of $\sqrt{2}$, then we should get a better approximation of $7^{\sqrt{2}}$. For example, 1.41421356 is a better rational approximation of $\sqrt{2}$ than 1.414. A calculator shows that

$$7^{1.41421356} \approx 15.67289,$$

which turns out to be correct for the first five digits after the decimal point in the decimal expansion of $7^{\sqrt{2}}$.

We could continue this process by taking rational approximations as close as we wish to $\sqrt{2}$, thus getting approximations as accurate as we wish to $7^{\sqrt{2}}$.

The example above gives the idea for defining the meaning of an irrational exponent.

We want to define functions f such as $f(x) = 2^x$ whose domain is the set of all real numbers. Thus we must define the meaning of irrational exponents.

Irrational exponent

Suppose $b > 0$ and x is an irrational number. Then b^x is the number that is approximated by numbers of the form b^r as r takes on rational values that approximate x.

The definition of b^x above does not have the level of rigor expected of a mathematical definition, but the idea should be clear from the example above. A rigorous approach to this question would take us beyond material appropriate for a precalculus course. Thus we will rely on our intuitive sense of the loose definition given above.

The next box summarizes the key algebraic properties of exponents. These are the same properties we saw earlier, but now we have extended the meaning of exponents to a larger class of numbers.

Algebraic properties of exponents

Suppose a and b are positive numbers and x and y are real numbers. Then

$$b^x b^y = b^{x+y},$$

$$(b^x)^y = b^{xy},$$

$$a^x b^x = (ab)^x,$$

$$b^0 = 1,$$

$$b^{-x} = \frac{1}{b^x},$$

$$\frac{b^x}{b^y} = b^{x-y},$$

$$\frac{a^x}{b^x} = \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^x.$$

Now that we have defined b^x for every positive number b and every real number x, we can define an appropriate function.

Exponential function

Suppose b is a positive number, with $b \neq 1$. Then the **exponential function** with base b is the function f defined by

$$f(x) = b^x.$$

For example, taking $b = 2$, we have the exponential function f with base 2 defined by $f(x) = 2^x$. Be careful to distinguish the function 2^x from the function x^2. The graphs of these functions have different shapes, as can be seen in the graphs here. The function g defined by $g(x) = x^2$ is not an exponential function. For an exponential function such as the function f defined by $f(x) = 2^x$, the variable x appears in the exponent.

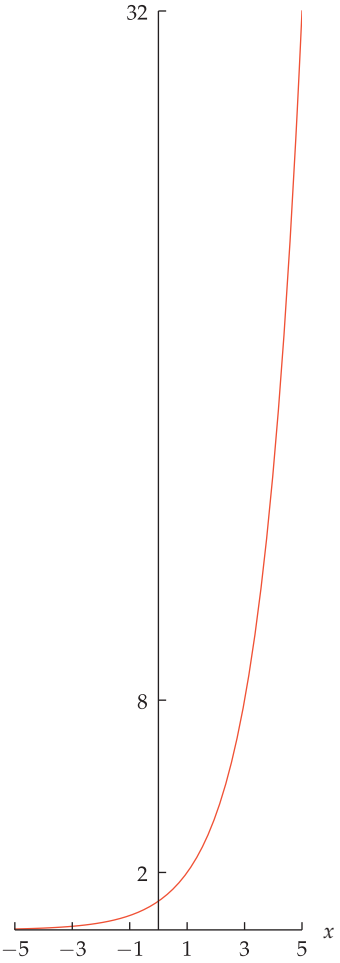
Our main interest is in exponential functions with base $b > 1$. The next box summarizes the behavior of such functions.

Behavior of exponential functions

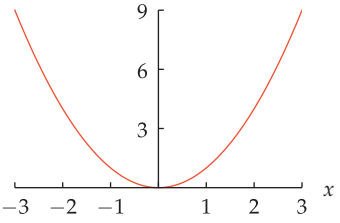
Suppose $b > 1$ and f is the exponential function defined by $f(x) = b^x$. Then

- the domain of f is the set of real numbers;
- the range of f is the set of positive numbers;
- f is an increasing function;
- b^x is very large for large values of x,
- b^x is very close to 0 if x is negative and $|x|$ is large.

The graph of 2^x above illustrates the last three bullet points. That graph shows how 2^x grows rapidly for large positive values of x and how 2^x gets rapidly close to 0 for negative values of x with large absolute value. As an example of the last bullet point, note that $2^{-100} = \frac{1}{2^{100}}$, which helps explain why 2^{-100} is very close to 0.



The graph of the exponential function 2^x on the interval $[-5,5]$. Here the same scale is used on both axes to emphasize the rapid growth of this function.



The graph of x^2 on the interval $[-3,3]$. Unlike the graph of 2^x, the graph of x^2 is symmetric about the vertical axis.

Logarithms Base 2

Consider the exponential function f defined by $f(x) = 2^x$. The table here gives the value of 2^x for some choices of x. We now define a new function, called the logarithm base 2, that is the inverse of the exponential function 2^x.

x	2^x
-3	$\frac{1}{8}$
-2	$\frac{1}{4}$
-1	$\frac{1}{2}$
0	1
1	2
2	4
3	8

Each time x increases by 1, the value of 2^x doubles; this happens because $2^{x+1} = 2 \cdot 2^x$.

Logarithm base 2

Suppose y is positive number.

- The **logarithm** base 2 of y, denoted $\log_2 y$, is defined to be the number x such that $2^x = y$.

Short version:

- $\log_2 y = x$ means $2^x = y$.

Example 2

(a) Evaluate $\log_2 8$.

(b) Evaluate $\log_2 \frac{1}{32}$.

solution

(a) $\log_2 8 = 3$ because $2^3 = 8$.

(b) $\log_2 \frac{1}{32} = -5$ because $2^{-5} = \frac{1}{32}$.

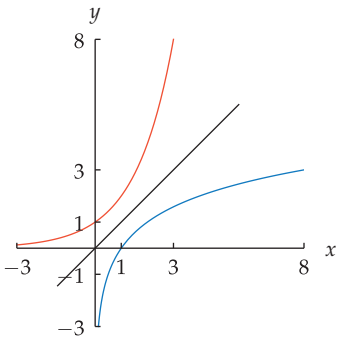
Example 3

Find a number t such that $2^{1/(t-8)} = 5$.

solution The equation above is equivalent to the equation $\log_2 5 = \frac{1}{t-8}$. Solving this equation for t gives $t = \frac{1}{\log_2 5} + 8$.

y	$\log_2 y$
$\frac{1}{8}$	-3
$\frac{1}{4}$	-2
$\frac{1}{2}$	-1
1	0
2	1
4	2
8	3

Interchanging the columns of the previous table gives this table.



The graph of $\log_2 x$ (blue) on $[\frac{1}{8}, 8]$ is obtained by flipping the graph of 2^x (orange) on $[-3, 3]$ across the line $y = x$.

The definition of $\log_2 y$ as the number x such that

$$2^x = y$$

means that if f is the function defined by $f(x) = 2^x$, then the inverse function of f is given by the formula $f^{-1}(y) = \log_2 y$. Thus the table here giving some values of $\log_2 y$ is obtained by interchanging the two columns of the earlier table giving the values of 2^x, as always happens with a function and its inverse.

Expressions such as $\log_2 0$ and $\log_2(-1)$ make no sense because there does not exist a number x such that $2^x = 0$, nor does there exist a number x such that $2^x = -1$.

The figure here shows part of the graph of $\log_2 x$. Because the function $\log_2 x$ is the inverse of the function 2^x, flipping the graph of 2^x across the line $y = x$ gives the graph of $\log_2 x$.

Note that $\log_2$ is a function; thus $\log_2(y)$ might be a better notation than $\log_2 y$. In an expression such as

$$\frac{\log_2 15}{\log_2 5},$$

we cannot cancel $\log_2$ in the numerator and denominator, just as we cannot cancel a function f in the numerator and denominator of $\frac{f(15)}{f(5)}$. Similarly, the expression above is not equal to $\log_2 3$, just as $\frac{f(15)}{f(5)}$ is usually not equal to $f(3)$.

Logarithms with Any Base

We now take up the topic of defining logarithms with bases other than 2. No new ideas are needed for this more general situation—we simply replace 2 by a positive number $b \neq 1$. Here is the formal definition.

Logarithm

Suppose b and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$.

- The **logarithm** base b of y, denoted $\log_b y$, is defined to be the number x such that $b^x = y$.

Short version:

- $\log_b y = x$ means $b^x = y$.

The base $b = 1$ is excluded because $1^x = 1$ for every real number x.

Example 4

(a) Evaluate $\log_{10} 1000$.

(b) Evaluate $\log_7 49$.

(c) Evaluate $\log_3 \frac{1}{81}$.

(d) Evaluate $\log_5 \sqrt{5}$.

solution

(a) $\log_{10} 1000 = 3$ because $10^3 = 1000$.

(b) $\log_7 49 = 2$ because $7^2 = 49$.

(c) $\log_3 \frac{1}{81} = -4$ because $3^{-4} = \frac{1}{81}$.

(d) $\log_5 \sqrt{5} = \frac{1}{2}$ because $5^{1/2} = \sqrt{5}$.

Two important identities follow immediately from the definition.

The logarithm of 1 and the logarithm of the base

If b is a positive number with $b \neq 1$, then

- $\log_b 1 = 0$;
- $\log_b b = 1$.

The first identity holds because $b^0 = 1$; the second holds because $b^1 = b$.

The definition of $\log_b y$ as the number x such that $b^x = y$ has the following consequence.

Logarithm as an inverse function

Suppose b is a positive number with $b \neq 1$ and f is the exponential function defined by $f(x) = b^x$. Then the inverse function of f is given by the formula

$$f^{-1}(y) = \log_b y.$$

Because a function and its inverse interchange domains and ranges, the domain of the function f^{-1} defined by $f^{-1}(y) = \log_b y$ is the set of positive numbers, and the range of this function is the set of real numbers.

Logs have many uses, and the word "log" has more than one meaning.

If $y \leq 0$, then $\log_b y$ is not defined.

Example 5

Suppose f is the function defined by $f(x) = 3 \cdot 5^{x-7}$. Find a formula for f^{-1}.

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation $3 \cdot 5^{x-7} = y$ for x. Dividing by 3, we have $5^{x-7} = \frac{y}{3}$. Thus $x - 7 = \log_5 \frac{y}{3}$, which implies that $x = 7 + \log_5 \frac{y}{3}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = 7 + \log_5 \tfrac{y}{3}.$$

Because the function $\log_b x$ is the inverse of the function b^x, flipping the graph of b^x across the line $y = x$ gives the graph of $\log_b x$. If $b > 1$ then $\log_b x$ is an increasing function (because b^x is an increasing function). As we will see in the next section, the shape of the graph of $\log_b x$ is similar to the shape of the graph of $\log_2 x$ obtained earlier.

The definition of logarithm implies the two equations displayed below. Be sure that you are comfortable with these equations and understand why they hold. Note that if f is defined by $f(x) = b^x$, then $f^{-1}(y) = \log_b y$. The equations below could then be written in the form $(f \circ f^{-1})(y) = y$ and $(f^{-1} \circ f)(x) = x$, which are equations that always hold for a function and its inverse.

Inverse properties of logarithms

If b and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$, and x is a real number, then

- $b^{\log_b y} = y$;
- $\log_b b^x = x$.

Common Logarithms and the Number of Digits

John Napier, the Scottish mathematician who invented logarithms around 1614.

In applications of logarithms, the most commonly used values for the base are 10, 2, and the number e (which we will discuss in Section 3.5). The use of a logarithm with base 10 is so frequent that it gets a special name.

Common logarithm

- The logarithm base 10 is called the **common logarithm**.
- To simplify notation, sometimes logarithms base 10 are written without the base. If no base is displayed, then the base is assumed to be 10. In other words,

$$\log y = \log_{10} y.$$

Thus, for example, $\log 10000 = 4$ (because $10^4 = 10000$) and $\log \frac{1}{100} = -2$ (because $10^{-2} = \frac{1}{100}$). If your calculator has a button labeled "log", then it will compute the logarithm base 10, which is often just called the logarithm.

Note that 10^1 is a two-digit number, 10^2 is a three-digit number, 10^3 is a four-digit number, and more generally, 10^{n-1} is an n-digit number. Thus the integers with n digits are the integers in the interval $[10^{n-1}, 10^n)$. Because $\log 10^{n-1} = n - 1$ and $\log 10^n = n$, this implies that an n-digit positive integer has a logarithm in the interval $[n - 1, n)$.

Alternative statement: If M is a positive integer with n digits, then $n - 1 \leq \log M < n$.

Digits and logarithms

The logarithm of an n-digit positive integer is in the interval $[n - 1, n)$.

The conclusion above is often useful in making estimates. For example, without using a calculator we can see that the number 123456789, which has nine digits, has a logarithm between 8 and 9 (the actual value is about 8.09).

The next example shows how to use the conclusion above to determine the number of digits in a number from its logarithm.

Example 6

Suppose M is a positive integer such that $\log M \approx 73.1$. How many digits does M have?

solution Because 73.1 is in the interval $[73, 74)$, we can conclude that M is a 74-digit number.

Always round up the logarithm of a number to determine the number of digits. Here $\log M \approx 73.1$ is rounded up to show that M has 74 digits.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–6, evaluate the indicated quantities assuming that f and g are the functions defined by

$$f(x) = 2^x \quad \textit{and} \quad g(x) = \frac{x+1}{x+2}.$$

1 $(f \circ g)(-1)$

2 $(g \circ f)(0)$

3 $(f \circ g)(0)$

4 $(g \circ f)\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$

5 $(f \circ f)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$

6 $(f \circ f)\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)$

For Exercises 7–8, find a formula for $f \circ g$ given the indicated functions f and g.

7 $f(x) = 5x^{\sqrt{2}}$, $g(x) = x^{\sqrt{8}}$

8 $f(x) = 7x^{\sqrt{12}}$, $g(x) = x^{\sqrt{3}}$

For Exercises 9–24, evaluate the indicated expression. Do not use a calculator for these exercises.

9 $\log_2 64$

10 $\log_2 1024$

11 $\log_2 \frac{1}{128}$

12 $\log_2 \frac{1}{256}$

13 $\log_4 2$

14 $\log_8 2$

15 $\log_4 8$

16 $\log_8 128$

17 $\log 10000$

18 $\log \frac{1}{1000}$

19 $\log \sqrt{1000}$

20 $\log \frac{1}{\sqrt{10000}}$

21 $\log_2 8^{3.1}$

22 $\log_8 2^{6.3}$

23 $\log_{16} 32$

24 $\log_{27} 81$

25 Find a number y such that $\log_2 y = 7$.

26 Find a number t such that $\log_2 t = 8$.

27 Find a number y such that $\log_2 y = -5$.

28 Find a number t such that $\log_2 t = -9$.

For Exercises 29–36, find a number b such that the indicated equality holds.

29 $\log_b 64 = 1$

30 $\log_b 64 = 2$

31 $\log_b 64 = 3$

32 $\log_b 64 = 6$

33 $\log_b 64 = 12$

34 $\log_b 64 = 18$

35 $\log_b 64 = \frac{3}{2}$

36 $\log_b 64 = \frac{6}{5}$

37 $\log_{3b+1} 25 = 2$.

38 $\log_{b+3} 19 = 2$.

For Exercises 39–52, find all numbers x such that the indicated equation holds.

39 $\log |x| = 2$

40 $\log |x| = 3$

41 $|\log x| = 2$

42 $|\log x| = 3$

43 $\log_3(5x+1) = 2$

44 $\log_4(3x+1) = -2$

45 $13 = 10^{2x}$

46 $59 = 10^{3x}$

47 $\frac{10^x + 1}{10^x + 2} = 0.8$

48 $\frac{10^x + 3.8}{10^x + 3} = 1.1$

49 $10^{2x} + 10^x = 12$

50 $10^{2x} - 3 \cdot 10^x = 18$

51 $5^x + 5^{-x} = 7$

52 $2^x + 2^{-x} = 3$

For Exercises 53–70, find a formula for the inverse function f^{-1} of the indicated function f.

53 $f(x) = 3^x$

54 $f(x) = 4.7^x$

55 $f(x) = 2^{x-5}$

56 $f(x) = 9^{x+6}$

57 $f(x) = 6^x + 7$

58 $f(x) = 5^x - 3$

59 $f(x) = 4 \cdot 5^x$

60 $f(x) = 8 \cdot 7^x$

61 $f(x) = 2 \cdot 9^x + 1$

62 $f(x) = 3 \cdot 4^x - 5$

63 $f(x) = \log_8 x$

64 $f(x) = \log_3 x$

65 $f(x) = \log_4(3x+1)$

66 $f(x) = \log_7(2x-9)$

67 $f(x) = 5 + 3\log_6(2x+1)$

68 $f(x) = 8 + 9\log_2(4x-7)$

69 $f(x) = \log_x 13$

70 $f(x) = \log_{5x} 6$

For Exercises 71–76, find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$ assuming that f and g are the indicated functions.

71 $f(x) = \log_6 x$ and $g(x) = 6^{3x}$

72 $f(x) = \log_5 x$ and $g(x) = 5^{3+2x}$

73 $f(x) = 6^{3x}$ and $g(x) = \log_6 x$

74 $f(x) = 5^{3+2x}$ and $g(x) = \log_5 x$

75 $f(x) = \log_x 3$ and $g(x) = 3^x$

76 $f(x) = \log_x 7$ and $g(x) = 7^{2x}$

77 Find a number n such that $\log_3(\log_5 n) = 1$.

78 Find a number n such that $\log_3(\log_2 n) = 2$.

79 Find a number m such that $\log_7(\log_8 m) = 2$.

80 Find a number m such that $\log_5(\log_6 m) = 3$.

81 Suppose N is a positive integer such that $\log N \approx 35.4$. How many digits does N have?

82 Suppose k is a positive integer such that $\log k \approx 83.2$. How many digits does k have?

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

83 Show that $(3^{\sqrt{2}})^{\sqrt{2}} = 9$.

84 Give an example of irrational numbers x, y, and z such that $(x^y)^z$ is a rational number.

85 Is the function f defined by $f(x) = 2^x$ for every real number x an even function, an odd function, or neither?

86 Suppose $f(x) = 8^x$ and $g(x) = 2^x$. Explain why the graph of g can be obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 3.

87 Suppose $f(x) = 2^x$. Explain why shifting the graph of f left 3 units produces the same graph as vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 8.

88 Explain why there does not exist a polynomial p such that $p(x) = 2^x$ for every real number x.
[*Hint:* Consider behavior of $p(x)$ and 2^x for x near $-\infty$.]

89 Explain why there does not exist a rational function r such that $r(x) = 2^x$ for every real number x.
[*Hint:* Consider behavior of $r(x)$ and 2^x for x near $\pm\infty$.]

90 Explain why $\log_5 \sqrt{5} = \frac{1}{2}$.

91 Explain why $\log_3 100$ is between 4 and 5.

92 Explain why $\log_{40} 3$ is between $\frac{1}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$.

93 Show that $\log_2 3$ is an irrational number.
[*Hint:* Use proof by contradiction: Assume $\log_2 3$ is equal to a rational number $\frac{m}{n}$; write out what this means, and think about even and odd numbers.]

94 Show that $\log 2$ is irrational.

95 Explain why logarithms with a negative base are not defined.

96 Give the coordinates of three distinct points on the graph of the function f defined by $f(x) = \log_3 x$.

97 Give the coordinates of three distinct points on the graph of the function g defined by $g(b) = \log_b 4$.

98 Suppose $g(b) = \log_b 5$, where the domain of g is the interval $(1, \infty)$. Is g an increasing function or a decreasing function?

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

For Exercises 1–6, evaluate the indicated quantities assuming that f and g are the functions defined by

$$f(x) = 2^x \quad \textit{and} \quad g(x) = \frac{x+1}{x+2}.$$

1 $(f \circ g)(-1)$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(-1) = f\big(g(-1)\big) = f(0) = 2^0 = 1$$

3 $(f \circ g)(0)$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(0) = f\big(g(0)\big) = f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = 2^{1/2} \approx 1.414$$

5 $(f \circ f)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ f)\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = f\Big(f\big(\tfrac{1}{2}\big)\Big) &= f(2^{1/2}) \\ &\approx f(1.41421) \\ &= 2^{1.41421} \\ &\approx 2.66514\end{aligned}$$

For Exercises 7–8, find a formula for $f \circ g$ given the indicated functions f and g.

7 $f(x) = 5x^{\sqrt{2}}$, $g(x) = x^{\sqrt{8}}$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(x^{\sqrt{8}})$$
$$= 5(x^{\sqrt{8}})^{\sqrt{2}} = 5x^{\sqrt{16}} = 5x^4$$

For Exercises 9–24, evaluate the indicated expression. Do not use a calculator for these exercises.

9 $\log_2 64$

solution If we let $x = \log_2 64$, then x is the number such that
$$64 = 2^x.$$
Because $64 = 2^6$, we see that $x = 6$. Thus $\log_2 64 = 6$.

11 $\log_2 \frac{1}{128}$

solution If we let $x = \log_2 \frac{1}{128}$, then x is the number such that
$$\frac{1}{128} = 2^x.$$
Because $\frac{1}{128} = \frac{1}{2^7} = 2^{-7}$, we see that $x = -7$. Thus $\log_2 \frac{1}{128} = -7$.

13 $\log_4 2$

solution Because $2 = 4^{1/2}$, we have $\log_4 2 = \frac{1}{2}$.

15 $\log_4 8$

solution Because $8 = 2 \cdot 4 = 4^{1/2} \cdot 4 = 4^{3/2}$, we have $\log_4 8 = \frac{3}{2}$.

17 $\log 10000$

solution
$$\log 10000 = \log 10^4$$
$$= 4$$

19 $\log \sqrt{1000}$

solution
$$\log \sqrt{1000} = \log 1000^{1/2}$$
$$= \log (10^3)^{1/2}$$
$$= \log 10^{3/2}$$
$$= \frac{3}{2}$$

21 $\log_2 8^{3.1}$

solution
$$\log_2 8^{3.1} = \log_2 (2^3)^{3.1}$$
$$= \log_2 2^{9.3}$$
$$= 9.3$$

23 $\log_{16} 32$

solution
$$\log_{16} 32 = \log_{16} 2^5$$
$$= \log_{16} (2^4)^{5/4}$$
$$= \log_{16} 16^{5/4}$$
$$= \frac{5}{4}$$

25 Find a number y such that $\log_2 y = 7$.

solution The equation $\log_2 y = 7$ implies that
$$y = 2^7 = 128.$$

27 Find a number y such that $\log_2 y = -5$.

solution The equation $\log_2 y = -5$ implies that
$$y = 2^{-5} = \frac{1}{32}.$$

For Exercises 29–36, find a number b such that the indicated equality holds.

29 $\log_b 64 = 1$

solution The equation $\log_b 64 = 1$ implies that
$$b^1 = 64.$$
Thus $b = 64$.

31 $\log_b 64 = 3$

solution The equation $\log_b 64 = 3$ implies that
$$b^3 = 64.$$
Because $4^3 = 64$, this implies that $b = 4$.

33 $\log_b 64 = 12$

solution The equation $\log_b 64 = 12$ implies that
$$b^{12} = 64.$$
Thus
$$b = 64^{1/12}$$
$$= (2^6)^{1/12}$$
$$= 2^{6/12}$$
$$= 2^{1/2}$$
$$= \sqrt{2}.$$

35 $\log_b 64 = \frac{3}{2}$

solution The equation $\log_b 64 = \frac{3}{2}$ implies that

$$b^{3/2} = 64.$$

Raising both sides of this equation to the 2/3 power, we get

$$\begin{aligned} b &= 64^{2/3} \\ &= (2^6)^{2/3} \\ &= 2^4 \\ &= 16. \end{aligned}$$

37 $\log_{3b+1} 25 = 2.$

solution The equation $\log_{3b+1} 25 = 2$ implies that

$$(3b+1)^2 = 25.$$

Thus $3b+1 = 5$ (the choice $3b+1 = -5$ is not acceptable because the base for a logarithm must be positive), which implies that $b = \frac{4}{3}$.

For Exercises 39–52, find all numbers x such that the indicated equation holds.

39 $\log |x| = 2$

solution The equation $\log |x| = 2$ is equivalent to the equation

$$|x| = 10^2 = 100.$$

Thus the two values of x satisfying this equation are $x = 100$ and $x = -100$.

41 $|\log x| = 2$

solution The equation $|\log x| = 2$ means that $\log x = 2$ or $\log x = -2$, which means that $x = 10^2 = 100$ or $x = 10^{-2} = \frac{1}{100}$.

43 $\log_3(5x+1) = 2$

solution The equation $\log_3(5x+1) = 2$ implies that $5x+1 = 3^2 = 9$. Thus $5x = 8$, which implies that $x = \frac{8}{5}$.

45 $13 = 10^{2x}$

solution By the definition of logarithm, the equation $13 = 10^{2x}$ implies that $2x = \log 13$. Thus $x = \dfrac{\log 13}{2}$, which is approximately 0.557.

47 $\dfrac{10^x+1}{10^x+2} = 0.8$

solution Multiplying both sides of the equation above by 10^x+2, we get

$$10^x + 1 = 0.8 \cdot 10^x + 1.6.$$

Solving this equation for 10^x gives $10^x = 3$, which means that $x = \log 3 \approx 0.477121$.

49 $10^{2x} + 10^x = 12$

solution Note that $10^{2x} = (10^x)^2$. This suggests that we let $y = 10^x$. Then the equation above can be rewritten as

$$y^2 + y - 12 = 0.$$

The solutions to this equation (which can be found either by using the quadratic formula or by factoring) are $y = -4$ and $y = 3$. Thus $10^x = -4$ or $10^x = 3$. However, there is no real number x such that $10^x = -4$ (because 10^x is positive for every real number x), and thus we must have $10^x = 3$. Thus $x = \log 3 \approx 0.477121$.

51 $5^x + 5^{-x} = 7$

solution Let $y = 5^x$. Thus the equation we want to solve can be rewritten as

$$y + \frac{1}{y} = 7.$$

Multiplying both sides by y and then subtracting $7y$ from both sides, we have

$$y^2 - 7y + 1 = 0.$$

The quadratic formula now tells us that

$$y = \frac{7 \pm 3\sqrt{5}}{2}.$$

The equation $y = 5^x$ means that $x = \log_5 y$. Thus the two values for x that solve our original equation are $\log_5 \frac{7+3\sqrt{5}}{2}$ and $\log_5 \frac{7-3\sqrt{5}}{2}$.

For Exercises 53–70, find a formula for the inverse function f^{-1} of the indicated function f.

53 $f(x) = 3^x$

solution By definition of the logarithm, the inverse of f is the function f^{-1} defined by

$$f^{-1}(y) = \log_3 y.$$

55 $f(x) = 2^{x-5}$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation $2^{x-5} = y$ for x. This equation means that $x - 5 = \log_2 y$. Thus $x = 5 + \log_2 y$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = 5 + \log_2 y.$$

57 $f(x) = 6^x + 7$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation $6^x + 7 = y$ for x. Subtract 7 from both sides, getting $6^x = y - 7$. This equation means that $x = \log_6(y-7)$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \log_6(y-7).$$

59 $f(x) = 4 \cdot 5^x$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation $4 \cdot 5^x = y$ for x. Divide both sides by 4, getting $5^x = \frac{y}{4}$. This equation means that $x = \log_5 \frac{y}{4}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \log_5 \frac{y}{4}.$$

61 $f(x) = 2 \cdot 9^x + 1$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation $2 \cdot 9^x + 1 = y$ for x. Subtract 1 from both sides, then divide both sides by 2, getting $9^x = \frac{y-1}{2}$. This equation means that $x = \log_9 \frac{y-1}{2}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \log_9 \frac{y-1}{2}.$$

63 $f(x) = \log_8 x$

solution By the definition of the logarithm, the inverse of f is the function f^{-1} defined by

$$f^{-1}(y) = 8^y.$$

65 $f(x) = \log_4(3x+1)$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation

$$\log_4(3x+1) = y$$

for x. This equation means that $3x + 1 = 4^y$. Solving for x, we get $x = \frac{4^y - 1}{3}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{4^y - 1}{3}.$$

67 $f(x) = 5 + 3\log_6(2x+1)$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation

$$5 + 3\log_6(2x+1) = y$$

for x. Subtracting 5 from both sides and then dividing by 3 gives

$$\log_6(2x+1) = \frac{y-5}{3}.$$

This equation means that $2x + 1 = 6^{(y-5)/3}$. Solving for x, we get $x = \frac{6^{(y-5)/3} - 1}{2}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{6^{(y-5)/3} - 1}{2}.$$

69 $f(x) = \log_x 13$

solution To find a formula for $f^{-1}(y)$, we solve the equation $\log_x 13 = y$ for x. This equation means that $x^y = 13$. Raising both sides to the power $\frac{1}{y}$, we get $x = 13^{1/y}$. Hence

$$f^{-1}(y) = 13^{1/y}.$$

For Exercises 71–76, find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$ assuming that f and g are the indicated functions.

71 $f(x) = \log_6 x$ and $g(x) = 6^{3x}$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(6^{3x}) = \log_6 6^{3x} = 3x$$

73 $f(x) = 6^{3x}$ and $g(x) = \log_6 x$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(x) &= f\big(g(x)\big) \\ &= f(\log_6 x) \\ &= 6^{3\log_6 x} \\ &= (6^{\log_6 x})^3 \\ &= x^3\end{aligned}$$

75 $f(x) = \log_x 3$ and $g(x) = 3^x$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(x) &= f\big(g(x)\big) \\ &= f(3^x) \\ &= \log_{3^x} 3 \\ &= 1/x,\end{aligned}$$

where the last equation holds because $(3^x)^{1/x} = 3$.

77 Find a number n such that $\log_3(\log_5 n) = 1$.

solution The equation $\log_3(\log_5 n) = 1$ implies that $\log_5 n = 3$, which implies that $n = 5^3 = 125$.

79 Find a number m such that $\log_7(\log_8 m) = 2$.

solution The equation $\log_7(\log_8 m) = 2$ implies that

$$\log_8 m = 7^2 = 49.$$

The equation above now implies that

$$m = 8^{49}.$$

81 Suppose N is a positive integer such that $\log N \approx 35.4$. How many digits does N have?

solution Because 35.4 is in the interval $[35, 36)$, we can conclude that N is a 36-digit number.

3.2 The Power Rule for Logarithms

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- apply the formula for the logarithm of a power;
- model radioactive decay using half-life;
- apply the change-of-base formula for logarithms.

Logarithm of a Power

Logarithms convert powers to products. To see this, suppose b and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$, and t is a real number. Let

$$x = \log_b y.$$

Then the definition of logarithm base b implies

$$b^x = y.$$

Raise both sides of this equation to the power t and use the identity $(b^x)^t = b^{tx}$ to get

$$b^{tx} = y^t.$$

Again using the definition of logarithm base b, the equation above implies

$$\begin{aligned} \log_b(y^t) &= tx \\ &= t \log_b y. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have the following formula for the logarithm of a power.

Logarithm of a power

If b and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$, and t is a real number, then

$$\log_b(y^t) = t \log_b y.$$

For the next example, recall that $\log y$ *with no base displayed means* $\log_{10} y$.

The next example shows a nice application of the formula above.

Example 1

Your calculator cannot evaluate 3^{5000}. *Thus the formula for the logarithm of a power is needed even though a calculator is being used.*

How many digits does 3^{5000} have?

solution We can answer this question by evaluating the common logarithm of 3^{5000}. Using the formula for the logarithm of a power and a calculator, we see that

$$\log(3^{5000}) = 5000 \log 3 \approx 2385.61.$$

Thus 3^{5000} has 2386 digits.

Example 2

Suppose y is a number such that $\log_7 y = 8.6$. Evaluate $\log_7 \sqrt{y}$.

solution $\log_7 \sqrt{y} = \log_7(y^{1/2}) = \frac{1}{2} \log_7 y = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 8.6 = 4.3$

Before calculators and computers existed, books of common logarithm tables were frequently used to compute powers of numbers. As an example of how this worked, consider the problem of evaluating $1.7^{3.7}$. The key to performing this calculation is the formula

$$\log(1.7^{3.7}) = 3.7 \log 1.7.$$

Let's assume we have a book that gives the logarithms of the numbers from 1 to 10 in increments of 0.001, meaning that the book gives the logarithms of 1.001, 1.002, 1.003, and so on.

The idea is first to compute the right side of the equation above. To do that, we would look in the book of logarithms, getting $\log 1.7 \approx 0.230449$. Multiplying the last number by 3.7, we would conclude that the right side of the equation above is approximately 0.852661. Thus, according to the equation above,

$$\log(1.7^{3.7}) \approx 0.852661.$$

Hence we can evaluate $1.7^{3.7}$ by finding a number whose logarithm equals 0.852661. To do this, we would look through our book of logarithms and find that the closest match is provided by the entry showing that $\log 7.123 \approx 0.852663$. Thus

$$1.7^{3.7} \approx 7.123.$$

Logarithms are rarely used today directly by humans for computations such as evaluating $1.7^{3.7}$. However, logarithms are used by your calculator for such computations. Logarithms also have important uses in calculus and several other branches of mathematics. Furthermore, logarithms have several practical uses, as we will soon see.

Books of logarithms have now mostly disappeared. However, your calculator is using the formula

$$\log_b(y^t) = t \log_b y$$

when you ask it to evaluate an expression such as $1.7^{3.7}$.

Radioactive Decay and Half-Life

Scientists have observed that starting with a large sample of radon atoms, after 92 hours one-half of the radon atoms will decay into polonium. After another 92 hours, one-half of the remaining radon atoms will also decay into polonium. In other words, after 184 hours, only one-fourth of the original radon atoms will be left. After another 92 hours, one-half of those remaining one-fourth of the original atoms will decay into polonium, leaving only one-eighth of the original radon atoms after 276 hours.

After t hours, the number of radon atoms will be reduced by half $t/92$ times. Thus after t hours, the number of radon atoms left will equal the original number of radon atoms divided by $2^{t/92}$. Here t need not be an integer multiple of 92. For example, after five hours the original number of radon atoms will be divided by $2^{5/92}$. Because

$$\frac{1}{2^{5/92}} \approx 0.963,$$

this means that after five hours a sample of radon will contain 96.3% of the original number of radon atoms.

Because half the atoms in any sample of radon will decay to polonium in 92 hours, we say that radon has a **half-life** of 92 hours. Some radon atoms exist for less than 92 hours; some radon atoms exist for much longer than 92 hours.

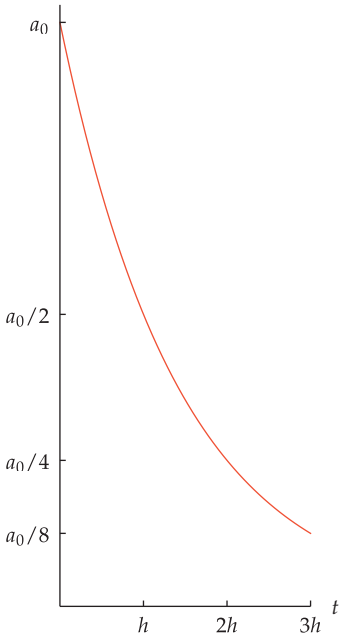
The half-life of a radioactive isotope is the time it takes for half the atoms in a large sample of the isotope to decay. The table here gives the approximate half-life for several radioactive isotopes (the isotope number shown after the name of each element gives the total number of protons and neutrons in each atom of the isotope).

Some of the isotopes in this table are human creations that do not exist in nature. For example, the nitrogen on Earth is almost entirely nitrogen-14 (7 protons and 7 neutrons), which is not radioactive and does not decay. The nitrogen-13 listed here has 7 protons and 6 neutrons; it can be created in a laboratory, but it is radioactive and half of it will decay within 10 minutes.

Marie Curie, the only person ever to win Nobel Prizes in both physics (1903) and chemistry (1911), did pioneering work on radioactive decay.

isotope	*half-life*
neon-18	*2 seconds*
nitrogen-13	*10 minutes*
radon-222	*92 hours*
polonium-210	*138 days*
cesium-137	*30 years*
carbon-14	*5730 years*
plutonium-239	*24,110 years*

Half-life of some radioactive isotopes.



The graph of $a(t) = a_0 \cdot 2^{-t/h}$, which is the radioactive decay function with half-life h, on the interval $[0, 3h]$.

If a radioactive isotope has a half-life of h time units (which might be seconds, minutes, hours, days, or years), then after t time units the number of atoms of this isotope is reduced by half t/h times. Thus after t time units, the remaining number of atoms of the isotope will equal the original number of atoms divided by $2^{t/h}$. Because

$$\frac{1}{2^{t/h}} = 2^{-t/h},$$

we have the following result.

Radioactive decay

If a radioactive isotope has half-life h, then the function modeling the number of atoms in a sample of this isotope is

$$a(t) = a_0 \cdot 2^{-t/h},$$

where a_0 is the number of atoms of the isotope in the sample at time 0.

The radioactive decay of carbon-14 has led to a clever way of determining the age of fossils, wood, and other remnants of plants and animals. Carbon-12, by far the most common form of carbon on Earth, is not radioactive; carbon-12 does not decay.

Radioactive carbon-14 is produced regularly as cosmic rays hit the upper atmosphere. Radioactive carbon-14 then drifts down, getting into plants through photosynthesis and then into animals that eat plants and then into animals that eat animals that eat plants, and so on. Carbon-14 accounts for about 10^{-10} percent of the carbon atoms in living plants and animals.

The 1960 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Willard Libby for his invention of this carbon-14 dating method.

When a plant or animal dies, it stops absorbing new carbon because it is no longer engaging in photosynthesis or eating. Thus no new carbon-14 is absorbed. The radioactive carbon-14 in the plant or animal decays, with half of it gone after 5730 years (the half-life of carbon-14). By measuring the amount of carbon-14 as a percentage of the total amount of carbon in the remains of a plant or animal, we can then determine how long ago it died.

Example 3

Suppose a cat skeleton found in an old well has a ratio of carbon-14 to carbon-12 that is 61% of the corresponding ratio for living organisms. Approximately how long ago did the cat die?

The author's cat.

solution If t denotes the number of years since the cat died, then

$$0.61 = 2^{-t/5730}.$$

To solve this equation for t, take the logarithm of both sides, getting

$$\log 0.61 = -\frac{t}{5730} \log 2.$$

Solve this equation for t, getting

$$t = -5730 \frac{\log 0.61}{\log 2} \approx 4086.$$

Because we started with only two-digit accuracy (61%), we should not produce such an exact-looking estimate. Thus we might estimate that the skeleton is about 4100 years old.

Change of Base

If you want to use a calculator to evaluate something like $\log_2 73.9$, then you need a formula for converting logarithms from one base to another. To derive this formula, suppose a, b, and y are positive numbers, with $a \neq 1$ and $b \neq 1$. Let

$$x = \log_b y.$$

Then the definition of logarithm base b implies

$$b^x = y.$$

Take the logarithm base a of both sides of the equation above, getting

$$x \log_a b = \log_a y.$$

Thus

$$x = \frac{\log_a y}{\log_a b}.$$

Replacing x in the equation above with its value $\log_b y$ gives the following formula for converting logarithms from one base to another.

Your calculator can probably evaluate logarithms for only two bases. One of these is the logarithm base 10 (the common logarithm, labeled log *on most calculators). The other is the logarithm base e (this is the natural logarithm that we will discuss in Section 3.5; it labeled* ln *on most calculators).*

Change of base for logarithms

If a, b, and y are positive numbers, with $a \neq 1$ and $b \neq 1$, then

$$\log_b y = \frac{\log_a y}{\log_a b}.$$

A special case of this formula, suitable for use with calculators, is to take $a = 10$, thus using common logarithms and getting the following formula.

Change of base with common logarithms

If b and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$, then

$$\log_b y = \frac{\log y}{\log b}.$$

Caution: In WolframAlpha and other advanced software, log *with no base specified means logarithm base e instead of logaritm base* 10. *Thus use* log_10 6.8 *to evaluate the common logarithm of* 6.8 *in WolframAlpha; the underscore _ denotes a subscript.*

Example 4

Evaluate $\log_2 73.9$.

solution Use a calculator with $b = 2$ and $y = 73.9$ in the formula above, getting

$$\log_2 73.9 = \frac{\log 73.9}{\log 2} \approx 6.2075.$$

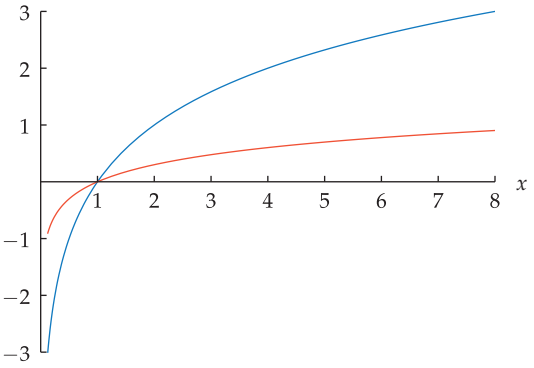
Note that $2^6 = 64$ and $2^7 = 128$. Because 73.9 is between 64 and 128, the answer above of 6.2075, which is between 6 and 7, is quite plausible.

The change-of-base formula for logarithms implies that the graph of the logarithm using any base can be obtained by vertically stretching the graph of the logarithm using any other base (assuming both bases are bigger than 1), as shown in the following example.

Example 5

Sketch the graphs of $\log_2 x$ and $\log x$ on the interval $[\frac{1}{8}, 8]$. What is the relationship between these two graphs?

solution The change-of-base formula implies that $\log_2 x = (\log x)/(\log 2)$. Because $1/(\log 2) \approx 3.32$, this means that the graph of $\log_2 x$ is obtained from the graph of $\log x$ by stretching vertically by a factor of approximately 3.32.



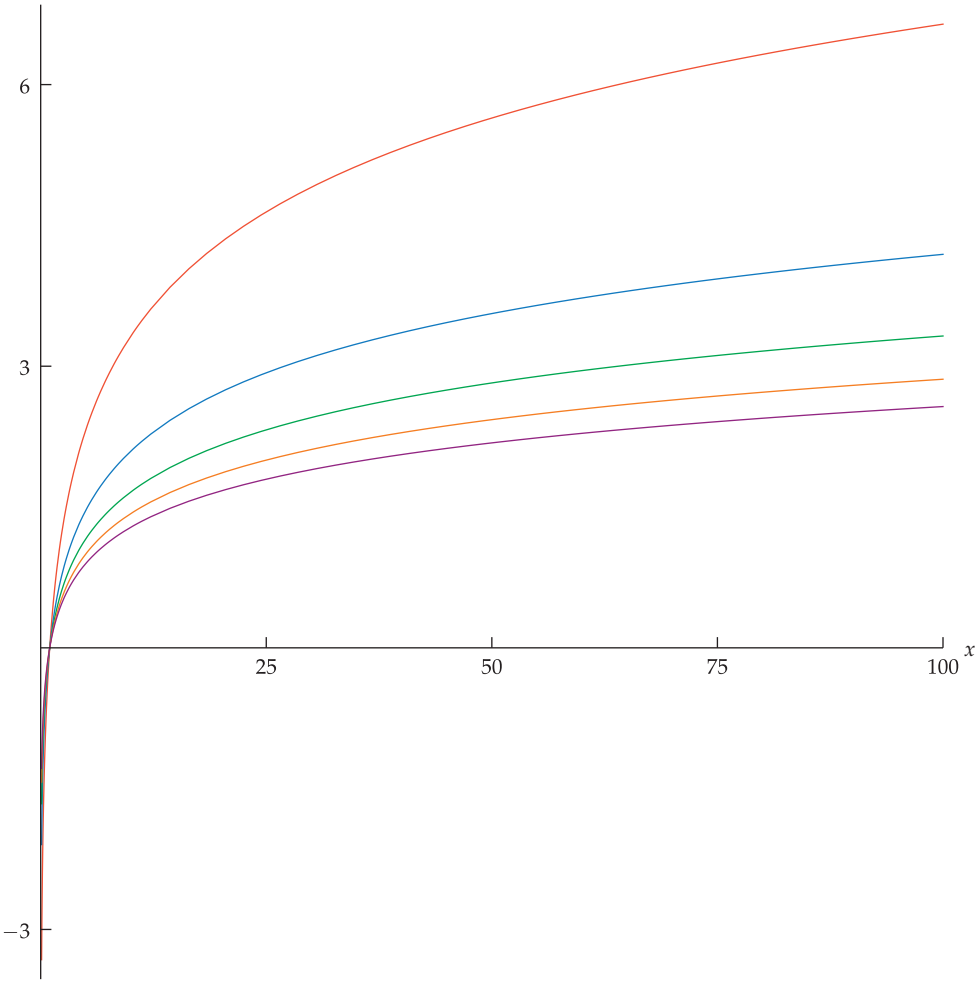
The graphs of $\log_2 x$ *(blue) and* $\log x$ *(orange) on the interval* $[\frac{1}{8}, 8]$.

The two graphs intersect at the point $(1, 0)$ *because* $\log 1 = \log_2 1 = 0$.

More generally, for fixed positive numbers a and b, neither of which is 1, the change-of-base formula

$$\log_a x = (\log_a b) \log_b x$$

implies that the graph of $\log_a x$ can be obtained from the graph of $\log_b x$ by stretching vertically by a factor of $\log_a b$.



The graphs of $\log_2 x$ *(orange),* $\log_3 x$ *(blue),* $\log_4 x$ *(green),* $\log_5 x$ *(beige), and* $\log_6 x$ *(purple) on the interval* $[0.1, 100]$. *All five graphs intersect at the point* $(1, 0)$ *because* $\log_b 1 = 0$ *for each base* b.

Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log(x^y)$ does not equal $(\log x)^y$.

1 For $x = 5$ and $y = 2$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\log(x^y)$ (b) $(\log x)^y$

2 For $x = 2$ and $y = 3$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\log(x^y)$ (b) $(\log x)^y$

3 Suppose t is such that $\log_2 t = 17.67$. Evaluate $\log_2(t^{100})$.

4 Suppose x is such that $\log_6 x = 23.41$. Evaluate $\log_6(x^{10})$.

5 Suppose y is such that $\log_5 y = 4.62$. Evaluate $\log_5 \sqrt{y}$.

6 Suppose w is such that $\log_7 w = 8.24$. Evaluate $\log_7 \sqrt{w}$.

7 Suppose u is such that $\log_3 u = 2.68$. Evaluate $\log_9 u$.

8 Suppose v is such that $\log_8 v = 3.12$. Evaluate $\log_2 v$.

For Exercises 9–12, find all numbers x such that the indicated equation holds.

9 $3^x = 8$

10 $7^x = 5$

11 $6^{\sqrt{x}} = 2$

12 $5^{\sqrt{x}} = 9$

13 Suppose m is a positive integer such that $\log m \approx 13.2$. How many digits does m^3 have?

14 Suppose M is a positive integer such that $\log M \approx 50.3$. How many digits does M^4 have?

15 How many digits does 7^{4000} have?

16 How many digits does 8^{4444} have?

17 Find an integer k such that 18^k has 357 digits.

18 Find an integer n such that 22^n has 222 digits.

19 Find an integer m such that m^{1234} has 1991 digits.

20 Find an integer N such that N^{4321} has 6041 digits.

21 Find the smallest integer n such that $7^n > 10^{100}$.

22 Find the smallest integer k such that $9^k > 10^{1000}$.

23 Find the smallest integer M such that $5^{1/M} < 1.01$.

24 Find the smallest integer m such that $8^{1/m} < 1.001$.

25 Suppose $\log_8(\log_7 m) = 5$. How many digits does m have?

26 Suppose $\log_5(\log_9 m) = 6$. How many digits does m have?

***A* prime number *is an integer greater than* 1 *that has no divisors other than itself and* 1.**

27 At the time this book was written, the third largest known prime number was $2^{43112609} - 1$. How many digits does this prime number have?

28 At the time this book was written, the second largest known prime number was $2^{57885161} - 1$. How many digits does this prime number have?

29 About how many hours will it take for a sample of radon-222 to have only one-eighth as much radon-222 as the original sample?

30 About how many minutes will it take for a sample of nitrogen-13 to have only one sixty-fourth as much nitrogen-13 as the original sample?

31 About how many years will it take for a sample of cesium-137 to have only two-thirds as much cesium-137 as the original sample?

32 About how many years will it take for a sample of plutonium-239 to have only 1% as much plutonium-239 as the original sample?

33 Suppose a radioactive isotope is such that one-fifth of the atoms in a sample decay after three years. Find the half-life of this isotope.

34 Suppose a radioactive isotope is such that five-sixths of the atoms in a sample decay after four days. Find the half-life of this isotope.

35 Suppose the ratio of carbon-14 to carbon-12 in a mummified cat is 64% of the corresponding ratio for living organisms. About how long ago did the cat die?

36 Suppose the ratio of carbon-14 to carbon-12 in a fossilized wooden tool is 20% of the corresponding ratio for living organisms. About how old is the wooden tool?

For Exercises 37–44, evaluate the indicated quantities. Your calculator probably cannot evaluate logarithms using any of the bases in these exercises, so you will need to use an appropriate change-of-base formula.

37 $\log_2 13$

38 $\log_4 27$

39 $\log_{13} 9.72$

40 $\log_{17} 12.31$

41 $\log_9 0.23$

42 $\log_7 0.58$

43 $\log_{4.38} 7.1$

44 $\log_{5.06} 99.2$

For Exercises 45–48, find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$ assuming that f and g are the indicated functions.

45 $f(x) = \log_x 4$ and $g(x) = 10^x$

46 $f(x) = \log_{2x} 7$ and $g(x) = 10^x$

47 $f(x) = \log_x 4$ and $g(x) = 100^x$

48 $f(x) = \log_{2x} 7$ and $g(x) = 100^x$

Problems

49 Explain why there does not exist an integer m such that 67^m has 9236 digits.

50 Suppose $f(x) = \log x$ and $g(x) = \log(x^4)$, with the domain of both f and g being the set of positive numbers. Explain why the graph of g can be obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 4.

51 Do a web search to find the largest currently known prime number. Then calculate the number of digits in this number.
[*The discovery of a new largest known prime number usually gets some newspaper coverage, including a statement of the number of digits. Thus you can probably find on the web the number of digits in the largest currently known prime number; you are asked here to do the calculation to verify that the reported number of digits is correct.*]

52 Explain why

$$\frac{\log_b \sqrt{27}}{3} = \log_b \frac{\sqrt{27}}{3}.$$

for every positive number $b \neq 1$.

53 Suppose x and b are positive numbers with $b \neq 1$. Show that if $x \neq \sqrt{27}$, then

$$\frac{\log_b x}{3} \neq \log_b \frac{x}{3}.$$

54 Find a positive number x such that

$$\frac{\log_b x}{4} = \log_b \frac{x}{4}$$

for every positive number $b \neq 1$.

55 Explain why expressing a large positive integer in binary notation (base 2) should take approximately 3.3 times as many digits as expressing the same positive integer in standard decimal notation (base 10).
[*For example, this problem predicts that five trillion, which requires the* 13 *digits* 5,000,000,000,000 *to express in decimal notation, should require approximately* 13×3.3 *digits (which equals* 42.9 *digits) to express in binary notation. Expressing five trillion in binary notation actually requires* 43 *digits.*]

56 Suppose a and b are positive numbers, with $a \neq 1$ and $b \neq 1$. Show that

$$\log_a b = \frac{1}{\log_b a}.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log(x^y)$ ***does not equal*** $(\log x)^y$.

1 For $x = 5$ and $y = 2$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\log(x^y)$ (b) $(\log x)^y$

solution

(a) $\log(5^2) = \log 25 \approx 1.39794$
(b) $(\log 5)^2 \approx (0.69897)^2 \approx 0.48856$

3 Suppose t is such that $\log_2 t = 17.67$. Evaluate $\log_2(t^{100})$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_2(t^{100}) &= 100 \log_2 t \\ &= 100 \cdot 17.67 \\ &= 1767\end{aligned}$$

5 Suppose y is such that $\log_5 y = 4.62$. Evaluate $\log_5 \sqrt{y}$.

solution

$$\log_5 \sqrt{y} = \log_5 y^{1/2} = \frac{1}{2} \log_5 y = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 4.62 = 2.31$$

7 Suppose u is such that $\log_3 u = 2.68$. Evaluate $\log_9 u$.

solution $\log_9 u = \dfrac{\log_3 u}{\log_3 9} = \dfrac{2.68}{2} = 1.34$

For Exercises 9–12, find all numbers x such that the indicated equation holds.

9 $3^x = 8$

solution Take the common logarithm of both sides, getting $\log(3^x) = \log 8$, which can be rewritten as $x \log 3 = \log 8$. Thus

$$x = \frac{\log 8}{\log 3} \approx 1.89279.$$

11 $6^{\sqrt{x}} = 2$

solution Take the common logarithm of both sides, getting $\log(6^{\sqrt{x}}) = \log 2$, which can be rewritten as $\sqrt{x} \log 6 = \log 2$. Thus $\sqrt{x} = \dfrac{\log 2}{\log 6}$. Hence

$$x = \left(\frac{\log 2}{\log 6}\right)^2 \approx 0.149655.$$

13 Suppose m is a positive integer such that $\log m \approx 13.2$. How many digits does m^3 have?

solution Note that

$$\log(m^3) = 3 \log m \approx 3 \times 13.2 = 39.6.$$

Because 39.6 is in the interval $[39, 40)$, we can conclude that m^3 is a 40-digit number.

15 How many digits does 7^{4000} have?

solution Using the formula for the logarithm of a power and a calculator, we have

$$\log(7^{4000}) = 4000 \log 7 \approx 3380.39.$$

Thus 7^{4000} has 3381 digits.

17 Find an integer k such that 18^k has 357 digits.

solution We want to find an integer k such that

$$356 \leq \log(18^k) < 357.$$

Using the formula for the logarithm of a power, we can rewrite the inequalities above as

$$356 \leq k \log 18 < 357.$$

Dividing by $\log 18$ gives

$$\frac{356}{\log 18} \le k < \frac{357}{\log 18}.$$

Using a calculator, we see that $\frac{356}{\log 18} \approx 283.6$ and $\frac{357}{\log 18} \approx 284.4$. Thus the only possible choice is to take $k = 284$.

Again using a calculator, we see that

$$\log(18^{284}) = 284 \log 18 \approx 356.5.$$

Thus 18^{284} indeed has 357 digits.

19 Find an integer m such that m^{1234} has 1991 digits.

solution We want to find an integer m such that

$$1990 \le \log(m^{1234}) < 1991.$$

Using the formula for the logarithm of a power, we can rewrite the inequalities above as

$$1990 \le 1234 \log m < 1991.$$

Dividing by 1234 gives $\frac{1990}{1234} \le \log m < \frac{1991}{1234}$. Thus

$$10^{1990/1234} \le m < 10^{1991/1234}.$$

Using a calculator, we see that $10^{1990/1234} \approx 40.99$ and $10^{1991/1234} \approx 41.06$. Thus the only possible choice is to take $m = 41$.

Again using a calculator, we see that

$$\log(41^{1234}) = 1234 \log 41 \approx 1990.18.$$

Thus 41^{1234} indeed has 1991 digits.

21 Find the smallest integer n such that $7^n > 10^{100}$.

solution Suppose $7^n > 10^{100}$. Taking the common logarithm of both sides, we have

$$\log(7^n) > \log(10^{100}),$$

which can be rewritten as

$$n \log 7 > 100.$$

This implies that $n > \frac{100}{\log 7} \approx 118.33$. The smallest integer that is bigger than 118.33 is 119. Thus we take $n = 119$.

23 Find the smallest integer M such that $5^{1/M} < 1.01$.

solution Suppose $5^{1/M} < 1.01$. Taking the common logarithm of both sides, we have

$$\log(5^{1/M}) < \log 1.01,$$

which can be rewritten as

$$\frac{\log 5}{M} < \log 1.01.$$

This implies that

$$M > \frac{\log 5}{\log 1.01} \approx 161.7.$$

The smallest integer that is bigger than 161.7 is 162. Thus we take $M = 162$.

25 Suppose $\log_8(\log_7 m) = 5$. How many digits does m have?

solution The equation $\log_8(\log_7 m) = 5$ implies that

$$\log_7 m = 8^5 = 32768.$$

The equation above now implies that

$$m = 7^{32768}.$$

To compute the number of digits that m has, note that

$$\log m = \log(7^{32768}) = 32768 \log 7 \approx 27692.2.$$

Thus m has 27693 digits.

***A* prime number *is an integer greater than* 1 *that has no divisors other than itself and* 1.**

27 At the time this book was written, the third largest known prime number was $2^{43112609} - 1$. How many digits does this prime number have?

solution To calculate the number of digits in $2^{43112609} - 1$, we need to evaluate $\log(2^{43112609} - 1)$. However, $2^{43112609} - 1$ is too large to evaluate directly on a calculator, and no formula exists for the logarithm of the difference of two numbers.

The trick here is to note that $2^{43112609}$ and $2^{43112609} - 1$ have the same number of digits, as we will now see. Although it is possible for a number and the number minus 1 to have a different number of digits (for example, 100 and 99 do not have the same number of digits), this happens only if the larger of the two numbers consists of 1 followed by a bunch of 0's and the smaller of the two numbers consists of all 9's. Here are three different ways to see that this situation does not apply to $2^{43112609}$ and $2^{43112609} - 1$ (pick whichever explanation seems easiest to you): (a) $2^{43112609}$ cannot end in a 0 because all positive integer powers of 2 end in either 2, 4, 6, or 8; (b) $2^{43112609}$ cannot end in a 0 because then it would be divisible by 5, but $2^{43112609}$ is divisible only by integer powers of 2; (c) $2^{43112609} - 1$ cannot consist of all 9's because then it would be divisible by 9, which is not possible for a prime number.

Now that we know that $2^{43112609}$ and $2^{43112609} - 1$ have the same number of digits, we can calculate the number of digits by taking the logarithm of $2^{43112609}$ and using the formula for the logarithm of a power. We have

$$\log(2^{43112609}) = 43112609 \log 2 \approx 12978188.5.$$

Thus $2^{43112609}$ has 12,978,189 digits; hence $2^{43112609} - 1$ also has 12,978,189 digits.

29 About how many hours will it take for a sample of radon-222 to have only one-eighth as much radon-222 as the original sample?

solution The half-life of radon-222 is about 92 hours, as shown in the chart in this section. To reduce the number of radon-222 atoms to one-eighth the original number, we need 3 half-lives (because $2^3 = 8$). Thus it will take 276 hours (because $92 \times 3 = 276$) to have only one-eighth as much radon-222 as the original sample.

31 About how many years will it take for a sample of cesium-137 to have only two-thirds as much cesium-137 as the original sample?

solution The half-life of cesium-137 is about 30 years, as shown in the chart in this section. Thus if we start with a atoms of cesium-137 at time 0, then after t years there will be

$$a \cdot 2^{-t/30}$$

atoms left. We want this to equal $\frac{2}{3}a$. Thus we must solve the equation

$$a \cdot 2^{-t/30} = \frac{2}{3}a.$$

To solve this equation for t, divide both sides by a and then take the logarithm of both sides, getting

$$-\frac{t}{30}\log 2 = \log \frac{2}{3}.$$

Now solve for t, getting

$$t = -30\frac{\log \frac{2}{3}}{\log 2} \approx 17.5.$$

Thus two-thirds of the original sample will be left after approximately 17.5 years.

33 Suppose a radioactive isotope is such that one-fifth of the atoms in a sample decay after three years. Find the half-life of this isotope.

solution Let h denote the half-life of this isotope, measured in years. If we start with a sample of a atoms of this isotope, then after 3 years there will be

$$a \cdot 2^{-3/h}$$

atoms left. We want this to equal $\frac{4}{5}a$. Thus we must solve the equation

$$a \cdot 2^{-3/h} = \frac{4}{5}a.$$

To solve this equation for h, divide both sides by a and then take the logarithm of both sides, getting

$$-\frac{3}{h}\log 2 = \log \frac{4}{5}.$$

Now solve for h, getting

$$h = -3\frac{\log 2}{\log \frac{4}{5}} \approx 9.3.$$

Thus the half-life of this isotope is approximately 9.3 years.

35 Suppose the ratio of carbon-14 to carbon-12 in a mummified cat is 64% of the corresponding ratio for living organisms. About how long ago did the cat die?

solution The half-life of carbon-14 is 5730 years. If we start with a sample of a atoms of carbon-14, then after t years there will be $a \cdot 2^{-t/5730}$ atoms left. We want to find t such that this equals $0.64a$. Thus we must solve the equation

$$a \cdot 2^{-t/5730} = 0.64a.$$

To solve this equation for t, divide both sides by a and then take the logarithm of both sides, getting

$$-\frac{t}{5730}\log 2 = \log 0.64.$$

Now solve for t, getting

$$t = -5730\frac{\log 0.64}{\log 2} \approx 3689.$$

Thus the cat died about 3689 years ago. Carbon-14 cannot be measured with extreme accuracy. Thus it is better to estimate that the cat died about 3700 years ago (because a number such as 3689 conveys more accuracy than is possible in such measurements).

For Exercises 37–44, evaluate the indicated quantities. Your calculator probably cannot evaluate logarithms using any of the bases in these exercises, so you will need to use an appropriate change-of-base formula.

37 $\log_2 13$

solution $\log_2 13 = \dfrac{\log 13}{\log 2} \approx 3.70044$

39 $\log_{13} 9.72$

solution $\log_{13} 9.72 = \dfrac{\log 9.72}{\log 13} \approx 0.88664$

41 $\log_9 0.23$

solution $\log_9 0.23 = \dfrac{\log 0.23}{\log 9} \approx -0.668878$

43 $\log_{4.38} 7.1$

solution $\log_{4.38} 7.1 = \dfrac{\log 7.1}{\log 4.38} \approx 1.32703$

For Exercises 45–48, find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$ assuming that f and g are the indicated functions.

45 $f(x) = \log_x 4$ and $g(x) = 10^x$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) &= f(10^x)\\ &= \log_{10^x} 4\\ &= \frac{\log 4}{\log 10^x}\\ &= \frac{\log 4}{x}\end{aligned}$$

47 $f(x) = \log_x 4$ and $g(x) = 100^x$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) &= f(100^x)\\ &= \log_{100^x} 4\\ &= \frac{\log 4}{\log 100^x}\\ &= \frac{\log 4}{\log 10^{2x}}\\ &= \frac{\log 4}{2x}\end{aligned}$$

3.3 The Product and Quotient Rules for Logarithms

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- apply the formula for the logarithm of a product;
- apply the formula for the logarithm of a quotient;
- model earthquake intensity with the logarithmic Richter magnitude scale;
- model sound intensity with the logarithmic decibel scale;
- model star brightness with the logarithmic apparent magnitude scale.

Logarithm of a Product

Logarithms convert products to sums. To see this, suppose b, x, and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$. Let

$$u = \log_b x \quad \text{and} \quad v = \log_b y.$$

Then the definition of logarithm base b implies

$$b^u = x \quad \text{and} \quad b^v = y.$$

Multiplying together these equations and using the identity $b^u b^v = b^{u+v}$ gives

$$b^{u+v} = xy.$$

Again using the definition of logarithm base b, the equation above implies

$$\begin{aligned} \log_b(xy) &= u + v \\ &= \log_b x + \log_b y. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have the following formula for the logarithm of a product.

Logarithm of a product

If b, x, and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$, then

$$\log_b(xy) = \log_b x + \log_b y.$$

In general, $\log_b(x+y)$ does not equal $\log_b x + \log_b y$. There is no nice formula for $\log_b(x+y)$.

Example 1

Use the information that $\log 6 \approx 0.778$ to evaluate $\log 60000$.

solution We can evaluate $\log 60000$ by writing 60000 as a power of 10 times 6:

$$\begin{aligned} \log 60000 &= \log(10^4 \cdot 6) \\ &= \log(10^4) + \log 6 \\ &= 4 + \log 6 \\ &\approx 4.778. \end{aligned}$$

Every positive number y can be written in the form $y = 10^m t$ for some integer m and some number t between 1 and 10. Thus $\log y = m + \log t$, as in this example. This observation explains why old books of logarithms included logs only for numbers between 1 and 10.

Logarithm of a Quotient

Logarithms convert quotients to differences. To see this, suppose b, x, and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$. Let

$$u = \log_b x \quad \text{and} \quad v = \log_b y.$$

Then the definition of logarithm base b implies

$$b^u = x \quad \text{and} \quad b^v = y.$$

Divide the first equation by the second equation and use the identity $\frac{b^u}{b^v} = b^{u-v}$ to get

$$b^{u-v} = \frac{x}{y}.$$

Again using the definition of logarithm base b, the equation above implies

$$\begin{aligned} \log_b \frac{x}{y} &= u - v \\ &= \log_b x - \log_b y. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have the following formula for the logarithm of a quotient.

Logarithm of a quotient

$$\log_b \frac{x}{y} = \log_b x - \log_b y.$$

Here and in the box below, we assume that b, x, and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$.

Example 2 Suppose $\log_4 x = 8.9$ and $\log_4 y = 2.2$. Evaluate $\log_4 \frac{4x}{y}$.

solution Using the quotient and product rules, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \log_4 \frac{4x}{y} &= \log_4(4x) - \log_4 y \\ &= \log_4 4 + \log_4 x - \log_4 y \\ &= 1 + 8.9 - 2.2 \\ &= 7.7. \end{aligned}$$

In general, $\log_b(x - y)$ does not equal $\log_b x - \log_b y$. There is no nice formula for $\log_b(x - y)$.

As a special case of the formula for the logarithm of a quotient, take $x = 1$ in the formula above for the logarithm of a quotient, getting

$$\log_b \frac{1}{y} = \log_b 1 - \log_b y.$$

Recalling that $\log_b 1 = 0$, we get the following result.

Logarithm of a multiplicative inverse

$$\log_b \frac{1}{y} = -\log_b y.$$

Earthquakes and the Richter Scale

The intensity of an earthquake is measured by the size of the seismic waves generated by the earthquake (technically, "size" here means "amplitude", which we will discuss in Section 5.7). These numbers vary across such a huge scale that earthquakes are usually reported using the Richter magnitude scale, which is a logarithmic scale using common logarithms (base 10).

Poster from the 1974 movie Earthquake.

Richter magnitude scale

An earthquake with seismic waves of size S has **Richter magnitude**

$$\log \frac{S}{S_0},$$

where S_0 is the size of the seismic waves corresponding to what has been declared to be an earthquake with Richter magnitude 0.

A few points will help clarify this definition:

- The value of S_0 was set in 1935 by the American seismologist Charles Richter as approximately the size of the smallest seismic waves that could be measured at that time.
- The unit used to measure S and S_0 does not matter because any change in the scale of this unit disappears in the ratio $\frac{S}{S_0}$.
- An increase in the size of seismic waves by a factor of 10 corresponds to an increase of 1 in Richter magnitude, as can be seen from the equation

$$\log \frac{10S}{S_0} = \log 10 + \log \frac{S}{S_0} = 1 + \log \frac{S}{S_0}.$$

The size of the seismic wave is roughly proportional to the amount of ground shaking.

Example 3

The world's most intense recorded earthquake struck Chile in 1960 with Richter magnitude 9.5. The most intense recorded earthquake in the United States struck Alaska in 1964 with Richter magnitude 9.2. What is the approximate ratio of the size of the seismic waves in the 1960 earthquake in Chile to the size of the seismic waves in the 1964 earthquake in Alaska?

solution Let S_C denote the size of the seismic waves from the 1960 earthquake in Chile and let S_A denote the size of the seismic waves from the 1964 earthquake in Alaska. Thus

$$9.5 = \log \frac{S_C}{S_0} \quad \text{and} \quad 9.2 = \log \frac{S_A}{S_0}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we get

$$0.3 = \log \frac{S_C}{S_0} - \log \frac{S_A}{S_0} = \log\left(\frac{S_C}{S_0} \Big/ \frac{S_A}{S_0}\right) = \log \frac{S_C}{S_A}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{S_C}{S_A} = 10^{0.3} \approx 2.$$

In other words, the 1960 earthquake in Chile had seismic waves approximately twice the size of the seismic waves in the 1964 earthquake in Alaska.

As this example shows, even small differences in the Richter magnitude can correspond to large differences in intensity.

Sound Intensity and Decibels

The intensity of a sound is the amount of energy carried by the sound through each unit of area.

The ratio of the intensity of sound causing pain to the intensity of the quietest sound we can hear is over one trillion. Working with such large numbers can be inconvenient. Thus sound is measured on a logarithmic scale called decibels.

Decibel scale for sound

A sound with intensity E has

$$10 \log \frac{E}{E_0}$$

decibels, where E_0 is the intensity of an extremely quiet sound at the threshold of human hearing.

The factor of 10 in the definition of the decibel scale is a minor nuisance. The "deci" part of the name "decibel" comes from this factor of 10.

A few points will help clarify this definition:

- The value of E_0 is 10^{-12} watts per square meter.
- The intensity of sound is usually measured in watts per square meter, but the unit used to measure E and E_0 does not matter because any change in the scale of this unit disappears in the ratio $\frac{E}{E_0}$.
- Multiplying sound intensity by a factor of 10 corresponds to adding 10 to the decibel measurement, as can be seen from the equation

$$10 \log \frac{10E}{E_0} = 10 \log 10 + 10 \log \frac{E}{E_0} = 10 + 10 \log \frac{E}{E_0}.$$

Example 4

French law limits smartphones to a maximum possible volume of 100 decibels. Normal conversation has a sound level of 65 decibels. What is the ratio of the intensity of a sound of 100 decibels to the intensity of normal conversation?

solution Let E_F denote the sound intensity of 100 decibels allowed in France and let E_C denote the sound intensity of normal conversation. Thus

$$100 = 10 \log \frac{E_F}{E_0} \quad \text{and} \quad 65 = 10 \log \frac{E_C}{E_0}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we get

$$35 = 10 \log \frac{E_F}{E_0} - 10 \log \frac{E_C}{E_0}.$$

Thus

$$3.5 = \log \frac{E_F}{E_0} - \log \frac{E_C}{E_0} = \log \left(\frac{E_F}{E_0} \Big/ \frac{E_C}{E_0} \right) = \log \frac{E_F}{E_C}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{E_F}{E_C} = 10^{3.5} \approx 3162.$$

Hence a smartphone operating at the maximum legal French volume of 100 decibels produces sound intensity about three thousand times the sound intensity of normal conversation.

The increase in sound intensity by a factor of more than 3000 in the last example is not as drastic as it seems because of how we perceive loudness.

Loudness

The human ear perceives each increase in sound by 10 decibels to be a doubling of loudness (even though the sound intensity has actually increased by a factor of 10).

Example 5

By what factor has the loudness increased in going from normal speech at 65 decibels to a smartphone at 100 decibels?

solution Here we have an increase of 35 decibels, so we have had an increase of 10 decibels 3.5 times. Thus the perceived loudness has doubled 3.5 times, which means that it has increased by a factor of $2^{3.5}$. Because $2^{3.5} \approx 11$, this means that a smartphone operating at 100 decibels seems about 11 times as loud as normal conversation.

Star Brightness and Apparent Magnitude

The ancient Greeks divided the visible stars into six groups based on their brightness. The brightest stars were called first-magnitude stars. The next brightest group of stars were called second-magnitude stars, and so on, until the sixth-magnitude stars consisted of the barely visible stars.

About two thousand years later, astronomers made the ancient Greek star magnitude scale more precise. The typical first-magnitude stars were about 100 times as bright as the typical sixth-magnitude stars. Because there are five steps in going from the first magnitude to the sixth magnitude, this means that with each magnitude the brightness should decrease by a factor of $100^{1/5}$.

Because $100^{1/5} \approx 2.512$, each magnitude is approximately 2.512 times as bright as the next magnitude.

Originally the scale was defined so that Polaris (the North Star) had magnitude 2. If we let b_2 denote the brightness of Polaris, this would mean that a third-magnitude star has brightness $b_2/100^{1/5}$, a fourth-magnitude star has brightness $b_2/(100^{1/5})^2$, a fifth-magnitude star has brightness $b_2/(100^{1/5})^3$, and so on. Thus the brightness b of a star with magnitude m should be given by the equation

$$b = \frac{b_2}{(100^{1/5})^{(m-2)}} = b_2 100^{(2-m)/5} = b_2 100^{2/5} 100^{-m/5} = b_0 100^{-m/5},$$

where $b_0 = b_2 100^{2/5}$. If we divide both sides of the equation above by b_0 and then take logarithms we get

$$\log \frac{b}{b_0} = \log(100^{-m/5}) = -\frac{m}{5} \log 100 = -\frac{2m}{5}.$$

Solving this equation for m leads to the following definition.

Apparent magnitude

An object with brightness b has **apparent magnitude**

$$\frac{5}{2} \log \frac{b_0}{b},$$

where b_0 is the brightness of an object with magnitude 0.

Jupiter, as photographed by the Hubble telescope. The apparent magnitude of Jupiter varies from about −2.9 to about −1.6, depending upon the orbital locations of Jupiter and Earth.

A few points will help clarify this definition:

- The term "apparent magnitude" is more accurate than "magnitude" because we are measuring how bright a star appears from Earth. A glowing luminous star might appear dim from Earth because it is very far away.
- Although this apparent magnitude scale was originally set up for stars, it can be applied to other objects such as the full moon.
- Although the value of b_0 was originally set so that Polaris (the North Star) would have apparent magnitude 2, the definition has changed slightly. With the current definition of b_0, Polaris has magnitude close to 2 but not exactly equal to 2.
- The unit used to measure brightness does not matter because any change in the scale of this unit disappears in the ratio $\frac{b_0}{b}$.

Example 6

Because of the lack of atmospheric interference, the Hubble telescope can see dimmer stars than Earth-based telescopes of the same size.

With good binoculars you can see stars with apparent magnitude 9. The Hubble telescope, which is in orbit around Earth, can detect stars with apparent magnitude 30. How much better is the Hubble telescope than good binoculars, measured in terms of the ratio of the brightness of the faintest stars that they can detect?

solution Let b_9 denote the brightness of a star with apparent magnitude 9 and let b_{30} denote the brightness of a star with apparent magnitude 30. Thus

$$9 = \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_9} \quad \text{and} \quad 30 = \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_{30}}.$$

Subtracting the first equation from the second equation, we get

$$21 = \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_{30}} - \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_9}.$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by $\frac{2}{5}$ gives

$$\frac{42}{5} = \log\frac{b_0}{b_{30}} - \log\frac{b_0}{b_9} = \log\left(\frac{b_0}{b_{30}} \Big/ \frac{b_0}{b_9}\right) = \log\frac{b_9}{b_{30}}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{b_9}{b_{30}} = 10^{42/5} = 10^{8.4} \approx 250,000,000.$$

Thus the Hubble telescope can detect stars that would need to be 250 million times as bright to be seen with good binoculars.

A far-away spiral galaxy, as photographed from the Hubble telescope.

Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log(x+y)$ does not equal $\log x + \log y$.

1 For $x = 7$ and $y = 13$, evaluate:
(a) $\log(x+y)$ (b) $\log x + \log y$

2 For $x = 0.4$ and $y = 3.5$, evaluate:
(a) $\log(x+y)$ (b) $\log x + \log y$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log(xy)$ does not equal $(\log x)(\log y)$.

3 For $x = 3$ and $y = 8$, evaluate:
(a) $\log(xy)$ (b) $(\log x)(\log y)$

4 For $x = 1.1$ and $y = 5$, evaluate:
(a) $\log(xy)$ (b) $(\log x)(\log y)$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log\frac{x}{y}$ does not equal $\frac{\log x}{\log y}$.

5 For $x = 12$ and $y = 2$, evaluate:
(a) $\log \frac{x}{y}$ (b) $\frac{\log x}{\log y}$

6 For $x = 18$ and $y = 0.3$, evaluate:
(a) $\log \frac{x}{y}$ (b) $\frac{\log x}{\log y}$

7 How many digits does $6^{700} \cdot 23^{1000}$ have?

8 How many digits does $5^{999} \cdot 17^{2222}$ have?

9 Suppose m and n are positive integers such that $\log m \approx 32.1$ and $\log n \approx 7.3$. How many digits does mn have?

10 Suppose m and n are positive integers such that $\log m \approx 41.3$ and $\log n \approx 12.8$. How many digits does mn have?

11 Suppose $\log a = 118.7$ and $\log b = 119.7$. Evaluate $\frac{b}{a}$.

12 Suppose $\log a = 203.4$ and $\log b = 205.4$. Evaluate $\frac{b}{a}$.

For Exercises 13–26, evaluate the given quantities assuming that

$$\log_3 x = 5.3 \quad \textit{and} \quad \log_3 y = 2.1,$$
$$\log_4 u = 3.2 \quad \textit{and} \quad \log_4 v = 1.3.$$

13 $\log_3(9xy)$

14 $\log_4(2uv)$

15 $\log_3 \frac{x}{3y}$

16 $\log_4 \frac{u}{8v}$

17 $\log_3 \sqrt{x}$

18 $\log_4 \sqrt{u}$

19 $\log_3 \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}}$

20 $\log_4 \frac{1}{\sqrt{v}}$

21 $\log_3(x^2y^3)$

22 $\log_4(u^3v^4)$

23 $\log_3 \frac{x^3}{y^2}$

24 $\log_4 \frac{u^2}{v^3}$

25 $\log_9(x^{10})$

26 $\log_2(u^{100})$

For Exercises 27–36, find all numbers x that satisfy the given equation.

27 $\log_7(x+5) - \log_7(x-1) = 2$

28 $\log_4(x+4) - \log_4(x-2) = 3$

29 $\log_3(x+5) + \log_3(x-1) = 2$

30 $\log_5(x+4) + \log_5(x+2) = 2$

31 $\frac{\log_6(15x)}{\log_6(5x)} = 2$

32 $\frac{\log_9(13x)}{\log_9(4x)} = 2$

33 $\log_x 3 + \log_x 5 = 2$

34 $\log_x 7 - \log_x 4 = 3$

35 $\big(\log(3x)\big)\log x = 4$

36 $\big(\log(6x)\big)\log x = 5$

37 What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 7 to the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 5?

38 What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 6 to the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 3?

39 The 1994 Northridge earthquake in Southern California, which killed several dozen people, had Richter magnitude 6.7. What would be the Richter magnitude of an earthquake whose seismic waves were 100 times the size of the seismic waves of the Northridge earthquake?

40 The 1995 earthquake in Kobe (Japan), which killed over 6000 people, had Richter magnitude 7.2. What would be the Richter magnitude of an earthquake whose seismic waves were one-thousandth the size of the seismic waves of the Kobe earthquake?

41 The most intense recorded earthquake in New York state was in 1944; it had Richter magnitude 5.8. The most intense recorded earthquake in Minnesota was in 1975; it had Richter magnitude 5.0. What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves of the 1944 earthquake in New York to those of the 1975 earthquake in Minnesota?

42 The most intense recorded earthquake in Wyoming was in 1959; it had Richter magnitude 6.5. The most intense recorded earthquake in Illinois was in 1968; it had Richter magnitude 5.3. What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves of the 1959 earthquake in Wyoming to those of the 1968 earthquake in Illinois?

43 The most intense recorded earthquake in Texas occurred in 1931; it had Richter magnitude 5.8. If an earthquake were to strike Texas next year that had seismic waves three times the size of the current record in Texas, what would its Richter magnitude be?

44 The most intense recorded earthquake in Ohio occurred in 1937; it had Richter magnitude 5.4. If an earthquake were to strike Ohio next year that had seismic waves 1.6 times the size of the current record in Ohio, what would its Richter magnitude be?

45 Suppose you whisper at 20 decibels and normally speak at 60 decibels.
(a) Find the ratio of the sound intensity of your normal speech to the sound intensity of your whisper.
(b) Your normal speech seems how many times as loud as your whisper?

46 Suppose your vacuum cleaner produces a sound of 80 decibels and you normally speak at 60 decibels.
(a) Find the ratio of the sound intensity of your vacuum cleaner to the sound intensity of your normal speech.
(b) Your vacuum cleaner seems how many times as loud as your normal speech?

47 Suppose an airplane taking off makes a noise of 117 decibels and you normally speak at 63 decibels.
(a) Find the ratio of the sound intensity of the airplane to the sound intensity of your normal speech.
(b) The airplane seems how many times as loud as your normal speech?

48 Suppose your cell phone rings at a noise level of 74 decibels and you normally speak at 61 decibels.
(a) Find the ratio of the sound intensity of your cell phone ring to the sound intensity of your normal speech.
(b) Your cell phone ring seems how many times as loud as your normal speech?

49 Suppose a television is playing softly at a sound level of 50 decibels. What decibel level would make the television sound eight times as loud?

50 Suppose a radio is playing loudly at a sound level of 80 decibels. What decibel level would make the radio sound one-fourth as loud?

51 Suppose a motorcycle produces a sound level of 90 decibels. What decibel level would make the motorcycle sound one-third as loud?

52 Suppose a rock band is playing loudly at a sound level of 100 decibels. What decibel level would make the band sound three-fifths as loud?

53 A star with apparent magnitude 2 is how many times as bright as a star with apparent magnitude 17?

54 A star with apparent magnitude 3 is how many times as bright as a star with apparent magnitude 23?

55 Sirius, the brightest star that can be seen from Earth (not counting the sun), has an apparent magnitude of -1.4. Vega, which was the North Star about 12,000 years ago (slight changes in Earth's orbit lead to changing North Stars every several thousand years), has an apparent magnitude of 0.03. Sirius is how many times as bright as Vega?

56 The full moon has an apparent magnitude of -12.6. Sirius has an apparent magnitude of -1.4. The full moon is how many times as bright as Sirius?

57 Neptune has an apparent magnitude of 7.8. What is the apparent magnitude of a star that is 20 times as bright as Neptune?

58 Neptune has an apparent magnitude of 7.8. What is the apparent magnitude of a star that is eight times as bright as Neptune?

Problems

59 Explain why

$$\log 500 = 3 - \log 2.$$

60 Explain why

$$\log \sqrt{0.07} = \frac{\log 7}{2} - 1.$$

61 Explain why

$$1 + \log x = \log(10x)$$

for every positive number x.

62 Explain why

$$2 - \log x = \log \frac{100}{x}$$

for every positive number x.

63 Explain why

$$(1 + \log x)^2 = \log(10x^2) + (\log x)^2$$

for every positive number x.

64 Explain why

$$\frac{1 + \log x}{2} = \log \sqrt{10x}$$

for every positive number x.

65 Suppose $f(x) = \log x$ and $g(x) = \log(1000x)$. Explain why the graph of g can be obtained by shifting the graph of f up 3 units.

66 Suppose $f(x) = \log_6 x$ and $g(x) = \log_6 \frac{36}{x}$. Explain why the graph of g can be obtained by flipping the graph of f across the horizonal axis and then shifting up 2 units.

67 Suppose $f(x) = \log x$ and $g(x) = \log(100x^3)$. Explain why the graph of g can be obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of 3 and then shifting up 2 units.

68 Show that an earthquake with Richter magnitude R has seismic waves of size $S_0 10^R$, where S_0 is the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 0.

69 Do a web search to find the most intense earthquake in the United States and in Japan in the last complete calendar year. What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves in the larger of these two earthquakes to the size of the seismic waves in the smaller of the two?

70 Show that a sound with d decibels has intensity $E_0 10^{d/10}$, where E_0 is the intensity of a sound with 0 decibels.

71 Find at least three different web sites giving the apparent magnitude of Polaris (the North Star) accurate to at least two digits after the decimal point. If you find different values on different web sites (as the author did), then try to explain what could account for the discrepancy (and take this as a good lesson in the caution necessary when using the web as a source of scientific information).

72 Write a description of the logarithmic scale used for the pH scale, which measures acidity (this will probably require use of the library or the web).

73 Without doing any calculations, explain why the solutions to the equations in Exercises 31 and 32 are unchanged if we change the base for all the logarithms in those exercises to any positive number $b \neq 1$.

74 Explain why the equation

$$\log \frac{x-3}{x-2} = 2$$

has a solution but the equation

$$\log(x-3) - \log(x-2) = 2$$

has no solutions.

75 Pretend that you are living in the time before calculators and computers existed, and that you have a book showing the logarithms of 1.001, 1.002, 1.003, and so on, up to the logarithm of 9.999. Explain how you would find the logarithm of 457.2, which is beyond the range of your book.

76 Explain why books of logarithm tables, which were frequently used before the era of calculators and computers, gave logarithms only for numbers between 1 and 10.

77 Suppose b and y are positive numbers, with $b \neq 1$ and $b \neq \frac{1}{2}$. Show that

$$\log_{2b} y = \frac{\log_b y}{1 + \log_b 2}.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log(x+y)$ does not equal $\log x + \log y$.

1 For $x = 7$ and $y = 13$, evaluate:

(a) $\log(x+y)$ (b) $\log x + \log y$

solution

(a) $\log(7+13) = \log 20 \approx 1.30103$

(b) $\log 7 + \log 13 \approx 0.845098 + 1.113943 = 1.959041$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log(xy)$ does not equal $(\log x)(\log y)$.

3 For $x = 3$ and $y = 8$, evaluate:

(a) $\log(xy)$ (b) $(\log x)(\log y)$

solution

(a) $\log(3 \cdot 8) = \log 24 \approx 1.38021$

(b) $(\log 3)(\log 8) \approx (0.477121)(0.903090) \approx 0.430883$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\log \frac{x}{y}$ does not equal $\frac{\log x}{\log y}$.

5 For $x = 12$ and $y = 2$, evaluate:

(a) $\log \frac{x}{y}$ (b) $\frac{\log x}{\log y}$

solution

(a) $\log \frac{12}{2} = \log 6 \approx 0.778151$

(b) $\frac{\log 12}{\log 2} \approx \frac{1.079181}{0.301030} \approx 3.58496$

7 How many digits does $6^{700} \cdot 23^{1000}$ have?

solution Using the formulas for the logarithm of a product and the logarithm of a power, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\log(6^{700} \cdot 23^{1000}) &= \log(6^{700}) + \log(23^{1000}) \\ &= 700 \log 6 + 1000 \log 23 \\ &\approx 1906.43.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $6^{700} \cdot 23^{1000}$ has 1907 digits.

9 Suppose m and n are positive integers such that $\log m \approx 32.1$ and $\log n \approx 7.3$. How many digits does mn have?

solution Note that

$$\log(mn) = \log m + \log n \approx 32.1 + 7.3 = 39.4.$$

Thus mn has 40 digits.

11 Suppose $\log a = 118.7$ and $\log b = 119.7$. Evaluate $\frac{b}{a}$.

solution Note that

$$\log \frac{b}{a} = \log b - \log a = 119.7 - 118.7 = 1.$$

Thus $\frac{b}{a} = 10$.

For Exercises 13–26, evaluate the given quantities assuming that

$$\log_3 x = 5.3 \quad \textit{and} \quad \log_3 y = 2.1,$$
$$\log_4 u = 3.2 \quad \textit{and} \quad \log_4 v = 1.3.$$

13 $\log_3(9xy)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_3(9xy) &= \log_3 9 + \log_3 x + \log_3 y \\ &= 2 + 5.3 + 2.1 \\ &= 9.4\end{aligned}$$

15 $\log_3 \frac{x}{3y}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_3 \frac{x}{3y} &= \log_3 x - \log_3(3y) \\ &= \log_3 x - \log_3 3 - \log_3 y \\ &= 5.3 - 1 - 2.1 \\ &= 2.2\end{aligned}$$

17 $\log_3 \sqrt{x}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_3 \sqrt{x} &= \log_3(x^{1/2}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \log_3 x \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \times 5.3 \\ &= 2.65\end{aligned}$$

19 $\log_3 \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_3 \frac{1}{\sqrt{y}} &= \log_3(y^{-1/2}) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \log_3 y \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \times 2.1 \\ &= -1.05\end{aligned}$$

21 $\log_3(x^2y^3)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_3(x^2y^3) &= \log_3(x^2) + \log_3(y^3)\\ &= 2\log_3 x + 3\log_3 y\\ &= 2\cdot 5.3 + 3\cdot 2.1\\ &= 16.9\end{aligned}$$

23 $\log_3 \dfrac{x^3}{y^2}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\log_3 \frac{x^3}{y^2} &= \log_3(x^3) - \log_3(y^2)\\ &= 3\log_3 x - 2\log_3 y\\ &= 3\cdot 5.3 - 2\cdot 2.1\\ &= 11.7\end{aligned}$$

25 $\log_9(x^{10})$

solution Because $\log_3 x = 5.3$, we see that $3^{5.3} = x$. This equation can be rewritten as $\left(9^{1/2}\right)^{5.3} = x$, which can then be rewritten as $9^{2.65} = x$. In other words, $\log_9 x = 2.65$. Thus

$$\log_9(x^{10}) = 10\log_9 x = 26.5.$$

For Exercises 27–36, find all numbers x that satisfy the given equation.

27 $\log_7(x+5) - \log_7(x-1) = 2$

solution Rewrite the equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}2 &= \log_7(x+5) - \log_7(x-1)\\ &= \log_7 \frac{x+5}{x-1}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\frac{x+5}{x-1} = 7^2 = 49.$$

We can solve the equation above for x, getting $x = \frac{9}{8}$.

29 $\log_3(x+5) + \log_3(x-1) = 2$

solution Rewrite the equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}2 &= \log_3(x+5) + \log_3(x-1)\\ &= \log_3\big((x+5)(x-1)\big)\\ &= \log_3(x^2+4x-5).\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$x^2 + 4x - 5 = 3^2 = 9,$$

which implies that

$$x^2 + 4x - 14 = 0.$$

We can solve the equation above using the quadratic formula, getting $x = 3\sqrt{2} - 2$ or $x = -3\sqrt{2} - 2$. However, both $x+5$ and $x-1$ are negative if $x = -3\sqrt{2} - 2$; because the logarithm of a negative number is undefined, we must discard this root of the equation above. We conclude that the only value of x satisfying the equation $\log_3(x+5) + \log_3(x-1) = 2$ is $x = 3\sqrt{2} - 2$.

31 $\dfrac{\log_6(15x)}{\log_6(5x)} = 2$

solution Rewrite the equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}2 &= \frac{\log_6(15x)}{\log_6(5x)}\\ &= \frac{\log_6 15 + \log_6 x}{\log_6 5 + \log_6 x}.\end{aligned}$$

Solving this equation for $\log_6 x$ (the first step in doing this is to multiply both sides by the denominator $\log_6 5 + \log_6 x$), we get

$$\begin{aligned}\log_6 x &= \log_6 15 - 2\log_6 5\\ &= \log_6 15 - \log_6 25\\ &= \log_6 \frac{15}{25}\\ &= \log_6 \frac{3}{5}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $x = \frac{3}{5}$.

33 $\log_x 3 + \log_x 5 = 2$

solution The equation above can be rewritten as

$$\log_x 15 = 2,$$

which implies that $x^2 = 15$, which implies that $x = \sqrt{15}$ (note that $-\sqrt{15}$ is not allowed as a base for logarithms).

35 $\big(\log(3x)\big)\log x = 4$

solution Rewrite the equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}4 &= \big(\log(3x)\big)\log x\\ &= (\log x + \log 3)\log x\\ &= (\log x)^2 + (\log 3)(\log x).\end{aligned}$$

Letting $y = \log x$, we can rewrite the equation above as

$$y^2 + (\log 3)y - 4 = 0.$$

Use the quadratic formula to solve the equation above for y, getting

$$y \approx -2.25274 \quad \text{or} \quad y \approx 1.77562.$$

Thus

$$\log x \approx -2.25274 \quad \text{or} \quad \log x \approx 1.77562,$$

which means that

$$x \approx 10^{-2.25274} \approx 0.00558807$$

or

$$x \approx 10^{1.77562} \approx 59.6509.$$

37 What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 7 to the size of the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 5?

solution Here is an informal but accurate solution: Each increase of 1 in the Richter magnitude corresponds to an increase in the size of the seismic waves by a factor of 10. Thus an increase of 2 in the Richter magnitude corresponds to an increase in the size of the seismic waves by a factor of 10^2. Hence an earthquake with Richter magnitude 7 has seismic waves 100 times as large as the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 5.

Here is a more formal explanation using logarithms: Let S_7 denote the size of the seismic waves from an earthquake with Richter magnitude 7 and let S_5 denote the size of the seismic waves from an earthquake with Richter magnitude 5. Thus

$$7 = \log \frac{S_7}{S_0} \quad \text{and} \quad 5 = \log \frac{S_5}{S_0}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we get

$$2 = \log \frac{S_7}{S_0} - \log \frac{S_5}{S_0} = \log\left(\frac{S_7}{S_0} \Big/ \frac{S_5}{S_0}\right) = \log \frac{S_7}{S_5}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{S_7}{S_5} = 10^2 = 100.$$

Hence an earthquake with Richter magnitude 7 has seismic waves 100 times as large as the seismic waves of an earthquake with Richter magnitude 5.

39 The 1994 Northridge earthquake in Southern California, which killed several dozen people, had Richter magnitude 6.7. What would be the Richter magnitude of an earthquake whose seismic waves were 100 times the size of the seismic waves of the Northridge earthquake?

solution Each increase of 1 in the Richter magnitude corresponds to an increase in the size of the seismic waves of the earthquake by a factor of 10. Hence an increase in the size of the seismic waves by a factor of 100 (which equals 10^2) corresponds to an increase of 2 in the Richter magnitude. Thus an earthquake with seismic waves 100 times the size of those in the Northridge earthquake would have Richter magnitude $6.7 + 2$, which equals 8.7.

41 The most intense recorded earthquake in New York state was in 1944; it had Richter magnitude 5.8. The most intense recorded earthquake in Minnesota was in 1975; it had Richter magnitude 5.0. What is the ratio of the size of the seismic waves of the 1944 earthquake in New York to those of the 1975 earthquake in Minnesota?

solution Let S_N denote the size of the seismic waves from the 1944 earthquake in New York and let S_M denote the size of the seismic waves from the 1975 earthquake in Minnesota. Thus

$$5.8 = \log \frac{S_N}{S_0} \quad \text{and} \quad 5.0 = \log \frac{S_M}{S_0}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we get

$$0.8 = \log \frac{S_N}{S_0} - \log \frac{S_M}{S_0} = \log\left(\frac{S_N}{S_0} \Big/ \frac{S_M}{S_0}\right) = \log \frac{S_N}{S_M}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{S_N}{S_M} = 10^{0.8} \approx 6.3.$$

43 The most intense recorded earthquake in Texas occurred in 1931; it had Richter magnitude 5.8. If an earthquake were to strike Texas next year that had seismic waves three times the size of the current record in Texas, what would its Richter magnitude be?

solution Let S_T denote the size of the seismic waves from the 1931 earthquake in Texas. Thus

$$5.8 = \log \frac{S_T}{S_0}.$$

An earthquake with seismic waves three times as large would have Richter magnitude

$$\log \frac{3S_T}{S_0} = \log 3 + \log \frac{S_T}{S_0} \approx 0.477 + 5.8 = 6.277.$$

Because of the difficulty of obtaining accurate measurements, Richter magnitudes are usually reported with only one digit after the decimal place. Rounding off, we would thus say that an earthquake in Texas that had seismic waves three times the current record would have Richter magnitude 6.3.

45 Suppose you whisper at 20 decibels and normally speak at 60 decibels.

(a) Find the ratio of the sound intensity of your normal speech to the sound intensity of your whisper.

(b) Your normal speech seems how many times as loud as your whisper?

solution

(a) Each increase of 10 decibels corresponds to multiplying the sound intensity by a factor of 10. Going from a 20-decibel whisper to 60-decibel normal speech means that the sound intensity has been increased by a factor of 10 four times. Because $10^4 = 10{,}000$, this means that the ratio of the sound intensity of your normal speech to the sound intensity of your whisper is 10,000.

(b) Each increase of 10 decibels results in a doubling of loudness. Here we have an increase of 40 decibels, so we have had an increase of 10 decibels four times. Thus the perceived loudness has increased by a factor of 2^4. Because $2^4 = 16$, this means that your normal speech seems 16 times as loud as your whisper.

47 Suppose an airplane taking off makes a noise of 117 decibels and you normally speak at 63 decibels.

(a) Find the ratio of the sound intensity of the airplane to the sound intensity of your normal speech.

(b) The airplane seems how many times as loud as your normal speech?

solution

(a) Let E_A denote the sound intensity of the airplane taking off and let E_S denote the sound intensity of your normal speech. Thus

$$117 = 10\log\frac{E_A}{E_0} \quad \text{and} \quad 63 = 10\log\frac{E_S}{E_0}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we get

$$54 = 10\log\frac{E_A}{E_0} - 10\log\frac{E_S}{E_0}.$$

Thus

$$5.4 = \log\frac{E_A}{E_0} - \log\frac{E_S}{E_0} = \log\left(\frac{E_A}{E_0}\Big/\frac{E_S}{E_0}\right) = \log\frac{E_A}{E_S}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{E_A}{E_S} = 10^{5.4} \approx 251{,}189.$$

In other words, the airplane taking off produces sound about 250 thousand times as intense as your normal speech.

(b) Each increase of 10 decibels results in a doubling of loudness. Here we have an increase of 54 decibels, so we have had an increase of 10 decibels 5.4 times. Thus the perceived loudness has increased by a factor of $2^{5.4}$. Because $2^{5.4} \approx 42$, this means that the airplane seems about 42 times as loud as your normal speech.

49 Suppose a television is playing softly at a sound level of 50 decibels. What decibel level would make the television sound eight times as loud?

solution Each increase of ten decibels makes the television sound twice as loud. Because $8 = 2^3$, the sound level must double three times to make the television sound eight times as loud. Thus 30 decibels must be added to the sound level, raising it to 80 decibels.

51 Suppose a motorcycle produces a sound level of 90 decibels. What decibel level would make the motorcycle sound one-third as loud?

solution Each decrease of ten decibels makes the motorcycle sound half as loud. The sound level must be cut in half x times, where $\frac{1}{3} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^x$, to make the motorcycle sound one-third as loud. This equation can be rewritten as $2^x = 3$. Taking common logarithms of both sides gives $x\log 2 = \log 3$, which implies that

$$x = \frac{\log 3}{\log 2} \approx 1.585.$$

Thus the sound level must be decreased by ten decibels 1.585 times, meaning that the sound level must be reduced by 15.85 decibels. Because $90 - 15.85 = 74.15$, a sound level of 74.15 decibels would make the motorcycle sound one-third as loud.

53 A star with apparent magnitude 2 is how many times as bright as a star with apparent magnitude 17?

solution Every five magnitudes correspond to a change in brightness by a factor of 100. Thus a change in 15 magnitudes corresponds to a change in brightness by a factor of 100^3 (because $15 = 5 \times 3$). Because $100^3 = (10^2)^3 = 10^6$, a star with apparent magnitude 2 is one million times as bright as a star with apparent magnitude 17.

55 Sirius, the brightest star that can be seen from Earth (not counting the sun), has an apparent magnitude of -1.4. Vega, which was the North Star about 12,000 years ago (slight changes in Earth's orbit lead to changing North Stars every several thousand years), has an apparent magnitude of 0.03. Sirius is how many times as bright as Vega?

solution Let b_V denote the brightness of Vega and let b_S denote the brightness of Sirius. Thus

$$0.03 = \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_V} \quad \text{and} \quad -1.4 = \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_S}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first equation, we get

$$1.43 = \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_V} - \frac{5}{2}\log\frac{b_0}{b_S}.$$

Multiplying both sides by $\frac{2}{5}$, we get

$$0.572 = \log\frac{b_0}{b_V} - \log\frac{b_0}{b_S} = \log\left(\frac{b_0}{b_V}\Big/\frac{b_0}{b_S}\right) = \log\frac{b_S}{b_V}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{b_S}{b_V} = 10^{0.572} \approx 3.7.$$

Thus Sirius is approximately 3.7 times as bright Vega.

57 Neptune has an apparent magnitude of 7.8. What is the apparent magnitude of a star that is 20 times as bright as Neptune?

solution Each decrease of apparent magnitude by 1 corresponds to brightness increase by a factor of $100^{1/5}$. If we decrease the magnitude by x, then the brightness increases by a factor of $(100^{1/5})^x$. For this exercise, we want $20 = (100^{1/5})^x$. To solve this equation for x, take logarithms of both sides, getting

$$\log 20 = x\log(100^{1/5}) = \frac{2x}{5}.$$

Thus

$$x = \frac{5}{2}\log 20 \approx 3.25.$$

Because $7.8 - 3.25 = 4.55$, we conclude that a star 20 times as bright as Neptune has apparent magnitude approximately 4.55.

3.4 Exponential Growth

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- describe the behavior of functions with exponential growth;
- model population growth;
- compute compound interest.

We begin this section with a story.

A doubling fable

A mathematician in ancient India invented the game of chess. Filled with gratitude for the remarkable entertainment of this game, the king offered the mathematician anything he wanted. The king expected the mathematician to ask for rare jewels or a majestic palace.

But the mathematician asked only that he be given one grain of rice for the first square on a chessboard, plus two grains of rice for the next square, plus four grains for the next square, and so on, doubling the amount for each square, until the 64^{th} square on an 8-by-8 chessboard had been reached. The king was pleasantly surprised that the mathematician had asked for such a modest reward.

A bag of rice was opened, and first 1 grain was set aside, then 2, then 4, then 8, and so on. As the eighth square (the end of the first row of the chessboard) was reached, 128 grains of rice were counted out. The king was secretly delighted to be paying such a small reward and also wondering at the foolishness of the mathematician.

As the 16^{th} square was reached, 32,768 grains of rice were counted out—this was a small part of a bag of rice. But the 21^{st} square required a full bag of rice, and the 24^{th} square required eight bags of rice. This was more than the king had expected. However, it was a trivial amount because the royal granary contained about 200,000 bags of rice to feed the kingdom during the coming winter.

As the 31^{st} square was reached, over a thousand bags of rice were required and were delivered from the royal granary. Now the king was worried. By the 37^{th} square, the royal granary was two-thirds empty. The 38^{th} square would have required more bags of rice than were left. The king then stopped the process and ordered that the mathematician's head be chopped off as a warning about the greed induced by exponential growth.

To understand why the mathematician's seemingly modest request turned out to be so extravagant, note that the n^{th} square of the chessboard required 2^{n-1} grains of rice. These numbers start slowly but grow rapidly, as shown in the table here.

n	2^n
10	1024
20	1048576
30	1073741824
40	1099511627776
50	1125899906842624
60	1152921504606846976

The approximation

$$2^{10} \approx 1000$$

is useful when estimating large powers of 2.

The 64^{th} square of the chessboard would have required 2^{63} grains of rice. To estimate of the magnitude of this number, note that $2^{10} = 1024 \approx 10^3$. Thus

$$2^{63} = 2^3 \cdot 2^{60} = 8 \cdot (2^{10})^6 \approx 8 \cdot (10^3)^6 = 8 \cdot 10^{18} \approx 10^{19}.$$

If each large bag contains a million (which equals 10^6) grains of rice, then the approximately 10^{19} grains of rice needed for the 64^{th} square would have required approximately $10^{19}/10^6$ bags of rice, or approximately 10^{13} bags of rice. If we assume ancient India had a population of about ten million (10^7), then each resident would have had to produce about $10^{13}/10^7$ bags of rice to satisfy the mathematician's request for the 64^{th} square of the chessboard. It would have been impossible for each resident in India to produce a million ($10^{13}/10^7$) bags of rice. Thus the mathematician should not have been surprised at losing his head.

As x gets large, 2^x increases much faster than x^2. For example, 2^{63} equals 9223372036854775808 but 63^2 equals only 3969.

Functions with Exponential Growth

The function f defined by $f(x) = 2^x$ is an example of what is called a function with exponential growth. Other examples of functions with exponential growth are the functions g and h defined by $g(x) = 3 \cdot 5^x$ and $h(x) = 5 \cdot 7^{3x}$. More generally, we have the following definition.

Exponential growth

A function f is said to have **exponential growth** if f is of the form

$$f(x) = cb^{kx},$$

where c and k are positive numbers and $b > 1$.

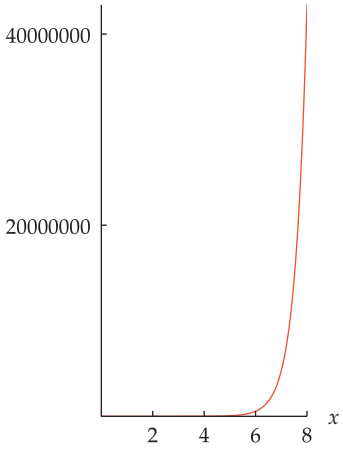
The condition $b > 1$ ensures that f is an increasing function.

Functions with exponential growth increase rapidly. In fact, every function with exponential growth increases more rapidly than every polynomial, in the sense that if f is a function with exponential growth and p is any polynomial, then $f(x) > p(x)$ for all sufficiently large x. For example, $2^x > x^{1000}$ for all $x > 13747$ (Problem 37 shows that 13747 could not be replaced by 13746).

Functions with exponential growth increase so rapidly that graphing them in the usual manner can display too little information, as shown in the following example.

Example 1 Discuss the graph of the function 9^x on the interval $[0, 8]$.

solution The graph of the function 9^x on the interval $[0, 8]$ is shown here. In this graph, we cannot use the same scale on the horizontal and vertical axes because 9^8 is larger than forty million.



The graph of 9^x on $[0, 8]$.

Due to the scale, this graph of 9^x is hard to distinguish from the horizontal axis in the interval $[0, 5]$. Thus this graph gives little insight into the behavior of the function there. For example, this graph does not help distinguish between the values 9^2 (which equals 81) and 9^5 (which equals 59049).

Because the graphs of functions with exponential growth often do not provide sufficient visual information, data that is expected to have exponential growth is often graphed by taking the logarithm of the data. The advantage of this procedure is that if f is a function with exponential growth, then the logarithm of f is a linear function.

For example, if

$$f(x) = 2 \cdot 3^{5x},$$

then

$$\log f(x) = 5(\log 3)x + \log 2.$$

Here we are taking the logarithm base 10, but the conclusion about the linearity of the logarithm of f holds regardless of the base used.

Thus the graph of $\log f$ is the line whose equation is $y = 5(\log 3)x + \log 2$ (which is the line with slope $5 \log 3$).

More generally, if $f(x) = cb^{kx}$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \log f(x) &= \log c + \log(b^{kx}) \\ &= k(\log b)x + \log c. \end{aligned}$$

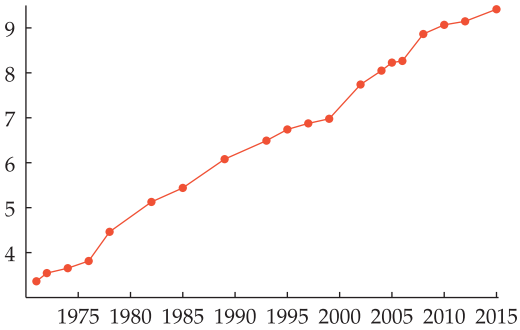
Here k, $\log b$, and $\log c$ are all numbers not dependent on x; thus the function $\log f$ is indeed linear. If $k > 0$ and $b > 1$, as is required in the definition of exponential growth, then $k \log b > 0$, which implies that the line $y = \log f(x)$ has positive slope.

Logarithm of a function with exponential growth

A function f has exponential growth if and only if the graph of $\log f(x)$ is a line with positive slope.

Example 2

Moore's Law is the phrase describing the observation that computing power has exponential growth, doubling roughly every 18–24 months. One standard measure of computing power is the number of transistors used per integrated circuit.



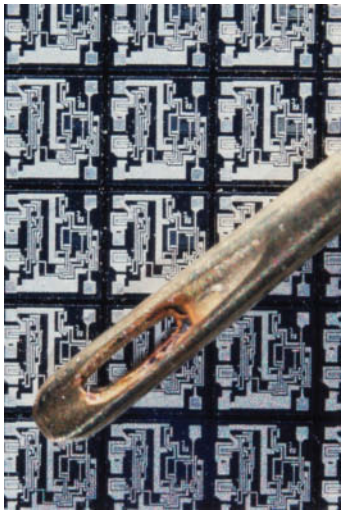
The logarithm (base 10) of the number of transistors per integrated circuit (for common computer chips manufactured by Intel) from 1971 to 2015. Moore's Law predicts exponential growth of computing power, which would make this graph a line.

Does this graph indicate that computing power has had exponential growth?

solution The graph of the logarithm of the number of transistors is roughly a line, as would be expected for a function with roughly exponential growth. Thus the graph does indeed indicate that computing power has had exponential growth.

Real data, as shown in the graph in this example, rarely fits theoretical mathematical models perfectly. The graph above is not exactly a line, and thus we do not have exactly exponential growth. However, the graph above is close enough to a line so that a model of exponential growth can help explain what has happened to computing power over several decades.

Moore's Law is named in honor of Gordon Moore, co-founder of Intel, who predicted in 1965 that computing power would follow a pattern of exponential growth.



Integrated circuits that will go inside a computer. The eye of the needle shows the scale.

Consider the function f with exponential growth defined by

$$f(x) = 5 \cdot 3^{2x}.$$

Because $3^{2x} = (3^2)^x = 9^x$, we can rewrite f in the form

$$f(x) = 5 \cdot 9^x.$$

More generally, suppose f is a function with exponential growth defined by

$$f(x) = cB^{kx}.$$

Because $B^{kx} = (B^k)^x$, if we let $b = B^k$ then we can rewrite f in the form

$$f(x) = cb^x.$$

In other words, by changing b we can, if we wish, always take $k = 1$ in the definition given earlier of a function with exponential growth.

Exponential growth, simpler form

Every function f with exponential growth can be written in the form

$$f(x) = cb^x,$$

where $c > 0$ and $b > 1$.

This simpler form of exponential growth uses only two numbers (b and c) instead of the three numbers (b, c, and k) in our original definition.

Consider now the function f with exponential growth defined by

$$f(x) = 3 \cdot 5^{7x}.$$

Because $5^{7x} = (2^{\log_2 5})^{7x} = 2^{7(\log_2 5)x}$, we can rewrite f in the form

$$f(x) = 3 \cdot 2^{kx},$$

where $k = 7(\log_2 5)$.

There is nothing special about the numbers 5 and 7 in the paragraph above. The same procedure could be applied to any function f with exponential growth defined by $f(x) = cb^{kx}$. Thus we have the following result, which shows that by changing k we can, if we wish, always take $b = 2$ in the definition given earlier of a function with exponential growth.

Exponential growth, base 2

Every function f with exponential growth can be written in the form

$$f(x) = c2^{kx},$$

where c and k are positive numbers.

For some applications, the most natural choice of base is the number e that we will investigate in the next section.

In the result above, there is nothing special about the number 2. The same result holds if 2 is replaced by 3 or 4 or any number bigger than 1. In other words, we can choose the base for a function with exponential growth to be whatever we wish (and then k needs to be suitably adjusted). You will often want to choose a value for the base that is related to the topic under consideration. We will soon consider population doubling models, where 2 is the most natural choice for the base.

Example 3

Suppose f is a function with exponential growth such that $f(2) = 3$ and $f(5) = 7$.

(a) Find a formula for $f(x)$.

(b) Evaluate $f(17)$.

solution

(a) We will use one of the simpler forms derived above. In other words, we can assume

$$f(x) = cb^x.$$

Instead, we could have used the form $f(x) = c2^{kx}$, but this would result in a messy formula for k.

We need to find c and b. We have

$$3 = f(2) = cb^2 \quad \text{and} \quad 7 = f(5) = cb^5.$$

Dividing the second equation by the first equation shows that $b^3 = \frac{7}{3}$. Thus $b = \left(\frac{7}{3}\right)^{1/3}$. Substituting this value for b into the first equation above gives $3 = c\left(\frac{7}{3}\right)^{2/3}$, which implies that $c = 3\left(\frac{3}{7}\right)^{2/3}$. Thus

$$f(x) = 3\left(\tfrac{3}{7}\right)^{2/3}\left(\tfrac{7}{3}\right)^{x/3}.$$

(b) Using the formula above, we have $f(17) = 3\left(\frac{3}{7}\right)^{2/3}\left(\frac{7}{3}\right)^{17/3} \approx 207.494$.

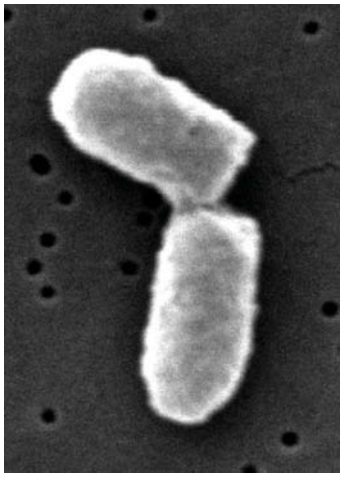
Population Growth

Populations of various organisms, ranging from bacteria to humans, often exhibit exponential growth. To illustrate this behavior, we will begin by considering bacteria cells.

Bacteria are single-celled creatures that reproduce by absorbing some nutrients, growing, and then dividing in half—one bacterium cell becomes two bacteria cells. Then those two bacteria cells each divide again, becoming four bacteria cells, which divide again to become eight bacteria cells, and so on.

Example 4

Suppose a colony of bacteria in a petri dish has 700 cells at 1 PM. These bacteria reproduce at a rate that leads to doubling every three hours. How many bacteria cells will be in the petri dish at 9 PM on the same day?



A bacterium cell dividing, as photographed by an electron microscope.

solution Because the number of bacteria cells doubles every three hours, at 4 PM there will be 1400 cells, at 7 PM there will be 2800 cells, and so on. In other words, in three hours the number of cells increases by a factor of two, in six hours the number of cells increases by a factor of four, in nine hours the number of cells increases by a factor of eight, and so on.

More generally, in t hours there are $t/3$ doubling periods. Hence in t hours the number of cells increases by a factor of $2^{t/3}$. Hence after t hours there should be

$$700 \cdot 2^{t/3}$$

bacteria cells.

Thus at 9 PM, which is eight hours after 1 PM, our colony of bacteria should have

$$700 \cdot 2^{8/3}$$

cells. However, this result should be thought of as an estimate rather than as an exact count. Actually, $700 \cdot 2^{8/3}$ is an irrational number (approximately 4444.7), which makes no sense when counting bacteria cells. Thus we might predict that at 9 PM there would be about 4445 cells. Even better, because the real world rarely adheres exactly to formulas, we might expect between 4400 and 4500 cells at 9 PM.

Because functions with exponential growth increase so rapidly, they can be used to model real data for only limited time periods.

Functions with exponential growth often provide the best models for population growth for a limited time period. However, real population data cannot exhibit exponential growth for excessively long time periods.

For example, the formula $700 \cdot 2^{t/3}$ derived above for our colony of bacteria predicts that after 10 days, which equals 240 hours, we would have about 10^{27} cells, which is far more than could fit in even a gigantic petri dish. The bacteria would have run out of space and nutrients long before reaching this population level.

Now we extend our example with bacteria to a more general situation. Suppose a population doubles every d time units (here the time units might be hours, days, years, or whatever unit is appropriate). Suppose also that at some specific time t_0 we know that the population is p_0. At time t there have been $t - t_0$ time units since time t_0. Thus at time t there have been $(t - t_0)/d$ doubling periods, and hence the population increases by a factor of

$$2^{(t-t_0)/d}.$$

This factor must be multiplied by the population at the starting time t_0. In other words, at time t we could expect a population of

$$p_0 \cdot 2^{(t-t_0)/d}.$$

Exponential growth and doubling

If a population doubles every d time units, then the function p modeling this population growth is given by the formula

$$p(t) = p_0 \cdot 2^{(t-t_0)/d},$$

where p_0 is the population at time t_0.

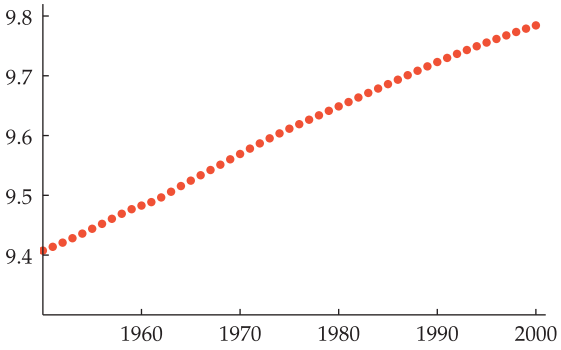
The function p discussed above has exponential growth because we could rewrite p in the form

$$p(t) = (2^{-t_0/d} p_0) 2^{(1/d)t},$$

which corresponds to our definition of a function with exponential growth by taking $c = 2^{-t_0/d} p_0$, $b = 2$, and $k = 1/d$.

Human population data often follow patterns of exponential growth for decades or centuries. The graph below shows the logarithm of the world population for each year from 1950 to 2000:

This graph of the logarithm of world population looks remarkably like a straight line, showing that world population had exponential growth during this period.



The logarithm (base 10) of the world population each year from 1950 to 2000, as estimated by the U.S. Census Bureau.

Example 5

World population is now increasing at a slower rate, doubling about every 69 years.

The world population in mid-year 1950 was about 2.56 billion. During the period 1950–2000, world population increased at a rate that doubled the population approximately every 40 years.

(a) Find a formula that estimates the mid-year world population for 1950-2000.

(b) Using the formula from part (a), estimate the world population in mid-year 1955.

solution

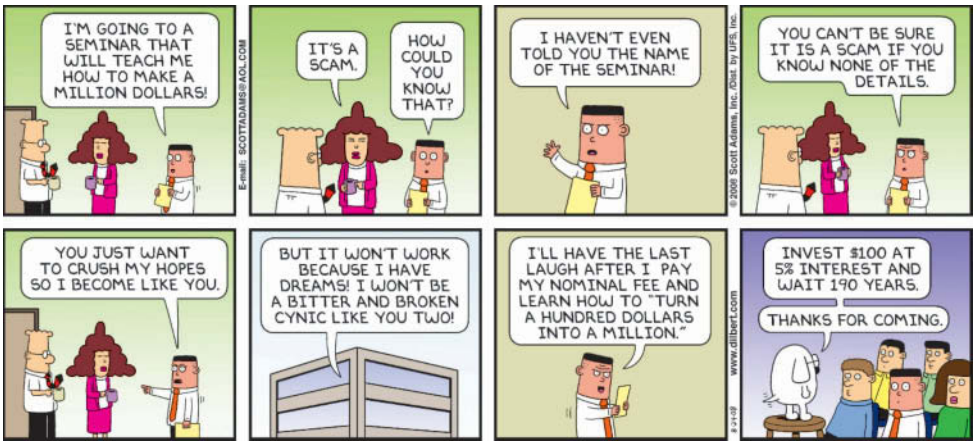
Here we are using y (for "year") rather than t as the time variable.

(a) Using the formula and data above, we see that the mid-year world population in the year y, expressed in billions, was approximately

$$2.56 \cdot 2^{(y-1950)/40}.$$

(b) Taking $y = 1955$ in the formula above gives the estimate that the mid-year world population in 1955 was $2.56 \cdot 2^{(1955-1950)/40}$ billion, which is approximately 2.79 billion. The actual value was about 2.78 billion; thus the formula has good accuracy in this case.

Compound Interest


I'M GOING TO A SEMINAR THAT WILL TEACH ME HOW TO MAKE A MILLION DOLLARS!
IT'S A SCAM.
HOW COULD YOU KNOW THAT?
I HAVEN'T EVEN TOLD YOU THE NAME OF THE SEMINAR!
YOU CAN'T BE SURE IT IS A SCAM IF YOU KNOW NONE OF THE DETAILS.
YOU JUST WANT TO CRUSH MY HOPES SO I BECOME LIKE YOU.
BUT IT WON'T WORK BECAUSE I HAVE DREAMS! I WON'T BE A BITTER AND BROKEN CYNIC LIKE YOU TWO!
I'LL HAVE THE LAST LAUGH AFTER I PAY MY NOMINAL FEE AND LEARN HOW TO "TURN A HUNDRED DOLLARS INTO A MILLION."
INVEST $100 AT 5% INTEREST AND WAIT 190 YEARS.
THANKS FOR COMING.
E-mail: SCOTTADAMS@AOL.COM
© 2008 Scott Adams, Inc./Dist. by UFS, Inc.
www.dilbert.com

This Dilbert comic illustrates the power of compound interest. See the solution to Exercise 33 to learn whether this plan would work.

The computation of compound interest involves functions with exponential growth. We begin with a simple example.

Example 6

This example illustrates the simple interest scenario.

Suppose you deposit \$8000 in a bank account that pays 5% annual interest. Assume the bank pays interest once per year at the end of the year, and that each year you place the interest in a cookie jar for safekeeping.

(a) How much will you have (original amount plus interest) at the end of two years?

(b) How much will you have (original amount plus interest) at the end of t years?

solution

(a) Because 5% of \$8000 is \$400, at the end of the each year you will receive \$400 interest. Thus after two years you will have \$800 in the cookie jar, bringing the total amount to \$8800.

(b) Because you receive \$400 interest each year, at the end of t years the cookie jar will contain $400t$ dollars. Thus the total amount you will have at the end of t years is $8000 + 400t$ dollars.

The situation in the example above, where interest is paid only on the original amount, is called **simple interest**. To generalize the example above, we can replace the \$8000 used in the example above with any initial amount P. Furthermore, we can replace the 5% annual interest with any annual interest rate r, expressed as a number rather than as a percent (thus 5% interest would correspond to $r = 0.05$). Each year the interest received will be rP. Thus after t years the total interest received will be rPt. Hence the total amount after t years will be $P + rPt$. Factoring out P from this expression, we have the following result.

The symbol P comes from **principal**, *which is a fancy word for the initial amount.*

Simple interest

If interest is paid once per year at annual interest rate r, with no interest paid on the interest, then after t years an initial amount P grows to

$$P(1 + rt).$$

The expression $P(1 + rt)$ above is a linear function of t (assuming that the principal P and the interest rate r are fixed). Thus when money grows with simple interest, linear functions arise naturally. We now turn to the more realistic situation of **compound interest**, meaning that interest is paid on the interest.

Example 7

This example illustrates our first compound interest scenario.

Suppose you deposit \$8000 in a bank account that pays 5% annual interest. Assume the bank pays interest once per year at the end of the year, and that each year the interest is deposited in the bank account.

(a) How much will you have at the end of one year?

(b) How much will you have at the end of two years?

(c) How much will you have at the end of t years?

solution

(a) Because 5% of \$8000 is \$400, at the end of the first year you will receive \$400 interest. Thus at the end of the first year the bank account will contain \$8400.

The interest in the second year is \$20 more than the interest in the first year because of the interest on the previous interest.

(b) At the end of the second year you will receive as interest 5% of \$8400, which equals \$420, which when added to the bank account gives a total of \$8820.

(c) Note that each year the amount in the bank account increases by a factor of 1.05. At the end of the first year you will have

$$8000 \times 1.05$$

dollars (which equals \$8400). At the end of two years, you will have the amount above multiplied by 1.05, which equals

$$8000 \times 1.05^2$$

dollars (which equals \$8820). At the end of three years, you will have the amount above again multiplied by 1.05, which equals

$$8000 \times 1.05^3$$

dollars (which equals \$9261). After t years, the original \$8000 will have grown to

$$8000 \times 1.05^t$$

dollars.

The table below summarizes the data for the two methods of computing interest that we have considered in the last two examples.

	simple interest		compound interest	
year	*interest*	*total*	*interest*	*total*
initial amount		\$8000		\$8000
1	\$400	\$8400	\$400	\$8400
2	\$400	\$8800	\$420	\$8820
3	\$400	\$9200	\$441	\$9261

Simple and compound interest, once per year, on \$8000 at 5%.

After the first year, compound interest produces a higher total than simple interest. This happens because with compound interest, interest is paid on the interest.

To generalize the example above, we can replace the \$8000 used above with any initial amount P. Furthermore, we can replace the 5% annual interest with any annual interest rate r, expressed as a number rather than as a percent. Each year the amount in the bank account increases by a factor of $1 + r$. Thus at the end of the first year the initial amount P will grow to $P(1 + r)$. At the end of two years, this will have grown to $P(1 + r)^2$. At the end of three years, this will have grown to $P(1 + r)^3$. More generally, we have the following result.

Compound interest, once per year

If interest is compounded once per year at annual interest rate r, then after t years an initial amount P grows to

$$P(1+r)^t.$$

The variable t is used as a reminder that it denotes a time *period.*

The expression $P(1+r)^t$ above has exponential growth as a function of t. Because functions with exponential growth increase rapidly, compound interest can lead to large amounts of money after long time periods.

Example 8

In 1626 Dutch settlers supposedly purchased from Native Americans the island of Manhattan for \$24. To determine whether or not this was a bargain, suppose \$24 earned 7% per year (a reasonable rate for a real estate investment), compounded once per year since 1626. How much would this investment be worth by 2017?

Little historical evidence exists concerning the alleged sale of Manhattan. Most of the stories about this event should be considered legends.

solution

Because $2017-1626=391$, the formula above shows that an initial amount of \$24 earning 7% per year compounded once per year would be worth

$$24(1.07)^{391}$$

dollars in 2017. A calculator shows that this amount is over seven trillion dollars, which is more than the current assessed value of all land in Manhattan.

Today Manhattan contains well-known landmarks such as Times Square, the Empire State Building, Wall Street, and United Nations headquarters.

Interest is often compounded more than once per year. To see how this works, we now modify an earlier example. In our new example, interest will be paid and compounded twice per year rather than once per year. This means that instead of 5% interest being paid at the end of each year, the interest comes as two payments of 2.5% each year, with the 2.5% interest payments made at the end of every six months.

Example 9

Suppose you deposit \$8000 in a bank account that pays 5% annual interest, compounded twice per year. How much will you have at the end of one year?

solution Because 2.5% of \$8000 equals \$200, at the end of the first six months \$200 will be deposited into the bank account; the bank account will then have a total of \$8200.

At the end of the second six months (in other words, at the end of the first year), 2.5% interest will be paid on the \$8200 that was in the bank account for the previous six months. Because 2.5% of \$8200 equals \$205, the bank account will have \$8405 at the end of the first year.

In the example above, the \$8405 in the bank account at the end of the first year should be compared with the \$8400 that would be in the bank account if interest had been paid only at the end of the year. The extra \$5 arises because of the interest during the second six months on the interest earned at the end of the first six months.

Instead of compounding interest twice per year, as in the previous example, interest could be compounded four times per year. At 5% annual interest, this would mean that 1.25% interest will be paid at the end of every three months. Or interest could be compounded 12 times per year, with $\frac{5}{12}$% interest at the end of each month. The table below shows the growth of \$8000 at 5% interest for three years, with compounding either 1, 2, 4, or 12 times per year.

More frequent compounding leads to higher total amounts because more frequent interest payments give more time for interest to earn on the interest.

	times compounded per year			
year	1	2	4	12
initial amount	\$8000	\$8000	\$8000	\$8000
1	\$8400	\$8405	\$8408	\$8409
2	\$8820	\$8831	\$8836	\$8840
3	\$9261	\$9278	\$9286	\$9292

The growth of \$8000 at 5% interest, rounded to the nearest dollar.

Consider a bank account with annual interest rate r, compounded twice per year. Thus every six months, the amount increases by a factor of $1 + \frac{r}{2}$. After t years, this will happen $2t$ times. Thus an initial amount P will grow to $P\left(1 + \frac{r}{2}\right)^{2t}$ in t years.

More generally, suppose now that an annual interest rate r is compounded n times per year. Then n times per year, the amount increases by a factor of $1 + \frac{r}{n}$. After t years, this will happen nt times, giving the following result.

Compound interest, n times per year

If interest is compounded n times per year at annual interest rate r, then after t years an initial amount P grows to

$$P\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{nt}.$$

If the interest rate r and the compounding times per year n are fixed, then the function f defined by $f(t) = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{nt}$ is a function with exponential growth.

Example 10

Suppose a bank account starting out with \$8000 receives 5% annual interest, compounded twelve times per year. How much will be in the bank account after three years?

solution Take $r = 0.05$, $n = 12$, $t = 3$, and $P = 8000$ in the formula above, which shows that after three years the amount in the bank account will be

$$8000\left(1 + \frac{0.05}{12}\right)^{12 \cdot 3}$$

dollars. A calculator shows that this amount is approximately \$9292 (which is the last entry in the table above).

Advertisements from financial institutions often list the "APY" that you will earn on your money rather than the interest rate. The abbreviation "APY" denotes "annual percentage yield", which means the actual interest rate that you would receive at the end of one year after compounding.

In Section 3.7 we will discuss what happens when interest is compounded a huge number of times per year.

For example, if a bank is paying 5% annual interest, compounded once per month (as is fairly common), then the bank can legally advertise that it pays an APY of 5.116%. Here the APY equals 5.116% because

$$\left(1 + \frac{0.05}{12}\right)^{12} \approx 1.05116.$$

In other words, at 5% annual interest compounded twelve times per year, \$1000 will grow to \$1051.16. For a period of one year, this corresponds to simple annual interest of 5.116%.

Exercises

1 Without using a calculator or computer, give a rough estimate of 2^{83}.

2 Without using a calculator or computer, give a rough estimate of 2^{103}.

3 Without using a calculator or computer, determine which of the two numbers 2^{125} and $32 \cdot 10^{36}$ is larger.

4 Without using a calculator or computer, determine which of the two numbers 2^{400} and 17^{100} is larger.
[*Hint:* Note that $2^4 = 16$.]

For Exercises 5–8, suppose you deposit into a savings account one cent on January 1, two cents on January 2, four cents on January 3, and so on, doubling the amount of your deposit each day (assume you use an electronic bank that is open every day of the year).

5 How much will you deposit on January 7?

6 How much will you deposit on January 11?

7 What is the first day that your deposit will exceed \$10,000?

8 What is the first day that your deposit will exceed \$100,000?

For Exercises 9–12, suppose you deposit into your savings account one cent on January 1, three cents on January 2, nine cents on January 3, and so on, tripling the amount of your deposit each day.

9 How much will you deposit on January 7?

10 How much will you deposit on January 11?

11 What is the first day that your deposit will exceed \$10,000?

12 What is the first day that your deposit will exceed \$100,000?

13 Suppose $f(x) = 7 \cdot 2^{3x}$. Find a number b such that the graph of $\log_b f$ has slope 1.

14 Suppose $f(x) = 4 \cdot 2^{5x}$. Find a number b such that the graph of $\log_b f$ has slope 1.

15 A colony of bacteria is growing exponentially, doubling in size every 100 minutes. How many minutes will it take for the colony of bacteria to triple in size?

16 A colony of bacteria is growing exponentially, doubling in size every 140 minutes. How many minutes will it take for the colony of bacteria to become five times its current size?

17 At current growth rates, the earth's population is doubling about every 69 years. If this growth rate were to continue, about how many years will it take for the earth's population to increase 50% from the present level?

18 At current growth rates, the earth's population is doubling about every 69 years. If this growth rate were to continue, about how many years will it take for the earth's population to become one-fourth larger than the current level?

19 Suppose a colony of bacteria starts with 200 cells and triples in size every four hours.

(a) Find a function that models the population growth of this colony of bacteria.

(b) Approximately how many cells will be in the colony after six hours?

20 Suppose a colony of bacteria starts with 100 cells and triples in size every two hours.

(a) Find a function that models the population growth of this colony of bacteria.

(b) Approximately how many cells will be in the colony after one hour?

21 Suppose \$700 is deposited in a bank account paying 6% interest per year, compounded 52 times per year. How much will be in the bank account at the end of 10 years?

22 Suppose \$8000 is deposited in a bank account paying 7% interest per year, compounded 12 times per year. How much will be in the bank account at the end of 100 years?

23 Suppose a bank account paying 4% interest per year, compounded 12 times per year, contains \$10,555 at the end of 10 years. What was the initial amount deposited in the bank account?

24 Suppose a bank account paying 6% interest per year, compounded four times per year, contains \$27,707 at the end of 20 years. What was the initial amount deposited in the bank account?

25 Suppose a savings account pays 6% interest per year, compounded once per year. If the savings account starts with \$500, how long would it take for the savings account to exceed \$2000?

26 Suppose a savings account pays 5% interest per year, compounded four times per year. If the savings account starts with \$600, how many years would it take for the savings account to exceed \$1400?

27 Suppose a bank wants to advertise that \$1000 deposited in its savings account will grow to \$1040 in one year. This bank compounds interest 12 times per year. What annual interest rate must the bank pay?

28 Suppose a bank wants to advertise that \$1000 deposited in its savings account will grow to \$1050 in one year. This bank compounds interest 365 times per year. What annual interest rate must the bank pay?

29 An advertisement for real estate published in the 28 July 2004 *New York Times* states:

> Did you know that the percent increase of the value of a home in Manhattan between the years 1950 and 2000 was 721%? Buy a home in Manhattan and invest in your future.

Suppose that instead of buying a home in Manhattan in 1950, someone had invested money in a bank account that compounds interest four times per year. What annual interest rate would the bank have to pay to equal the growth claimed in the ad?

30 Suppose that instead of buying a home in Manhattan in 1950, someone had invested money in a bank account that compounds interest once per month. What annual interest rate would the bank have to pay to equal the growth claimed in the ad in the previous exercise?

31 Suppose f is a function with exponential growth such that

$$f(1) = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad f(3) = 5.$$

Evaluate $f(8)$.

32 Suppose f is a function with exponential growth such that

$$f(2) = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad f(5) = 8.$$

Evaluate $f(10)$.

Exercises 33–34 will help you determine whether or not the Dilbert comic earlier in this section gives a reasonable method for turning a hundred dollars into a million dollars.

33 At 5% interest compounded once per year, how many years will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a million dollars?

34 At 5% interest compounded monthly, how long will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a million dollars?

35 At 4% interest compounded monthly, how many years will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a billion dollars?

36 At 4% interest compounded once per year, how many years will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a billion dollars?

Problems

37 Explain how you would use a calculator to verify that

$$2^{13746} < 13746^{1000}$$

but

$$2^{13747} > 13747^{1000},$$

and then actually use a calculator to verify both these inequalities.
[*The numbers involved in these inequalities have over four thousand digits. Thus some cleverness in using your calculator is required.*]

38 Show that

$$2^{10n} = (1.024)^n 10^{3n}.$$

[*This equality leads to the approximation* $2^{10n} \approx 10^{3n}$.]

39 Show that if f is a function with exponential growth, then so is the square root of f. More precisely, show that if f is a function with exponential growth, then so is the function g defined by $g(x) = \sqrt{f(x)}$.

40 Suppose f is a function with exponential growth and $f(0) = 1$. Explain why f can be represented by a formula of the form $f(x) = b^x$ for some $b > 1$.

41 Explain why every function f with exponential growth can be represented by a formula of the form $f(x) = c \cdot 3^{kx}$ for appropriate choices of c and k.

42 Find three newspaper articles that use the word "exponentially" (one way to do this is to use the web site of a newspaper that allows searches). For each use of the word "exponentially" that you find in a newspaper article, discuss whether or not the word is used in its correct mathematical sense.

43 Suppose a bank pays annual interest rate r, compounded n times per year. Explain why the bank can advertise that its APY equals

$$\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^n - 1.$$

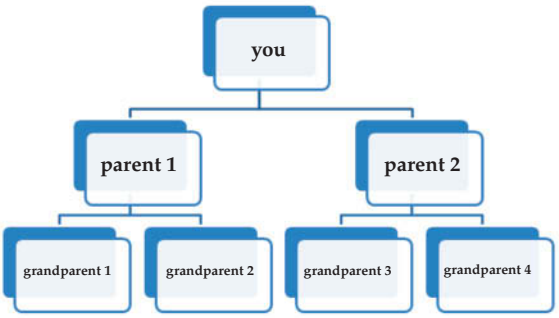
44 Find an advertisement in a newspaper or web site that gives the interest rate (before compounding), the frequency of compounding, and the APY. Determine whether or not the APY has been computed correctly.

45 Suppose f is a function with exponential growth. Show that there is a number $b > 1$ such that

$$f(x+1) = bf(x)$$

for every x.

46 What is wrong with the following apparent paradox: You have two parents, four grandparents, eight great-grandparents, and so on. Going back n generations, you should have 2^n ancestors. Assuming three generations per century, if we go back 2000 years (which equals 20 centuries and thus 60 generations), then you should have 2^{60} ancestors from 2000 years ago. However, $2^{60} = (2^{10})^6 \approx (10^3)^6 = 10^{18}$, which equals a billion billion, which is far more than the total number of people who have ever lived.



Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Without using a calculator or computer, give a rough estimate of 2^{83}.

solution

$$2^{83} = 2^3 \cdot 2^{80} = 8 \cdot 2^{10 \cdot 8} = 8 \cdot (2^{10})^8$$

$$\approx 8 \cdot (10^3)^8 = 8 \cdot 10^{24} \approx 10^{25}$$

3 Without using a calculator or computer, determine which of the two numbers 2^{125} and $32 \cdot 10^{36}$ is larger.

solution Note that

$$2^{125} = 2^5 \cdot 2^{120}$$
$$= 32 \cdot (2^{10})^{12}$$
$$> 32 \cdot (10^3)^{12}$$
$$= 32 \cdot 10^{36}.$$

Thus 2^{125} is larger than $32 \cdot 10^{36}$.

For Exercises 5–8, suppose you deposit into a savings account one cent on January 1, two cents on January 2, four cents on January 3, and so on, doubling the amount of your deposit each day (assume you use an electronic bank that is open every day of the year).

5 How much will you deposit on January 7?

solution On the n^{th} day, 2^{n-1} cents are deposited. Thus on January 7, the amount deposited is 2^6 cents. In other words, \$0.64 will be deposited on January 7.

7 What is the first day that your deposit will exceed \$10,000?

solution On the n^{th} day, 2^{n-1} cents are deposited. Because \$10,000 equals 10^6 cents, we need to find the smallest integer n such that

$$2^{n-1} > 10^6.$$

We can do a quick estimate by noting that

$$10^6 = (10^3)^2 < (2^{10})^2 = 2^{20}.$$

Thus taking $n - 1 = 20$, which is equivalent to taking $n = 21$, should be close to the correct answer.

To be more precise, note that the inequality $2^{n-1} > 10^6$ is equivalent to the inequality

$$\log(2^{n-1}) > \log(10^6),$$

which can be rewritten as

$$(n-1)\log 2 > 6.$$

Dividing both sides by $\log 2$ and then adding 1 to both sides shows that this is equivalent to

$$n > 1 + \frac{6}{\log 2}.$$

A calculator shows that $1 + \frac{6}{\log 2} \approx 20.9$. Because 21 is the smallest integer bigger than 20.9, January 21 is the first day that the deposit will exceed \$10,000.

For Exercises 9–12, suppose you deposit into your savings account one cent on January 1, three cents on January 2, nine cents on January 3, and so on, tripling the amount of your deposit each day.

9 How much will you deposit on January 7?

solution On the n^{th} day, 3^{n-1} cents are deposited. Thus on January 7, the amount deposited is 3^6 cents. Because $3^6 = 729$, we conclude that \$7.29 will be deposited on January 7.

11 What is the first day that your deposit will exceed \$10,000?

solution On the n^{th} day, 3^{n-1} cents are deposited. Because \$10,000 equals 10^6 cents, we need to find the smallest integer n such that

$$3^{n-1} > 10^6.$$

This is equivalent to the inequality

$$\log(3^{n-1}) > \log(10^6),$$

which can be rewritten as

$$(n-1)\log 3 > 6.$$

Dividing both sides by $\log 3$ and then adding 1 to both sides shows that this is equivalent to

$$n > 1 + \frac{6}{\log 3}.$$

A calculator shows that $1 + \frac{6}{\log 3} \approx 13.6$. Because 14 is the smallest integer bigger than 13.6, January 14 is the first day that the deposit will exceed \$10,000.

13 Suppose $f(x) = 7 \cdot 2^{3x}$. Find a number b such that the graph of $\log_b f$ has slope 1.

solution Note that

$$\log_b f(x) = \log_b 7 + \log_b(2^{3x})$$
$$= \log_b 7 + 3(\log_b 2)x.$$

Thus the slope of the graph of $\log_b f$ equals $3\log_b 2$, which equals 1 when $\log_b 2 = \frac{1}{3}$. Thus $b^{1/3} = 2$, which means that $b = 2^3 = 8$.

15 A colony of bacteria is growing exponentially, doubling in size every 100 minutes. How many minutes will it take for the colony of bacteria to triple in size?

solution Let $p(t)$ denote the number of cells in the colony of bacteria at time t, where t is measured in minutes. Then

$$p(t) = p_0 2^{t/100},$$

where p_0 is the number of cells at time 0. We need to find t such that $p(t) = 3p_0$. In other words, we need to find t such that

$$p_0 2^{t/100} = 3p_0.$$

Dividing both sides of the equation above by p_0 and then taking the logarithm of both sides gives

$$\frac{t}{100}\log 2 = \log 3.$$

Thus $t = 100\frac{\log 3}{\log 2}$, which is approximately 158.496. Thus the colony of bacteria will triple in size approximately every 158 minutes.

17 At current growth rates, the earth's population is doubling about every 69 years. If this growth rate were to continue, about how many years will it take for the earth's population to increase 50% from the present level?

solution Let $p(t)$ denote the earth's population at time t, where t is measured in years starting from the present. Then

$$p(t) = p_0 2^{t/69},$$

where p_0 is the present population of the earth. We need to find t such that $p(t) = 1.5p_0$. In other words, we need to find t such that

$$p_0 2^{t/69} = 1.5p_0.$$

Dividing both sides of the equation above by p_0 and then taking the logarithm of both sides gives

$$\frac{t}{69}\log 2 = \log 1.5.$$

Thus $t = 69\dfrac{\log 1.5}{\log 2}$, which is approximately 40.4. Thus the earth's population, at current growth rates, would increase by 50% in approximately 40.4 years.

19 Suppose a colony of bacteria starts with 200 cells and triples in size every four hours.

(a) Find a function that models the population growth of this colony of bacteria.

(b) Approximately how many cells will be in the colony after six hours?

solution

(a) Let $p(t)$ denote the number of cells in the colony of bacteria at time t, where t is measured in hours. We know that $p(0) = 200$. In t hours, there are $t/4$ tripling periods; thus the number of cells increases by a factor of $3^{t/4}$. Hence

$$p(t) = 200 \cdot 3^{t/4}.$$

(b) After six hours, we could expect that there would be $p(6)$ cells of bacteria. Using the equation above, we have

$$p(6) = 200 \cdot 3^{6/4} = 200 \cdot 3^{3/2} \approx 1039.$$

21 Suppose \$700 is deposited in a bank account paying 6% interest per year, compounded 52 times per year. How much will be in the bank account at the end of 10 years?

solution With interest compounded 52 times per year at 6% per year, after 10 years \$700 will grow to

$$\$700\left(1 + \frac{0.06}{52}\right)^{52\cdot 10} \approx \$1275.$$

23 Suppose a bank account paying 4% interest per year, compounded 12 times per year, contains \$10,555 at the end of 10 years. What was the initial amount deposited in the bank account?

solution Let P denote the initial amount deposited in the bank account. With interest compounded 12 times per year at 4% per year, after 10 years P dollars will grow to

$$P\left(1 + \frac{0.04}{12}\right)^{12\cdot 10}$$

dollars, which we are told equals \$10,555. Thus we need to solve the equation

$$P\left(1 + \frac{0.04}{12}\right)^{120} = \$10{,}555.$$

The solution to this equation is

$$P = \$10{,}555 \Big/ \left(1 + \frac{0.04}{12}\right)^{120} \approx \$7080.$$

25 Suppose a savings account pays 6% interest per year, compounded once per year. If the savings account starts with \$500, how long would it take for the savings account to exceed \$2000?

solution With 6% interest compounded once per year, a savings account starting with \$500 would have

$$500(1.06)^t$$

dollars after t years. We want this amount to exceed \$2000, which means that

$$500(1.06)^t > 2000.$$

Dividing both sides by 500 and then taking the logarithm of both sides gives

$$t\log 1.06 > \log 4.$$

Thus

$$t > \frac{\log 4}{\log 1.06} \approx 23.8.$$

Because interest is compounded only once per year, t needs to be an integer. The smallest integer larger than 23.8 is 24. Thus it will take 24 years for the amount in the savings account to exceed \$2000.

27 Suppose a bank wants to advertise that \$1000 deposited in its savings account will grow to \$1040 in one year. This bank compounds interest 12 times per year. What annual interest rate must the bank pay?

solution Let r denote the annual interest rate to be paid by the bank. At that interest rate, compounded 12 times per year, in one year \$1000 will grow to

$$1000\left(1 + \frac{r}{12}\right)^{12}$$

dollars. We want this to equal \$1040, which means that we need to solve the equation

$$1000\left(1 + \frac{r}{12}\right)^{12} = 1040.$$

To solve this equation, divide both sides by 1000 and then raise both sides to the power 1/12, getting

$$1 + \frac{r}{12} = 1.04^{1/12}.$$

Now subtract 1 from both sides and then multiply both sides by 12, getting

$$r = 12(1.04^{1/12} - 1) \approx 0.0393.$$

Thus the annual interest should be approximately 3.93%.

29 An advertisement for real estate published in the 28 July 2004 *New York Times* states:

> Did you know that the percent increase of the value of a home in Manhattan between the years 1950 and 2000 was 721%? Buy a home in Manhattan and invest in your future.

Suppose that instead of buying a home in Manhattan in 1950, someone had invested money in a bank account that compounds interest four times per year. What annual interest rate would the bank have to pay to equal the growth claimed in the ad?

solution An increase of 721% means that the final value is 821% of the initial value. Let r denote the interest rate the bank would have to pay for the 50 years from 1950 to 2000 to grow to 821% of the initial value. At that interest rate, compounded four times per year, in 50 years an initial amount of P dollars grows to

$$P\left(1+\frac{r}{4}\right)^{4\times 50}$$

dollars. We want this to equal 8.21 times the initial amount, which means that we need to solve the equation

$$P\left(1+\frac{r}{4}\right)^{200}=8.21P.$$

To solve this equation, divide both sides by P and then raise both sides to the power $1/200$, getting

$$1+\frac{r}{4}=8.21^{1/200}.$$

Now subtract 1 from both sides and then multiply both sides by 4, getting

$$r=4(8.21^{1/200}-1)\approx 0.0423.$$

Thus the annual interest would need to be approximately 4.23% to equal the growth claimed in the ad.

remark Note that 4.23% is not a particularly high return for a long-term investment, contrary to the ad's implication.

31 Suppose f is a function with exponential growth such that

$$f(1)=3 \quad \text{and} \quad f(3)=5.$$

Evaluate $f(8)$.

solution We can assume

$$f(x)=cb^x.$$

We need to find c and b. We have

$$3=f(1)=cb \quad \text{and} \quad 5=f(3)=cb^3.$$

Dividing the second equation by the first equation shows that $b^2=\frac{5}{3}$. Thus $b=(\frac{5}{3})^{1/2}$. Substituting this value for b into the first equation above gives

$$3=c\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^{1/2},$$

which implies that $c=3(\frac{3}{5})^{1/2}$. Thus

$$f(x)=3\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^{x/2}.$$

Using the formula above, we have

$$f(8)=3\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^{4}=\frac{625}{27}\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)^{1/2}\approx 17.93.$$

Exercises 33–34 will help you determine whether or not the Dilbert comic earlier in this section gives a reasonable method for turning a hundred dollars into a million dollars.

33 At 5% interest compounded once per year, how many years will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a million dollars?

solution We want to find t so that

$$10^6=100\times 1.05^t.$$

Thus $1.05^t=10^4$. Take logarithms of both sides, getting $t\log 1.05=4$. Thus $t=\dfrac{4}{\log 1.05}\approx 188.8$. Because interest is compounded only once per year, we round up to the next year, concluding that it will take 189 years to turn a hundred dollars into a million dollars at 5% annual interest compounded once per year. Hence the comic is correct in stating that there will be at least a million dollars after 190 years. In fact, the comic could have used 189 years instead of 190 years.

35 At 4% interest compounded monthly, how many years will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a billion dollars?

solution We want to find t so that

$$10^9=100\times\left(1+\frac{0.04}{12}\right)^{12t}.$$

Thus $(1+\frac{0.04}{12})^{12t}=10^7$. Take logarithms of both sides, getting $12t\log(1+\frac{0.04}{12})=7$. Thus $t=\dfrac{7}{12\log\left(1+\frac{0.04}{12}\right)}\approx 403.624$. Because interest is compounded once per month, we need to round up to the next month. Note that $\frac{7}{12}\approx 0.58$ and $\frac{8}{12}\approx 0.67$. Thus we conclude that it will take 403 years, 8 months to turn a hundred dollars into a billion dollars at 4% annual interest compounded monthly.

3.5 e and the Natural Logarithm

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- approximate the area under a curve using rectangles;
- explain the definition of e;
- explain the definition of the natural logarithm and its connection with area;
- use the exponential and natural logarithm functions.

Estimating Area Using Rectangles

See the Appendix for a review of the basic concepts concerning area.

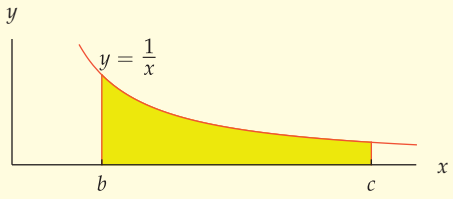
About half of calculus (the part called integral calculus) deals with questions related to area. To help prepare you for that part of calculus, we now turn to some questions involving area. We will focus on the intuitive ideas behind area, without the technicalities that you will see in calculus. The understanding you will gain from this approach should help you when you get to calculus.

In calculus, you will learn about the area under an arbitrary curve. We will keep things simple here by considering only the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$. This particular curve has been chosen because it will lead us to e, one of the most useful numbers in mathematics, and to the natural logarithm.

area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, b, c\right)$

For positive numbers b and c with $b < c$, let area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, b, c\right)$ denote the area of the yellow region below:

In this section, we will always have $b = 1$. In the next section, we make some use of other values of b.



In other words, area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, b, c\right)$ is the area of the region under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = b$ and $x = c$.

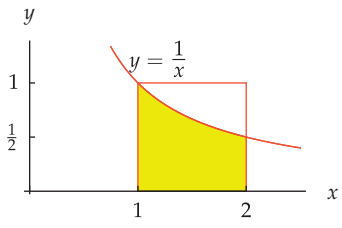
The basic idea for calculating the area of a region is to approximate the region by rectangles. Our first example shows how to obtain a rough estimate of the area in the crudest possible fashion by using only one rectangle.

Example 1

Show that

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right) < 1$$

by enclosing the yellow region here in a single rectangle.



solution The yellow region lies inside the 1-by-1 square shown here. The 1-by-1 square has area 1. Thus the figure here shows that the area of the yellow region is less than 1. In other words,

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right) < 1.$$

The next example illustrates the procedure for approximating the area of a region by placing rectangles inside the region.

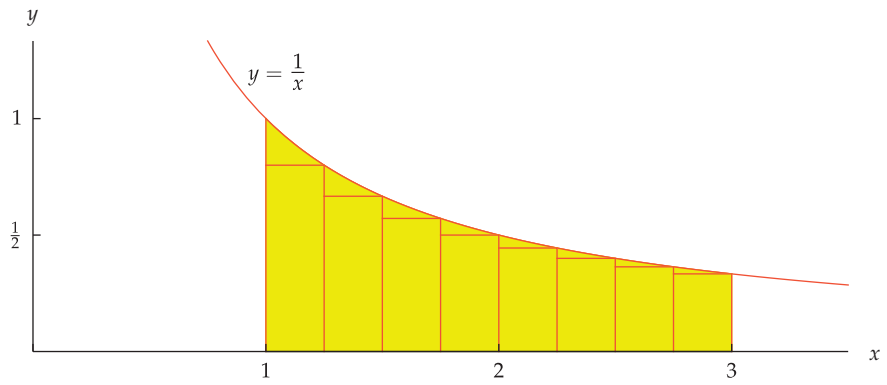
Example 2

Show that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right) > 1$$

by placing eight rectangles, each with the same size base, inside the yellow region below.

solution Place eight rectangles under the curve, as shown in the figure below:



Unlike the previous crude example, this time we use eight rectangles to get a more accurate estimate.

We have divided the interval $[1, 3]$ into eight intervals of equal size. The interval $[1, 3]$ has length 2. Thus the base of each rectangle has length $\frac{2}{8}$, which equals $\frac{1}{4}$.

The base of the first rectangle is the interval $[1, \frac{5}{4}]$. Thus the height of the first rectangle is $1/\frac{5}{4}$, which equals $\frac{4}{5}$. Because the first rectangle has base $\frac{1}{4}$ and height $\frac{4}{5}$, the area of the first rectangle equals $\frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{4}{5}$, which equals $\frac{1}{5}$.

The base of the second rectangle is the interval $[\frac{5}{4}, \frac{3}{2}]$. Thus the height of the second rectangle is $1/\frac{3}{2}$, which equals $\frac{2}{3}$. Thus the area of the second rectangle equals $\frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{2}{3}$, which equals $\frac{1}{6}$.

The area of the third rectangle is computed similarly. Specifically, the third rectangle has base $\frac{1}{4}$ and height $1/\frac{7}{4}$, which equals $\frac{4}{7}$. We conclude that the area of the third rectangle equals $\frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{4}{7}$, which equals $\frac{1}{7}$.

The first three rectangles have area $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, and $\frac{1}{7}$, as we have now computed. From this data, you might guess that the eight rectangles have area $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{7}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{9}$, $\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{1}{11}$, and $\frac{1}{12}$. This guess is correct, as you should verify.

Thus the sum of the areas of all eight rectangles is

$$\frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{11} + \frac{1}{12},$$

which equals $\frac{28271}{27720}$. Because these eight rectangles lie inside the yellow region, the area of the region is larger than the sum of the areas of the rectangles. Hence

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right) > \frac{28271}{27720}.$$

The inequality here goes in the opposite direction from the inequality in the previous example. Now we place rectangles under the curve rather than above it.

The fraction on the right has a larger numerator than denominator; thus this fraction is larger than 1. Hence without further computation the inequality above shows that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right) > 1.$$

In the example above, $\frac{28271}{27720}$ gives us an estimate for $\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right)$. If we want a more accurate estimate, we could use more and thinner rectangles under the curve.

number of rectangles	*sum of areas of rectangles*
10	1.0349
100	1.0920
1000	1.0979
10000	1.0985
100000	1.0986

Estimates of area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right)$.

The table here shows the sum of the areas of the rectangles under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$ for several choices of the number of rectangles based on the interval $[1, 3]$. Here we assume that the rectangles all have bases of the same size, as in the last example. The sums have been calculated by a computer and rounded off to five digits.

The actual value of area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right)$ is an irrational number whose first five digits are 1.0986, which agrees with the last entry in the table here.

In summary, we can get an accurate estimate of the area of the yellow region in the last example by dividing the interval $[1, 3]$ into many small intervals, then computing the sum of the areas of the corresponding rectangles that lie under the curve.

Defining e

The area under portions of the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$ has some remarkable properties. To get a feeling for how area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$ depends on c, consider the following table:

c	area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$
2	0.693147
3	1.098612
4	1.386294
5	1.609438
6	1.791759
7	1.945910
8	2.079442
9	2.197225

Here values of area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$ *are rounded off to six digits after the decimal point.*

The table above agrees with the inequalities that we derived earlier in this section: area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right) < 1$ (from Example 1) and area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right) > 1$ (from Example 2).

Before reading the next paragraph, pause for a moment to see if you can discover a relationship between any entries in the table above.

If you look for a relationship between entries in the table above, most likely the first thing you will notice is that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 4\right) = 2\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right).$$

To see if any other such relationships lurk in the table, we now add a column showing the ratio of area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$ to area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$ and another column showing the ratio of area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$ to area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right)$:

c	area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$	$\frac{\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)}{\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)}$	$\frac{\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)}{\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right)}$
2	0.693147	**1.00000**	0.63093
3	1.098612	1.58496	**1.00000**
4	1.386294	**2.00000**	1.26186
5	1.609438	2.32193	1.46497
6	1.791759	2.58496	1.63093
7	1.945910	2.80735	1.77124
8	2.079442	**3.00000**	1.89279
9	2.197225	3.16993	**2.00000**

The integer entries in the last two columns stand out. We already noted that area$\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 4\right) = 2\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$; the table above now shows the nice relationships

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 8\right) = 3\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 9\right) = 2\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right).$$

Because $4 = 2^2$ and $8 = 2^3$ and $9 = 3^2$, write these equations more suggestively as

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2^2\right) = 2\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right);$$

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2^3\right) = 3\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right);$$

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3^2\right) = 2\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right).$$

The equations above suggest the following remarkable formula.

An area formula

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$$

for every $c > 1$ and every $t > 0$.

We already know that the formula above holds in three special cases. The formula above will be derived more generally in the next section. For now, assume the evidence from the table above is sufficiently compelling to accept this formula.

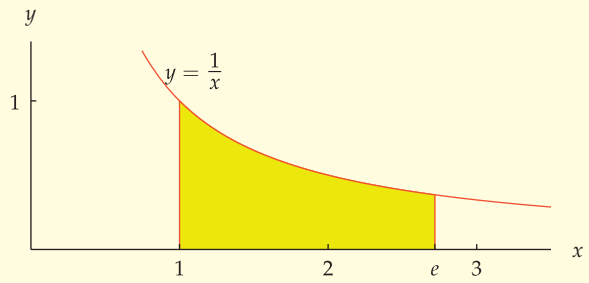
The right side of the equation above would be simplified if c is such that $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) = 1$. Thus we make the following definition.

e

e is the number such that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, e\right) = 1.$$

In other words, e is the number such that the yellow region below has area 1.



Earlier in this section in Example 1, we showed that $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$ is less than 1. In Example 2, we saw that $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 3\right)$ is greater than 1. Thus for some number between 2 and 3, the area of the region we are considering must equal 1. That number is called e.

Examples 1 and 2 imply that $2 < e < 3$.

The number e is given a special name because it is so useful in many parts of mathematics. We will see some exciting applications of e in the next two sections. You will encounter further special uses of e in your calculus course.

To attract mathematically skilled employees, Google once put up billboards around the country asking for the first 10*-digit prime number found in consecutive digits of e. The solution, found with the aid of a computer, is* 7427466391. *These ten digits start at the* 99^{th} *digit after the decimal point in the decimal representation of e.*

The number e is irrational. Here is a 40-digit approximation of e:

$$e \approx 2.7182818284590452353602874713526624977 57$$

For many practical purposes, 2.718 is a good approximation of e—the error is about 0.01%. The fraction $\frac{2721}{1001}$ approximates e even better—the error is about 0.000004%.

Keep in mind that e is not equal to 2.718 or $\frac{2721}{1001}$. These are useful approximations, but e is an irrational number that cannot be represented exactly as a decimal number or as a fraction.

Defining the Natural Logarithm

The formula

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$$

was introduced above. This formula should remind you of the behavior of logarithms with respect to powers. We will now see that the area under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$ is indeed intimately connected with a logarithm.

In the formula above, set c equal to e and use the equation

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, e\right) = 1$$

to see that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, e^t\right) = t.$$

for every positive number t.

Now consider a number $c > 1$. We can write c as a power of e in the usual fashion: $c = e^{\log_e c}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) &= \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, e^{\log_e c}\right)\\ &= \log_e c,\end{aligned}$$

Your calculus class will use the notation

$$\int_1^c \frac{1}{x}\,dx$$

to denote what we are calling $\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$.

where the last equality comes from setting $t = \log_e c$ in the equation from the previous paragraph.

The logarithm with base e, which appeared above, is so useful that it has a special name and special notation.

Natural logarithm

For $c > 0$ the **natural logarithm** of c, denoted $\ln c$, is defined by

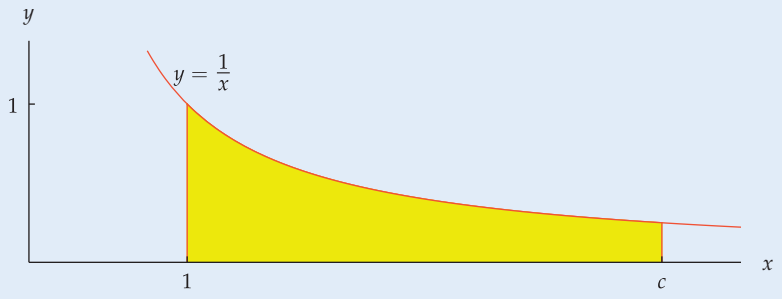
$$\ln c = \log_e c.$$

As an indication of the usefulness of e and the natural logarithm, take a look at your calculator. It probably has buttons for e^x and $\ln x$.

With this new notation, the equality $\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) = \log_e c$ derived above can be rewritten as follows.

Natural logarithms as areas

For $c > 1$, the natural logarithm of c is the area of the yellow region below:



In other words,

$$\ln c = \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right).$$

Properties of the Exponential Function and Natural Logarithm

The function whose value at x equals e^x is so important that it gets a special name.

The exponential function

The **exponential function** is the function f defined by

$$f(x) = e^x$$

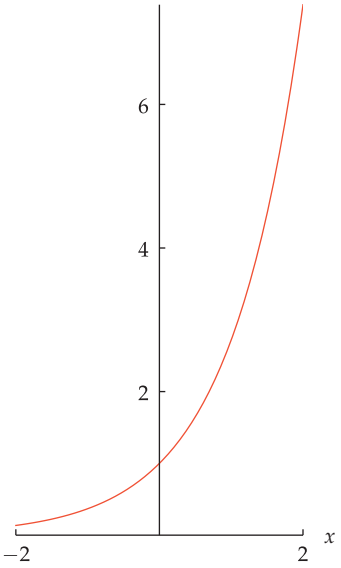
for every real number x.

In Section 3.1 we defined the exponential function with base b to be the function whose value at x is b^x. Thus the exponential function defined above is just the exponential function with base e. In other words, if no base is mentioned, then assume the base is e.

The graph of the exponential function e^x looks similar to the graphs of the exponential functions 2^x or 3^x or any other exponential function with base $b > 1$. Specifically, e^x grows rapidly as x gets large, and e^x is close to 0 for negative values of x with large absolute value.

The domain of the exponential function is the set of real numbers. The range of the exponential function is the set of positive numbers. The exponential function is an increasing function, as is every function of the form b^x for $b > 1$.

Powers of e have the same algebraic properties as powers of any number. Thus the identities listed below should already be familiar to you. They are included here as a review of key algebraic properties in the specific case of powers of e.



The graph of the exponential function e^x on $[-2, 2]$. The same scale is used on both axes to show the rapid growth of e^x as x increases.

Properties of powers of e

$$e^0 = 1$$

$$e^1 = e$$

$$e^x e^y = e^{x+y}$$

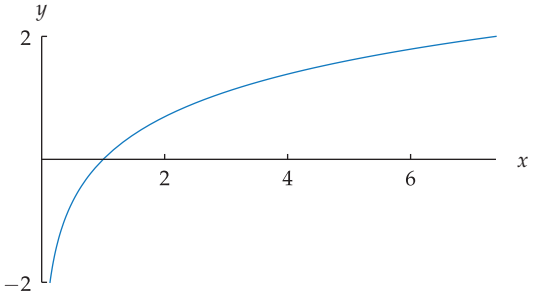
$$e^{-x} = \frac{1}{e^x}$$

$$\frac{e^x}{e^y} = e^{x-y}$$

$$(e^x)^y = e^{xy}$$

The natural logarithm of a positive number x, denoted $\ln x$, equals $\log_e x$. Thus the graph of the natural logarithm looks similar to the graphs of the functions $\log_2 x$ or $\log x$ or $\log_b x$ for any number $b > 1$. Specifically, $\ln x$ grows slowly as x gets large. Furthermore, if x is a small positive number, then $\ln x$ is a negative number with large absolute value, as shown in the following figure.

Because the function $\ln x$ is the inverse of the function e^x, the graph of $\ln x$ could be obtained by flipping the graph above across the line $y = x$.



The graph of $\ln x$ on the interval $[e^{-2}, e^2]$. The same scale is used on both axes to show the slow growth of $\ln x$ and the rapid descent near 0 toward negative numbers with large absolute value.

The domain of $\ln x$ is the set of positive numbers. The range of $\ln x$ is the set of real numbers. Furthermore, $\ln x$ is an increasing function because it is the inverse of the increasing function e^x.

In this book, as in most precalculus books, $\log x$ *means* $\log_{10} x$*. However, the natural logarithm is so important that many mathematicians (and WolframAlpha) use* $\log x$ *to denote the natural logarithm rather than the logarithm with base* 10.

Because the natural logarithm is the logarithm with base e, it has all the properties we saw earlier for logarithms with any base. For review, we summarize the key properties here. In the box below, we assume x and y are positive numbers.

Properties of the natural logarithm

$$\ln 1 = 0$$

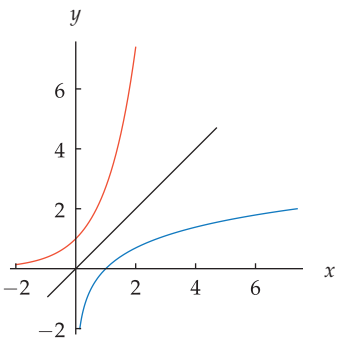
$$\ln e = 1$$

$$\ln(xy) = \ln x + \ln y$$

$$\ln \frac{1}{x} = -\ln x$$

$$\ln \frac{x}{y} = \ln x - \ln y$$

$$\ln(x^t) = t \ln x$$



The graph of $\ln x$ *(blue) is obtained by flipping the graph of* e^x *(orange) across the line* $y = x$*.*

The exponential function e^x and the natural logarithm $\ln x$ (which equals $\log_e x$) are the inverse functions for each other, just as the functions 2^x and $\log_2 x$ are the inverse functions for each other. Thus the exponential function and the natural logarithm exhibit the same behavior as any two functions that are the inverse functions for each other. For review, we summarize here the key properties connecting the exponential function and the natural logarithm.

Connections between the exponential function and the natural logarithm

- $\ln y = x$ means $e^x = y$.
- $\ln(e^x) = x$ for every real number x.
- $e^{\ln y} = y$ for every positive number y.

Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\ln(x + y)$ ***does not equal*** $\ln x + \ln y$***.***

1 For $x = 7$ and $y = 13$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln(x + y)$ (b) $\ln x + \ln y$

2 For $x = 0.4$ and $y = 3.5$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln(x + y)$ (b) $\ln x + \ln y$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\ln(xy)$ ***does not equal*** $(\ln x)(\ln y)$***.***

3 For $x = 3$ and $y = 8$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln(xy)$ (b) $(\ln x)(\ln y)$

4 For $x = 1.1$ and $y = 5$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln(xy)$ (b) $(\ln x)(\ln y)$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\ln \frac{x}{y}$ ***does not equal*** $\frac{\ln x}{\ln y}$***.***

5 For $x = 12$ and $y = 2$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln \frac{x}{y}$ (b) $\frac{\ln x}{\ln y}$

6 For $x = 18$ and $y = 0.3$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln \frac{x}{y}$ (b) $\frac{\ln x}{\ln y}$

7 Find a number y such that $\ln y = 4$.

8 Find a number c such that $\ln c = 5$.

9 Find a number x such that $\ln x = -2$.

10 Find a number x such that $\ln x = -3$.

11 Find a number t such that $\ln(2t + 1) = -4$.

12 Find a number w such that $\ln(3w - 2) = 5$.

13 Find all numbers y such that $\ln(y^2 + 1) = 3$.

14 Find all numbers r such that $\ln(2r^2 - 3) = -1$.

15 Find a number x such that $e^{3x-1} = 2$.

16 Find a number y such that $e^{4y-3} = 5$.

For Exercises 17–30, find all numbers x that satisfy the given equation.

17 $\ln(x+5) - \ln(x-1) = 2$

18 $\ln(x+4) - \ln(x-2) = 3$

19 $\ln(x+5) + \ln(x-1) = 2$

20 $\ln(x+4) + \ln(x+2) = 2$

21 $\dfrac{\ln(12x)}{\ln(5x)} = 2$

22 $\dfrac{\ln(11x)}{\ln(4x)} = 2$

23 $e^{2x} + e^{x} = 6$

24 $e^{2x} - 4e^{x} = 12$

25 $e^{x} + e^{-x} = 6$

26 $e^{x} + e^{-x} = 8$

27 $\ln(\ln x) = 4$

28 $\ln(\ln x) = 5$

29 $(\ln(3x))\ln x = 4$

30 $(\ln(6x))\ln x = 5$

31 Find the number c such that $\text{area}(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c) = 2$.

32 Find the number c such that $\text{area}(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c) = 3$.

33 Find the number t that makes e^{t^2+6t} as small as possible. [*Here* e^{t^2+6t} *means* $e^{(t^2+6t)}$.]

34 Find the number t that makes e^{t^2+8t+3} as small as possible.

35 Find a number y such that

$$\frac{1+\ln y}{2+\ln y} = 0.9.$$

36 Find a number w such that

$$\frac{4-\ln w}{3-5\ln w} = 3.6.$$

For Exercises 37–40, find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$ assuming that f and g are the indicated functions.

37 $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = e^{5x}$

38 $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = e^{4-7x}$

39 $f(x) = e^{2x}$ and $g(x) = \ln x$

40 $f(x) = e^{8-5x}$ and $g(x) = \ln x$

For each of the functions f given in Exercises 41–50:

(a) ***Find the domain of f.***

(b) ***Find the range of f.***

(c) ***Find a formula for f^{-1}.***

(d) ***Find the domain of f^{-1}.***

(e) ***Find the range of f^{-1}.***

You can check your solutions to part (c) by verifying that $f^{-1} \circ f = I$ and $f \circ f^{-1} = I$. (Recall that I is the function defined by $I(x) = x$.)

41 $f(x) = 2 + \ln x$

42 $f(x) = 3 - \ln x$

43 $f(x) = 4 - 5\ln x$

44 $f(x) = -6 + 7\ln x$

45 $f(x) = 3e^{2x}$

46 $f(x) = 5e^{9x}$

47 $f(x) = 4 + \ln(x-2)$

48 $f(x) = 3 + \ln(x+5)$

49 $f(x) = 5 + 6e^{7x}$

50 $f(x) = 4 - 2e^{8x}$

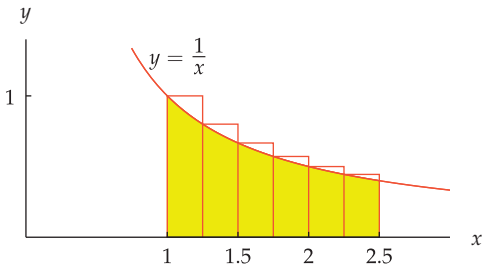
51 What is the area of the region under the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = e^2$, and above the x-axis?

52 What is the area of the region under the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = e^5$, and above the x-axis?

Problems

53 Verify that the last five rectangles in the figure in Example 2 have area $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{9}$, $\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{1}{11}$, and $\frac{1}{12}$.

54 Consider this figure:



The region under the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = 2.5$.

(a) Calculate the sum of the areas of all six rectangles shown in the figure above.

(b) Explain why the calculation you did in part (a) shows that

$$\text{area}(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2.5) < 1.$$

(c) Explain why the inequality above shows that $e > 2.5$.

55 Explain why

$$\ln x \approx 2.302585 \log x$$

for every positive number x.

The functions* cosh *and* sinh *are defined by

$$\cosh x = \frac{e^{x} + e^{-x}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sinh x = \frac{e^{x} - e^{-x}}{2}$$

for every real number x. These functions are called the* hyperbolic cosine *and* hyperbolic sine*; they are useful in engineering.

56 Show that cosh is an even function.

57 Show that sinh is an odd function.

58 Show that

$$(\cosh x)^2 - (\sinh x)^2 = 1$$

for every real number x.

59 Show that $\cosh x \geq 1$ for every real number x.

60 Show that

$$\cosh(x+y) = \cosh x \cosh y + \sinh x \sinh y$$

for all real numbers x and y.

61 Show that

$$\sinh(x+y) = \sinh x \cosh y + \cosh x \sinh y$$

for all real numbers x and y.

62 Show that

$$(\cosh x + \sinh x)^t = \cosh(tx) + \sinh(tx)$$

for all real numbers x and t.

63 Show that if x is very large, then

$$\cosh x \approx \sinh x \approx \frac{e^x}{2}.$$

64 Show that the range of sinh is the set of real numbers.

65 Show that sinh is a one-to-one function and that its inverse is given by the formula

$$(\sinh)^{-1}(y) = \ln\left(y + \sqrt{y^2+1}\right)$$

for every real number y.

66 Show that the range of cosh is the interval $[1, \infty)$.

67 Suppose f is the function defined by

$$f(x) = \cosh x$$

for every $x \geq 0$. In other words, f is defined by the same formula as cosh, but the domain of f is the interval $[0, \infty)$ and the domain of cosh is the set of real numbers. Show that f is a one-to-one function and that its inverse is given by the formula

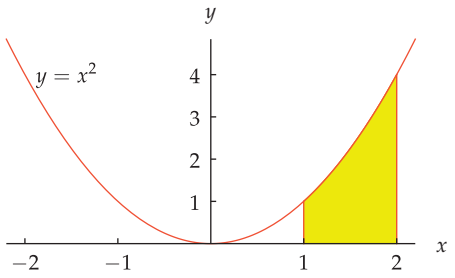
$$f^{-1}(y) = \ln\left(y + \sqrt{y^2-1}\right)$$

for every $y \geq 1$.

68 Write a description of how the shape of the St. Louis Gateway Arch is related to the graph of $\cosh x$. You should be able to find the necessary information with an appropriate web search.

The St. Louis Gateway Arch, the tallest national monument in the United States.

The following notation is used in Problems 69–72: **area$(x^2, 1, 2)$** ***is the area of the region under the curve*** $y = x^2$, ***above the x-axis, and between the lines*** $x = 1$ ***and*** $x = 2$, ***as shown below.***



69 Using one rectangle, show that

$$1 < \text{area}(x^2, 1, 2).$$

70 Using one rectangle, show that

$$\text{area}(x^2, 1, 2) < 4.$$

71 Using four rectangles, show that

$$1.96 < \text{area}(x^2, 1, 2).$$

72 Using four rectangles, show that

$$\text{area}(x^2, 1, 2) < 2.72.$$

[*The two problems above show that* area$(x^2, 1, 2)$ *is in the interval* $[1.96, 2.72]$. *If we use the midpoint of that interval as an estimate, we get* area$(x^2, 1, 2) \approx \frac{1.96+2.72}{2} = 2.34$. *This is a very good estimate—the exact value of* area$(x^2, 1, 2)$ *is* $\frac{7}{3}$, *which is approximately* 2.33.]

73 Explain why the solution to part (b) of Exercise 5 in this section is the same as the solution to part (b) of Exercise 5 in Section 3.3.

74 Suppose c is a number such that area$(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c) > 1000$. Explain why $c > 2^{1000}$.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\ln(x+y)$ ***does not equal*** $\ln x + \ln y$.

1 For $x = 7$ and $y = 13$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\ln(x+y)$ (b) $\ln x + \ln y$

solution

(a) $\ln(7+13) = \ln 20 \approx 2.99573$

(b) $\ln 7 + \ln 13 \approx 1.94591 + 2.56495$

$= 4.51086$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\ln(xy)$ ***does not equal*** $(\ln x)(\ln y)$.

3 For $x = 3$ and $y = 8$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln(xy)$ (b) $(\ln x)(\ln y)$

solution

(a) $\ln(3 \cdot 8) = \ln 24 \approx 3.17805$

(b) $(\ln 3)(\ln 8) \approx (1.09861)(2.07944)$
≈ 2.2845

The next two exercises emphasize that $\ln \frac{x}{y}$ does not equal $\frac{\ln x}{\ln y}$.

5 For $x = 12$ and $y = 2$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\ln \frac{x}{y}$ (b) $\frac{\ln x}{\ln y}$

solution

(a) $\ln \frac{12}{2} = \ln 6 \approx 1.79176$

(b) $\frac{\ln 12}{\ln 2} \approx \frac{2.48490665}{0.6931472} \approx 3.58496$

7 Find a number y such that $\ln y = 4$.

solution Recall that $\ln y$ is simply shorthand for $\log_e y$. Thus the equation $\ln y = 4$ can be rewritten as $\log_e y = 4$. The definition of a logarithm now implies that $y = e^4$.

9 Find a number x such that $\ln x = -2$.

solution Recall that $\ln x$ is simply shorthand for $\log_e x$. Thus the equation $\ln x = -2$ can be rewritten as $\log_e x = -2$. The definition of a logarithm now implies that $x = e^{-2}$.

11 Find a number t such that $\ln(2t + 1) = -4$.

solution The equation $\ln(2t + 1) = -4$ implies that

$$e^{-4} = 2t + 1.$$

Solving this equation for t, we get

$$t = \frac{e^{-4} - 1}{2}.$$

13 Find all numbers y such that $\ln(y^2 + 1) = 3$.

solution The equation $\ln(y^2 + 1) = 3$ implies that

$$e^3 = y^2 + 1.$$

Thus $y^2 = e^3 - 1$, which means that $y = \sqrt{e^3 - 1}$ or $y = -\sqrt{e^3 - 1}$.

15 Find a number x such that $e^{3x-1} = 2$.

solution The equation $e^{3x-1} = 2$ implies that

$$3x - 1 = \ln 2.$$

Solving this equation for x, we get

$$x = \frac{1 + \ln 2}{3}.$$

For Exercises 17–30, find all numbers x that satisfy the given equation.

17 $\ln(x + 5) - \ln(x - 1) = 2$

solution Our equation can be rewritten as follows:

$$2 = \ln(x + 5) - \ln(x - 1)$$
$$= \ln \frac{x + 5}{x - 1}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{x + 5}{x - 1} = e^2.$$

We can solve the equation above for x, getting $x = \frac{e^2+5}{e^2-1}$.

19 $\ln(x + 5) + \ln(x - 1) = 2$

solution Our equation can be rewritten as follows:

$$2 = \ln(x + 5) + \ln(x - 1)$$
$$= \ln\big((x + 5)(x - 1)\big)$$
$$= \ln(x^2 + 4x - 5).$$

Thus

$$x^2 + 4x - 5 = e^2,$$

which implies that

$$x^2 + 4x - (e^2 + 5) = 0.$$

We can solve the equation above using the quadratic formula, getting $x = -2 + \sqrt{9 + e^2}$ or $x = -2 - \sqrt{9 + e^2}$. However, both $x + 5$ and $x - 1$ are negative if $x = -2 - \sqrt{9 + e^2}$; because the logarithm of a negative number is undefined, we must discard this root of the equation above. We conclude that the only value of x satisfying the equation $\ln(x + 5) + \ln(x - 1) = 2$ is $x = -2 + \sqrt{9 + e^2}$.

21 $\frac{\ln(12x)}{\ln(5x)} = 2$

solution Our equation can be rewritten as follows:

$$2 = \frac{\ln(12x)}{\ln(5x)}$$
$$= \frac{\ln 12 + \ln x}{\ln 5 + \ln x}.$$

Solving this equation for $\ln x$ (the first step in doing this is to multiply both sides by the denominator $\ln 5 + \ln x$), we get

$$\ln x = \ln 12 - 2 \ln 5$$
$$= \ln 12 - \ln 25$$
$$= \ln \frac{12}{25}.$$

Thus $x = \frac{12}{25}$.

23 $e^{2x} + e^x = 6$

solution Note that $e^{2x} = (e^x)^2$. This suggests that we let $t = e^x$. Then the equation above can be rewritten as

$$t^2 + t - 6 = 0.$$

The solutions to this equation (which can be found either by using the quadratic formula or by factoring) are $t = -3$ and $t = 2$. Thus $e^x = -3$ or $e^x = 2$. However, there is no real number x such that $e^x = -3$ (because e^x is positive for every real number x), and thus we must have $e^x = 2$. Thus $x = \ln 2 \approx 0.693147$.

25 $e^x + e^{-x} = 6$

solution Let $t = e^x$. Then the equation above can be rewritten as

$$t + \frac{1}{t} - 6 = 0.$$

Multiply both sides by t, giving the equation

$$t^2 - 6t + 1 = 0.$$

The solutions to this equation (which can be found by using the quadratic formula) are $t = 3 - 2\sqrt{2}$ and $t = 3 + 2\sqrt{2}$. Thus $e^x = 3 - 2\sqrt{2}$ or $e^x = 3 + 2\sqrt{2}$. Thus the solutions to the original equation are $x = \ln(3 - 2\sqrt{2})$ and $x = \ln(3 + 2\sqrt{2})$.

27 $\ln(\ln x) = 4$

solution The equation $\ln(\ln x) = 4$ means that $e^4 = \ln x$. Thus $x = e^{(e^4)} \approx 5.15 \times 10^{23}$.

29 $\big(\ln(3x)\big) \ln x = 4$

solution Our equation can be rewritten as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 4 &= \big(\ln(3x)\big) \ln x \\ &= (\ln x + \ln 3) \ln x \\ &= (\ln x)^2 + (\ln 3)(\ln x). \end{aligned}$$

Letting $y = \ln x$, we can rewrite the equation above as

$$y^2 + (\ln 3)y - 4 = 0.$$

Use the quadratic formula to solve the equation above for y, getting

$$y \approx -2.62337 \quad \text{or} \quad y \approx 1.52476.$$

Thus

$$\ln x \approx -2.62337 \quad \text{or} \quad \ln x \approx 1.52476,$$

which means that

$$x \approx e^{-2.62337} \approx 0.072558$$

or

$$x \approx e^{1.52476} \approx 4.59403.$$

31 Find the number c such that $\text{area}\big(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\big) = 2$.

solution Because $2 = \text{area}\big(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\big) = \ln c$, we see that $c = e^2$.

33 Find the number t that makes e^{t^2+6t} as small as possible.

solution Because e^x is an increasing function of x, the number e^{t^2+6t} will be as small as possible when $t^2 + 6t$ is as small as possible. To find when $t^2 + 6t$ is as small as possible, we complete the square:

$$t^2 + 6t = (t + 3)^2 - 9.$$

The equation above shows that $t^2 + 6t$ is as small as possible when $t = -3$.

35 Find a number y such that

$$\frac{1 + \ln y}{2 + \ln y} = 0.9.$$

solution Multiplying both sides of the equation above by $2 + \ln y$ and then solving for $\ln y$ gives $\ln y = 8$. Thus $y = e^8 \approx 2980.96$.

For Exercises 37–40, find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$ assuming that f and g are the indicated functions.

37 $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = e^{5x}$

solution

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) = f(e^{5x}) = \ln(e^{5x}) = 5x$$

39 $f(x) = e^{2x}$ and $g(x) = \ln x$

solution

$$\begin{aligned} (f \circ g)(x) = f\big(g(x)\big) &= f(\ln x) \\ &= e^{2 \ln x} = (e^{\ln x})^2 = x^2 \end{aligned}$$

For each of the functions f given in Exercises 41–50:

- **(a)** ***Find the domain of f.***
- **(b)** ***Find the range of f.***
- **(c)** ***Find a formula for f^{-1}.***
- **(d)** ***Find the domain of f^{-1}.***
- **(e)** ***Find the range of f^{-1}.***

You can check your solutions to part (c) by verifying that $f^{-1} \circ f = I$ and $f \circ f^{-1} = I$. (Recall that I is the function defined by $I(x) = x$.)

41 $f(x) = 2 + \ln x$

solution

(a) The expression $2 + \ln x$ makes sense for all positive numbers x. Thus the domain of f is the set of positive numbers.

(b) The range of f is obtained by adding 2 to each number in the range of $\ln x$. Because the range of $\ln x$ is the set of real numbers, the range of f is also the set of real numbers.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the expression
$$f^{-1}(y) = e^{y-2}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set of positive numbers.

43 $f(x) = 4 - 5\ln x$

solution

(a) The expression $4 - 5\ln x$ makes sense for all positive numbers x. Thus the domain of f is the set of positive numbers.

(b) The range of f is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\ln x$ by -5 and then adding 4. Because the range of $\ln x$ is the set of real numbers, the range of f is also the set of real numbers.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the expression
$$f^{-1}(y) = e^{(4-y)/5}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set of positive numbers.

45 $f(x) = 3e^{2x}$

solution

(a) The expression $3e^{2x}$ makes sense for all real numbers x. Thus the domain of f is the set of real numbers.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that
$$y = 3e^{2x}$$
for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a real number x. To solve this equation for x, divide both sides by 3, getting $\frac{y}{3} = e^{2x}$, which implies that $2x = \ln\frac{y}{3}$. Thus
$$x = \frac{\ln\frac{y}{3}}{2}.$$
The expression above on the right makes sense for every positive number y and produces a real number x. Thus the range of f is the set of positive numbers.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the expression
$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{\ln\frac{y}{3}}{2}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set of positive numbers.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

47 $f(x) = 4 + \ln(x-2)$

solution

(a) The expression $4 + \ln(x-2)$ makes sense when $x > 2$. Thus the domain of f is the interval $(2, \infty)$.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that
$$y = 4 + \ln(x-2)$$
for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a number $x > 2$. To solve this equation for x, subtract 4 from both sides, getting $y - 4 = \ln(x-2)$, which implies that $x - 2 = e^{y-4}$. Thus
$$x = 2 + e^{y-4}.$$
The expression above on the right makes sense for every real number y and produces a number $x > 2$ (because e raised to any power is positive). Thus the range of f is the set of real numbers.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the expression
$$f^{-1}(y) = 2 + e^{y-4}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the interval $(2, \infty)$.

49 $f(x) = 5 + 6e^{7x}$

solution

(a) The expression $5 + 6e^{7x}$ makes sense for all real numbers x. Thus the domain of f is the set of real numbers.

(b) To find the range of f, we need to find the numbers y such that
$$y = 5 + 6e^{7x}$$
for some x in the domain of f. In other words, we need to find the values of y such that the equation above can be solved for a real number x. To solve this equation for x, subtract 5 from both sides, then divide both sides by 6, getting $\frac{y-5}{6} = e^{7x}$, which implies that $7x = \ln\frac{y-5}{6}$. Thus
$$x = \frac{\ln\frac{y-5}{6}}{7}.$$
The expression above on the right makes sense for every $y > 5$ and produces a real number x. Thus the range of f is the interval $(5, \infty)$.

(c) The expression above shows that f^{-1} is given by the expression
$$f^{-1}(y) = \frac{\ln\frac{y-5}{6}}{7}.$$

(d) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $(5, \infty)$.

(e) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f. Thus the range of f^{-1} is the set of real numbers.

51 What is the area of the region under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$, between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = e^2$, and above the x-axis?

solution The area of this region is $\ln(e^2)$, which equals 2.

3.6 Approximations and Area with e and ln

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- approximate $\ln(1+t)$ for small values of $|t|$;
- approximate e^t for small values of $|t|$;
- approximate $\left(1+\frac{r}{x}\right)^x$ when $|x|$ is much larger than $|r|$;
- explain the area formula that led to e and the natural logarithm.

Approximation of the Natural Logarithm

The next example leads to an important result.

Example 1

Discuss the behavior of $\ln(1+t)$ for $|t|$ a small number.

solution

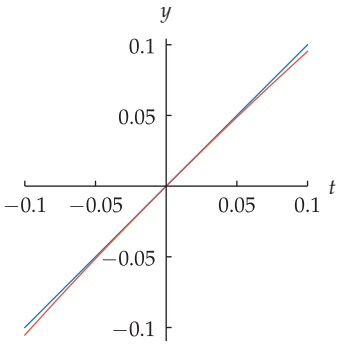
The table here shows the value of $\ln(1+t)$, rounded off to six significant digits, for some small values of $|t|$. This table leads us to guess that $\ln(1+t) \approx t$ if $|t|$ is a small number, with the approximation becoming more accurate as $|t|$ becomes smaller.

The graph here confirms that

$$\ln(1+t) \approx t$$

if $|t|$ is small. At this scale, we cannot see the difference between $\ln(1+t)$ and t for t in the interval $[-0.05, 0.05]$.

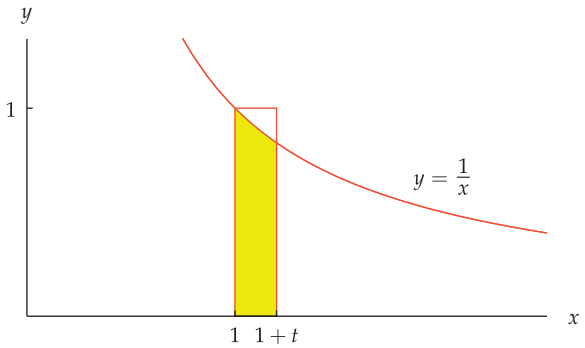
t	$\ln(1+t)$
0.05	0.0487902
0.005	0.00498754
0.0005	0.000499875
0.00005	0.0000499988
−0.05	−0.0512933
−0.005	−0.00501254
−0.0005	−0.000500125
−0.00005	−0.0000500013



The graphs of $y = \ln(1+t)$ (orange) and $y = t$ (blue) on $[-0.1, 0.1]$.

The word "small" in this context does not have a rigorous meaning, but think of numbers t such as those in the table above. For purposes of visibility, t as shown in the figure is larger than what we have in mind.

To explain the behavior in the example above, suppose $t > 0$. Recall from the previous section that $\ln(1+t)$ is the area of the yellow region below. If t is a small positive number, then the area of this region is approximately the area of the rectangle below. This rectangle has base t and height 1; thus the rectangle has area t. We conclude that $\ln(1+t) \approx t$.



The yellow region has area $\ln(1+t)$. The rectangle has area t. Thus $\ln(1+t) \approx t$.

The result below shows again why the natural logarithm deserves the name *natural*. No base for logarithms other than e produces such a nice approximation.

To remember whether $\ln(1+t)$ or $\ln t$ is approximately t for $|t|$ small, take $t = 0$ and recall that $\ln 1 = 0$; this should point you toward the correct approximation $\ln(1+t) \approx t$.

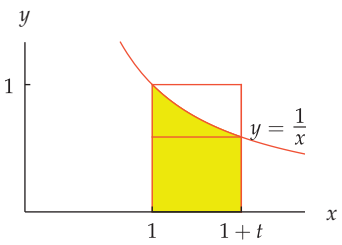
Approximation of the natural logarithm

If $|t|$ is small, then $\ln(1+t) \approx t$.

Consider now the figure here, where we assume t is positive but not necessarily small. In this figure, $\ln(1+t)$ equals the area of the yellow region.

The yellow region here contains the lower rectangle; thus the lower rectangle has a smaller area. The lower rectangle has base t and height $\frac{1}{1+t}$ and hence has area $\frac{t}{1+t}$. Thus

$$\frac{t}{1+t} < \ln(1+t).$$



The area of the lower rectangle is less than the area of the yellow region. The area of the yellow region is less than the area of the large rectangle.

The large rectangle in the figure has base t and height 1 and thus has area t. The yellow region is contained in the large rectangle; thus the large rectangle has a bigger area. In other words,

$$\ln(1+t) < t.$$

Putting together the inequalities from the previous two paragraphs, we have the result below.

Inequalities with the natural logarithm

If $t > 0$, then $\frac{t}{1+t} < \ln(1+t) < t$.

This result is valid for all positive numbers t, regardless of whether t is small or large.

Approximations with the Exponential Function

Now we turn to approximations of e^x. In the next section, we will see important applications of these approximations involving e.

Example 2

Discuss the behavior of e^x for $|x|$ a small number.

solution

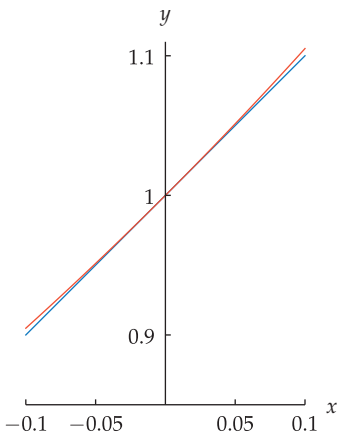
The table shows the value of e^x, rounded off appropriatetly, for some small values of $|x|$. This table leads us to guess that $e^x \approx 1 + x$ if $|x|$ is a small number, with the approximation becoming more accurate as $|x|$ becomes smaller.

x	e^x
0.05	1.051
0.005	1.00501
0.0005	1.0005001
0.00005	1.000050001
−0.05	0.951
−0.005	0.99501
−0.0005	0.9995001
−0.00005	0.999950001

The graph here confirms that

$$e^x \approx 1 + x$$

if $|x|$ is small. At this scale, we cannot see the difference between e^x and $1 + x$ for x in the interval $[-0.05, 0.05]$.



The graphs of $y = e^x$ (orange) and $y = 1 + x$ (blue) on $[-0.1, 0.1]$. To save space, the horizontal axis has been drawn at $y = 0.85$ instead of at the usual location $y = 0$.

To explain the behavior in the example above, suppose $|x|$ is small. Then, as we already know, $x \approx \ln(1+x)$. Thus

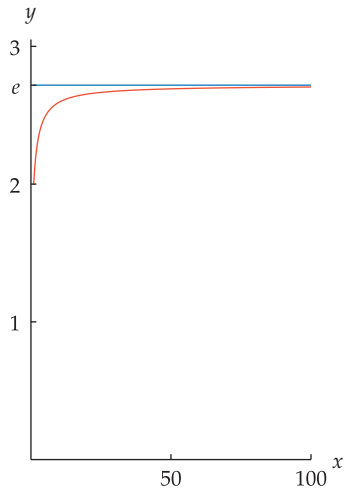
$$e^x \approx e^{\ln(1+x)}$$
$$= 1 + x.$$

Hence we have the following result.

Approximation of the exponential function

If $|x|$ is small, then

$$e^x \approx 1 + x.$$



The graphs of $y = \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x$ (orange) and $y = e$ (blue) on $[1, 100]$.

Another useful approximation gives good estimates for e^r even when r is not small. As an example, consider the following table of values of $\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x$:

x	$\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x$
100	2.70481
1000	2.71692
10000	2.71815
100000	2.71827
1000000	2.71828

Values of $\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x$, rounded off to six digits.

The last entry in the table above is the value of e, rounded off to six digits. In other words, it appears that

$$\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x \approx e$$

for large values of x. An even more general approximation is valid, as we now show.

Let r be any number, and suppose x is a number with $|x|$ much larger than $|r|$. Thus $\left|\frac{r}{x}\right|$ is small. Then, as we already know, $e^{r/x} \approx 1+\frac{r}{x}$. Thus

$$e^r = (e^{r/x})^x \approx \left(1+\frac{r}{x}\right)^x.$$

Hence we have the following result.

Notice how e appears naturally in formulas that seem to have nothing to do with e. For example, $\left(1+\frac{1}{1000000}\right)^{1000000}$ is approximately e. If we had not discovered e through other means, we probably would have discovered it by investigating $\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x$ for large values of x.

Approximation of the exponential function

If $|x|$ is much larger than $|r|$, then

$$\left(1+\frac{r}{x}\right)^x \approx e^r.$$

Example 3

Estimate 1.00002^{40}.

solution We have

$$1.00002^{40} = (1+0.00002)^{40} = \left(1+\frac{40\times 0.00002}{40}\right)^{40} = \left(1+\frac{0.0008}{40}\right)^{40}$$
$$\approx e^{0.0008}$$
$$\approx 1+0.0008$$
$$= 1.0008,$$

where the first approximation comes from the box above (40 is much larger than 0.0008) and the second approximation comes from the box before that (0.0008 is small).

This estimate is quite accurate—the first eight digits in the exact value of 1.00002^{40} are 1.0008003.

The same reasoning as used in the example above leads to the following result.

Raising 1 plus a small number to a power

Suppose t and n are numbers such that $|t|$ and $|nt|$ are small. Then

$$(1+t)^n \approx 1+nt.$$

The estimate in the box above holds because $(1+t)^n = \left(1+\frac{nt}{n}\right)^n \approx e^{nt} \approx 1+nt$.

An Area Formula

The area formula

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$$

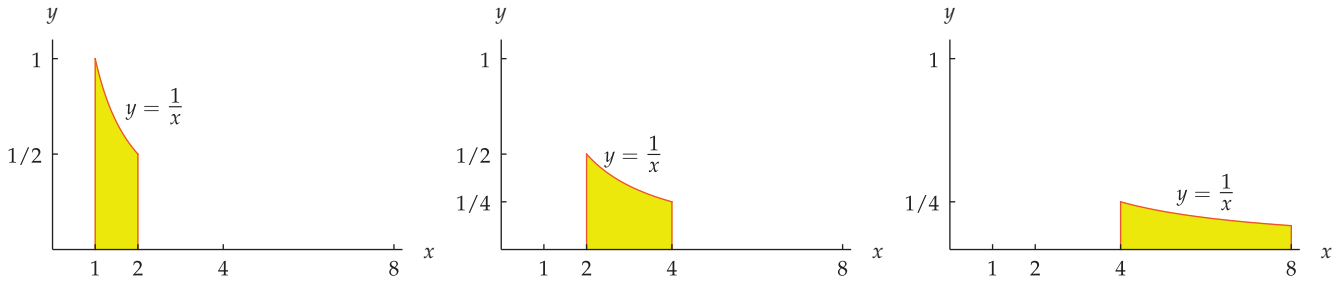
played a crucial role in the previous section, leading to the definitions of e and the natural logarithm. Now we explain why this formula is true.

The solution to the next example contains the key idea that will help us derive the area formula. In this example and the other results in the remainder of this section, we cannot use the equation $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) = \ln c$. Using that equation would be circular reasoning because we are now trying to show that $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$, which was used to show that $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) = \ln c$.

Example 4

Explain why $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right) = \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 2, 4\right) = \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 4, 8\right)$.

solution We need to explain why the three regions below have the same area.



Define a function f with domain $[1, 2]$ by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$$

and define a function g with domain $[2, 4]$ by

$$g(x) = \tfrac{1}{2} f\left(\tfrac{x}{2}\right) = \tfrac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\frac{x}{2}} = \frac{1}{x}.$$

Stretching the region on the left horizontally by a factor of 2 and vertically by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ gives the center region. Thus these two regions have the same area.

Our results on function transformations (see Section 1.3) show that the graph of g is obtained from the graph of f by stretching horizontally by a factor of 2 and stretching vertically by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$. In other words, the region above in the center is obtained from the region above on the left by stretching horizontally by a factor of 2 and stretching vertically by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$. The Area Stretch Theorem (see Appendix) now implies that the area of the region in the center is $2 \cdot \frac{1}{2}$ times the area of the region on the left. Because $2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = 1$, this implies that the two regions have the same area.

To show that the region above on the right has the same area as the region above on the left, follow the same procedure, but now define a function h with domain $[4, 8]$ by

$$h(x) = \tfrac{1}{4} f\left(\tfrac{x}{4}\right) = \tfrac{1}{4} \frac{1}{\frac{x}{4}} = \frac{1}{x}.$$

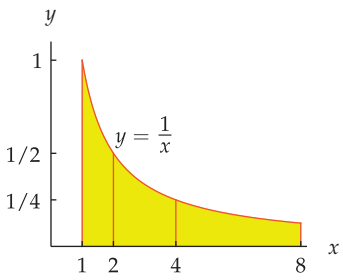
Stretching the region on the left horizontally by a factor of 4 and vertically by a factor of $\frac{1}{4}$ gives the region on the right. Thus these two regions have the same area.

The graph of h is obtained from the graph of f by stretching horizontally by a factor of 4 and stretching vertically by a factor of $\frac{1}{4}$. The Area Stretch Theorem now implies that the region on the right has the same area as the region on the left.

By inspecting a table of numbers in the previous section, we noticed that $\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2^3\right) = 3\,\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$. The next result shows why this is true.

Example 5

Explain why $\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2^3\right) = 3\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$.



solution Because $2^3 = 8$, partition the region under the curve $y = \frac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = 8$ into three regions, as shown here.

The previous example shows that each of these three regions has the same area. Thus $\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2^3\right) = 3\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$.

In the example above, there is nothing special about the number 2. We can replace 2 by any number $c > 1$, and using the same reasoning as in the two previous examples we can conclude that

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^3\right) = 3\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right).$$

Furthermore, there is nothing special about the number 3 in the equation above. Replace 3 with a positive integer t and use the same reasoning as above to show that

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right).$$

At this point, we have derived the desired area formula with the restriction that t must be a positive integer. If you have understood everything up to this point, this is an excellent achievement and a reasonable stopping place. If you want to understand the full area formula, then work through the following example, which removes the restriction that t be an integer.

Example 6

Explain why $\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$ for every $c > 1$ and every $t > 0$.

solution First we will verify the desired equation when t is a positive rational number. So suppose $t = \frac{m}{n}$, where m and n are positive integers. Using the restricted area formula that we have already derived, but replacing c by $c^{n/m}$ and replacing t by m, we have

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, \left(c^{n/m}\right)^m\right) = m\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^{n/m}\right).$$

Because $\left(c^{n/m}\right)^m = c^n$, we can rewrite the equation above as

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^n\right) = m\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^{n/m}\right).$$

When you learn calculus, you will encounter many of the ideas we have been discussing concerning area.

By the restricted area formula that we have already derived, the left side of the equation above equals $n\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$. Thus

$$n\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) = m\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^{n/m}\right).$$

Dividing the both sides of equation above by m and reversing the two sides gives

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^{n/m}\right) = \frac{n}{m}\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right).$$

In other words, we have now shown that

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c^t\right) = t\,\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 1, c\right)$$

whenever t is a positive rational number. Because every positive number can be approximated as closely as we like by a positive rational number, this implies that the equation above holds whenever t is a positive number.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–18, estimate the indicated value without using a calculator.

1 $\ln 1.003$

2 $\ln 1.0007$

3 $\ln 0.993$

4 $\ln 0.9996$

5 $\ln 3.0012 - \ln 3$

6 $\ln 4.001 - \ln 4$

7 $e^{0.0013}$

8 $e^{0.00092}$

9 $e^{-0.0083}$

10 $e^{-0.00046}$

11 $\dfrac{e^9}{e^{8.997}}$

12 $\dfrac{e^5}{e^{4.984}}$

13 $\left(\dfrac{e^{7.001}}{e^7}\right)^2$

14 $\left(\dfrac{e^{8.0002}}{e^8}\right)^3$

15 $1.00001^{34.5}$

16 $1.0002^{7.3}$

17 1.0001^{-6}

18 1.00003^{-7}

For Exercises 19–24, estimate the given number. Your calculator will be unable to evaluate directly the expressions in these exercises. Thus you will need to do more than button pushing for these exercises.

19 $\left(1+\dfrac{3}{10^{100}}\right)^{(10^{100})}$

20 $\left(1+\dfrac{5}{10^{90}}\right)^{(10^{90})}$

21 $\left(1-\dfrac{4}{9^{80}}\right)^{(9^{80})}$

22 $\left(1-\dfrac{2}{8^{99}}\right)^{(8^{99})}$

23 $\left(1+10^{-1000}\right)^{2\cdot 10^{1000}}$

24 $\left(1+10^{-100}\right)^{3\cdot 10^{100}}$

25 Estimate the slope of the line containing the points

$$(5, \ln 5) \quad \text{and} \quad (5+10^{-100}, \ln(5+10^{-100})).$$

26 Estimate the slope of the line containing the points

$$(4, \ln 4) \quad \text{and} \quad (4+10^{-1000}, \ln(4+10^{-1000})).$$

27 Suppose t is a small positive number. Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(4, e^4)$ and $(4+t, e^{4+t})$.

28 Suppose r is a small positive number. Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(7, e^7)$ and $(7+r, e^{7+r})$.

29 Suppose r is a small positive number. Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(e^2, 6)$ and $(e^{2+r}, 6+r)$.

30 Suppose b is a small positive number. Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(e^3, 5+b)$ and $(e^{3+b}, 5)$.

31 Find a number r such that

$$\left(1+\frac{r}{10^{90}}\right)^{(10^{90})} \approx 5.$$

32 Find a number r such that

$$\left(1+\frac{r}{10^{75}}\right)^{(10^{75})} \approx 4.$$

33 Find the number c such that

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 2, c\right) = 3.$$

34 Find the number c such that

$$\text{area}\left(\frac{1}{x}, 5, c\right) = 4.$$

Problems

35 Show that

$$\frac{1}{10^{20}+1} < \ln(1+10^{-20}) < \frac{1}{10^{20}}.$$

36 Estimate the value of

$$10^{50}\left(\ln(10^{50}+1) - \ln(10^{50})\right).$$

37 (a) Using a calculator, verify that

$$\log(1+t) \approx 0.434294t$$

for some small numbers t (for example, try $t = 0.001$ and then smaller values of t).

(b) Explain why the approximation above follows from the approximation $\ln(1+t) \approx t$.

38 (a) Using a calculator or computer, verify that

$$2^t - 1 \approx 0.693147t$$

for some small numbers t (for example, try $t = 0.001$ and then smaller values of t).

(b) Explain why $2^t = e^{t \ln 2}$ for every number t.

(c) Explain why the approximation in part (a) follows from the approximation $e^t \approx 1 + t$.

Part (b) of the problem below gives another reason why the natural logarithm deserves the name "natural".

39 Suppose x is a positive number.

(a) Explain why $x^t = e^{t \ln x}$ for every number t.

(b) Explain why

$$\frac{x^t - 1}{t} \approx \ln x$$

if t is close to 0.

40 (a) Using a calculator or computer, verify that

$$\left(1+\frac{\ln 10}{x}\right)^x \approx 10$$

for large values of x (for example, try $x = 1000$ and then larger values of x).

(b) Explain why the approximation above follows from the approximation $\left(1+\dfrac{r}{x}\right)^x \approx e^r$.

41 Using a calculator, discover a formula for a good approximation of

$$\ln(2+t) - \ln 2$$

for small values of t (for example, try $t = 0.04$, $t = 0.02$, $t = 0.01$, and then smaller values of t). Then explain why your formula is indeed a good approximation.

42 Show that for every positive number c, we have

$$\ln(c+t) - \ln c \approx \frac{t}{c}$$

for small values of t.

43 Show that for every number c, we have

$$e^{c+t} - e^c \approx te^c$$

for small values of t.

The next two problems combine to show that

$$\mathbf{1+t < e^t < (1+t)^{1+t}}$$

if $t > 0$.

44 Show that if $t > 0$, then $1 + t < e^t$.

45 Show that if $t > 0$, then $e^t < (1+t)^{1+t}$.

The next two problems combine to show that

$$\mathbf{\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x < e < \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^{x+1}}$$

if $x > 0$.

46 Show that if $x > 0$, then $\left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^x < e$.

47 Show that if $x > 0$, then $e < \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^{x+1}$.

48 (a) Show that

$$1.01^{100} < e < 1.01^{101}.$$

(b) Explain why

$$\frac{1.01^{100} + 1.01^{101}}{2}$$

is a reasonable estimate of e.

49 Show that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, \tfrac{1}{b}, 1\right) = \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, b\right)$$

for every number $b > 1$.

50 Show that if $0 < a < 1$, then

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, a, 1\right) = -\ln a.$$

51 Show that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, a, b\right) = \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, \tfrac{b}{a}\right)$$

whenever $0 < a < b$.

52 Show that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, a, b\right) = \ln \frac{b}{a}$$

whenever $0 < a < b$.

53 Show that $\sinh x \approx x$ if x is close to 0.
[*The definition of* sinh *was given before Problem 56 in Section 3.5.*]

54 Suppose x is a positive number and n is any number. Show that if $|t|$ is a sufficiently small nonzero number, then

$$\frac{(x+t)^n - x^n}{t} \approx nx^{n-1}.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–18, estimate the indicated value without using a calculator.

1 $\ln 1.003$

solution $\ln 1.003 = \ln(1 + 0.003) \approx 0.003$

3 $\ln 0.993$

solution $\ln 0.993 = \ln\big(1 + (-0.007)\big) \approx -0.007$

5 $\ln 3.0012 - \ln 3$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\ln 3.0012 - \ln 3 = \ln \frac{3.0012}{3} &= \ln 1.0004 \\ &= \ln(1 + 0.0004) \\ &\approx 0.0004\end{aligned}$$

7 $e^{0.0013}$

solution

$$e^{0.0013} \approx 1 + 0.0013 = 1.0013$$

9 $e^{-0.0083}$

solution

$$e^{-0.0083} \approx 1 + (-0.0083) = 0.9917$$

11 $\dfrac{e^9}{e^{8.997}}$

solution

$$\frac{e^9}{e^{8.997}} = e^{9-8.997} = e^{0.003} \approx 1 + 0.003 = 1.003$$

13 $\left(\dfrac{e^{7.001}}{e^7}\right)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{e^{7.001}}{e^7}\right)^2 = \left(e^{7.001-7}\right)^2 &= \left(e^{0.001}\right)^2 \\ &= e^{0.002} \\ &\approx 1 + 0.002 = 1.002\end{aligned}$$

15 $1.00001^{34.5}$

solution Because 0.00001 and 34.5×0.00001 are both small, we have

$$1.00001^{34.5} \approx 1 + 34.5 \times 0.00001$$
$$= 1.000345.$$

17 1.0001^{-6}

solution Because 0.0001 and $(-6) \times 0.0001$ are both small, we have

$$1.0001^{-6} \approx 1 + (-6) \times 0.0001 = 0.9994.$$

For Exercises 19–24, estimate the given number. Your calculator will be unable to evaluate directly the expressions in these exercises. Thus you will need to do more than button pushing for these exercises.

19 $\left(1 + \frac{3}{10^{100}}\right)^{(10^{100})}$

solution $\left(1 + \frac{3}{10^{100}}\right)^{(10^{100})} \approx e^3 \approx 20.09$

21 $\left(1 - \frac{4}{9^{80}}\right)^{(9^{80})}$

solution $\left(1 - \frac{4}{9^{80}}\right)^{(9^{80})} \approx e^{-4} \approx 0.01832$

23 $\left(1 + 10^{-1000}\right)^{2 \cdot 10^{1000}}$

solution

$$(1 + 10^{-1000})^{2 \cdot 10^{1000}} = \left((1 + 10^{-1000})^{10^{1000}}\right)^2$$
$$= \left((1 + \frac{1}{10^{1000}})^{10^{1000}}\right)^2$$
$$\approx e^2$$
$$\approx 7.389$$

25 Estimate the slope of the line containing the points

$$(5, \ln 5) \quad \text{and} \quad (5 + 10^{-100}, \ln(5 + 10^{-100})).$$

solution The slope of the line containing the points

$$(5, \ln 5) \quad \text{and} \quad (5 + 10^{-100}, \ln(5 + 10^{-100}))$$

is obtained in the usual way by taking the ratio of the difference of the second coordinates with the difference of the first coordinates:

$$\frac{\ln(5 + 10^{-100}) - \ln 5}{5 + 10^{-100} - 5} = \frac{\ln\left(1 + \frac{1}{5} \cdot 10^{-100}\right)}{10^{-100}}$$
$$\approx \frac{\frac{1}{5} \cdot 10^{-100}}{10^{-100}}$$
$$= \frac{1}{5}.$$

Thus the slope of the line in question is approximately $\frac{1}{5}$.

27 Suppose t is a small positive number. Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(4, e^4)$ and $(4 + t, e^{4+t})$.

solution The slope of the line containing $(4, e^4)$ and $(4 + t, e^{4+t})$ is obtained in the usual way by taking the ratio of the difference of the second coordinates to the difference of the first coordinates:

$$\frac{e^{4+t} - e^4}{4 + t - 4} = \frac{e^4(e^t - 1)}{t}$$
$$\approx \frac{e^4(1 + t - 1)}{t}$$
$$= e^4$$
$$\approx 54.598$$

Thus the slope of the line in question is approximately 54.598.

29 Suppose r is a small positive number. Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(e^2, 6)$ and $(e^{2+r}, 6 + r)$.

solution The slope of the line containing $(e^2, 6)$ and $(e^{2+r}, 6 + r)$ is obtained in the usual way by taking the ratio of the difference of the second coordinates to the difference of the first coordinates:

$$\frac{6 + r - 6}{e^{2+r} - e^2} = \frac{r}{e^2(e^r - 1)}$$
$$\approx \frac{r}{e^2(1 + r - 1)}$$
$$= \frac{1}{e^2}$$
$$\approx 0.135$$

Thus the slope of the line in question is approximately 0.135.

31 Find a number r such that

$$\left(1 + \frac{r}{10^{90}}\right)^{(10^{90})} \approx 5.$$

solution If r is not a huge number, then

$$\left(1 + \frac{r}{10^{90}}\right)^{(10^{90})} \approx e^r.$$

Thus we need to find a number r such that $e^r \approx 5$. This implies that $r \approx \ln 5 \approx 1.60944$.

33 Find the number c such that

$$\text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 2, c\right) = 3.$$

solution We have

$$3 = \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 2, c\right)$$
$$= \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, c\right) - \text{area}\left(\tfrac{1}{x}, 1, 2\right)$$
$$= \ln c - \ln 2$$
$$= \ln \tfrac{c}{2}.$$

Thus $\frac{c}{2} = e^3$, which implies that $c = 2e^3 \approx 40.171$.

3.7 Exponential Growth Revisited

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

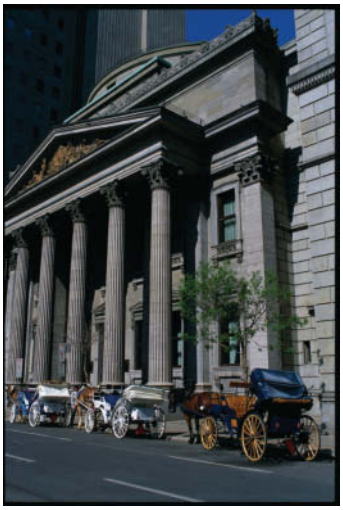
- explain the connection between continuous compounding and e;
- make computations involving continuous compounding;
- make computations involving continuous growth rates;
- estimate doubling time under continuous compounding.

Continuously Compounded Interest

Recall that if interest is compounded n times per year at annual interest rate r, then after t years an initial amount P grows to

$$P\left(1+\frac{r}{n}\right)^{nt};$$

see Section 3.4 to review the derivation of this formula.



This bank has been paying continuously compounded interest for many years.

More frequent compounding leads to a larger amount, because interest is earned on the interest more frequently. We could imagine compounding interest once per month ($n = 12$), or once per day ($n = 365$), or once per hour ($n = 365 \times 24 = 8760$), or once per minute ($n = 365 \times 24 \times 60 = 525600$), or once per second ($n = 365 \times 24 \times 60 \times 60 = 31536000$), or even more frequently.

To see what happens when interest is compounded very frequently, we need to consider what happens to the formula above when n is very large. Recall from the previous section that if n is much larger than r, then $\left(1+\frac{r}{n}\right)^{n} \approx e^{r}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} P\left(1+\frac{r}{n}\right)^{nt} &= P\left(\left(1+\frac{r}{n}\right)^{n}\right)^{t} \\ &\approx P\left(e^{r}\right)^{t} \\ &= Pe^{rt}. \end{aligned}$$

In other words, if interest is compounded many times per year at annual interest rate r, then after t years an initial amount P grows to approximately Pe^{rt}. We can think of Pe^{rt} as the amount that we would have if interest were compounded continuously. This formula is actually shorter and cleaner than the formula involving compounding n times per year.

Many banks and other financial institutions use continuous compounding rather than compounding a specific number of times per year. Thus they use the formula derived above involving e, which we now restate as follows.

Continuous compounding

If interest is compounded continuously at annual interest rate r, then after t years an initial amount P grows to

$$Pe^{rt}.$$

This formula is another example of how e arises naturally.

Continuous compounding always produces a larger amount than compounding any specific number of times per year. However, for moderate initial amounts, moderate interest rates, and moderate time periods, the difference is not large.

Example 1

Suppose $10,000 is placed in a bank account that pays 5% annual interest.

(a) If interest is compounded continuously, how much will be in the bank account after 10 years?

(b) If interest is compounded four times per year, how much will be in the bank account after 10 years?

solution

(a) The continuous compounding formula shows that $10,000 compounded continuously for 10 years at 5% annual interest grows to become

$$\$10,000e^{0.05\times 10} \approx \$16,487.$$

(b) The compound interest formula shows that $10,000 compounded four times per year for 10 years at 5% annual interest grows to become

$$\$10,000\left(1+\frac{0.05}{4}\right)^{4\times 10} \approx \$16,436.$$

Continuous compounding indeed yields more in this example, as expected, but the difference is only about $51 after 10 years.

See Exercise 25 for an example of the dramatic difference continuous compounding can make over a very long time period.

Continuous Growth Rates

The model presented above of continuous compounding of interest can be applied to any situation with continuous growth at a fixed percentage. The units of time do not necessarily need to be years, but as usual the same time units must be used in all aspects of the model. Similarly, the quantity being measured need not be dollars; for example, this model works well for population growth over time intervals that are not too large.

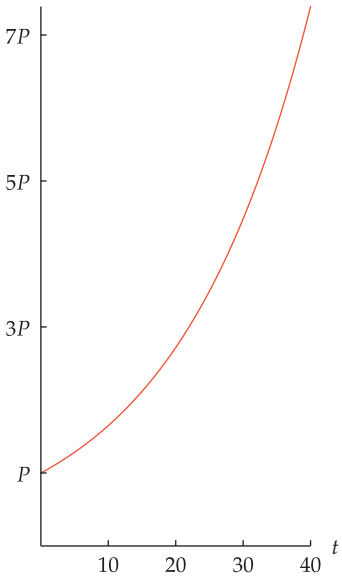
Because continuous growth at a fixed percentage behaves the same as continuous compounding with money, the formulas are the same. Instead of referring to an annual interest rate that is compounded continuously, we use the term **continuous growth rate**. In other words, the continuous growth rate operates like an interest rate that is continuously compounded.

The continuous growth rate gives a good way to measure how fast something is growing. Again, the magic number e plays a special role. Our result above about continuous compounding can be restated to apply to more general situations, as follows.

Continuous growth rates

If a quantity has a continuous growth rate of r per unit time, then after t time units an initial amount P grows to

$$Pe^{rt}.$$



The growth of an initial amount P for 40 years at 5% annual continuous growth rate.

Example 2

Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 10% per hour.

(a) By what percent will the colony grow after five hours?

(b) How long will it take for the colony to grow to 250% of its initial size?

(c) Explain why the answers to parts (a) and (b) do not depend upon the initial size P of the colony of bacteria.

solution

A continuous growth rate of 10% per hour does not imply that the colony increases by 10% after one hour. In one hour the colony increases in size by a factor of $e^{0.1}$, which is approximately 1.105, which is an increase of 10.5%.

(a) A continuous growth rate of 10% per hour means that we should set $r = 0.1$. If the colony starts at size P at time 0, then at time t (measured in hours) its size will be $Pe^{0.1t}$.

Thus after five hours the size of the colony will be $Pe^{0.5}$, which is an increase by a factor of $e^{0.5}$ over the initial size P. Because $e^{0.5} \approx 1.65$, this means that the colony will grow by about 65% after five hours.

(b) We want to find t such that

$$Pe^{0.1t} = 2.5P.$$

Dividing both sides by P, we see that $0.1t = \ln 2.5$. Thus

$$t = \frac{\ln 2.5}{0.1} \approx 9.16.$$

Because $0.16 \approx \frac{1}{6}$ and because one-sixth of an hour is 10 minutes, we conclude that it will take about 9 hours, 10 minutes for the colony to grow to 250% of its initial size.

(c) Parts (a) and (b) involve percentage growth. As can be seen in the solutions to parts (a) and (b), the initial size P of the colony cancels out of the equations. Thus the solutions to parts (a) and (b) do not depend upon P.

Doubling Your Money

The following example shows how to compute how long it takes to double your money with continuous compounding.

Example 3

How many years does it take for money to double at 5% annual interest compounded continuously?

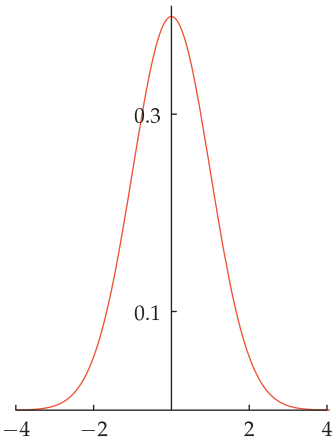
solution After t years an initial amount P compounded continuously at 5% annual interest grows to $Pe^{0.05t}$. We want this to equal twice the initial amount. Thus we must solve the equation

$$Pe^{0.05t} = 2P,$$

which is equivalent to the equation $e^{0.05t} = 2$, which implies that $0.05t = \ln 2$. Thus

$$t = \frac{\ln 2}{0.05} \approx \frac{0.693}{0.05} = \frac{69.3}{5} \approx 13.9.$$

Hence the initial amount of money will double in about 13.9 years.



The graph of $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-x^2/2}$ on the interval $[-4, 4]$. This famous bell-shaped curve plays a major role in statistics and probability. If you take advanced courses in those subjects, you will learn that this curve is the normal distribution with mean 0 and standard deviation 1. This curve shows another important use of e.

Suppose we want to know how long it takes money to double at 4% annual interest compounded continuously instead of 5%. Repeating the calculation above, but with 0.04 replacing 0.05, we see that money doubles in about $\frac{69.3}{4}$ years at 4% annual interest compounded continuously. More generally, money doubles in about $\frac{69.3}{R}$ years at R percent interest compounded continuously. Here R is expressed as a percent, rather than as a number. In other words, 5% interest corresponds to $R = 5$.

For quick estimates, usually it is best to round up the 69.3 appearing in the expression $\frac{69.3}{R}$ to 70. Using 70 instead of 69 is easier because 70 is evenly divisible by more numbers than 69 (some people even use 72 instead of 70, but using 70 gives more accurate results than using 72). Thus we have the following useful approximation formula.

Doubling time

At R percent annual interest compounded continuously, money doubles in approximately

$$\frac{70}{R}$$

years.

This approximation formula again shows the usefulness of the natural logarithm. The number 70 here is really an approximation of 69.3, which is an approximation of $100 \ln 2$.

For example, this formula shows that at 5% annual interest compounded continuously, money doubles in about $\frac{70}{5}$ years, which equals 14 years. This estimate of 14 years is close to the more precise estimate of 13.9 years that we obtained in Example 3. Furthermore, the computation using the $\frac{70}{R}$ estimate is easy enough to do without a calculator.

Example 4

The Dilbert comic in Section 3.4 asserts that at 5% compound interest per year, \$100 will grow to one million dollars in 190 years. Explain how this assertion can be verified to be at least approximately correct without using calculator.

solution The result above implies that at 5% annual interest compounded continuously, money doubles in approximately $\frac{70}{5}$ years, which equals 14 years.

When possible, do quick and rough estimates like this to check that your more precise answer is at least approximately correct.

One million divided by 100 equals 10,000. Thus we need for the initial amount to increase by a factor of 10,000. Recall that $2^{10} \approx 1000$. Thus doubling 10 times increases the original amount by a factor of 1000. To get to 10,000, we need to increase by a factor of 10 more. Because $10 \approx 8 = 2^3$, this means that the amount needs to double 3 more times, for a total of doubling 13 times. Each doubling time takes 14 years. Now $14 \times 13 = 182$.

Thus our rough estimate is that this process should take about 182 years, which is reasonably close to the 190 years asserted by the comic. This rought approximation is certainly good enough to tell us that the comic has the right order of magnitude. If the comic had claimed 19 years or 1900 years, then we would know that those claims were wrong.

Instead of focusing on how long it takes money to double at a specified interest rate, we could ask what interest rate is required to make money double in a specified time period, as in the following example.

Example 5

What annual interest rate is needed so that money will double in seven years when compounded continuously?

solution After seven years an initial amount P compounded continuously at R% annual interest grows to $Pe^{7R/100}$. We want this to equal twice the initial amount. Thus we must solve the equation

$$Pe^{7R/100} = 2P,$$

which is equivalent to the equation $e^{7R/100} = 2$, which implies that

$$\frac{7R}{100} = \ln 2.$$

Thus

$$R = \frac{100 \ln 2}{7} \approx \frac{69.3}{7} \approx 9.9.$$

Hence about 9.9% annual interest will make money double in seven years.

Suppose we want to know what annual interest rate is needed to double money in 11 years when compounded continuously. Repeating the calculation above, but with 11 replacing 7, we see that about $\frac{69.3}{11}\%$ annual interest would be needed. More generally, we see that to double money in t years, $\frac{69.3}{t}$ percent interest is needed.

For quick estimates, usually it is best to round up the 69.3 appearing in the expression $\frac{69.3}{t}$ to 70. Thus we have the following useful approximation formula.

This formula also applies for continuous growth rates and for units other than years. For example, a colony of bacteria that doubles in size after 5 hours will have a continuous growth rate of 14% per hour (because $\frac{70}{5} = 14$).

Doubling rate

The annual interest rate needed for money to double in t years with continuous compounding is approximately

$$\frac{70}{t}$$

percent.

For example, this formula shows that for money to double in seven years when compounded continuously requires about $\frac{70}{7}\%$ annual interest, which equals 10%. This estimate of 10% is close to the more precise estimate of 9.9% that we obtained in Example 5.

Exercises

1 How much would an initial amount of \$2000, compounded continuously at 6% annual interest, become after 25 years?

2 How much would an initial amount of \$3000, compounded continuously at 7% annual interest, become after 15 years?

3 How much would you need to deposit in a bank account paying 4% annual interest compounded continuously so that at the end of 10 years you would have \$10,000?

4 How much would you need to deposit in a bank account paying 5% annual interest compounded continuously so that at the end of 15 years you would have \$20,000?

5 Suppose a bank account that compounds interest continuously grows from \$100 to \$110 in two years. What annual interest rate is the bank paying?

6 Suppose a bank account that compounds interest continuously grows from \$200 to \$224 in three years. What annual interest rate is the bank paying?

7 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 15% per hour. By what percent will the colony have grown after eight hours?

8 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 20% per hour. By what percent will the colony have grown after seven hours?

9 Suppose a country's population increases by a total of 3% over a two-year period. What is the continuous growth rate for this country?

10 Suppose a country's population increases by a total of 6% over a three-year period. What is the continuous growth rate for this country?

11 Suppose the amount of the world's computer hard disk storage increases by a total of 200% over a four-year period. What is the continuous growth rate for the amount of the world's hard disk storage?

12 Suppose the number of cell phones in the world increases by a total of 150% over a five-year period. What is the continuous growth rate for the number of cell phones in the world?

13 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 30% per hour. If the colony contains 8000 cells now, how many did it contain five hours ago?

14 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 40% per hour. If the colony contains 7500 cells now, how many did it contain three hours ago?

15 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 35% per hour. How long does it take the colony to triple in size?

16 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 70% per hour. How long does it take the colony to quadruple in size?

17 About how many years does it take for money to double when compounded continuously at 2% per year?

18 About how many years does it take for money to double when compounded continuously at 10% per year?

19 About how many years does it take for \$200 to become \$800 when compounded continuously at 2% per year?

20 About how many years does it take for \$300 to become \$2,400 when compounded continuously at 5% per year?

21 How long does it take for money to triple when compounded continuously at 5% per year?

22 How long does it take for money to increase by a factor of five when compounded continuously at 7% per year?

23 Find a formula for estimating how long money takes to triple at R percent annual interest rate compounded continuously.

24 Find a formula for estimating how long money takes to increase by a factor of ten at R percent annual interest compounded continuously.

25 Suppose one bank account pays 5% annual interest compounded once per year, and a second bank account pays 5% annual interest compounded continuously. If both bank accounts start with the same initial amount, how long will it take for the second bank account to contain twice the amount of the first bank account?

26 Suppose one bank account pays 3% annual interest compounded once per year, and a second bank account pays 4% annual interest compounded continuously. If both bank accounts start with the same initial amount, how long will it take for the second bank account to contain 50% more than the first bank account?

27 Suppose a colony of 100 bacteria cells has a continuous growth rate of 30% per hour. Suppose a second colony of 200 bacteria cells has a continuous growth rate of 20% per hour. How long does it take for the two colonies to have the same number of bacteria cells?

28 Suppose a colony of 50 bacteria cells has a continuous growth rate of 35% per hour. Suppose a second colony of 300 bacteria cells has a continuous growth rate of 15% per hour. How long does it take for the two colonies to have the same number of bacteria cells?

29 Suppose a colony of bacteria has doubled in five hours. What is the approximate continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

30 Suppose a colony of bacteria has doubled in two hours. What is the approximate continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

31 Suppose a colony of bacteria has tripled in five hours. What is the continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

32 Suppose a colony of bacteria has tripled in two hours. What is the continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

Problems

33 Using compound interest, explain why

$$\left(1+\frac{0.05}{n}\right)^n < e^{0.05}$$

for every positive integer n.

34 Suppose in Exercise 9 we had simply divided the 3% increase over two years by 2, getting 1.5% per year. Explain why this number is close to the more accurate answer of approximately 1.48% per year.

35 Suppose in Exercise 11 we had simply divided the 200% increase over four years by 4, getting 50% per year. Explain why we should not be surprised that this number is not close to the more accurate answer of approximately 27.5% per year.

36 Explain why every function f with exponential growth (see Section 3.4 for the definition) can be written in the form

$$f(x) = ce^{kx},$$

where c and k are positive numbers.

37 In Section 3.4 we saw that if a population doubles every d time units, then the function p modeling this population growth is given by the formula

$$p(t) = p_0 \cdot 2^{t/d},$$

where p_0 is the population at time 0. Some books do not use the formula above but instead use the formula

$$p(t) = p_0 e^{(t \ln 2)/d}.$$

Show that the two formulas above are really the same. [*Which of the two formulas in this problem do you think is cleaner and easier to understand?*]

38 In Section 3.2 we saw that if a radioactive isotope has half-life h, then the function modeling the number of atoms in a sample of this isotope is

$$a(t) = a_0 \cdot 2^{-t/h},$$

where a_0 is the number of atoms of the isotope in the sample at time 0. Many books do not use the formula above but instead use the formula

$$a(t) = a_0 e^{-(t \ln 2)/h}.$$

Show that the two formulas above are really the same. [*Which of the two formulas in this problem do you think is cleaner and easier to understand?*]

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 How much would an initial amount of \$2000, compounded continuously at 6% annual interest, become after 25 years?

solution After 25 years, \$2000 compounded continuously at 6% annual interest would grow to $2000e^{0.06\times 25}$ dollars, which equals $2000e^{1.5}$ dollars, which is approximately \$8963.

3 How much would you need to deposit in a bank account paying 4% annual interest compounded continuously so that at the end of 10 years you would have \$10,000?

solution We need to find P such that

$$10000 = Pe^{0.04\times 10} = Pe^{0.4}.$$

Thus

$$P = \frac{10000}{e^{0.4}} \approx 6703.$$

In other words, the initial amount in the bank account should be $\frac{10000}{e^{0.4}}$ dollars, which is approximately \$6703.

5 Suppose a bank account that compounds interest continuously grows from \$100 to \$110 in two years. What annual interest rate is the bank paying?

solution Let r denote the annual interest rate paid by the bank. Then

$$110 = 100e^{2r}.$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by 100 gives $1.1 = e^{2r}$, which implies that $2r = \ln 1.1$, which is equivalent to

$$r = \frac{\ln 1.1}{2} \approx 0.0477.$$

Thus the annual interest is approximately 4.77%.

7 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 15% per hour. By what percent will the colony have grown after eight hours?

solution A continuous growth rate of 15% per hour means that $r = 0.15$. If the colony starts at size P at time 0, then at time t (measured in hours) its size will be $Pe^{0.15t}$.

Because $0.15 \times 8 = 1.2$, after eight hours the size of the colony will be $Pe^{1.2}$, which is an increase by a factor of $e^{1.2}$ over the initial size P. Because $e^{1.2} \approx 3.32$, this means that the colony will be about 332% of its original size after eight hours. Thus the colony will have grown by about 232% after eight hours.

9 Suppose a country's population increases by a total of 3% over a two-year period. What is the continuous growth rate for this country?

solution A 3% increase means that we have 1.03 times as much as the initial amount. Thus $1.03P = Pe^{2r}$, where P is the country's population at the beginning of the measurement period and r is the country's continuous growth rate. Thus $e^{2r} = 1.03$, which means that $2r = \ln 1.03$. Thus $r = \frac{\ln 1.03}{2} \approx 0.0148$. Thus the country's continuous growth rate is approximately 1.48% per year.

11 Suppose the amount of the world's computer hard disk storage increases by a total of 200% over a four-year period. What is the continuous growth rate for the amount of the world's hard disk storage?

solution A 200% increase means that we have three times as much as the initial amount. Thus $3P = Pe^{4r}$, where P is amount of the world's hard disk storage at the beginning of the measurement period and r is the continuous growth rate. Thus $e^{4r} = 3$, which means that $4r = \ln 3$. Thus $r = \frac{\ln 3}{4} \approx 0.275$. Thus the continuous growth rate is approximately 27.5%.

13 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 30% per hour. If the colony contains 8000 cells now, how many did it contain five hours ago?

solution Let P denote the number of cells at the initial time five hours ago. Thus we have $8000 = Pe^{0.3\times 5}$, or $8000 = Pe^{1.5}$. Thus

$$P = 8000/e^{1.5} \approx 1785.$$

15 Suppose a colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of 35% per hour. How long does it take the colony to triple in size?

solution Let P denote the initial size of the colony, and let t denote the time that it takes the colony to triple in size. Then $3P = Pe^{0.35t}$, which means that $e^{0.35t} = 3$. Thus $0.35t = \ln 3$, which implies that $t = \frac{\ln 3}{0.35} \approx 3.14$. Thus the colony triples in size in approximately 3.14 hours.

17 About how many years does it take for money to double when compounded continuously at 2% per year?

solution At 2% per year compounded continuously, money will double in approximately $\frac{70}{2}$ years, which equals 35 years.

19 About how many years does it take for \$200 to become \$800 when compounded continuously at 2% per year?

solution At 2% per year, money doubles in approximately 35 years. For \$200 to become \$800, it must double twice. Thus this will take about 70 years.

21 How long does it take for money to triple when compounded continuously at 5% per year?

solution To triple an initial amount P in t years at 5% annual interest compounded continuously, the following equation must hold:

$$Pe^{0.05t} = 3P.$$

Dividing both sides by P and then taking the natural logarithm of both sides gives $0.05t = \ln 3$. Thus $t = \frac{\ln 3}{0.05}$. Thus it would take $\frac{\ln 3}{0.05}$ years, which is about 22 years.

23 Find a formula for estimating how long money takes to triple at R percent annual interest rate compounded continuously.

solution To triple an initial amount P in t years at R percent annual interest compounded continuously, the following equation must hold:

$$Pe^{Rt/100} = 3P.$$

Dividing both sides by P and then taking the natural logarithm of both sides gives $Rt/100 = \ln 3$. Thus $t = \frac{100 \ln 3}{R}$. Because $\ln 3 \approx 1.10$, this shows that money triples in about $\frac{110}{R}$ years.

25 Suppose one bank account pays 5% annual interest compounded once per year, and a second bank account pays 5% annual interest compounded continuously. If both bank accounts start with the same initial amount, how long will it take for the second bank account to contain twice the amount of the first bank account?

solution Suppose both bank accounts start with P dollars. After t years, the first bank account will contain $P(1.05)^t$ dollars and the second bank account will contain $Pe^{0.05t}$ dollars. Thus we need to solve the equation

$$\frac{Pe^{0.05t}}{P(1.05)^t} = 2.$$

The initial amount P drops out of this equation (as expected), and we can rewrite this equation as follows:

$$2 = \frac{e^{0.05t}}{1.05^t} = \frac{(e^{0.05})^t}{1.05^t} = \left(\frac{e^{0.05}}{1.05}\right)^t.$$

Taking the natural logarithm of the first and last terms above gives

$$\begin{aligned}\ln 2 = t \ln \frac{e^{0.05}}{1.05} &= t(\ln e^{0.05} - \ln 1.05)\\ &= t(0.05 - \ln 1.05),\end{aligned}$$

which we can then solve for t, getting

$$t = \frac{\ln 2}{0.05 - \ln 1.05}.$$

Using a calculator to evaluate the expression above, we see that t is approximately 573 years.

27 Suppose a colony of 100 bacteria cells has a continuous growth rate of 30% per hour. Suppose a second colony of 200 bacteria cells has a continuous growth rate of 20% per hour. How long does it take for the two colonies to have the same number of bacteria cells?

solution After t hours, the first colony contains $100e^{0.3t}$ bacteria cells and the second colony contains $200e^{0.2t}$ bacteria cells. Thus we need to solve the equation

$$100e^{0.3t} = 200e^{0.2t}.$$

Dividing both sides by 100 and then dividing both sides by $e^{0.2t}$ gives the equation

$$e^{0.1t} = 2.$$

Thus $0.1t = \ln 2$, which implies that

$$t = \frac{\ln 2}{0.1} \approx 6.93.$$

Thus the two colonies have the same number of bacteria cells in a bit less than 7 hours.

29 Suppose a colony of bacteria has doubled in five hours. What is the approximate continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

solution The approximate formula for doubling the number of bacteria is the same as for doubling money. Thus if a colony of bacteria doubles in five hours, then it has a continuous growth rate of approximately (70/5)% per hour. In other words, this colony of bacteria has a continuous growth rate of approximately 14% per hour.

31 Suppose a colony of bacteria has tripled in five hours. What is the continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

solution Let r denote the continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria. If the colony initially contains P bacteria cells, then after five hours it will contain Pe^{5r} bacteria cells. Thus we need to solve the equation

$$Pe^{5r} = 3P.$$

Dividing both sides by P gives the equation $e^{5r} = 3$, which implies that $5r = \ln 3$. Thus

$$r = \frac{\ln 3}{5} \approx 0.2197.$$

Thus the continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria is approximately 22% per hour.

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Define logarithms.
- Use common logarithms to determine how many digits a number has.
- Use the formula for the logarithm of a power.
- Model radioactive decay using half-life.
- Use the change-of-base formula for logarithms.
- Use the formulas for the logarithm of a product and a quotient.
- Use logarithmic scales for measuring earthquakes, sound, and stars.
- Model population growth using functions with exponential growth.
- Compute compound interest.
- Approximate the area under a curve using rectangles.
- Explain the definition of e.
- Explain the definition of the natural logarithm.
- Approximate e^x and $\ln(1+x)$ for $|x|$ small.
- Compute continuously compounded interest.
- Estimate how long it takes to double money at a given interest rate.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$, where $f(x) = 3x^{\sqrt{32}}$ and $g(x) = x^{\sqrt{2}}$.

2 Explain how logarithms are defined.

3 Explain why logarithms with base 0 are not defined.

4 What is the domain of the function f defined by $f(x) = \log_2(5x+1)$?

5 What is the range of the function f defined by $f(x) = \log_7 x$?

6 Explain why $3^{\log_3 7} = 7$.

7 Explain why $\log_5(5^{444}) = 444$.

8 Without using a calculator or computer, estimate the number of digits in 2^{1000}.

9 Find a number x such that $\log_3(4^x + 1) = 2$.

10 Find all numbers x such that

$$\log x + \log(x+2) = 1.$$

11 Evaluate $\log_5 \sqrt{125}$.

12 Find a number b such that $\log_b 9 = -2$.

13 How many digits does 4^{7000} have?

14 At the time this book was written, the largest known prime number not of the form $2^n - 1$ was $19249 \cdot 2^{13018586} + 1$. How many digits does this prime number have?

15 Find the smallest integer m such that $8^m > 10^{500}$.

16 Find the largest integer k such that $15^k < 11^{900}$.

17 Explain why $\log 200 = 2 + \log 2$.

18 Explain why $\log \sqrt{300} = 1 + \dfrac{\log 3}{2}$.

19 Which of the expressions

$$\log x - \log y \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\log x}{\log y}$$

can be rewritten using only one log?

20 Find a formula for the inverse of the function f defined by $f(x) = 4 + 5\log_3(7x+2)$.

21 Find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$, where $f(x) = 7^{4x}$ and $g(x) = \log_7 x$.

22 Find a formula for $(f \circ g)(x)$, where $f(x) = \log_2 x$ and $g(x) = 2^{5x-9}$.

23 Evaluate $\log_{3.2} 456$.

24 Suppose $\log_6 t = 4.3$. Evaluate $\log_6(t^{200})$.

25 Suppose $\log_7 w = 3.1$ and $\log_7 z = 2.2$. Evaluate

$$\log_7 \frac{49w^2}{z^3}.$$

26 Suppose \$7000 is deposited in a bank account paying 4% interest per year, compounded 12 times per year. How much will be in the bank account at the end of 50 years?

27 Suppose $5000 is deposited in a bank account that compounds interest four times per year. The bank account contains $9900 after 13 years. What is the annual interest rate for this bank account?

28 A colony that initially contains 100 bacteria cells is growing exponentially, doubling in size every 75 minutes. Approximately how many bacteria cells will the colony have after 6 hours?

29 A colony of bacteria is growing exponentially, doubling in size every 50 minutes. How many minutes will it take for the colony to become six times its current size?

30 A colony of bacteria is growing exponentially, increasing in size from 200 to 500 cells in 100 minutes. How many minutes does it take the colony to double in size?

31 Explain why a population cannot have exponential growth indefinitely.

32 How many years will it take for a sample of cesium-137 (half-life of 30 years) to have only 3% as much cesium-137 as the original sample?

33 An earthquake with Richter magnitude 6.8 has seismic waves how many times as large as an earthquake with Richter magnitude 6.1?

34 Explain why adding ten decibels to a sound multiplies the intensity of the sound by a factor of 10.

35 Most stars have an apparent magnitude that is a positive number. However, four stars (not counting the sun) have an apparent magnitude that is a negative number. Explain how a star can have a negative apparent magnitude.

36 What is the definition of e?

37 What are the domain and range of the function f defined by $f(x) = e^x$?

38 What is the definition of the natural logarithm?

39 What are the domain and range of the function g defined by $g(y) = \ln y$?

40 Find a number t such that $\ln(4t + 3) = 5$.

41 What number t makes $\left(e^{t+8}\right)^t$ as small as possible?

42 Find a number w such that $e^{2w-7} = 6$.

43 Find a formula for the inverse of the function g defined by $g(x) = 8 - 3e^{5x}$.

44 Find a formula for the inverse of the function h defined by $h(x) = 1 - 5\ln(x + 4)$.

45 Show that $\ln\big(\ln(5^e)\big) = 1 + \ln 5$.

46 Find the area of the region under the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = e^2$.

47 Find a number c such that the area of the region under the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = c$ is 45.

48 What is the area of the region under the curve $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 3$ and $x = 5$?

49 Draw an appropriate figure and use it to explain why $\ln(1.0001) \approx 0.0001$.

50 Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $\big(2, \ln(6 + 10^{-500})\big)$ and $(6, \ln 6)$.

51 Estimate the value of $\dfrac{e^{1000.002}}{e^{1000}}$.

52 Estimate the slope of the line containing the points $(6, e^{0.0002})$ and $(2, 1)$.

53 Estimate the value of $\left(1 - \dfrac{6}{7^{88}}\right)^{(7^{88})}$.

54 How much would an initial amount of $12,000, compounded continuously at 6% annual interest, become after 20 years?

55 How much would you need to deposit in a bank account paying 6% annual interest compounded continuously so that at the end of 25 years you would have $100,000?

56 A bank account that compounds interest continuously grows from $2000 to $2878.15 in seven years. What annual interest rate is the bank paying?

57 Approximately how many years does it take for money to double when compounded continuously at 5% per year?

58 Suppose a colony of bacteria has doubled in 10 hours. What is the approximate continuous growth rate of this colony of bacteria?

59 At 5% interest compounded continuously but paid monthly (as many banks do), how long will it take to turn a hundred dollars into a million dollars? (See the Dilbert comic in Section 3.4.)

Chapter
4

The Transamerica Pyramid in San Francisco. Architects used trigonometry to design the unusual triangular faces of this building.

Trigonometric Functions

This chapter introduces the trigonometric functions. These remarkably useful functions appear in many parts of mathematics.

Trigonometric functions live most comfortably in the context of the unit circle. Thus this chapter begins with a careful examination of the unit circle, including a discussion of negative angles and angles greater than 360°.

Many formulas become simpler if angles are measured in radians rather than degrees. Hence we will become familiar with radians before defining the basic trigonometric functions—the cosine, sine, and tangent.

After defining the trigonometric functions in the context of the unit circle, we will see how these functions allow us to compute the measurements of right triangles. We will also dip into the vast sea of trigonometric identities.

4.1 The Unit Circle

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

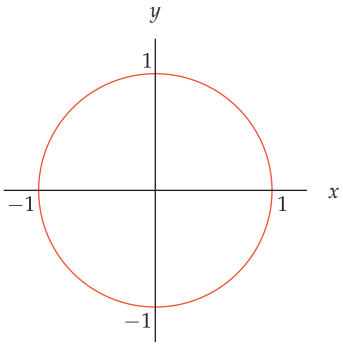
- find points on the unit circle;
- find the radius of the unit circle corresponding to any angle, including negative angles and angles greater than 360°;
- compute the length of a circular arc;
- find the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to any multiple of 30° or 45°.

The Equation of the Unit Circle

Trigonometry takes place most conveniently in the context of the unit circle. Thus we begin this chapter by acquainting ourselves with this crucial object.

The unit circle

The **unit circle** is the circle with radius 1 centered at the origin.



The unit circle.

The unit circle intersects the horizontal axis at the points $(1,0)$ and $(-1,0)$, and it intersects the vertical axis at the points $(0,1)$ and $(0,-1)$, as shown in the figure here.

The unit circle in the xy-plane is described by the equation below. You should become thoroughly familiar with this equation.

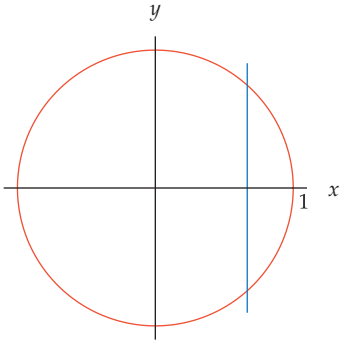
Equation of the unit circle

The unit circle in the xy-plane is the set of points (x,y) such that

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1.$$

Example 1

Find the points on the unit circle whose first coordinate equals $\frac{2}{3}$.



The unit circle and the line $x = \frac{2}{3}$.

solution We need to find the intersection of the unit circle and the line in the xy-plane whose equation is $x = \frac{2}{3}$, as shown here. To find this intersection, set x equal to $\frac{2}{3}$ in the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and then solve for y. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$(\tfrac{2}{3})^2 + y^2 = 1.$$

This simplifies to the equation $y^2 = \frac{5}{9}$, which implies that $y = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}$ or $y = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}$. Thus the points on the unit circle whose first coordinate equals $\frac{2}{3}$ are $(\frac{2}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3})$ and $(\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3})$.

The next example shows how to find the coordinates of the points where the unit circle intersects the line through the origin with slope 1 (which in the xy-plane is described by the equation $y = x$).

Example 2

Find the points on the unit circle whose two coordinates are equal.

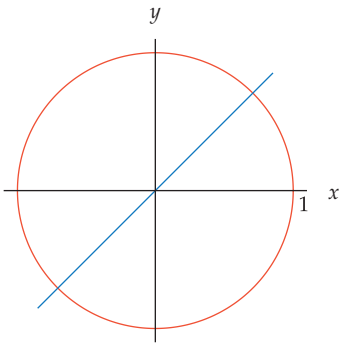
solution We need to find the intersection of the unit circle and the line in the xy-plane whose equation is $y = x$. To find this intersection, set y equal to x in the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and then solve for x. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$x^2 + x^2 = 1.$$

This simplifies to the equation $2x^2 = 1$, which implies that

$$x = \pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \pm\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}.$$

Thus $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ are the points on the unit circle whose coordinates are equal.

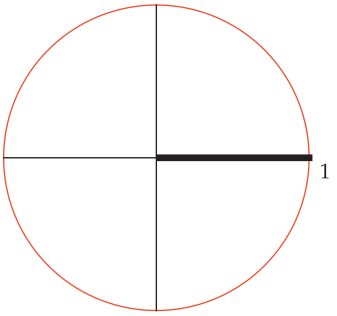


The unit circle and the line through the origin with slope 1.

Angles in the Unit Circle

The **positive horizontal axis**, which plays a special role in trigonometry, is the set of points on the horizontal axis that lie to the right of the origin. When we want to call attention to the positive horizontal axis, sometimes we draw it thicker than normal, as shown here.

We will also occasionally refer to the negative horizontal axis, the positive vertical axis, and the negative vertical axis. These terms are sufficiently descriptive so that definitions are almost unneeded, but here are the formal definitions.



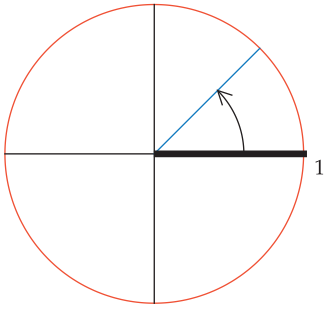
The unit circle with a thickened positive horizontal axis.

Positive and negative horizontal and vertical axes

- The **positive horizontal axis** is the set of points in the coordinate plane of the form $(x, 0)$, where $x > 0$.
- The **negative horizontal axis** is the set of points in the coordinate plane of the form $(x, 0)$, where $x < 0$.
- The **positive vertical axis** is the set of points in the coordinate plane of the form $(0, y)$, where $y > 0$.
- The **negative vertical axis** is the set of points in the coordinate plane of the form $(0, y)$, where $y < 0$.

We will be dealing with the angle between a radius of the unit circle and the positive horizontal axis, measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis. **Counterclockwise** refers to the opposite direction from the motion of a clock's hands.

For example, the figure here shows the radius of the unit circle whose endpoint is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$. The result of Example 2 implies that this radius has a 45° angle with the positive horizontal axis.



The radius that has a 45° *angle with the positive horizontal axis. The arrow indicates the counterclockwise direction.*

The radius corresponding to an angle

For $\theta > 0$, the **radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ degrees** is the radius that has angle θ degrees with the positive horizontal axis, as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis.

Example 3

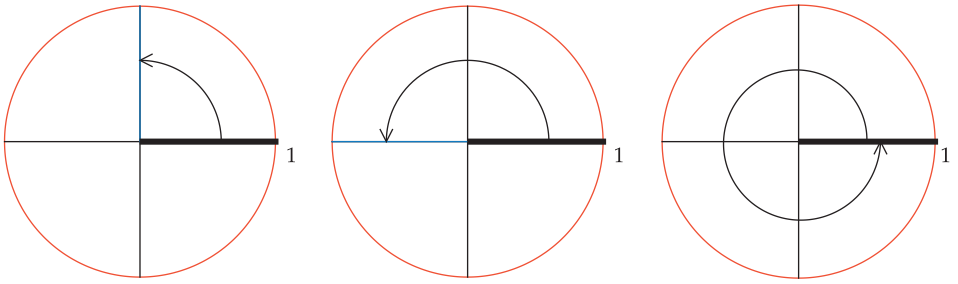
Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each of the following angles: 90°, 180°, and 360°.

solution The radius ending at $(0, 1)$ on the positive vertical axis has a 90° angle with the positive horizontal axis.

Similarly, the radius ending at $(-1, 0)$ on the negative horizontal axis has a 180° angle with the positive horizontal axis.

Going all the way around the circle corresponds to a 360° angle, getting us back to where we started with the radius ending at $(1, 0)$ on the positive horizontal axis.

The figure below shows each of these key angles and its corresponding radius.



90° 180° 360°

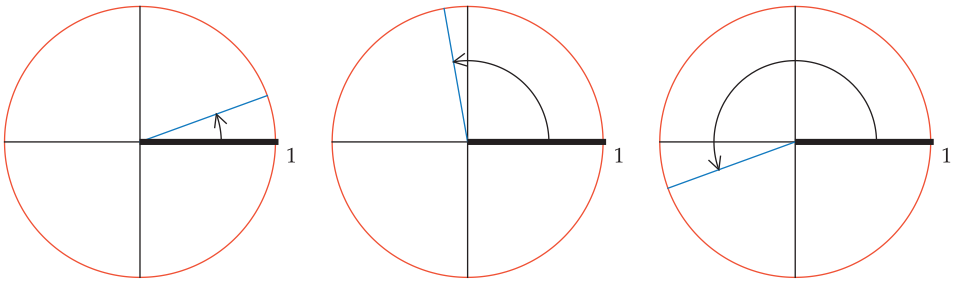
Example 4

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each of the following angles: 20°, 100°, and 200°.

solution The figure below shows each angle, along with its corresponding radius in blue:

The radius corresponding to 100° *lies slightly to the left of the positive vertical axis because* 100° *is slightly bigger than* 90°.

The radius corresponding to 200° *lies somewhat below the negative horizontal axis because* 200° *is somewhat bigger than* 180°.



20° 100° 200°

Negative Angles

Sometimes it is useful to consider the radius of the unit circle corresponding to a negative angle. By a negative angle we simply mean an angle that is measured clockwise from the positive horizontal axis.

The radius corresponding to a negative angle

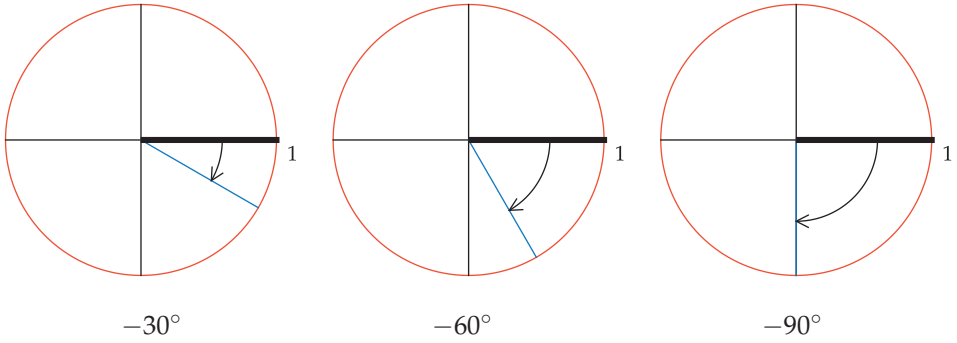
For $\theta < 0$, the **radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ degrees** is the radius that has angle $|\theta|$ degrees with the positive horizontal axis, as measured clockwise from the positive horizontal axis.

Clockwise *refers to the direction in which a clock's hands move, as shown by the arrows in the next example.*

Example 5

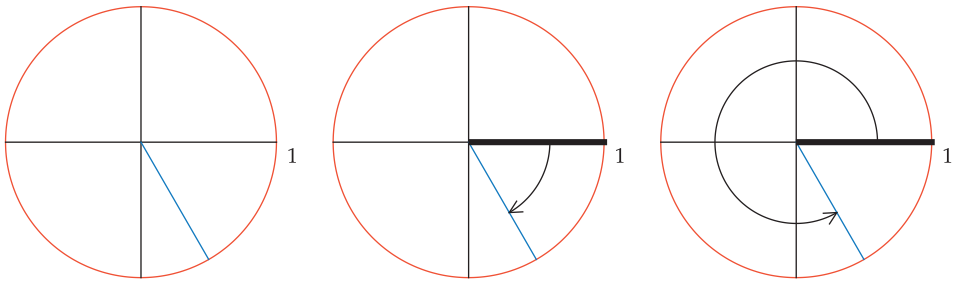
Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each of the following angles: $-30°$, $-60°$, and $-90°$.

solution



The hands of a clock move in a clockwise direction.

A radius can correspond to more than one angle. For example, consider the radius below on the left. Measuring clockwise from the positive horizontal axis, the radius corresponds to $-60°$, as shown in the center. Or measuring counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis, the same radius corresponds to $300°$, as shown on the right.



The radius on the left corresponds to $-60°$ *(as in the center) and to* $300°$ *(as on the right).*

Each angle (positive or negative) corresponds to a unique radius of the unit circle, but a given radius corresponds to more than one angle. The figure above should convince you that each radius corresponds to some positivie ange and also to some negative angle. Actually, as we will soon see, each radius corresponds to infinitely many positive angles and infinitely many negative angles.

In summary, the radius on the unit circle corresponding to an angle is determined as follows.

Positive and negative angles

- Angle measurements for a radius on the unit circle are made from the positive horizontal axis.
- Positive angles correspond to moving counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis.
- Negative angles correspond to moving clockwise from the positive horizontal axis.

These bees are moving in a counterclockwise direction.

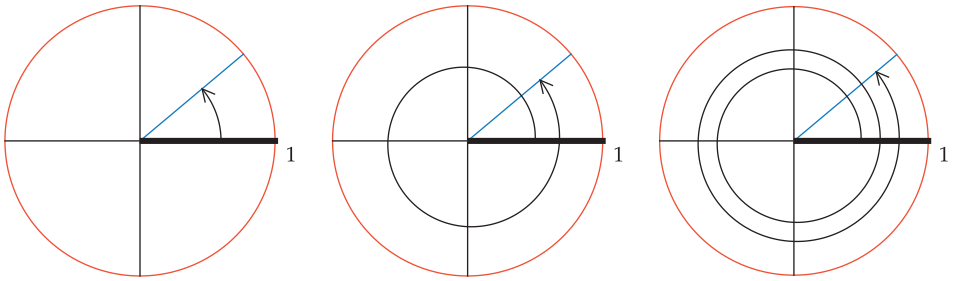
Angles Greater than 360°

Sometimes we must consider angles with absolute value greater than 360°. Such angles arise by starting at the positive horizontal axis and looping around the circle one or more times. The next example shows this procedure.

Example 6 Consider the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 40°. Discuss other angles that correspond to this radius.

solution Starting from the positive horizontal axis and moving counterclockwise, we could end up at the same radius by going completely around the circle (360°) and then continuing for another 40° for a total of 400°, as shown below in the center. Or we could go completely around the circle twice (720°) and then continue counterclockwise for another 40° for a total of 760°, as shown below on the right.

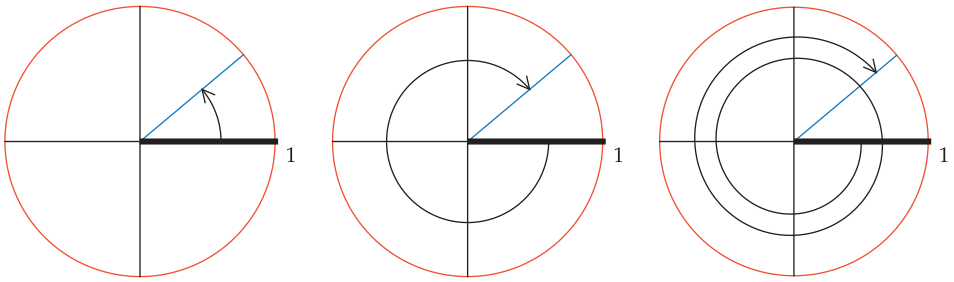
The same radius corresponds to 40°, 400°, 760°, and so on.



40° 400° 760°

We can get another set of angles for the same radius by measuring clockwise from the positive horizontal axis. The figure below in the center shows that the radius corresponding to 40° also corresponds to −320°. Or we could go completely around the circle in the clockwise direction (−360°) and then continue clockwise to the radius (another −320°) for a total of −680°, as shown below on the right.

The same radius corresponds to 40°, −320°, −680°, and so on.



40° −320° −680°

For each real number θ, there is one radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ degrees. However, for each radius of the unit circle, there are infinitely many angles corresponding to that radius because we can add integer multiples of 360°. Here is the precise result.

Multiple choices for the angle corresponding to a radius

A radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ degrees also corresponds to $\theta + 360n$ degrees for every integer n.

Length of a Circular Arc

Here is an intuitive definition of the length of a curve: Place a string on the curve, then straighten the string into a line segment and declare its length to be the length of the curve.

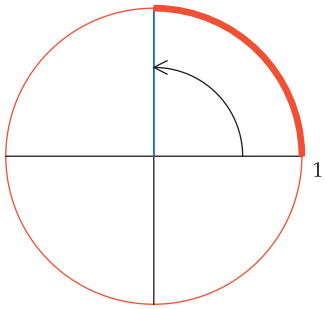
We will now find a formula for the length of a circular arc, starting with a simple example.

Example 7

What is the length of a circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to 90°?

solution The circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to 90° is shown here as the thickened part of the unit circle.

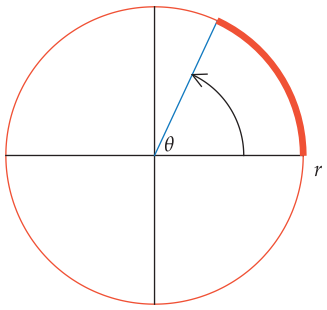
To find the length of this circular arc, recall that the length (circumference) of the entire unit circle equals 2π (from the familiar expression $2\pi r$ with $r = 1$). The circular arc here is one-fourth of the unit circle. Thus its length equals $\frac{2\pi}{4}$, which equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$.



The 90° circular arc.

More generally, suppose $0 < \theta \le 360$ and consider a circular arc corresponding to θ degrees on a circle with radius r, as shown in the thickened part of the circle here. The length of this circular arc equals the fraction of the entire circle taken up by this circular arc times the circumference of the entire circle. In other words, the length of this circular arc equals $\frac{\theta}{360} \cdot 2\pi r$, which equals $\frac{\theta \pi r}{180}$.

In the following summary of the result that we derived above, we assume $0 < \theta \le 360$.



This circular arc has length $\frac{\theta \pi r}{180}$.

Length of a circular arc

An arc corresponding to θ degrees on a circle with radius r has length $\frac{\theta \pi r}{180}$.

In the special case where $\theta = 360$, the formula above states that a circle with radius r has length $2\pi r$, which is the familiar formula for the circumference of a circle with radius r.

Example 8

The London Eye is a giant Ferris wheel in England with a diameter of 394 feet. The London Eye rotates about 12.3° each minute. What is the speed, in miles per hour, of passengers on the outer edge of the London Eye?

solution The radius of the London Eye is $\frac{394}{2}$ feet, which equals 197 feet. The formula above tells us that passengers travel

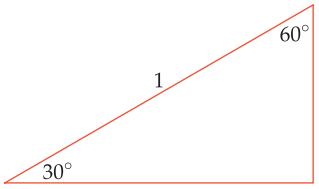
$$\frac{(12.3)\pi(197)}{180}$$

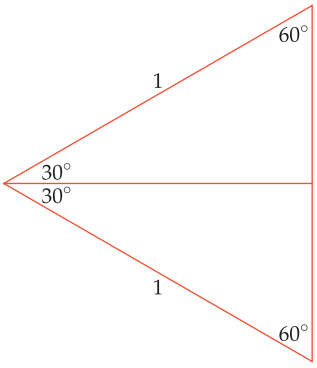
feet per minute, which equals approximately 42.29 feet per minute. Multiplying by 60, we see that the passengers travel about 2537 feet per hour. Dividing by 5280 (the number of feet in a mile), we conclude that passengers travel about 0.48 miles per hour.

The London Eye.

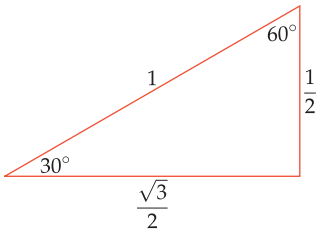
Special Points on the Unit Circle

The radius of the unit circle that corresponds to 45° has its endpoint at $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$; see Example 2. The coordinates of the endpoint can also be found for the radius corresponding to 30° and for the radius corresponding to 60°. To do this, we first need to examine the dimensions of a right triangle with those angles.





The unlabeled vertical side of the large equilateral triangle has length 1. Thus in the top triangle, the vertical side has length $\frac{1}{2}$.



Consider a right triangle, one of whose angles is 30°. Because the angles of a triangle add up to 180°, the other acute angle of the triangle is 60°. Suppose this triangle has a hypotenuse of length 1. Our goal is to find the lengths of the other two sides of the triangle.

Flip the triangle across the base adjacent to the 30° angle, creating the figure shown here. Notice that all three angles in the large triangle are 60°. Thus the large triangle is an equilateral triangle. We already knew that two sides of this large triangle have length 1, as labeled here; now we know that the third side also has length 1.

In each of the smaller triangles, the side opposite the 30° angle has half the length of the vertical side of the large triangle. Thus the vertical side in the top triangle has length $\frac{1}{2}$. The Pythagorean Theorem then implies that the horizontal side has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (you should verify this). Thus the dimensions of this triangle are as in the figure shown below.

Dimensions of a triangle with angles of 30°, 60°, *and* 90°

In a triangle with angles of 30°, 60°, and 90° and hypotenuse of length 1,

- the side opposite the 30° angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$;
- the side opposite the 60° angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.

Example 9

(a) Find the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 30°.

(b) Find the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 60°.

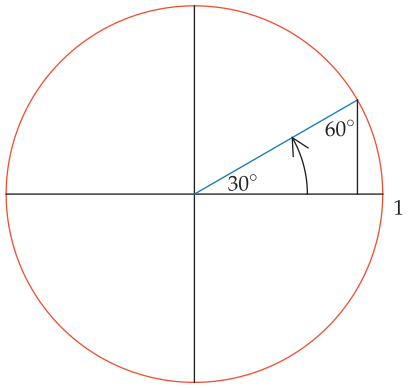
solution

(a) The radius corresponding to 30° is shown below on the left. If we drop a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, as shown below, we get a 30°-60°-90° triangle. The hypotenuse of that triangle is a radius of the unit circle and hence has length 1. Thus the side opposite the 60° angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and the side opposite the 30° angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence the radius corresponding to 30° has its endpoint at $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.

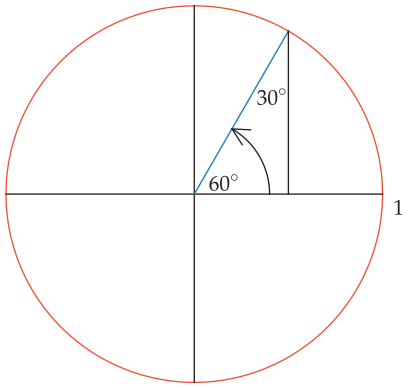
The table below gives the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to some special angles.

angle	*endpoint of radius*
0°	$(1,0)$
30°	$\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$
45°	$\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$
60°	$\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$
90°	$(0,1)$
180°	$(-1,0)$

Exercises 37–42 ask you to extend this table to some other special angles. As we will see soon, the trigonometric functions were invented to extend this table to all angles.



This radius has endpoint $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.



This radius has endpoint $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$.

(b) The radius corresponding to 60° is shown above on the right. The same reasoning as used in part (a) shows that this radius has its endpoint at $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$.

Exercises

1 Find all numbers t such that $(\frac{1}{3}, t)$ is a point on the unit circle.

2 Find all numbers t such that $(\frac{3}{5}, t)$ is a point on the unit circle.

3 Find all numbers t such that $(t, -\frac{2}{5})$ is a point on the unit circle.

4 Find all numbers t such that $(t, -\frac{3}{7})$ is a point on the unit circle.

5 Find the points where the line through the origin with slope 3 intersects the unit circle.

6 Find the points where the line through the origin with slope 4 intersects the unit circle.

For Exercises 7–14, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to the given angle. Include an arrow to show the direction in which the angle is measured from the positive horizontal axis.

7 $20°$

8 $80°$

9 $160°$

10 $330°$

11 $460°$

12 $-10°$

13 $-75°$

14 $-170°$

15 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 4 o'clock?

16 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 5 o'clock?

17 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 4:30?

18 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 7:15?

19 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 1:23?

20 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 11:17?

For Exercises 21–24, give the answers to the nearest second.

21 At what time between 1 o'clock and 2 o'clock are the hour hand and the minute hand of a clock pointing in the same direction?

22 At what time between 4 o'clock and 5 o'clock are the hour hand and the minute hand of a clock pointing in the same direction?

23 Find two times between 1 PM and 2 PM when the hour hand and the minute hand of a clock are perpendicular.

24 Find two times between 4 PM and 5 PM when the hour hand and the minute hand of a clock are perpendicular.

25 Suppose an ant walks counterclockwise on the unit circle from the point $(1, 0)$ to the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $70°$. How far has the ant walked?

26 Suppose an ant walks counterclockwise on the unit circle from the point $(1, 0)$ to the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $130°$. How far has the ant walked?

27 What angle corresponds to a circular arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{\pi}{5}$?

28 What angle corresponds to a circular arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{\pi}{6}$?

29 What angle corresponds to a circular arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{5}{2}$?

30 What angle corresponds to a circular arc on the unit circle with length 1?

For Exercises 31–32, assume the surface of the earth is a sphere with diameter 7926 miles.

31 Approximately how far does a ship travel when sailing along the equator in the Atlantic Ocean from longitude $20°$ west to longitude $30°$ west?

32 Approximately how far does a ship travel when sailing along the equator in the Pacific Ocean from longitude $170°$ west to longitude $120°$ west?

33 Suppose a ship travels for 800 miles along the equator in the Pacific Ocean. What is the change in longitude during that trip?

34 Suppose a ship travels for 300 miles along the equator in the Atlantic Ocean. What is the change in longitude during that trip?

35 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the points $(1, 0)$ and $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$.

36 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the points $(1, 0)$ and $(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$.

For Exercises 37–42, find the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to the given angle.

37 $120°$

38 $240°$

39 $-30°$

40 $-150°$

41 $390°$

42 $510°$

For Exercises 43–48, find the angle corresponding to the radius of the unit circle ending at the given point. Among the infinitely many possible correct solutions, choose the one with the smallest absolute value.

43 $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$

44 $(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$

45 $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$

46 $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$

47 $(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$

48 $(-\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$

For Exercises 49–52, suppose a spider moves along the edge of a circular web at a distance of 3 cm from the center.

49 If the spider begins on the far right side of the web and creeps counterclockwise until it reaches the far left side of the web, approximately how far does it travel?

50 If the spider begins on the far right side of the web and creeps counterclockwise until it reaches the top of the web, approximately how far does it travel?

51 If the spider crawls along the edge of the web a distance of 2 cm, approximately what is the angle formed by the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's starting point and the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's finishing point?

52 If the spider crawls along the edge of the web a distance of 5 cm, approximately what is the angle formed by the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's starting point and the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's finishing point?

53 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the point $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $130°$.

54 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the point $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 50°.

55 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the point $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 125°.

56 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the point $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 20°.

57 What is the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 30°?

58 What is the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 60°?

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

59 Suppose m is a real number. Find the points where the line through the origin with slope m intersects the unit circle.

Use the following information for Problems 60–65: A grad is a unit of measurement for angles that is sometimes used in surveying, especially in some European countries. A complete revolution once around a circle is 400 grads.
[These problems may help you work comfortably with angles in units other than degrees. In the next section we will introduce radians, the most important units used for angles.]

60 How many grads are in a right angle?

61 The angles in a triangle add up to how many grads?

62 Each angle of an equilateral triangle has how many grads?

63 Convert 37° to grads.

64 Convert 37 grads to degrees.

65 Discuss advantages and disadvantages of using grads as compared to degrees.

66 Verify that each of the following points is on the unit circle.

(a) $\left(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5}\right)$ (b) $\left(\frac{5}{13}, \frac{12}{13}\right)$ (c) $\left(\frac{8}{17}, \frac{15}{17}\right)$

The next problem shows that the unit circle contains infinitely many points for which both coordinates are rational.

67 Show that if m and n are integers, not both zero, then

$$\left(\frac{m^2 - n^2}{m^2 + n^2}, \frac{2mn}{m^2 + n^2}\right)$$

is a point on the unit circle.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

1 Find all numbers t such that $\left(\frac{1}{3}, t\right)$ is a point on the unit circle.

solution For $\left(\frac{1}{3}, t\right)$ to be a point on the unit circle means that the sum of the squares of the coordinates equals 1. In other words,

$$\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 + t^2 = 1.$$

Thus $t^2 = \frac{8}{9}$, which implies that $t = \frac{\sqrt{8}}{3}$ or $t = -\frac{\sqrt{8}}{3}$. Because $\sqrt{8} = \sqrt{4 \cdot 2} = \sqrt{4} \cdot \sqrt{2} = 2\sqrt{2}$, we can rewrite this as $t = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$ or $t = -\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$.

3 Find all numbers t such that $\left(t, -\frac{2}{5}\right)$ is a point on the unit circle.

solution For $\left(t, -\frac{2}{5}\right)$ to be a point on the unit circle means that the sum of the squares of the coordinates equals 1. In other words,

$$t^2 + \left(-\frac{2}{5}\right)^2 = 1.$$

Thus $t^2 = \frac{21}{25}$, which implies that $t = \frac{\sqrt{21}}{5}$ or $t = -\frac{\sqrt{21}}{5}$.

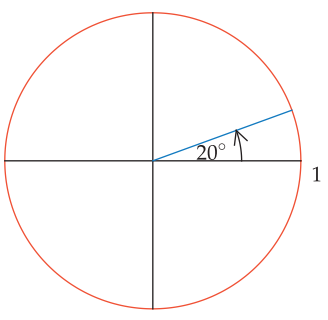
5 Find the points where the line through the origin with slope 3 intersects the unit circle.

solution The line through the origin with slope 3 is characterized by the equation $y = 3x$. Substituting this value for y into the equation for the unit circle ($x^2 + y^2 = 1$) gives $x^2 + (3x)^2 = 1$, which simplifies to the equation $10x^2 = 1$. Thus $x = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}$ or $x = -\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}$. Using each of these values of x along with the equation $y = 3x$ gives the points $\left(\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}, \frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}\right)$ and $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}, -\frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}\right)$ as the points of intersection of the line $y = 3x$ and the unit circle.

For Exercises 7–14, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to the given angle. Include an arrow to show the direction in which the angle is measured from the positive horizontal axis.

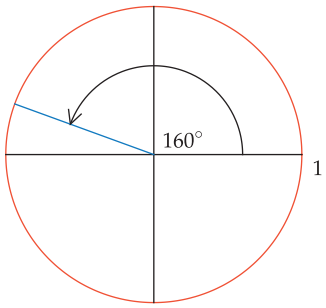
7 20°

solution



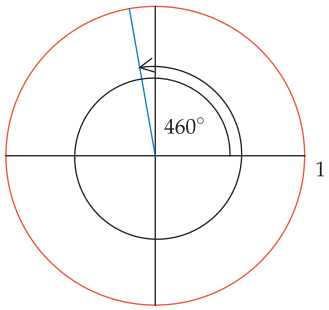
9 160°

solution



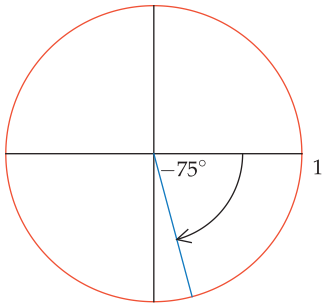
11 460°

solution



13 -75°

solution



15 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 4 o'clock?

solution At 4 o'clock, the minute hand is at 12 and the hour hand is at 4. The angle between those two clock hands takes up one-third of a circle. Because going around the entire circle is a 360° angle, the one-third of the circle between 12 and 4 forms an angle of 120° ($120 = \frac{1}{3} \cdot 360$).

17 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 4:30?

solution At 4:30, the hour and minute hands are separated by 1.5 numbers on the clock (because the minute hand is at 6 and the hour hand is halfway between 4 and 5). Because going around the entire circle is a 360° angle and the clock face has 12 numbers, the angle between two consecutive numbers on the clock is 30° ($30 = \frac{1}{12} \cdot 360$). Thus the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand at 4:30 is 45° ($45 = 1.5 \times 30$).

19 What is the angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock at 1:23?

solution At 1:23, the hour hand is at position $1 + \frac{23}{60}$, which equals $\frac{83}{60}$.

In five minutes the minute hand moves one number on the face of the clock (for example, from five minutes after the hour to ten minutes after the hour, the minute hand moves from 1 to 2). Thus in one minute the minute hand moves $\frac{1}{5}$ number on the face of the clock. Thus at 23 minutes after the hour, the minute hand is at number $\frac{23}{5}$ on the face of the clock (because $\frac{23}{5} = 4 + \frac{3}{5}$, the minute hand is $\frac{3}{5}$ of the way between 4 and 5).

Thus at 1:23, the hour hand and minute hand differ by $\frac{23}{5} - \frac{83}{60}$, which equals $\frac{193}{60}$. Each number on the clock represents an angle of 30°, and thus the angle between the hour hand and minute hand at 1:23 is $\frac{193}{60} \cdot 30^\circ$, which equals $\frac{193}{2}^\circ$, which equals 96.5°.

For Exercises 21–24, give the answers to the nearest second.

21 At what time between 1 o'clock and 2 o'clock are the hour hand and the minute hand of a clock pointing in the same direction?

solution At m minutes after 1 o'clock, the minute hand will be at number $\frac{m}{5}$ and the hour hand will be at number $1 + \frac{m}{60}$ on the clock (see the solution to Exercise 19 for an explanation in the case when $m = 23$). We want the hour hand and the minute hand to be in the same location, which means that

$$\frac{m}{5} = 1 + \frac{m}{60}.$$

Solving the equation above for m gives $m = \frac{60}{11}$. Because $\frac{60}{11} = 5 + \frac{5}{11}$, the hour and minute hands point in the same direction at 1:05 plus $\frac{5}{11}$ of a minute. Now $\frac{5}{11}$ of a minute equals $60 \cdot \frac{5}{11}$ seconds, which is approximately 27.3 seconds. Thus the time between 1 o'clock and 2 o'clock at which the hour hand and minute hand point in the same direction is approximately 1:05:27.

23 Find two times between 1 PM and 2 PM when the hour hand and the minute hand of a clock are perpendicular.

solution At m minutes after 1 PM, the minute hand will be at number $\frac{m}{5}$ and the hour hand will be at number $1 + \frac{m}{60}$ on the clock (see the solution to Exercise 19 for an explanation in the case when $m = 23$).

The minute hand will make a 90° angle with the hour hand (measured clockwise from the hour hand) if

$$\frac{m}{5} = \left(1 + \frac{m}{60}\right) + 3,$$

where the addition of 3 numbers on the clock represents one-fourth of a rotation around the clock (because $\frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$). Solving the equation above for m gives $m = \frac{240}{11}$. Because $\frac{240}{11} = 21 + \frac{9}{11}$, the hour hand and the minute hand are perpendicular at 1:21 PM plus $\frac{9}{11}$ of a minute. Now $\frac{9}{11}$ of a minute equals $60 \cdot \frac{9}{11}$ seconds, which is approximately 49.1 seconds. Thus one time between 1 PM

and 2 PM at which the hour hand and minute hand are perpendicular is approximately 1:21:49 PM.

The minute hand will make a 270° angle with the hour hand (measured clockwise from the hour hand) if

$$\frac{m}{5} = (1 + \frac{m}{60}) + 9,$$

where the addition of 9 numbers on the clock represents three-fourths of a rotation around the clock (because $\frac{9}{12} = \frac{3}{4}$). Solving the equation above for m gives $m = \frac{600}{11}$. Because $\frac{600}{11} = 54 + \frac{6}{11}$, the hour hand and the minute hand are perpendicular at 1:54 PM plus $\frac{6}{11}$ of a minute. Now $\frac{6}{11}$ of a minute equals $60 \cdot \frac{6}{11}$ seconds, which is approximately 32.7 seconds. Thus the second time between 1 PM and 2 PM at which the hour hand and minute hand are perpendicular is approximately 1:54:33 PM.

25 Suppose an ant walks counterclockwise on the unit circle from the point $(1,0)$ to the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 70°. How far has the ant walked?

solution We need to find the length of the circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to 70°. This length equals $\frac{70\pi}{180}$, which equals $\frac{7\pi}{18}$.

27 What angle corresponds to a circular arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{\pi}{5}$?

solution Suppose θ degrees corresponds to an arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{\pi}{5}$. Thus $\frac{\theta\pi}{180} = \frac{\pi}{5}$. Solving this equation for θ, we get $\theta = 36$. Thus the angle in question is 36°.

29 What angle corresponds to a circular arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{5}{2}$?

solution Suppose θ degrees corresponds to an arc on the unit circle with length $\frac{5}{2}$. Thus $\frac{\theta\pi}{180} = \frac{5}{2}$. Solving this equation for θ, we get $\theta = \frac{450}{\pi}$. Thus the angle in question is $\frac{450}{\pi}^\circ$, which is approximately 143.2°.

For Exercises 31–32, assume the surface of the earth is a sphere with diameter 7926 miles.

31 Approximately how far does a ship travel when sailing along the equator in the Atlantic Ocean from longitude 20° west to longitude 30° west?

solution Because the diameter of the earth is approximately 7926 miles, the radius of the earth is approximately 3963 miles. The arc along which the ship has sailed corresponds to 10°. Thus the length of this arc is approximately $\frac{10\pi \cdot 3963}{180}$ miles, which is approximately 692 miles.

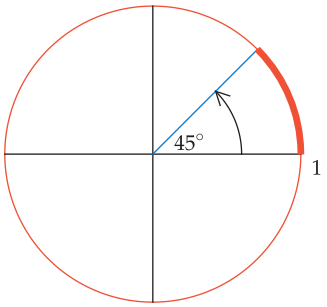
33 Suppose a ship travels for 800 miles along the equator in the Pacific Ocean. What is the change in longitude during that trip?

solution Let θ denote change in longitude during this trip. Then $\frac{\theta\pi \cdot 3963}{180} = 800$. Thus $\theta = \frac{800 \cdot 180}{3963\pi} \approx 11.6°$.

35 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the points $(1,0)$ and $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$.

solution The radius of the unit circle ending at the point $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$ corresponds to 45°. One of the circular arcs connecting $(1,0)$ and $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$ is shown below as the thickened circular arc; the other circular arc connecting $(1,0)$ and $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$ is the unthickened part of the unit circle below.

The length of the thickened arc is $\frac{45\pi}{180}$, which equals $\frac{\pi}{4}$. The entire unit circle has length 2π. Thus the length of the other circular arc is $2\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}$, which equals $\frac{7\pi}{4}$.

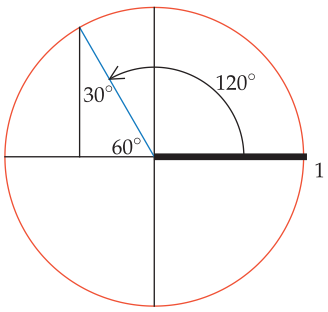


The thickened circular arc has length $\frac{\pi}{4}$. The other circular arc has length $\frac{7\pi}{4}$.

For Exercises 37–42, find the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to the given angle.

37 120°

solution The radius corresponding to 120° is shown below. The angle from this radius to the negative horizontal axis equals 180° − 120°, which equals 60°. Drop a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming the right triangle below. We already know that one angle of this right triangle is 60°; thus the other angle must be 30°, as labeled below.



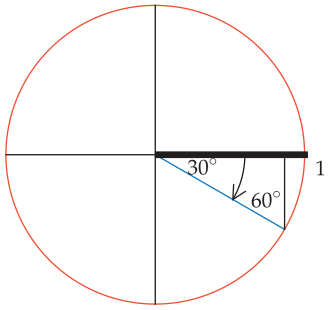
The side of the right triangle opposite the 30° angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$; the side of the right triangle opposite the 60° angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. Looking at the figure above, we see that the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the negative of the length of the side opposite the 30° angle, and the second coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the length of the side opposite the 60° angle. Thus the endpoint of the radius is $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$.

39 −30°

solution The radius corresponding to −30° is shown in the figure. Draw a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming the

right triangle below. We already know that one angle of this right triangle is 30°; thus the other angle must be 60°.

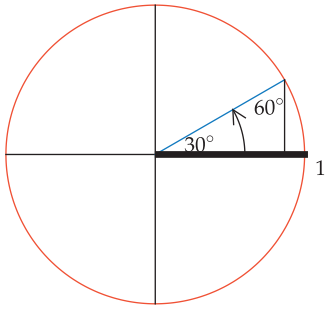
The side of the right triangle opposite the 30° angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$; the side of the right triangle opposite the 60° angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. Looking at the figure, we see that the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the length of the side opposite the 60° angle, and the second coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the negative of the length of the side opposite the 30° angle. Thus the endpoint of the radius is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$.



41 390°

solution The radius corresponding to 390° is obtained by starting at the horizontal axis, making one complete counterclockwise rotation, and then continuing for another 30°. The resulting radius is shown below. Drop a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming the right triangle below. We already know that one angle of this right triangle is 30°; thus the other angle must be 60°.

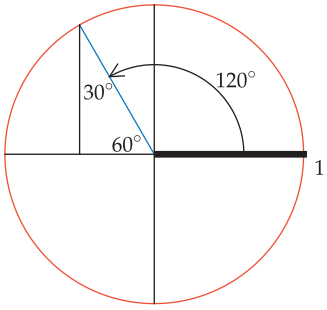
The side of the right triangle opposite the 30° angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$; the side opposite the 60° angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. Thus the endpoint of the radius is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.



For Exercises 43–48, find the angle corresponding to the radius of the unit circle ending at the given point. Among the infinitely many possible correct solutions, choose the one with the smallest absolute value.

43 $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$

solution Draw the radius whose endpoint is $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$. Drop a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming a right triangle. The hypotenuse of this right triangle is a radius of the unit circle and thus has length 1. The horizontal side has length $\frac{1}{2}$ and the vertical side of this triangle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ because the endpoint of the radius is $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$.

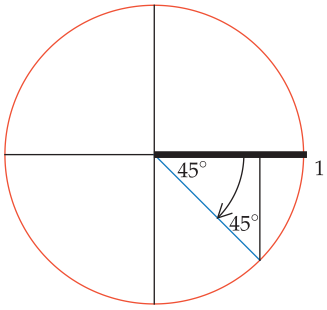


Thus we have a 30°-60°-90° triangle, with the 30° angle opposite the horizontal side of length $\frac{1}{2}$, as labeled above. Because $180° - 60° = 120°$, the radius corresponds to 120°, as shown above.

In addition to corresponding to 120°, this radius corresponds to 480°, 840°, and so on. This radius also corresponds to −240°, −600°, and so on. But of all the possible choices for this angle, the one with the smallest absolute value is 120°.

45 $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$

solution Draw the radius whose endpoint is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$. Draw a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming a right triangle. The hypotenuse of this right triangle is a radius of the unit circle and thus has length 1. The horizontal side has length $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and the vertical side of this triangle also has length $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ because the endpoint of the radius is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$.

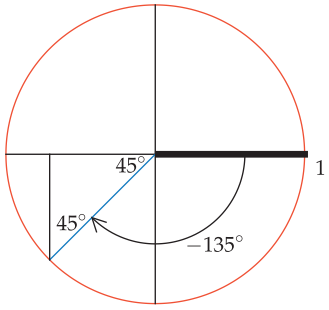


Thus we have here an isosceles right triangle, with two angles of 45° as labeled above. As can be seen from the figure, the radius thus corresponds to −45°.

In addition to corresponding to −45°, this radius corresponds to 315°, 675°, and so on. This radius also corresponds to −405°, −765°, and so on. But of all the possible choices for this angle, the one with the smallest absolute value is −45°.

47 $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$

solution Draw the radius whose endpoint is $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$. Draw a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming a right triangle. The hypotenuse of this right triangle is a radius of the unit circle and thus has length 1. The horizontal side has length $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and the vertical side of this triangle also has length $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ because the endpoint of the radius is $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$.



Thus we have here an isosceles right triangle, with two angles of 45° as labeled above. Because the radius makes a 45° angle with the negative horizontal axis, it corresponds to −135°, as shown here (because 135° = 180° − 45°).

In addition to corresponding to −135°, this radius corresponds to 225°, 585°, and so on. This radius also corresponds to −495°, −855°, and so on. But of all the possible choices for this angle, the one with the smallest absolute value is −135°.

For Exercises 49–52, suppose a spider moves along the edge of a circular web at a distance of 3 cm from the center.

49 If the spider begins on the far right side of the web and creeps counterclockwise until it reaches the far left side of the web, approximately how far does it travel?

solution The web has circumference $2\pi \cdot 3$ cm, which equals 6π cm. Moving counterclockwise from the far right side of the web to the far left side of the web covers a distance of one-half of the circumference. Thus the spider has traveled $\frac{6\pi}{2}$ cm, which equals 3π cm, which is approximately 9.4 cm.

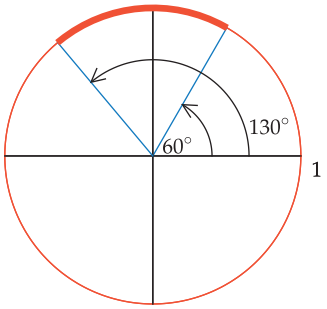
51 If the spider crawls along the edge of the web a distance of 2 cm, approximately what is the angle formed by the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's starting point and the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's finishing point?

solution Let θ denote the angle (measured in degrees) formed by the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's starting point and the line segment from the center of the web to the spider's finishing point. Thus $\frac{\theta\pi \cdot 3}{180} = 2$. Solving for θ gives $\theta = \frac{120}{\pi} \approx 38.2$.

53 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 130°.

solution The radius of the unit circle ending at the point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ corresponds to 60°. One of the circular arcs connecting $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 130° is shown in the figure as the thickened circular arc; the other circular arc connecting these two points is the unthickened part of the unit circle.

The thickened arc corresponds to 70° (because 70° = 130° − 60°). Thus the length of the thickened arc is $\frac{70\pi}{180}$, which equals $\frac{7\pi}{18}$. The entire unit circle has length 2π. Thus the length of the other circular arc below is $2\pi - \frac{7\pi}{18}$, which equals $\frac{29\pi}{18}$.

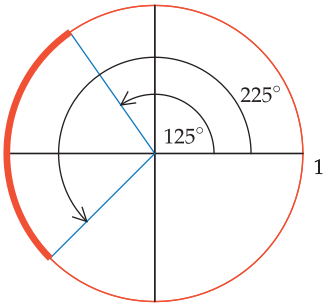


The thickened circular arc has length $\frac{7\pi}{18}$. The other circular arc has length $\frac{29\pi}{18}$.

55 Find the lengths of both circular arcs on the unit circle connecting the point $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 125°.

solution The radius of the unit circle ending at $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ corresponds to 225° (because 225° = 180° + 45°). One of the circular arcs connecting $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 125° is shown below as the thickened circular arc; the other circular arc connecting these two points is the unthickened part of the unit circle.

The thickened arc corresponds to 100° (because 100° = 225° − 125°). Thus the length of the thickened arc is $\frac{100\pi}{180}$, which equals $\frac{5\pi}{9}$. The entire unit circle has length 2π. Thus the length of the other circular arc is $2\pi - \frac{5\pi}{9}$, which equals $\frac{13\pi}{9}$.



The thickened circular arc has length $\frac{5\pi}{9}$. The other circular arc has length $\frac{13\pi}{9}$.

57 What is the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 30°?

solution The radius of the unit circle corresponding to 30° has its initial point at $(0, 0)$ and its endpoint at $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$. Thus the slope of this radius is $\left(\frac{1}{2} - 0\right)/\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - 0\right)$, which equals $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$, which equals $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$.

4.2 Radians

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- convert radians to degrees and convert degrees to radians;
- find the length of a circular arc that is described by radians;
- find the area of a circular slice;
- find the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to any multiple of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians or $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians.

A Natural Unit of Measurement for Angles

We have been measuring angles in degrees, with 360° corresponding to a rotation through the entire circle. Hence 180° corresponds to a rotation through one-half the circle (thus generating a line), and 90° corresponds to a rotation through one-fourth the circle (thus generating a right angle).

There is nothing natural about the choice of 360 as the number of degrees in a complete circle. Mathematicians have introduced another unit of measurement for angles, called **radians**. Radians are often used rather than degrees because working with radians can lead to much nicer formulas than working with degrees.

The use of 360° to denote a complete rotation around the circle probably arose from trying to make one day's rotation of the earth around the sun (or the sun around the earth) correspond to 1°, as would be the case if the year had 360 days instead of 365 days.

The unit circle has circumference 2π. In other words, an ant walking around the unit circle once would walk a total distance of 2π. Because going around the circle once corresponds to traveling a distance of 2π, the following definition is a natural choice for a unit of measurement for angles. As we will see, this definition makes the length of an arc on the unit circle equal to the corresponding angle as measured in radians.

Radians

Radians are a unit of measurement for angles such that 2π radians correspond to a rotation through an entire circle.

Radians and degrees are two different units for measuring angles, just as feet and meters are two different units for measuring lengths.

Example 1

Convert each of the following angles to degrees. Then sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each angle.

(a) 2π radians; (b) π radians; (c) $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians.

solution

(a) To translate between radians and degrees, note that a rotation through an entire circle equals 2π radians and also equals 360°. Thus

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360^\circ.$$

Try to think of the geometry of key angles directly in terms of radians instead of translating to degrees:

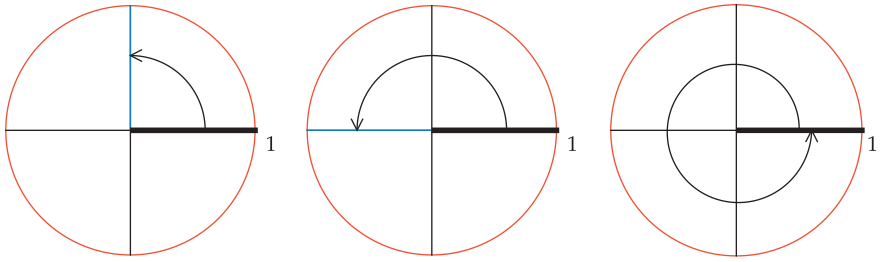
- *One complete rotation around a circle is 2π radians.*
- *The angles of a triangle add up to π radians.*
- *A right angle is $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians.*

(b) Rotation through half a circle equals π radians (because rotation through an entire circle equals 2π radians). Rotation through half a circle also equals 180°. Thus

$$\pi \text{ radians} = 180^\circ.$$

(c) Because rotation through an entire circle equals 2π radians, a right angle (which amounts to one-fourth of a circle) equals $\frac{2\pi}{4}$ radians, which equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians. A right angle also equals 90°. Thus

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \text{ radians} = 90^\circ.$$



$\frac{\pi}{2}$ *radians* π *radians* 2π *radians*

Example 2

Convert each of the following angles to radians. Then sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each angle.

(a) 30°; (b) 45°; (c) 60°.

solution

(a) If both sides of the equation $180^\circ = \pi$ radians are divided by 6, we get

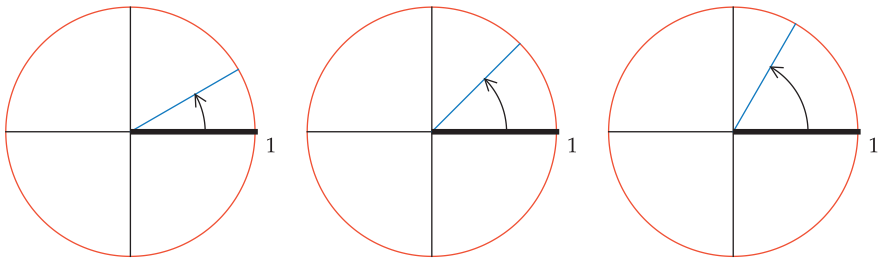
$$30^\circ = \frac{\pi}{6} \text{ radians}.$$

(b) If both sides of the equation $90^\circ = \frac{\pi}{2}$ radians are divided by 2, we get

$$45^\circ = \frac{\pi}{4} \text{ radians}.$$

(c) If both sides of the equation $180^\circ = \pi$ radians are divided by 3, we get

$$60^\circ = \frac{\pi}{3} \text{ radians}.$$



$\frac{\pi}{6}$ *radians* $\frac{\pi}{4}$ *radians* $\frac{\pi}{3}$ *radians*

Here are more examples of angles directly in terms of radians instead of translating to degrees:

- *Each angle of an equilateral triangle is* $\frac{\pi}{3}$ *radians.*
- *The line* $y = x$ *in the xy-plane makes an angle of* $\frac{\pi}{4}$ *radians with the positive x-axis.*
- *In a right triangle with a hypotenuse of length* 1 *and another side with length* $\frac{1}{2}$*, the angle opposite the side with length* $\frac{1}{2}$ *is* $\frac{\pi}{6}$ *radians.*

degrees	*radians*
30°	$\frac{\pi}{6}$ *radians*
45°	$\frac{\pi}{4}$ *radians*
60°	$\frac{\pi}{3}$ *radians*
90°	$\frac{\pi}{2}$ *radians*
180°	π *radians*
360°	2π *radians*

Translation between degrees and radians for commonly used angles.

The table here summarizes the translations between degrees and radians for some key angles. After you work frequently with radians, you will refer to this table less often because these translations will become part of your automatic vocabulary.

To find a formula for converting any number of radians to degrees, start with the equation 2π radians $= 360^\circ$ and divide both sides by 2π, getting

$$1 \text{ radian} = \left(\frac{180}{\pi}\right)^\circ.$$

Multiply both sides of the equation above by any number θ to get the formula for converting radians to degrees.

Converting radians to degrees

$$\theta \text{ radians} = \left(\frac{180\,\theta}{\pi}\right)^\circ$$

One radian $\approx 57.3^\circ$ *because* $\frac{180}{\pi} \approx 57.3$.

To convert in the other direction (from degrees to radians), start with the equation $360^\circ = 2\pi$ radians and divide both sides by 360, getting

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Multiply both sides of the equation above by any number θ to get the formula for converting degrees to radians.

Converting degrees to radians

$$\theta^\circ = \frac{\theta\pi}{180} \text{ radians}$$

You do not need to memorize the two boxed formulas above for converting between radians and degrees. You need to remember only the defining equation

The term "radian" first appeared in print in 1873.

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360^\circ,$$

from which you can derive the other formulas as needed. The following two examples illustrate this procedure (without using the two boxed formulas above).

Example 3

Convert $\frac{7\pi}{90}$ radians to degrees.

solution Start with the equation 2π radians $= 360^\circ$. Divide both sides by 2 to obtain

$$\pi \text{ radians} = 180^\circ.$$

Now multiply both sides by $\frac{7}{90}$, obtaining

$$\frac{7\pi}{90} \text{ radians} = \frac{7}{90} \cdot 180^\circ = 14^\circ.$$

The next example illustrates the procedure for converting from degrees to radians.

Example 4

Convert 11° to radians.

solution Start with the equation $360^\circ = 2\pi$ radians. Divide both sides by 360 to obtain

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Now multiply both sides by 11, obtaining

$$11^\circ = \frac{11\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Because $\frac{11\pi}{180} \approx 0.19199$, *this example shows that* $11^\circ \approx 0.19119$ *radians.*

The Radius Corresponding to an Angle

The radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ degrees was defined in Section 4.1. The definition is the same when using radians, except that the angle with the positive horizontal axis should be measured in radians rather than degrees. Thus here is the definition for a positive number of radians.

The radius corresponding to an angle

For $\theta > 0$, the **radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ radians** is the radius that has angle θ radians with the positive horizontal axis, as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis.

Although the symbol π is a Greek letter, the ancient Greeks did not use this letter to represent the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter. The first book to use the symbol π as we use it today was published in 1706 by the Welsh mathematician William James.

For example, the radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians, the radius corresponding to π radians, and the radius corresponding to 2π radians are shown in the solution to Example 1. The solution to Example 2 shows the radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians, the radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians, and also the radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{3}$ radians.

In Section 4.1 we introduced negative angles, which are measured clockwise from the positive horizontal axis. We can now think of such angles as being measured in radians instead of degrees. Thus we have the following definition for the radius corresponding to a negative number of radians.

The radius corresponding to a negative angle

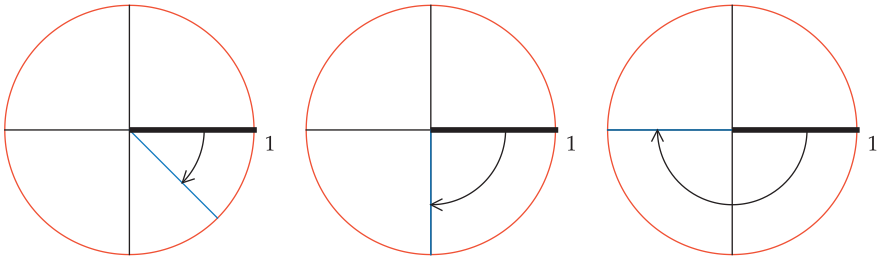
For $\theta < 0$, the **radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ radians** is the radius that has angle $|\theta|$ radians with the positive horizontal axis, as measured clockwise from the positive horizontal axis.

Example 5

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each of the following angles: $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians, $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians, $-\pi$ radians.

solution

Negative angles are measured clockwise from the positive horizontal axis.



$-\frac{\pi}{4}$ *radians* $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ *radians* $-\pi$ *radians*

We have defined the radius of the unit circle corresponding to any positive or negative angle measured in radians. For completeness, we also state explicitly that the radius corresponding to 0 radians is the radius along the positive horizontal axis.

In the previous section we saw that we could obtain angles larger than 360° by starting at the positive horizontal axis and moving counterclockwise around the circle for more than a complete rotation. The same principle applies when working with radians, except that a complete counterclockwise rotation around the circle is measured as 2π radians rather than 360°. The next example illustrates this idea.

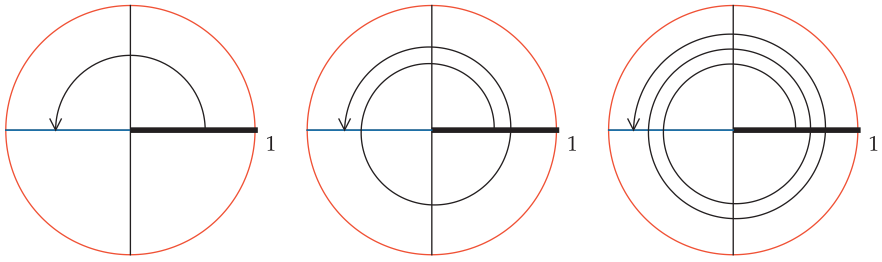
Example 6

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each of the following angles: π radians, 3π radians, 5π radians.

solution The radius corresponding to π radians is shown below on the left.

As shown in the center figure below, we end up at the same radius by moving counterclockwise completely around the circle (2π radians) and then continuing for another π radians, for a total of 3π radians.

The figure below on the right shows that we also end up at the same radius by moving counterclockwise around the circle twice (4π radians) and then continuing for another π radians for a total of 5π radians.



π radians 3π radians 5π radians

The same radius corresponds to π radians, 3π radians, 5π radians, and so on.

In the figure above, we could continue to add multiples of 2π, showing that the same radius corresponds to $\pi + 2\pi n$ radians for every positive integer n.

In the next example, we add negative multiples of 2π to the angle.

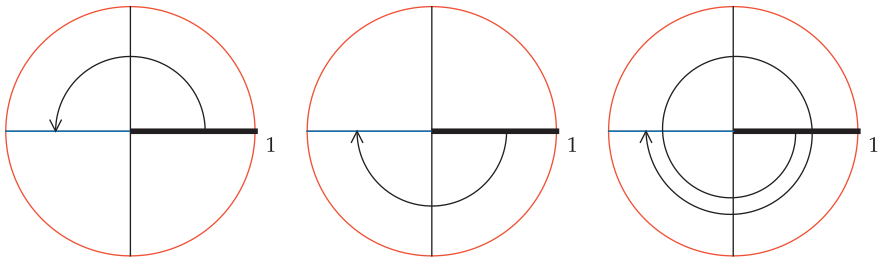
Example 7

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to each of the following angles: π radians, $-\pi$ radians, -3π radians.

solution The radius corresponding to π radians is shown below on the left.

The figure below in the center shows that the radius corresponding to π radians also corresponds to $-\pi$ radians.

Or we could go completely around the circle in the clockwise direction (-2π radians) and then continue clockwise to the same radius (another $-\pi$ radians) for a total of -3π radians, as shown below on the right.



π radians $-\pi$ radians -3π radians

The same radius corresponds to π radians, $-\pi$ radians, -3π radians, and so on.

In the figure above, we could continue to subtract multiples of 2π radians, showing that the same radius corresponds to $\pi + 2\pi n$ radians for every integer n.

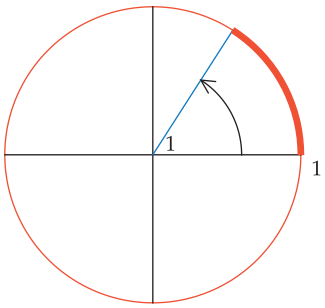
If we had started with any angle θ radians instead of π radians in the two previous examples, we would obtain the following result.

Multiple choices for the angle corresponding to a radius

A radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ radians also corresponds to $\theta + 2\pi n$ radians for every integer n.

Length of a Circular Arc

In the previous section, we found a formula for the length of a circular arc corresponding to an angle measured in degrees. We will now derive the formula that should be used when measuring angles in radians.



The circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to 1 *radian has length* 1.

We begin by considering a circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to one radian (which is a bit more than 57°), as shown here. The entire circle corresponds to 2π radians; thus the fraction of the circle contained in this circular arc is $\frac{1}{2\pi}$. Thus the length of this circular arc equals $\frac{1}{2\pi}$ times the circumference of the entire unit circle. In other words, the length of this circular arc equals $\frac{1}{2\pi} \cdot 2\pi$, which equals 1.

Similarly, suppose $0 < \theta \le 2\pi$. The fraction of the circle contained in a circular arc corresponding to θ radians is $\frac{\theta}{2\pi}$. Thus the length of a circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to θ radians is $\frac{\theta}{2\pi} \cdot 2\pi$. Hence we have the following result.

Length of a circular arc

If $0 < \theta \le 2\pi$, then a circular arc on the unit circle corresponding to θ radians has length θ.

The formula above using radians is much cleaner than the corresponding formula using degrees (see Section 4.1). This formula should not be a surprise, because we defined radians so that 2π radians equals the whole circle, which has length 2π for the unit circle. In fact, the definition of radians was chosen precisely to make this formula come out so nicely.

Example 8

The minute hand of a clock travels through an angle of 2π *radians every hour.*

Suppose the distance from the center of a large wall clock to the endpoint of the minute hand is 1 foot.

(a) What time is it when the endpoint of the minute hand has traveled a distance of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ feet since 10 AM?

(b) What time is it when the endpoint of the minute hand has traveled a distance of 2π feet since 10 AM?

(c) What time is it when the endpoint of the minute hand has traveled a distance of 3π feet since 10 AM?

(d) How far does the endpoint of the minute hand travel from 10 am until 12:15 PM?

solution

(a) The endpoint of the minute hand travels along the unit circle (with feet as the units of measurement). Thus when the minute hand has traveled $\frac{\pi}{2}$ feet it makes an angle of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians with its initial position. Because $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians is a right angle, when the minute hand has traveled a distance of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ feet since 10 AM the time is 10:15 AM.

(b) Traveling on the unit circle (with feet as the units) for a distance of 2π feet is exactly one full rotation around the circle. Thus when the minute hand has traveled a distance of 2π feet since 10 AM, the time is 11 AM.

(c) Traveling on the unit circle (with feet as units) for a distance of 3π feet is 1.5 full rotations around the circle. Thus when the minute hand has traveled a distance of 3π feet since 10 AM, the time is 11:30 AM.

(d) At 12:15 PM, the minute hand has made two complete revolutions plus one-fourth of a revolution since 10 AM. Thus the distance traveled by the endpoint of the minute hand is $\frac{9}{4} \cdot 2\pi$ feet, which equals $\frac{9\pi}{2}$ feet.

Area of a Slice

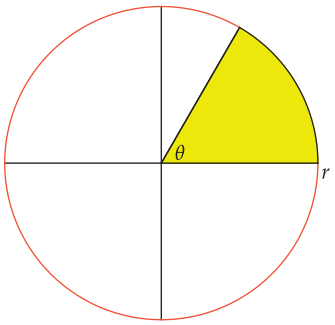
The following example will help us find a formula for the area of a slice inside a circle.

Example 9

If a 14-inch pizza is cut into eight slices of equal size, what is the area of one slice? (Pizza sizes are measured in terms of the diameter of the pizza.)

solution The diameter of the pizza is 14 inches; thus the radius of the pizza is 7 inches. Using the familiar formula πr^2 for the area inside a circle with radius r, we see that the entire pizza has area 49π square inches. One slice is one-eighth of the entire pizza. Thus a slice of this pizza has area $\frac{49\pi}{8}$ square inches, which is approximately 19.2 square inches.

To find the general formula for the area of a slice inside a circle, consider a circle with radius r. The area inside this circle is πr^2. The area of a slice with angle θ radians equals the fraction of the entire circle taken up by the slice times πr^2. The whole circle corresponds to 2π radians, and thus the fraction taken up by a slice with angle θ is $\frac{\theta}{2\pi}$. Putting all this together, we see that the area of the slice with angle θ radians is $(\frac{\theta}{2\pi})(\pi r^2)$, which equals $\frac{1}{2}\theta r^2$. Thus we have the following formula.



The yellow region has area $\frac{1}{2}\theta r^2$. This clean formula would not be as nice if the angle θ were measured in degrees instead of radians.

Area of a slice

A slice with angle θ radians inside a circle with radius r has area $\frac{1}{2}\theta r^2$.

To test that the formula above is correct, we can let θ equal 2π radians, which means that the slice is the entire circle. The formula above tells us that the area should equal $\frac{1}{2}(2\pi)r^2$, which equals πr^2, which is indeed the area inside a circle with radius r.

Special Points on the Unit Circle

The table below shows the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to some special angles. This is the same as the table in Section 4.1, except now we use radians rather than degrees.

angle	*endpoint of radius*
0 radians	$(1,0)$
$\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians	$(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2},\frac{1}{2})$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians	$(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2},\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$
$\frac{\pi}{3}$ radians	$(\frac{1}{2},\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians	$(0,1)$
π radians	$(-1,0)$

Coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to some special angles.

The trigonometric functions cosine and sine, which we will meet in the next section, were invented so that the table above can be extended to include any angle θ in the left column.

The next example shows how to find the endpoints of the radius of the unit circle associated with additional special angles. Similar techniques work for any integer multiple of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ or $\frac{\pi}{4}$.

Example 10

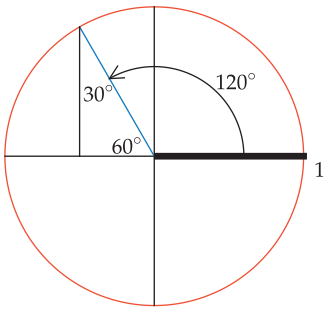
Find the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to $\frac{14\pi}{3}$ radians.

solution Recall that integer multiples of 2π radians do not matter when locating the radius corresponding to an angle. Thus we write

$$\frac{14\pi}{3} = \frac{12\pi + 2\pi}{3} = 4\pi + \frac{2\pi}{3},$$

and we will use $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians instead of $\frac{14\pi}{3}$ radians in this problem.

At this point you may be more comfortable switching to degrees. Note that $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians equals 120°. Thus now we need to find the coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to 120°.



The radius corresponding to 120° is shown in the figure here. The angle from this radius to the negative horizontal axis equals $180^\circ - 120^\circ$, which equals 60°, as shown in the figure. Drop a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming a right triangle. We already know that one angle of this right triangle is 60°; thus the other angle must be 30°, as labeled in the figure.

The side of the right triangle opposite the 30° angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$; the side of the right triangle opposite the 60° angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. Looking at the figure, we see that the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the negative of the length of the side opposite the 30° angle. The second coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the length of the side opposite the 60° angle. Thus the endpoint of the radius is $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$.

Exercises

In Exercises 1–8, convert each angle to radians.

1 15°

2 40°

3 -45°

4 -60°

5 270°

6 240°

7 1080°

8 1440°

In Exercises 9–16, convert each angle to degrees.

9 4π radians

10 6π radians

11 $\frac{\pi}{9}$ radians

12 $\frac{\pi}{10}$ radians

13 3 radians

14 5 radians

15 $-\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians

16 $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians

For Exercises 17–24, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to the given angle. Include an arrow to show the direction in which the angle is measured from the positive horizontal axis.

17 $\frac{5\pi}{18}$ radians

18 $\frac{1}{2}$ radian

19 2 radians

20 5 radians

21 $\frac{11\pi}{5}$ radians

22 $-\frac{\pi}{12}$ radians

23 -1 radian

24 $-\frac{8\pi}{9}$ radians

25 Suppose an ant walks counterclockwise on the unit circle from the point $(0, 1)$ to the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ radians. How far has the ant walked?

26 Suppose an ant walks counterclockwise on the unit circle from the point $(-1, 0)$ to the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 6 radians. How far has the ant walked?

27 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the point $(1, 0)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 3 radians.

28 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the point $(1, 0)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 4 radians.

29 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the point $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and the point whose radius corresponds to 1 radian.

30 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the point $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and the point whose radius corresponds to 2 radians.

Exercises 31–34 refer to a watch whose hour hand has length 1 cm.

31 How far does the endpoint of the hour hand of the watch travel each day?

32 How far does the endpoint of the the hour hand of the watch travel in three hours?

33 How long does it take for the the endpoint of the hour hand of the watch to travel 5 cm?

34 How long does it take for the the endpoint of the hour hand of the watch to travel 2 meters?

35 For a 16-inch pizza, find the area of a slice with angle $\frac{3}{4}$ radians.

36 For a 14-inch pizza, find the area of a slice with angle $\frac{4}{5}$ radians.

37 Suppose a slice of a 12-inch pizza has an area of 20 square inches. What is the angle of this slice?

38 Suppose a slice of a 10-inch pizza has an area of 15 square inches. What is the angle of this slice?

39 Suppose a slice of pizza with an angle of $\frac{5}{6}$ radians has an area of 21 square inches. What is the diameter of this pizza?

40 Suppose a slice of pizza with an angle of 1.1 radians has an area of 25 square inches. What is the diameter of this pizza?

For each of the angles in Exercises 41–46, find the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle that corresponds to the given angle.

41 $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians

42 $\frac{7\pi}{6}$ radians

43 $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians

44 $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians

45 $\frac{5\pi}{2}$ radians

46 $\frac{11\pi}{2}$ radians

For each of the angles in Exercises 47–50, find the slope of the radius of the unit circle that corresponds to the given angle.

47 $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians

48 $\frac{7\pi}{6}$ radians

49 $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians

50 $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians

Problems

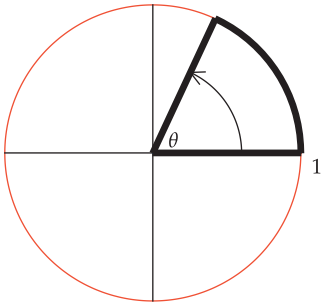
51 Find the formula for the length of a circular arc corresponding to θ radians on a circle with radius r.

52 Most dictionaries define acute angles and obtuse angles in terms of degrees. Restate these definitions in terms of radians.

53 Find a formula for converting from radians to grads. [See the note before Problem 60 in Section 4.1 for the definition of grads.]

54 Find a formula for converting from grads to radians.

55 Suppose the region bounded by the thickened radii and circular arc shown below is removed. Find a formula (in terms of θ) for the perimeter of the remaining region inside the unit circle.



Assume $0 < \theta < 2\pi$.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

In Exercises 1–8, convert each angle to radians.

1 15°

solution Start with the equation

$$360^\circ = 2\pi \text{ radians.}$$

Divide both sides by 360 to obtain

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Now multiply both sides by 15, obtaining

$$15^\circ = \frac{15\pi}{180} \text{ radians} = \frac{\pi}{12} \text{ radians.}$$

3 -45°

solution Start with the equation

$$360^\circ = 2\pi \text{ radians.}$$

Divide both sides by 360 to obtain

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Now multiply both sides by -45, obtaining

$$-45^\circ = -\frac{45\pi}{180} \text{ radians} = -\frac{\pi}{4} \text{ radians.}$$

5 270°

solution Start with the equation

$$360^\circ = 2\pi \text{ radians.}$$

Divide both sides by 360 to obtain

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Now multiply both sides by 270, obtaining

$$270^\circ = \frac{270\pi}{180} \text{ radians} = \frac{3\pi}{2} \text{ radians.}$$

7 1080°

solution Start with the equation

$$360^\circ = 2\pi \text{ radians.}$$

Divide both sides by 360 to obtain

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians.}$$

Now multiply both sides by 1080, obtaining

$$1080^\circ = \frac{1080\pi}{180} \text{ radians} = 6\pi \text{ radians.}$$

In Exercises 9–16, convert each angle to degrees.

9 4π radians

solution Start with the equation

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360^\circ.$$

Multiply both sides by 2, obtaining

$$4\pi \text{ radians} = 2 \cdot 360^\circ = 720^\circ.$$

11 $\frac{\pi}{9}$ radians

solution Start with the equation

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360^\circ.$$

Divide both sides by 2 to obtain

$$\pi \text{ radians} = 180^\circ.$$

Now divide both sides by 9, obtaining

$$\frac{\pi}{9} \text{ radians} = \frac{180^\circ}{9} = 20^\circ.$$

13 3 radians

solution Start with the equation

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360^\circ.$$

Divide both sides by 2π to obtain

$$1 \text{ radian} = \frac{180^\circ}{\pi}.$$

Now multiply both sides by 3, obtaining

$$3 \text{ radians} = 3 \cdot \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} = \frac{540^\circ}{\pi}.$$

15 $-\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians

solution Start with the equation

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360^\circ.$$

Divide both sides by 2 to obtain

$$\pi \text{ radians} = 180^\circ.$$

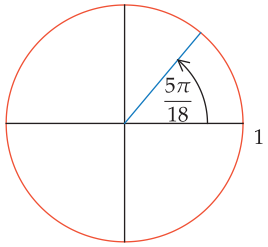
Now multiply both sides by $-\frac{2}{3}$, obtaining

$$-\frac{2\pi}{3} \text{ radians} = -\frac{2}{3} \cdot 180^\circ = -120^\circ.$$

For Exercises 17–24, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to the given angle. Include an arrow to show the direction in which the angle is measured from the positive horizontal axis.

17 $\frac{5\pi}{18}$ radians

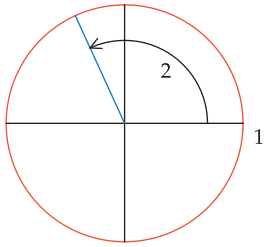
solution



The radius corresponding to $\frac{5\pi}{18}$ *radians, which equals* 50°.

19 2 radians

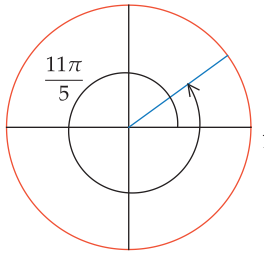
solution



The radius corresponding to 2 *radians, which is approximately* 114.6°.

21 $\frac{11\pi}{5}$ radians

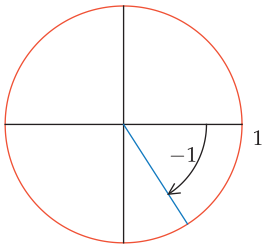
solution



The radius corresponding to $\frac{11\pi}{5}$ *radians, which equals* 396°.

23 -1 radian

solution

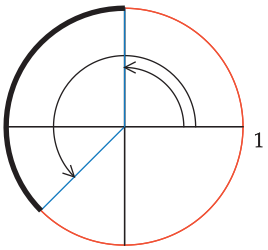


The radius corresponding to -1 radian, which is approximately $-57.3°$.

25 Suppose an ant walks counterclockwise on the unit circle from the point $(0,1)$ to the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ radians. How far has the ant walked?

solution The radius whose endpoint equals $(0,1)$ corresponds to $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians, which is the smaller angle shown below.

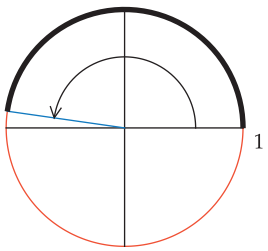
Because $\frac{5\pi}{4} = \pi + \frac{\pi}{4}$, the radius corresponding to $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ radians lies $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians beyond the negative horizontal axis (halfway between the negative horizontal axis and the negative vertical axis). Thus the ant ends its walk at the endpoint of the radius corresponding to the larger angle shown below.



The ant walks along the thickened circular arc shown above. This circular arc corresponds to $\frac{5\pi}{4} - \frac{\pi}{2}$ radians, which equals $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians. Thus the distance walked by the ant is $\frac{3\pi}{4}$.

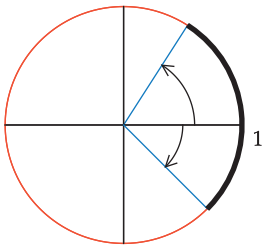
27 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the point $(1,0)$ and the endpoint of the radius corresponding to 3 radians.

solution Because 3 is a bit less than π, the radius corresponding to 3 radians lies a bit above the negative horizontal axis, as shown below. The thickened circular arc corresponds to 3 radians and thus has length 3. The entire unit circle has length 2π. Thus the length of the other circular arc is $2\pi - 3$, which is approximately 3.28.



29 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the point $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ and the point whose radius corresponds to 1 radian.

solution The radius of the unit circle whose endpoint equals $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ corresponds to $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians, as shown with the clockwise arrow below. The radius corresponding to 1 radian is shown with a counterclockwise arrow.



Thus the thickened circular arc above corresponds to $1 + \frac{\pi}{4}$ radians and thus has length $1 + \frac{\pi}{4}$, which is approximately 1.79. The entire unit circle has length 2π. Thus the length of the other circular arc below is $2\pi - (1 + \frac{\pi}{4})$, which equals $\frac{7\pi}{4} - 1$, which is approximately 4.50.

Exercises 31–34 refer to a watch whose hour hand has length 1 cm.

31 How far does the endpoint of the hour hand of the watch travel each day?

solution The the endpoint of the hour hand travels 2π cm for each complete revolution. Each day, the hour hand makes two complete revolutions. Thus the the endpoint of the hour hand travels 4π cm each day.

33 How long does it take for the the endpoint of the hour hand of the watch to travel 5 cm?

solution Because a complete revolution of the hour hand takes 12 hours, in one hour the hour hand moves through an angle of $\frac{2\pi}{12}$ radians, which equals $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians. Thus in one hour, the endpoint of the hour hand travels $\frac{\pi}{6}$ cm. Thus it takes $\frac{6}{\pi}$ hours for the hour hand to travel 1 cm. Multiplying by 5, we see that it takes $\frac{30}{\pi}$ hours for the hour hand to travel 5 cm. Because $\frac{30}{\pi} \approx 9.55$, we see that it takes a bit more than nine and one-half hours for the endpoint of the hour hand to travel 5 cm.

35 For a 16-inch pizza, find the area of a slice with angle $\frac{3}{4}$ radians.

solution Pizzas are measured by their diameters; thus this pizza has a radius of 8 inches. Thus the area of the slice is $\frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{4} \cdot 8^2$, which equals 24 square inches.

37 Suppose a slice of a 12-inch pizza has an area of 20 square inches. What is the angle of this slice?

solution This pizza has a radius of 6 inches. Let θ denote the angle of this slice, measured in radians. Then

$$20 = \frac{1}{2}\theta \cdot 6^2.$$

Solving this equation for θ, we get $\theta = \frac{10}{9}$ radians.

39 Suppose a slice of pizza with an angle of $\frac{5}{6}$ radians has an area of 21 square inches. What is the diameter of this pizza?

solution Let r denote the radius of this pizza. Thus

$$21 = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{5}{6} r^2.$$

Solving this equation for r, we get $r = \sqrt{\frac{252}{5}} \approx 7.1$. Thus the diameter of the pizza is approximately 14.2 inches.

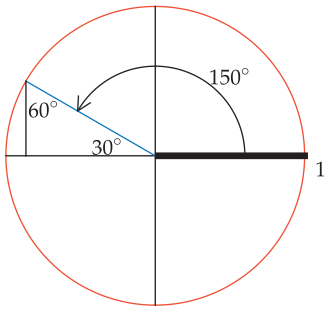
For each of the angles in Exercises 41–46, find the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle that corresponds to the given angle.

41 $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians

solution Note that $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians equals $150°$.

The radius corresponding to $150°$ is shown below. The angle from this radius to the negative horizontal axis equals $180° - 150°$, which equals $30°$. Drop a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming the right triangle below. We already know that one angle of this right triangle is $30°$; thus the other angle must be $60°$, as labeled below.

The side of the right triangle opposite the $30°$ angle has length $\frac{1}{2}$; the side of the right triangle opposite the $60°$ angle has length $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. Looking at the figure, we see that the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the negative of the length of the side opposite the $60°$ angle. The second coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is the length of the side opposite the $30°$ angle. Thus the endpoint of the radius is $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.

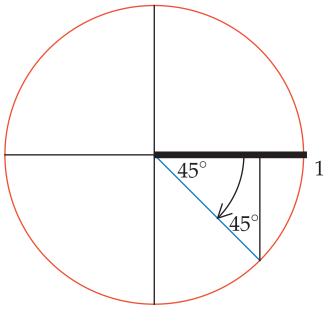


43 $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians

solution Note that $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians equals $-45°$.

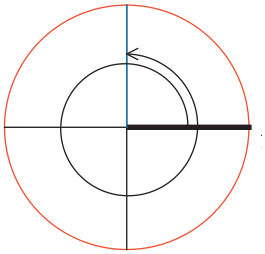
The radius corresponding to $-45°$ is shown in the figure. Draw a perpendicular line segment from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, forming the right triangle in the figure. We already know that one angle of this right triangle is $45°$; thus the other angle must also be $45°$, as labeled in the figure.

The hypotenuse of this right triangle is a radius of the unit circle and thus has length 1. The other two sides each have length $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$. Looking at the figure, we see that the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$. The second coordinate of the endpoint of the radius is $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$. Thus the endpoint of the radius is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$.



45 $\frac{5\pi}{2}$ radians

solution Note that $\frac{5\pi}{2} = 2\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}$. Thus the radius corresponding to $\frac{5\pi}{2}$ radians is obtained by starting at the horizontal axis, making one complete counterclockwise rotation (which is 2π radians), and then continuing for another $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians. The resulting radius is shown below. Its endpoint is $(0, 1)$.



For each of the angles in Exercises 47–50, find the slope of the radius of the unit circle that corresponds to the given angle.

47 $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians

solution As we saw in the solution to Exercise 41, the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians is $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$. Thus the slope of this radius is

$$\frac{\frac{1}{2}}{-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}},$$

which equals $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$, which equals $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$.

49 $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians

solution As we saw in the solution to Exercise 43, the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$. Thus the slope of this radius is

$$\frac{-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}},$$

which equals -1.

4.3 Cosine and Sine

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- evaluate the cosine and sine of any multiple of 30° or 45° ($\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians or $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians);
- determine whether the cosine (or sine) of an angle is positive or negative from the location of the corresponding radius;
- sketch the radius corresponding to θ if given either $\cos\theta$ or $\sin\theta$ and the sign of the other quantity;
- find $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ if given one of these quantities and the quadrant of the corresponding radius.

Definition of Cosine and Sine

The table here shows the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to some special angles. This table comes from tables in Sections 4.1 and 4.2.

We might consider extending the table above to other angles. For example, suppose we want to know the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{18}$ radians. Unfortunately, the coordinates of the endpoint of that radius do not have a nice form—neither coordinate is a rational number or even the square root of a rational number. The cosine and sine functions, which we are about to introduce, were invented to help us extend this table to all angles.

Before introducing the cosine and sine functions, we state a common assumption about notation in trigonometry.

θ *radians*	θ *degrees*	*endpoint of radius*
0	$0°$	$(1,0)$
$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$30°$	$(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2},\frac{1}{2})$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$45°$	$(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2},\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$60°$	$(\frac{1}{2},\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$90°$	$(0,1)$
π	$180°$	$(-1,0)$
2π	$360°$	$(1,0)$

Coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to special angles.

Angles without units

If no units are given for an angle, then assume the units are radians.

The figure below shows a radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ (here θ might be measured in either radians or degrees). The endpoint of this radius is used to define the cosine and sine, as follows.

Cosine

The **cosine** of θ, denoted $\cos\theta$, is the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ.

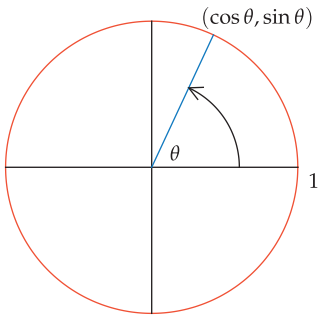
Sine

The **sine** of θ, denoted $\sin\theta$, is the second coordinate of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ.

The two definitions above can be combined into a single statement, as follows.

Cosine and sine

The endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ has coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$.



This figure defines cosine and sine. If you understand this figure well, then you can figure out a big chunk of trigonometry.

Example 1

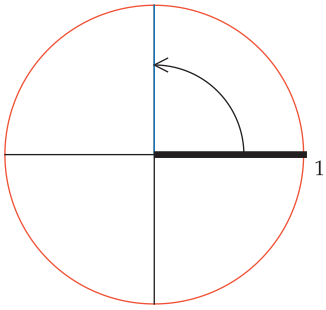
Evaluate $\cos\frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{2}$.

solution The radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians has endpoint $(0,1)$. Thus

$$\cos\tfrac{\pi}{2} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\tfrac{\pi}{2} = 1.$$

Using degrees instead of radians, we could write $\cos 90^\circ = 0$ and $\sin 90^\circ = 1$.

Here units are not specified for the angle $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Thus we assume we are dealing with $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians.



The radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians has endpoint $(0,1)$.

The table below gives the cosine and sine of some special angles. This table is obtained by breaking the last column of the previous table into two columns, with the first coordinate labeled as cosine and the second coordinate labeled as sine.

θ (*radians*)	θ (*degrees*)	$\cos\theta$	$\sin\theta$
0	0°	1	0
$\frac{\pi}{6}$	30°	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	45°	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	60°	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	90°	0	1
π	180°	-1	0
2π	360°	1	0

Compare this table to the first table in this section and make sure you understand what is going on here.

The next example extends the table above to another special angle.

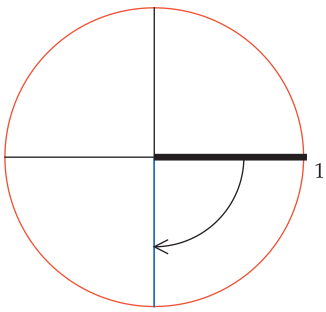
Example 2

Evaluate $\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ and $\sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

solution The radius corresponding to $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians has endpoint $(0,-1)$ as shown here. Thus

$$\cos\left(-\tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\left(-\tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) = -1.$$

Using degrees instead of radians, we have $\cos(-90^\circ) = 0$ and $\sin(-90^\circ) = -1$.



The radius corresponding to $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians has endpoint $(0,-1)$.

In addition to adding a row for $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (which equals -90°), we could add many more entries to the table for the cosine and sine of special angles. Possibilities would include $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians (which equals 120°), $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ radians (which equals 150°), the negatives of all the angles already in the table, and so on. This would quickly become far too much information to memorize. Instead of memorizing, concentrate on understanding the definitions of cosine and sine.

Similarly, do not become dependent on a calculator for evaluating the cosine and sine of special angles. If you need numeric values for $\cos 2$ or $\sin 17^\circ$, then use a calculator. But if you get in the habit of using a calculator for evaluating expressions such as $\cos 0$ or $\sin(-180^\circ)$, then cosine and sine will become simply buttons on your calculator and you will not be able to use these functions meaningfully.

Note that cos and sin are functions; thus $\cos(\theta)$ and $\sin(\theta)$ might be a better notation than $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$. In an expression such as

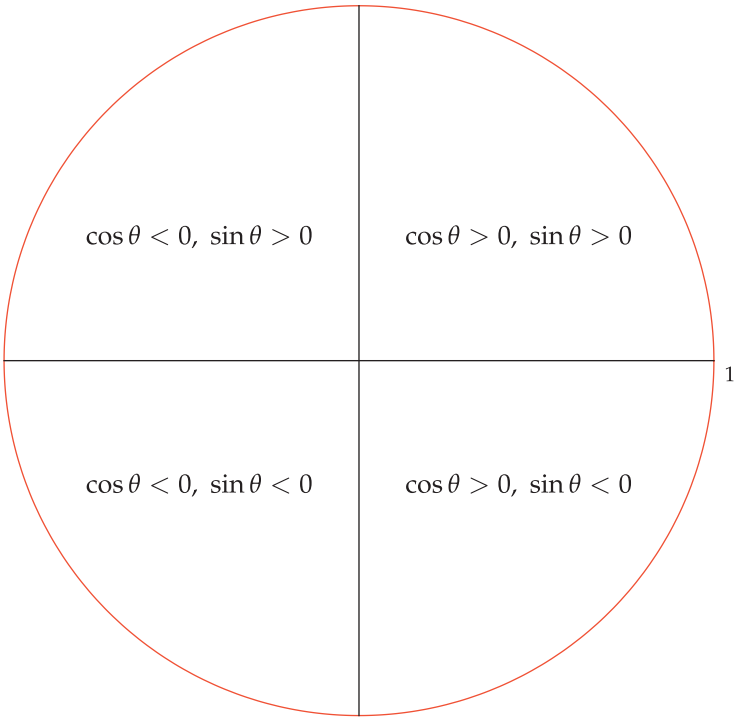
$$\frac{\cos 10}{\cos 5},$$

we cannot cancel cos in the numerator and denominator, just as we cannot cancel a function f in the numerator and denominator of $\frac{f(10)}{f(5)}$. Similarly, the expression above is not equal to $\cos 2$, just as $\frac{f(10)}{f(5)}$ is usually not equal to $f(2)$.

Most calculators can work in radians or degrees. When you use a calculator to compute values of cosine or sine, be sure your calculator is set to work in the appropriate units.

The Signs of Cosine and Sine

The coordinate axes divide the coordinate plane into four regions, often called **quadrants**. The quadrant in which a radius lies determines whether the cosine and sine of the corresponding angle are positive or negative. The figure below shows the sign of the cosine and the sign of the sine in each of the four quadrants. Thus, for example, an angle corresponding to a radius lying in the region marked "$\cos\theta < 0, \sin\theta > 0$" (the upper-left quadrant) will have a cosine that is negative and a sine that is positive.



There is no need to memorize this figure, because you can always reconstruct it if you understand the definitions of cosine and sine.

Recall that the cosine of an angle is the first coordinate of the endpoint of the corresponding radius. Thus the cosine is positive in the two quadrants where the first coordinate is positive, as shown in the figure above. Also, the cosine is negative in the two quadrants where the first coordinate is negative.

Similarly, the sine of an angle is the second coordinate of the endpoint of the corresponding radius. Thus the sine is positive in the two quadrants where the second coordinate is positive, as shown in the figure above. Also, the sine is negative in the two quadrants where the second coordinate is negative.

To remember that $\cos\theta$ *is the first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius corresponding to* θ *and* $\sin\theta$ *is the second coordinate, keep* cosine *and* sine *in alphabetical order.*

The next example should help you understand how the quadrant determines the sign of the cosine and sine.

Example 3

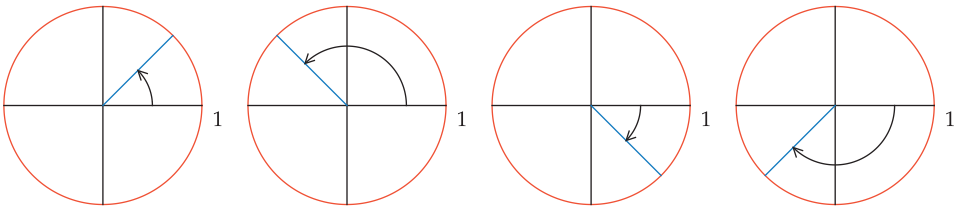
(a) Evaluate $\cos\frac{\pi}{4}$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{4}$.

(b) Evaluate $\cos\frac{3\pi}{4}$ and $\sin\frac{3\pi}{4}$.

(c) Evaluate $\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ and $\sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

(d) Evaluate $\cos\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$ and $\sin\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$.

solution The four angles $\frac{\pi}{4}$, $\frac{3\pi}{4}$, $-\frac{\pi}{4}$, and $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians (or, equivalently, 45°, 135°, −45°, and −135°) are shown in the next figure. Each coordinate of the radius corresponding to each of these angles is either $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ or $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; the only issue to worry about in computing the cosine and sine of these angles is the sign.



$\frac{\pi}{4}$ *radians* $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ *radians* $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ *radians* $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$ *radians*

(a) Both coordinates of the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians are positive. Thus $\cos\frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

Quadrants can be labeled by the descriptive terms upper/lower and right/left. For example, the radius corresponding to $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians (which equals 135°) is in the upper-left quadrant.

(b) The first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians is negative; the second coordinate is positive. Thus $\cos\frac{3\pi}{4} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{3\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

(c) The first coordinate of the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians is positive and the second coordinate is negative. Thus $\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

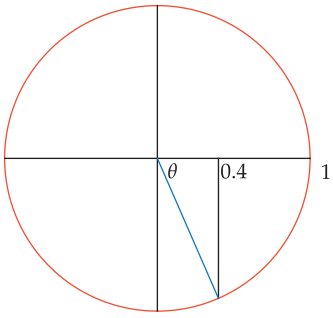
(d) Both coordinates of the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$ radians are negative. Thus $\cos\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

The next example shows how to use information about the signs of the cosine and sine to locate the corresponding radius.

Example 4

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ such that

$$\cos\theta = 0.4 \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta < 0.$$



The radius corresponding to angle θ with $\cos\theta = 0.4$ and $\sin\theta < 0$.

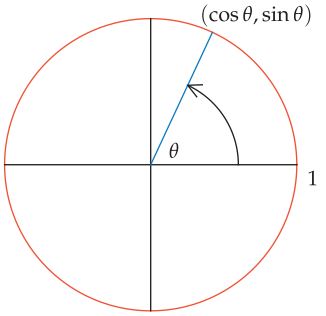
solution Because $\cos\theta$ is positive and $\sin\theta$ is negative, the radius corresponding to θ lies in the lower-right quadrant. To find the endpoint of this radius, which has first coordinate 0.4, start with the point 0.4 on the horizontal axis and then move vertically down to reach a point on the unit circle. Then draw the radius from the origin to that point, as shown here.

The Key Equation Connecting Cosine and Sine

By definition of cosine and sine, the point $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ is on the unit circle, which is the set of points in the coordinate plane such that the sum of the squares of the coordinates equals 1. In the xy-plane, the unit circle is described by the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1.$$

Thus the following crucial equation holds.



The point $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ is on the unit circle.

Relationship between cosine and sine

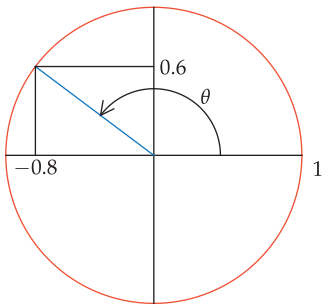
$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1$$

for every angle θ.

Given either $\cos\theta$ or $\sin\theta$, the last equation can be used to solve for the other quantity, provided that we have enough additional information to determine the sign. The following example illustrates this procedure.

Example 5

Suppose θ is an angle such that $\sin\theta = 0.6$, and suppose also that $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$. Evaluate $\cos\theta$.



solution The equation above implies that $(\cos\theta)^2 + (0.6)^2 = 1$. Because $(0.6)^2 = 0.36$, this implies that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 = 0.64.$$

Thus $\cos\theta = 0.8$ or $\cos\theta = -0.8$. The additional information that $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ implies that $\cos\theta$ is negative, as can been seen in the figure. Thus

$$\cos\theta = -0.8.$$

The Graphs of Cosine and Sine

Before graphing the cosine and sine functions, we should think carefully about the domain and range of these functions. Recall that for each real number θ, there is a radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ.

Recall also that the coordinates of the endpoints of the radius corresponding to the angle θ are labeled $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$, thus defining the cosine and sine functions. These functions are defined for every real number θ. Thus the domain of both cosine and sine is the set of real numbers.

As we have already noted, a consequence of $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ lying on the unit circle is the equation

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Because $(\cos\theta)^2$ and $(\sin\theta)^2$ are both nonnegative, the equation above implies that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 \le 1 \quad \text{and} \quad (\sin\theta)^2 \le 1.$$

Thus $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ must both be between -1 and 1.

Cosine and sine are between -1 and 1

$$-1 \le \cos\theta \le 1 \quad \text{and} \quad -1 \le \sin\theta \le 1$$

for every angle θ.

These inequalities can be used as a crude test of the plausibility of a result. For example, suppose you do a calculation and determine that $\cos\theta = 2$, which is impossible. Thus either there is a mistake in your calculation or solutions corresponding to $\cos\theta = 2$ should be discarded (see the solution to Exercise 33 for an example).

These inequalities could also be written in the following form:

$$|\cos\theta| \le 1 \quad \text{and} \quad |\sin\theta| \le 1.$$

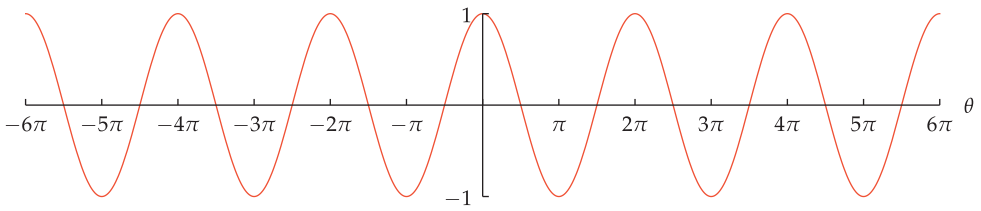
The first coordinates of the points of the unit circle are precisely the values of the cosine function. Every number in the interval $[-1, 1]$ is the first coordinate of some point on the unit circle. Thus we can conclude that the range of the cosine function is the interval $[-1, 1]$. A similar conclusion holds for the sine function (use second coordinates instead of first coordinates).

In summary, we have the following results.

Domain and range of cosine and sine

- The domain of both cosine and sine is the set of real numbers.
- The range of both cosine and sine is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

Because the domain of the cosine and the sine is the set of real numbers, we cannot show the graph of these functions on their entire domain. To understand what the graphs of these functions look like, we start by looking at the graph of cosine on the interval $[-6\pi, 6\pi]$.



The graph of cosine on the interval $[-6\pi, 6\pi]$.

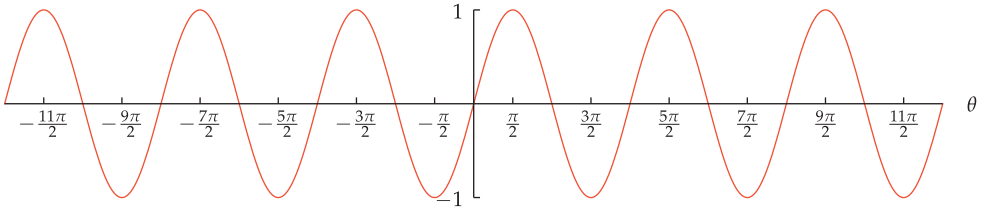
The Greek mathematician Hipparchus, depicted here in a 19^{th}*-century illustration, developed trigonometry over 2100 years ago as a tool for calculations in astronomy.*

Let's begin examining the graph above by noting that the point $(0, 1)$ is on the graph, as expected from the equation $\cos 0 = 1$. Note that the horizontal axis has been called the θ-axis.

Moving to the right along the θ-axis from the origin, we see that the graph crosses the θ-axis at the point $(\frac{\pi}{2}, 0)$, as expected from the equation $\cos\frac{\pi}{2} = 0$. Continuing further to the right, we see that the graph hits its lowest value when $\theta = \pi$, as expected from the equation $\cos\pi = -1$. The graph then crosses the θ-axis again at the point $(\frac{3\pi}{2}, 0)$, as expected from the equation $\cos\frac{3\pi}{2} = 0$. Then the graph hits its highest value again when $\theta = 2\pi$, as expected from the equation $\cos(2\pi) = 1$.

The most striking feature of the graph above is its periodic nature—the graph repeats itself. To understand why the graph of cosine exhibits this periodic behavior, consider a radius of the unit circle starting along the positive horizontal axis and moving counterclockwise. As the radius moves, the first coordinate of its endpoint gives the value of the cosine of the corresponding angle. After the radius moves through an angle of 2π radians, it returns to its original position. Then it begins the cycle again, returning to its original position after moving through a total angle of 4π, and so on. Thus we see the periodic behavior of the graph of cosine.

In Section 4.6 we will examine the properties of cosine and its graph more deeply. For now, let's turn to the graph of sine. Here is the graph of sine on the interval $[-6\pi, 6\pi]$.



The graph of sine on the interval $[-6\pi, 6\pi]$.

The word sine *comes from the Latin word* sinus*, which means curve.*

This graph goes through the origin, as expected because $\sin 0 = 0$. Moving to the right along the θ-axis from the origin, we see that the graph hits its highest value when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, as expected because $\sin\frac{\pi}{2} = 1$. Continuing further to the right, we see that the graph crosses the θ-axis at the point $(\pi, 0)$, as expected because $\sin\pi = 0$. The graph then hits its lowest value when $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$, as expected because $\sin\frac{3\pi}{2} = -1$. Then the graph crosses the θ-axis again at $(2\pi, 0)$, as expected because $\sin(2\pi) = 0$.

Surely you have noticed that the graph of sine looks much like the graph of cosine. It appears that shifting one graph somewhat to the left or right produces the other graph. We will see that this is indeed the case when we delve more deeply into properties of cosine and sine in Section 4.6.

Exercises

Give exact values for the quantities in Exercises 1–10. Do not use a calculator for any of these exercises—otherwise you will likely get decimal approximations for some solutions rather than exact answers. More importantly, good understanding will come from working these exercises by hand.

1 (a) $\cos(3\pi)$ (b) $\sin(3\pi)$

2 (a) $\cos(-\frac{3\pi}{2})$ (b) $\sin(-\frac{3\pi}{2})$

3 (a) $\cos\frac{11\pi}{4}$ (b) $\sin\frac{11\pi}{4}$

4 (a) $\cos\frac{15\pi}{4}$ (b) $\sin\frac{15\pi}{4}$

5 (a) $\cos\frac{2\pi}{3}$ (b) $\sin\frac{2\pi}{3}$

6 (a) $\cos\frac{4\pi}{3}$ (b) $\sin\frac{4\pi}{3}$

7 (a) $\cos 210^\circ$ (b) $\sin 210^\circ$

8 (a) $\cos 300^\circ$ (b) $\sin 300^\circ$

9 (a) $\cos 360045^\circ$ (b) $\sin 360045^\circ$

10 (a) $\cos(-360030^\circ)$ (b) $\sin(-360030^\circ)$

11 Find the smallest number θ larger than 4π such that $\cos\theta = 0$.

12 Find the smallest number θ larger than 6π such that $\sin\theta = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

13 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = 0$.

14 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = 0$.

15 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = 1$.

16 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = 1$.

17 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = -1$.

18 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = -1$.

19 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

20 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

21 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{2}{5}$. Evaluate $\sin\theta$.

22 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{3}{7}$. Evaluate $\cos\theta$.

23 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{9}$. Evaluate $\cos\theta$.

24 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{3}{8}$. Evaluate $\cos\theta$.

25 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.1$. Evaluate $\sin\theta$.

26 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.3$. Evaluate $\sin\theta$.

27 Find the smallest number x such that

$$\sin(e^x) = 0.$$

28 Find the smallest number x such that

$$\cos(e^x + 1) = 0.$$

29 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\sin(x^2 + x + 4) = 0.$$

30 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\cos(x^2 + 2x + 6) = 0.$$

31 Let θ be the acute angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line with slope 3 through the origin. Evaluate $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

32 Let θ be the acute angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line with slope 4 through the origin. Evaluate $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

33 Suppose $5(\cos\theta)^2 - 7\cos\theta - 6 = 0$. Evaluate $|\sin\theta|$.

34 Suppose $13(\sin x)^2 - 14\sin x - 24 = 0$. Evaluate $|\cos x|$.

Problems

35 (a) Sketch a radius of the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ such that $\cos\theta = \frac{6}{7}$.

(b) Sketch another radius, different from the one in part (a), also illustrating $\cos\theta = \frac{6}{7}$.

36 (a) Sketch a radius of the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ such that $\sin\theta = -0.8$.

(b) Sketch another radius, different from the one in part (a), also illustrating $\sin\theta = -0.8$.

37 Find angles u and v such that $\cos u = \cos v$ but $\sin u \neq \sin v$.

38 Find angles u and v such that $\sin u = \sin v$ but $\cos u \neq \cos v$.

39 Show that $\ln(\cos\theta)$ is the average of $\ln(1 - \sin\theta)$ and $\ln(1 + \sin\theta)$ for every θ in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

40 Suppose you have borrowed two calculators from friends, but you do not know whether they are set to work in radians or degrees. Thus you ask each calculator to evaluate $\cos 3.14$. One calculator gives an answer of -0.999999; the other calculator gives an answer of 0.998499. Without further use of a calculator, how would you decide which calculator is using radians and which calculator is using degrees? Explain your answer.

41 Suppose you have borrowed two calculators from friends, but you do not know whether they are set to work in radians or degrees. Thus you ask each calculator to evaluate $\sin 1$. One calculator gives an answer of 0.017452; the other calculator gives an answer of 0.841471. Without further use of a calculator, how would you decide which calculator is using radians and which calculator is using degrees? Explain your answer.

42 A good scientific calculator will show that

$$\cos 710 \approx 0.999999998,$$

where of course the left side means the cosine of 710 radians. Thus $\cos 710$ is remarkably close to 1. Use the approximation $\pi \approx \frac{355}{113}$ (which has an error of less than 3×10^{-7}) to explain why $\cos 710 \approx 1$.

43 Suppose m is a real number. Let θ be the acute angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line with slope m through the origin. Evaluate $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

44 Explain why there does not exist a real number x such that $2^{\sin x} = \frac{3}{7}$.

45 Explain why $\pi^{\cos x} < 4$ for every real number x.

46 Explain why $\frac{1}{3} < e^{\sin x}$ for every number real number x.

47 Explain why the equation

$$(\sin x)^2 - 4\sin x + 4 = 0$$

has no solutions.

48 Explain why the equation

$$(\cos x)^{99} + 4\cos x - 6 = 0$$

has no solutions.

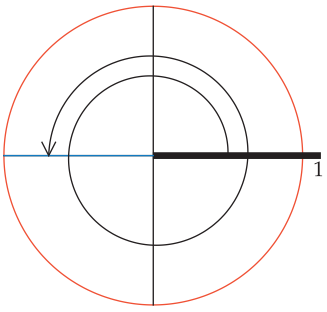
49 Explain why there does not exist a number θ such that $\log\cos\theta = 0.1$.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Give exact values for the quantities in Exercises 1–10. Do not use a calculator for any of these exercises—otherwise you will likely get decimal approximations for some solutions rather than exact answers. More importantly, good understanding will come from working these exercises by hand.

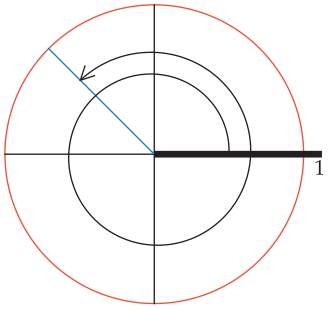
1 (a) $\cos(3\pi)$ (b) $\sin(3\pi)$

solution Because $3\pi = 2\pi + \pi$, an angle of 3π radians (as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis) consists of a complete revolution around the circle (2π radians) followed by another π radians (180°), as shown below. The endpoint of the corresponding radius is $(-1, 0)$. Thus $\cos(3\pi) = -1$ and $\sin(3\pi) = 0$.



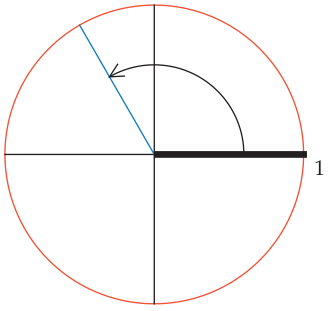
3 (a) $\cos\frac{11\pi}{4}$ (b) $\sin\frac{11\pi}{4}$

solution Because $\frac{11\pi}{4} = 2\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}$, an angle of $\frac{11\pi}{4}$ radians (as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis) consists of a complete revolution around the circle (2π radians) followed by another $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (90°), followed by another $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians (45°), as shown below. Hence the endpoint of the corresponding radius is $(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$. Thus $\cos\frac{11\pi}{4} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{11\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.



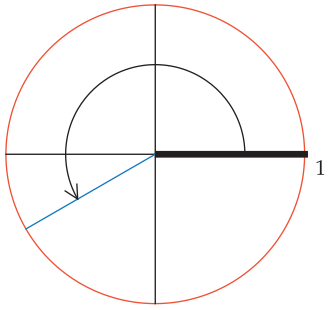
5 (a) $\cos\frac{2\pi}{3}$ (b) $\sin\frac{2\pi}{3}$

solution Because $\frac{2\pi}{3} = \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{6}$, an angle of $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians (as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis) consists of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (90°) followed by another $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians (30°), as shown below. The endpoint of the corresponding radius is $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$. Thus $\cos\frac{2\pi}{3} = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{2\pi}{3} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.



7 (a) $\cos 210°$ (b) $\sin 210°$

solution Because $210 = 180 + 30$, an angle of 210° (as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis) consists of 180° followed by another 30°, as shown below. The endpoint of the corresponding radius is $(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$. Thus $\cos 210° = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and $\sin 210° = -\frac{1}{2}$.



9 (a) $\cos 360045^\circ$ (b) $\sin 360045^\circ$

solution Because $360045 = 360 \times 1000 + 45$, an angle of 360045° (as measured counterclockwise from the positive horizontal axis) consists of 1000 complete revolutions around the circle followed by another 45°. The endpoint of the corresponding radius is $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$. Thus

$$\cos 360045^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin 360045^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}.$$

11 Find the smallest number θ larger than 4π such that $\cos\theta = 0$.

solution Note that

$$0 = \cos\frac{\pi}{2} = \cos\frac{3\pi}{2} = \cos\frac{5\pi}{2} = \dots$$

and that the only numbers whose cosine equals 0 are of the form $\frac{(2n+1)\pi}{2}$, where n is an integer. The smallest number of this form larger than 4π is $\frac{9\pi}{2}$. Thus $\frac{9\pi}{2}$ is the smallest number larger than 4π whose cosine equals 0.

13 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = 0$.

solution Think of a radius of the unit circle whose endpoint is $(1,0)$. If this radius moves counterclockwise, forming an angle of θ radians with the positive horizontal axis, the first coordinate of its endpoint first becomes 0 when θ equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (which equals 90°), then again when θ equals $\frac{3\pi}{2}$ (which equals 270°), then again when θ equals $\frac{5\pi}{2}$ (which equals $360^\circ + 90^\circ$, or 450°), then again when θ equals $\frac{7\pi}{2}$ (which equals $360^\circ + 270^\circ$, or 630°), and so on. Thus the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = 0$ are $\frac{\pi}{2}$, $\frac{3\pi}{2}$, $\frac{5\pi}{2}$, and $\frac{7\pi}{2}$.

15 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = 1$.

solution Think of a radius of the unit circle whose endpoint is $(1,0)$. If this radius moves counterclockwise, forming an angle of θ radians with the positive horizontal axis, then the second coordinate of its endpoint first becomes 1 when θ equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (which equals 90°), then again when θ equals $\frac{5\pi}{2}$ (which equals $360^\circ + 90^\circ$, or 450°), then again when θ equals $\frac{9\pi}{2}$ (which equals $2 \times 360^\circ + 90^\circ$, or 810°), then again when θ equals $\frac{13\pi}{2}$ (which equals $3 \times 360^\circ + 90^\circ$, or 1170°), and so on. Thus the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = 1$ are $\frac{\pi}{2}$, $\frac{5\pi}{2}$, $\frac{9\pi}{2}$, and $\frac{13\pi}{2}$.

17 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = -1$.

solution Think of a radius of the unit circle whose endpoint is $(1,0)$. If this radius moves counterclockwise, forming an angle of θ radians with the positive horizontal axis, the first coordinate of its endpoint first becomes -1 when θ equals π (which equals 180°), then again when θ equals 3π (which equals $360^\circ + 180^\circ$, or 540°), then again when θ equals 5π (which equals $2 \times 360^\circ + 180^\circ$, or 900°), then again when θ equals 7π (which equals $3 \times 360^\circ + 180^\circ$, or 1260°), and so on. Thus the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\cos\theta = -1$ are π, 3π, 5π, and 7π.

19 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

solution Think of a radius of the unit circle whose endpoint is $(1,0)$. If this radius moves counterclockwise, forming an angle of θ radians with the positive horizontal axis, the second coordinate of its endpoint first becomes $\frac{1}{2}$ when θ equals $\frac{\pi}{6}$ (which equals 30°), then again when θ equals $\frac{5\pi}{6}$ (which equals 150°), then again when θ equals $\frac{13\pi}{6}$ (which equals $360^\circ + 30^\circ$, or 390°), then again when θ equals $\frac{17\pi}{6}$ (which equals $360^\circ + 150^\circ$, or 510°), and so on. Thus the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$ are $\frac{\pi}{6}$, $\frac{5\pi}{6}$, $\frac{13\pi}{6}$, and $\frac{17\pi}{6}$.

21 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{2}{5}$. Evaluate $\sin\theta$.

solution We know that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}(\sin\theta)^2 &= 1 - (\cos\theta)^2 \\ &= 1 - \left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^2 \\ &= \frac{21}{25}.\end{aligned}$$

Because $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we know that $\sin\theta > 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\sqrt{21}}{5}.$$

23 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{9}$. Evaluate $\cos\theta$.

solution We know that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Thus

$$(\cos\theta)^2 = 1 - (\sin\theta)^2$$
$$= 1 - \left(\frac{2}{9}\right)^2$$
$$= \frac{77}{81}.$$

Because $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$, we know that $\cos\theta < 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

$$\cos\theta = -\frac{\sqrt{77}}{9}.$$

25 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.1$. Evaluate $\sin\theta$.

solution We know that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Thus

$$(\sin\theta)^2 = 1 - (\cos\theta)^2$$
$$= 1 - (0.1)^2$$
$$= 0.99.$$

Because $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$, we know that $\sin\theta < 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

$$\sin\theta = -\sqrt{0.99} \approx -0.995.$$

27 Find the smallest number x such that

$$\sin(e^x) = 0.$$

solution Note that e^x is an increasing function. Because e^x is positive for every real number x, and because π is the smallest positive number whose sine equals 0, we want to choose x so that $e^x = \pi$. Thus $x = \ln\pi$.

29 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\sin(x^2 + x + 4) = 0.$$

solution Note that $x^2 + x + 4$ is an increasing function on the interval $[0, \infty)$. If x is positive, then $x^2 + x + 4 > 4$. Because 4 is larger than π but less than 2π, the smallest number bigger than 4 whose sine equals 0 is 2π. Thus we want to choose x so that $x^2 + x + 4 = 2\pi$. In other words, we need to solve the equation

$$x^2 + x + (4 - 2\pi) = 0.$$

Using the quadratic formula, we see that the solutions to this equation are

$$x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{8\pi - 15}}{2}.$$

A calculator shows that choosing the plus sign in the equation above gives $x \approx 1.0916$ and choosing the minus sign gives $x \approx -2.0916$. We seek only positive values of x, and thus we choose the plus sign in the equation above, getting $x \approx 1.0916$.

31 Let θ be the acute angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line with slope 3 through the origin. Evaluate $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

solution From the solution to Exercise 5 in Section 4.1, we see that the endpoint of the relevant radius on the unit circle has coordinates $\left(\frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}, \frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}\right)$. Thus

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta = \frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}.$$

33 Suppose $5(\cos\theta)^2 - 7\cos\theta - 6 = 0$. Evaluate $|\sin\theta|$.

solution Let $y = \cos\theta$. The equation above can be rewritten as

$$5y^2 - 7y - 6 = 0.$$

Solving for y (using either the quadratic formula or by factoring the left side of the equation above), we have

$$y = -\frac{3}{5} \quad \text{or} \quad y = 2.$$

However, $y = \cos\theta$, and there does not exist a real number θ such that $\cos\theta = 2$. Hence $y = -\frac{3}{5}$, and hence $\cos\theta = -\frac{3}{5}$. Now

$$(\sin\theta)^2 = 1 - (\cos\theta)^2$$
$$= 1 - \frac{9}{25}$$
$$= \frac{16}{25}.$$

Thus $\sin\theta = \pm\sqrt{\frac{16}{25}} = \pm\frac{4}{5}$. Thus $|\sin\theta| = \frac{4}{5}$.

4.4 More Trigonometric Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- evaluate the tangent of any multiple of 30° or 45° ($\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians or $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians);
- find the equation of the line making a given angle with the positive horizontal axis and containing a given point;
- sketch a radius of the unit circle corresponding to a given value of the tangent function;
- compute $\cos\theta$, $\sin\theta$, and $\tan\theta$ if given just one of these quantities and the location of the corresponding radius;
- evaluate $\sec\theta$, $\csc\theta$, and $\cot\theta$ as the reciprocal of one of the other trigonometric functions.

The previous section introduced the cosine and the sine. This section introduces the tangent along with three more trigonometric functions.

Definition of Tangent

Recall that $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ are defined to be the first and second coordinates of the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ. The ratio of these two numbers turns out to be sufficiently useful to deserve its own name.

Tangent

The **tangent** of an angle θ, denoted $\tan\theta$, is defined by

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$$

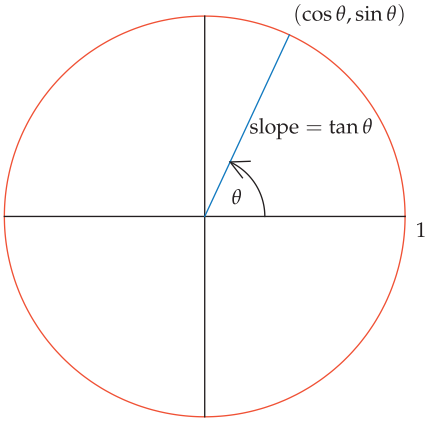
provided that $\cos\theta \neq 0$.

The radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ has its initial point at $(0,0)$ and its endpoint at $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$. Thus the slope of this line segment equals $\frac{\sin\theta - 0}{\cos\theta - 0}$, which equals $\tan\theta$. Thus we have the following result.

Recall that the slope of the line segment connecting two points is the difference of the second coordinates divided by the difference of the first coordinates.

Tangent as slope

$\tan\theta$ is the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ.



Much of what you need to know about trigonometry can be derived from careful consideration of this figure.

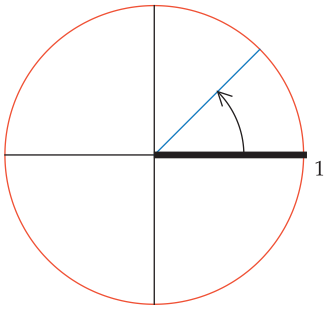
Example 1

Evaluate $\tan \frac{\pi}{4}$.

solution The radius corresponding to $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians (which equals 45°) has its endpoint at $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$. For this point, the second coordinate divided by the first coordinate equals 1. Thus

$$\tan \frac{\pi}{4} = \tan 45^\circ = 1.$$

The equation above is no surprise, because the line through the origin that makes a 45° angle with the positive horizontal axis has slope 1.



This radius, which makes an angle of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians (45°) with the positive horizontal axis, has slope 1. Thus $\tan \frac{\pi}{4} = 1$.

The table below gives the tangent of some angles. This table is obtained from the table of cosines and sines of special angles in Section 4.3 simply by dividing the sine of each angle by its cosine.

θ (*radians*)	θ (*degrees*)	$\tan\theta$
0	0°	0
$\frac{\pi}{6}$	30°	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	45°	1
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	60°	$\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	90°	undefined
π	180°	0

If you have trouble remembering whether $\tan\theta$ equals $\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$ or $\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$, note that the wrong choice would lead to $\tan 0$ being undefined.

The table above shows that the tangent of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (or equivalently the tangent of 90°) is not defined. The reason for this is that $\cos \frac{\pi}{2} = 0$, and division by 0 is not defined.

Similarly, $\tan\theta$ is not defined for each angle θ such that $\cos\theta = 0$. In other words, $\tan\theta$ is not defined for $\theta = \pm\frac{\pi}{2}, \pm\frac{3\pi}{2}, \pm\frac{5\pi}{2}, \ldots$.

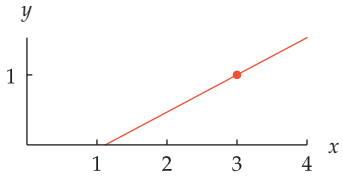
The tangent function allows us to find the equation of a line making a given angle with the positive horizontal axis and containing a given point.

Example 2

Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(3,1)$ and makes an angle of 28° with the positive x-axis.

solution A line that makes an angle of 28° with the positive x-axis has slope $\tan 28^\circ$. Thus the equation of the line is $y - 1 = (\tan 28^\circ)(x - 3)$. Because $\tan 28^\circ \approx 0.531709$, we could rewrite this as

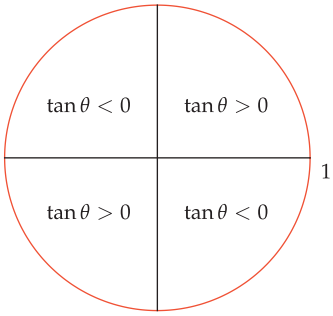
$$y \approx 0.531709x - 0.59513.$$



This line has a 28° angle with the positive x-axis and contains $(3,1)$.

The Sign of Tangent

The quadrant in which a radius lies determines whether the tangent of the corresponding angle is positive or negative. The figure here shows the sign of the tangent in each of the four quadrants.



The tangent of an angle is the ratio of the second and first coordinates of the endpoint of the corresponding radius. Thus the tangent is positive in the quadrant where both coordinates are positive and also in the quadrant where both coordinates are negative. The tangent is negative in quadrants where one coordinate is positive and the other coordinate is negative.

There is no need to memorize this figure. You can always reconstruct it if you understand the definition of tangent.

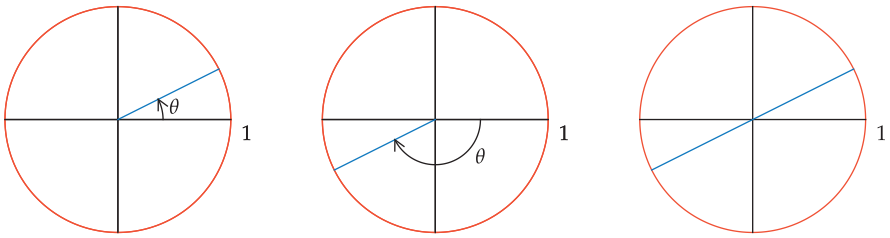
Example 3

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ such that

$$\tan\theta = \frac{1}{2}.$$

solution Because $\tan\theta$ is the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ, we seek a radius with slope $\frac{1}{2}$. Because $\frac{1}{2} > 0$, any radius with slope $\frac{1}{2}$ must lie in either the upper-right quadrant or the lower-left quadrant.

One such radius is shown in the figure below on the left, and another such radius is shown below in the figure in the center.



The first two figures show two radii corresponding to two different values of θ such that $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{2}$. Each of these radii has slope $\frac{1}{2}$. The third figure shows that these two radii lie on the same line.

Connections Among Cosine, Sine, and Tangent

Given any one of $\cos\theta$ or $\sin\theta$ or $\tan\theta$, the equations

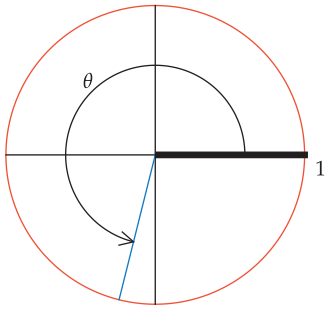
$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$$

can be used to solve for the other two quantities, provided that we have enough additional information to determine the sign.

Example 4

Suppose $\pi < \theta < \frac{3\pi}{2}$ and $\tan\theta = 4$. Evaluate $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

solution In solving such problems, a sketch can help us understand what is going on. In this case, the angle θ is between π radians (which equals 180°) and $\frac{3\pi}{2}$ radians (which equals 270°). Furthermore, the corresponding radius has a fairly steep slope of 4. Thus the sketch here gives a good depiction of the situation.



The angle between π and $\frac{3\pi}{2}$ whose tangent equals 4.

To solve this problem, rewrite the information that $\tan\theta = 4$ in the form

$$\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = 4.$$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by $\cos\theta$, we get $\sin\theta = 4\cos\theta$, which we substitute in the equation $(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1$, getting

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (4\cos\theta)^2 = 1,$$

which implies that $17(\cos\theta)^2 = 1$. Thus $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{17}}$ or $\cos\theta = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{17}}$. A glance at the figure above shows that $\cos\theta$ is negative. Thus

$$\cos\theta = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{17}} = -\frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}.$$

The equation $\sin\theta = 4\cos\theta$ now implies that

$$\sin\theta = -\frac{4}{\sqrt{17}} = -\frac{4\sqrt{17}}{17}.$$

The Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus, shown here in a Warsaw statue, used trigonometry in his 1543 book to help explain why the sun, not the earth, is at the center of the solar system.

The Graph of Tangent

Before graphing the tangent function, we should think about its domain and range. As we noted, the tangent is defined for all real numbers except odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

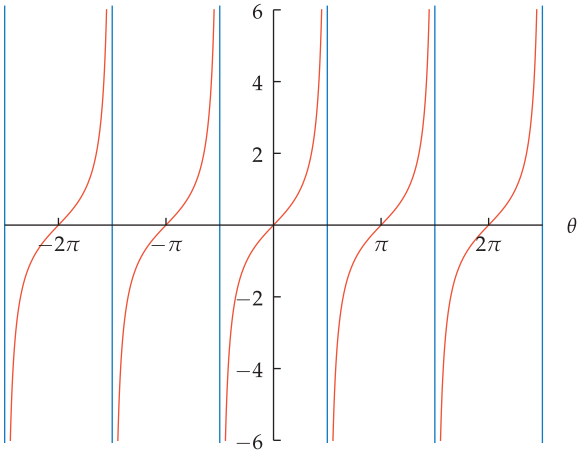
The tangent of an angle is the slope of the corresponding radius of the unit circle. Every real number is the slope of some radius of the unit circle. Thus the range of the tangent function equals the set of real numbers.

The table below gives the domain and range of three trigonometric functions. Here the set of real numbers is denoted using the interval notation $(-\infty, \infty)$.

Domain and range of cosine, sine, and tangent

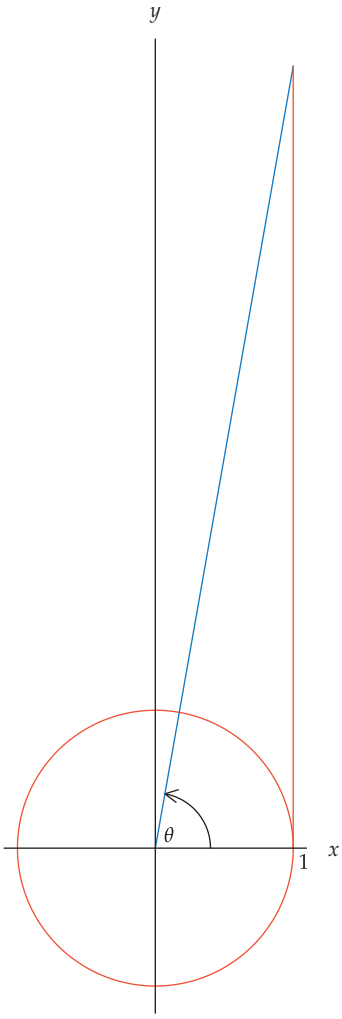
	domain	range
cosine	$(-\infty, \infty)$	$[-1, 1]$
sine	$(-\infty, \infty)$	$[-1, 1]$
tangent	real numbers that are not odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$	$(-\infty, \infty)$

The figure below shows that the graph of the tangent function goes through the origin, as expected from the equation $\tan 0 = 0$. Moving to the right along the θ-axis (the horizontal axis) from the origin, we see that the point $\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, 1\right)$ is on the graph, as expected from the equation $\tan \frac{\pi}{4} = 1$.



The graph of tangent on the interval $(-\frac{5}{2}\pi, \frac{5}{2}\pi)$.

This graph has been vertically truncated to show only values of the tangent that have absolute value less than 6. The blue lines are asymptotes of the graph.



The blue line segment has slope $\tan\theta$. The orange line segment has length $\tan\theta$.

Continuing further to the right along the θ-axis toward the point where $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, we see that as θ gets close to $\frac{\pi}{2}$, the values of $\tan\theta$ rapidly become very large.

To understand why $\tan\theta$ is large when θ is slightly less than a right angle, consider the figure here, which shows an angle a bit less than $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians. We know that the blue line segment has slope $\tan\theta$. Thus the blue line segment lies on the line $y = (\tan\theta)x$. Hence the point on the blue line segment with $x = 1$ has $y = \tan\theta$. In other words, the orange line segment has length $\tan\theta$.

The orange line segment becomes very long when the blue line segment comes close to making a right angle with the positive horizontal axis. Thus $\tan\theta$ becomes large when θ is just slightly less than a right angle.

This behavior can also be seen numerically as well as graphically. For example,

$$\sin\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - 0.01\right) \approx 0.99995 \quad \text{and} \quad \cos\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - 0.01\right) \approx 0.0099998.$$

Thus $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - 0.01\right)$, which equals $\dfrac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - 0.01\right)}{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - 0.01\right)}$, is approximately 100.

What's happening here is that if θ is a number just slightly less than $\frac{\pi}{2}$, then $\sin\theta$ is just slightly less than 1 and $\cos\theta$ is just slightly more than 0. Thus the ratio $\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$, which equals $\tan\theta$, will be large.

In addition to the behavior of the graph near the lines where θ is an odd multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$, another striking feature of the graph above is its periodic nature. We will discuss this property of the graph of the tangent in Section 4.6 when we examine the properties of the tangent more deeply.

Three More Trigonometric Functions

The three main trigonometric functions are cosine, sine, and tangent. Three more trigonometric functions are sometimes used. These functions are simply the multiplicative inverses of the functions we have already defined. Here are the formal definitions.

The secant, cosecant, and cotangent functions do not exist in France, in the sense that students there do not learn about these functions.

Secant

The **secant** of an angle θ, denoted $\sec\theta$, is defined by

$$\sec\theta = \frac{1}{\cos\theta}.$$

Cosecant

The **cosecant** of an angle θ, denoted $\csc\theta$, is defined by

$$\csc\theta = \frac{1}{\sin\theta}.$$

Cotangent

The **cotangent** of an angle θ, denoted $\cot\theta$, is defined by

$$\cot\theta = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}.$$

In all three of these definitions, the function is not defined for values of θ that would result in a division by 0. For example, the cosecant function is not defined at integer multiples of π.

Because the cotangent is defined to be the cosine divided by the sine and the tangent is defined to be the sine divided by the cosine, we have the following consequence of the definitions.

Tangent and cotangent are multiplicative inverses.

If θ is an angle such that both $\tan\theta$ and $\cot\theta$ are defined, then

$$\cot\theta = \frac{1}{\tan\theta}.$$

The scientific calculator on an iPhone (obtained by rotating the standard calculator sideways) has buttons for cos, sin, *and* tan *but omits buttons for* sec, csc, *and* cot.

Many books place too much emphasis on the secant, cosecant, and cotangent. You will rarely need to know anything about these functions beyond their definitions. Whenever you do encounter one of these functions, simply replace it by its definition in terms of cosine, sine, and tangent and then use your knowledge of those more familiar functions. By concentrating on cosine, sine, and tangent rather than all six trigonometric functions, you will attain a better understanding with less clutter in your mind.

Example 5

(a) Evaluate $\sec 60°$. (b) Evaluate $\csc \frac{\pi}{4}$. (c) Evaluate $\cot \frac{\pi}{3}$.

So that you will be comfortable with these functions in case you encounter them elsewhere, some of the exercises in this section require you to use the secant, cosecant, or cotangent. After this section we will rarely use these functions in this book.

solution

(a) We have

$$\sec 60° = \frac{1}{\cos 60°} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} = 2.$$

Note that $|\sec\theta| \geq 1$ for all θ such that $\sec\theta$ is defined.

(b) We have

$$\csc \frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\pi}{4}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} = \sqrt{2} \approx 1.414.$$

Note that $|\csc\theta| \geq 1$ for all θ such that $\csc\theta$ is defined.

(c) We have

$$\cot \frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{\cos \frac{\pi}{3}}{\sin \frac{\pi}{3}} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \approx 0.577.$$

Exercises

1 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that goes through the origin and makes an angle of 0.7 radians with the positive x-axis.

2 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that goes through the origin and makes an angle of 1.2 radians with the positive x-axis.

3 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(3, 2)$ and makes an angle of $41°$ with the positive x-axis.

4 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(2, 5)$ and makes an angle of $73°$ with the positive x-axis.

5 Find a number t such that the line through the origin that contains the point $(4, t)$ makes a $22°$ angle with the positive horizontal axis.

6 Find a number w such that the line through the origin that contains the point $(7, w)$ makes a $17°$ angle with the positive horizontal axis.

7 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\tan\theta = 1$.

8 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\tan\theta = -1$.

9 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{5}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sin\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

10 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{4}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

11 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

12 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{3}{4}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

13 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{5}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sin\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

14 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{5}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sin\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

15 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{4}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\sin\theta$

16 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\tan\theta = \frac{2}{3}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\sin\theta$

17 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\tan\theta = -3$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\sin\theta$

18 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\tan\theta = -2$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\sin\theta$

19 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{3}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sec\theta$ (b) $\csc\theta$ (c) $\cot\theta$

20 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{5}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\csc\theta$ (b) $\sec\theta$ (c) $\cot\theta$

Given that

$$\cos 15° = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin 22.5° = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2},$$

in Exercises 21–30 find exact expressions for the indicated quantities.
[*These values for* $\cos 15°$ *and* $\sin 22.5°$ *will be derived in Examples 3 and 4 in Section 5.5.*]

21 $\sin 15^\circ$
22 $\cos 22.5^\circ$
23 $\tan 15^\circ$
24 $\tan 22.5^\circ$
25 $\cot 15^\circ$
26 $\cot 22.5^\circ$
27 $\csc 15^\circ$
28 $\csc 22.5^\circ$
29 $\sec 15^\circ$
30 $\sec 22.5^\circ$

Suppose u and v are in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$, with

$$\tan u = 2 \quad \textit{and} \quad \tan v = 3.$$

In Exercises 31–40, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities.

31 $\cot u$
32 $\cot v$
33 $\cos u$
34 $\cos v$
35 $\sin u$
36 $\sin v$
37 $\csc u$
38 $\csc v$
39 $\sec u$
40 $\sec v$

41 Find the smallest number x such that $\tan e^x = 0$.

42 Find the smallest number x such that $\tan e^x$ is undefined.

Problems

43 (a) Sketch a radius of the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ such that $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{7}$.

(b) Sketch another radius, different from the one in part (a), also illustrating $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{7}$.

44 (a) Sketch a radius of the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ such that $\tan\theta = 7$.

(b) Sketch another radius, different from the one in part (a), also illustrating $\tan\theta = 7$.

45 Suppose a radius of the unit circle corresponds to an angle whose tangent equals 5, and another radius of the unit circle corresponds to an angle whose tangent equals $-\frac{1}{5}$. Explain why these two radii are perpendicular to each other.

46 Explain why

$$\tan(\theta + \tfrac{\pi}{2}) = -\frac{1}{\tan\theta}$$

for every number θ that is not an integer multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

47 Explain why the previous problem excluded integer multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ from the allowable values for θ.

48 Find a number θ such that the tangent of θ degrees is larger than 50000.

49 Find a positive number θ such that the tangent of θ degrees is less than -90000.

50 Explain why

$$|\sin\theta| \le |\tan\theta|$$

for all θ such that $\tan\theta$ is defined.

51 Suppose you have borrowed two calculators from friends, but you do not know whether they are set to work in radians or degrees. Thus you ask each calculator to evaluate $\tan 89.9$. One calculator replies with an answer of -2.62; the other calculator replies with an answer of 572.96. Without further use of a calculator, how would you decide which calculator is using radians and which calculator is using degrees? Explain your answer.

52 Suppose you have borrowed two calculators from friends, but you do not know whether they are set to work in radians or degrees. Thus you ask each calculator to evaluate $\tan 1$. One calculator replies with an answer of 0.017455; the other calculator replies with an answer of 1.557408. Without further use of a calculator, how would you decide which calculator is using radians and which calculator is using degrees? Explain your answer.

53 Suppose θ is not an odd multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Explain why the point $(\tan\theta, 1)$ is on the line containing the point $(\sin\theta, \cos\theta)$ and the origin.

54 Explain why $\log(\cot\theta) = -\log(\tan\theta)$ for every θ in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

55 In 1768 the Swiss mathematician Johann Lambert proved that if θ is a rational number in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$, then $\tan\theta$ is irrational. Use the equation $\tan\frac{\pi}{4} = 1$ to explain why this result implies that π is irrational.
[*This was the first proof that π is irrational.*]

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that goes through the origin and makes an angle of 0.7 radians with the positive x-axis.

solution A line that makes an angle of 0.7 radians with the positive x-axis has slope $\tan 0.7$. Thus the equation of the line is $y = (\tan 0.7)x$. Because $\tan 0.7 \approx 0.842288$, we could rewrite this as $y \approx 0.842288x$.

3 Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane that contains the point $(3, 2)$ and makes an angle of 41° with the positive x-axis.

solution A line that makes an angle of 41° with the positive x-axis has slope $\tan 41^\circ$. Thus the equation of the line is $y - 2 = (\tan 41^\circ)(x - 3)$. Because $\tan 41^\circ \approx 0.869287$, we could rewrite this as $y \approx 0.869287x - 0.60786$.

5 Find a number t such that the line through the origin that contains the point $(4, t)$ makes a 22° angle with the positive horizontal axis.

solution The line through the origin that contains the point $(4, t)$ has slope $\frac{t}{4}$. Thus we want $\tan 22^\circ = \frac{t}{4}$. Hence

$$t = 4\tan 22^\circ \approx 1.6161.$$

7 Find the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\tan\theta = 1$.

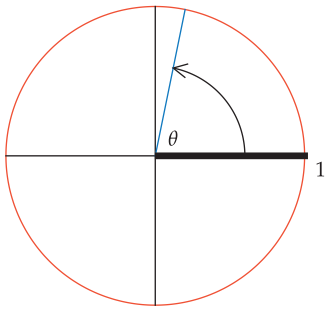
solution Think of a radius of the unit circle whose endpoint is $(1, 0)$. If this radius moves counterclockwise, forming an angle of θ radians with the positive horizontal axis, then the first and second coordinates of its endpoint first become equal (which is equivalent to having

$\tan\theta = 1$) when θ equals $\frac{\pi}{4}$ (which equals 45°), then again when θ equals $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ (which equals 225°), then again when θ equals $\frac{9\pi}{4}$ (which equals $360° + 45°$, or 405°), then again when θ equals $\frac{13\pi}{4}$ (which equals $360° + 225°$, or 585°), and so on.

Thus the four smallest positive numbers θ such that $\tan\theta = 1$ are $\frac{\pi}{4}$, $\frac{5\pi}{4}$, $\frac{9\pi}{4}$, and $\frac{13\pi}{4}$.

9 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{5}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sin\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

solution The figure below gives a sketch of the angle involved in this exercise.



The angle between 0 and $\frac{\pi}{2}$ whose cosine equals $\frac{1}{5}$.

(a) We know that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Thus $\left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1$. Solving this equation for $(\sin\theta)^2$ gives

$$(\sin\theta)^2 = \frac{24}{25}.$$

The sketch above shows that $\sin\theta > 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

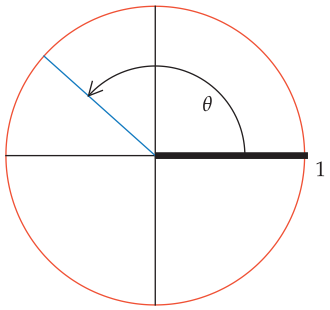
$$\sin\theta = \frac{\sqrt{24}}{5} = \frac{\sqrt{4\cdot 6}}{5} = \frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}.$$

(b)

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \frac{\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{\frac{1}{5}} = 2\sqrt{6}.$$

11 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

solution The figure below gives a sketch of the angle involved in this exercise.



The angle between $\frac{\pi}{2}$ and π whose sine equals $\frac{2}{3}$.

(a) We know that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Thus $(\cos\theta)^2 + \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^2 = 1$. Solving this equation for $(\cos\theta)^2$ gives

$$(\cos\theta)^2 = \frac{5}{9}.$$

The sketch above shows that $\cos\theta < 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

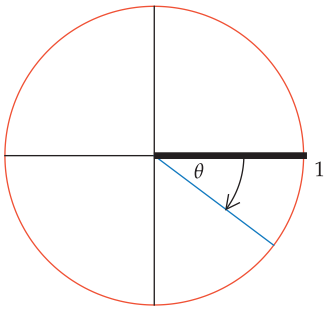
$$\cos\theta = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}.$$

(b)

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = -\frac{\frac{2}{3}}{\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}} = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} = -\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}.$$

13 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{5}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sin\theta$ (b) $\tan\theta$

solution The figure below gives a sketch of the angle involved in this exercise.



The angle between $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ and 0 whose cosine equals $\frac{4}{5}$.

(a) We know that

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Thus $\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1$. Solving this equation for $(\sin\theta)^2$ gives

$$(\sin\theta)^2 = \frac{9}{25}.$$

The sketch above shows that $\sin\theta < 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

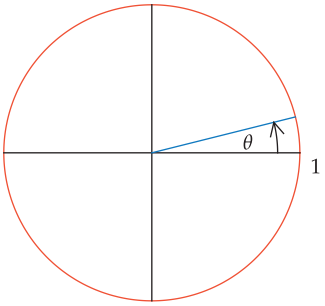
$$\sin\theta = -\frac{3}{5}.$$

(b)

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = -\frac{\frac{3}{5}}{\frac{4}{5}} = -\frac{3}{4}.$$

15 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{4}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\sin\theta$

solution The figure below gives a sketch of the angle involved in this exercise.



The angle between 0 and $\frac{\pi}{2}$ whose tangent equals $\frac{1}{4}$.

(a) Rewrite the equation $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{4}$ in the form $\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \frac{1}{4}$. Multiplying both sides of this equation by $\cos\theta$, we get

$$\sin\theta = \frac{1}{4}\cos\theta.$$

Substitute this expression for $\sin\theta$ into the equation $(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1$, getting

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + \frac{1}{16}(\cos\theta)^2 = 1,$$

which is equivalent to

$$(\cos\theta)^2 = \frac{16}{17}.$$

The sketch above shows that $\cos\theta > 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

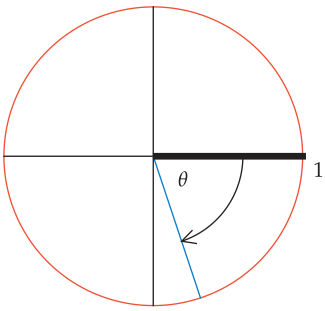
$$\cos\theta = \frac{4}{\sqrt{17}} = \frac{4\sqrt{17}}{17}.$$

(b) We have already noted that $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{4}\cos\theta$. Thus

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}.$$

17 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\tan\theta = -3$. Evaluate:
(a) $\cos\theta$ (b) $\sin\theta$

solution The figure below gives a sketch of the angle involved in this exercise.



The angle between $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ and 0 whose tangent equals -3.

(a) Rewrite the equation $\tan\theta = -3$ in the form $\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = -3$. Multiplying both sides of this equation by $\cos\theta$, we get

$$\sin\theta = -3\cos\theta.$$

Substitute this expression for $\sin\theta$ into the equation $(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1$, getting

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + 9(\cos\theta)^2 = 1,$$

which is equivalent to

$$(\cos\theta)^2 = \frac{1}{10}.$$

The sketch above shows that $\cos\theta > 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

$$\cos\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{10}} = \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}.$$

(b) We have already noted that $\sin\theta = -3\cos\theta$. Thus

$$\sin\theta = -\frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}.$$

19 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{3}$. Evaluate:
(a) $\sec\theta$ (b) $\csc\theta$ (c) $\cot\theta$

solution

(a) $\sec\theta = \frac{1}{\cos\theta} = \frac{1}{1/3} = 3$

(b) $\csc\theta = \frac{1}{\sin\theta} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(1/3)^2}} = \frac{3}{\sqrt{8}} = \frac{3}{2\sqrt{2}} = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{4}$

(c) $\cot\theta = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta} = \frac{1/3}{\sqrt{8/9}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{8}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$

Given that

$$\mathbf{\cos 15^\circ} = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \mathbf{\sin 22.5^\circ} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2},$$

in Exercises 21–30 find exact expressions for the indicated quantities.

21 $\sin 15^\circ$

solution We know that

$$(\cos 15^\circ)^2 + (\sin 15^\circ)^2 = 1.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}(\sin 15^\circ)^2 &= 1 - (\cos 15^\circ)^2 \\ &= 1 - \left(\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}\right)^2 \\ &= 1 - \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{4} \\ &= \frac{2-\sqrt{3}}{4}.\end{aligned}$$

Because $\sin 15^\circ > 0$, taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives $\sin 15^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}$.

23 $\tan 15^\circ$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\tan 15^\circ &= \frac{\sin 15^\circ}{\cos 15^\circ}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}\\ &= \frac{2-\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{4-3}}\\ &= 2-\sqrt{3}\end{aligned}$$

25 $\cot 15^\circ$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cot 15^\circ &= \frac{1}{\tan 15^\circ}\\ &= \frac{1}{2-\sqrt{3}}\\ &= \frac{1}{2-\sqrt{3}}\cdot\frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2+\sqrt{3}}\\ &= \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{4-3}\\ &= 2+\sqrt{3}\end{aligned}$$

27 $\csc 15^\circ$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\csc 15^\circ &= \frac{1}{\sin 15^\circ}\\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}\\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{4-3}}\\ &= 2\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}\end{aligned}$$

29 $\sec 15^\circ$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sec 15^\circ &= \frac{1}{\cos 15^\circ}\\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}\\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{4-3}}\\ &= 2\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}\end{aligned}$$

Suppose u and v are in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$, with

$$\tan u = 2 \quad \textit{and} \quad \tan v = 3.$$

In Exercises 31–40, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities.

31 $\cot u$

solution $\cot u = \dfrac{1}{\tan u} = \frac{1}{2}$

33 $\cos u$

solution We know that

$$\begin{aligned}2 &= \tan u\\ &= \frac{\sin u}{\cos u}.\end{aligned}$$

To find $\cos u$, make the substitution $\sin u = \sqrt{1-(\cos u)^2}$ in the equation above (this substitution is valid because we know that $0 < u < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and thus $\sin u > 0$), getting

$$2 = \frac{\sqrt{1-(\cos u)^2}}{\cos u}.$$

Now square both sides of the equation above, then multiply both sides by $(\cos u)^2$ and rearrange to get the equation

$$5(\cos u)^2 = 1.$$

Because $0 < u < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we see that $\cos u > 0$. Thus taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives $\cos u = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$, which can be rewritten as $\cos u = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$.

35 $\sin u$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin u &= \sqrt{1-(\cos u)^2}\\ &= \sqrt{1-\frac{1}{5}}\\ &= \sqrt{\frac{4}{5}}\\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}\end{aligned}$$

37 $\csc u$

solution $\csc u = \dfrac{1}{\sin u} = \dfrac{\sqrt{5}}{2}$

39 $\sec u$

solution $\sec u = \dfrac{1}{\cos u} = \sqrt{5}$

41 Find the smallest number x such that $\tan e^x = 0$.

solution Note that e^x is an increasing function. Because e^x is positive for every real number x, and because π is the smallest positive number whose tangent equals 0, we want to choose x so that $e^x = \pi$. Thus $x = \ln \pi$.

4.5 Trigonometry in Right Triangles

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute the cosine, sine, and tangent of any angle of a right triangle if given the lengths of any two sides of the triangle;
- compute the lengths of all three sides of a right triangle if given any angle (in addition to the right angle) and the length of any side.

Trigonometry originated in the study of triangles. In this section we study trigonometry in the context of right triangles. In the next chapter we will deal with general triangles.

Trigonometric Functions via Right Triangles

Let $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ (or $0^\circ < \theta < 90^\circ$ if using degrees), and consider the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ radians, as shown here.

In the figure here, a vertical line segment has been dropped from the endpoint of the radius to the horizontal axis, producing a right triangle. The hypotenuse of this right triangle is a radius of the unit circle and hence has length 1. Because the endpoint of this radius has coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$, the horizontal side of the triangle has length $\cos\theta$ and the vertical side of the triangle has length $\sin\theta$. To get a clearer picture of what is going on, this triangle is displayed below, without the unit circle or the coordinate axes cluttering the figure (and for additional clarity, the scale has been enlarged).

If we apply the Pythagorean Theorem to this triangle, we get

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1,$$

which is a familiar equation.

Using the same angle θ as above, consider now a right triangle where one of the angles is θ but where the hypotenuse does not necessarily have length 1. Let c denote the length of the hypotenuse of this right triangle. Let a denote the length of the other side of the triangle adjacent to the angle θ, and let b denote the length of the side opposite the angle θ, as shown here.

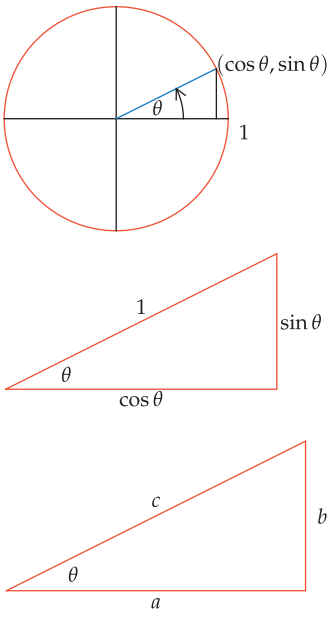
The two triangles shown above have the same angles. Thus these two triangles are similar. This similarity implies that the ratio of the lengths of any two sides of one of the triangles equals the ratio of the lengths of the corresponding sides of the other triangle.

For example, in our first triangle consider the horizontal side and the hypotenuse. These two sides have lengths $\cos\theta$ and 1. Thus the ratio of their lengths is $\frac{\cos\theta}{1}$, which equals $\cos\theta$. In our second triangle, the corresponding sides have lengths a and c. Their ratio (in the same order as used for the first triangle) is $\frac{a}{c}$. Setting these ratios from the two similar triangles equal to each other, we have

$$\cos\theta = \frac{a}{c}.$$

Similarly, in our first triangle above consider the vertical side and the hypotenuse. These two sides have lengths $\sin\theta$ and 1. Thus the ratio of their lengths is $\frac{\sin\theta}{1}$, which equals $\sin\theta$. In our second triangle, the corresponding sides have lengths b and c. Their ratio (in the same order as used for the first triangle) is $\frac{b}{c}$. Setting these ratios from the two similar triangles equal to each other, we have

$$\sin\theta = \frac{b}{c}.$$



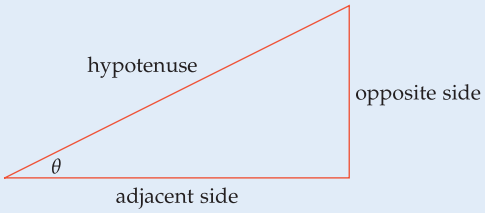
The two triangles above are similar. Thus the ratios of corresponding sides are equal.

Finally, in our first triangle consider the vertical side and the horizontal side. These two sides have lengths $\sin\theta$ and $\cos\theta$. Thus the ratio of their lengths is $\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$, which equals $\tan\theta$. In our second triangle, the corresponding sides have lengths b and a. Their ratio (in the same order as used for the first triangle) is $\frac{b}{a}$. Setting these ratios from the two similar triangles equal to each other, we have

$$\tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}.$$

The last three displayed equations form the basis of what is called right-triangle trigonometry. We now restate these equations using words instead of symbols.

Right-triangle characterization of cosine, sine, and tangent



$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} \qquad \sin\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}}$$

Here the word "hypotenuse" is shorthand for "the length of the hypotenuse".

Similarly, "adjacent side" is shorthand for "the length of the nonhypotenuse side adjacent to the angle θ".

Also, "opposite side" is shorthand for "the length of the side opposite the angle θ".

The formulas for $\cos\theta$, $\sin\theta$, and $\tan\theta$ in the box above are valid only in right triangles, not in all triangles.

The figure and the equations in the box above capture the fundamentals of right-triangle trigonometry. Be sure that you thoroughly internalize the contents of the box above and that you can comfortably use these characterizations of the trigonometric functions.

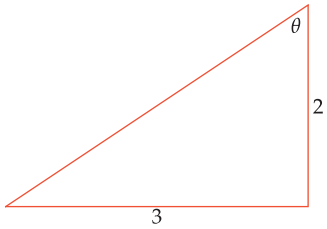
Some books use the equations in the box above as the definitions of cosine, sine, and tangent. That approach makes sense only when θ is between 0 radians and $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (or between 0° and 90°), because there do not exist right triangles with angles bigger than $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (or 90°), just as there do not exist right triangles with negative angles. The characterizations of cosine, sine, and tangent given in the box above are highly useful, but keep in mind that the box above is valid only when θ is a positive angle less than $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (or 90°).

Two Sides of a Right Triangle

Given the lengths of any two sides of a right triangle, the Pythagorean Theorem allows us to find the length of the third side. Once we know the lengths of all three sides of a right triangle, we can find the cosine, sine, and tangent of any angle of the triangle. The next example illustrates this procedure.

Example 1

Find the length of the hypotenuse and evaluate $\cos\theta$, $\sin\theta$, and $\tan\theta$ in this right triangle.



solution Let c denote the length of the hypotenuse of the triangle above. By the Pythagorean Theorem, we have

$$c^2 = 3^2 + 2^2.$$

Thus $c = \sqrt{13}$.

Now $\cos\theta$ equals the length of the side adjacent to θ divided by the length of the hypotenuse. Thus

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{13}} = \frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13}.$$

Similarly, $\sin\theta$ equals the length of the side opposite θ divided by the length of the hypotenuse. Thus

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{3}{\sqrt{13}} = \frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}.$$

In this example the side opposite the angle θ is the horizontal side of the triangle rather than the vertical side. This illustrates the usefulness of thinking in terms of opposite and adjacent sides rather than specific letters such as a, b, and c.

Finally, $\tan\theta$ equals the length of the side opposite θ divided by the length of the side adjacent to θ. Thus

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{3}{2}.$$

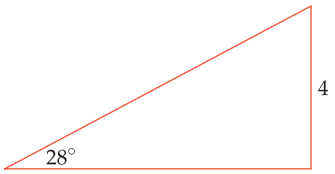
In Section 5.1 we will see how to find the angle θ from the knowledge of either its cosine, its sine, or its tangent.

One Side and One Angle of a Right Triangle

Given the length of any side of a right triangle and any angle (in addition to the right angle), we can find the lengths of the other two sides of the triangle.

Example 2

Find the lengths of the other two sides of the triangle shown here.



Real-world problems often do not come with labels attached. Thus sometimes the first step toward a solution is the assignment of appropriate labels.

solution The other two sides of the triangle are not labeled. Thus let a denote the length of the side adjacent to the 28° angle and let c denote the length of the hypotenuse.

Because we know the length of the side opposite the 28° angle, we will start with the sine. We have

$$\sin 28^\circ = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{4}{c}.$$

Solving for c, we get

$$c = \frac{4}{\sin 28^\circ} \approx 8.52,$$

where the approximation was obtained with the aid of a calculator.

Next we find the length of the side adjacent to the 28° angle. We have

$$\tan 28^\circ = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{4}{a}.$$

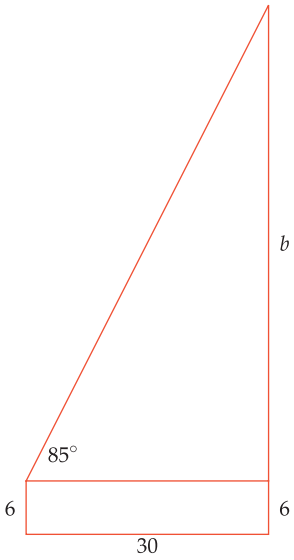
Solving for a, we get

$$a = \frac{4}{\tan 28^\circ} \approx 7.52,$$

where the approximation was obtained with the aid of a calculator.

Trigonometry has a huge number of practical applications. The next example shows how trigonometry can be used to find the height of a building.

Example 3



Standing 30 feet from the base of a tall building, you aim a laser pointer at the closest part of the top of the building. You measure that the laser pointer is 5° tilted from pointing straight up. The laser pointer is held 6 feet above the ground. How tall is the building?

solution In the sketch here, the rightmost vertical line represents the building and the hypotenuse represents the path of the laser beam. Because the laser pointer is 5° tilted from straight up, the angle formed by the laser beam and a line parallel to the ground is 85°, as indicated in the sketch (not drawn to scale).

The side of the right triangle opposite the 85° angle has been labeled b. Thus the height of the building is $b + 6$.

We have $\tan 85^\circ = \dfrac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \dfrac{b}{30}$. Solving this equation for b, we get

$$b = 30 \tan 85^\circ \approx 343.$$

Adding 6, we see that the height of the building is approximately 349 feet.

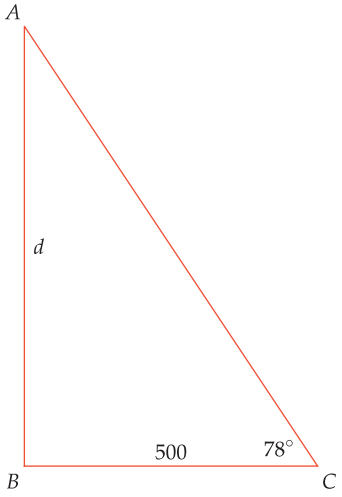
The example above shows that using trigonometry, we can find the height of a building without going to the top of the building. The next example illustrates another practical application of the ideas in this section.

Example 4

With a tool for measuring angles and a bit of trigonometry, a surveyor can determine the distance to inaccessible objects.

A surveyor at point B wishes to measure the distance between points A and B, but a canyon between A and B prevents a direct measurement. Thus the surveyor moves 500 meters perpendicular to the line AB to the point C and measures angle BCA as 78° (such angles can be measured with a tool called a *transit level*). What is the distance between the points A and B?

solution Let d denote the distance from A to B.



From the figure (which is not drawn to scale) we have

$$\tan 78^\circ = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{d}{500}.$$

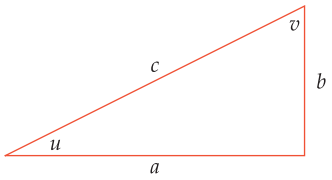
Solving this equation for d, we get

$$d = 500 \tan 78^\circ \approx 2352.$$

Thus the distance between A and B is approximately 2352 meters.

Exercises

Use the right triangle below for Exercises 1–22. This triangle is not drawn to scale corresponding to the data in the exercises.



1 Suppose $a = 2$ and $b = 7$. Evaluate

(a) c (d) $\tan u$ (g) $\tan v$.
(b) $\cos u$ (e) $\cos v$
(c) $\sin u$ (f) $\sin v$

2 Suppose $a = 3$ and $b = 5$. Evaluate

(a) c (d) $\tan u$ (g) $\tan v$.
(b) $\cos u$ (e) $\cos v$
(c) $\sin u$ (f) $\sin v$

3 Suppose $b = 2$ and $c = 7$. Evaluate

(a) a (d) $\tan u$ (g) $\tan v$.
(b) $\cos u$ (e) $\cos v$
(c) $\sin u$ (f) $\sin v$

4 Suppose $b = 4$ and $c = 6$. Evaluate

(a) a (d) $\tan u$ (g) $\tan v$.
(b) $\cos u$ (e) $\cos v$
(c) $\sin u$ (f) $\sin v$

5 Suppose $a = 5$ and $u = 17°$. Evaluate

(a) b (b) c.

6 Suppose $b = 3$ and $v = 38°$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) c.

7 Suppose $u = 27°$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos v$ (b) $\sin v$ (c) $\tan v$.

8 Suppose $v = 48°$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos u$ (b) $\sin u$ (c) $\tan u$.

9 Suppose $c = 8$ and $u = 1$ radian. Evaluate

(a) a (b) b.

10 Suppose $c = 3$ and $v = 0.2$ radians. Evaluate

(a) a (b) b.

11 Suppose $u = 0.7$ radians. Evaluate

(a) $\cos v$ (b) $\sin v$ (c) $\tan v$.

12 Suppose $v = 0.1$ radians. Evaluate

(a) $\cos u$ (b) $\sin u$ (c) $\tan u$.

13 Suppose $c = 4$ and $\cos u = \frac{3}{5}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) b.

14 Suppose $c = 5$ and $\cos u = \frac{1}{4}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) b.

15 Suppose $\cos u = \frac{1}{5}$. Evaluate

(a) $\sin u$ (c) $\cos v$ (e) $\tan v$.
(b) $\tan u$ (d) $\sin v$

16 Suppose $\cos u = \frac{2}{3}$. Evaluate

(a) $\sin u$ (c) $\cos v$ (e) $\tan v$.
(b) $\tan u$ (d) $\sin v$

17 Suppose $b = 4$ and $\sin v = \frac{1}{6}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) c.

18 Suppose $b = 2$ and $\sin v = \frac{5}{7}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) c.

19 Suppose $a = 5$ and $\tan v = \frac{3}{4}$. Evaluate

(a) b (b) c.

20 Suppose $b = 3$ and $\tan v = \frac{2}{7}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) c.

21 Suppose $\sin v = \frac{1}{3}$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos u$ (c) $\tan u$ (e) $\tan v$.
(b) $\sin u$ (d) $\cos v$

22 Suppose $\sin v = \frac{3}{7}$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos u$ (c) $\tan u$ (e) $\tan v$.
(b) $\sin u$ (d) $\cos v$

23 Find the perimeter of a right triangle that has hypotenuse of length 6 and a 40° angle.

24 Find the perimeter of a right triangle that has hypotenuse of length 8 and a 35° angle.

25 Suppose a 25-foot ladder is leaning against a wall, making a 63° angle with the ground (measured from a perpendicular line from the base of the ladder to the wall). How high up the wall is the end of the ladder?

26 Suppose a 19-foot ladder is leaning against a wall, making a 71° angle with the ground (measured from a perpendicular line from the base of the ladder to the wall). How high up the wall is the end of the ladder?

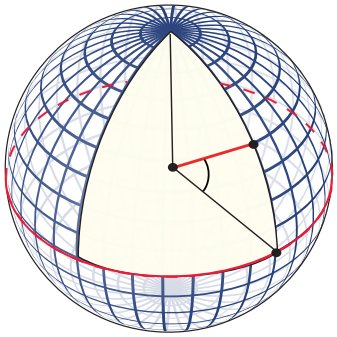
27 Suppose you need to find the height of a tall building. Standing 20 meters from the base of the building, you aim a laser pointer at the closest part of the top of the building. You measure that the laser pointer is 4° tilted from pointing straight up. The laser pointer is held 2 meters above the ground. How tall is the building?

28 Suppose you need to find the height of a tall building. Standing 15 meters from the base of the building, you aim a laser pointer at the closest part of the top of the building. You measure that the laser pointer is 7° tilted from pointing straight up. The laser pointer is held 2 meters above the ground. How tall is the building?

29 A surveyor at point B wishes to measure the distance between points A and B, but buildings between A and B prevent a direct measurement. Thus the surveyor moves 50 meters perpendicular to the line AB to the point C and measures that angle BCA is 87°. What is the distance between the points A and B?

30 A surveyor at point B wishes to measure the distance between points A and B, but a river between A and B prevents a direct measurement. Thus the surveyor moves 200 feet perpendicular to the line AB to the point C and measures that angle BCA is 81°. What is the distance between the points A and B?

For Exercises 31–36, assume the surface of the earth is a sphere with radius 3963 miles. The* latitude *of a point P on the earth's surface is the angle between the line from the center of the earth to P and the line from the center of the earth to the point on the equator closest to P, as shown below for latitude 40°.



31 Dallas has latitude 32.8° north. Find the radius of the circle formed by the points with the same latitude as Dallas.

32 Cleveland has latitude 41.5° north. Find the radius of the circle formed by the points with the same latitude as Cleveland.

33 Suppose you travel east on the surface of the earth from Dallas (latitude 32.8° north, longitude 96.8° west), always staying at the same latitude as Dallas. You stop when reaching latitude 32.8° north, longitude 84.4° west (directly south of Atlanta). How far have you traveled?

34 Suppose you travel east on the surface of the earth from Cleveland (latitude 41.5° north, longitude 81.7° west), always staying at the same latitude as Cleveland. You stop when reaching latitude 41.5° north, longitude 75.1° west (directly north of Philadelphia). How far have you traveled?

35 How fast is Dallas moving due to the daily rotation of the earth about its axis?

36 How fast is Cleveland moving due to the daily rotation of the earth about its axis?

37 Find the perimeter of an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length 6 and an 80° angle between those two sides.

38 Find the perimeter of an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length 8 and a 130° angle between those two sides.

Problems

39 In doing several of the exercises in this section, you should have noticed a relationship between $\cos u$ and $\sin v$, along with a relationship between $\sin u$ and $\cos v$. What are these relationships? Explain why they hold.

40 In doing several of the exercises in this section, you should have noticed a relationship between $\tan u$ and $\tan v$. What is this relationship? Explain why it holds.

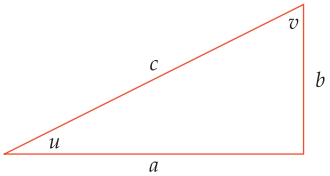
41 Find the lengths of all three sides of a right triangle that has perimeter 29 and has a 42° angle.

42 Find the latitude of your location, then compute how fast you are moving due to the daily rotation of the earth about its axis.

43 Find a formula for the perimeter of an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length c with angle θ between those two sides.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Use the right triangle below for Exercises 1–22. This triangle is not drawn to scale corresponding to the data in the exercises.



1 Suppose $a = 2$ and $b = 7$. Evaluate

(a) c (b) $\cos u$ (c) $\sin u$ (d) $\tan u$ (e) $\cos v$ (f) $\sin v$ (g) $\tan v$.

solution

(a) The Pythagorean Theorem implies that $c^2 = 2^2 + 7^2$. Thus

$$c = \sqrt{2^2 + 7^2} = \sqrt{53}.$$

(b) $$\cos u = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{53}} = \frac{2\sqrt{53}}{53}$$

(c) $$\sin u = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{b}{c} = \frac{7}{\sqrt{53}} = \frac{7\sqrt{53}}{53}$$

(d) $$\tan u = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{b}{a} = \frac{7}{2}$$

(e) $$\cos v = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{b}{c} = \frac{7}{\sqrt{53}} = \frac{7\sqrt{53}}{53}$$

(f) $$\sin v = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{53}} = \frac{2\sqrt{53}}{53}$$

(g) $$\tan v = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{2}{7}$$

3 Suppose $b = 2$ and $c = 7$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) $\cos u$ (c) $\sin u$ (d) $\tan u$ (e) $\cos v$ (f) $\sin v$ (g) $\tan v$.

solution

(a) The Pythagorean Theorem implies that $a^2 + 2^2 = 7^2$. Thus

$$a = \sqrt{7^2 - 2^2} = \sqrt{45} = \sqrt{9 \cdot 5} = \sqrt{9} \cdot \sqrt{5} = 3\sqrt{5}.$$

(b) $\cos u = \dfrac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \dfrac{a}{c} = \dfrac{3\sqrt{5}}{7}$

(c) $\sin u = \dfrac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \dfrac{b}{c} = \dfrac{2}{7}$

(d) $\tan u = \dfrac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \dfrac{b}{a} = \dfrac{2}{3\sqrt{5}} = \dfrac{2\sqrt{5}}{15}$

(e) $\cos v = \dfrac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \dfrac{b}{c} = \dfrac{2}{7}$

(f) $\sin v = \dfrac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \dfrac{a}{c} = \dfrac{3\sqrt{5}}{7}$

(g) $\tan v = \dfrac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \dfrac{a}{b} = \dfrac{3\sqrt{5}}{2}$

5 Suppose $a = 5$ and $u = 17°$. Evaluate

(a) b (b) c.

solution

(a) We have

$$\tan 17° = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{b}{5}.$$

Solving for b, we get $b = 5 \tan 17° \approx 1.53$.

(b) We have

$$\cos 17° = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{5}{c}.$$

Solving for c, we get

$$c = \frac{5}{\cos 17°} \approx 5.23.$$

7 Suppose $u = 27°$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos v$ (b) $\sin v$ (c) $\tan v$.

solution

(a) Because $v = 90° - u$, we have $v = 63°$. Thus $\cos v = \cos 63° \approx 0.454$.

(b) $\sin v = \sin 63° \approx 0.891$

(c) $\tan v = \tan 63° \approx 1.96$

9 Suppose $c = 8$ and $u = 1$ radian. Evaluate

(a) a (b) b.

solution

(a) We have

$$\cos 1 = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{8}.$$

Solving for a, we get

$$a = 8 \cos 1 \approx 4.32.$$

Be sure that your calculator is set to operate in radian mode when doing the approximation above.

(b) We have

$$\sin 1 = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{b}{8}.$$

Solving for b, we get

$$b = 8 \sin 1 \approx 6.73.$$

11 Suppose $u = 0.7$ radians. Evaluate

(a) $\cos v$ (b) $\sin v$ (c) $\tan v$.

solution

(a) Because $v = \frac{\pi}{2} - u$, we have $v = \frac{\pi}{2} - 0.7$. Thus

$$\cos v = \cos\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - 0.7\right) \approx 0.6442.$$

(b) $\sin v = \sin\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - 0.7\right) \approx 0.7648$

(c) $\tan v = \tan\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - 0.7\right) \approx 1.187$

13 Suppose $c = 4$ and $\cos u = \frac{3}{5}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) b.

solution

(a) We have

$$\frac{3}{5} = \cos u = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{4}.$$

Solving this equation for a, we get $a = \frac{12}{5}$.

(b) The Pythagorean Theorem implies that $\left(\frac{12}{5}\right)^2 + b^2 = 4^2$. Thus

$$b = \sqrt{16 - \frac{144}{25}} = 4\sqrt{1 - \frac{9}{25}} = 4\sqrt{\frac{16}{25}} = \frac{16}{5}.$$

15 Suppose $\cos u = \frac{1}{5}$. Evaluate

(a) $\sin u$ (c) $\cos v$ (e) $\tan v$.

(b) $\tan u$ (d) $\sin v$

solution

(a) $\sin u = \sqrt{1 - (\cos u)^2} = \sqrt{1 - \dfrac{1}{25}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{24}{25}} = \dfrac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}$

(b) $\tan u = \dfrac{\sin u}{\cos u} = \dfrac{\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{\frac{1}{5}} = 2\sqrt{6}$

(c) $\cos v = \dfrac{b}{c} = \sin u = \dfrac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}$

(d) $\sin v = \dfrac{a}{c} = \cos u = \dfrac{1}{5}$

(e) $\tan v = \dfrac{\sin v}{\cos v} = \dfrac{\frac{1}{5}}{\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}} = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{6}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{6}}{12}$

17 Suppose $b = 4$ and $\sin v = \frac{1}{6}$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) c.

solution

(a) We have

$$\frac{1}{6} = \sin v = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{c}.$$

Thus

$$c = 6a.$$

By the Pythagorean Theorem, we also have

$$c^2 = a^2 + 16.$$

Substituting $6a$ for c in this equation gives

$$36a^2 = a^2 + 16.$$

Solving the equation above for a shows that

$$a = \sqrt{\frac{16}{35}} = \frac{4\sqrt{35}}{35}.$$

(b) We have

$$\frac{1}{6} = \sin v = \frac{a}{c}.$$

Thus

$$c = 6a = \frac{24\sqrt{35}}{35}.$$

19 Suppose $a = 5$ and $\tan v = \frac{3}{4}$. Evaluate

(a) b (b) c.

solution

(a) We have

$$\frac{3}{4} = \tan v = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{a}{b}.$$

Thus

$$b = \frac{4}{3}a = \frac{4}{3} \cdot 5 = \frac{20}{3}.$$

(b) By the Pythagorean Theorem, we have

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 = 25 + \frac{400}{9} = \frac{625}{9}.$$

Thus

$$c = \frac{\sqrt{625}}{3} = \frac{25}{3}.$$

21 Suppose $\sin v = \frac{1}{3}$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos u$ (c) $\tan u$ (e) $\tan v$.

(b) $\sin u$ (d) $\cos v$

solution

(a) $\cos u = \frac{a}{c} = \sin v = \frac{1}{3}$

(b) $\sin u = \sqrt{1 - (\cos u)^2} = \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{8}{9}} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$

(c) $\tan u = \dfrac{\sin u}{\cos u} = \dfrac{\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}}{\frac{1}{3}} = 2\sqrt{2}$

(d) $\cos v = \sqrt{1 - (\sin v)^2} = \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{8}{9}} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$

(e) $\tan v = \dfrac{\sin v}{\cos v} = \dfrac{\frac{1}{3}}{\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}} = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$

23 Find the perimeter of a right triangle that has hypotenuse of length 6 and a $40°$ angle.

solution The side adjacent to the $40°$ angle has length $6\cos 40°$. The side opposite the $40°$ angle has length $6\sin 40°$. Thus the perimeter of the triangle is

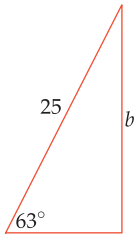
$$6 + 6\cos 40° + 6\sin 40°,$$

which is approximately 14.453.

25 Suppose a 25-foot ladder is leaning against a wall, making a $63°$ angle with the ground (measured from a perpendicular line from the base of the ladder to the wall). How high up the wall is the end of the ladder?

solution

In the sketch here, the vertical line represents the wall; the hypotenuse represents the ladder. As labeled here, the ladder touches the wall at height b; thus we need to evaluate b.



We have $\sin 63° = \frac{b}{25}$. Solving this equation for b, we get

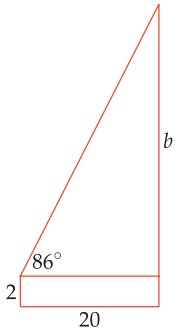
$$b = 25\sin 63° \approx 22.28.$$

Thus the ladder touches the wall at a height of approximately 22.28 feet. Because $0.28 \times 12 = 3.36$, this is approximately 22 feet, 3 inches.

27 Suppose you need to find the height of a tall building. Standing 20 meters from the base of the building, you aim a laser pointer at the closest part of the top of the building. You measure that the laser pointer is $4°$ tilted from pointing straight up. The laser pointer is held 2 meters above the ground. How tall is the building?

solution

In the sketch here, the rightmost vertical line represents the building; the hypotenuse represents the path of the laser beam. Because the laser pointer is $4°$ tilted from pointing straight up, the angle formed by the laser beam and a line parallel to the ground is $86°$, as indicated in the figure (which is not drawn to scale).



The side of the right triangle opposite the $86°$ angle has been labeled b. Thus the height of the building is $b + 2$.

We have $\tan 86° = \frac{b}{20}$. Solving this equation for b, we get

$$b = 20\tan 86° \approx 286.$$

Adding 2, we see that the height of the building is approximately 288 meters.

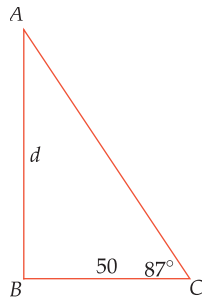
29 A surveyor at point B wishes to measure the distance between points A and B, but buildings between A and B prevent a direct measurement. Thus the surveyor moves 50 meters perpendicular to the line AB to the point C and measures that angle BCA is 87°. What is the distance between the points A and B?

solution

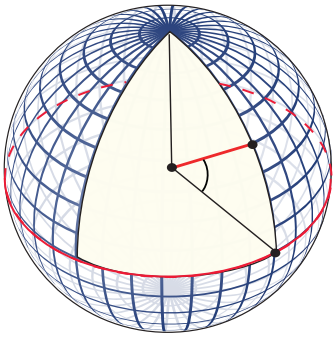
Let d denote the distance from A to B. From the figure (which is not drawn to scale) we have

$$\tan 87^\circ = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{d}{50}.$$

Solving for d, we get $d = 50 \tan 87^\circ \approx 954$. Thus the distance between A and B is approximately 954 meters.

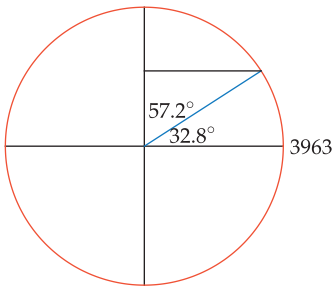


For Exercises 31–36, assume the surface of the earth is a sphere with radius 3963 miles. The* latitude *of a point P on the earth's surface is the angle between the line from the center of the earth to P and the line from the center of the earth to the point on the equator closest to P, as shown below for latitude 40°.



31 Dallas has latitude 32.8° north. Find the radius of the circle formed by the points with the same latitude as Dallas.

solution The figure below shows a cross section of the earth. The blue radius is the line segment from the center of the earth to Dallas, making a 32.8° angle with the line segment from the center of the earth to the point on the equator closest to Dallas.



The black line segment shows the radius of the circle formed by the points with the same latitude as Dallas. The angle opposite the black segment in the right triangle is 57.2° (because $90 - 32.8 = 57.2$). Thus we see from the figure that the length of the black segment is $3963 \sin 57.2^\circ$ miles, which is approximately 3331.2 miles.

33 Suppose you travel east on the surface of the earth from Dallas (latitude 32.8° north, longitude 96.8° west), always staying at the same latitude as Dallas. You stop when reaching latitude 32.8° north, longitude 84.4° west (directly south of Atlanta). How far have you traveled?

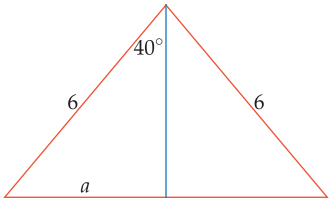
solution Using the formula for the length of a circular arc from Section 4.1, we see that the distance traveled on the surface of the earth is $\frac{12.4\pi \cdot 3331.2}{180}$ miles (the number 12.4 is used because $12.4 = 96.8 - 84.4$, and the radius of 3331.2 miles comes from the solution to Exercise 31). Because $\frac{12.4\pi \cdot 3331.2}{180} \approx 721$, you have traveled approximately 721 miles.

35 How fast is Dallas moving due to the daily rotation of the earth about its axis?

solution From the solution to Exercise 31, we see that Dallas travels $2\pi \cdot 3331.2$ miles, which is approximately 20,931 miles, each 24 hours due to the rotation of the earth about its axis. Thus the speed of Dallas due to the rotation of the earth is approximately $\frac{20931}{24}$ miles per hour, which is approximately 872 miles per hour.

37 Find the perimeter of an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length 6 and an 80° angle between those two sides.

solution The figure below shows an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length 6 and an angle of 80° between those two sides. The blue line bisects the 80° angle into two 40° angles and forms one side of a right triangle whose hypotenuse has length 6; the length of the side opposite the 40° angle has been called a.



We see that

$$\sin 40^\circ = \frac{a}{6}.$$

Thus $a = 6 \sin 40^\circ$. Hence the side of the isosceles triangle opposite the 80° angle has length $12 \sin 40^\circ$. Thus the perimeter of the triangle is $6 + 6 + 12 \sin 40^\circ$, which equals $12 + 12 \sin 40^\circ$, which is approximately 19.71.

4.6 Trigonometric Identities

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- derive trigonometric identities and simplify trigonometric expressions;
- use the trigonometric identities for $-\theta$;
- use the trigonometric identities for $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$;
- use the trigonometric identities for $\theta + \pi$ and $\theta + 2\pi$.

Equations come in two flavors. One flavor is an equation such as

$$x^2 = 4x - 3,$$

which holds for only certain values of the variable x. We can talk about solving such equations, which means finding the values of the variable (or variables) that make the equations valid. For example, the equation above is valid only if $x = 1$ or $x = 3$.

A second flavor is an equation such as

$$(x+3)^2 = x^2 + 6x + 9,$$

which is valid for all numbers x. An equation such as this is called an **identity** because it is identically true without regard to the value of any variables. As another example, the logarithmic identity

$$\log(xy) = \log x + \log y$$

holds for all positive numbers x and y.

Do not memorize the many dozen useful trigonometric identities. Concentrate on understanding why these identities hold. Then you will be able to derive the ones you need in any particular situation.

In this section we focus on basic trigonometric identities, which are identities that involve trigonometric functions. Such identities are often useful for simplifying trigonometric expressions and for converting information about one trigonometric function into information about another trigonometric function. We will deal with additional trigonometric identities later, particularly in Sections 5.5 and 5.6.

The Relationship Among Cosine, Sine, and Tangent

The English word trigonometry *first appeared in 1614 in an English translation of a book written in Latin by the German mathematician Bartholomeo Pitiscus. A prominent crater on the moon is named for him.*

We have already used the most important trigonometric identity, which is

$$(\cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2 = 1.$$

Recall that this identity arises from the definition of $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ as a point on the unit circle, whose equation is $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

Usually the notation $\cos^2\theta$ is used instead of $(\cos\theta)^2$, and $\sin^2\theta$ is used instead of $(\sin\theta)^2$. We have been using the notation $(\cos\theta)^2$ and $(\sin\theta)^2$ to emphasize the meaning of these terms. Now it is time to switch to the more common notation. Keep in mind, however, that an expression such as $\cos^2\theta$ means $(\cos\theta)^2$.

Notation for powers of cosine, sine, and tangent

If n is a positive integer, then

- $\cos^n\theta$ means $(\cos\theta)^n$;
- $\sin^n\theta$ means $(\sin\theta)^n$;
- $\tan^n\theta$ means $(\tan\theta)^n$.

With our new notation, we now rewrite our most important trigonometric identity.

Relationship between cosine and sine

$$\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$$

The trigonometric identity above implies that

Given either $\cos\theta$ *or* $\sin\theta$*, we can use these equations to evaluate the other quantity if we also have enough information to choose between positive and negative values.*

$$\cos\theta = \pm\sqrt{1-\sin^2\theta}$$

and

$$\sin\theta = \pm\sqrt{1-\cos^2\theta},$$

with the choices between the plus and minus signs depending on the quadrant in which the radius corresponding to θ lies.

The equations above can be used, for example, to write $\tan\theta$ solely in terms of $\cos\theta$, as follows.

Example 1

Write $\tan\theta$ solely in terms of $\cos\theta$.

solution

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \pm\frac{\sqrt{1-\cos^2\theta}}{\cos\theta}$$

If both sides of the key trigonometric identity $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$ are divided by $\cos^2\theta$ and then we rewrite $\frac{\sin^2\theta}{\cos^2\theta}$ as $\tan^2\theta$, we get another useful identity:

$$1 + \tan^2\theta = \frac{1}{\cos^2\theta}.$$

"Pure mathematics is, in its way, the poetry of logical ideas."
–Albert Einstein

Using one of the three less common trigonometric functions, we could also write this identity in the form

$$1 + \tan^2\theta = \sec^2\theta,$$

where $\sec^2\theta$ denotes, of course, $(\sec\theta)^2$.

Simplifying a trigonometric expression often involves doing a bit of algebraic manipulation and using an appropriate trigonometric identity, as in the following example.

Example 2

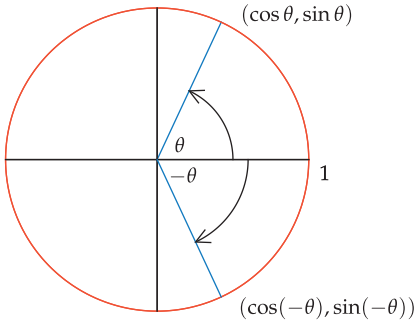
Simplify the expression $(\tan^2\theta)\left(\frac{1}{1-\cos\theta} + \frac{1}{1+\cos\theta}\right)$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}
(\tan^2\theta)\left(\frac{1}{1-\cos\theta} + \frac{1}{1+\cos\theta}\right) &= (\tan^2\theta)\left(\frac{(1+\cos\theta)+(1-\cos\theta)}{(1-\cos\theta)(1+\cos\theta)}\right) \\
&= (\tan^2\theta)\left(\frac{2}{1-\cos^2\theta}\right) \\
&= (\tan^2\theta)\left(\frac{2}{\sin^2\theta}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\sin^2\theta}{\cos^2\theta}\right)\left(\frac{2}{\sin^2\theta}\right) \\
&= \frac{2}{\cos^2\theta}
\end{aligned}$$

Trigonometric Identities for the Negative of an Angle

By the definitions of cosine and sine, the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ has coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$. Similarly, the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to $-\theta$ has coordinates $(\cos(-\theta), \sin(-\theta))$, as shown in the figure below.



Flipping the radius corresponding to θ across the horizontal axis gives the radius corresponding to −θ.

Each of the two radii in the figure above can be obtained by flipping the other radius across the horizontal axis. Thus the endpoints of the two radii in the figure above have the same first coordinate, and their second coordinates are the negative of each other. In other words, the figure above shows that

$$\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad \sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta.$$

An identity involving the tangent can often be derived from the corresponding identities for cosine and sine.

Using these equations and the definition of the tangent, we see that

$$\tan(-\theta) = \frac{\sin(-\theta)}{\cos(-\theta)} = \frac{-\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = -\tan\theta.$$

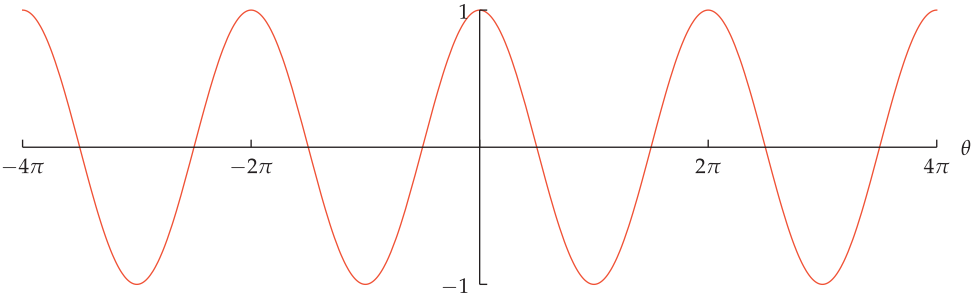
Collecting the three identities we have just derived gives the following.

Trigonometric identities with $-\theta$

$$\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$$
$$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta$$
$$\tan(-\theta) = -\tan\theta$$

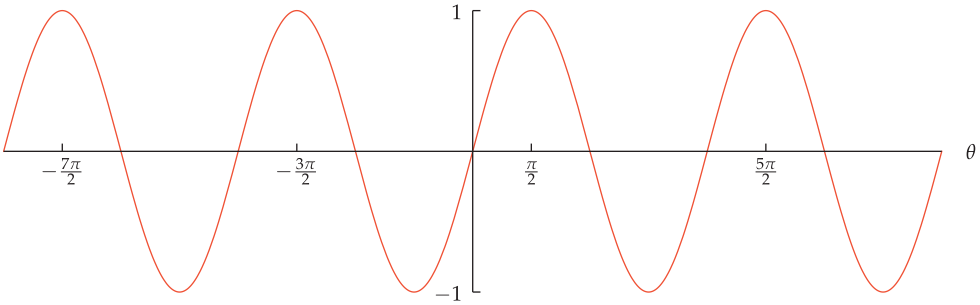
As we have just seen, the cosine of the negative of an angle is the same as the cosine of the angle. In other words, cosine is an even function (see Section 1.3 to review even functions). This explains why the graph of the cosine is symmetric about the vertical axis. Specifically, along with the typical point $(\theta, \cos\theta)$ on the graph of the cosine we also have the point $(-\theta, \cos(-\theta))$, which equals $(-\theta, \cos\theta)$.

We have previously seen this graph and the next one. Now we are looking at these graphs from the viewpoint of symmetry associated with even or odd functions.



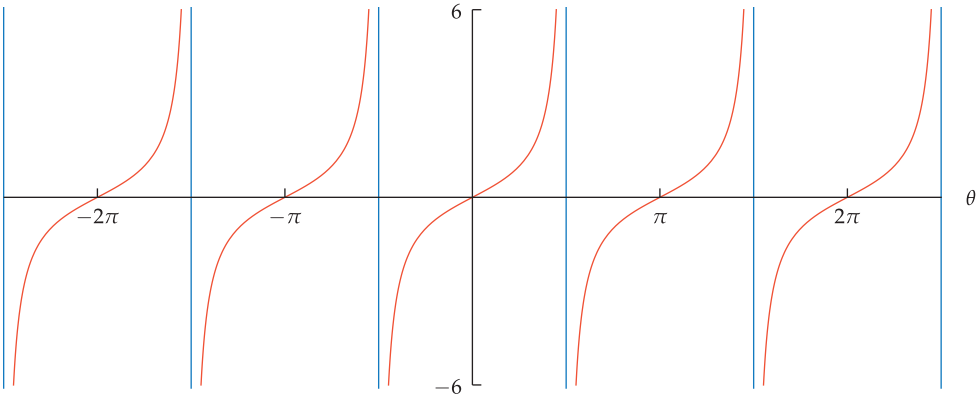
The graph of the even function cosine is symmetric about the vertical axis.

In contrast to the behavior of the cosine, the sine of the negative of an angle is the negative of the sine of the angle. In other words, sine is an odd function (see Section 1.3 to review odd functions). This explains why the graph of the sine is symmetric about the origin. Specifically, along with the typical point $(\theta, \sin\theta)$ on the graph of the sine we also have the point $(-\theta, \sin(-\theta))$, which equals $(-\theta, -\sin\theta)$.



The graph of the odd function sine is symmetric about the origin.

Similarly, the graph of the tangent is also symmetric about the origin because the tangent of the negative of an angle is the negative of the tangent of the angle. In other words, tangent is an odd function.



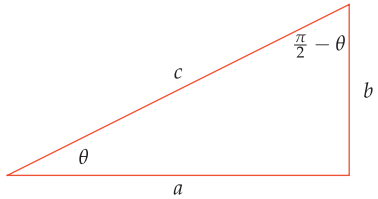
The blue lines are asymptotes of the graph, corresponding to odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (where the tangent is not defined).

The graph of the odd function tangent is symmetric about the origin.

Trigonometric Identities with $\frac{\pi}{2}$

Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, and consider a right triangle with an angle of θ radians. Because the angles of a triangle add up to π radians, the triangle's other acute angle is $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ radians, as shown in the figure below. If we were working in degrees rather than radians, then we would be stating that a right triangle with an angle of θ° also has an angle of $(90 - \theta)^\circ$.

A positive angle is called **acute** *if it is less than a right angle, which means less than $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians (or 90°).*



In a right triangle with an angle of θ radians, the other acute angle is $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ radians.

In the triangle above, let c denote the length of the hypotenuse, let a denote the length of the side adjacent to the angle θ, and let b denote the length of the side opposite the angle θ. Focusing on the angle θ, our characterization from the previous section of cosine, sine, and tangent in terms of right triangles shows that

$$\cos\theta = \frac{a}{c} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta = \frac{b}{c} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}.$$

Now focusing instead on the angle $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ in the triangle above, our right-triangle characterization of the trigonometric functions shows that

$$\cos\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \frac{b}{c} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \frac{a}{c} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \frac{a}{b}.$$

Comparing the last two sets of displayed equations gives the following identities.

Trigonometric identities with $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$

$$\cos\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \sin\theta$$

$$\sin\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \cos\theta$$

$$\tan\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \frac{1}{\tan\theta}$$

If θ is an integer multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$, then either $\tan\theta$ or $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$ is undefined.

We derived the identities above under the assumption that $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, but the first two identities hold for all values of θ. The third identity above holds for all values of θ except the integer multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

Rewriting the identities above in terms of degrees gives the following.

These identities imply, for example, that

$\cos 81^\circ = \sin 9^\circ$,

$\sin 81^\circ = \cos 9^\circ$,

$\tan 81^\circ = \dfrac{1}{\tan 9^\circ}$.

Trigonometric identities with $(90 - \theta)^\circ$

$$\cos(90 - \theta)^\circ = \sin\theta^\circ$$

$$\sin(90 - \theta)^\circ = \cos\theta^\circ$$

$$\tan(90 - \theta)^\circ = \frac{1}{\tan\theta^\circ}$$

Combining two or more trigonometric identities often leads to useful new identities, as shown in the following example.

Example 3

Show that $\cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \sin\theta$.

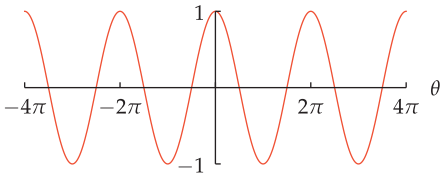
solution Suppose θ is any real number. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\left(\theta - \tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \cos\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) \\ &= \sin\theta,\end{aligned}$$

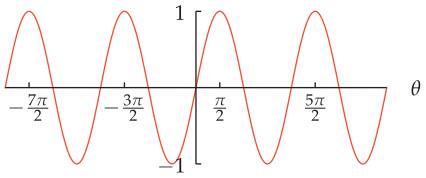
where the first equality above comes from the identity $\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$ (with θ replaced by $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$) and the second equality is one of the identities derived above.

The equation $\cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \sin\theta$ implies that the graph of sine is obtained by shifting the graph of cosine right by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ units, as shown below.

The graphs of cosine and sine have the same shape, differing only by a shift of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ units.



The graph of cosine.



The graph of sine.

See Section 1.3 to review horizontal transformations of a function.

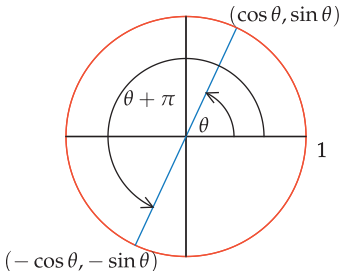
Trigonometric Identities Involving a Multiple of π

Consider a typical angle θ radians and also the angle $\theta + \pi$ radians. Because π radians (which equals 180°) is a rotation halfway around the circle, the radius of the unit circle corresponding to $\theta + \pi$ radians forms a line with the radius corresponding to θ radians, as shown here.

The endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ has coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$. The radius corresponding to $\theta + \pi$ lies directly opposite the radius corresponding to θ. Thus the endpoint of the radius corresponding to $\theta + \pi$ has coordinates $(-\cos\theta, -\sin\theta)$, as shown in the figure.

By the definition of the cosine and sine, the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to $\theta + \pi$ has coordinates $\big(\cos(\theta+\pi), \sin(\theta+\pi)\big)$. Thus the figure shows that $\big(\cos(\theta+\pi), \sin(\theta+\pi)\big) = (-\cos\theta, -\sin\theta)$. This implies that

$$\cos(\theta+\pi) = -\cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad \sin(\theta+\pi) = -\sin\theta.$$



This figure shows why $\cos(\theta+\pi) = -\cos\theta$ *and* $\sin(\theta+\pi) = -\sin\theta$.

Recall that $\tan\theta$ equals the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ. Similarly, $\tan(\theta+\pi)$ equals the slope of the radius corresponding to $\theta + \pi$. However, these two radii lie on the same line, as shown in the figure above. Thus these two radii have the same slope. Hence

$$\tan(\theta+\pi) = \tan\theta.$$

Another way to reach the same conclusion is to use the definition of the tangent as the ratio of the sine and cosine, along with the identities above:

$$\tan(\theta+\pi) = \frac{\sin(\theta+\pi)}{\cos(\theta+\pi)} = \frac{-\sin\theta}{-\cos\theta} = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \tan\theta.$$

Collecting the trigonometric identities involving $\theta + \pi$, we have the following results.

Trigonometric identities with $\theta + \pi$

$$\cos(\theta+\pi) = -\cos\theta$$
$$\sin(\theta+\pi) = -\sin\theta$$
$$\tan(\theta+\pi) = \tan\theta$$

The first two identities hold for all values of θ. *The third identity holds for all values of* θ *except odd multiples of* $\frac{\pi}{2}$, *which must be excluded because* $\tan(\theta+\pi)$ *and* $\tan\theta$ *are undefined for such angles.*

Example 4

Using the result (which we will derive in Problem 106 in Section 5.5) that

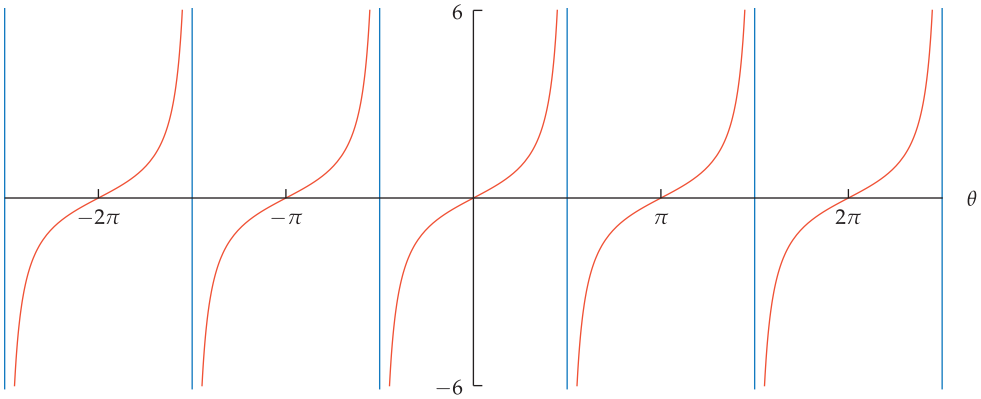
$$\sin\tfrac{\pi}{10} = \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4},$$

find an exact expression for $\sin\frac{11\pi}{10}$.

solution

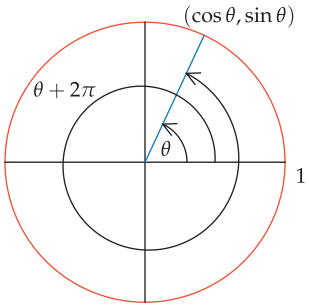
$$\begin{aligned}\sin\tfrac{11\pi}{10} &= \sin(\tfrac{\pi}{10}+\pi)\\ &= -\sin\tfrac{\pi}{10}\\ &= -\Big(\frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4}\Big)\\ &= \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{4}\end{aligned}$$

The trigonometric identity $\tan(\theta + \pi) = \tan\theta$ explains the periodic nature of the graph of the tangent, with the graph repeating the same shape after each interval of length π. This behavior is demonstrated in the graph below.



This graph has been vertically truncated to show only values of the tangent that have absolute value less than 6. The blue lines are asymptotes of the graph.

The graph of the tangent function. Because $\tan(\theta + \pi) = \tan\theta$, *this graph repeats the same shape after each interval of length* π.



Now we consider a typical angle θ radians and also the angle $\theta + 2\pi$. Because 2π radians (which equals 360°) is a complete rotation all the way around the circle, the radius of the unit circle corresponding to $\theta + 2\pi$ radians is the same as the radius corresponding to θ radians, as shown in the figure here.

By definition of the cosine and sine, the endpoint of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ has coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$, as shown here. Because the radius corresponding to $\theta + 2\pi$ is the same as the radius corresponding to θ, we see that $\big(\cos(\theta + 2\pi), \sin(\theta + 2\pi)\big) = (\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$. This implies that

$$\cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad \sin(\theta + 2\pi) = \sin\theta.$$

Recall that $\tan\theta$ equals the slope of the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ. Similarly, $\tan(\theta + 2\pi)$ equals the slope of the radius corresponding to $\theta + 2\pi$. However, these two radii are the same. Thus

$$\tan(\theta + 2\pi) = \tan\theta.$$

Another way to reach the same conclusion is to use the definition of the tangent as the ratio of the sine and cosine, along with the identities above:

$$\tan(\theta + 2\pi) = \frac{\sin(\theta + 2\pi)}{\cos(\theta + 2\pi)} = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \tan\theta.$$

Collecting the trigonometric identities involving $\theta + 2\pi$, we have the following results.

Trigonometric identities with $\theta + 2\pi$

$$\cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta$$

$$\sin(\theta + 2\pi) = \sin\theta$$

$$\tan(\theta + 2\pi) = \tan\theta$$

The first two identities hold for all values of θ. *The third identity holds for all values of* θ *except odd multiples of* $\frac{\pi}{2}$, *which are excluded because* $\tan(\theta + 2\pi)$ *and* $\tan\theta$ *are undefined for such angles.*

The trigonometric identities $\cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta$ and $\sin(\theta + 2\pi) = \sin\theta$ explain the periodic nature of the graphs of cosine and sine, with the graphs repeating the same shape after each interval of length 2π.

In the last box, 2π could be replaced by any even multiple of π. For example, the radius corresponding to $\theta + 6\pi$ is obtained by starting with the radius corresponding to θ and then making three complete rotations around the circle, ending up with the same radius. Thus $\cos(\theta + 6\pi) = \cos\theta$, $\sin(\theta + 6\pi) = \sin\theta$, and $\tan(\theta + 6\pi) = \tan\theta$.

Similarly, in our trigonometric formulas for $\theta + \pi$, we could replace π by any odd multiple of π. For example, the radius corresponding to $\theta + 5\pi$ is obtained by starting with the radius corresponding to θ and then making two-and-one-half rotations around the circle, ending up with the opposite radius. Thus

$$\cos(\theta + 5\pi) = -\cos\theta, \quad \sin(\theta + 5\pi) = -\sin\theta, \quad \tan(\theta + 5\pi) = \tan\theta.$$

The trigonometric identities involving an integer multiple of π can be summarized as follows.

Euclid explaining geometry (from The School of Athens, *painted by Raphael around 1510).*

Trigonometric identities with $\theta + n\pi$

$$\cos(\theta + n\pi) = \begin{cases} \cos\theta & \text{if } n \text{ is an even integer} \\ -\cos\theta & \text{if } n \text{ is an odd integer} \end{cases}$$

$$\sin(\theta + n\pi) = \begin{cases} \sin\theta & \text{if } n \text{ is an even integer} \\ -\sin\theta & \text{if } n \text{ is an odd integer} \end{cases}$$

$$\tan(\theta + n\pi) = \tan\theta \quad \text{if } n \text{ is an integer}$$

The first two identities hold for all values of θ. The third identity holds for all values of θ except odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$; these values are excluded because $\tan(\theta + n\pi)$ and $\tan\theta$ are undefined for such angles.

Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\cos^2\theta$ does not equal $\cos(\theta^2)$.

1 For $\theta = 7°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos^2\theta$ (b) $\cos(\theta^2)$

2 For $\theta = 5$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos^2\theta$ (b) $\cos(\theta^2)$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\sin^2\theta$ does not equal $\sin(\theta^2)$.

3 For $\theta = 4$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin^2\theta$ (b) $\sin(\theta^2)$

4 For $\theta = -8°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin^2\theta$ (b) $\sin(\theta^2)$

In Exercises 5–38, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities, given that

$$\cos\frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin\frac{\pi}{8} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}.$$

[These values for $\cos\frac{\pi}{12}$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{8}$ will be derived in Examples 3 and 4 in Section 5.5.]

5 $\cos(-\frac{\pi}{12})$

6 $\sin(-\frac{\pi}{8})$

7 $\sin\frac{\pi}{12}$

8 $\cos\frac{\pi}{8}$

9 $\sin(-\frac{\pi}{12})$

10 $\cos(-\frac{\pi}{8})$

11 $\tan\frac{\pi}{12}$

12 $\tan\frac{\pi}{8}$

13 $\tan(-\frac{\pi}{12})$

14 $\tan(-\frac{\pi}{8})$

15 $\cos\frac{25\pi}{12}$

16 $\cos\frac{17\pi}{8}$

17 $\sin\frac{25\pi}{12}$

18 $\sin\frac{17\pi}{8}$

19 $\tan\frac{25\pi}{12}$

20 $\tan\frac{17\pi}{8}$

21 $\cos\frac{13\pi}{12}$

22 $\cos\frac{9\pi}{8}$

23 $\sin\frac{13\pi}{12}$

24 $\sin\frac{9\pi}{8}$

25 $\tan\frac{13\pi}{12}$

26 $\tan\frac{9\pi}{8}$

27 $\cos\frac{5\pi}{12}$

28 $\cos\frac{3\pi}{8}$

29 $\cos(-\frac{5\pi}{12})$

30 $\cos(-\frac{3\pi}{8})$

31 $\sin\frac{5\pi}{12}$

32 $\sin\frac{3\pi}{8}$

33 $\sin(-\frac{5\pi}{12})$

34 $\sin(-\frac{3\pi}{8})$

35 $\tan\frac{5\pi}{12}$

36 $\tan\frac{3\pi}{8}$

37 $\tan(-\frac{5\pi}{12})$

38 $\tan(-\frac{3\pi}{8})$

39 Find the smallest number θ larger than 2π such that $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

40 Find the smallest number θ larger than 5π such that $\tan\theta = 1$.

41 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\big(\cos(x+\pi)\big)(\cos x) + \frac{1}{2} = 0.$$

42 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\sin(x+\pi) - \sin x = 1.$$

43 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\tan x = 3\tan\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - x\right).$$

44 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$(\tan x)\left(1 + 2\tan\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - x\right)\right) = 2 - \sqrt{3}.$$

Suppose u and v are in the interval $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$, with

$$\tan u = -2 \quad \textit{and} \quad \tan v = -3.$$

In Exercises 45–72, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities.

45 $\tan(-u)$
46 $\tan(-v)$
47 $\cos u$
48 $\cos v$
49 $\cos(-u)$
50 $\cos(-v)$
51 $\sin u$
52 $\sin v$
53 $\sin(-u)$
54 $\sin(-v)$
55 $\cos(u + 4\pi)$
56 $\cos(v - 6\pi)$
57 $\sin(u - 6\pi)$
58 $\sin(v + 10\pi)$
59 $\tan(u + 8\pi)$
60 $\tan(v - 4\pi)$
61 $\cos(u - 3\pi)$
62 $\cos(v + 5\pi)$
63 $\sin(u + 5\pi)$
64 $\sin(v - 7\pi)$
65 $\tan(u - 9\pi)$
66 $\tan(v + 3\pi)$
67 $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right)$
68 $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - v\right)$
69 $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right)$
70 $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - v\right)$
71 $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right)$
72 $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - v\right)$

Problems

73 Explain why the graph of $\cos^2 x$ can be obtaining by flipping the graph of $\sin^2 x$ in the horizontal axis and then shifting up 1 unit.

74 Show that

$$(\cos\theta + \sin\theta)^2 = 1 + 2\cos\theta\sin\theta$$

for every number θ.
[*Expressions such as* $\cos\theta\sin\theta$ *mean* $(\cos\theta)(\sin\theta)$, *not* $\cos(\theta\sin\theta)$.]

75 Show that

$$\frac{\sin x}{1 - \cos x} = \frac{1 + \cos x}{\sin x}$$

for every number x that is not an integer multiple of π.

76 (a) Show that

$$x^3 + x^2y + xy^2 + y^3 = (x^2 + y^2)(x + y)$$

for all numbers x and y.

(b) Show that

$$\cos^3\theta + \cos^2\theta\sin\theta + \cos\theta\sin^2\theta + \sin^3\theta = \cos\theta + \sin\theta$$

for every number θ.

77 Show that

$$\cos^4 u + 2\cos^2 u\sin^2 u + \sin^4 u = 1$$

for every number u.

78 Simplify the expression

$$(\tan\theta)\left(\frac{1}{1 - \cos\theta} - \frac{1}{1 + \cos\theta}\right).$$

79 Show that

$$\sin^2\theta = \frac{\tan^2\theta}{1 + \tan^2\theta}$$

for all numbers θ except odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

80 Show that

$$|\cos u| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2 u}}$$

for all numbers u except odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

81 Find a formula for $\tan^2\theta$ solely in terms of $\sin^2\theta$.

82 Suppose $0 < u < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin u = \frac{\sqrt{7}+1}{4}$. Show that $\cos u = \frac{\sqrt{7}-1}{4}$.

83 Explain why $\sin 3^\circ + \sin 357^\circ = 0$.

84 Explain why $\cos 85^\circ + \cos 95^\circ = 0$.

85 Pretend that you are living in the time before calculators and computers existed, and that you have a table showing the cosines and sines of 1°, 2°, 3°, and so on, up to the cosine and sine of 45°. Explain how you would find the cosine and sine of 71°, which are beyond the range of your table.

86 Suppose n is an integer. Find formulas for $\sec(\theta + n\pi)$, $\csc(\theta + n\pi)$, and $\cot(\theta + n\pi)$ in terms of $\sec\theta$, $\csc\theta$, and $\cot\theta$.

87 Restate all the results in boxes in the subsection on *Trigonometric Identities Involving a Multiple of* π in terms of degrees instead of in terms of radians.

88 Show that

$$\cos(\pi - \theta) = -\cos\theta$$

for every angle θ.

89 Show that

$$\tan\left(\theta + \tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) = -\frac{1}{\tan\theta}$$

for every angle θ that is not an integer multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Interpret this result in terms of the characterization of the slopes of perpendicular lines.

90 Show that

$$\sin(\pi - \theta) = \sin\theta$$

for every angle θ.

91 Show that

$$\cos\left(x + \tfrac{\pi}{2}\right) = -\sin x$$

for every number x.

92 Show that $\sin\left(t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \cos t$ for every number t.

93 Explain why $|\cos(x + n\pi)| = |\cos x|$ for every number x and every integer n.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\cos^2\theta$ does not equal $\cos(\theta^2)$.

1 For $\theta = 7°$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\cos^2\theta$ (b) $\cos(\theta^2)$

solution

(a) Using a calculator working in degrees, we have

$$\cos^2 7° = (\cos 7°)^2 \approx (0.992546)^2 \approx 0.985148.$$

(b) Note that $7^2 = 49$. Using a calculator working in degrees, we have

$$\cos 49° \approx 0.656059.$$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\sin^2\theta$ does not equal $\sin(\theta^2)$.

3 For $\theta = 4$ radians, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\sin^2\theta$ (b) $\sin(\theta^2)$

solution

(a) Using a calculator working in radians, we have

$$\sin^2 4 = (\sin 4)^2 \approx (-0.756802)^2 \approx 0.57275.$$

(b) Note that $4^2 = 16$. Using a calculator working in radians, we have

$$\sin 16 \approx -0.287903.$$

In Exercises 5–38, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities, given that

$$\cos\frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin\frac{\pi}{8} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}.$$

5 $\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$

solution

$$\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right) = \cos\frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}$$

7 $\sin\frac{\pi}{12}$

solution We know that

$$\cos^2\frac{\pi}{12} + \sin^2\frac{\pi}{12} = 1.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\sin^2\frac{\pi}{12} &= 1 - \cos^2\frac{\pi}{12} \\ &= 1 - \left(\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}\right)^2 \\ &= 1 - \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{4} \\ &= \frac{2-\sqrt{3}}{4}.\end{aligned}$$

Because $\sin\frac{\pi}{12} > 0$, taking square roots of both sides of the equation above gives

$$\sin\frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}.$$

9 $\sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$

solution

$$\sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right) = -\sin\frac{\pi}{12} = -\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}$$

11 $\tan\frac{\pi}{12}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\tan\frac{\pi}{12} &= \frac{\sin\frac{\pi}{12}}{\cos\frac{\pi}{12}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}} \\ &= \frac{2-\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{4-3}} \\ &= 2-\sqrt{3}\end{aligned}$$

13 $\tan\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$

solution

$$\tan\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right) = -\tan\frac{\pi}{12} = -(2-\sqrt{3}) = \sqrt{3}-2$$

15 $\cos\frac{25\pi}{12}$

solution Because $\frac{25\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{12} + 2\pi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\frac{25\pi}{12} &= \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{12} + 2\pi\right) \\ &= \cos\frac{\pi}{12} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

17 $\sin\frac{25\pi}{12}$

solution Because $\frac{25\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{12} + 2\pi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sin\frac{25\pi}{12} &= \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{12} + 2\pi\right) \\ &= \sin\frac{\pi}{12} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

19 $\tan \frac{25\pi}{12}$

solution Because $\frac{25\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{12} + 2\pi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\tan \frac{25\pi}{12} &= \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{12} + 2\pi\right)\\ &= \tan \frac{\pi}{12}\\ &= 2 - \sqrt{3}.\end{aligned}$$

21 $\cos \frac{13\pi}{12}$

solution Because $\frac{13\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{12} + \pi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \frac{13\pi}{12} &= \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{12} + \pi\right)\\ &= -\cos \frac{\pi}{12}\\ &= -\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

23 $\sin \frac{13\pi}{12}$

solution Because $\frac{13\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{12} + \pi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sin \frac{13\pi}{12} &= \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{12} + \pi\right)\\ &= -\sin \frac{\pi}{12}\\ &= -\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

25 $\tan \frac{13\pi}{12}$

solution Because $\frac{13\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{12} + \pi$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\tan \frac{13\pi}{12} &= \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{12} + \pi\right)\\ &= \tan \frac{\pi}{12}\\ &= 2 - \sqrt{3}.\end{aligned}$$

27 $\cos \frac{5\pi}{12}$

solution

$$\cos \frac{5\pi}{12} = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) = \sin \frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}$$

29 $\cos\left(-\frac{5\pi}{12}\right)$

solution

$$\cos\left(-\frac{5\pi}{12}\right) = \cos \frac{5\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}$$

31 $\sin \frac{5\pi}{12}$

solution

$$\sin \frac{5\pi}{12} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{5\pi}{12}\right) = \cos \frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}$$

33 $\sin\left(-\frac{5\pi}{12}\right)$

solution

$$\sin\left(-\frac{5\pi}{12}\right) = -\sin \frac{5\pi}{12} = -\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}$$

35 $\tan \frac{5\pi}{12}$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\tan \frac{5\pi}{12} &= \frac{1}{\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{5\pi}{12}\right)}\\ &= \frac{1}{\tan \frac{\pi}{12}}\\ &= \frac{1}{2-\sqrt{3}}\\ &= \frac{1}{2-\sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2+\sqrt{3}}\\ &= \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{4-3}\\ &= 2 + \sqrt{3}\end{aligned}$$

37 $\tan\left(-\frac{5\pi}{12}\right)$

solution

$$\tan\left(-\frac{5\pi}{12}\right) = -\tan \frac{5\pi}{12} = -2 - \sqrt{3}$$

39 Find the smallest number θ larger than 2π such that $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

solution Because $\sin \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$, we have $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi\right) = \frac{1}{2}$. A moment's thought shows that no number between 2π and $\frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi$ has sine equal to $\frac{1}{2}$. Thus $\frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi$, which equals $\frac{13\pi}{6}$, is our desired number.

41 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\big(\cos(x+\pi)\big)(\cos x) + \frac{1}{2} = 0.$$

solution Using the identity for $\cos(x+\pi)$, we have

$$-\cos^2 x + \frac{1}{2} = 0.$$

Thus we seek the smallest positive number x such that $\cos x = \pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$. Hence $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

43 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\tan x = 3\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right).$$

solution Using the identity for $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$, rewrite the equation above as

$$\tan x = \frac{3}{\tan x},$$

which can be rewritten as $\tan^2 x = 3$. Thus $\tan x = \pm\sqrt{3}$. The smallest positive number x satisfying this last equation is $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

Suppose u and v are in the interval $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi\right)$, with

$$\tan u = -2 \quad \textit{and} \quad \tan v = -3.$$

In Exercises 45–72, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities.

45 $\tan(-u)$

solution $\tan(-u) = -\tan u = -(-2) = 2$

47 $\cos u$

solution We know that

$$-2 = \tan u = \frac{\sin u}{\cos u}.$$

To find $\cos u$, make the substitution $\sin u = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 u}$ in the equation above (this substitution is valid because $\frac{\pi}{2} < u < \pi$, which implies that $\sin u > 0$), getting

$$-2 = \frac{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 u}}{\cos u}.$$

Now square both sides of the equation above, then multiply both sides by $\cos^2 u$ and rearrange to get the equation

$$5\cos^2 u = 1.$$

Thus $\cos u = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ (the possibility that $\cos u$ equals $\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ is eliminated because $\frac{\pi}{2} < u < \pi$, which implies that $\cos u < 0$). This can be written as $\cos u = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$.

49 $\cos(-u)$

solution $\cos(-u) = \cos u = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$

51 $\sin u$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin u &= \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 u} \\ &= \sqrt{1 - \frac{1}{5}} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{4}{5}} \\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} \\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}\end{aligned}$$

53 $\sin(-u)$

solution $\sin(-u) = -\sin u = -\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}$

55 $\cos(u + 4\pi)$

solution $\cos(u + 4\pi) = \cos u = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$

57 $\sin(u - 6\pi)$

solution $\sin(u - 6\pi) = \sin u = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}$

59 $\tan(u + 8\pi)$

solution $\tan(u + 8\pi) = \tan u = -2$

61 $\cos(u - 3\pi)$

solution $\cos(u - 3\pi) = -\cos u = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$

63 $\sin(u + 5\pi)$

solution $\sin(u + 5\pi) = -\sin u = -\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}$

65 $\tan(u - 9\pi)$

solution $\tan(u - 9\pi) = \tan u = -2$

67 $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right)$

solution $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right) = \sin u = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}$

69 $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right)$

solution $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right) = \cos u = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$

71 $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right)$

solution $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right) = \frac{1}{\tan u} = -\frac{1}{2}$

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Explain what it means for an angle to be negative.
- Explain how an angle can be larger than 360°.
- Convert angles from radians to degrees.
- Convert angles from degrees to radians.
- Compute the length of a circular arc.
- Compute the cosine, sine, and tangent of any multiple of 30° or 45° ($\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians or $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians).
- Explain why $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$ for every angle θ.
- Give the domain and range of the trigonometric functions.
- Compute $\cos\theta$, $\sin\theta$, and $\tan\theta$ if given just one of these quantities and the location of the corresponding radius.
- Compute the cosine, sine, and tangent of any angle of a right triangle if given the lengths of two sides of the triangle.
- Compute the lengths of all three sides of a right triangle if given any angle (in addition to the right angle) and the length of any side.
- Use the basic trigonometric identities involving $-\theta$, $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$, $\theta + \pi$, and $\theta + 2\pi$.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Find all points where the line through the origin with slope 5 intersects the unit circle.

2 Sketch a unit circle and the radius of that circle corresponding to $-70°$.

3 Sketch a unit circle and the radius of that circle corresponding to 440°.

4 Explain how to convert an angle from degrees to radians.

5 Convert 27° to radians.

6 Explain how to convert an angle from radians to degrees.

7 Convert $\frac{7\pi}{9}$ radians to degrees.

8 Give the domain and range of each of the following functions: cosine, sine, and tangent.

9 How many distinct values of θ in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ satisfy the equation $\sin\theta = 0.4$?

10 Find three distinct angles, expressed in degrees, whose cosine equals $\frac{1}{2}$.

11 Find three distinct angles, expressed in radians, whose sine equals $-\frac{1}{2}$.

For Questions 12–14, assume the earth has a circular orbit around the sun and that the distance from the earth to the sun is 92.956 million miles (the actual orbit is an ellipse rather than a circle, but it is very close to a circle). Also assume the earth orbits the sun once every 365.24 days.

12 How far does the earth travel in a week?

13 How far does the earth travel in the month of July?

14 What is the speed of the earth due to its rotation around the sun?

15 Find three distinct angles, expressed in radians, whose tangent equals 1.

16 Explain why $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$ for every angle θ.

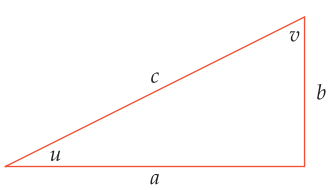
17 Explain why $\cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta$ for every angle θ.

18 Suppose $\frac{\pi}{2} < x < \pi$ and $\tan x = -4$. Evaluate $\cos x$ and $\sin x$.

19 Find the smallest number t such that

$$\cos(2^t) = 0.$$

Use the right triangle below for Questions 20–23. This triangle is not drawn to scale corresponding to the data in the questions.



20 Suppose $a = 4$ and $b = 9$. Evaluate

(a) c (d) $\tan u$ (g) $\tan v$.

(b) $\cos u$ (e) $\cos v$

(c) $\sin u$ (f) $\sin v$

21 Suppose $a = 3$ and $c = 8$. Evaluate

(a) b (d) $\tan u$ (g) $\tan v$.

(b) $\cos u$ (e) $\cos v$

(c) $\sin u$ (f) $\sin v$

22 Suppose $b = 4$ and $u = 51°$. Evaluate

(a) a (b) c.

23 Suppose $u = 28°$. Evaluate

(a) $\cos v$ (b) $\sin v$ (c) $\tan v$.

24 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\cos\theta = \frac{3}{8}$. Evaluate $\cos(-\theta)$.

25 Suppose x is a number such that $\sin x = \frac{4}{7}$. Evaluate $\sin(-x)$.

26 Suppose y is a number such that $\tan y = -\frac{2}{9}$. Evaluate $\tan(-y)$.

27 Suppose u is a number such that $\cos u = -\frac{2}{5}$. Evaluate $\cos(u + \pi)$.

28 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\tan\theta = \frac{5}{6}$. Evaluate $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$.

29 Find a formula for $\sin\theta$ solely in terms of $\tan\theta$.

30 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < 0$ and $\cos x = \frac{5}{13}$. Evaluate $\sin x$ and $\tan x$.

31 Show that

$$\frac{\sin x + \sin y}{\cos x + \cos y} = \frac{\cos x - \cos y}{\sin y - \sin x}$$

for all numbers x and y such that neither denominator is 0.

32 Explain why $\tan 20° + \tan 340° = 0$.

33 Explain why

$$\log(\cos\theta) < 0$$

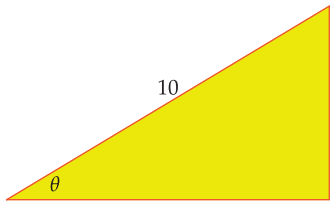
for all numbers θ in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

34 Explain why the equation

$$\big(\cos(x + \pi)\big)\cos x = \frac{1}{5}$$

has no solutions.

35 Explain why the right triangle below has area $50(\cos\theta)(\sin\theta)$.



Chapter
5

A loonie, the 11-sided Canadian one-dollar coin. In this chapter you will learn how to use trigonometry to compute the area of the face of a loonie (see Example 5 in Section 5.3).

Trigonometric Algebra and Geometry

This chapter begins by introducing the inverse trigonometric functions. These tremendously useful functions allow us to find angles from measurements of lengths. We will pay some attention to the inverse trigonometric identities, which will strengthen our understanding of these functions.

Then we will turn our attention to area, showing how trigonometry can be used to compute areas of various regions. We will also derive some important approximations of the trigonometric functions.

The law of sines and the law of cosines let us use trigonometry to compute all the angles and the lengths of the sides of a triangle given only some of this information. We will see spectacular applications as these results allow us to compute the distance to far-away objects that we cannot physically reach.

The double-angle and half-angle formulas for the trigonometric functions will allow us to compute exact expressions for quantities such as $\sin 18^\circ$ and $\cos \frac{\pi}{32}$ (see Problems 106 and 109 in Section 5.5 for these beautiful expressions). The addition and subtraction formulas for the trigonometric functions provide another group of useful identities.

This chapter concludes with an investigation into transformations of trigonometric functions, which are used to model periodic events. Redoing function transformations in the context of trigonometric functions will also help us review the results from Chapter 1 on how function transformations change graphs.

5.1 Inverse Trigonometric Functions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute values of $\cos^{-1}$, $\sin^{-1}$, and $\tan^{-1}$;
- sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to the arccosine, arcsine, and arctangent of a number;
- use the inverse trigonometric functions to find angles in a right triangle, given the lengths of two sides;
- find the angles in an isosceles triangle, given the lengths of the sides;
- use $\tan^{-1}$ to find the angle a line with given slope makes with the horizontal axis.

Several of the most important functions in mathematics are defined as the inverse functions of familiar functions. For example, the cube root is defined as the inverse function of x^3, and the logarithm base 3 is defined as the inverse function of 3^x.

The inverse trigonometric functions provide remarkably useful tools for solving many problems.

In this section, we will define the inverses of the cosine, sine, and tangent functions. These inverse functions are called the arccosine, the arcsine, and the arctangent. Neither cosine nor sine nor tangent is one-to-one when defined on its usual domain. Thus we will need to restrict the domains of these functions to obtain one-to-one functions that have inverses.

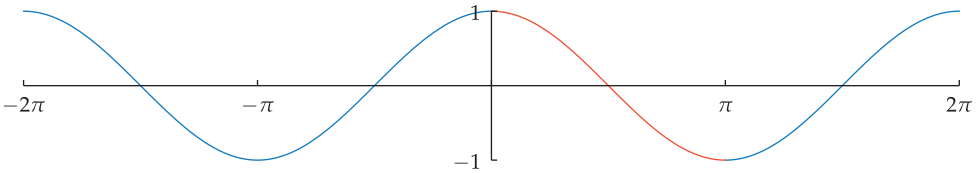
The Arccosine Function

As usual, we will assume throughout this section that all angles are measured in radians unless explicitly stated otherwise.

Recall that a function is called one-to-one if it assigns distinct values to distinct numbers in its domain. The cosine function, whose domain is the entire real line, is not one-to-one because, for example, $\cos 0 = \cos 2\pi$.

Recall also that only one-to-one functions have inverses (see Section 1.5 to review one-to-one functions and their inverses). Thus the cosine function does not have an inverse.

If we restrict cosine to the orange part of the graph, we get a function that is one-to-one and thus has an inverse.

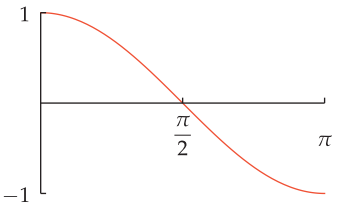


The graph of cosine on the interval $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$. This graph fails the horizontal line test—there are horizontal lines that intersect the graph in more than one point. Thus the cosine function is not one-to-one.

We faced a similar dilemma when we wanted to define the square root function as the inverse of the function x^2. The domain of the function x^2 is the entire real line. This function is not one-to-one; thus it does not have an inverse. We solved this problem by restricting the domain of x^2 to $[0, \infty)$; the resulting function is one-to-one, and its inverse is called the square root function. Roughly speaking, we say that the square root function is the inverse of x^2.

We will follow a similar process with the cosine. To decide how to restrict the domain of the cosine, we start by declaring that 0 should be in the domain of the restricted function. Looking at the graph above of cosine, we see that starting at 0 and moving to the right, π is the farthest we can go while staying within an interval on which cosine is one-to-one. If $[0, \pi]$ will be in the domain of our restricted cosine function, then we cannot move at all to the left from 0 and still have a one-to-one function. Thus $[0, \pi]$ is the natural domain to choose.

If we restrict the domain of cosine to $[0, \pi]$, we obtain the one-to-one function whose graph is shown here. The inverse of this function is called the arccosine, which is abbreviated as $\cos^{-1}$. Here is the formal definition.



The graph of cosine on the interval $[0, \pi]$.

Arccosine

Suppose $-1 \le t \le 1$.

- The **arccosine** of t, denoted $\cos^{-1} t$, is the angle in $[0, \pi]$ whose cosine equals t.

Short version:

- $\cos^{-1} t = \theta$ means $\cos\theta = t$ and $0 \le \theta \le \pi$.

In defining $\cos^{-1} t$, we must restrict t to be in the interval $[-1, 1]$ because otherwise there is no angle whose cosine equals t.

Example 1

(a) Evaluate $\cos^{-1} 0$.

(b) Evaluate $\cos^{-1} 1$.

(c) Explain why the expression $\cos^{-1} 2$ makes no sense.

solution

(a) We have $\cos^{-1} 0 = \frac{\pi}{2}$, because $\cos\frac{\pi}{2} = 0$ and $\frac{\pi}{2}$ is in the interval $[0, \pi]$.

(b) We have $\cos^{-1} 1 = 0$, because $\cos 0 = 1$ and 0 is in the interval $[0, \pi]$.

(c) The expression $\cos^{-1} 2$ makes no sense because there is no angle whose cosine equals 2.

$\cos^{-1} t$ is not equal to $\frac{1}{\cos t}$.

Do not confuse $\cos^{-1} t$ with $(\cos t)^{-1}$. Confusion can arise due to inconsistency in common notation. For example, $\cos^2 t$ is indeed equal to $(\cos t)^2$. However, we defined $\cos^n t$ to equal $(\cos t)^n$ only when n is a positive integer (see Section 4.6). This restriction concerning $\cos^n t$ was made precisely so that $\cos^{-1} t$ could be defined with $\cos^{-1}$ interpreted as an inverse function.

The notation $\cos^{-1}$ to denote the arccosine function is consistent with our notation f^{-1} to denote the inverse of a function f. Even here a bit of explanation helps. The usual domain of the cosine function is the real line. However, when we write $\cos^{-1}$ we do not mean the inverse of the usual cosine function (which has no inverse because it is not one-to-one). Instead, $\cos^{-1}$ means the inverse of the cosine function whose domain is restricted to the interval $[0, \pi]$.

Some books use the notation $\arccos t$ instead of $\cos^{-1} t$.

The three different solutions to the three parts of the next example show why you need to pay careful attention to the meaning of notation.

Example 2

For $x = 0.2$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\cos^{-1} x$ (b) $(\cos x)^{-1}$ (c) $\cos(x^{-1})$

solution When checking the results below on your calculator, be sure that it is set to work in radians rather than degrees.

(a) $\cos^{-1} 0.2 \approx 1.36944$ (note that $\cos 1.36944 \approx 0.2$ and 1.36944 is in $[0, \pi]$)

(b) $(\cos 0.2)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\cos 0.2} \approx 1.02034$

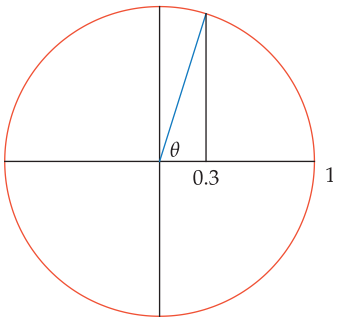
(c) $\cos(0.2^{-1}) = \cos\frac{1}{0.2} = \cos 5 \approx 0.283662$

The next example will help solidify your understanding of the arccosine function.

Example 3

Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to the angle $\cos^{-1} 0.3$.

solution We seek an angle in $[0, \pi]$ whose cosine equals 0.3. This means that the first coordinate of the endpoint of the corresponding radius will equal 0.3. Thus we start with 0.3 on the horizontal axis, as shown here, and extend a line upward until it intersects the unit circle. That point of intersection is the endpoint of the radius corresponding to the angle $\cos^{-1} 0.3$, as shown here.



Here $\theta = \cos^{-1} 0.3$, or equivalently $\cos\theta = 0.3$.

A calculator shows that

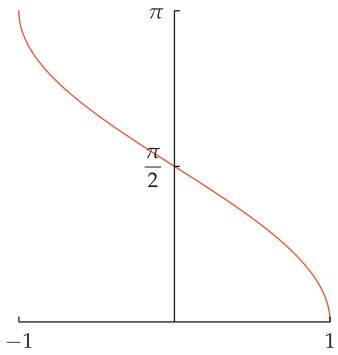
$$\cos^{-1} 0.3 \approx 1.266.$$

Thus the angle θ shown in the figure here is approximately 1.266 radians, which is approximately 72.5°.

Recall that the inverse of a function interchanges the domain and range of the original function. Thus we have the following.

Domain and range of arccosine

- The domain of $\cos^{-1}$ is $[-1, 1]$.
- The range of $\cos^{-1}$ is $[0, \pi]$.



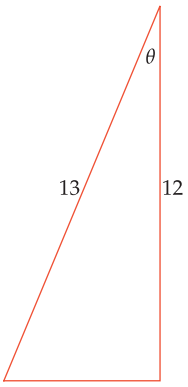
The graph of $\cos^{-1}$.

The graph of $\cos^{-1}$ can be obtained in the usual way when dealing with inverse functions. Specifically, flip the graph of the cosine (restricted to the interval $[0, \pi]$) across the line with slope 1 that contains the origin, getting the graph shown here.

The inverse trigonometric functions are spectacularly useful in finding the angles of a right triangle when given the lengths of two of the sides. The next example gives our first illustration of this procedure.

Example 4

Suppose a 13-foot ladder is leaned against a building, reaching to the bottom of a second-floor window 12 feet above the ground. What angle does the ladder make with the building?



solution Let θ denote the angle the ladder makes with the building. Because the cosine of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the adjacent side divided by the length of the hypotenuse, the figure here shows that

$$\cos\theta = \frac{12}{13}.$$

Thus

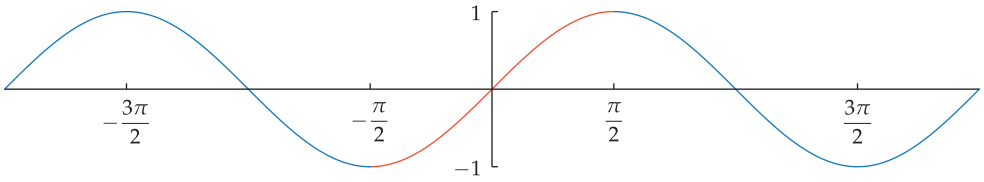
$$\theta = \cos^{-1} \frac{12}{13} \approx 0.3948.$$

Hence θ is approximately 0.3948 radians, which is approximately 22.6°.

The Arcsine Function

Now we consider the sine function, whose graph is shown below.

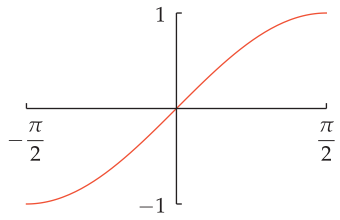
If we restrict sine to the orange part of the graph, we get a function that is one-to-one and thus has an inverse.



The graph of sine on the interval $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$.

We need to restrict the domain to obtain a one-to-one function. We again start by declaring that 0 should be in the domain of the restricted function. Looking at the graph of sine, we see that $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ is the largest interval containing 0 on which sine is one-to-one.

If we restrict the domain of sine to $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$, we obtain the one-to-one function whose graph is shown here. The inverse of this function is called the arcsine, which is abbreviated as $\sin^{-1}$. Here is the formal definition.



The graph of sine on the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$.

Arcsine

Suppose $-1 \le t \le 1$.

- The **arcsine** of t, denoted $\sin^{-1} t$, is the angle in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ whose sine equals t.

Short version:

- $\sin^{-1} t = \theta$ means $\sin\theta = t$ and $-\frac{\pi}{2} \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{2}$.

In defining $\sin^{-1} t$, we must restrict t to be in the interval $[-1, 1]$ because otherwise there is no angle whose sine equals t.

Example 5

(a) Evaluate $\sin^{-1} 0$.

(b) Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(-1)$.

(c) Explain why the expression $\sin^{-1}(-3)$ makes no sense.

solution

(a) We have $\sin^{-1} 0 = 0$, because $\sin 0 = 0$ and 0 is in the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$.

(b) We have $\sin^{-1}(-1) = -\frac{\pi}{2}$, because $\sin(-\frac{\pi}{2}) = -1$ and $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ is in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$.

(c) The expression $\sin^{-1}(-3)$ makes no sense because there is no angle whose sine equals -3.

$\sin^{-1} t$ is not equal to $\frac{1}{\sin t}$.

Do not confuse $\sin^{-1} t$ with $(\sin t)^{-1}$. The same comments that were made earlier about the notation $\cos^{-1}$ apply to $\sin^{-1}$. Specifically, $\sin^2 t$ means $(\sin t)^2$, but $\sin^{-1} t$ involves an inverse function.

The next example should help solidify your understanding of the arcsine function.

Example 6

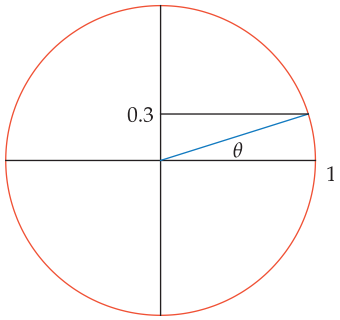
Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to the angle $\sin^{-1} 0.3$.

solution We seek an angle in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ whose sine equals 0.3. This means that the second coordinate of the endpoint of the corresponding radius will equal 0.3. Thus we start with 0.3 on the vertical axis, as shown here, and extend a line to the right until it intersects the unit circle. That point of intersection is the endpoint of the radius corresponding to the angle $\sin^{-1} 0.3$, as shown here.

A calculator shows that

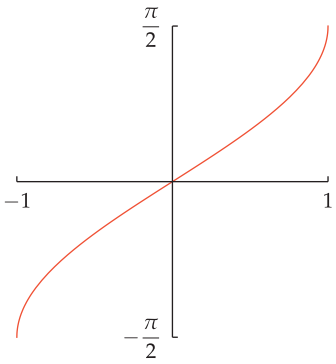
$$\sin^{-1} 0.3 \approx 0.3047.$$

Thus the angle θ shown in the figure here is approximately 0.3047 radians, which is approximately 17.5°.



Here $\theta = \sin^{-1} 0.3$, *or equivalently* $\sin\theta = 0.3$.

Because the inverse of a function interchanges the domain and range of the original function, we have the following results.



The graph of $\sin^{-1}$.

Domain and range of arcsine

- The domain of $\sin^{-1}$ is $[-1, 1]$.
- The range of $\sin^{-1}$ is $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$.

The graph of $\sin^{-1}$ can be obtained in the usual way when dealing with inverse functions. Specifically, flip the graph of the sine (restricted to the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$) across the line with slope 1 that contains the origin, getting the graph shown here.

Given the lengths of the hypotenuse and another side of a right triangle, you can use the arcsine function to determine the angle opposite the nonhypotenuse side. The next example illustrates the procedure.

Example 7

Suppose your altitude goes up by 150 feet when driving one-half mile on a straight road. What is the angle of elevation of the road?

This sketch is not drawn to scale.

solution The first step toward solving a problem like this is to sketch the situation. Thus we begin by constructing the sketch shown here, which is not drawn to scale. We want to find the angle of elevation of the road; this angle has been denoted by θ in the sketch.

As usual, we must use consistent units throughout a problem. The information we have been given uses both feet and miles. Thus we convert one-half mile to feet: because one mile equals 5280 feet, one-half mile equals 2640 feet.

Because the sine of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the hypotenuse, the sketch shows that

$$\sin\theta = \frac{150}{2640}.$$

Thus

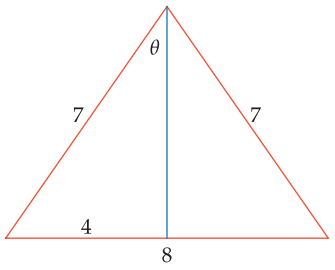
$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{150}{2640} \approx 0.057.$$

Hence θ is approximately 0.057 radians, which is approximately 3.3°.

The next example shows how to find the angles in an isosceles triangle, given the lengths of the sides.

Example 8

Find the angle between the two sides of length 7 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 8 and two sides of length 7.



solution Create a right triangle by dropping a perpendicular from the vertex to the base, as shown in the figure here.

Let θ denote the angle between the perpendicular and a side of length 7. Because the base of the isosceles triangle has length 8, the side of the right triangle opposite the angle θ has length 4. Thus

$$\sin\theta = \frac{4}{7}$$

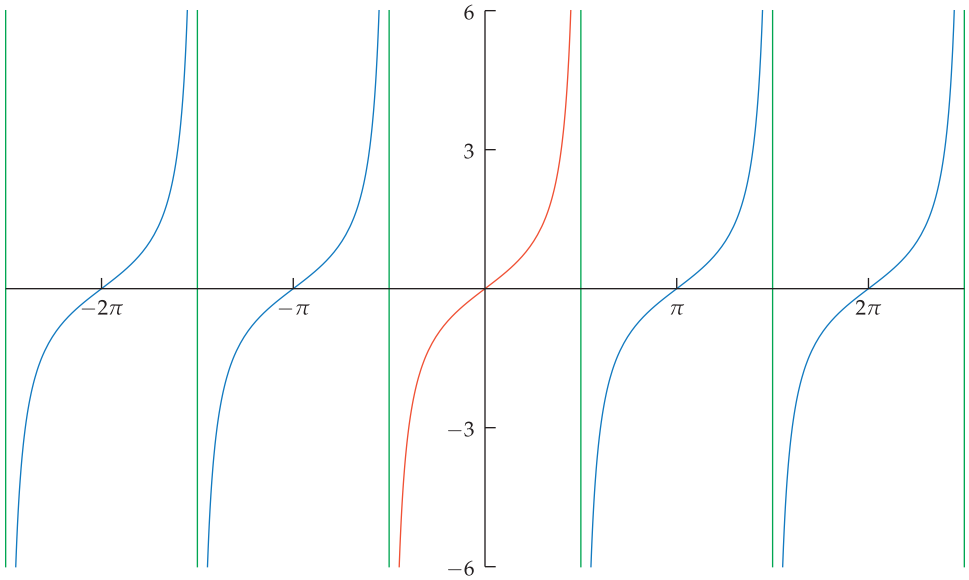
and hence

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{4}{7}.$$

The angle between the two sides of length 7 is 2θ, which equals $2\sin^{-1}\frac{4}{7}$, which is approximately 1.2165 radians, which is approximately 69.7°.

The Arctangent Function

Now we consider the tangent function, whose graph is shown below.

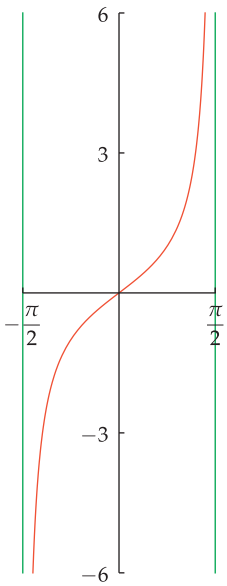


The graph of tangent on most of the interval $(-\frac{5}{2}\pi, \frac{5}{2}\pi)$. The green lines are asymptotes of this graph.

If we restrict tangent to the orange part of the graph, we get a function that is one-to-one and thus has an inverse.

We need to restrict the domain to obtain a one-to-one function. We again start by declaring that 0 should be in the domain of the restricted function. Looking at the graph above of tangent, we see that $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ is the largest interval containing 0 on which tangent is one-to-one. Recall that the tangent function is not defined at $\frac{\pi}{2}$ or at $-\frac{\pi}{2}$; thus these numbers cannot be included in the domain.

If we restrict the domain of tangent to $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$, we obtain a one-to-one function. The inverse of this function is called the arctangent, which is abbreviated as $\tan^{-1}$.



The graph of tangent on most of the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$. The green lines are asymptotes.

Arctangent

Suppose t is a real number.

- The **arctangent** of t, denoted $\tan^{-1} t$, is the angle in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ whose tangent equals t.

Short version:

- $\tan^{-1} t = \theta$ means $\tan\theta = t$ and $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$.

Example 9

(a) Evaluate $\tan^{-1} 0$.

(b) Evaluate $\tan^{-1} 1$.

(c) Evaluate $\tan^{-1} \sqrt{3}$.

solution

(a) We have $\tan^{-1} 0 = 0$, because $\tan 0 = 0$ and 0 is in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

(b) We have $\tan^{-1} 1 = \frac{\pi}{4}$, because $\tan\frac{\pi}{4} = 1$ and $\frac{\pi}{4}$ is in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

(c) We have $\tan^{-1} \sqrt{3} = \frac{\pi}{3}$, because $\tan\frac{\pi}{3} = \sqrt{3}$ and $\frac{\pi}{3}$ is in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

$\tan^{-1} t$ *is not equal to* $\dfrac{1}{\tan t}$.

Do not confuse $\tan^{-1} t$ with $(\tan t)^{-1}$. The same comments that were made earlier about the notation $\cos^{-1}$ and $\sin^{-1}$ apply to $\tan^{-1}$. Specifically, $\tan^2 t$ means $(\tan t)^2$, but $\tan^{-1} t$ involves an inverse function.

Example 10

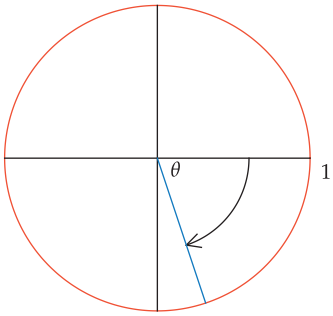
Sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to the angle $\tan^{-1}(-3)$.

solution We seek an angle in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ whose tangent equals -3. This means that the slope of the corresponding radius will equal -3. The unit circle has two radii with slope -3; one of them is the radius shown here and the other is the radius in the opposite direction. But of these two radii, only the one shown here has a corresponding angle in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$. Notice that the indicated angle is negative because of the clockwise direction of the arrow.

A calculator shows that

$$\tan^{-1}(-3) \approx -1.249.$$

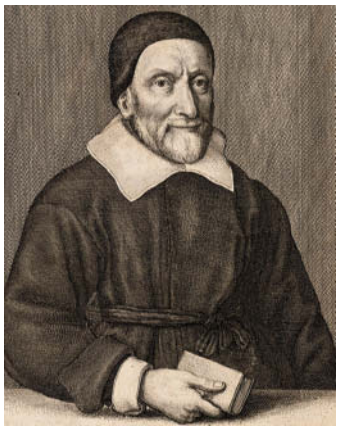
Thus the angle θ shown here is approximately -1.249 radians, which is approximately $-71.6°$.



This radius has slope -3 *and thus corresponds to* $\tan^{-1}(-3)$.

Unlike $\cos^{-1} t$ and $\sin^{-1} t$, which make sense only when t is in $[-1, 1]$, $\tan^{-1} t$ makes sense for every real number t (because for every real number t there is an angle whose tangent equals t). Because the inverse of a function interchanges the domain and range of the original function, the domain of the arctangent is the set of real numbers and the range of the arctangent is the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

The table below summarizes the domain and range of all three inverse trigonometric functions. Here the set of real numbers is denoted using the interval notation $(-\infty, \infty)$.

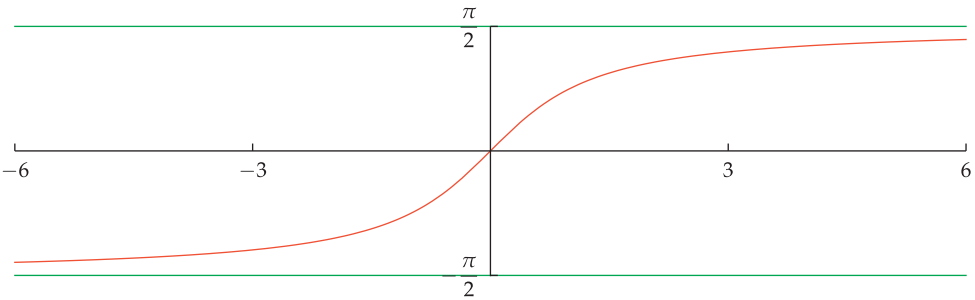


Portrait of English mathematician William Oughtred, who in the 17^{th} *century introduced the abbreviations* cos *and* sin *for cosine and sine.*

Domain and range of the inverse trigonometric functions

	domain	range
$\cos^{-1}$	$[-1, 1]$	$[0, \pi]$
$\sin^{-1}$	$[-1, 1]$	$[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$
$\tan^{-1}$	$(-\infty, \infty)$	$(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$

The graph of $\tan^{-1}$ can be obtained in the usual way when dealing with inverse functions. Specifically, flip the graph of the tangent (restricted to an interval slightly smaller than $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$) across the line with slope 1 that contains the origin, getting the graph shown below.



The graph of $\tan^{-1}$ *on the interval* $[-6, 6]$. *The green lines are asymptotes of this graph.*

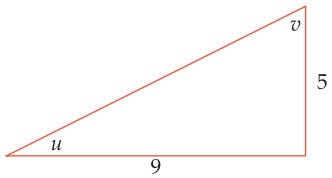
Given the lengths of the two nonhypotenuse sides of a right triangle, you can use the arctangent function to determine the angles of the triangle. The next example illustrates the procedure.

Example 11

(a) In this right triangle, use the arctangent function to evaluate the angle u.

(b) In this right triangle, use the arctangent function to evaluate the angle v.

(c) As a check, compute the sum of the angles u and v obtained in parts (a) and (b). Does this sum have the expected value?



solution

(a) Because the tangent of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the adjacent side, we have $\tan u = \frac{5}{9}$. Thus

$$u = \tan^{-1} \frac{5}{9} \approx 0.5071.$$

Hence u is approximately 0.5071 radians, which is approximately 29.1°.

(b) Because the tangent of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the adjacent side, we have $\tan v = \frac{9}{5}$. Thus

$$v = \tan^{-1} \frac{9}{5} \approx 1.0637.$$

Hence v is approximately 1.0637 radians, which is approximately 60.9°.

(c) We have

$$u + v \approx 29.1^\circ + 60.9^\circ = 90^\circ.$$

Thus the sum of the two acute angles in this right triangle is 90°, as expected.

Given the slope of a line, the arctangent function allows us to find the angle the line makes with the positive horizontal axis, as shown in the next example.

Example 12

What angle does the line $y = \frac{2}{3}x$ in the xy-plane make with the positive x-axis?

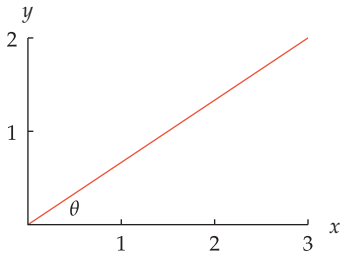
solution We seek the angle θ shown in the figure here. Because the line $y = \frac{2}{3}x$ has slope $\frac{2}{3}$, we have

$$\tan \theta = \frac{2}{3}.$$

Thus

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{2}{3} \approx 0.588.$$

Hence θ is approximately 0.588 radians, which is approximately 33.7°.



The line $y = \frac{2}{3}x$.

Exercises

You should be able to do Exercises 1–4 without a calculator.

1 Evaluate $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{2}$.

2 Evaluate $\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{2}$.

3 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(-1)$.

4 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(-\sqrt{3})$.

Exercises 5–16 emphasize the importance of understanding inverse notation as well as the importance of parentheses in determining the order of operations.

5 For $x = 0.3$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\cos^{-1} x$ (c) $\cos(x^{-1})$

(b) $(\cos x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\cos^{-1} x)^{-1}$

6 For $x = 0.4$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\cos^{-1} x$ (c) $\cos(x^{-1})$

(b) $(\cos x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\cos^{-1} x)^{-1}$

7 For $x = \frac{1}{7}$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\sin^{-1} x$ (c) $\sin(x^{-1})$

(b) $(\sin x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\sin^{-1} x)^{-1}$

8 For $x = \frac{1}{8}$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin^{-1} x$ (c) $\sin(x^{-1})$
(b) $(\sin x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\sin^{-1} x)^{-1}$

9 For $x = 2$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\tan^{-1} x$ (c) $\tan(x^{-1})$
(b) $(\tan x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\tan^{-1} x)^{-1}$

10 For $x = 3$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\tan^{-1} x$ (c) $\tan(x^{-1})$
(b) $(\tan x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\tan^{-1} x)^{-1}$

11 For $x = 4$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\left(\cos(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\cos^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\cos^{-1}(x^{-1})$

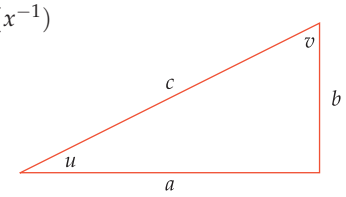
12 For $x = 5$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\left(\cos(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\cos^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\cos^{-1}(x^{-1})$

13 For $x = 6$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\left(\sin(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\sin^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\sin^{-1}(x^{-1})$

14 For $x = 9$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\left(\sin(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\sin^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\sin^{-1}(x^{-1})$

15 For $x = 0.1$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\left(\tan(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\tan^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\tan^{-1}(x^{-1})$

16 For $x = 0.2$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\left(\tan(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\tan^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\tan^{-1}(x^{-1})$



Use the right triangle above for Exercises 17–24. This triangle is not drawn to scale corresponding to the data in the exercises.

17 Suppose $a = 2$ and $c = 3$. Evaluate u in radians.

18 Suppose $a = 3$ and $c = 4$. Evaluate u in radians.

19 Suppose $a = 2$ and $c = 5$. Evaluate v in radians.

20 Suppose $a = 3$ and $c = 5$. Evaluate v in radians.

21 Suppose $a = 5$ and $b = 4$. Evaluate u in degrees.

22 Suppose $a = 5$ and $b = 6$. Evaluate u in degrees.

23 Suppose $a = 5$ and $b = 7$. Evaluate v in degrees.

24 Suppose $a = 7$ and $b = 6$. Evaluate v in degrees.

25 Find the angle between the two sides of length 9 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 14 and two sides of length 9.

26 Find the angle between the two sides of length 8 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 7 and two sides of length 8.

27 Find the angle between a side of length 6 and the side with length 10 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 10 and two sides of length 6.

28 Find the angle between a side of length 5 and the side with length 9 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 9 and two sides of length 5.

29 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $10^{\cos\theta} = 6$.

30 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $10^{\sin\theta} = 7$.

31 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $e^{\tan\theta} = 15$.

32 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $e^{\tan\theta} = 500$.

33 Find the second smallest positive number θ such that $4^{\sin\theta} = 3$.

34 Find the second smallest positive number θ such that $7^{\cos\theta} = 5$.

35 Find the smallest positive number y such that $\cos(\tan y) = 0.2$.

36 Find the smallest positive number y such that $\sin(\tan y) = 0.6$.

37 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\sin^2 x - 3\sin x + 1 = 0.$$

38 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\sin^2 x - 4\sin x + 2 = 0.$$

39 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\cos^2 x - 0.5\cos x + 0.06 = 0.$$

40 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\cos^2 x - 0.7\cos x + 0.12 = 0.$$

41 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $\sin\theta = -0.4$.
[*Hint:* Careful, the answer is not $\sin^{-1}(-0.4)$.]

42 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $\tan\theta = -5$.
[*Hint:* Careful, the answer is not $\tan^{-1}(-5)$.]

43 Find the smallest number θ larger than 2π such that $\cos\theta = 0.7$.

44 Find the smallest number θ larger than 5π such that $\sin\theta = 0.2$.

45 What angle does the line $y = \frac{2}{5}x$ in the xy-plane make with the positive x-axis?

46 What angle does the line $y = 4x$ in the xy-plane make with the positive x-axis?

47 What is the angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line containing the points $(3,1)$ and $(5,4)$?

48 What is the angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line containing the points $(2,5)$ and $(6,2)$?

For Exercises 49–52: Hilly areas often have road signs giving the percentage grade for the road. A 5% grade, for example, means that the altitude changes by 5 feet for each 100 feet of horizontal distance.

49 What percentage grade should be put on a road sign where the angle of elevation of the road is 3°?

50 What percentage grade should be put on a road sign where the angle of elevation of the road is 4°?

51 Suppose an uphill road sign indicates a road grade of 6%. What is the angle of elevation of the road?

52 Suppose an uphill road sign indicates a road grade of 8%. What is the angle of elevation of the road?

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

53 Without using a calculator, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to $\cos^{-1} 0.1$.

54 Without using a calculator, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to $\sin^{-1}(-0.1)$.

55 Without using a calculator, sketch the unit circle and the radius corresponding to $\tan^{-1} 4$.

56 Explain why the expression $\cos^{-1} \frac{\pi}{3}$ makes no sense.

57 Explain why

$$\cos^{-1} \frac{3}{5} = \sin^{-1} \frac{4}{5} = \tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3}.$$

[*Hint:* Take $a = 3$ and $b = 4$ in the triangle used for Exercises 17–24. Then find c and consider various ways to express u.]

58 Explain why

$$\cos^{-1} \frac{5}{13} = \sin^{-1} \frac{12}{13} = \tan^{-1} \frac{12}{5}.$$

59 Suppose a and b are numbers such that

$$\cos^{-1} a = \frac{\pi}{7} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin^{-1} b = \frac{\pi}{7}.$$

Explain why $a^2 + b^2 = 1$.

60 Find all numbers t such that

$$\cos^{-1} t = \sin^{-1} t.$$

61 There exist angles θ such that $\cos\theta = -\sin\theta$ (for example, $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ and $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ are two such angles). However, explain why there do not exist any numbers t such that

$$\cos^{-1} t = -\sin^{-1} t.$$

62 Show that in an isosceles triangle with two sides of length b and a side of length c, the angle between the two sides of length b is

$$2\sin^{-1} \frac{c}{2b}.$$

63 Show that in an isosceles triangle with two sides of length b and a side of length c, the angle between a side of length b and the side of length c is

$$\cos^{-1} \frac{c}{2b}.$$

64 Suppose you are asked to find the angles in an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length 5 and one side of length 11. Using the two previous problems, this would require you to compute $\sin^{-1} \frac{11}{10}$ and $\cos^{-1} \frac{11}{10}$, neither of which makes sense. What is wrong here?

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

You should be able to do Exercises 1–4 without a calculator.

1 Evaluate $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{2}$.

solution $\cos \frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$; thus $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{2} = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

3 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(-1)$.

solution $\tan\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = -1$; thus

$$\tan^{-1}(-1) = -\frac{\pi}{4}.$$

Exercises 5–16 emphasize the importance of understanding inverse notation as well as the importance of parentheses in determining the order of operations.

5 For $x = 0.3$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\cos^{-1} x$ (c) $\cos(x^{-1})$

(b) $(\cos x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\cos^{-1} x)^{-1}$

solution

(a) $\cos^{-1} 0.3 \approx 1.2661$

(b) $(\cos 0.3)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\cos 0.3} \approx 1.04675$

(c) $\cos(0.3^{-1}) = \cos \dfrac{1}{0.3} \approx -0.981674$

(d) $(\cos^{-1} 0.3)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\cos^{-1} 0.3} \approx 0.789825$

7 For $x = \frac{1}{7}$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\sin^{-1} x$ (c) $\sin(x^{-1})$

(b) $(\sin x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\sin^{-1} x)^{-1}$

solution

(a) $\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{7} \approx 0.143348$

(b) $(\sin \frac{1}{7})^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\sin \frac{1}{7}} \approx 7.02387$

(c) $\sin\left(\left(\frac{1}{7}\right)^{-1}\right) = \sin 7 \approx 0.656987$

(d) $(\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{7})^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{7}} \approx 6.97605$

9 For $x = 2$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\tan^{-1} x$ (c) $\tan(x^{-1})$
(b) $(\tan x)^{-1}$ (d) $(\tan^{-1} x)^{-1}$

solution

(a) $\tan^{-1} 2 \approx 1.10715$

(b) $(\tan 2)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\tan 2} \approx -0.457658$

(c) $\tan(2^{-1}) = \tan \dfrac{1}{2} \approx 0.546302$

(d) $(\tan^{-1} 2)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\tan^{-1} 2} \approx 0.903221$

11 For $x = 4$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\left(\cos(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\cos^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\cos^{-1}(x^{-1})$

solution

(a) $\left(\cos(4^{-1})\right)^{-1} = \left(\cos \frac{1}{4}\right)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\cos \frac{1}{4}} \approx 1.03209$

(b) $\cos^{-1}(4^{-1}) = \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{4} \approx 1.31812$

(c) $\left(\cos^{-1}(4^{-1})\right)^{-1} = \left(\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{4}\right)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{4}} \approx 0.758659$

13 For $x = 6$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\left(\sin(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\sin^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\sin^{-1}(x^{-1})$

solution

(a) $\left(\sin(6^{-1})\right)^{-1} = \left(\sin \frac{1}{6}\right)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\sin \frac{1}{6}} \approx 6.02787$

(b) $\sin^{-1}(6^{-1}) = \sin^{-1} \frac{1}{6} \approx 0.167448$

(c) $\left(\sin^{-1}(6^{-1})\right)^{-1} = \left(\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{6}\right)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{6}} \approx 5.972$

15 For $x = 0.1$, evaluate each of the following:

(a) $\left(\tan(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$ (c) $\left(\tan^{-1}(x^{-1})\right)^{-1}$
(b) $\tan^{-1}(x^{-1})$

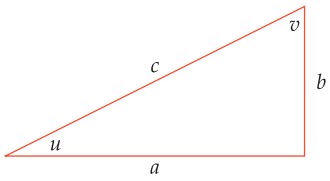
solution

(a) $\left(\tan(0.1^{-1})\right)^{-1} = \left(\tan 10\right)^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{\tan 10} \approx 1.54235$

(b) $\tan^{-1}(0.1^{-1}) = \tan^{-1} 10 \approx 1.47113$

(c)

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\tan^{-1}(0.1^{-1})\right)^{-1} &= \left(\tan^{-1} 10\right)^{-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{\tan^{-1} 10} \\ &\approx 0.679751\end{aligned}$$



Use the right triangle above for Exercises 17–24. This triangle is not drawn to scale corresponding to the data in the exercises.

17 Suppose $a = 2$ and $c = 3$. Evaluate u in radians.

solution Because the cosine of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the adjacent side divided by the length of the hypotenuse, we have $\cos u = \frac{2}{3}$. Using a calculator working in radians, we then have

$$u = \cos^{-1} \frac{2}{3} \approx 0.841 \text{ radians.}$$

19 Suppose $a = 2$ and $c = 5$. Evaluate v in radians.

solution Because the sine of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the hypotenuse, we have $\sin v = \frac{2}{5}$. Using a calculator working in radians, we then have

$$v = \sin^{-1} \frac{2}{5} \approx 0.412 \text{ radians.}$$

21 Suppose $a = 5$ and $b = 4$. Evaluate u in degrees.

solution Because the tangent of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the adjacent side, we have $\tan u = \frac{4}{5}$. Using a calculator working in degrees, we then have

$$u = \tan^{-1} \frac{4}{5} \approx 38.7^\circ.$$

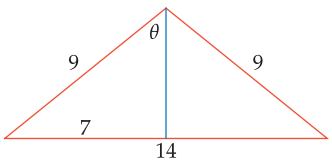
23 Suppose $a = 5$ and $b = 7$. Evaluate v in degrees.

solution Because the tangent of an angle in a right triangle equals the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the adjacent side, we have $\tan v = \frac{5}{7}$. Using a calculator working in degrees, we then have

$$v = \tan^{-1} \frac{5}{7} \approx 35.5^\circ.$$

25 Find the angle between the two sides of length 9 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 14 and two sides of length 9.

solution Create a right triangle by dropping a perpendicular from the vertex to the base, as shown in the figure below.



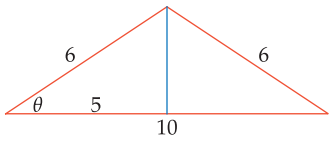
Let θ denote the angle between the perpendicular and a side of length 9. Because the base of the isosceles triangle has length 14, the side of the right triangle opposite the angle θ has length 7. Thus $\sin\theta = \frac{7}{9}$. Hence

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{7}{9} \approx 0.8911.$$

Thus the angle between the two sides of length 9 is approximately 1.7822 radians ($1.7822 = 2 \times 0.8911$), which is approximately 102.1°.

27 Find the angle between a side of length 6 and the side with length 10 in an isosceles triangle that has one side of length 10 and two sides of length 6.

solution Create a right triangle by dropping a perpendicular from the vertex to the base, as shown in the figure below.



Let θ denote the angle between the side of length 10 and a side of length 6. Because the base of the isosceles triangle has length 10, the side of the right triangle adjacent to the angle θ has length 5. Thus $\cos\theta = \frac{5}{6}$. Hence

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\frac{5}{6} \approx 0.58569.$$

Thus the angle between a side of length 6 and the side with length 10 is approximately 0.58569 radians, which is approximately 33.6°.

29 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $10^{\cos\theta} = 6$.

solution The equation above implies that $\cos\theta = \log 6$. Thus we take $\theta = \cos^{-1}(\log 6) \approx 0.67908$.

31 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $e^{\tan\theta} = 15$.

solution The equation above implies that $\tan\theta = \ln 15$. Thus we take $\theta = \tan^{-1}(\ln 15) \approx 1.21706$.

33 Find the second smallest positive number θ such that $4^{\sin\theta} = 3$.

solution Take the log of both sides of the equation above, getting $(\sin\theta)(\log 4) = \log 3$, which implies that

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\log 3}{\log 4}.$$

The smallest positive number θ satisfying this equation is $\sin^{-1}\frac{\log 3}{\log 4}$. The second smallest positive number satisfying this equation is $\pi - \sin^{-1}\frac{\log 3}{\log 4} \approx 2.22673$.

35 Find the smallest positive number y such that $\cos(\tan y) = 0.2$.

solution The equation above implies that we should choose $\tan y = \cos^{-1} 0.2 \approx 1.36944$. Thus we should choose $y \approx \tan^{-1} 1.36944 \approx 0.94007$.

37 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\sin^2 x - 3\sin x + 1 = 0.$$

solution Write $y = \sin x$. Then the equation above can be rewritten as

$$y^2 - 3y + 1 = 0.$$

Using the quadratic formula, we find that the solutions to this equation are

$$y = \frac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2} \approx 2.61803$$

and

$$y = \frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2} \approx 0.381966.$$

Thus $\sin x \approx 2.61803$ or $\sin x \approx 0.381966$. However, there is no real number x such that $\sin x \approx 2.61803$ (because $\sin x$ is at most 1 for every real number x), and thus we must have $\sin x \approx 0.381966$. Thus $x \approx \sin^{-1} 0.381966 \approx 0.39192$.

39 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$\cos^2 x - 0.5\cos x + 0.06 = 0.$$

solution Write $y = \cos x$. Then the equation above can be rewritten as

$$y^2 - 0.5y + 0.06 = 0.$$

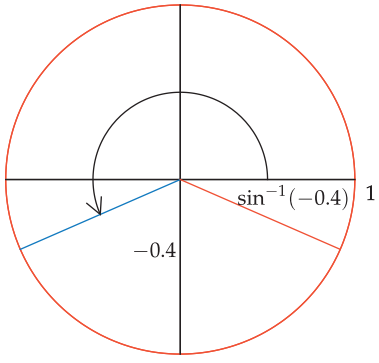
Using the quadratic formula or factorization, we find that the solutions to this equation are

$$y = 0.2 \quad \text{and} \quad y = 0.3.$$

Thus $\cos x = 0.2$ or $\cos x = 0.3$, which suggests that we choose $x = \cos^{-1} 0.2$ or $x = \cos^{-1} 0.3$. Because arccosine is a decreasing function, $\cos^{-1} 0.3$ is smaller than $\cos^{-1} 0.2$. Because we want to find the smallest positive value of x satisfying the original equation, we choose $x = \cos^{-1} 0.3 \approx 1.2661$.

41 Find the smallest positive number θ such that $\sin\theta = -0.4$.
[*Hint:* Careful, the answer is not $\sin^{-1}(-0.4)$.]

solution The answer is not $\sin^{-1}(-0.4)$ because $\sin^{-1}(-0.4)$ is a negative number and we need to find the smallest positive number θ such that $\sin\theta = -0.4$. In the figure below, the orange radius corresponds to the negative angle $\sin^{-1}(-0.4)$. The arrow and the blue radius show the angle we seek, which is $\pi + \sin^{-1} 0.4$, which is approximately 3.55311 radians (which is approximately 203.6°).

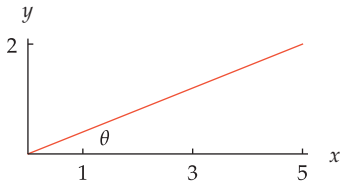


43 Find the smallest number θ larger than 2π such that $\cos\theta = 0.7$.

solution The desired number is $2\pi + \cos^{-1} 0.7$, which is approximately 7.07858.

45 What angle does the line $y = \frac{2}{5}x$ in the xy-plane make with the positive x-axis?

solution We seek the angle θ shown in the figure here. Because the line $y = \frac{2}{5}x$ has slope $\frac{2}{5}$, we have $\tan\theta = \frac{2}{5}$. Thus $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{2}{5} \approx 0.3805$.



The line $y = \frac{2}{5}x$.

Hence θ is approximately 0.3805 radians, which is approximately 21.8°.

47 What is the angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line containing the points $(3,1)$ and $(5,4)$?

solution Let θ denote the angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line containing $(3,1)$ and $(5,4)$. The line containing $(3,1)$ and $(5,4)$ has slope $\frac{4-1}{5-3}$, which equals $\frac{3}{2}$. Thus $\tan\theta = \frac{3}{2}$. Thus $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{3}{2} \approx 0.982794$. Hence θ is approximately 0.982794 radians, which is approximately 56.3°.

For Exercises 49–52: Hilly areas often have road signs giving the percentage grade for the road. A 5% grade, for example, means that the altitude changes by 5 feet for each 100 feet of horizontal distance.

49 What percentage grade should be put on a road sign where the angle of elevation of the road is 3°?

solution The grade of a portion of a road is the change in altitude divided by the change in horizontal distance. Thus the grade is the slope of the road. A road with a 3° angle of elevation has slope $\tan 3°$, which is approximately 0.052. Thus a road sign should indicate a 5% grade.

51 Suppose an uphill road sign indicates a road grade of 6%. What is the angle of elevation of the road?

solution Let θ denote the angle of elevation of the road. A road grade of 6% means that $\tan\theta = 0.06$. Thus $\theta = \tan^{-1} 0.06 \approx 0.0599$. Hence θ is approximately 0.0599 radians, which is approximately 3.4°.

5.2 Inverse Trigonometric Identities

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute the composition, in either order, of a trigonometric function and its inverse function;
- find inverses of functions that involve trigonometric functions;
- compute the composition of a trigonometric function with the inverse of a different trigonometric function;
- use the inverse trigonometric identities for $-t$;
- use the identity for arccosine plus arcsine.

Inverse trigonometric identities are identities that involve inverse trigonometric functions.

Composition of Trigonometric Functions and Their Inverses

Recall that if f is a one-to-one function, then $f \circ f^{-1}$ is the identity function on the range of f, meaning that $f\big(f^{-1}(t)\big) = t$ for every t in the range of f. In the case of the trigonometric functions (or more precisely, the trigonometric functions restricted to the appropriate domain) and their inverses, this gives the following set of equations.

Trigonometric functions composed with their inverses

$$\cos(\cos^{-1} t) = t \quad \text{for every } t \text{ in } [-1, 1]$$

$$\sin(\sin^{-1} t) = t \quad \text{for every } t \text{ in } [-1, 1]$$

$$\tan(\tan^{-1} t) = t \quad \text{for every real number } t$$

For example, $\cos(\cos^{-1} 0.29) = 0.29$.

The left sides of the first two equations above make no sense unless t is in the interval $[-1, 1]$ because the functions $\cos^{-1}$ and the $\sin^{-1}$ are only defined on the interval $[-1, 1]$.

Recall also that if f is a one-to-one function, then $f^{-1} \circ f$ is the identity function on the domain of f, meaning that $f^{-1}\big(f(\theta)\big) = \theta$ for every θ in the domain of f. In the case of the trigonometric functions (or more precisely, the trigonometric functions restricted to the appropriate domain) and their inverses, this gives the following set of equations.

Inverse trigonometric functions composed with their inverses

$$\cos^{-1}(\cos\theta) = \theta \quad \text{for every } \theta \text{ in } [0, \pi]$$

$$\sin^{-1}(\sin\theta) = \theta \quad \text{for every } \theta \text{ in } [-\tfrac{\pi}{2}, \tfrac{\pi}{2}]$$

$$\tan^{-1}(\tan\theta) = \theta \quad \text{for every } \theta \text{ in } (-\tfrac{\pi}{2}, \tfrac{\pi}{2})$$

For example, $\cos^{-1}(\cos\frac{\pi}{17}) = \frac{\pi}{17}$.

The left sides of the first two equations above make sense for all real numbers θ, and the left side of the last equation above makes sense for all values of θ except odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$. However, the next example shows why the restrictions above on θ are necessary.

Example 1

Evaluate $\cos^{-1}\big(\cos(2\pi)\big)$.

solution The key point is that the equation $\cos^{-1}(\cos\theta) = \theta$ is not valid here because 2π is not in the interval $[0, \pi]$. However, we can evaluate this expression directly. Because $\cos(2\pi) = 1$, we have

$$\cos^{-1}\big(\cos(2\pi)\big) = \cos^{-1} 1 = 0.$$

The example above illustrates the point that $\cos^{-1}(\cos\theta)$ does not equal θ if θ is not in the interval $[0, \pi]$. The next example shows how to deal with these compositions when θ is not in the required range.

Example 2

Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin 380^\circ)$.

Here $\sin 380^\circ$ is rewritten as $\sin\frac{\pi}{9}$ because we need to work in radians and we need an angle in the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ so that we can apply the identity involving the composition of $\sin^{-1}$ and sin.

solution Note that $\sin 380^\circ = \sin 20^\circ = \sin\frac{\pi}{9}$. Thus

$$\sin^{-1}(\sin 380^\circ) = \sin^{-1}(\sin\tfrac{\pi}{9}) = \tfrac{\pi}{9}.$$

remark The input to a trigonometric function has units of either degrees or radians; if no units are specified then we assume the units are radians. However, the output of a trigonometric function is a number with no units. When 0.342 (which is the approximate value of $\sin 380^\circ$) is input into the $\sin^{-1}$ function, the $\sin^{-1}$ function does not know whether this number arose from a computation involving degrees or a computation involving radians. The $\sin^{-1}$ function produces the angle (in radians!) whose sine equals the given input.

When considering an expression such as $\sin^{-1}\frac{1}{2}$, it does not make sense to ask whether the input $\frac{1}{2}$ is in radians or is in degrees.

Most calculators, when set to operate in degrees, will evaluate $\sin^{-1}\frac{1}{2}$ to be 30 rather than the correct value of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ (which is approximately 0.5236). When that happens, the $\sin^{-1}$ button on the calculator is not the arcsine function but is the function whose value at t is the number x in the interval $[-90, 90]$ such that $\sin x^\circ = t$. In other words, when operating in degrees, the calculator's $\sin^{-1}$ button is really $\frac{180}{\pi}$ times the arcsine function.

More Inverse Functions

Using inverse trigonometric functions, we can find inverses of many other functions.

Example 3

Suppose $f(x) = 3 + 4\cos x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0, \pi]$.

(a) Find a formula for f^{-1}.

(b) What is the domain of f^{-1}?

(c) What is the range of f^{-1}?

Statue in Milan of Italian mathematician Maria Gaetana Agnesi, who in 1748 published one of the first calculus textbooks. A translation of her book into English was published in 1801.

solution

(a) We need to solve the equation $y = 3 + 4\cos x$ for x. Subtracting 3 from both sides and then dividing by 4, we have $\cos x = \frac{y-3}{4}$, which implies that $x = \cos^{-1}\frac{y-3}{4}$. Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \cos^{-1}\frac{y-3}{4}$.

(b) As usual, the domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. As x varies over the interval $[0, \pi]$, the values of $3 + 4\cos x$ vary over the interval $[-1, 7]$. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $[-1, 7]$.

(c) As usual, the range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f, which is the interval $[0, \pi]$.

An alternative method for finding the inverse function is presented below. This method does not work for functions such as $f(x) = x^3 + x$ in which x appears more than once in the formula defining f.

Finding the inverse function

Suppose f is a one-to-one function and $f(x)$ is defined by a formula in which x appears only once.

- List the steps needed to compute $f(x)$.
- Then f^{-1} can be computed by reversing each step, in the opposite of the original order.

Example 4

Suppose $f(x) = 3 + 4\cos x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0, \pi]$. Find a formula for f^{-1}.

solution Here are the steps needed to compute $f(x)$:

- Evaluate $\cos x$.
- Multiply by 4 (getting $4\cos x$).
- Add 3 (getting $3 + 4\cos x$).

Now we reverse each step, in the opposite of the original order. Specifically, addition of 3 is reversed by subtracting 3, multiplication by 4 is reversed by dividing by 4, and taking the cosine is reversed by taking the arccosine:

- Subtract 3 from y (getting $y - 3$).
- Divide by 4 (getting $\frac{y-3}{4}$).
- Take the arccosine (getting $\cos^{-1} \frac{y-3}{4}$).

Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \cos^{-1} \frac{y-3}{4}$, which is the same result as in Example 3.

This alternative method for finding the inverse function can help you understand what is going on with inverse functions. The idea behind this alternative method is that $f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = x$. Thus to compute f^{-1}, the steps used in computing f must be reversed.

More Compositions with Inverse Trigonometric Functions

We already discussed the composition of a trigonometric function with its inverse function. Now we will discuss the composition of a trigonometric function with the inverse of a different trigonometric function.

For example, consider the problem of evaluating $\cos(\sin^{-1} \frac{2}{3})$. One way to approach this problem would be to evaluate $\sin^{-1} \frac{2}{3}$, then evaluate the cosine of that angle. However, no one knows how to find an exact expression for $\sin^{-1} \frac{2}{3}$.

A calculator could give an approximate answer, first showing that

$$\sin^{-1} \frac{2}{3} \approx 0.729728.$$

Using a calculator again to take cosine of the number above, we see that

$$\cos(\sin^{-1} \tfrac{2}{3}) \approx 0.745356.$$

The exact answer that we will obtain in the next two examples is more satisfying than this approximation.

When working with trigonometric functions, an accurate numerical approximation such as computed above is sometimes the best that can be done. However, for compositions of the type discussed above, exact answers can be found. The next example shows how to do this.

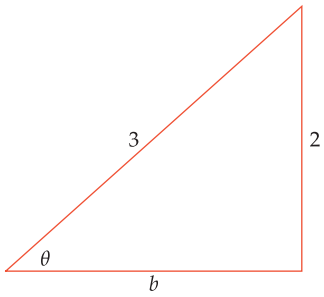
Example 5

Evaluate $\cos(\sin^{-1}\frac{2}{3})$.

solution Let $\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{2}{3}$; thus $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$. Recall that

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

in a right triangle with an angle of θ, where *opposite side* means the length of the side opposite the angle θ. The easiest choices for side lengths to have $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$ are shown in the triangle here. Applying the Pythagorean Theorem to this triangle, we have $b^2 + 4 = 9$, which implies that $b = \sqrt{5}$.



A right triangle with $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$.

Now

$$\begin{aligned}\cos(\sin^{-1}\tfrac{2}{3}) &= \cos\theta \\ &= \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} \\ &= \frac{b}{3} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}.\end{aligned}$$

A calculator shows that $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3} \approx 0.745356$. Thus the exact value we just obtained for $\cos(\sin^{-1}\frac{2}{3})$ is consistent with the approximate value obtained earlier.

The method used in the example above might be called the geometric approach. The next examples illustrates a more algebraic approach to such composition questions. Use whichever approach is easiest for you.

Example 6

Find a formula for $\tan(\cos^{-1} t)$.

solution Suppose $-1 \le t \le 1$ with $t \ne 0$ (we are excluding $t = 0$ because in that case we would have $\cos^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2}$, but $\tan\frac{\pi}{2}$ is undefined). Let $\theta = \cos^{-1} t$. Thus $\cos\theta = t$ and $0 \le \theta \le \pi$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(\cos^{-1} t) &= \tan\theta \\ &= \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{1-\cos^2\theta}}{\cos\theta} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{1-t^2}}{t}.\end{aligned}$$

In general we know that $\sin\theta = \pm\sqrt{1-\cos^2\theta}$. *Here we can choose the plus sign because* $0 \le \theta \le \pi$, *which implies that* $\sin\theta \ge 0$.

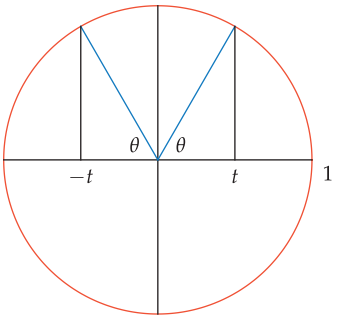
Thus the formula we seek is

$$\tan(\cos^{-1} t) = \frac{\sqrt{1-t^2}}{t}.$$

There are five more identities like the one derived in the example above, involving the composition of a trigonometric function and the inverse of another trigonometric function. The problems in this section ask you to derive those five additional identities, which can be done using the same methods as in either of the two examples above. Memorizing these identities is not a good use of your mental energy, but be sure that you understand how to derive them.

The Arccosine, Arcsine, and Arctangent of $-t$

We begin by finding a formula for $\cos^{-1}(-t)$ in terms of $\cos^{-1} t$. To do this, suppose $0 < t < 1$. Let $\theta = \cos^{-1} t$, which implies that $\cos\theta = t$. Consider the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ. The first coordinate of the endpoint of this radius will equal t, as shown in the figure here.



To find $\cos^{-1}(-t)$, we need to find a radius whose first coordinate equals $-t$. To do this, flip the radius corresponding to θ across the vertical axis, as shown here.

From the figure, we see that the radius whose endpoint has first coordinate equal to $-t$ forms an angle of θ with the negative horizontal axis; thus this radius corresponds to $\pi - \theta$. In other words, we have $\cos^{-1}(-t) = \pi - \theta$, which we can rewrite as

$$\cos^{-1}(-t) = \pi - \cos^{-1} t.$$

Note that $\pi - \theta$ is in $[0, \pi]$ whenever θ is in $[0, \pi]$. Thus $\pi - \cos^{-1} t$ is in the correct interval to be the arccosine of some number.

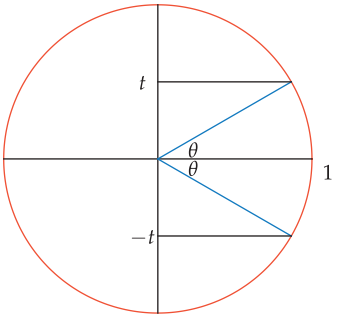
Example 7

Evaluate $\cos^{-1}\left(-\cos\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$.

solution Using the formula above with $t = \cos\frac{\pi}{7}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\cos^{-1}\left(-\cos\tfrac{\pi}{7}\right) &= \pi - \cos^{-1}\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{7}\right)\\ &= \pi - \tfrac{\pi}{7}\\ &= \tfrac{6\pi}{7}.\end{aligned}$$

We now turn to the problem of finding a formula for $\sin^{-1}(-t)$ in terms of $\sin^{-1} t$. To do this, suppose $0 < t < 1$. Let $\theta = \sin^{-1} t$, which implies that $\sin\theta = t$. Consider the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ. The second coordinate of the endpoint of this radius will equal t, as shown here.



To find $\sin^{-1}(-t)$, we need to find a radius whose second coordinate equals $-t$. To do this, flip the radius corresponding to θ across the horizontal axis, as shown here. From this figure, we see that the radius corresponding to $-\theta$ has endpoint with second coordinate $-t$.

In other words, we have $\sin^{-1}(-t) = -\theta$, which we can rewrite as

$$\sin^{-1}(-t) = -\sin^{-1} t.$$

Note that $-\theta$ is in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ whenever θ is in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$. Thus $-\sin^{-1} t$ is in the correct interval to be the arcsine of some number.

Example 8

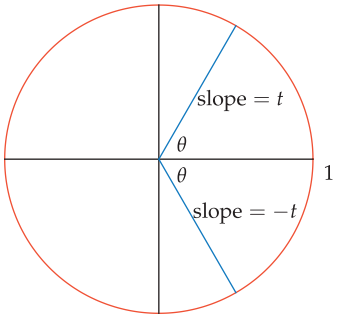
Evaluate $\sin^{-1}\left(-\sin\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$ and $\sin\left(\sin^{-1}\left(-\frac{2}{5}\right)\right)$.

solution Using the formula above with $t = \sin\frac{\pi}{7}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sin^{-1}\left(-\sin\tfrac{\pi}{7}\right) &= -\sin^{-1}\left(\sin\tfrac{\pi}{7}\right)\\ &= -\tfrac{\pi}{7}.\end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}\sin\left(\sin^{-1}\left(-\tfrac{2}{5}\right)\right) &= \sin\left(-\sin^{-1}\left(\tfrac{2}{5}\right)\right)\\ &= -\sin\left(\sin^{-1}\left(\tfrac{2}{5}\right)\right)\\ &= -\tfrac{2}{5}.\end{aligned}$$



We now turn to the problem of finding a formula for $\tan^{-1}(-t)$ in terms of $\tan^{-1} t$. To do this, suppose $t > 0$. Let $\theta = \tan^{-1} t$, which implies that $\tan\theta = t$. Consider the radius of the unit circle corresponding to θ. This radius, which is shown here, has slope t.

To find $\tan^{-1}(-t)$, we need to find a radius whose slope equals $-t$. To do this, flip the radius with slope t across the horizontal axis, which leaves the first coordinate of the endpoint unchanged and multiplies the second coordinate by -1, as shown here.

From the figure, we see that the radius with slope $-t$ corresponds to $-\theta$. In other words, we have $\tan^{-1}(-t) = -\theta$, which we can rewrite as

$$\tan^{-1}(-t) = -\tan^{-1} t.$$

Note that $-\theta$ is in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ whenever θ is in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$. Thus $-\tan^{-1} t$ is in the correct interval to be the arctangent of some number.

In summary, we have found the following identities for computing the inverse trigonometric functions of $-t$.

We derived the first two identities assuming that $0 < t < 1$; for the last identity we assumed $t > 0$. However, the first two identities are valid whenever $-1 \le t \le 1$, and the last identity is valid for all values of t.

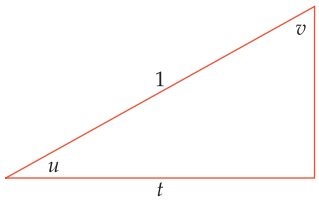
Inverse trigonometric identities for $-t$

$$\cos^{-1}(-t) = \pi - \cos^{-1} t$$

$$\sin^{-1}(-t) = -\sin^{-1} t$$

$$\tan^{-1}(-t) = -\tan^{-1} t$$

Arccosine Plus Arcsine



Suppose $0 < t < 1$. Consider the right triangle shown here, where u denotes the angle adjacent to the side of length t and v denotes the angle opposite the side of length t. We have $\cos u = t$ and $\sin v = t$, which can be rewritten as

$$u = \cos^{-1} t \quad \text{and} \quad v = \sin^{-1} t.$$

As can be seen from the figure, $u + v = \frac{\pi}{2}$, which can be rewritten as

$$\cos^{-1} t + \sin^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

We have derived the equation above under the assumption that $0 < t < 1$, but the equation holds for all t in the interval $[-1, 1]$. Thus we have the following result.

Arccosine plus arcsine

$$\cos^{-1} t + \sin^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

for all t in $[-1, 1]$.

Example 9

Verify the identity above when $t = \frac{1}{2}$.

solution We have $\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{2} = \frac{\pi}{3}$ and $\sin^{-1}\frac{1}{2} = \frac{\pi}{6}$. Adding these together, we have

$$\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{2} + \sin^{-1}\frac{1}{2} = \frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{\pi}{2},$$

as expected from the identity.

Exercises

1 Evaluate $\cos(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4})$.

2 Evaluate $\tan(\tan^{-1}5)$.

3 Evaluate $\tan\big(\tan^{-1}(e+\pi)\big)$.

4 Evaluate $\sin\big(\sin^{-1}(\frac{1}{e}-\frac{1}{\pi})\big)$.

5 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{2\pi}{7})$.

6 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\cos\frac{1}{2})$.

7 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\cos 3\pi)$.

8 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{9\pi}{4})$.

9 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{11\pi}{5})$.

10 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{17\pi}{7})$.

11 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$.

12 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\cos\frac{10\pi}{9})$.

13 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\cos 40°)$.

14 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin 70°)$.

15 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(\tan 340°)$.

16 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(\tan 310°)$.

17 Evaluate $\sin(-\sin^{-1}\frac{3}{13})$.

18 Evaluate $\tan(-\tan^{-1}\frac{7}{11})$.

19 Evaluate $\cos\big(\cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{4})\big)$.

20 Evaluate $\sin\big(\sin^{-1}(-\frac{5}{6})\big)$.

For Exercises 21–28, use the given function f to answer each of the following:

- **(a)** ***Find a formula for f^{-1}.***
- **(b)** ***What is the domain of f^{-1}?***
- **(c)** ***What is the range of f^{-1}?***

21 $f(x)=2+7\cos(4x)$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0,\frac{\pi}{8}]$.

22 $f(x)=5-6\sin(3x)$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0,\frac{\pi}{6}]$.

23 $f(x)=9-8\sin^{-1}x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[-1,1]$.

24 $f(x)=3+4\cos^{-1}x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[-1,1]$.

25 $f(x)=2^{\cos x}$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0,\pi]$.

26 $f(x)=3^{\sin x}$, where the domain of f is the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2},\frac{\pi}{2}]$.

27 $f(x)=\log\cos^{-1}x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[-1,1)$.

28 $f(x)=\ln\sin^{-1}x$, where the domain of f is the interval $(0,1]$.

29 Suppose t is such that $\cos^{-1}t=2$. Evaluate:

- (a) $\cos^{-1}(-t)$
- (b) $\sin^{-1}t$
- (c) $\sin^{-1}(-t)$

30 Suppose t is such that $\cos^{-1}t=\frac{3}{2}$. Evaluate:

- (a) $\cos^{-1}(-t)$
- (b) $\sin^{-1}t$
- (c) $\sin^{-1}(-t)$

31 Suppose t is such that $\sin^{-1}t=\frac{3\pi}{8}$. Evaluate:

- (a) $\sin^{-1}(-t)$
- (b) $\cos^{-1}t$
- (c) $\cos^{-1}(-t)$

32 Suppose t is such that $\sin^{-1}t=-\frac{2\pi}{7}$. Evaluate:

- (a) $\sin^{-1}(-t)$
- (b) $\cos^{-1}t$
- (c) $\cos^{-1}(-t)$

33 Evaluate $\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3})$.

34 Evaluate $\cos(\sin^{-1}\frac{2}{5})$.

35 Evaluate $\tan(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3})$.

36 Evaluate $\tan(\sin^{-1}\frac{2}{5})$.

37 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\cos\frac{2\pi}{5})$.

38 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\sin\frac{4\pi}{9})$.

39 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$.

40 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\cos\frac{10\pi}{9})$.

41 Evaluate $\cos\big(\tan^{-1}(-4)\big)$.

42 Evaluate $\sin\big(\tan^{-1}(-9)\big)$.

Problems

43 Is arccosine an even function, an odd function, or neither?

44 Is arcsine an even function, an odd function, or neither?

45 Is arctangent an even function, an odd function, or neither?

46 Show that

$$\cos(\sin^{-1}t)=\sqrt{1-t^2}$$

whenever $-1\le t\le 1$.

47 Find an identity expressing $\sin(\cos^{-1}t)$ as a nice function of t.

48 Find an identity expressing $\tan(\sin^{-1}t)$ as a nice function of t.

49 Show that

$$\cos(\tan^{-1}t)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+t^2}}$$

for every number t.

50 Find an identity expressing $\sin(\tan^{-1}t)$ as a nice function of t.

51 Explain why

$$\cos^{-1}t=\sin^{-1}\sqrt{1-t^2}$$

whenever $0\le t\le 1$.

52 Explain why

$$\cos^{-1}t=\tan^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{1-t^2}}{t}$$

whenever $0<t\le 1$.

53 Explain why

$$\sin^{-1}t=\tan^{-1}\frac{t}{\sqrt{1-t^2}}$$

whenever $-1<t<1$.

54 Show that if $t > 0$, then

$$\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{t} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} t.$$

55 Show that if $t < 0$, then

$$\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{t} = -\frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} t.$$

56 Explain what is wrong with the following "proof" that $\theta = -\theta$:

Let θ be any angle. Then

$$\cos\theta = \cos(-\theta).$$

Apply $\cos^{-1}$ to both sides of the equation above, getting

$$\cos^{-1}(\cos\theta) = \cos^{-1}\big(\cos(-\theta)\big).$$

Because $\cos^{-1}$ is the inverse of cos, the equation above implies that

$$\theta = -\theta.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Evaluate $\cos(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4})$.

solution Let $\theta = \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}$. Thus θ is the angle in $[0, \pi]$ such that $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{4}$. Thus $\cos(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}) = \cos\theta = \frac{1}{4}$.

3 Evaluate $\tan\big(\tan^{-1}(e+\pi)\big)$.

solution Let $\theta = \tan^{-1}(e+\pi)$. Thus θ is the angle in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ such that $\tan\theta = e+\pi$. Thus we have $\tan\big(\tan^{-1}(e+\pi)\big) = \tan\theta = e+\pi$.

5 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{2\pi}{7})$.

solution Let $\theta = \sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{2\pi}{7})$. Thus θ is the angle in the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ such that

$$\sin\theta = \sin\frac{2\pi}{7}.$$

Because $-\frac{1}{2} \le \frac{2}{7} \le \frac{1}{2}$, we see that $\frac{2\pi}{7}$ is in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$. Thus the equation above implies that $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{7}$.

7 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\cos 3\pi)$.

solution Because $\cos 3\pi = -1$, we see that

$$\cos^{-1}(\cos 3\pi) = \cos^{-1}(-1).$$

Because $\cos\pi = -1$, we have $\cos^{-1}(-1) = \pi$ (note that $\cos 3\pi$ also equals -1, but $\cos^{-1}(-1)$ must be in the interval $[0, \pi]$). Thus $\cos^{-1}(\cos 3\pi) = \pi$.

9 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{11\pi}{5})$.

solution Because $\tan^{-1}$ is the inverse of tan, it may be tempting to think that $\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{11\pi}{5})$ equals $\frac{11\pi}{5}$. However, the values of $\tan^{-1}$ must be between $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Because $\frac{11\pi}{5} > \frac{\pi}{2}$, we conclude that $\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{11\pi}{5})$ cannot equal $\frac{11\pi}{5}$.

Note that

$$\tan\frac{11\pi}{5} = \tan(2\pi + \frac{\pi}{5}) = \tan\frac{\pi}{5}.$$

Because $\frac{\pi}{5}$ is in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$, we have $\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{\pi}{5}) = \frac{\pi}{5}$. Thus

$$\tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{11\pi}{5}) = \tan^{-1}(\tan\frac{\pi}{5}) = \frac{\pi}{5}.$$

11 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$.

solution Because $\sin^{-1}$ is the inverse of sin, it may be tempting to think that $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$ equals $\frac{6\pi}{7}$. However, the values of $\sin^{-1}$ lie in the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$. Because $\frac{6\pi}{7} > \frac{\pi}{2}$, we conclude that $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$ cannot equal $\frac{6\pi}{7}$.

Note that

$$\sin\frac{6\pi}{7} = \sin(\pi - \frac{6\pi}{7}) = \sin\frac{\pi}{7}.$$

Because $\frac{\pi}{7}$ is in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$, we have $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{\pi}{7}) = \frac{\pi}{7}$. Thus

$$\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7}) = \sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{\pi}{7}) = \frac{\pi}{7}.$$

13 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\cos 40^\circ)$.

solution $\cos^{-1}(\cos 40^\circ) = \cos^{-1}(\cos\frac{2\pi}{9}) = \frac{2\pi}{9}$

15 Evaluate $\tan^{-1}(\tan 340^\circ)$.

solution Note that $\tan 340^\circ = \tan(-20^\circ) = \tan(-\frac{\pi}{9})$. Thus

$$\tan^{-1}(\tan 340^\circ) = \tan^{-1}\big(\tan(-\tfrac{\pi}{9})\big) = -\frac{\pi}{9}.$$

remark The expression $\tan 340^\circ$ is rewritten above as $\tan(-\frac{\pi}{9})$ because (1) we need to work in radians and (2) we need an angle in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ so that we can apply the identity involving the composition of $\tan^{-1}$ and tan.

17 Evaluate $\sin(-\sin^{-1}\frac{3}{13})$.

solution $\sin(-\sin^{-1}\frac{3}{13}) = -\sin(\sin^{-1}\frac{3}{13}) = -\frac{3}{13}$

19 Evaluate $\cos\big(\cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{4})\big)$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\big(\cos^{-1}(-\tfrac{1}{4})\big) &= \cos(\pi - \cos^{-1}\tfrac{1}{4}) \\ &= \cos(\cos^{-1}\tfrac{1}{4} - \pi) \\ &= \cos(\cos^{-1}\tfrac{1}{4}) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{4}\end{aligned}$$

For Exercises 21–28, use the given function f to answer each of the following:

(a) ***Find a formula for f^{-1}.***

(b) ***What is the domain of f^{-1}?***

(c) ***What is the range of f^{-1}?***

21 $f(x) = 2 + 7\cos(4x)$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0, \frac{\pi}{8}]$.

solution

(a) We need to solve the equation $y = 2 + 7\cos(4x)$ for x. We have $\cos(4x) = \frac{y-2}{7}$, which implies that $4x = \cos^{-1}\frac{y-2}{7}$. Hence $x = \frac{1}{4}\cos^{-1}\frac{y-2}{7}$. Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \frac{1}{4}\cos^{-1}\frac{y-2}{7}$.

(b) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. As x varies over $[0, \frac{\pi}{8}]$, the values of $2 + 7\cos(4x)$ vary over $[2, 9]$. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $[2, 9]$.

(c) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f, which is $[0, \frac{\pi}{8}]$.

23 $f(x) = 9 - 8\sin^{-1} x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

solution

(a) We need to solve the equation $y = 9 - 8\sin^{-1} x$ for x. We have $\sin^{-1} x = \frac{9-y}{8}$. Hence $x = \sin\frac{9-y}{8}$. Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \sin\frac{9-y}{8}$.

(b) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. As x varies over $[-1, 1]$, the values of $9 - 8\sin^{-1} x$ vary over $[9 - 4\pi, 9 + 4\pi]$. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $[9 - 4\pi, 9 + 4\pi]$.

(c) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f, which is $[-1, 1]$.

25 $f(x) = 2^{\cos x}$, where the domain of f is the interval $[0, \pi]$.

solution

(a) We need to solve the equation $y = 2^{\cos x}$ for x. We have $\cos x = \log_2 y$. Hence $x = \cos^{-1}\log_2 y$. Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \cos^{-1}\log_2 y$.

(b) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. As x varies over $[0, \pi]$, the values of $2^{\cos x}$ vary over $[\frac{1}{2}, 2]$. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, 2]$.

(c) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f, which is $[0, \pi]$.

27 $f(x) = \log\cos^{-1} x$, where the domain of f is the interval $[-1, 1)$.

solution

(a) We need to solve the equation $y = \log\cos^{-1} x$ for x. We have $\cos^{-1} x = 10^y$. Hence $x = \cos(10^y)$. Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \cos(10^y)$.

(b) The domain of f^{-1} equals the range of f. As x varies over $[-1, 1)$, the values of $\log\cos^{-1} x$ vary over $(-\infty, \log\pi]$. Thus the domain of f^{-1} is the interval $(-\infty, \log\pi]$.

(c) The range of f^{-1} equals the domain of f, which is $[-1, 1)$.

29 Suppose t is such that $\cos^{-1} t = 2$. Evaluate:

(a) $\cos^{-1}(-t)$ (c) $\sin^{-1}(-t)$

(b) $\sin^{-1} t$

solution

(a) $\cos^{-1}(-t) = \pi - \cos^{-1} t = \pi - 2$

(b) $\sin^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2} - 2$

(c) $\sin^{-1}(-t) = -\sin^{-1} t = 2 - \frac{\pi}{2}$

31 Suppose t is such that $\sin^{-1} t = \frac{3\pi}{8}$. Evaluate:

(a) $\sin^{-1}(-t)$ (c) $\cos^{-1}(-t)$

(b) $\cos^{-1} t$

solution

(a) $\sin^{-1}(-t) = -\sin^{-1} t = -\frac{3\pi}{8}$

(b) $\cos^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^{-1} t = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{3\pi}{8} = \frac{\pi}{8}$

(c) $\cos^{-1}(-t) = \pi - \cos^{-1} t = \pi - \frac{\pi}{8} = \frac{7\pi}{8}$

33 Evaluate $\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3})$.

solution We give two ways to work this exercise: the algebraic approach and the right-triangle approach.

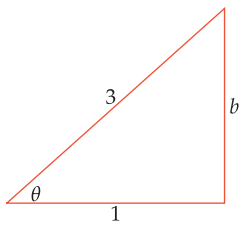
Algebraic approach: Let $\theta = \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$. Thus θ is the angle in $[0, \pi]$ such that $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{3}$. Note that $\sin\theta \geq 0$ because θ is in $[0, \pi]$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3}) &= \sin\theta \\ &= \sqrt{1 - \cos^2\theta} \\ &= \sqrt{1 - \frac{1}{9}} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{8}{9}} \\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}.\end{aligned}$$

Right-triangle approach: Let $\theta = \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$; thus $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{3}$. Because

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

in a right triangle with an angle of θ, the following figure (which is not drawn to scale) illustrates the situation.



We need to evaluate $\sin\theta$. In terms of the figure above, we have

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{b}{3}.$$

Applying the Pythagorean Theorem to the triangle above, we have $b^2 + 1 = 9$, which implies that $b = \sqrt{8} = 2\sqrt{2}$. Thus $\sin\theta = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$. In other words, $\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3}) = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$.

35 Evaluate $\tan(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3})$.

solution We give two ways to work this exercise: the algebraic approach and the right-triangle approach.

Algebraic approach: From Exercise 33, we already know that

$$\sin(\cos^{-1}\tfrac{1}{3}) = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}.$$

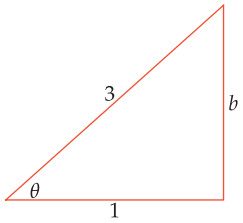
Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(\cos^{-1}\tfrac{1}{3}) &= \frac{\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3})}{\cos(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3})}\\ &= \frac{\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}}{\frac{1}{3}}\\ &= 2\sqrt{2}.\end{aligned}$$

Right-triangle approach: Let $\theta = \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$; thus $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{3}$. Because

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

in a right triangle with an angle of θ, the following figure (which is not drawn to scale) illustrates the situation.



We need to evaluate $\tan\theta$. In terms of the figure above, we have

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = b.$$

Applying the Pythagorean Theorem to the triangle above, we have $b^2 + 1 = 9$, which implies that $b = \sqrt{8} = 2\sqrt{2}$. Thus $\tan\theta = 2\sqrt{2}$. In other words, $\tan(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{3}) = 2\sqrt{2}$.

37 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\cos\frac{2\pi}{5})$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin^{-1}(\cos\tfrac{2\pi}{5}) &= \frac{\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1}(\cos\tfrac{2\pi}{5})\\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{2\pi}{5} = \frac{\pi}{10}\end{aligned}$$

39 Evaluate $\cos^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos^{-1}(\sin\tfrac{6\pi}{7}) &= \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^{-1}(\sin\tfrac{6\pi}{7})\\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\pi}{7}\\ &= \frac{5\pi}{14},\end{aligned}$$

where the value of $\sin^{-1}(\sin\frac{6\pi}{7})$ comes from the solution to Exercise 11.

41 Evaluate $\cos(\tan^{-1}(-4))$.

solution We give two ways to work this exercise: the algebraic approach and the right-triangle approach.

Algebraic approach: Let $\theta = \tan^{-1}(-4)$. Thus θ is the angle in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ such that $\tan\theta = -4$. Note that $\cos\theta > 0$ because θ is in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

Recall that dividing both sides of the identity $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1$ by $\cos^2\theta$ produces the equation $1 + \tan^2\theta = \frac{1}{\cos^2\theta}$. Solving this equation for $\cos\theta$ gives the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\cos(\tan^{-1}(-4)) &= \cos\theta\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\tan^2\theta}}\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(-4)^2}}\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{17}} = \frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}.\end{aligned}$$

Right-triangle approach: Sides with negative length make no sense in a right triangle. Thus first we use some identities to get rid of the minus sign, as follows:

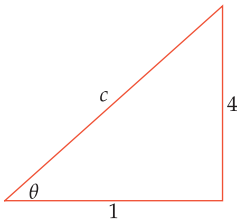
$$\cos(\tan^{-1}(-4)) = \cos(-\tan^{-1}4) = \cos(\tan^{-1}4).$$

Thus we need to evaluate $\cos(\tan^{-1}4)$.

Now let $\theta = \tan^{-1}4$; thus $\tan\theta = 4$. Because

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}}$$

in a right triangle with an angle of θ, the following figure (which is not drawn to scale) illustrates the situation.



We need to evaluate $\cos\theta$. In terms of the figure above, we have

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{1}{c}.$$

Applying the Pythagorean Theorem to the triangle above, we have $c^2 = 1 + 16$, which implies that $c = \sqrt{17}$. Thus $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{17}} = \frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}$. In other words, $\cos(\tan^{-1}4) = \frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}$. Thus $\cos(\tan^{-1}(-4)) = \frac{\sqrt{17}}{17}$.

5.3 Using Trigonometry to Compute Area

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

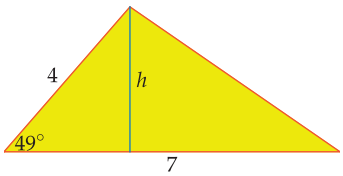
- compute the area of a triangle given the lengths of two sides and the angle between them;
- deal with the ambiguous angle problem that sometimes arises when trying to find the angle between two sides of a triangle or a parallelogram;
- compute the area of a parallelogram given the lengths of two adjacent sides and the angle between them;
- compute the area of a regular polygon;
- use trigonometric approximations.

The Area of a Triangle via Trigonometry

Suppose we know the lengths of two sides of a triangle and the angle between those two sides. How can we find the area of the triangle? The next example uses trigonometry to solve this problem.

Example 1

Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 4 and 7 and a 49° angle between those two sides.



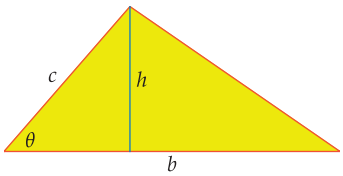
solution We consider the side of length 7 to be the base of the triangle. Let h denote the corresponding height of the triangle, as shown here.

Looking at the figure here, we see that $\sin 49^\circ = \frac{h}{4}$. Solving for h, we have $h = 4 \sin 49^\circ$.

The area of a triangle equals one-half the base times height. Thus this triangle has area

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 7 \cdot h = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 7 \cdot 4 \sin 49^\circ = 14 \sin 49^\circ \approx 10.566.$$

To find a formula for the area of a triangle given the lengths of two sides and the angle between those two sides, we repeat the process used in the example above. Consider a triangle with sides of length b and c and angle θ between those two sides. We consider b to be the base of the triangle. Let h denote the corresponding height of this triangle.



A triangle with base b and height h.

Looking at the figure here, we see that $\sin \theta = \frac{h}{c}$. Solving for h, we have

$$h = c \sin \theta.$$

The area of the triangle above is $\frac{1}{2}bh$. Substituting $c \sin \theta$ for h shows that the area of the triangle equals $\frac{1}{2}bc \sin \theta$. Thus we have the following formula.

Area of a triangle

A triangle with sides of length b and c and with angle θ between those two sides has area $\frac{1}{2}bc \sin \theta$.

Ambiguous Angles

Suppose a triangle has sides of lengths b and c, an angle θ between those sides, and area A. Given any three of b, c, θ, and A, we can use the equation

$$A = \frac{1}{2}bc\sin\theta$$

to solve for the other quantity. This process is mostly straightforward—the exercises at the end of this section provide some practice in this procedure.

However, a subtlety arises when we know the lengths b, c and the area A and we need to find the angle θ. Solving the equation above for $\sin\theta$, we get

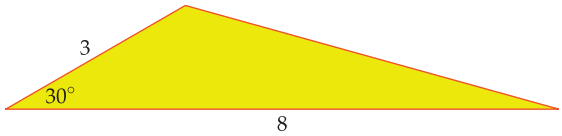
$$\sin\theta = \frac{2A}{bc}.$$

Thus θ is an angle whose sine equals $\frac{2A}{bc}$, and it would seem that we finish by taking $\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{2A}{bc}$. Sometimes this is correct, but not always. Let's look at an example to see what can happen.

Example 2

Suppose a triangle with area 6 has sides of lengths 3 and 8. Find the angle between those two sides.

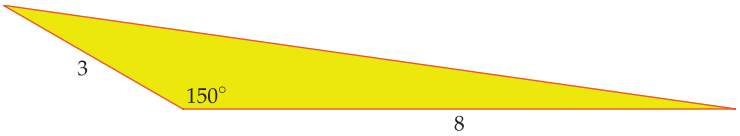
solution Solving for $\sin\theta$ as above, we have $\sin\theta = \frac{2A}{bc} = \frac{2\cdot 6}{3\cdot 8} = \frac{1}{2}$. Now $\sin^{-1}\frac{1}{2}$ equals $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians, which equals 30°. Thus it appears that our triangle should look like the one below.



This triangle has area 6.

Both these triangles have area 6 and have sides of lengths 3 and 8.

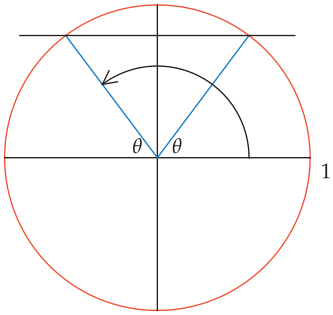
However, the sine of 150° also equals $\frac{1}{2}$. Thus the following triangle with sides of lengths 3 and 8 also has area 6.



This triangle also has area 6.

If the only information available is that the triangle has area 6 and sides of length 3 and 8, then there is no way to decide between the two possibilities above.

Do not mistakenly think that because $\sin^{-1}\frac{1}{2}$ is defined to equal $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radians (which equals 30°), the preferred solution in the example above is to choose $\theta = 30°$. We defined the arcsine of a number to be in the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ because some choice needed to be made to obtain a well-defined inverse for the sine. However, remember that given a number t in $[-1, 1]$, there are angles other than $\sin^{-1} t$ whose sine equals t (although there is only one such angle in the interval $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$).



This picture shows why $\sin(\pi - \theta) = \sin\theta$. *The arrow shows the angle* $\pi - \theta$.

In the example above, we had 30° and 150° as two angles whose sine equals $\frac{1}{2}$. More generally, given any number t in $[-1, 1]$ and an angle θ such that $\sin\theta = t$, we also have $\sin(\pi - \theta) = t$. This follows from the identity $\sin(\pi - \theta) = \sin\theta$, which can be derived as follows:

$$\sin(\pi - \theta) = -\big(\sin(\theta - \pi)\big) = -(-\sin\theta) = \sin\theta,$$

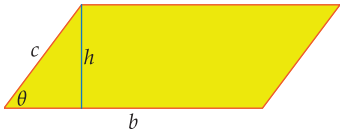
where the first equality follows from our identity for the sine of the negative of an angle (Section 4.6) and the second equality follows from our formula for the sine of $\theta + n\pi$, with $n = -1$ (Section 4.6).

When working in degrees instead of radians, the result in the previous paragraph should be restated to say that the angles θ° and $(180-\theta)^\circ$ have the same sine.

Returning to the example above, note that in addition to 30° and 150°, there are other angles whose sine equals $\frac{1}{2}$. For example, -330° and 390° are two such angles. But a triangle cannot have a negative angle, and a triangle cannot have an angle larger than 180°. Thus neither -330° nor 390° is a viable possibility for the angle θ in the triangle in question.

The Area of a Parallelogram via Trigonometry

Consider a parallelogram with sides of length b and c and angle θ between those two sides, as shown here. We consider b to be the base of the parallelogram, and we let h denote the height of the parallelogram. Recall that the area of a parallelogram equals the base times the height.



A parallelogram with base b and height h.

Looking at the figure above, we see that $\sin\theta = \frac{h}{c}$. Solving for h, we have

$$h = c\sin\theta.$$

The area of the parallelogram above is bh. Substituting $c\sin\theta$ for h shows that the area equals $bc\sin\theta$. Thus we have the following formula.

Area of a parallelogram

A parallelogram with adjacent sides of lengths b and c and with angle θ between those two sides has area $bc\sin\theta$.

Suppose a parallelogram has adjacent sides of lengths b and c, an angle θ between those sides, and area A. Given any three of b, c, θ, and A, we can use the equation

$$A = bc\sin\theta$$

to solve for the other quantity. As with the case of a triangle, if we know the lengths b and c and the area A, then there can be two possible choices for θ. For a parallelogram, both choices can be correct, as illustrated in the next example.

Example 3

A parallelogram has area 40 and pairs of sides with lengths 5 and 10, as shown here. Find the angle between the sides of lengths 5 and 10.

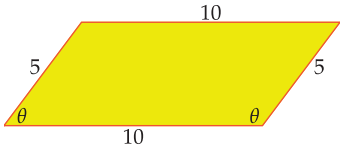
solution Solving the area formula above for $\sin\theta$, we have

$$\sin\theta = \frac{A}{bc} = \frac{40}{5\cdot 10} = \frac{4}{5}.$$

A calculator shows that $\sin^{-1}\frac{4}{5} \approx 0.927$ radians, which is approximately 53.1°. An angle of $\pi - \sin^{-1}\frac{4}{5}$, which is approximately 126.9°, also has a sine equal to $\frac{4}{5}$.

To determine whether $\theta \approx 53.1^\circ$ or whether $\theta \approx 126.9^\circ$, we need to look at the figure here. As you can see, two angles have been labeled θ—both angles are between sides of length 5 and 10, reflecting the ambiguity in the statement of the problem. Although the ambiguity makes this a poorly stated problem, our formula has found both possible answers!

Specifically, if what was meant was the acute angle θ above (the leftmost angle labeled θ), then $\theta \approx 53.1^\circ$; if what was meant was the obtuse angle θ above (the rightmost angle labeled θ), then $\theta \approx 126.9^\circ$.



An angle θ measured in degrees is **obtuse** *if* $90^\circ < \theta < 180^\circ$.

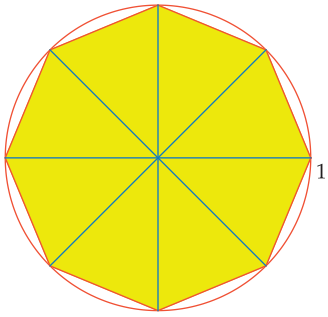
The Area of a Polygon

One way to find the area of a polygon is to decompose the polygon into triangles and then compute the sum of the areas of the triangles. This procedure works particularly well for a **regular polygon**, which is a polygon all of whose sides have the same length and all of whose angles are equal. For example, a regular polygon with four sides is a square.

The following example illustrates the procedure for finding the area of a regular polygon. Recall that a polygon with eight sides is called an **octagon**.

Example 4

Find the area of a regular octagon whose vertices are eight equally spaced points on the unit circle.



A regular octagon inscribed in the unit circle and decomposed into 8 triangles.

solution The figure here shows how the octagon can be decomposed into triangles by drawing line segments from the center of the circle to the vertices.

Each triangle shown here has two sides that are radii of the unit circle; thus those two sides of the triangle each have length 1. The angle between those two radii is $\frac{2\pi}{8}$ radians (because one rotation around the entire circle is an angle of 2π radians and each of the eight triangles has an angle that takes up one-eighth of the total). Now $\frac{2\pi}{8}$ radians equals $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians (or 45°). Thus each of the eight triangles has area

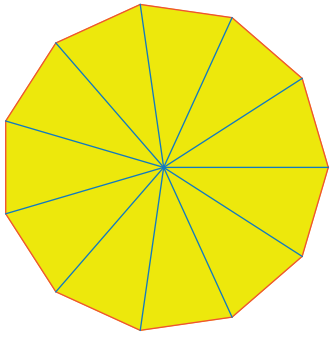
$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 1 \cdot 1 \cdot \sin \frac{\pi}{4},$$

which equals $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$. Thus the sum of the areas of the eight triangles equals $8 \cdot \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$, which equals $2\sqrt{2}$. In other words, the octagon has area $2\sqrt{2}$.

The next example shows how to compute the area of a regular polygon that is not inscribed in the unit circle.

Example 5

Assume the face of a loonie, the 11-sided Canadian one-dollar coin shown here and on the opening page of this chapter, is a regular 11-sided polygon (this is not quite true, because the edges of the loonie are slightly curved). The distance from the center of a loonie to one of the vertices is 1.325 centimeters. Find the area of the face of a loonie.



A regular 11-sided polygon, decomposed into 11 triangles.

solution Decompose a regular 11-sided polygon representing the loonie into triangles by drawing line segments from the center to the vertices, as shown below. Each triangle has two sides of length 1.325 centimeters. The angle between those two sides is $\frac{2\pi}{11}$ radians (because one full rotation is an angle of 2π radians and each of the 11 triangles has an angle that takes up one-eleventh of the total). Thus each of the 11 triangles has area

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 1.325 \cdot 1.325 \cdot \sin \frac{2\pi}{11}$$

square centimeters. The area of the 11-sided polygon is the sum of the areas of the 11 triangles, which equals

$$11 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot 1.325 \cdot 1.325 \cdot \sin \frac{2\pi}{11}$$

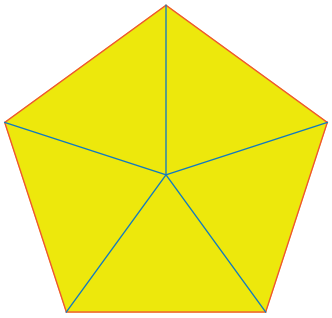
square centimeters, which is approximately 5.22 square centimeters.

remark Although the loonie is gold colored (gold coloured in Canada), it contains no gold.

The technique for finding the area of a regular polygon changes slightly when we know the length of each side instead of the distance from the center to a vertex. The next example illustrates this procedure.

Example 6

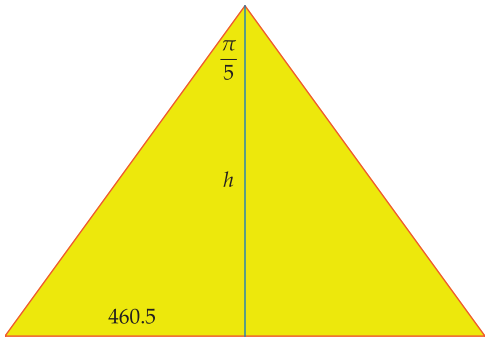
Each side of the Pentagon that houses the U.S. Department of Defense has length 921 feet. Find the area of the Pentagon.



The Pentagon, decomposed into 5 triangles.

solution Decompose a regular pentagon representing the Pentagon into triangles by drawing line segments from the center to the vertices, as shown here. In each triangle, there is a $\frac{2\pi}{5}$ radian angle between the two sides of equal length (because we have divided the circle into five equal angles), with the side opposite that angle having length 921 feet.

We do not know the distance from the center of the Pentagon to a vertex. Thus to find the area of each triangle, consider the bottom triangle in the Pentagon, as shown here (with a different scale than in the Pentagon).



Each of the base angles in this triangle is $\frac{3\pi}{10}$ radians, which equals 54°.

A perpendicular has been dropped from the vertex to the base. The length of this perpendicular has been labeled h, the height of the triangle. Because the angle at the vertex is $\frac{2\pi}{5}$ radians, the top angle in the right triangle is $\frac{\pi}{5}$ radians, as shown in the figure above. Because each side of the Pentagon has length 921 feet, the side of the right triangle opposite this angle has length $\frac{921}{2}$, which equals 460.5, as shown in the figure.

The figure above also shows that $\tan \frac{\pi}{5} = \frac{460.5}{h}$. Thus

$$h = \frac{460.5}{\tan \frac{\pi}{5}}.$$

Hence the area (one-half base times height) of the large triangle above is

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 921 \cdot \frac{460.5}{\tan \frac{\pi}{5}}$$

square feet, which equals

$$\frac{212060.25}{\tan \frac{\pi}{5}}$$

square feet. Thus the total area of the Pentagon is

$$5 \cdot \frac{212060.25}{\tan \frac{\pi}{5}}$$

square feet, which is approximately 1.46 million square feet.

Trigonometric Approximations

Consider the following table showing $\sin\theta$ and $\tan\theta$ (rounded off to an appropriate number of digits) for some small values of θ.

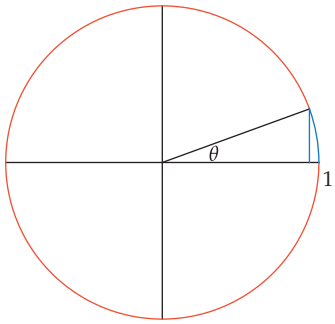
θ	$\sin\theta$	$\tan\theta$
0.5	0.48	0.55
0.05	0.04998	0.05004
0.005	0.00499998	0.00500004
0.0005	0.00049999998	0.00050000004
0.00005	0.00004999999998	0.00005000000004

Here $\sin\theta$ and $\tan\theta$ are computed assuming that θ is an angle measured in radians.

Note that $\sin\theta \approx \tan\theta$ for the small values of θ in this table, with the approximate equality of $\sin\theta$ and $\tan\theta$ becoming closer to an equality as θ gets smaller. To understand why this happens, recall that $\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$. Because $\cos\theta$ gets very close to 1 as θ gets very close to 0, we have $\tan\theta \approx \sin\theta$ when θ is small.

The table above also shows the more surprising approximations $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ and $\tan\theta \approx \theta$, again with these approximations becoming closer to equalities as θ gets smaller.

To see why these last approximations hold, consider the figure shown here. The blue vertical line segment has length $\sin\theta$; the blue circular arc has length θ (see Section 4.2). If θ is small, then these two lengths are approximately the same. Thus $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ if θ is small.



The blue vertical line segment (length $\sin\theta$) and the blue circular arc (length θ) have approximately the same length if θ is small.

The approximations $\tan\theta \approx \sin\theta$ and $\sin\theta \approx \theta$, both holding if θ is small, now show that $\tan\theta \approx \theta$ if θ is small, explaining the behavior we noticed in the table above. Thus we have the following result.

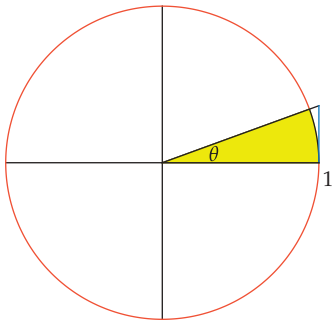
Approximation of $\sin\theta$ *and* $\tan\theta$

If $|\theta|$ is small then

$$\sin\theta \approx \theta \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\theta \approx \theta.$$

The pretty approximation above holds only when θ is measured in radians. This result shows again why radians are the natural unit for angles.

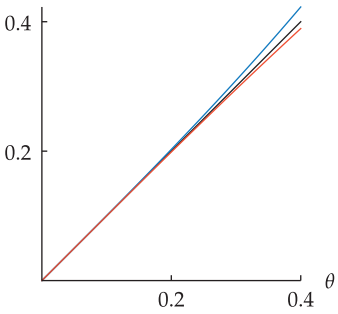
In the figure we used above, the blue vertical line segment is shorter than the blue circular arc. Thus we conclude that $\sin\theta < \theta$.



The blue vertical line segment has length $\tan\theta$. The yellow region has area $\frac{\theta}{2}$; the triangle has area $\frac{\tan\theta}{2}$. Thus $\theta < \tan\theta$.

To get an inequality involving $\tan\theta$, consider the figure shown here. The yellow region has area $\frac{\theta}{2}$ (because the area inside the entire circle is π and the fraction of the area occupied by the yellow region is $\frac{\theta}{2\pi}$; see the material titled "Area of a Slice" in Section 4.2). The blue vertical line segment has length $\tan\theta$. Thus the right triangle, which has base 1 and height $\tan\theta$, has area $\frac{\tan\theta}{2}$. Because the yellow region lies inside the triangle, we have $\frac{\theta}{2} < \frac{\tan\theta}{2}$. Thus $\theta < \tan\theta$.

Putting together the inequalities derived in the two previous paragraphs gives the following beautiful result.



The graphs of $\sin\theta$ (orange), θ (black), and $\tan\theta$ (blue) on the interval $[0, 0.4]$.

θ *is between* $\sin\theta$ *and* $\tan\theta$

If $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ then

$$\sin\theta < \theta < \tan\theta.$$

The inequalities above agree with the table at the beginning of this subsection, where we saw that $\sin\theta$ is slightly less than θ and $\tan\theta$ is slightly larger than θ for small values of θ.

For small values of θ, the approximations $\sin\theta \approx \theta \approx \tan\theta$ are so accurate that we cannot seen the differences in the graphs of these three functions on the first half of the domain shown in the figure here.

Sometimes the result in the last box is more useful if it is rewritten in a slightly different form. To do this, rewrite the last inequality as $\theta < \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$. Multiply both sides of this inequality by $\cos\theta$, then divide both sides by θ to produce the inequality $\cos\theta < \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}$.

Next, divide both sides of the inequality $\sin\theta < \theta$ from the last box by θ to produce the inequality $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} < 1$.

Putting together the inequalities from the two previous paragraphs shows that $\cos\theta < \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} < 1$. This result has been derived under the assumption that $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, but replacing θ by $-\theta$ does not change either $\cos\theta$ or $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}$. Thus we have the following result.

Inequality for $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}$

If $0 < |\theta| < \frac{\pi}{2}$, then

$$\cos\theta < \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} < 1.$$

The inequalities in this subsection hold only if we are using radians.

Suppose $|\theta|$ is small. Then $\cos\theta$ is very close to 1. Thus the inequality in the box above sandwiches $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}$ between 1 and a number very close to 1. This implies the following result.

Approximation of $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}$

If $|\theta|$ is small but nonzero, then

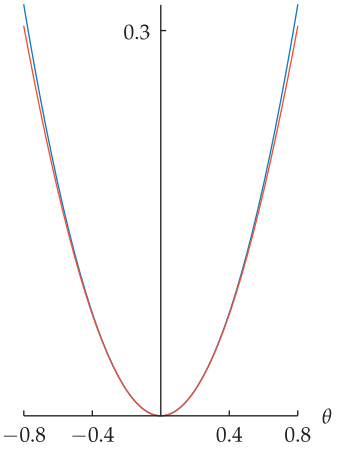
$$\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} \approx 1.$$

For example, $\frac{\sin 0.001}{0.001}$ *rounded off to seven digits after the decimal point equals* 0.9999998.

Now we will see how to approximate $\cos\theta$ for small values of θ. The key to this result is the next manipulation, which allows us to use the approximation of $\sin\theta$ that we have already derived.

Suppose $|\theta|$ is small. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 1 - \cos\theta &= (1 - \cos\theta) \cdot \frac{1 + \cos\theta}{1 + \cos\theta} \\ &= \frac{1 - \cos^2\theta}{1 + \cos\theta} \\ &= \frac{\sin^2\theta}{1 + \cos\theta} \\ &\approx \frac{\theta^2}{1 + \cos\theta} \\ &\approx \frac{\theta^2}{2}. \end{aligned}$$



The graphs of $1 - \cos\theta$ *(orange) and* $\frac{\theta^2}{2}$ *(blue) on the interval* $[-0.8, 0.8]$. *These graphs can barely be distinguished.*

We have just shown that if $|\theta|$ is small, then $1 - \cos\theta \approx \frac{\theta^2}{2}$. Solving for $\cos\theta$ now gives the following result.

Approximation of $\cos\theta$

If $|\theta|$ is small then

$$\cos\theta \approx 1 - \frac{\theta^2}{2}.$$

For example, $\cos 0.01$ *rounded off to ten digits after the decimal point equals* 0.9999500004. *Because* $1 - \frac{0.01^2}{2}$ *equals exactly* 0.99995, *the approximation is quite good.*

We conclude this section with an amusing trick.

Example 7

You may want to let four different people give you four different digits so that the audience sees that there is no collusion.

Consider the following trick:

With an audience containing at least one person with a scientific calculator, ask everyone to set their calculators to work in degrees. Ask for a number with two digits before the decimal point and two digits after the decimal point. Let's say the number given to you by the audience is 69.23. Now ask the people with calculators to compute

$$\tan\big(\cos(\sin 69.23^\circ)\big)$$

but caution them not to say the result. Meanwhile, you (pretend to) calculate this quantity in your head. After the people with calculators have had enough time to get the answer, announce that the result is 0.01745 plus some additional digits. Ask the people with calculators to confirm that this is correct, and accept applause for being able to do this calculation in your head.

(a) How did you do this trick?

(b) Why does this trick work?

solution

(a) The answer is always 0.01745 plus some additional digits, regardless of the original input.

(b) Call the original input θ. The first step in this calculation evaluates $\sin\theta$, producing a number in the interval $[-1, 1]$.

The next step in this calculation evaluates $\cos(\sin\theta)$. But remember that you asked for the calculators to be set to work in degrees. So we are evaluating the cosine of an angle between -1° and 1°. In terms of radians, this is an angle between $-\frac{\pi}{180}$ radians and $\frac{\pi}{180}$ radians, which are small numbers. Thus according to our estimate for $\cos\theta$ when θ is small, $\cos(\sin\theta)$ should differ from 1 by at most $\frac{1}{2}\cdot\left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right)^2$, which is about 0.00015. Because 0.00015 is a small number, we have $\cos(\sin\theta) \approx 1$.

The final step in this calculation evaluates $\tan\big(\cos(\sin\theta)\big)$. Again, remember that the calculators are working in degrees. Thus the paragraph above shows that the number we are evaluating is approximately $\tan 1^\circ$. Convert to radians, showing that the number we are evaluating is approximately $\tan\frac{\pi}{180}$. Now $\frac{\pi}{180}$ is approximately 0.01745, which is a fairly small number. Our estimate for the tangent of a small number now shows that

$$\begin{aligned}\tan\big(\cos(\sin\theta)\big) &\approx \tan 1^\circ \\ &= \tan\tfrac{\pi}{180} \\ &\approx \tan 0.01745 \\ &\approx 0.01745.\end{aligned}$$

Some people in your audience are likely to experiment and discover that the result is always 0.01745 plus some additional digits. You might ask them to try to figure out why this happens. A good hint to give them is that $\frac{\pi}{180} \approx 0.01745$.

A small amount of experimentation shows that the estimates above are good enough to produce a result of 0.01745 plus some additional digits, regardless of the original angle.

Exercises

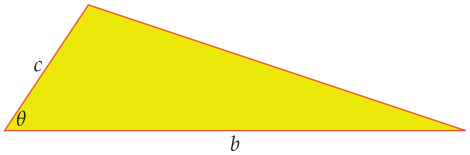
1 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 3 and 4, with a 37° angle between those sides.

2 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 4 and 5, with a 41° angle between those sides.

3 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 2 and 7, with a 3 radian angle between those sides.

4 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 5 and 6, with a 2 radian angle between those sides.

For Exercises 5–12 use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale).



5 Find the value of b if $c = 3$, $\theta = 30°$, and the area of the triangle equals 5.

6 Find the value of c if $b = 5$, $\theta = 45°$, and the area of the triangle equals 8.

7 Find the value of c if $b = 7$, $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$, and the area of the triangle equals 10.

8 Find the value of b if $c = 9$, $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$, and the area of the triangle equals 4.

9 Find the value of θ (in radians) if $b = 6$, $c = 7$, the area of the triangle equals 15, and $\theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$.

10 Find the value of θ (in radians) if $b = 4$, $c = 5$, the area of the triangle equals 3, and $\theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$.

11 Find the value of θ (in degrees) if $b = 3$, $c = 6$, the area of the triangle equals 5, and $\theta > 90°$.

12 Find the value of θ (in degrees) if $b = 5$, $c = 8$, the area of the triangle equals 12, and $\theta > 90°$.

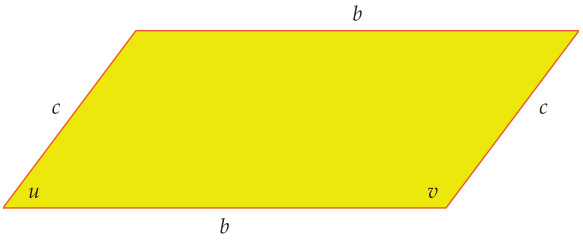
13 Find the area of a parallelogram that has pairs of sides of lengths 6 and 9, with an 81° angle between two of those sides.

14 Find the area of a parallelogram that has pairs of sides of lengths 5 and 11, with a 28° angle between two of those sides.

15 Find the area of a parallelogram that has pairs of sides of lengths 4 and 10, with a $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radian angle between two of those sides.

16 Find the area of a parallelogram that has pairs of sides of lengths 3 and 12, with a $\frac{\pi}{3}$ radian angle between two of those sides.

For Exercises 17–24, use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale except that u is indeed meant to be an acute angle and v is indeed meant to be an obtuse angle).



17 Find the value of b if $c = 4$, $v = 135°$, and the area of the parallelogram equals 7.

18 Find the value of c if $b = 6$, $v = 120°$, and the area of the parallelogram equals 11.

19 Find the value of c if $b = 10$, $u = \frac{\pi}{3}$, and the area of the parallelogram equals 7.

20 Find the value of b if $c = 5$, $u = \frac{\pi}{4}$, and the area of the parallelogram equals 9.

21 Find the value of u (in radians) if $b = 4$, $c = 3$, and the parallelogram has area 10.

22 Find the value of u (in radians) if $b = 6$, $c = 4$, and the parallelogram has area 19.

23 Find the value of v (in degrees) if $b = 7$, $c = 6$, and the parallelogram has area 31.

24 Find the value of v (in degrees) if $b = 5$, $c = 8$, and the parallelogram has area 12.

25 What is the largest possible area for a triangle that has one side of length 4 and one side of length 7?

26 What is the largest possible area for a parallelogram that has pairs of sides with lengths 5 and 9?

27 Sketch the regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle, with one of the vertices at the point $(1, 0)$.

A* dodecagon *is a twelve-sided polygon.

28 Sketch the regular dodecagon whose vertices are on the unit circle, with one of the vertices at the point $(1, 0)$.

29 Find the coordinates of all six vertices of the regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle, with $(1, 0)$ as one of the vertices. List the vertices in counterclockwise order starting at $(1, 0)$.

30 Find the coordinates of all twelve vertices of the regular dodecagon whose vertices are on the unit circle, with $(1, 0)$ as one of the vertices. List the vertices in counterclockwise order starting at $(1, 0)$.

31 Find the area of a regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle.

32 Find the area of a regular dodecagon whose vertices are on the unit circle.

33 Find the perimeter of a regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle.

34 Find the perimeter of a regular dodecagon whose vertices are on the unit circle.

35 Find the area of a regular hexagon with sides of length s.

36 Find the area of a regular dodecagon with sides of length s.

37 Find the area of a regular 13-sided polygon whose vertices are on a circle with radius 4.

38 Find the area of a regular 15-sided polygon whose vertices are on a circle with radius 7.

39 The one-dollar coin in the Pacific island country Tuvalu is a regular 9-sided polygon. The distance from the center of the face of this coin to a vertex is 1.65 centimeters. Find the area of a face of the Tuvalu one-dollar coin.

40 The 50-pence coin in the United Kingdom is a regular 7-sided polygon (the edges are actually slightly curved, but ignore that small curvature for this exercise). The distance from the center of the face of this coin to a vertex is 1.4 centimeters. Find the area of a face of a British 50-pence coin.

41 Estimate the slope of the line that contains the origin and the point $(0.002, \sin 0.0006)$.

42 Estimate the slope of the line that contains the origin and the point $(0.0004, \sin 0.008)$.

43 Suppose $|\theta|$ is small. Estimate the value of

$$\frac{\sin(5\theta)}{\theta}.$$

44 Suppose $|\theta|$ is small. Estimate the value of

$$\frac{\tan(8\theta)}{\theta}.$$

45 Estimate the value of

$$10^{200}(1-\cos(10^{-100})).$$

46 Estimate the value of

$$10^{700}(1-\cos(10^{-200})).$$

Problems

47 What is the area of an equilateral triangle whose sides all have length r?

48 Explain why there does not exist a triangle with area 15 having one side of length 4 and one side of length 7.

49 Show that if a triangle has area A, sides of length b, c, and d, and angles B, C, and D, then

$$A^3 = \frac{1}{8}b^2c^2d^2(\sin B)(\sin C)(\sin D).$$

[*Hint:* Write three formulas for the area A, and then multiply these formulas together.]

50 Suppose a trapezoid has bases b_1 and b_2, another side with length c, and an angle θ between the side with length c and the base side with length b_1. Show that the area of the trapezoid is

$$\frac{1}{2}(b_1+b_2)c\sin\theta.$$

51 Explain why the solution to Exercise 32 is somewhat close to π.

52 Use a calculator to evaluate numerically the exact solution you obtained to Exercise 34. Then explain why this number is somewhat close to 2π.

53 Explain why a regular polygon with n sides whose vertices are n equally spaced points on the unit circle has area $\frac{n}{2}\sin\frac{2\pi}{n}$.

54 Explain why the result stated in the previous problem implies

$$\sin\frac{2\pi}{n} \approx \frac{2\pi}{n}$$

for large positive integers n.

55 Choose three large values of n, and use a calculator to verify that $\sin\frac{2\pi}{n} \approx \frac{2\pi}{n}$ for each of those three large values of n.

56 Show that each edge of a regular polygon with n sides whose vertices are n equally spaced points on the unit circle has length

$$\sqrt{2-2\cos\frac{2\pi}{n}}.$$

57 Explain why a regular polygon with n sides, each with length s, has area

$$\frac{n\sin\frac{2\pi}{n}}{4\left(1-\cos\frac{2\pi}{n}\right)}s^2.$$

58 Verify that for $n=4$, the formula given by the previous problem reduces to the usual formula for the area of a square.

59 Explain why a regular polygon with n sides whose vertices are n equally spaced points on the unit circle has perimeter

$$n\sqrt{2-2\cos\frac{2\pi}{n}}.$$

60 Explain why the result stated in the previous problem implies that

$$n\sqrt{2-2\cos\frac{2\pi}{n}} \approx 2\pi$$

for large positive integers n.

61 Choose three large values of n, and use a calculator to verify that $n\sqrt{2-2\cos\frac{2\pi}{n}} \approx 2\pi$ for each of those three large values of n.

62 Explain why the result stated in Problem 60 implies

$$\cos\frac{2\pi}{n} \approx 1-\frac{2\pi^2}{n^2}$$

for large positive integers n.

63 Find numbers b and c such that an isosceles triangle with sides of length b, b, and c has perimeter and area that are both integers.

64 We derived the inequality $\sin\theta < \theta$ using a figure that assumed that $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$. Does the inequality $\sin\theta < \theta$ hold for all positive values of θ?

65 We derived the inequality $\theta < \tan\theta$ using a figure that assumed that $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$. Does the inequality $\theta < \tan\theta$ hold for all positive values of θ?

66 Show that if $\theta \approx \frac{\pi}{2}$, then $\cos\theta \approx \frac{\pi}{2}-\theta$.

67 Show that if $\theta \approx \frac{\pi}{2}$, then $\sin\theta \approx 1-\frac{1}{2}(\frac{\pi}{2}-\theta)^2$.

68 Show that if $\theta \approx \frac{\pi}{2}$, then $\tan\theta \approx \frac{1}{\frac{\pi}{2}-\theta}$.

69 Suppose $|x|$ is small but nonzero. Explain why the slope of the line containing the point $(x, \sin x)$ and the origin is approximately 1.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

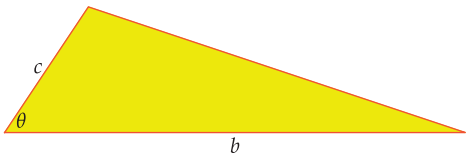
1 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 3 and 4, with a 37° angle between those sides.

solution The area of this triangle equals $\frac{3 \cdot 4 \cdot \sin 37^\circ}{2}$, which equals $6 \sin 37^\circ$. A calculator shows that this is approximately 3.61 (make sure that your calculator is computing in degrees when doing this calculation).

3 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 2 and 7, with a 3 radian angle between those sides.

solution The area of this triangle equals $\frac{2 \cdot 7 \cdot \sin 3}{2}$, which equals $7 \sin 3$. A calculator shows that this is approximately 0.988 (make sure that your calculator is computing in radians when doing this calculation).

For Exercises 5–12 use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale).



5 Find the value of b if $c = 3$, $\theta = 30^\circ$, and the area of the triangle equals 5.

solution Because the area of the triangle equals 5, we have

$$5 = \frac{bc \sin\theta}{2} = \frac{3b \sin 30^\circ}{2} = \frac{3b}{4}.$$

Solving the equation above for b, we get $b = \frac{20}{3}$.

7 Find the value of c if $b = 7$, $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$, and the area of the triangle equals 10.

solution Because the area of the triangle equals 10, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 10 &= \frac{bc \sin\theta}{2} \\ &= \frac{7c \sin\frac{\pi}{4}}{2} \\ &= \frac{7c}{2\sqrt{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Solving the equation above for c, we get $c = \frac{20\sqrt{2}}{7}$.

9 Find the value of θ (in radians) if $b = 6$, $c = 7$, the area of the triangle equals 15, and $\theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$.

solution Because the area of the triangle equals 15, we have

$$15 = \frac{bc \sin\theta}{2} = \frac{6 \cdot 7 \cdot \sin\theta}{2} = 21 \sin\theta.$$

Solving the equation above for $\sin\theta$, we get $\sin\theta = \frac{5}{7}$. Thus $\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{5}{7} \approx 0.7956$.

11 Find the value of θ (in degrees) if $b = 3$, $c = 6$, the area of the triangle equals 5, and $\theta > 90^\circ$.

solution Because the area of the triangle equals 5, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 5 &= \frac{bc \sin\theta}{2} \\ &= \frac{3 \cdot 6 \cdot \sin\theta}{2} \\ &= 9 \sin\theta. \end{aligned}$$

Solving the equation above for $\sin\theta$, we get $\sin\theta = \frac{5}{9}$. Thus θ equals $\pi - \sin^{-1}\frac{5}{9}$ radians. Converting this to degrees, we have

$$\theta = 180^\circ - (\sin^{-1}\tfrac{5}{9})\tfrac{180^\circ}{\pi} \approx 146.25^\circ.$$

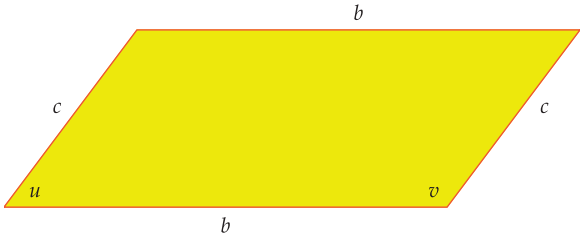
13 Find the area of a parallelogram that has pairs of sides of lengths 6 and 9, with an 81° angle between two of those sides.

solution The area of this parallelogram equals $6 \cdot 9 \cdot \sin 81^\circ$, which equals $54 \sin 81^\circ$. A calculator shows that this is approximately 53.34.

15 Find the area of a parallelogram that has pairs of sides of lengths 4 and 10, with a $\frac{\pi}{6}$ radian angle between two of those sides.

solution The area of this parallelogram equals $4 \cdot 10 \cdot \sin\frac{\pi}{6}$, which equals 20.

For Exercises 17–24, use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale except that u is indeed meant to be an acute angle and v is indeed meant to be an obtuse angle).



17 Find the value of b if $c = 4$, $v = 135^\circ$, and the area of the parallelogram equals 7.

solution Because the area of the parallelogram equals 7, we have

$$7 = bc \sin v = 4b \sin 135^\circ = 2\sqrt{2}b.$$

Solving the equation above for b, we get $b = \frac{7}{2\sqrt{2}} = \frac{7\sqrt{2}}{4}$.

19 Find the value of c if $b = 10$, $u = \frac{\pi}{3}$, and the area of the parallelogram equals 7.

solution Because the area of the parallelogram equals 7, we have

$$7 = bc \sin u = 10c \sin\frac{\pi}{3} = 5c\sqrt{3}.$$

Solving the equation above for c, we get $c = \frac{7}{5\sqrt{3}} = \frac{7\sqrt{3}}{15}$.

21 Find the value of u (in radians) if $b = 4$, $c = 3$, and the parallelogram has area 10.

solution Because the area of the parallelogram equals 10, we have

$$10 = bc \sin u = 4 \cdot 3 \cdot \sin u = 12 \sin u.$$

Solving the equation above for $\sin u$, we get $\sin u = \frac{5}{6}$. Thus

$$u = \sin^{-1} \frac{5}{6} \approx 0.9851.$$

23 Find the value of v (in degrees) if $b = 7$, $c = 6$, and the parallelogram has area 31.

solution Because the area of the parallelogram equals 31, we have

$$31 = bc \sin v = 6 \cdot 7 \cdot \sin v = 42 \sin v.$$

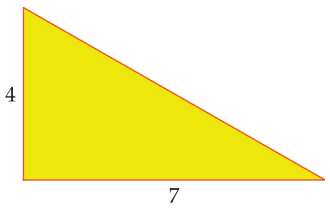
Solving the equation above for $\sin v$, we get $\sin v = \frac{31}{42}$. Because v is an obtuse angle, we thus have $v = \pi - \sin^{-1} \frac{31}{42}$ radians. Converting this to degrees, we have $v = 180^\circ - (\sin^{-1} \frac{31}{42}) \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \approx 132.43^\circ$.

25 What is the largest possible area for a triangle that has one side of length 4 and one side of length 7?

solution In a triangle that has one side of length 4 and one side of length 7, let θ denote the angle between those two sides. Thus the area of the triangle will equal

$$14 \sin \theta.$$

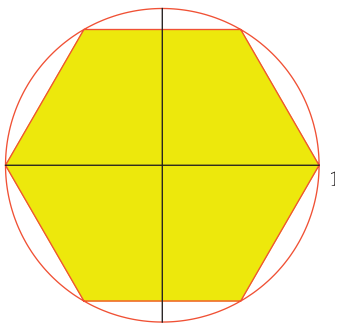
We need to choose θ to make this area as large as possible. The largest possible value of $\sin \theta$ is 1, which occurs when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ (or $\theta = 90^\circ$ if we are working in degrees). Thus we choose $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, which gives us a right triangle with sides of length 4 and 7 around the right angle.



This right triangle has area 14, which is the largest area of any triangle with sides of length 4 and 7.

27 Sketch the regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle, with one of the vertices at the point $(1, 0)$.

solution



A* dodecagon *is a twelve-sided polygon.

29 Find the coordinates of all six vertices of the regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle, with $(1, 0)$ as one of the vertices. List the vertices in counterclockwise order starting at $(1, 0)$.

solution The coordinates of the six vertices, listed in counterclockwise order starting at $(1, 0)$, are $(\cos \frac{2\pi m}{6}, \sin \frac{2\pi m}{6})$, with m going from 0 to 5. Evaluating the trigonometric functions, we get the following list of coordinates of vertices: $(1, 0)$, $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$, $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$, $(-1, 0)$, $(-\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$, $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$.

31 Find the area of a regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle.

solution Decompose the hexagon into triangles by drawing line segments from the center of the circle (the origin) to the vertices. Each triangle has two sides that are radii of the unit circle; thus those two sides of the triangle each have length 1. The angle between those two radii is $\frac{2\pi}{6}$ radians (because one rotation around the entire circle is an angle of 2π radians, and each of the six triangles has an angle that takes up one-sixth of the total). Now $\frac{2\pi}{6}$ radians equals $\frac{\pi}{3}$ radians (or 60°). Thus each of the six triangles has area

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 1 \cdot 1 \cdot \sin \frac{\pi}{3},$$

which equals $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$. Thus the sum of the areas of the six triangles equals $6 \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$, which equals $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}$. In other words, the hexagon has area $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}$.

33 Find the perimeter of a regular hexagon whose vertices are on the unit circle.

solution If we assume one of the vertices of the hexagon is the point $(1, 0)$, then the next vertex in the counterclockwise direction is the point $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$. Thus the length of each side of the hexagon equals the distance between $(1, 0)$ and $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$, which equals

$$\sqrt{(1 - \tfrac{1}{2})^2 + (\tfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2})^2},$$

which equals 1. Thus the perimeter of the hexagon equals $6 \cdot 1$, which equals 6.

35 Find the area of a regular hexagon with sides of length s.

solution This computation could be done by using the technique shown in Example 6. For variety, another method will be shown here.

By the Area Stretch Theorem (Appendix), there is a number c such that a regular hexagon with sides of length s has area cs^2. From Exercises 31 and 33, we know that the area equals $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}$ if $s = 1$. Thus

$$\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} = c \cdot 1^2 = c.$$

Thus a regular hexagon with sides of length s has area $\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} s^2$.

37 Find the area of a regular 13-sided polygon whose vertices are on a circle with radius 4.

solution Decompose the 13-sided polygon into triangles by drawing line segments from the center of the circle to the vertices. Each triangle has two sides that are radii of the circle with radius 4; thus those two sides of the triangle each have length 4. The angle between those two radii is $\frac{2\pi}{13}$ radians (because one rotation around the entire circle is an angle of 2π radians, and each of the 13 triangles has an angle that takes up one-thirteenth of the total). Thus each of the 13 triangles has area

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 4 \cdot 4 \cdot \sin \frac{2\pi}{13},$$

which equals $8 \sin \frac{2\pi}{13}$. The area of the 13-sided polygon is the sum of the areas of the 13 triangles, which equals $13 \cdot 8 \sin \frac{2\pi}{13}$, which is approximately 48.3.

39 The one-dollar coin in the Pacific island country Tuvalu is a regular 9-sided polygon. The distance from the center of the face of this coin to a vertex is 1.65 centimeters. Find the area of a face of the Tuvalu one-dollar coin.

solution Decompose a regular 9-sided polygon representing the Tuvalu one-dollar coin into triangles by drawing line segments from the center to the vertices. Each triangle has two sides of length 1.65 centimeters. The angle between those two sides is 40° (because one full rotation is an angle of 360° and each of the 9 triangles has an angle that takes up one-ninth of the total). Thus each of the 9 triangles has area

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 1.65 \cdot 1.65 \cdot \sin 40^\circ$$

square centimeters. The area of the 9-sided polygon is the sum of the areas of the 9 triangles, which equals $9 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot 1.65 \cdot 1.65 \cdot \sin 40^\circ$ square centimeters, which is approximately 7.875 square centimeters.

41 Estimate the slope of the line that contains the origin and the point $(0.002, \sin 0.0006)$.

solution The slope of the line is

$$\frac{\sin 0.0006}{0.002} \approx \frac{0.0006}{0.002} = 0.3.$$

43 Suppose $|\theta|$ is small. Estimate the value of

$$\frac{\sin(5\theta)}{\theta}.$$

solution If $|\theta|$ is small, then so is $|5\theta|$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\sin(5\theta)}{\theta} &= 5 \cdot \frac{\sin(5\theta)}{5\theta} \\ &\approx 5 \cdot 1 \\ &= 5. \end{aligned}$$

45 Estimate the value of

$$10^{200}\left(1 - \cos(10^{-100})\right).$$

solution We have

$$\begin{aligned} 10^{200}\left(1 - \cos(10^{-100})\right) &\approx 10^{200} \frac{(10^{-100})^2}{2} \\ &= 10^{200} \frac{10^{-200}}{2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

5.4 The Law of Sines and the Law of Cosines

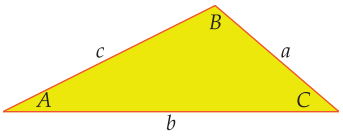
Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- find angles or side lengths in a triangle using the law of sines;
- find angles or side lengths in a triangle using the law of cosines;
- determine when to use which of these two laws.

In this section we will learn how to find all the angles and the lengths of all the sides of a triangle given only some of this data.

The Law of Sines



The lengths of the sides of the triangle shown here have been labeled a, b, and c. The angle opposite the side with length a has been labeled A, the angle opposite the side with length b has been labeled B, and the angle opposite the side with length c has been labeled C.

We know from the previous section that the area of the triangle equals one-half the product of the lengths of any two sides times the sine of the angle between those two sides. Different choices of the two sides of the triangle will lead to different formulas for the area of the triangle. As we are about to see, setting those different formulas for the area equal to each other leads to an interesting result.

Using the sides with lengths b and c, we see that the area of the triangle equals

$$\frac{1}{2}bc\sin A.$$

Using the sides with lengths a and c, we see that the area of the triangle equals

$$\frac{1}{2}ac\sin B.$$

Using the sides with lengths a and b, we see that the area of the triangle equals

$$\frac{1}{2}ab\sin C.$$

Setting the three formulas obtained above for the area of the triangle equal to each other, we get

$$\frac{1}{2}bc\sin A = \frac{1}{2}ac\sin B = \frac{1}{2}ab\sin C.$$

Multiplying all three expressions above by 2 and then dividing all three expressions by abc gives a result called the **law of sines**.

The law of sines appears in a book written by Ibn Mu'ādh al-Jayyānī, who lived about a thousand years ago in what is now Spain.

Law of sines

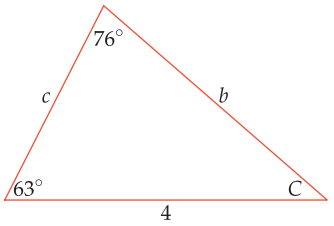
$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$$

in a triangle with sides whose lengths are a, b, and c, with corresponding angles A, B, and C opposite those sides.

The following example shows how the law of sines can be used to find the lengths of all three sides of a triangle given only two angles of the triangle and the length of one side.

Example 1

Find the lengths of all three sides of the triangle shown here.



solution Applying the law of sines to this triangle, we have

$$\frac{\sin 76^\circ}{4} = \frac{\sin 63^\circ}{b}.$$

Solving for b, we get

$$b = 4\frac{\sin 63^\circ}{\sin 76^\circ} \approx 3.67,$$

where the approximate value was obtained with the use of a calculator.

To find the length c, we want to apply the law of sines. Thus we first find the angle C. We have

$$C = 180^\circ - 63^\circ - 76^\circ = 41^\circ.$$

Now applying the law of sines again to the triangle above, we have

$$\frac{\sin 76^\circ}{4} = \frac{\sin 41^\circ}{c}.$$

Solving for c, we get

$$c = 4\frac{\sin 41^\circ}{\sin 76^\circ} \approx 2.70.$$

When using the law of sines, sometimes the same ambiguity arises as we saw in the previous section, as illustrated in the following example.

Example 2

Find all the angles in a triangle that has one side of length 8, one side of length 5, and a 30° angle opposite the side of length 5.

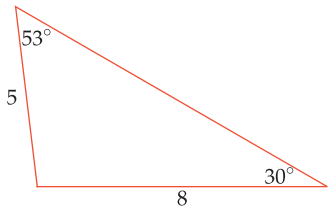
solution Labeling the triangle as on the first page of this section, we take $b = 8$, $c = 5$, and $C = 30^\circ$. Applying the law of sines, we have

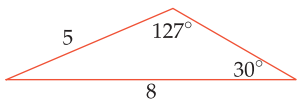
$$\frac{\sin B}{8} = \frac{\sin 30^\circ}{5}.$$

Using the information that $\sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$, we can solve the equation above for $\sin B$, getting

$$\sin B = \frac{4}{5}.$$

Now $\sin^{-1}\frac{4}{5}$, when converted from radians to degrees, is approximately 53°, which suggests that $B \approx 53^\circ$, as shown in the first figure here. However, 180° minus this angle also has a sine equal to $\frac{4}{5}$, which suggests that $B \approx 127^\circ$, as shown in the second figure.





Both of these triangles have one side of length 8, one side of length 5, and a 30° angle opposite the side of length 5.

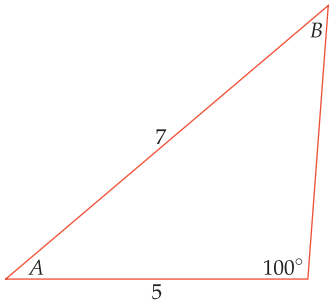
There is no way to distinguish between the two choices shown here, unless we have some additional information (for example, we might know that B is an obtuse angle, and in that case we would choose $B \approx 127^\circ$).

Once we decide between the two possible choices of approximately 53° or 127° for the angle opposite the side of length 8, the other angle in the triangle is forced upon us by the requirement that the sum of the angles in a triangle equals 180°. Thus if we make the first choice above, then the unlabeled angle is approximately 97°. If we make the second choice above, then the unlabeled angle is approximately 23°.

The law of sines does not lead to an ambiguity if the given angle is bigger than 90° (or $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians), as shown in the following example. There is no ambiguity in such cases because a triangle cannot have two angles larger than 90° (or $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians).

Example 3

Find all the angles in a triangle that has one side of length 5, one side of length 7, and a 100° angle opposite the side of length 7.



A triangle that has one side of length 5, one side of length 7, and a 100° angle opposite the side of length 7 must look like this, where $A \approx 35.3^\circ$ and $B \approx 44.7^\circ$.

solution Labeling the angles of the triangle as shown here and applying the law of sines, we have

$$\frac{\sin B}{5} = \frac{\sin 100^\circ}{7}.$$

Thus

$$\sin B = \frac{5 \sin 100^\circ}{7} \approx 0.703.$$

Now $\sin^{-1} 0.703$, when converted from radians to degrees, is approximately 44.7°, which suggests that $B \approx 44.7^\circ$. Note that 180° minus this angle also has a sine equal to 0.703, which suggests that $B \approx 135.3^\circ$ might be another possible choice for B. However, that choice would give us a triangle with angles of 100° and 135.3°, which adds up to more than 180°. Thus this second choice is not possible. Hence there is no ambiguity here—we must have $B \approx 44.7^\circ$.

Because $180^\circ - 100^\circ - 44.7^\circ = 35.3^\circ$, the angle A in the triangle is approximately 35.3°. Now that we know all three angles of the triangle, we could use the law of sines to find the length of the side opposite A.

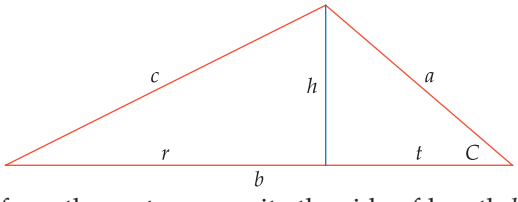
The Law of Cosines

The law of sines is a wonderful tool for finding the lengths of all three sides of a triangle when we know two of the angles of the triangle (which means that we know all three angles) and the length of at least one side of the triangle. Also, if we know the lengths of two sides of a triangle and one of the angles other than the angle between those two sides, then the law of sines allows us to find the other angles and the length of the other side (although it may produce two possible choices rather than a unique solution).

However, the law of sines is of no use if we know the lengths of all three sides of a triangle and want to find the angles of the triangle. Similarly, the law of sines cannot help us if the only information we know about a triangle is the length of two sides and the angle between those sides. Fortunately the law of cosines, our next topic, provides the necessary tools for these tasks.

The Pythagorean Theorem applies only to right triangles. The law of cosines is valid for all triangles.

Consider a triangle with sides of lengths a, b, and c and an angle of C opposite the side of length c, as shown here.



Drop a perpendicular line segment from the vertex opposite the side of length b to the side of length b, as shown above. The length of this line segment is the height of the triangle; label it h. The endpoint of this line segment of length h divides the side of the triangle of length b into two smaller line segments, which we have labeled r and t above.

The line segment of length h shown above divides the original larger triangle into two smaller right triangles. Looking at the right triangle on the right, we see that $\sin C = \frac{h}{a}$. Thus

$$h = a \sin C.$$

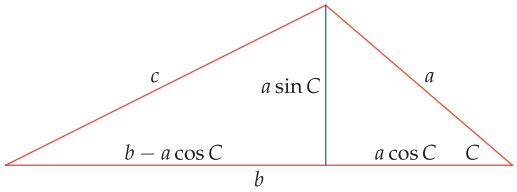
Furthermore, looking at the same right triangle, we see that $\cos C = \frac{t}{a}$. Thus

$$t = a \cos C.$$

The figure also shows that $r = b - t$. Using the equation above for t, we thus have

$$r = b - a \cos C.$$

For convenience, we now redraw the figure, replacing h, t, and r with the values we have just found for them.



In the figure above, consider the right triangle on the left. This right triangle has a hypotenuse of length c and sides of length $a \sin C$ and $b - a \cos C$. By the Pythagorean Theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= (a \sin C)^2 + (b - a \cos C)^2 \\ &= a^2 \sin^2 C + b^2 - 2ab \cos C + a^2 \cos^2 C \\ &= a^2(\sin^2 C + \cos^2 C) + b^2 - 2ab \cos C \\ &= a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have shown that

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C.$$

This result is called the **law of cosines**.

Law of cosines

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

in a triangle with sides whose lengths are a, b, and c, with an angle of C opposite the side with length c.

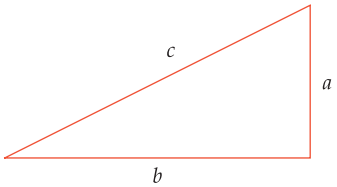
The law of cosines can be restated without symbols as follows: In any triangle, the length squared of one side equals the sum of the squares of the lengths of the other two sides minus twice the product of those two lengths times the cosine of the angle opposite the first side.

This reformulation allows use of the law of cosines regardless of the labels used for sides and angles.

Suppose we have a right triangle, with hypotenuse of length c and sides of lengths a and b. In this case we have $C = \frac{\pi}{2}$ (or $C = 90^\circ$ if we want to work in degrees). Thus $\cos C = 0$. Hence the law of cosines in this case becomes

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2,$$

which is the familiar Pythagorean Theorem.

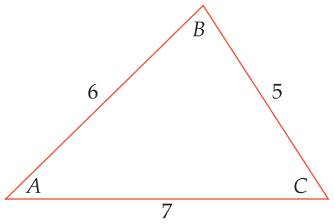


For a right triangle, the law of cosines reduces to the Pythagorean Theorem.

The following example shows how the law of cosines can be used to find all three angles of a triangle given only the lengths of the three sides. The idea is to use the law of cosines to solve for the cosine of each angle of the triangle. Unlike the situation that sometimes arises with the law of sines, there will be no ambiguity because no two angles between 0 radians and π radians (or between 0° and 180° if we work in degrees) have the same cosine.

Example 4

Find all three angles of the triangle shown here.



solution Here we know that the triangle has sides of lengths 5, 6, and 7, but we do not know any of the angles. The angles have been labeled in this figure. Applying the law of cosines, we have

$$6^2 = 5^2 + 7^2 - 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cos C.$$

Solving the equation above for $\cos C$, we get

$$\cos C = \frac{19}{35}.$$

Thus $C = \cos^{-1} \frac{19}{35}$, which is approximately 0.997 radians (or, equivalently, approximately 57.1°).

Now we apply the law of cosines again, this time focusing on the angle B, getting

$$7^2 = 5^2 + 6^2 - 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 6 \cos B.$$

Solving the equation above for $\cos B$, we get

$$\cos B = \frac{1}{5}.$$

Thus $B = \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{5}$, which is approximately 1.37 radians (or, equivalently, approximately 78.5°).

To find the third angle A, we could simply subtract from π (or from 180° if we are using degrees) the sum of the other two angles. But as a check that we have not made any errors, we will instead use the law of cosines again, this time focusing on the angle A. We have

$$5^2 = 7^2 + 6^2 - 2 \cdot 7 \cdot 6 \cos A.$$

Solving the equation above for $\cos A$, we get

$$\cos A = \frac{5}{7}.$$

Thus $A = \cos^{-1} \frac{5}{7}$, which is approximately 0.775 radians (or, equivalently, approximately 44.4°).

As a check, we can add up our approximate solutions for the angles (in degrees). Because

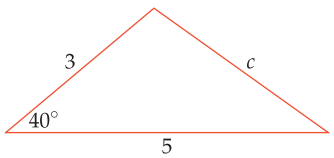
$$78.5 + 57.1 + 44.4 = 180,$$

all is well.

The next example shows how the law of cosines can be used to find the lengths of all the sides of a triangle given the lengths of two sides and the angle between them.

Example 5

A triangle has sides of length 5 and 3, and a 40° angle between those two sides. Find the length of the third side of the triangle.



solution The third side of the triangle is opposite the 40° angle. In the figure here, the length of the third side has been labeled c.

By the law of cosines, we have

$$c^2 = 3^2 + 5^2 - 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cos 40°.$$

Thus $c = \sqrt{34 - 30 \cos 40°} \approx 3.32$.

When to Use Which Law

A triangle has three angles and three side lengths. If you know some of these six pieces of data, you can often use either the law of sines or the law of cosines to determine the remainder of the data about the triangle. To determine which law to use, think about how to come up with an equation that has only one unknown:

- If you know only the lengths of the three sides of a triangle, then the law of sines is not useful because it involves two unknown angles. Thus if you know only the lengths of the three sides of a triangle, use the law of cosines.
- If you know only the lengths of two sides of a triangle and the angle between them, then any use of the law of sines leads to an equation with either an unknown side and an unknown angle or an equation with two unknown angles. Either way, with two unknowns you will not be able to solve the equation; thus the law of sines is not useful in this situation. Hence use the law of cosines if you know the lengths of two sides of a triangle and the angle between them.

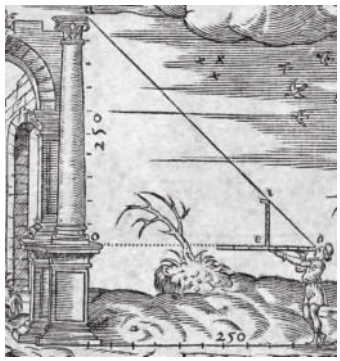
Sometimes you have enough data so that either the law of sines or the law of cosines could be used, as discussed below:

The term law *is unusual in mathematics. The law of sines and law of cosines could have been called the* sine theorem *and* cosine theorem.

- Suppose you know only the lengths of all three sides of a triangle. The only possibility in this situation is first to use the law of cosines to find one of the angles. Then, knowing the lengths of all three sides of the triangle and one angle, you could use either the law of cosines or the law of sines to find another angle. However, the law of sines may lead to two choices for the angle rather than a unique choice; thus it is better to use the law of cosines in this situation.
- Another case where you could use either law is when you know the length of two sides of a triangle and an angle other than the angle between those two sides. With the notation from the beginning of this section, suppose we know a, c, and C. We could use either the law of sines or the law of cosines to get an equation with only one unknown:

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin C}{c} \quad \text{or} \quad c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C.$$

The first equation above, where A is the unknown, may lead to two possible choices for A. Similarly, the second equation above, where b is the unknown and we need to use the quadratic formula to solve for b, may lead to two possible choices for b. Thus both laws may give us two choices. The law of sines is probably a bit simpler to apply.



This illustration published in 1621 by Swiss mathematician Peter Ryff shows trigonometry being used to measure the height of a column.

The box below summarizes when to use which law. As usual, you will be better off understanding how these guidelines arise (you can then always reconstruct them) rather than memorizing them.

When to use which law

Use the law of cosines if you know

- the lengths of all three sides of a triangle;
- the lengths of two sides of a triangle and the angle between them.

Use the law of sines if you know

- two angles of a triangle and the length of one side;
- the length of two sides of a triangle and an angle other than the angle between those two sides.

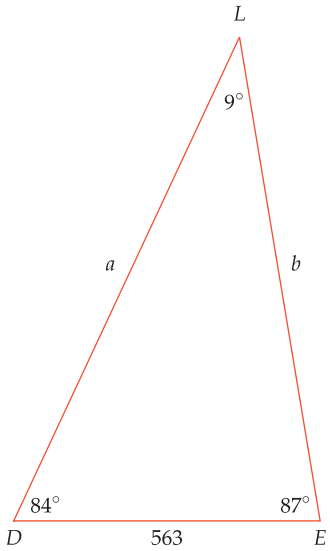
If you know two angles of a triangle, then finding the third angle is easy because the sum of the angles of a triangle equals π radians or 180°.

Example 6

A surveyor needs to measure the distance to a landmark L on the inaccessible side of a large canyon. Observation posts D and E on the accessible side of the canyon are separated by 563 meters. From observation post D, the surveyor uses a surveying instrument to find that the angle LDE is 84°. From observation post E, the surveyor finds that the angle LED is 87°.

(a) What is the distance from observation post D to the landmark L?

(b) What is the distance from observation post E to the landmark L?



This sketch is not drawn to scale.

solution

(a) In the sketch here, the distance from observation post D to landmark L has been labeled a. We need an equation in which a is the only unknown. The law of cosines involves all three lengths in a triangle; here we know only one of those lengths, and hence the law of cosines will have at least two unknowns.

Thus we need to use the law of sines. Let b denote the distance from observation post E to landmark L. The law of sines tells us that $\frac{\sin 87^\circ}{a} = \frac{\sin 84^\circ}{b}$, but this equation has two unknowns. Thus we note that the third angle of the triangle is 9° (because $180^\circ - 84^\circ - 87^\circ = 9^\circ$), as shown in the figure. Using the law of sines, we have

$$\frac{\sin 87^\circ}{a} = \frac{\sin 9^\circ}{563},$$

which implies that

$$a = 563\frac{\sin 87^\circ}{\sin 9^\circ} \approx 3594.$$

Thus the distance from observation post D to landmark L is approximately 3594 meters.

(b) Using the same reasoning as in the solution to part (a), we have

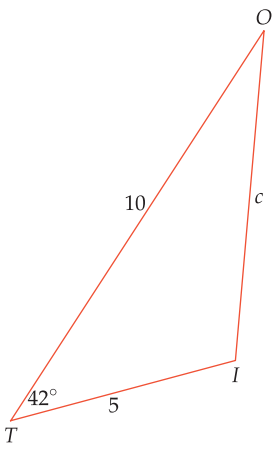
$$b = 563\frac{\sin 84^\circ}{\sin 9^\circ} \approx 3579.$$

Thus the distance from observation post E to landmark L is approximately 3579 meters.

Trigonometry can be used to find the distance between two far-away objects, as shown in the next example.

Example 7

Radar at an air-traffic control tower shows the distance to an incoming airplane is 5 miles, the distance to an outgoing airplane is 10 miles, and the angle incoming airplane–tower–outgoing airplane is 42°. How far apart are the two airplanes?



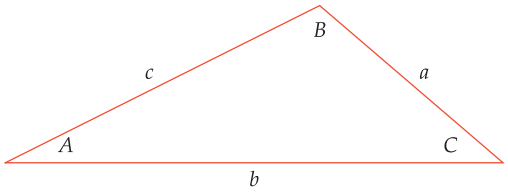
solution In the figure here, T denotes the air-traffic control tower, I denotes the incoming airplane, O denotes the outgoing airplane, and c denotes the distance between the two airplanes. Using the law of cosines, we have

$$c^2 = 5^2 + 10^2 - 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 10 \cos 42^\circ$$
$$\approx 50.69.$$

Thus $c \approx \sqrt{50.69} \approx 7.1$. In other words, the two planes are approximately 7.1 miles apart.

Exercises

In Exercises 1–16 use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale). When an exercise requests that you evaluate an angle, give answers in both radians and degrees.



1 Suppose $a = 6$, $B = 25°$, and $C = 40°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) b (c) c

2 Suppose $a = 7$, $B = 50°$, and $C = 35°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) b (c) c

3 Suppose $a = 6$, $A = \frac{\pi}{7}$ radians, and $B = \frac{4\pi}{7}$ radians. Evaluate:
(a) C (b) b (c) c

4 Suppose $a = 4$, $B = \frac{2\pi}{11}$ radians, and $C = \frac{3\pi}{11}$ radians. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) b (c) c

5 Suppose $a = 3$, $b = 5$, and $c = 6$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) B (c) C

6 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 6$, and $c = 7$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) B (c) C

7 Suppose $a = 5$, $b = 6$, and $c = 9$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) B (c) C

8 Suppose $a = 6$, $b = 7$, and $c = 8$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) B (c) C

9 Suppose $a = 2$, $b = 3$, and $C = 37°$. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

10 Suppose $a = 5$, $b = 7$, and $C = 23°$. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

11 Suppose $a = 3$, $b = 4$, and $C = 1$ radian. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

12 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 5$, and $C = 2$ radians. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

13 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 3$, and $B = 30°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (assume $A < 90°$)
(b) C
(c) c

14 Suppose $a = 14$, $b = 13$, and $B = 60°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (assume $A < 90°$)
(b) C
(c) c

15 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 3$, and $B = 30°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (assume $A > 90°$)
(b) C
(c) c

16 Suppose $a = 14$, $b = 13$, and $B = 60°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (assume $A > 90°$)
(b) C
(c) c

17 Find the lengths of both diagonals in a parallelogram that has two sides of length 4, two sides of length 7, and two angles of 38°.

18 Find the lengths of both diagonals in a parallelogram that has two sides of length 5, two sides of length 11, and two angles of 41°.

19 Find the angle between the shorter diagonal of the parallelogram in Exercise 17 and a side with length 4.

20 Find the angle between the shorter diagonal of the parallelogram in Exercise 18 and a side with length 5.

21 A surveyor on the south bank of a river needs to measure the distance from a boulder on the south bank of the river to a tree on the north bank. The surveyor measures that the distance from the boulder to a small hill on the south bank of the river is 413 feet. From the boulder, the surveyor uses a surveying instrument to find that the angle tree–boulder–hill is 71°. From the hill, the surveyor finds that the angle tree–hill–boulder is 93°.
(a) What is the distance from the boulder to the tree?
(b) What is the distance from the hill to the tree?

22 Two tourists with a surveying tool want to measure the distance from their hotel to the Washington Monument and to the Lincoln Memorial. From the top of the Washington Monument, they find that the angle hotel–Washington Monument–Lincoln Memorial is 64°. From the top steps of the Lincoln Memorial, they find that the angle hotel–Lincoln Memorial–Washington Monument is 106°. In a brochure, they read that the distance from the Washington Monument to the Lincoln Memorial is 1.3 kilometers.
(a) What is the distance from the Washington Monument to the hotel?
(b) What is the distance from the Lincoln Memorial to the hotel?

23 Sirius, the brightest star visible from Earth except for our Sun, is 8.6 light-years from Earth. Alpha Centauri, the closest star to Earth except for our Sun, is 4.4 light-years from Earth. If the angle Sirius–Earth–Alpha Centauri is 49°, then how far apart are Sirius and Alpha Centauri?

24 Radio transmissions show observers in Houston that the International Space Station is 323 miles away, the Chinese space station Tiangong is 462 miles away, and the angle International Space Station–Houston–Tiangong is 109°. How far apart are the two space stations?

Problems

25 The famous Flatiron Building in New York City often appears in popular culture (for example, in the *Spider-Man* movies) because of its unusual triangular shape. The base of the Flatiron Building is a triangle whose sides have lengths 190 feet, 173 feet, and 87 feet. Find the angles of the Flatiron Building.

26 Suppose a triangle has sides of length a, b, and c satisfying the equation

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

Show that this triangle is a right triangle.

27 Show that in a triangle whose sides have lengths a, b, and c, the angle between the sides of length a and b is an acute angle if and only if

$$a^2 + b^2 > c^2.$$

28 Show that the distance between two points on the unit circle is $\sqrt{2 - 2\cos\theta}$, where θ is the angle between the radii from the origin to each of the two points.

29 Show that

$$b = \frac{c}{\sqrt{2}\sqrt{1 - \cos\theta}}$$

in an isosceles triangle that has two sides of length b, an angle of θ between these two sides, and a third side of length c.

30 Write the law of sines in the special case of a right triangle.

31 Show how the previous problem gives the familiar characterization of the sine of an angle in a right triangle as the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the hypotenuse.

32 Show how Problem 30 gives the familiar characterization of the tangent of an angle in a right triangle as the length of the opposite side divided by the length of the adjacent side.

33 Suppose the minute hand of a clock is 5 inches long and the hour hand is 3 inches long. Suppose the angle formed by the minute hand and hour hand is 68°.

(a) Find the distance between the endpoint of the minute hand and the endpoint of the hour hand by using the law of cosines.

(b) Find the distance between the endpoint of the minute hand and the endpoint of the hour hand by assuming that the center of the clock is located at the origin, choosing a convenient location for the minute hand and finding the coordinates of its endpoint, then finding the coordinates of the hour hand in a position that makes a 68° angle with the minute hand, and finally using the usual distance formula to find the distance between the endpoint of the minute hand and the endpoint of the hour hand.

(c) Make sure that your answers for parts (a) and (b) are the same. Which method did you find easier?

34 Use the law of cosines to show that if a, b, and c are the lengths of the three sides of a triangle, then

$$c^2 > a^2 + b^2 - 2ab.$$

35 Use the previous problem to show that in every triangle, the sum of the lengths of any two sides is greater than the length of the third side.

36 Suppose one side of a triangle has length 5 and another side of the triangle has length 8. Let c denote the length of the third side of the triangle. Show that $3 < c < 13$.

37 Suppose you need to walk from a point P to a point Q. You can either walk in a line from P to Q, or you can walk in a line from P to another point R and then walk in a line from R to Q. Use the previous problem to determine which of these two paths is shorter.

38 Suppose you are asked to find the angle C formed by the sides of length 2 and 3 in a triangle whose sides have length 2, 3, and 7.

(a) Show that in this situation the law of cosines leads to the equation $\cos C = -3$.

(b) There is no angle whose cosine equals -3. Thus part (a) seems to be a contradiction. Explain what is happening here.

39 In a triangle whose sides and angles are labeled as in the instructions before Exercise 1, let h denote the height as measured from the vertex of angle B to the side with length b.

(a) Express h in terms of A and c.

(b) Express h in terms of C and a.

(c) Setting the two values of h obtained in parts (a) and (b) equal to each other gives an equation. What result from this section leads to the same equation?

40 The law of cosines is stated in this section using the angle C. Using the labels of the triangle just before Exercise 1, write two versions of the law of cosines, one involving the angle A and one involving the angle B.

41 Use one of the examples from this section to show that

$$\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{5} + \cos^{-1}\frac{5}{7} + \cos^{-1}\frac{19}{35} = \pi.$$

42 Discover another equation similar to the one given in the previous problem by choosing a triangle whose side lengths are all integers and using the law of cosines.

43 Show that

$$a(\sin B - \sin C) + b(\sin C - \sin A) + c(\sin A - \sin B) = 0$$

in a triangle with sides whose lengths are a, b, and c, with corresponding angles A, B, and C opposite those sides.

44 Show that

$$a^2 + b^2 + c^2 = 2(bc\cos A + ac\cos B + ab\cos C)$$

in a triangle with sides whose lengths are a, b, and c, with corresponding angles A, B, and C opposite those sides.

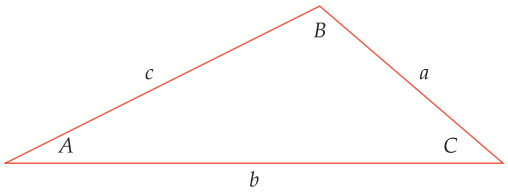
45 Show that

$$c = b\cos A + a\cos B$$

in a triangle with sides whose lengths are a, b, and c, with corresponding angles A, B, and C opposite those sides. [*Hint:* Add the equations $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A$ and $b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B$.]

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

In Exercises 1–16 use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale). When an exercise requests that you evaluate an angle, give answers in both radians and degrees.



1 Suppose $a = 6$, $B = 25°$, and $C = 40°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) b (c) c

solution

(a) The angles in a triangle add up to $180°$. Thus $A + B + C = 180°$. Solving for A, we have

$$A = 180° - B - C = 180° - 25° - 40° = 115°.$$

Multiplying by $\frac{\pi}{180°}$ to convert to radians gives

$$A = 115° = \frac{23\pi}{36} \text{ radians} \approx 2.007 \text{ radians}.$$

(b) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\sin 115°}{6} = \frac{\sin 25°}{b}.$$

Solve the equation above for b, getting

$$b = \frac{6 \sin 25°}{\sin 115°} \approx 2.80.$$

(c) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin C}{c},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\sin 115°}{6} = \frac{\sin 40°}{c}.$$

Solve the equation above for c, getting

$$c = \frac{6 \sin 40°}{\sin 115°} \approx 4.26.$$

3 Suppose $a = 6$, $A = \frac{\pi}{7}$ radians, and $B = \frac{4\pi}{7}$ radians. Evaluate:
(a) C (b) b (c) c

solution

(a) The angles in a triangle add up to π radians. Thus $A + B + C = \pi$. Solving for C, we have

$$C = \pi - A - B = \pi - \frac{\pi}{7} - \frac{4\pi}{7} = \frac{2\pi}{7}.$$

Multiplying by $\frac{180°}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees gives

$$C = \frac{2\pi}{7} \text{ radians} = \frac{360°}{7}.$$

Using a calculator to obtain decimal approximations, we have

$$C \approx 0.8976 \text{ radians} \approx 51.429°.$$

(b) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\sin \frac{\pi}{7}}{6} = \frac{\sin \frac{4\pi}{7}}{b}.$$

Solve the equation above for b, getting

$$b = \frac{6 \sin \frac{4\pi}{7}}{\sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \approx 13.48.$$

(c) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin C}{c},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\sin \frac{\pi}{7}}{6} = \frac{\sin \frac{2\pi}{7}}{c}.$$

Solve the equation above for c, getting

$$c = \frac{6 \sin \frac{2\pi}{7}}{\sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \approx 10.81.$$

5 Suppose $a = 3$, $b = 5$, and $c = 6$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) B (c) C

solution The law of cosines allows us to solve for the angles of the triangle when we know the lengths of all the sides. Note the check that is performed below after part (c).

(a) To find A, use the law of cosines in the form

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$3^2 = 5^2 + 6^2 - 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 6 \cdot \cos A,$$

which can be rewritten as

$$9 = 61 - 60 \cos A.$$

Solve the equation above for $\cos A$, getting

$$\cos A = \frac{13}{15}.$$

Thus $A = \cos^{-1} \frac{13}{15}$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1} \frac{13}{15}$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180°}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$A = \cos^{-1} \frac{13}{15} \approx 0.522 \text{ radians} \approx 29.9°.$$

(b) To find B, use the law of cosines in the form

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$25 = 45 - 36\cos B.$$

Solve the equation above for $\cos B$, getting

$$\cos B = \frac{5}{9}.$$

Thus $B = \cos^{-1}\frac{5}{9}$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1}\frac{5}{9}$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$B = \cos^{-1}\frac{5}{9} \approx 0.982 \text{ radians} \approx 56.3^\circ.$$

(c) To find C, use the law of cosines in the form

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$36 = 34 - 30\cos C.$$

Solve the equation above for $\cos C$, getting

$$\cos C = -\frac{1}{15}.$$

Thus $C = \cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{15})$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{15})$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$C = \cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{15}) \approx 1.638 \text{ radians} \approx 93.8^\circ.$$

check The angles in a triangle add up to 180°. Thus we can check for mistakes by seeing if our values of A, B, and C add up to 180°:

$$A + B + C \approx 29.9^\circ + 56.3^\circ + 93.8^\circ = 180.0^\circ.$$

Because the sum above equals 180.0°, this check uncovers no problems. If the sum had differed from 180.0° by more than 0.1° (a small difference might arise due to using approximate values rather than exact values), then we would know that an error had been made.

7 Suppose $a = 5$, $b = 6$, and $c = 9$. Evaluate:

(a) A (b) B (c) C

solution The law of cosines allows us to solve for the angles of the triangle when we know the lengths of all the sides. Note the check that is performed below after part (c).

(a) To find A, use the law of cosines in the form

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$5^2 = 6^2 + 9^2 - 2\cdot 6\cdot 9\cdot\cos A,$$

which can be rewritten as

$$25 = 117 - 108\cos A.$$

Solve the equation above for $\cos A$, getting

$$\cos A = \frac{23}{27}.$$

Thus $A = \cos^{-1}\frac{23}{27}$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1}\frac{23}{27}$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$A = \cos^{-1}\frac{23}{27} \approx 0.551 \text{ radians} \approx 31.6^\circ.$$

(b) To find B, use the law of cosines in the form

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$36 = 106 - 90\cos B.$$

Solve the equation above for $\cos B$, getting

$$\cos B = \frac{7}{9}.$$

Thus $B = \cos^{-1}\frac{7}{9}$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1}\frac{7}{9}$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$B = \cos^{-1}\frac{7}{9} \approx 0.680 \text{ radians} \approx 38.9^\circ.$$

(c) To find C, use the law of cosines in the form

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$81 = 61 - 60\cos C.$$

Solve the equation above for $\cos C$, getting

$$\cos C = -\frac{1}{3}.$$

Thus $C = \cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{3})$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{3})$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$C = \cos^{-1}(-\frac{1}{3}) \approx 1.911 \text{ radians} \approx 109.5^\circ.$$

check The angles in a triangle add up to 180°. Thus we can check for mistakes by seeing if our values of A, B, and C add up to 180°:

$$A + B + C \approx 31.6^\circ + 38.9^\circ + 109.5^\circ = 180.0^\circ.$$

Because the sum above equals 180.0°, this check uncovers no problems. If the sum had differed from 180.0° by more than 0.1° (a small difference might arise due to using approximate values rather than exact values), then we would know that an error had been made.

9 Suppose $a = 2$, $b = 3$, and $C = 37^\circ$. Evaluate:

(a) c (b) A (c) B

solution Note the check that is performed below after part (c).

(a) To find c, use the law of cosines in the form

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$c^2 = 2^2 + 3^2 - 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \cos 37^\circ,$$

which can be rewritten as

$$c^2 = 13 - 12\cos 37^\circ.$$

Thus

$$c = \sqrt{13 - 12\cos 37^\circ} \approx 1.848.$$

(b) To find A, use the law of cosines in the form

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A,$$

which in this case becomes the approximate equation

$$4 \approx 12.415 - 11.088\cos A,$$

where we have an approximation rather than an exact equality because we have used an approximate value for c. Solve the equation above for $\cos A$, getting

$$\cos A \approx 0.7589.$$

Thus $A \approx \cos^{-1} 0.7589$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1} 0.7589$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$A \approx \cos^{-1} 0.7589 \approx 0.7092 \text{ radians} \approx 40.6^\circ.$$

(c) The angles in a triangle add up to 180°. Thus $A + B + C = 180^\circ$. Solving for B, we have

$$B = 180^\circ - A - C \approx 180^\circ - 40.6^\circ - 37^\circ = 102.4^\circ.$$

Multiplying by $\frac{\pi}{180^\circ}$ to convert to radians gives

$$B \approx 102.4^\circ \approx 1.787 \text{ radians}.$$

check We will check our results by computing B by a different method. Specifically, we will use the law of cosines rather than the simpler method used above in part (c).

We use the law of cosines in the form

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B,$$

which in this case becomes the approximate equation

$$9 \approx 7.4151 - 7.392\cos B,$$

where we have an approximation rather than an exact equality because we have used the approximate value 1.848 for c. Solve the equation above for $\cos B$, getting

$$\cos B \approx -0.2144.$$

Thus $B \approx \cos^{-1}(-0.2144)$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1}(-0.2144)$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$B \approx \cos^{-1}(-0.2144) \approx 1.787 \text{ radians} \approx 102.4^\circ.$$

In part (c) above, we also obtained a value of 102.4° for B. Thus this check uncovers no problems. If the two methods for computing B had produced results differing by more than 0.1° (a small difference might arise due to using approximate values rather than exact values), then we would know that an error had been made.

11 Suppose $a = 3$, $b = 4$, and $C = 1$ radian. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

solution Note the check that is performed after part (c).

(a) To find c, use the law of cosines in the form

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C,$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$c^2 = 3^2 + 4^2 - 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot \cos 1,$$

which can be rewritten as

$$c^2 = 25 - 24\cos 1.$$

Thus

$$c = \sqrt{25 - 24\cos 1} \approx 3.469.$$

(b) To find A, use the law of cosines in the form

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A,$$

which in this case becomes the approximate equation

$$9 \approx 28.034 - 27.752\cos A,$$

where we have an approximation rather than an exact equality because we have used an approximate value for c. Solve the equation above for $\cos A$, getting

$$\cos A \approx 0.6859.$$

Thus $A \approx \cos^{-1} 0.6859$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1} 0.6859$ in radians, and then multiply that result by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees, getting

$$A \approx \cos^{-1} 0.6859 \approx 0.8150 \text{ radians} \approx 46.7^\circ.$$

(c) The angles in a triangle add up to π radians. Thus $A + B + C = \pi$. Solving for B, we have

$$B = \pi - A - C \approx \pi - 0.8150 - 1 \approx 1.3266.$$

Multiplying by $\frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$ to convert to degrees gives

$$B \approx 1.3266 \text{ radians} \approx 76.0^\circ.$$

check We will check our results by computing B by a different method. Specifically, we will use the law of cosines rather than the simpler method used above in part (c).

We use the law of cosines in the form

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B,$$

which in this case becomes the approximate equation

$$16 \approx 21.034 - 20.814\cos B,$$

where we have an approximation rather than an exact equality because we have used the approximate value 3.469 for c. Solve the equation above for $\cos B$, getting

$$\cos B \approx 0.2419.$$

Thus $B \approx \cos^{-1} 0.2419$. Use a calculator to evaluate $\cos^{-1} 0.2419$ in radians, getting

$$B \approx \cos^{-1} 0.2419 \approx 1.3265 \text{ radians}.$$

In part (c) above, we obtained a value of 1.3266 radians for B. Thus the two methods for computing B differed by only 0.0001 radians. This tiny difference is almost certainly due to using approximate values rather than exact values. Thus this check uncovers no problems.

13 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 3$, and $B = 30°$. Evaluate:

(a) A (assume $A < 90°$)

(b) C

(c) c

solution

(a) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\sin A}{4} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{3}.$$

Solve the equation above for $\sin A$, getting

$$\sin A = \frac{2}{3}.$$

The assumption that $A < 90°$ now implies that

$$A = \sin^{-1}\frac{2}{3} \approx 0.7297 \text{ radians} \approx 41.8°.$$

(b) The angles in a triangle add up to 180°. Thus $A + B + C = 180°$. Solving for C, we have

$$C = 180° - A - B \approx 180° - 41.8° - 30° = 108.2°.$$

Multiplying by $\frac{\pi}{180°}$ to convert to radians gives

$$C \approx 108.2° \approx 1.888 \text{ radians}.$$

(c) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin C}{c},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\frac{2}{3}}{4} \approx \frac{\sin 108.2°}{c},$$

where we have an approximation rather than an exact equality because we have used the approximate value 108.2° for C (our solution in part (a) showed that $\sin A$ has the exact value $\frac{2}{3}$; thus the left side above is not an approximation). Solving the equation above for c, we get

$$c \approx 5.70.$$

15 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 3$, and $B = 30°$. Evaluate:

(a) A (assume $A > 90°$)

(b) C

(c) c

solution

(a) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\sin A}{4} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{3}.$$

Solve the equation above for $\sin A$, getting

$$\sin A = \frac{2}{3}.$$

The assumption that $A > 90°$ now implies that

$$A = \pi - \sin^{-1}\frac{2}{3} \approx 2.4119 \text{ radians} \approx 138.2°.$$

(b) The angles in a triangle add up to 180°. Thus $A + B + C = 180°$. Solving for C, we have

$$C = 180° - A - B \approx 180° - 138.2° - 30° = 11.8°.$$

Multiplying by $\frac{\pi}{180°}$ to convert to radians gives

$$C \approx 11.8° \approx 0.206 \text{ radians}.$$

(c) Use the law of sines in the form

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin C}{c},$$

which in this case becomes the equation

$$\frac{\frac{2}{3}}{4} \approx \frac{\sin 11.8°}{c},$$

where we have an approximation rather than an exact equality because we have used the approximate value 11.8° for C (our solution in part (a) showed that $\sin A$ has the exact value $\frac{2}{3}$; thus the left side above is not an approximation). Solving the equation above for c, we get

$$c \approx 1.23.$$

17 Find the lengths of both diagonals in a parallelogram that has two sides of length 4, two sides of length 7, and two angles of 38°.

solution The diagonal opposite the 38° angles is the third side of a triangle that has a side of length 4, a side of length 7, and a 38° angle between those two sides. Let c denote the length of this diagonal. Then by the law of cosines we have

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= 4^2 + 7^2 - 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 7 \cos 38° \\ &= 65 - 56 \cos 38° \\ &\approx 20.87. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $c \approx \sqrt{20.87} \approx 4.57$.

The parallelogram has two 38° angles; thus the other two angles of the parallelogram must be 142° (because all four angles of the parallelogram add up to 360°). The diagonal opposite the 142° angles is the third side of a triangle that has a side of length 4, a side of length 7, and a 142° angle between those two sides. Let d denote the length of this diagonal. Then by the law of cosines we have

$$\begin{aligned} d^2 &= 4^2 + 7^2 - 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 7 \cos 142° \\ &= 65 - 56 \cos 142° \\ &\approx 109.13. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $d \approx \sqrt{109.13} \approx 10.45$.

19 Find the angle between the shorter diagonal of the parallelogram in Exercise 17 and a side with length 4.

solution We have enough information to use either the Law of Sines or the Law of Cosines. However, to avoid the ambiguity that can arise from using the Law of Sines to solve for an angle, we will use the Law of Cosines.

Let A denote the angle between the shorter diagonal (which has length approximately 4.57) and a side of the parallelogram of length 4. By the Law of Cosines, we have

$$\cos A \approx \frac{4^2 + 4.57^2 - 7^2}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 4.57}$$

$$\approx -0.331.$$

Thus $A \approx \cos^{-1}(-0.331) \approx 1.91$. Hence the angle in question is approximately 1.91 radians, which is approximately 109°.

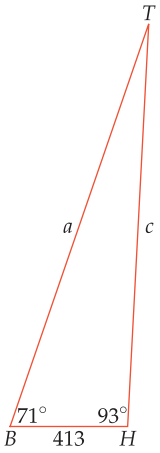
21 A surveyor on the south bank of a river needs to measure the distance from a boulder on the south bank of the river to a tree on the north bank. The surveyor measures that the distance from the boulder to a small hill on the south bank of the river is 413 feet. From the boulder, the surveyor uses a surveying instrument to find that the angle tree–boulder–hill is 71°. From the hill, the surveyor finds that the angle tree–hill–boulder is 93°.

(a) What is the distance from the boulder to the tree?

(b) What is the distance from the hill to the tree?

solution

Let B denote the boulder, T denote the tree, and H denote the hill. Let a denote the distance from the boulder to the tree and let c denote the distance from the hill to the tree. Thus we have the figure here. Because the angles of a triangle add up to 180°, the angle of the triangle at the vertex T is $180° - (71° + 93°)$, which equals 16°.



(a) Using the law of sines, we have

$$\frac{\sin 93°}{a} = \frac{\sin 16°}{413}.$$

Thus

$$a = 413\frac{\sin 93°}{\sin 16°}$$

feet, which is approximately 1496.3 feet.

(b) Using the law of sines, we have

$$\frac{\sin 71°}{c} = \frac{\sin 16°}{413}.$$

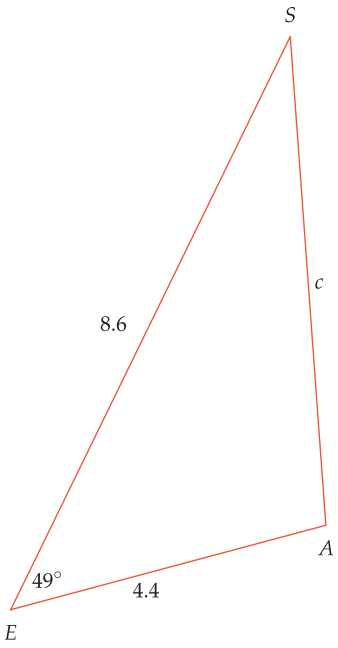
Thus

$$c = 413\frac{\sin 71°}{\sin 16°}$$

feet, which is approximately 1416.7 feet.

23 Sirius, the brightest star visible from Earth except for our Sun, is 8.6 light-years from Earth. Alpha Centauri, the closest star to Earth except for our Sun, is 4.4 light-years from Earth. If the angle Sirius–Earth–Alpha Centauri is 49°, then how far apart are Sirius and Alpha Centauri?

solution In the figure here, E denotes Earth, S denotes Sirius, A denotes Alpha Centauri, and c denotes the distance between the two stars.



Using the law of cosines, we have

$$c^2 = 4.4^2 + 8.6^2 - 2 \cdot 4.4 \cdot 8.6 \cos 49°$$

$$\approx 43.67.$$

Thus $c \approx \sqrt{43.67} \approx 6.6$. In other words, the two stars are approximately 6.6 light-years apart.

5.5 Double-Angle and Half-Angle Formulas

Learning Objectives

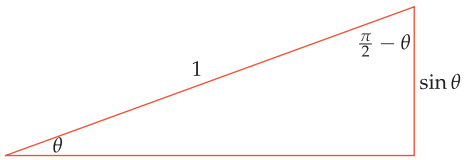
By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute $\cos(2\theta)$, $\sin(2\theta)$, and $\tan(2\theta)$ from the values of $\cos\theta$, $\sin\theta$, and $\tan\theta$;
- compute $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$, $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$, and $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ from the values of $\cos\theta$, $\sin\theta$, and $\tan\theta$.

How are the values of $\cos(2\theta)$ and $\sin(2\theta)$ and $\tan(2\theta)$ related to the values of $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ and $\tan\theta$? What about the values of $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ and $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$? In this section we will see how to answer these questions.

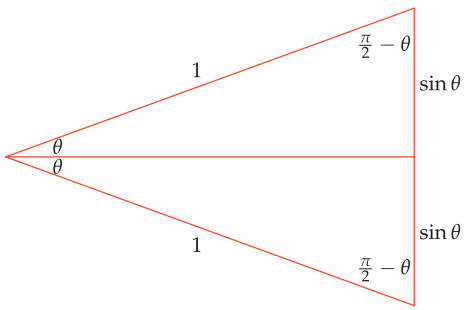
The Cosine of 2θ

Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, and consider a right triangle with a hypotenuse of length 1 and an angle of θ radians. The other angle of this right triangle will be $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ radians. The side opposite the angle θ has length $\sin\theta$, as shown below (the unlabeled side of the triangle has length $\cos\theta$, but that side is not of interest now).



Flip the triangle above across the horizontal side, producing another right triangle with a hypotenuse of length 1 and angles of θ and $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ radians, as shown below.

The triangle formed by the outer edges is an isosceles triangle with two sides of length 1 and an angle of 2θ between those two sides.



Now consider the isosceles triangle above formed by the union of the two right triangles. Two sides of this isosceles triangle have length 1. As can be seen above, the angle between these two sides is 2θ. As can also be seen in the figure, the side opposite this angle has length $2\sin\theta$. Thus applying the law of cosines to this isosceles triangle gives

$$(2\sin\theta)^2 = 1^2 + 1^2 - 2 \cdot 1 \cdot 1 \cdot \cos(2\theta).$$

Rewrite the last equation as

$$4\sin^2\theta = 2 - 2\cos(2\theta).$$

Solving this equation for $\cos(2\theta)$ gives the equation

Never make the mistake of thinking that $\cos(2\theta)$ equals $2\cos\theta$.

$$\cos(2\theta) = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta.$$

We just found a formula for $\cos(2\theta)$ in terms of $\sin\theta$. Sometimes we need a formula expressing $\cos(2\theta)$ in terms of $\cos\theta$. To obtain such a formula, replace $\sin^2\theta$ by $1-\cos^2\theta$ in the last equation, getting

$$\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1.$$

Yet another formula for $\cos(2\theta)$ arises if we replace 1 in the formula above by $\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta$, getting

$$\cos(2\theta) = \cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta.$$

Thus we have found three formulas for $\cos(2\theta)$, which are collected below.

Double-angle formulas for cosine

$$\cos(2\theta) = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta$$

$$\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1$$

$$\cos(2\theta) = \cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta$$

We derived these formulas using an angle θ in a right triangle, which implies that $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$. However, these formulas are valid for all real numbers θ.

In practice, use whichever of the three formulas is most convenient, as shown in the next example.

Example 1 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\cos\theta = \frac{3}{4}$. Evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$.

solution Because we know the value of $\cos\theta$, we use the second of the formulas given above for $\cos(2\theta)$:

$$\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1 = 2\left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right)^2 - 1 = 2\cdot\tfrac{9}{16} - 1 = \tfrac{9}{8} - 1 = \tfrac{1}{8}.$$

The Sine of 2θ

To find a formula for $\sin(2\theta)$, we will apply the law of sines to the isosceles triangle in the last figure. As we have already noted, this triangle has an angle of 2θ, with a side of length $2\sin\theta$ opposite this angle. The uppermost angle in the isosceles triangle is $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$ radians, with a side of length 1 opposite this angle. The law of sines now tells us that

$$\frac{\sin(2\theta)}{2\sin\theta} = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)}{1}.$$

Recall that $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \cos\theta$ (see Section 4.6). Thus the equation above can be rewritten as

$$\frac{\sin(2\theta)}{2\sin\theta} = \cos\theta.$$

Solving this equation for $\sin(2\theta)$ gives the following formula.

Double-angle formula for sine

$$\sin(2\theta) = 2\cos\theta\,\sin\theta$$

Expressions such as $\cos\theta\,\sin\theta$ should be interpreted to mean $(\cos\theta)(\sin\theta)$, not $\cos(\theta\sin\theta)$.

The formula above is valid for all values of θ.

The Tangent of 2θ

Now that we have found formulas for $\cos(2\theta)$ and $\sin(2\theta)$, we can find a formula for $\tan(2\theta)$ in the usual fashion of writing the tangent as a ratio of sine and cosine. In doing so, we will find it more convenient to use the last of the three formulas we found for $\cos(2\theta)$. Specifically, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(2\theta) &= \frac{\sin(2\theta)}{\cos(2\theta)} \\ &= \frac{2\cos\theta\,\sin\theta}{\cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta}.\end{aligned}$$

Statue and portrait of Alan Turing in Bletchley Park, England, where Turing used sophisticated mathematics to help crack German codes during World War II.

In the last expression, divide numerator and denominator by $\cos^2\theta$, getting

$$\tan(2\theta) = \frac{2\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}}{1 - \frac{\sin^2\theta}{\cos^2\theta}}.$$

Now replace $\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$ above by $\tan\theta$, getting the following nice formula.

Double-angle formula for tangent

$$\tan(2\theta) = \frac{2\tan\theta}{1 - \tan^2\theta}$$

The formula above is valid for all values of θ, except that we must exclude values of θ for which $\tan\theta$ or $\tan(2\theta)$ is undefined (in other words, odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ and odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ must be excluded).

Example 2

Suppose θ is an angle such that $\tan\theta = 5$. Evaluate $\tan(2\theta)$.

solution Because $\tan\theta = 5$, the formula above tells us that

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(2\theta) &= \frac{2\cdot 5}{1 - 5^2} \\ &= -\frac{10}{24} \\ &= -\frac{5}{12}.\end{aligned}$$

The Cosine and Sine of $\frac{\theta}{2}$

Never make the mistake of thinking that $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ *equals* $\frac{\cos\theta}{2}$.

Now we are ready to find the half-angle formulas for evaluating $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$. We start with the double-angle formula

$$\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1.$$

This formula allows us to find the value of $\cos(2\theta)$ if we know the value of $\cos\theta$. If instead we start out knowing the value of $\cos(2\theta)$, then the equation above can be solved for $\cos\theta$. The next example illustrates this procedure.

Example 3

Find an exact expression for $\cos 15^\circ$.

Example 2 in Section 5.6 uses a different method to find a different exact expression for $\cos 15^\circ$.

solution We know that $\cos 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. We want to find the cosine of half of 30°. Thus we set $\theta = 15^\circ$ in the identity $\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1$, getting

$$\cos 30^\circ = 2\cos^2 15^\circ - 1.$$

In this equation, replace $\cos 30^\circ$ with its value, getting

$$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} = 2\cos^2 15^\circ - 1.$$

Now solve the equation above for $\cos 15^\circ$ (which is positive, so we take the positive square root below), getting

$$\cos 15^\circ = \sqrt{\frac{1 + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{(1 + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}) \cdot 2}{2 \cdot 2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{3}}}{2}.$$

This value for $\cos 15^\circ$ *(or* $\cos \frac{\pi}{12}$ *if using radians) was used in exercises in Sections 4.4 and 4.6.*

To find a general formula for $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ in terms of $\cos\theta$, we will carry out the procedure followed in the example above. The key idea is that we can substitute any value for θ in the identity

$$\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1,$$

provided that we make the same substitution on both sides of the equation. We want to find a formula for $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$. Thus we replace θ by $\frac{\theta}{2}$ on both sides of the equation above, getting

$$\cos\theta = 2\cos^2\frac{\theta}{2} - 1.$$

Now solve this equation for $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$, getting the following half-angle formula.

Half-angle formula for cosine

$$\cos\frac{\theta}{2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos\theta}{2}}$$

The choice of the plus or minus sign in the formula above depends on knowledge of the sign of $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$. For example, if $0 < \theta < \pi$, then $0 < \frac{\theta}{2} < \frac{\pi}{2}$, which implies that $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ is positive (thus we would choose the plus sign in the formula above).

To find a formula for $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$, we start with the double-angle formula

$$\cos(2\theta) = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta.$$

In the identity above, replace θ by $\frac{\theta}{2}$ on both sides of the equation, getting

$$\cos\theta = 1 - 2\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}.$$

Now solve this equation for $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$, getting the following half-angle formula.

Half-angle formula for sine

$$\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{2}}$$

The choice of the plus or minus sign in the last formula depends on knowledge of the sign of $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$. The examples below illustrate this procedure.

Example 4

Find an exact expression for $\sin\frac{\pi}{8}$.

solution We already know how to evaluate $\sin\frac{\pi}{4}$. Thus we take $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ in the half-angle formula for sine, getting

This value for $\sin\frac{\pi}{8}$ *(or* $\sin 22.5^\circ$ *if we work in degrees) was used in exercises in Sections 4.4 and 4.6.*

$$\sin\frac{\pi}{8} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos\frac{\pi}{4}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{4}} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}.$$

In the first equality above, we chose the plus sign in the half-angle formula because we know that $\sin\frac{\pi}{8}$ is positive.

The next example shows that sometimes the minus sign must be chosen when using a half-angle formula.

Example 5

Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{2}{3}$. Evaluate $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$.

solution Because $-\frac{\pi}{4} < \frac{\theta}{2} < 0$, we see that $\sin\frac{\theta}{2} < 0$. Thus we need to choose the negative sign in the identity above. We have

$$\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = -\sqrt{\frac{1-\cos\theta}{2}} = -\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{2}{3}}{2}} = -\sqrt{\frac{1}{6}} = -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{6}.$$

The Tangent of $\frac{\theta}{2}$

A formula for $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ *could be found by writing* $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ *as the ratio of* $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ *and* $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ *and then using the half-angle formulas for cosine and sine. However, the process used here leads to a simpler formula.*

We start with the equation

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}.$$

Because we seek a formula involving $\sin(2\theta)$, we multiply numerator and denominator above by $2\cos\theta$, getting

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \frac{2\cos\theta\sin\theta}{2\cos^2\theta}.$$

The numerator of the last term above equals $\sin(2\theta)$. Furthermore, the identity $\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1$ shows that the denominator of the last term above equals $1 + \cos(2\theta)$. Making these substitutions in the equation above gives

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin(2\theta)}{1+\cos(2\theta)}.$$

In the equation above, replace θ by $\frac{\theta}{2}$ on both sides of the equation, getting the half-angle formula

$$\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{\sin\theta}{1+\cos\theta}.$$

This formula is valid for all values of θ, except that we must exclude odd multiples of π (because we need to exclude cases where $\cos\theta = -1$ to avoid division by 0).

To find another formula for $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$, note that

$$\frac{\sin\theta}{1+\cos\theta} = \frac{\sin\theta}{1+\cos\theta}\cdot\frac{1-\cos\theta}{1-\cos\theta}$$

$$= \frac{(\sin\theta)(1-\cos\theta)}{1-\cos^2\theta}$$

$$= \frac{(\sin\theta)(1-\cos\theta)}{\sin^2\theta}$$

$$= \frac{1-\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}.$$

Thus our identity above for $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ can be rewritten to give the half-angle formula

$$\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1-\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}.$$

This formula is valid whenever $\sin\theta \neq 0$.

For convenience, we now collect the half-angle formulas for tangent.

Half-angle formulas for tangent

$$\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1-\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$$

$$\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{\sin\theta}{1+\cos\theta}$$

Example 6

Show that $\tan\frac{\pi}{8} = \sqrt{2}-1$.

solution Using the half-angle formula for $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ with $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$, we have

$$\tan\frac{\pi}{8} = \frac{1-\cos\frac{\pi}{4}}{\sin\frac{\pi}{4}} = \frac{1-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}} = \left(1-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} - 1 = \sqrt{2}-1.$$

Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\cos(2\theta)$ ***does not equal*** $2\cos\theta$.

1 For $\theta = 23°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos(2\theta)$ (b) $2\cos\theta$

2 For $\theta = 7$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos(2\theta)$ (b) $2\cos\theta$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\sin(2\theta)$ ***does not equal*** $2\sin\theta$.

3 For $\theta = -5$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin(2\theta)$ (b) $2\sin\theta$

4 For $\theta = 100°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin(2\theta)$ (b) $2\sin\theta$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ ***does not equal*** $\frac{\cos\theta}{2}$.

5 For $\theta = 6$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\cos\theta}{2}$

6 For $\theta = -80°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\cos\theta}{2}$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ ***does not equal*** $\frac{\sin\theta}{2}$.

7 For $\theta = 65°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\sin\theta}{2}$

8 For $\theta = 9$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\sin\theta}{2}$

9 Given that $\sin 18° = \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4}$, find an exact expression for $\cos 36°$.
[*The value used here for* $\sin 18°$ *is derived in Problem 106 in this section.*]

10 Given that $\sin\frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{4}$, find an exact expression for $\cos\frac{3\pi}{5}$.

[*Problem 73 asks you to explain how the value for* $\sin\frac{3\pi}{10}$ *used here follows from the solution to Exercise 9.*]

For Exercises 11–26, evaluate the given quantities assuming that u and v are both in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ ***and***

$$\cos u = \frac{1}{3} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin v = \frac{1}{4}.$$

11 $\sin u$
12 $\cos v$
13 $\tan u$
14 $\tan v$
15 $\cos(2u)$
16 $\cos(2v)$
17 $\sin(2u)$
18 $\sin(2v)$
19 $\tan(2u)$
20 $\tan(2v)$
21 $\cos\frac{u}{2}$
22 $\cos\frac{v}{2}$
23 $\sin\frac{u}{2}$
24 $\sin\frac{v}{2}$
25 $\tan\frac{u}{2}$
26 $\tan\frac{v}{2}$

For Exercises 27–42, evaluate the given quantities assuming that u and v are both in the interval $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$ ***and***

$$\sin u = \frac{1}{5} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin v = \frac{1}{6}.$$

27 $\cos u$
28 $\cos v$
29 $\tan u$
30 $\tan v$
31 $\cos(2u)$
32 $\cos(2v)$
33 $\sin(2u)$
34 $\sin(2v)$
35 $\tan(2u)$
36 $\tan(2v)$
37 $\cos\frac{u}{2}$
38 $\cos\frac{v}{2}$
39 $\sin\frac{u}{2}$
40 $\sin\frac{v}{2}$
41 $\tan\frac{u}{2}$
42 $\tan\frac{v}{2}$

For Exercises 43–58, evaluate the given quantities assuming that u and v are both in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, 0)$ ***and***

$$\tan u = -\frac{1}{7} \quad \textit{and} \quad \tan v = -\frac{1}{8}.$$

43 $\cos u$
44 $\cos v$
45 $\sin u$
46 $\sin v$
47 $\cos(2u)$
48 $\cos(2v)$
49 $\sin(2u)$
50 $\sin(2v)$
51 $\tan(2u)$
52 $\tan(2v)$
53 $\cos\frac{u}{2}$
54 $\cos\frac{v}{2}$
55 $\sin\frac{u}{2}$
56 $\sin\frac{v}{2}$
57 $\tan\frac{u}{2}$
58 $\tan\frac{v}{2}$

59 Find an exact expression for $\sin 15°$.

60 Find an exact expression for $\cos 22.5°$.

61 Find an exact expression for $\sin\frac{\pi}{24}$.

62 Find an exact expression for $\cos\frac{\pi}{16}$.

63 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = 0.4$.

(a) Without using a double-angle formula, evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$ by first finding θ using an inverse trigonometric function.

(b) Without using an inverse trigonometric function, evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$ again by using a double-angle formula.

[*Your solutions to (a) and (b), which are obtained through different methods, should be the same, although they might differ by a tiny amount due to using approximations rather than exact amounts.*]

64 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = 0.2$.

(a) Without using a double-angle formula, evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$ by first finding θ using an inverse trigonometric function.

(b) Without using an inverse trigonometric function, evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$ again by using a double-angle formula.

65 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.3$.

(a) Without using a double-angle formula, evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$ by first finding θ using an inverse trigonometric function.

(b) Without using an inverse trigonometric function, evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$ again by using a double-angle formula.

66 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.8$.

(a) Without using a double-angle formula, evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$ by first finding θ using an inverse trigonometric function.

(b) Without using an inverse trigonometric function, evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$ again by using a double-angle formula.

67 Find a formula for $\sin(4\theta)$ in terms of $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

68 Find a formula for $\cos(4\theta)$ in terms of $\cos\theta$.

69 Find numbers a, b, and c such that

$$\cos^4\theta = a + b\cos(2\theta) + c\cos(4\theta)$$

for all θ.

70 Find numbers a, b, and c such that

$$\sin^4\theta = a + b\cos(2\theta) + c\cos(4\theta)$$

for all θ.

Problems

71 Show that $\tan 15° = 2 - \sqrt{3}$.

72 Show that $\tan 75° = 2 + \sqrt{3}$.

73 Explain how the equation $\sin\frac{3\pi}{10} = \frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{4}$ follows from the solution to Exercise 9.

74 Show that

$$(\cos x + \sin x)^2 = 1 + \sin(2x)$$

for every number x.

75 Show that

$$|\cos x + \sin x| \le \sqrt{2}$$

for every number x.
[*Hint:* Use the result in the previous problem.]

76 Show that

$$\cos(2\theta) \le \cos^2\theta$$

for every angle θ.

77 Show that

$$|\sin(2\theta)| \le 2|\sin\theta|$$

for every angle θ.

78 Do not make the mistake of thinking that

$$\frac{\sin(2\theta)}{2} = \sin\theta$$

is a valid identity. Although the equation above is false in general, it is true for some special values of θ. Find all values of θ that satisfy the equation above.

79 Explain why there does not exist an angle θ such that $\cos\theta\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$.

80 Show that

$$|\cos\theta\sin\theta| \le \frac{1}{2}$$

for every angle θ.

81 Do not make the mistake of thinking that

$$\frac{\cos(2\theta)}{2} = \cos\theta$$

is a valid identity.

(a) Show that the equation above is false whenever $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$.

(b) Show that there exists an angle θ in the interval $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$ satisfying the equation above.

82 Without doing any algebraic manipulations, explain why

$$(2\cos^2\theta - 1)^2 + (2\cos\theta\sin\theta)^2 = 1$$

for every angle θ.

83 Find angles u and v such that $\cos(2u) = \cos(2v)$ but $\cos u \ne \cos v$.

84 Show that if $\cos(2u) = \cos(2v)$, then $|\cos u| = |\cos v|$.

85 Find angles u and v such that $\sin(2u) = \sin(2v)$ but $|\sin u| \ne |\sin v|$.

86 Show that

$$\sin^2(2\theta) = 4(\sin^2\theta - \sin^4\theta)$$

for all θ.

87 Find a formula that expresses $\sin^2(2\theta)$ only in terms of $\cos\theta$.

88 Show that

$$(\cos\theta + \sin\theta)^2(\cos\theta - \sin\theta)^2 + \sin^2(2\theta) = 1$$

for all angles θ.

89 Suppose θ is not an integer multiple of π. Explain why the point $(1, 2\cos\theta)$ is on the line containing the point $\big(\sin\theta, \sin(2\theta)\big)$ and the origin.

90 Show that

$$\cos y = \frac{1 - \tan^2(y/2)}{1 + \tan^2(y/2)}$$

for all numbers y except odd multiples of π.

91 Show that

$$\sin y = \frac{2\tan(y/2)}{1 + \tan^2(y/2)}$$

for all numbers y except odd multiples of π.

92 Show that

$$\tan^2(2x) = \frac{4(\cos^2 x - \cos^4 x)}{(2\cos^2 x - 1)^2}$$

for all numbers x except odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{4}$.

93 Find a formula that expresses $\tan^2(2\theta)$ only in terms of $\sin\theta$.

94 Find all numbers t such that $\frac{\cos^{-1} t}{2} = \sin^{-1} t$.

95 Find all numbers t such that $\cos^{-1} t = \frac{\sin^{-1} t}{2}$.

96 Show that

$$\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}}$$

for all θ except odd multiples of π.

97 Find a formula that expresses $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ only in terms of $\tan\theta$.

98 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\cos\theta$ is rational. Explain why $\cos(2\theta)$ is rational.

99 Give an example of an angle θ such that $\sin\theta$ is rational but $\sin(2\theta)$ is irrational.

100 Give an example of an angle θ such that both $\sin\theta$ and $\sin(2\theta)$ are rational.

Problems 101–106 will lead you to the discovery of an exact expression for the value of* $\sin 18^\circ$. *For convenience, throughout these problems let

$$t = \sin 18^\circ.$$

101 Using a double-angle formula, show that $\cos 36^\circ = 1 - 2t^2$.

102 Using a double-angle formula and the previous problem, show that

$$\cos 72^\circ = 8t^4 - 8t^2 + 1.$$

103 Explain why $\sin 18^\circ = \cos 72^\circ$. Then using the previous problem, explain why

$$8t^4 - 8t^2 - t + 1 = 0.$$

104 Verify that

$$8t^4 - 8t^2 - t + 1 = (t - 1)(2t + 1)(4t^2 + 2t - 1).$$

105 Explain why the two previous problems imply that

$$t = 1, \quad t = -\frac{1}{2}, \quad t = \frac{-\sqrt{5} - 1}{4}, \text{ or } \ t = \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{4}.$$

106 Explain why the first three values in the previous problem are not possible values for $\sin 18^\circ$. Conclude that

$$\sin 18^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{5} - 1}{4}.$$

[*This value for* $\sin 18^\circ$ *(or* $\sin\frac{\pi}{10}$ *if we work in radians) was used in Exercise 9.*]

107 Use the result from the previous problem to show that

$$\cos 18^\circ = \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{5} + 5}{8}}.$$

108 Show that

$$\tan\frac{x}{4}=\frac{\sqrt{2-2\cos x}-\sin x}{1-\cos x}$$

for all x in the interval $(0,2\pi)$.
[*Hint:* Start with a half-angle formula for tangent to express $\tan\frac{x}{4}$ in terms of $\sin\frac{x}{2}$ and $\cos\frac{x}{2}$. Then use half-angle formulas for cosine and sine, along with algebraic manipulations.]

109 Show that

$$\cos\frac{\pi}{32}=\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}}}{2}.$$

[*Hint:* First do Exercise 62.]

110 Show that

$$\sin\frac{\pi}{32}=\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}}}{2}.$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

***The next two exercises emphasize that* $\cos(2\theta)$ *does not equal* $2\cos\theta$.**

1 For $\theta=23°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos(2\theta)$ (b) $2\cos\theta$

solution

(a) Note that $2\times 23=46$. Using a calculator working in degrees, we have $\cos 46°\approx 0.694658$.

(b) Using a calculator working in degrees, we have $2\cos 23°\approx 2\times 0.920505=1.841010$.

***The next two exercises emphasize that* $\sin(2\theta)$ *does not equal* $2\sin\theta$.**

3 For $\theta=-5$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin(2\theta)$ (b) $2\sin\theta$

solution

(a) Note that $2\times(-5)=-10$. Using a calculator working in radians, we have $\sin(-10)\approx 0.544021$.

(b) Using a calculator working in radians, we have $2\sin(-5)\approx 2\times 0.9589=1.9178$.

***The next two exercises emphasize that* $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ *does not equal* $\frac{\cos\theta}{2}$.**

5 For $\theta=6$ radians, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\cos\frac{\theta}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\cos\theta}{2}$

solution

(a) A calculator working in radians gives the following result: $\cos\frac{6}{2}=\cos 3\approx -0.989992$.

(b) A calculator working in radians gives the following result: $\frac{\cos 6}{2}\approx\frac{0.96017}{2}=0.480085$.

***The next two exercises emphasize that* $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ *does not equal* $\frac{\sin\theta}{2}$.**

7 For $\theta=65°$, evaluate each of the following:
(a) $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ (b) $\frac{\sin\theta}{2}$

solution

(a) A calculator working in radians gives the following result: $\sin\frac{65°}{2}=\sin 32.5°\approx 0.537300$.

(b) A calculator working in radians gives the following result: $\frac{\sin 65°}{2}\approx\frac{0.906308}{2}=0.453154$.

9 Given that $\sin 18°=\frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4}$, find an exact expression for $\cos 36°$.

solution To evaluate $\cos 36°$, use one of the double-angle formulas for $\cos(2\theta)$ with $\theta=18°$.

$$\cos 36°=1-2\sin^2 18°$$
$$=1-2\left(\tfrac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4}\right)^2=1-2\left(\tfrac{3-\sqrt{5}}{8}\right)=\tfrac{\sqrt{5}+1}{4}.$$

remark The solution above shows that the golden ratio (see Problem 98 in Section 2.2) equals $2\cos 36°$.

For Exercises 11–26, evaluate the given quantities assuming that* u *and* v *are both in the interval* $(0,\frac{\pi}{2})$ *and

$$\cos u=\frac{1}{3}\quad\textit{and}\quad\sin v=\frac{1}{4}.$$

11 $\sin u$

solution Because $0<u<\frac{\pi}{2}$, we know that $\sin u>0$. Thus

$$\sin u=\sqrt{1-\cos^2 u}=\sqrt{1-\frac{1}{9}}=\sqrt{\frac{8}{9}}=\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}.$$

13 $\tan u$

solution To evaluate $\tan u$, use its definition as a ratio:

$$\tan u=\frac{\sin u}{\cos u}=\frac{\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}}{\frac{1}{3}}=2\sqrt{2}.$$

15 $\cos(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\cos(2u)$, use one of the double-angle formulas for cosine:

$$\cos(2u)=2\cos^2 u-1=\frac{2}{9}-1=-\frac{7}{9}.$$

17 $\sin(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\sin(2u)$, use the double-angle formula for sine:

$$\sin(2u) = 2\cos u \sin u = 2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} = \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{9}.$$

19 $\tan(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\tan(2u)$, use its definition as a ratio:

$$\tan(2u) = \frac{\sin(2u)}{\cos(2u)} = \frac{\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{9}}{-\frac{7}{9}} = -\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{7}.$$

Alternatively, we could have used the double-angle formula for tangent, which will produce the same answer.

21 $\cos\frac{u}{2}$

solution Because $0 < \frac{u}{2} < \frac{\pi}{4}$, we know that $\cos\frac{u}{2} > 0$. Thus

$$\cos\frac{u}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos u}{2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{1}{3}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{\frac{4}{3}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}.$$

23 $\sin\frac{u}{2}$

solution Because $0 < \frac{u}{2} < \frac{\pi}{4}$, we know that $\sin\frac{u}{2} > 0$. Thus

$$\sin\frac{u}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos u}{2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{1}{3}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{\frac{2}{3}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{3}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}.$$

25 $\tan\frac{u}{2}$

solution To evaluate $\tan\frac{u}{2}$, use its definition as a ratio:

$$\tan\frac{u}{2} = \frac{\sin\frac{u}{2}}{\cos\frac{u}{2}} = \frac{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}}{\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{6}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}.$$

Alternatively, we could have used the half-angle formula for tangent, which will produce the same answer.

For Exercises 27–42, evaluate the given quantities assuming that u and v are both in the interval $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi\right)$ and

$$\sin u = \frac{1}{5} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin v = \frac{1}{6}.$$

27 $\cos u$

solution Because $\frac{\pi}{2} < u < \pi$, we know that $\cos u < 0$. Thus

$$\cos u = -\sqrt{1-\sin^2 u} = -\sqrt{1-\frac{1}{25}} = -\sqrt{\frac{24}{25}}$$

$$= -\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}.$$

29 $\tan u$

solution To evaluate $\tan u$, use its definition as a ratio:

$$\tan u = \frac{\sin u}{\cos u} = \frac{\frac{1}{5}}{-\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}} = -\frac{1}{2\sqrt{6}} = -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{12}.$$

31 $\cos(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\cos(2u)$, use one of the double-angle formulas for cosine:

$$\cos(2u) = 1 - 2\sin^2 u = 1 - \frac{2}{25} = \frac{23}{25}.$$

33 $\sin(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\sin(2u)$, use the double-angle formula for sine:

$$\sin(2u) = 2\cos u \sin u = 2 \cdot \left(-\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{5} = -\frac{4\sqrt{6}}{25}.$$

35 $\tan(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\tan(2u)$, use its definition as a ratio:

$$\tan(2u) = \frac{\sin(2u)}{\cos(2u)} = \frac{-\frac{4\sqrt{6}}{25}}{\frac{23}{25}} = -\frac{4\sqrt{6}}{23}.$$

Alternatively, we could have used the double-angle formula for tangent, which will produce the same answer.

37 $\cos\frac{u}{2}$

solution Because $\frac{\pi}{4} < \frac{u}{2} < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we know that $\cos\frac{u}{2} > 0$. Thus

$$\cos\frac{u}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos u}{2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{\frac{5-2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{5-2\sqrt{6}}{10}}.$$

39 $\sin\frac{u}{2}$

solution Because $\frac{\pi}{4} < \frac{u}{2} < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we know that $\sin\frac{u}{2} > 0$. Thus

$$\sin\frac{u}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos u}{2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{\frac{5+2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{5+2\sqrt{6}}{10}}.$$

41 $\tan\frac{u}{2}$

solution To evaluate $\tan\frac{u}{2}$, use one of the half-angle formulas for tangent:

$$\tan\frac{u}{2} = \frac{1-\cos u}{\sin u} = \frac{1+\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}}{\frac{1}{5}} = 5+2\sqrt{6}.$$

We could also have evaluated $\tan\frac{u}{2}$ by using its definition as the ratio of $\sin\frac{u}{2}$ and $\cos\frac{u}{2}$, but in this case that procedure would lead to a more complicated algebraic expression.

For Exercises 43–58, evaluate the given quantities assuming that u and v are both in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2},0)$ and

$$\tan u = -\frac{1}{7} \quad \textit{and} \quad \tan v = -\frac{1}{8}.$$

43 $\cos u$

solution Because $-\frac{\pi}{2} < u < 0$, we know that $\cos u > 0$ and $\sin u < 0$. Thus

$$-\frac{1}{7} = \tan u = \frac{\sin u}{\cos u} = \frac{-\sqrt{1-\cos^2 u}}{\cos u}.$$

Squaring the first and last entries above gives

$$\frac{1}{49} = \frac{1-\cos^2 u}{\cos^2 u}.$$

Multiplying both sides by $\cos^2 u$ and then by 49 gives

$$\cos^2 u = 49 - 49\cos^2 u.$$

Thus $50\cos^2 u = 49$, which implies that

$$\cos u = \sqrt{\frac{49}{50}} = \frac{7}{5\sqrt{2}} = \frac{7\sqrt{2}}{10}.$$

45 $\sin u$

solution Solve the equation $\tan u = \frac{\sin u}{\cos u}$ for $\sin u$:

$$\sin u = \cos u \tan u = \frac{7\sqrt{2}}{10}\cdot\left(-\frac{1}{7}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{10}.$$

47 $\cos(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\cos(2u)$, use one of the double-angle formulas for cosine:

$$\cos(2u) = 2\cos^2 u - 1 = 2\cdot\frac{49}{50} - 1 = \frac{24}{25}.$$

49 $\sin(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\sin(2u)$, use the double-angle formula for sine:

$$\sin(2u) = 2\cos u \sin u = 2\cdot\frac{7\sqrt{2}}{10}\cdot\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{10}\right) = -\frac{7}{25}.$$

51 $\tan(2u)$

solution To evaluate $\tan(2u)$, use the double-angle formula for tangent:

$$\tan(2u) = \frac{2\tan u}{1-\tan^2 u} = \frac{-\frac{2}{7}}{\frac{48}{49}} = -\frac{7}{24}.$$

Alternatively, we could have evaluated $\tan(2u)$ by using its definition as a ratio of $\sin(2u)$ and $\cos(2u)$, producing the same answer.

53 $\cos\frac{u}{2}$

solution Because $-\frac{\pi}{4} < \frac{u}{2} < 0$, we know that $\cos\frac{u}{2} > 0$. Thus

$$\cos\frac{u}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos u}{2}}$$
$$= \sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{7\sqrt{2}}{10}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{\frac{10+7\sqrt{2}}{10}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{10+7\sqrt{2}}{20}}.$$

55 $\sin\frac{u}{2}$

solution Because $-\frac{\pi}{4} < \frac{u}{2} < 0$, we know that $\sin\frac{u}{2} < 0$. Thus

$$\sin\frac{u}{2} = -\sqrt{\frac{1-\cos u}{2}}$$
$$= -\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{7\sqrt{2}}{10}}{2}} = -\sqrt{\frac{\frac{10-7\sqrt{2}}{10}}{2}} = -\sqrt{\frac{10-7\sqrt{2}}{20}}.$$

57 $\tan\frac{u}{2}$

solution To evaluate $\tan\frac{u}{2}$, use one of the half-angle formulas for tangent:

$$\tan\frac{u}{2} = \frac{1-\cos u}{\sin u} = \frac{1-\frac{7\sqrt{2}}{10}}{-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{10}} = 7 - \frac{10}{\sqrt{2}} = 7-5\sqrt{2}.$$

59 Find an exact expression for $\sin 15^\circ$.

solution Use the half-angle formula for $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ with $\theta = 30^\circ$ (choose the plus sign associated with the square root because $\sin 15^\circ$ is positive), getting

$$\sin 15^\circ = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos 30^\circ}{2}}$$
$$= \sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{(1-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})\cdot 2}{2\cdot 2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}.$$

61 Find an exact expression for $\sin\frac{\pi}{24}$.

solution Using the half-angle formula for $\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$ with $\theta = \frac{\pi}{12}$ (and choosing the plus sign associated with the square root because $\sin\frac{\pi}{24}$ is positive), we have

$$\sin\frac{\pi}{24} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos\frac{\pi}{12}}{2}}.$$

Note that $\frac{\pi}{12}$ radians equals 15°. Substituting for $\cos\frac{\pi}{12}$ the value for $\cos 15^\circ$ from Example 3 gives

$$\sin\frac{\pi}{24} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}}{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}}{2}.$$

63 Suppose $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = 0.4$.

(a) Without using a double-angle formula, evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$ by first finding θ using an inverse trigonometric function.

(b) Without using an inverse trigonometric function, evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$ again by using a double-angle formula.

solution

(a) Because $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = 0.4$, we see that

$$\theta = \sin^{-1} 0.4 \approx 0.411517 \text{ radians}.$$

Thus

$$2\theta \approx 0.823034 \text{ radians}.$$

Hence

$$\sin(2\theta) \approx \sin(0.823034) \approx 0.733212.$$

(b) To use the double-angle formula to evaluate $\sin(2\theta)$, we must first evaluate $\cos\theta$. Because $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we know that $\cos\theta > 0$. Thus

$$\cos\theta = \sqrt{1-\sin^2\theta} = \sqrt{1-0.16} = \sqrt{0.84} \approx 0.916515.$$

Now

$$\sin(2\theta) = 2\cos\theta\sin\theta \approx 2(0.916515)(0.4) = 0.733212.$$

65 Suppose $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.3$.

(a) Without using a double-angle formula, evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$ by first finding θ using an inverse trigonometric function.

(b) Without using an inverse trigonometric function, evaluate $\cos(2\theta)$ again by using a double-angle formula.

solution

(a) Because $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < 0$ and $\cos\theta = 0.3$, we see that

$$\theta = -\cos^{-1} 0.3 \approx -1.2661 \text{ radians}.$$

Thus

$$2\theta \approx -2.5322 \text{ radians}.$$

Hence

$$\cos(2\theta) \approx \cos(-2.5322) \approx -0.82.$$

(b) Using a double-angle formula, we have

$$\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos^2\theta - 1 = 2(0.3)^2 - 1 = -0.82.$$

67 Find a formula for $\sin(4\theta)$ in terms of $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

solution Use the double-angle formula for sine, with θ replaced by 2θ, getting

$$\sin(4\theta) = 2\cos(2\theta)\,\sin(2\theta).$$

Now use the double-angle formulas for the expressions on the right side, getting

$$\sin(4\theta) = 2(2\cos^2\theta - 1)(2\cos\theta\,\sin\theta) = 4(2\cos^2\theta - 1)\cos\theta\,\sin\theta.$$

There are also other correct ways to express a solution. For example, replacing $\cos^2\theta$ with $1-\sin^2\theta$ in the expression above leads to the formula

$$\sin(4\theta) = 4(1-2\sin^2\theta)\cos\theta\,\sin\theta.$$

69 Find numbers a, b, and c such that

$$\cos^4\theta = a + b\cos(2\theta) + c\cos(4\theta)$$

for all θ.

solution One of the double-angle formulas for $\cos(2\theta)$ can be written in the form

$$\cos^2\theta = \frac{1+\cos(2\theta)}{2}.$$

Squaring both sides, we get

$$\cos^4\theta = \frac{1+2\cos(2\theta)+\cos^2(2\theta)}{4}.$$

We now see that we need an expression for $\cos^2(2\theta)$, which we can obtain by replacing θ by 2θ in the formula above for $\cos^2\theta$:

$$\cos^2(2\theta) = \frac{1+\cos(4\theta)}{2}.$$

Substituting this expression into the expression above for $\cos^4\theta$ gives

$$\cos^4\theta = \frac{1+2\cos(2\theta)+\frac{1+\cos(4\theta)}{2}}{4} = \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{2}\cos(2\theta) + \frac{1}{8}\cos(4\theta).$$

Thus $a = \frac{3}{8}$, $b = \frac{1}{2}$, and $c = \frac{1}{8}$.

5.6 Addition and Subtraction Formulas

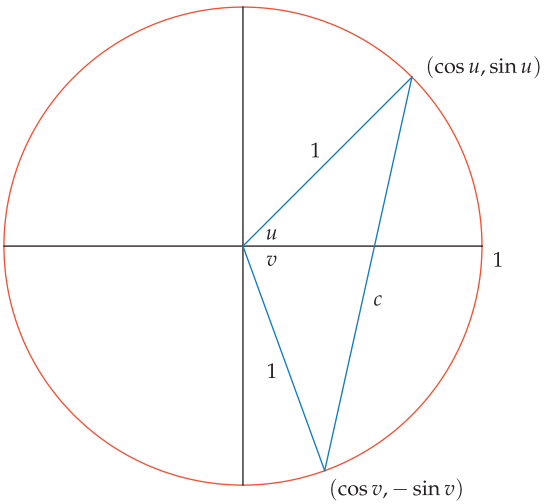
Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- find the cosine of the sum and difference of two angles;
- find the sine of the sum and difference of two angles;
- find the tangent of the sum and difference of two angles.

The Cosine of a Sum and Difference

Consider the figure below, which shows the unit circle along with the radius corresponding to u and the radius corresponding to $-v$.



This figure leads to an easy derivation of the formula for $\cos(u+v)$.

Monument to 19th-century Russian mathematician Sofia Kovalevskaya. Her discoveries helped shape the theory of the partial differential equations.

We defined the cosine and sine so that the endpoint of the radius corresponding to u has coordinates $(\cos u, \sin u)$. The endpoint of the radius corresponding to $-v$ has coordinates $(\cos(-v), \sin(-v))$, which we know equals $(\cos v, -\sin v)$, as shown above.

The large triangle in the figure above has two sides that are radii of the unit circle and thus have length 1. The angle between these two sides is $u+v$. The length of the third side of this triangle has been labeled c.

The idea now is that we can compute c^2 in two different ways: first by using the formula for the distance between two points, and second by using the law of cosines. We will then set these two computed values of c^2 equal to each other, obtaining a formula for $\cos(u+v)$.

To carry out the plan discussed in the paragraph above, note that one endpoint of the line segment above with length c has coordinates $(\cos u, \sin u)$ and the other endpoint has coordinates $(\cos v, -\sin v)$. Recall that the distance between two points is the square root of the sum of the squares of the differences of the coordinates. Thus

$$c = \sqrt{(\cos u - \cos v)^2 + (\sin u + \sin v)^2}.$$

Squaring both sides of this equation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= (\cos u - \cos v)^2 + (\sin u + \sin v)^2 \\ &= \cos^2 u - 2\cos u\,\cos v + \cos^2 v \\ &\quad + \sin^2 u + 2\sin u\,\sin v + \sin^2 v \\ &= (\cos^2 u + \sin^2 u) + (\cos^2 v + \sin^2 v) \\ &\quad - 2\cos u\,\cos v + 2\sin u\,\sin v \\ &= 2 - 2\cos u\,\cos v + 2\sin u\,\sin v. \end{aligned}$$

To compute c^2 by another method, apply the law of cosines to the large triangle in the figure, getting $c^2 = 1^2 + 1^2 - 2 \cdot 1 \cdot 1 \cos(u+v)$, which can be rewritten as

$$c^2 = 2 - 2\cos(u+v).$$

We have now found two expressions that equal c^2. Setting those expressions equal to each other, we have

$$2 - 2\cos(u+v) = 2 - 2\cos u\,\cos v + 2\sin u\,\sin v.$$

Subtracting 2 from both sides of the equation above and then dividing both sides by -2 gives the following result.

Addition formula for cosine

$$\cos(u+v) = \cos u\,\cos v - \sin u\,\sin v$$

Never make the mistake of thinking that $\cos(u+v)$ equals $\cos u + \cos v$.

We derived this formula using a figure assuming that u and v are between 0 and $\frac{\pi}{2}$. However, the formula above is valid for all values of u and v.

Example 1

Find an exact expression for $\cos 75^\circ$.

solution Note that $75^\circ = 45^\circ + 30^\circ$, and we already know how to evaluate the cosine and sine of 45° and 30°. Using the addition formula for cosine, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \cos 75^\circ &= \cos(45^\circ + 30^\circ) \\ &= \cos 45^\circ \cos 30^\circ - \sin 45^\circ \sin 30^\circ \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{6} - \sqrt{2}}{4}. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that if $v = u$, the addition formula for cosine becomes

$$\cos(2u) = \cos^2 u - \sin^2 u,$$

which agrees with our previous double-angle formula for cosine.

We can now find a formula for the cosine of the difference of two angles. In the formula for $\cos(u+v)$, replace v by $-v$ on both sides of the equation and use the identities $\cos(-v) = \cos v$ and $\sin(-v) = -\sin(v)$ to get the following.

We could have skipped the derivation of the double-angle formulas in the previous section and instead obtained the double-angle formulas as consequences of the addition formulas. However, sometimes additional understanding comes from seeing multiple derivations of a formula.

Subtraction formula for cosine

$$\cos(u-v) = \cos u\,\cos v + \sin u\,\sin v$$

Example 2

Find an exact expression for $\cos 15^\circ$.

Note that $15^\circ = \frac{\pi}{12}$ *radians.*

solution Note that $15^\circ = 45^\circ - 30^\circ$, and we already know how to evaluate the cosine and sine of 45° and 30°. Using the subtraction formula for cosine, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\cos 15^\circ &= \cos(45^\circ - 30^\circ)\\ &= \cos 45^\circ \cos 30^\circ + \sin 45^\circ \sin 30^\circ\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}}{4}.\end{aligned}$$

A remarkable exact formula for $\cos\frac{\pi}{17}$ *is displayed just before the start of this section's Exercises.*

remark Using a half-angle formula, in Example 3 in Section 5.5 we found a different expression for $\cos 15^\circ$. Thus we have two seemingly different exact expressions for $\cos 15^\circ$, one produced by the subtraction formula for cosine and the other produced by the half-angle formula for cosine. Problem 40 in this section asks you to verify that these two expressions for $\cos 15^\circ$ are equal.

The Sine of a Sum and Difference

To find the formula for the sine of the sum of two angles, we will make use of the identities

$$\sin\theta = \cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta) \quad \text{and} \quad \sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta) = \cos\theta,$$

which you can review in Section 4.6. We begin by converting the sine into a cosine and then we use the identity just derived above:

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(u+v) &= \cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - u - v)\\ &= \cos\big((\tfrac{\pi}{2} - u) - v\big)\\ &= \cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - u)\cos v + \sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - u)\sin v.\end{aligned}$$

The equation above and the identities above now imply the following result.

Addition formula for sine

$$\sin(u+v) = \sin u \cos v + \cos u \sin v$$

Never make the mistake of thinking that $\sin(u+v)$ *equals* $\sin u + \sin v$.

Notice that if $v = u$, the addition formula for sine becomes

$$\sin(2u) = 2\cos u \sin u,$$

which agrees with our previous double-angle formula for sine.

We can now find a formula for the sine of the difference of two angles. In the formula for $\sin(u+v)$, replace v by $-v$ on both sides of the equation and use the identities $\cos(-v) = \cos v$ and $\sin(-v) = -\sin(v)$ to get the following result.

Subtraction formula for sine

$$\sin(u-v) = \sin u \cos v - \cos u \sin v$$

Example 3

Verify that the subtraction formula for the sine function gives the expected identity for $\sin(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta)$.

solution Using the subtraction formula for sine, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sin\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) &= \sin\tfrac{\pi}{2}\cos\theta - \cos\tfrac{\pi}{2}\sin\theta \\ &= 1 \cdot \cos\theta - 0 \cdot \sin\theta \\ &= \cos\theta.\end{aligned}$$

The Tangent of a Sum and Difference

Now that we have found formulas for the cosine and sine of the sum of two angles, we can find a formula for the tangent of the sum of two angles by writing the tangent as a ratio of a sine and cosine. Specifically, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(u+v) &= \frac{\sin(u+v)}{\cos(u+v)} \\ &= \frac{\sin u\,\cos v + \cos u\,\sin v}{\cos u\,\cos v - \sin u\,\sin v} \\ &= \frac{\dfrac{\sin u}{\cos u} + \dfrac{\sin v}{\cos v}}{1 - \dfrac{\sin u\,\sin v}{\cos u\,\cos v}}.\end{aligned}$$

The last equality is obtained by dividing the numerator and denominator of the previous expression by $\cos u\,\cos v$.

Using the definition of the tangent as the sine divided by cosine, we can rewrite the equation above as follows.

Addition formula for tangent

$$\tan(u+v) = \frac{\tan u + \tan v}{1 - \tan u\,\tan v}$$

The identity above is valid for all u, v such that $\tan u$, $\tan v$, and $\tan(u+v)$ are defined (in other words, avoid odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$).

Notice that if $v = u$, the addition formula for tangent becomes

$$\tan(2u) = \frac{2\tan u}{1 - \tan^2 u},$$

which agrees with our previous double-angle formula for tangent.

We can now find a formula for the tangent of the difference of two angles. In the formula for $\tan(u+v)$, replace v by $-v$ on both sides of the equation and use the identity $\tan(-v) = -\tan v$ to get the following result.

In this section we derive six addition and subtraction formulas. Memorizing all six is not a good use of your time or mental energy. Instead, concentrate on learning the formulas for $\cos(u+v)$ *and* $\sin(u+v)$ *and on understanding how the other formulas follow from those two.*

Subtraction formula for tangent

$$\tan(u-v) = \frac{\tan u - \tan v}{1 + \tan u\,\tan v}$$

Example 4

Use the subtraction formula for tangent to find a formula for $\tan(\pi - \theta)$.

solution Using the subtraction formula for tangent, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(\pi - \theta) &= \frac{\tan\pi - \tan\theta}{1 + \tan\pi\ \tan\theta} \\ &= \frac{0 - \tan\theta}{1 + 0 \cdot \tan\theta} \\ &= -\tan\theta.\end{aligned}$$

Products of Trigonometric Functions

The addition and subtraction formulas lead to product formulas. The next example shows how these product formulas can be derived.

Example 5

Similar product formulas exist for $\sin u\ \sin v$ *and* $\cos u\ \sin v$. *Problems 49 and 50 ask you to derive those product formulas.*

Show that

$$\cos u\ \cos v = \frac{\cos(u+v) + \cos(u-v)}{2}$$

for all u, v.

solution Consider the addition and subtraction formulas for cosine:

$$\begin{aligned}\cos(u+v) &= \cos u \cos v - \sin u \sin v; \\ \cos(u-v) &= \cos u \cos v + \sin u \sin v.\end{aligned}$$

Adding the two equations above gives

$$\cos(u+v) + \cos(u-v) = 2\cos u \cos v.$$

Now dividing by 2 and then writing the resulting equation in the other order gives

$$\cos u\ \cos v = \frac{\cos(u+v) + \cos(u-v)}{2}.$$

Just for fun, here is the exact formula for $\cos\frac{\pi}{17}$ that the German mathematician Carl Friedrich Gauss discovered in 1796:

When he discovered this formula, Gauss was only 19 years old!

$$\cos\tfrac{\pi}{17} = \frac{\sqrt{15 + \sqrt{17} + \sqrt{34 - 2\sqrt{17}} + 2\sqrt{17 + 3\sqrt{17} - \sqrt{170 + 38\sqrt{17}}}}}{4\sqrt{2}}.$$

Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\cos(x+y)$ ***does not equal*** $\cos x + \cos y$.

1 For $x = 19°$ and $y = 13°$, evaluate:

(a) $\cos(x+y)$ (b) $\cos x + \cos y$

2 For $x = 1.2$ radians and $y = 3.4$ radians, evaluate:

(a) $\cos(x+y)$ (b) $\cos x + \cos y$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\sin(x-y)$ ***does not equal*** $\sin x - \sin y$.

3 For $x = 5.7$ radians and $y = 2.5$ radians, evaluate:

(a) $\sin(x-y)$ (b) $\sin x - \sin y$

4 For $x = 79°$ and $y = 33°$, evaluate:

(a) $\sin(x-y)$ (b) $\sin x - \sin y$

For Exercises 5–12, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities. The following information will be useful:

$$\cos 22.5^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin 22.5^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2};$$

$$\cos 18^\circ = \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{5}+5}{8}} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin 18^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4}.$$

[*The value for* $\sin 22.5^\circ$ *used here was derived in Example 4 in Section 5.5; the other values were derived in Exercise 60 and Problems 106 and 107 in Section 5.5.*]

5 $\cos 82.5^\circ$

6 $\cos 48^\circ$
[*Hint:* $48 = 30 + 18$]

7 $\sin 82.5^\circ$

8 $\sin 48^\circ$

9 $\cos 37.5^\circ$

10 $\cos 12^\circ$
[*Hint:* $12 = 30 - 18$]

11 $\sin 37.5^\circ$

12 $\sin 12^\circ$

For Exercises 13–24, evaluate the indicated expressions assuming that

$$\cos x = \frac{1}{3} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin y = \frac{1}{4},$$

$$\sin u = \frac{2}{3} \quad \textit{and} \quad \cos v = \frac{1}{5}.$$

Assume also that x *and* u *are in the interval* $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$*, that* y *is in the interval* $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$*, and that* v *is in the interval* $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, 0)$.

13 $\cos(x+y)$

14 $\cos(u+v)$

15 $\cos(x-y)$

16 $\cos(u-v)$

17 $\sin(x+y)$

18 $\sin(u+v)$

19 $\sin(x-y)$

20 $\sin(u-v)$

21 $\tan(x+y)$

22 $\tan(u+v)$

23 $\tan(x-y)$

24 $\tan(u-v)$

25 Evaluate $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right)$.

26 Evaluate $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3} + \sin^{-1}\frac{2}{5}\right)$.

27 Evaluate $\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4} + \tan^{-1} 2\right)$.

28 Evaluate $\cos\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{2}{3} + \tan^{-1} 3\right)$.

29 Find a formula for $\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

30 Find a formula for $\sin\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

31 Find a formula for $\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

32 Find a formula for $\sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

33 Find a formula for $\tan\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

34 Find a formula for $\tan\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

35 Find a formula for $\tan\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

36 Find a formula for $\tan\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

Problems

37 Show that $\sin 75^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}}{4}$.

38 Show (without using a calculator) that

$$\sin 10^\circ \cos 20^\circ + \cos 10^\circ \sin 20^\circ = \frac{1}{2}.$$

39 Show (without using a calculator) that

$$\sin\frac{\pi}{7}\cos\frac{4\pi}{21} + \cos\frac{\pi}{7}\sin\frac{4\pi}{21} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

40 Show that

$$\frac{\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}.$$

Do this without using a calculator and without using the knowledge that both expressions above are equal to $\cos 15^\circ$ (see Example 2 in this section and Example 3 in Section 5.5).

41 Show that $\sin 15^\circ = \dfrac{\sqrt{6}-\sqrt{2}}{4}$.
[*Hint:* $15 = 45 - 30$]

42 Show that $\cos(3\theta) = 4\cos^3\theta - 3\cos\theta$ for all θ.
[*Hint:* $\cos(3\theta) = \cos(2\theta + \theta)$.]

43 Show that $\cos 20^\circ$ is a zero of the polynomial $8x^3 - 6x - 1$.
[*Hint:* Set $\theta = 20^\circ$ in the identity from the previous problem.]

44 Show that

$$\sin(3\theta) = 3\sin\theta - 4\sin^3\theta$$

for all θ.

45 Show that $\sin\frac{\pi}{18}$ is a zero of the polynomial $8x^3 - 6x + 1$.
[*Hint:* Use the identity from the previous problem.]

46 Show that

$$\cos(5\theta) = 16\cos^5\theta - 20\cos^3\theta + 5\cos\theta$$

for all θ.

47 Use the previous problem to find a polynomial of degree 5 with integer coefficients that has $\cos 12^\circ$ as a zero.

48 Find a nice formula for $\sin(5\theta)$ in terms of $\sin\theta$.

49 Show that

$$\sin u \sin v = \frac{\cos(u-v) - \cos(u+v)}{2}$$

for all u, v.

50 Show that

$$\cos u \sin v = \frac{\sin(u+v) - \sin(u-v)}{2}$$

for all u, v.

51 Show that

$$\cos x + \cos y = 2\cos\frac{x+y}{2}\cos\frac{x-y}{2}$$

for all x, y.
[*Hint:* Take $u = \frac{x+y}{2}$ and $v = \frac{x-y}{2}$ in the formula given by Example 5.]

52 Show that

$$\cos x - \cos y = 2\sin\frac{x+y}{2}\sin\frac{y-x}{2}$$

for all x, y.

53 Show that

$$\sin x - \sin y = 2\cos\frac{x+y}{2}\,\sin\frac{x-y}{2}$$

for all x, y.

54 Find a formula for $\sin x + \sin y$ analogous to the formula in the previous problem.

55 Show that

$$\tan\frac{x+y}{2} = \frac{\cos x - \cos y}{\sin y - \sin x}$$

for all numbers x and y such that both sides make sense. [*Hint:* Divide the result in Exercise 52 by the result in Exercise 53.]

56 Show that if $|t|$ is small but nonzero, then

$$\frac{\sin(x+t) - \sin x}{t} \approx \cos x.$$

57 Show that if $|t|$ is small but nonzero, then

$$\frac{\cos(x+t) - \cos x}{t} \approx -\sin x.$$

58 Show that if $|t|$ is small but nonzero and x is not an odd multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$, then

$$\frac{\tan(x+t) - \tan x}{t} \approx 1 + \tan^2 x.$$

59 Suppose $u = \tan^{-1} 2$ and $v = \tan^{-1} 3$. Show that $\tan(u+v) = -1$.

60 Suppose $u = \tan^{-1} 2$ and $v = \tan^{-1} 3$. Using the previous problem, explain why $u + v = \frac{3\pi}{4}$.

61 Use the previous problem to derive the beautiful equation

$$\tan^{-1} 1 + \tan^{-1} 2 + \tan^{-1} 3 = \pi.$$

[*Problem 36 in Section 7.2 gives another derivation of the equation above.*]

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

The next two exercises emphasize that $\cos(x+y)$ does not equal $\cos x + \cos y$.

1 For $x = 19°$ and $y = 13°$, evaluate:
(a) $\cos(x+y)$ (b) $\cos x + \cos y$

solution

(a) Using a calculator working in degrees, we have

$$\cos(19° + 13°) = \cos 32° \approx 0.84805.$$

(b) Using a calculator working in degrees, we have

$$\cos 19° + \cos 13° \approx 0.94552 + 0.97437$$
$$= 1.91989.$$

The next two exercises emphasize that $\sin(x-y)$ does not equal $\sin x - \sin y$.

3 For $x = 5.7$ radians and $y = 2.5$ radians, evaluate:
(a) $\sin(x-y)$ (b) $\sin x - \sin y$

solution

(a) Using a calculator working in radians, we have

$$\sin(5.7 - 2.5) = \sin 3.2 \approx -0.05837.$$

(b) Using a calculator working in radians, we have

$$\sin 5.7 - \sin 2.5 \approx -0.55069 - 0.59847$$
$$= -1.14916.$$

For Exercises 5–12, find exact expressions for the indicated quantities. The following information will be useful:

$$\cos 22.5° = \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin 22.5° = \frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2};$$

$$\cos 18° = \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{5}+5}{8}} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin 18° = \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{4}.$$

5 $\cos 82.5°$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos 82.5° &= \cos(60° + 22.5°)\\ &= \cos 60°\cos 22.5° - \sin 60°\sin 22.5°\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}} - \sqrt{3}\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{4}\end{aligned}$$

7 $\sin 82.5°$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin 82.5° &= \sin(60° + 22.5°)\\ &= \sin 60°\cos 22.5° + \cos 60°\sin 22.5°\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}} + \sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{4}\end{aligned}$$

9 $\cos 37.5°$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos 37.5° &= \cos(60° - 22.5°)\\ &= \cos 60°\cos 22.5° + \sin 60°\sin 22.5°\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}} + \sqrt{3}\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{4}\end{aligned}$$

11 $\sin 37.5^\circ$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin 37.5^\circ &= \sin(60^\circ - 22.5^\circ)\\ &= \sin 60^\circ \cos 22.5^\circ - \cos 60^\circ \sin 22.5^\circ\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{2}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}} - \sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}}{4}\end{aligned}$$

For Exercises 13–24, evaluate the indicated expressions assuming that

$$\cos x = \frac{1}{3} \quad \textit{and} \quad \sin y = \frac{1}{4},$$
$$\sin u = \frac{2}{3} \quad \textit{and} \quad \cos v = \frac{1}{5}.$$

Assume also that x and u are in the interval $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$, that y is in the interval $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$, and that v is in the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, 0)$.

13 $\cos(x+y)$

solution To use the addition formula for $\cos(x+y)$, we will need to know the cosine and sine of both x and y. Thus first we find those values, beginning with $\sin x$. Because $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we know that $\sin x > 0$. Thus

$$\sin x = \sqrt{1-\cos^2 x} = \sqrt{1-\frac{1}{9}} = \sqrt{\frac{8}{9}} = \frac{\sqrt{4}\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{9}} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}.$$

Because $\frac{\pi}{2} < y < \pi$, we know that $\cos y < 0$. Thus

$$\cos y = -\sqrt{1-\sin^2 y} = -\sqrt{1-\frac{1}{16}} = -\sqrt{\frac{15}{16}} = -\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\cos(x+y) &= \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y\\ &= \frac{1}{3}\cdot\left(-\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right) - \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\\ &= \frac{-\sqrt{15}-2\sqrt{2}}{12}.\end{aligned}$$

15 $\cos(x-y)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos(x-y) &= \cos x \cos y + \sin x \sin y\\ &= \frac{1}{3}\cdot\left(-\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right) + \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{15}}{12}\end{aligned}$$

17 $\sin(x+y)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(x+y) &= \sin x \cos y + \cos x \sin y\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}\cdot\left(-\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right) + \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\\ &= \frac{1-2\sqrt{30}}{12}\end{aligned}$$

19 $\sin(x-y)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(x-y) &= \sin x \cos y - \cos x \sin y\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}\cdot\left(-\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right) - \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\\ &= \frac{-1-2\sqrt{30}}{12}\end{aligned}$$

21 $\tan(x+y)$

solution To use the addition formula for $\tan(x+y)$, we will need to know the tangent of both x and y. Thus first we find those values, beginning with $\tan x$:

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \frac{\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}}{\frac{1}{3}} = 2\sqrt{2}.$$

Also,

$$\tan y = \frac{\sin y}{\cos y} = \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{-\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{15}} = -\frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(x+y) &= \frac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x \tan y}\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2} - \frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}}{1 + 2\sqrt{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}}\\ &= \frac{30\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{15}}{15 + 2\sqrt{30}},\end{aligned}$$

where the last expression is obtained by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the previous expression by 15.

23 $\tan(x-y)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(x-y) &= \frac{\tan x - \tan y}{1 + \tan x \tan y}\\ &= \frac{2\sqrt{2} + \frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}}{1 - 2\sqrt{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}}\\ &= \frac{30\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{15}}{15 - 2\sqrt{30}},\end{aligned}$$

where the last expression is obtained by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the middle expression by 15.

25 Evaluate $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right)$.

solution To use the addition formula for cosine, we will need to evaluate the cosine and sine of $\cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}$. Thus we begin by computing those values.

The definition of $\cos^{-1}$ implies that

$$\cos\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right) = \frac{3}{4}.$$

Evaluating $\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4})$ takes a bit more work. Let $v = \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}$. Thus v is the angle in $[0, \pi]$ such that $\cos v = \frac{3}{4}$. Note that $\sin v \geq 0$ because v is in $[0, \pi]$. Thus

$$\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right) = \sin v = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 v} = \sqrt{1 - \frac{9}{16}} = \sqrt{\frac{7}{16}} = \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4}.$$

Using the addition formula for cosine, we now have

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right) &= \cos\frac{\pi}{6}\cos\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right) - \sin\frac{\pi}{6}\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}\right)\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{7}}{4}\\ &= \frac{3\sqrt{3}-\sqrt{7}}{8}.\end{aligned}$$

27 Evaluate $\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4} + \tan^{-1} 2\right)$.

solution To use the addition formula for sine, we will need to evaluate the cosine and sine of $\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}$ and $\tan^{-1} 2$. Thus we begin by computing those values.

The definition of $\cos^{-1}$ implies that

$$\cos\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}\right) = \frac{1}{4}.$$

Evaluating $\sin(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4})$ takes a bit more work. Let $u = \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}$. Thus u is the angle in $[0, \pi]$ such that $\cos u = \frac{1}{4}$. Note that $\sin u \geq 0$ because u is in $[0, \pi]$. Thus

$$\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}\right) = \sin u = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 u} = \sqrt{1 - \frac{1}{16}} = \sqrt{\frac{15}{16}} = \frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}.$$

Now let $v = \tan^{-1} 2$. Thus v is the angle in $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ such that $\tan v = 2$ (the range of $\tan^{-1}$ is the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$, but for this particular v we know that $\tan v$ is positive, which excludes the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, 0]$ from consideration). We have

$$2 = \tan v = \frac{\sin v}{\cos v} = \frac{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 v}}{\cos v}.$$

Squaring the first and last terms above, we get

$$4 = \frac{1 - \cos^2 v}{\cos^2 v}.$$

Solving the equation above for $\cos v$ now gives

$$\cos(\tan^{-1} 2) = \cos v = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}.$$

The identity $\sin v = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 v}$ now implies that

$$\sin(\tan^{-1} 2) = \sin v = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}.$$

Using the addition formula for sine, we now have

$$\begin{aligned}&\sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4} + \tan^{-1} 2\right)\\ &\quad= \sin\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}\right)\cos(\tan^{-1} 2)\\ &\qquad+ \cos\left(\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{4}\right)\sin(\tan^{-1} 2)\\ &\quad= \frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{5}}{5} + \frac{1}{4}\cdot\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}\\ &\quad= \frac{5\sqrt{3}+2\sqrt{5}}{20}.\end{aligned}$$

29 Find a formula for $\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \cos\theta\cos\frac{\pi}{2} - \sin\theta\sin\frac{\pi}{2}\\ &= -\sin\theta.\end{aligned}$$

31 Find a formula for $\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) &= \cos\theta\cos\frac{\pi}{4} - \sin\theta\sin\frac{\pi}{4}\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}(\cos\theta - \sin\theta)\end{aligned}$$

33 Find a formula for $\tan\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\tan\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) &= \frac{\tan\theta + \tan\frac{\pi}{4}}{1 - \tan\theta\tan\frac{\pi}{4}}\\ &= \frac{\tan\theta + 1}{1 - \tan\theta}\end{aligned}$$

35 Find a formula for $\tan\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$.

solution Because $\tan\frac{\pi}{2}$ is undefined, we cannot use the formula for the tangent of the sum of two angles. But the following calculation works:

$$\begin{aligned}\tan\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \frac{\sin(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2})}{\cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2})}\\ &= \frac{\sin\theta\cos\frac{\pi}{2} + \cos\theta\sin\frac{\pi}{2}}{\cos\theta\cos\frac{\pi}{2} - \sin\theta\sin\frac{\pi}{2}}\\ &= \frac{\cos\theta}{-\sin\theta}\\ &= -\frac{1}{\tan\theta}.\end{aligned}$$

5.7 Transformations of Trigonometric Functions

Learning Objectives

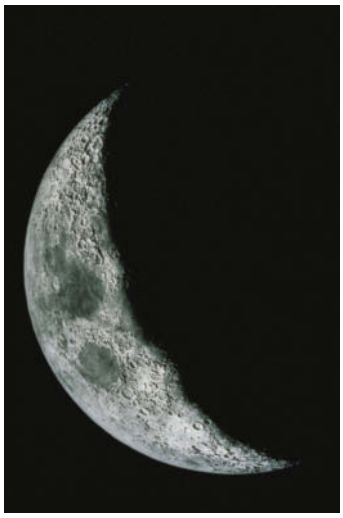
By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute the amplitude of a function;
- compute the period of a function;
- graph a phase shift;
- find transformations of trigonometric functions that adjust the amplitude, period, and/or phase shift to desired values.

Some events have patterns that repeat roughly periodically, such as tides (approximately daily), total daily nationwide ridership on mass transit (approximately weekly, with decreases on weekends as compared to weekdays), phases of the moon (approximately monthly), and the noon temperature in Chicago (approximately yearly, as the seasons change).

The cosine and sine functions are periodic functions and thus are particularly well suited for modeling such events. However, values of the cosine and sine, which are between -1 and 1, and the period of the cosine and sine, which is 2π, rarely fit the events being modeled. Thus transformations of these functions are needed.

In Section 1.3 we discussed various transformations of a function that could stretch the graph of the function vertically or horizontally, shift the graph to the left or right, or flip the graph across the vertical or horizontal axis. In this section we will revisit function transformations, this time using trigonometric functions. This section will help you review and solidify the concepts of function transformations introduced in Section 1.3 while also deepening your understanding of the behavior of the key trigonometric functions.



The phases of the moon, which repeat approximately monthly, are an example of periodic behavior.

Amplitude

Recall that if f is a function, c is a positive number, and a function g is defined by $g(x) = cf(x)$, then the graph of g is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of f by a factor of c (see Section 1.3).

Example 1

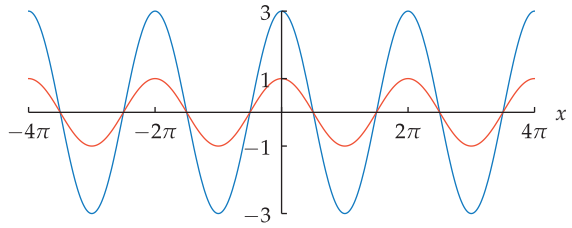
(a) Sketch the graphs of $\cos x$ and $3\cos x$ on the interval $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) What is the range of the function $3\cos x$?

Here we are informally using $\cos x$ *as an abbreviation for the function whose value at a number* x *equals* $\cos x$.

solution

(a) The graph of $3\cos x$ is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of 3.



The graphs of $\cos x$ *(orange) and* $3\cos x$ *(blue) on the interval* $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

For convenience, throughout this section different scales are used on the horizontal and vertical axes.

(b) The range of $3\cos x$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\cos x$ by 3. Thus the range of $3\cos x$ is the interval $[-3, 3]$.

We say that $3\cos x$ has amplitude 3. Here is the formal definition.

Not every function has an amplitude. For example, the tangent function defined on the interval $[0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ does not have a maximum value and thus does not have an amplitude.

Amplitude

The **amplitude** of a function is one-half the difference between the maximum and minimum values of the function.

For example, the function $3\cos x$ has a maximum value of 3 and a minimum value of -3. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $3\cos x$ is 6. Half of 6 is 3, and hence the function $3\cos x$ has amplitude 3.

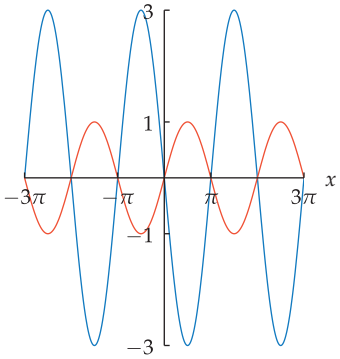
The next example illustrates the effect of multiplying a trigonometric function by a negative number.

Example 2

(a) Sketch the graphs of $\sin x$ and $-3\sin x$ on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

(b) What is the range of the function $-3\sin x$?

(c) What is the amplitude of the function $-3\sin x$?



The graphs of $\sin x$ (orange) and $-3\sin x$ (blue) on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

solution

(a) The graph of $-3\sin x$ is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of $\sin x$ by a factor of 3 and then flipping across the horizontal axis, as shown here.

(b) The range of $-3\sin x$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\sin x$ by -3. Thus the range of $-3\sin x$ is the interval $[-3, 3]$.

(c) The function $-3\sin x$ has a maximum value of 3 and a minimum value of -3. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $-3\sin x$ is 6. Half of 6 is 3, and hence the function $-3\sin x$ has amplitude 3.

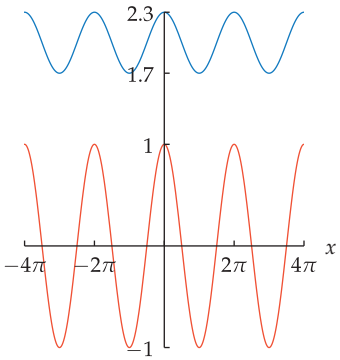
Recall that if f is a function, a is a positive number, and a function g is defined by $g(x) = f(x) + a$, then the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f up a units (see Section 1.3). The next example illustrates a function whose graph is obtained from the graph of the cosine function by stretching vertically and shifting up.

Example 3

(a) Sketch the graphs of $\cos x$ and $2 + 0.3\cos x$ on the interval $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) What is the range of the function $2 + 0.3\cos x$?

(c) What is the amplitude of the function $2 + 0.3\cos x$?



The graphs of $\cos x$ (orange) and $2 + 0.3\cos x$ (blue) on the interval $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$. Even though $2 + 0.3\cos x$ is larger than $\cos x$ for every real number x, the function $2 + 0.3\cos x$ has smaller amplitude than $\cos x$.

solution

(a) The graph of $2 + 0.3\cos x$ is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of 0.3 and then shifting up 2 units, as shown here.

(b) The range of $2 + 0.3\cos x$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\cos x$ by 0.3, which produces the interval $[-0.3, 0.3]$, and then adding 2 to each number. Thus the range of $2 + 0.3\cos x$ is the interval $[1.7, 2.3]$, as shown by the blue graph here.

(c) The function $2 + 0.3\cos x$ has a maximum value of 2.3 and a minimum value of 1.7. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $2 + 0.3\cos x$ is 0.6. Half of 0.6 is 0.3, and hence the function $2 + 0.3\cos x$ has amplitude 0.3.

Period

The graphs of the cosine and sine functions are periodic, meaning that they repeat their behavior at regular intervals. More specifically,

$$\cos(x + 2\pi) = \cos x \quad \text{and} \quad \sin(x + 2\pi) = \sin x$$

for every number x. In the equations above, we could have replaced 2π with 4π or 6π or 8π, and so on. However, no positive number smaller than 2π would make these equations valid for all values of x. Thus we say that the cosine and sine functions have **period** 2π. Here is the formal definition.

Period

Suppose f is a function and $p > 0$. We say that f has **period** p if p is the smallest positive number such that

$$f(x + p) = f(x)$$

for every real number x in the domain of f.

The cosine and sine functions have period 2π; the tangent function has period π (see Section 4.6).

Some functions do not repeat their behavior at regular intervals and thus do not have a period. For example, the function f defined by $f(x) = x^2$ does not have a period. A function is called **periodic** if it has a period.

Recall that if f is a function, c is a positive number, and a function h is defined by $h(x) = f(cx)$, then the graph of h is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of $\frac{1}{c}$ (see Section 1.3). This implies that if f has period p, then h has period $\frac{p}{c}$, as illustrated by the next example.

*The **frequency** of a periodic function is defined to be the reciprocal of the period. Thus functions with a small period have a large frequency.*

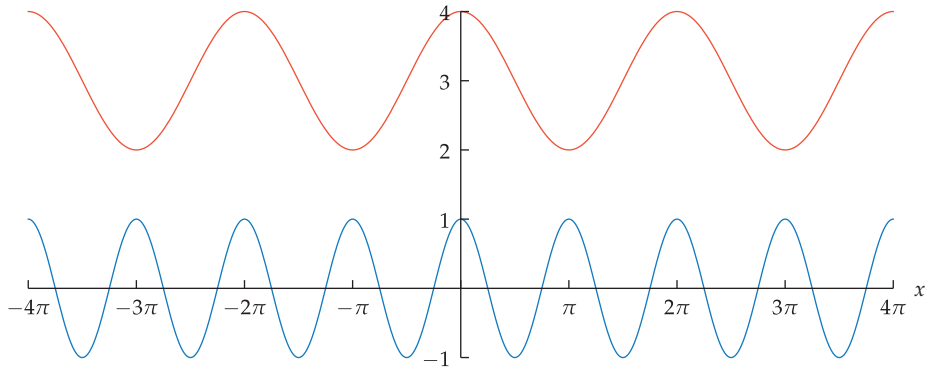
Example 4

(a) Sketch the graphs of $3 + \cos x$ and $\cos(2x)$ on the interval $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) What is the period of the function $\cos(2x)$?

solution

(a) The graph of $3 + \cos x$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\cos x$ up 3 units. The graph of $\cos(2x)$ is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$.



The graphs of $3 + \cos x$ (orange) and $\cos(2x)$ (blue) on the interval $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) To find the period of $\cos(2x)$, recall that the graph of $\cos(2x)$ is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, as discussed in the solution to part (a) above. Because the graph of $\cos x$ repeats its behavior in intervals of size 2π (and not in any intervals of smaller size), this means that the graph of $\cos(2x)$ repeats its behavior in intervals of size $\frac{1}{2}(2\pi)$ (and not in any intervals of smaller size); see the figure above. Thus $\cos(2x)$ has period π.

If we think of the horizontal axis in the graph in part (a) as representing time, then the graph of $\cos(2x)$ oscillates twice as fast as the graph of $\cos x$.

The next example illustrates a transformation of the sine function that changes both the amplitude and the period.

Example 5

Two common forms of radio broadcasting are FM (frequency modulation), which encodes information by varying the period (and thus the frequency) of the radio wave, and AM (amplitude modulation), which encodes information by varying the amplitude of the radio wave.

(a) Sketch the graph of the function $7\sin(2\pi x)$ on the interval $[-3,3]$.

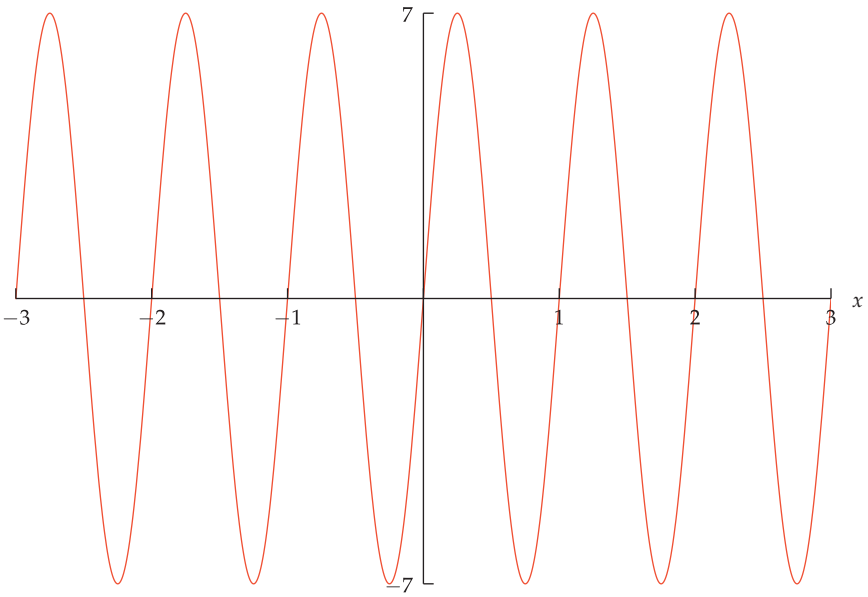
(b) What is the range of the function $7\sin(2\pi x)$?

(c) What is the amplitude of the function $7\sin(2\pi x)$?

(d) What is the period of the function $7\sin(2\pi x)$?

solution

(a) The graph of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ is obtained from the graph of $\sin x$ by stretching horizontally by a factor of $\frac{1}{2\pi}$ and stretching vertically by a factor of 7.



The graph of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ on the interval $[-3,3]$.

(b) As x varies over the real numbers, $\sin(2\pi x)$ takes on the same values as $\sin x$. Hence the range of the function $\sin(2\pi x)$ is the interval $[-1,1]$. The range of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\sin(2\pi x)$ by 7. Thus the range of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ is the interval $[-7,7]$.

(c) The function $7\sin(2\pi x)$ has a maximum value of 7 and a minimum value of -7. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ is 14. Half of 14 is 7, and hence the function $7\sin(2\pi x)$ has amplitude 7.

As this example shows, multiplying a function by a number (in this case 7) changes the amplitude but has no effect on the period.

(d) To find the period of $7\sin(2\pi x)$, recall that the graph of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ is obtained from the graph of $\sin x$ by stretching horizontally by a factor of $\frac{1}{2\pi}$ and stretching vertically by a factor of 7, as discussed in the solution to part (a) above. Because the graph of $\sin x$ repeats its behavior in intervals of size 2π (and not in any intervals of smaller size), this means that the graph of $7\sin(2\pi x)$ repeats its behavior in intervals of size $\frac{1}{2\pi}(2\pi)$ (and not in any intervals of smaller size); see the figure above. Thus $7\sin(2\pi x)$ has period 1.

Phase Shift

Recall that if f is a function, b is a positive number, and a function g is defined by $g(x) = f(x-b)$, then the graph of g is obtained by shifting the graph of f right b units (see Section 1.3).

Example 6

(a) Sketch the graphs of $\cos x$ and $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ on the interval $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) What is the range of the function $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

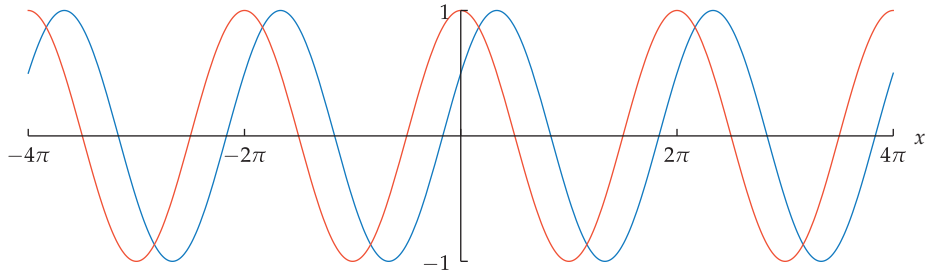
(c) What is the amplitude of the function $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

(d) What is the period of the function $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

(e) By what fraction of the period of $\cos x$ has the graph been shifted right to obtain the graph of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

solution

(a) The graph of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\cos x$ right by $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units, as shown below.



The graphs of $\cos x$ *(orange) and* $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ *(blue) on the interval* $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) As x varies over the real numbers, $\cos x$ and $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ take on the same values. Thus the range of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(c) The function $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ has a maximum value of 1 and a minimum value of -1. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is 2. Half of 2 is 1, and hence the function $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ has amplitude 1.

As this example shows, shifting the graph of a function to the right or the left changes neither the range nor the amplitude nor the period.

(d) The graph of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\cos x$ right by $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units. Thus the graph of $\cos x$ repeats its behavior in intervals of the same size as the graph of $\cos x$. This implies that $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ has period 2π.

(e) The graph of the function $\cos x$ is shifted right by $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units to obtain the graph of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$. The period of $\cos x$ is 2π. Thus the fraction of the period of $\cos x$ by which the graph has been shifted is $\frac{\pi/3}{2\pi}$, which equals $\frac{1}{6}$.

In the solution to part (e) above, we saw that the graph of $\cos x$ is shifted right by one-sixth of a period to obtain the graph of $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$. Shifting the graph of a periodic function to the right or the left is often called a **phase shift** because the original function and the new function have the same period and the same behavior, although they are out of phase.

Here is how the function $\cos x$ behaves with phase shifts of one-fourth its period, one-half its period, and all of its period:

- If the graph of $\cos x$ is shifted right by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ units, which is one-fourth of its period, then we obtain the graph of $\sin x$; this happens because $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \sin x$ (see Example 3 in Section 4.6).
- If the graph of $\cos x$ is shifted right by π units, which is one-half of its period, then we obtain the graph of $-\cos x$; this happens because $\cos(x - \pi) = -\cos x$ (using the formula in Section 4.6 for $\cos(\theta + n\pi)$, with $n = -1$).
- If the graph of $\cos x$ is shifted right by 2π units, which is its period, then we obtain the graph of $\cos x$; this happens because $\cos(x - 2\pi) = \cos x$.

Because cosine and sine are phase shifts of each other, a model of periodic behavior based on one of these functions (as in Example 8) could be changed into a model based on the other.

The next example shows how to deal with a change in amplitude and a change in period and a phase shift.

Example 7

(a) Sketch the graphs of the functions $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ and $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ on $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) What is the range of the function $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

(c) What is the amplitude of the function $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

(d) What is the period of the function $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

(e) By what fraction of the period of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ has the graph been shifted right to obtain the graph of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$?

solution

(a) The graph of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$, shown below, is obtained from the graph of $\sin x$ by stretching vertically by a factor of 5 and stretching horizontally by a factor of 2.

To see how to construct the graph of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$, define a function f by

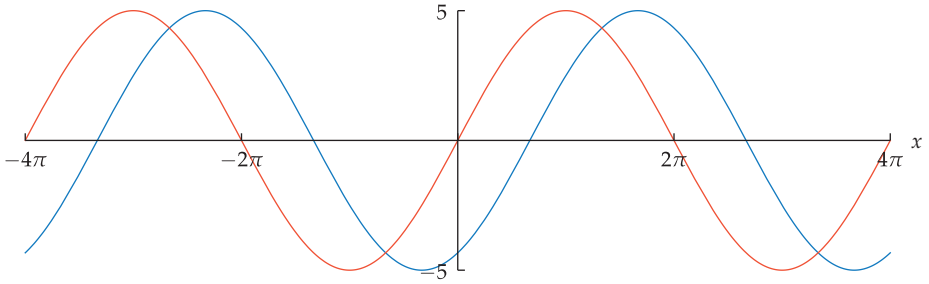
$$f(x) = 5\sin\frac{x}{2}.$$

Now

$$5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 5\sin\frac{x-\frac{2\pi}{3}}{2} = f\left(x-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right).$$

You may be surprised that the graph is shifted right by $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ units, not $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units. Take extra care with problems that involve both a change of period and a phase shift.

Thus the graph of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ right by $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ units.



The graphs of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ (orange) and $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ (blue) on $[-4\pi, 4\pi]$.

(b) The range of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ by 5. Thus the range of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is the interval $[-5, 5]$.

(c) The function $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ has a maximum value of 5 and a minimum value of -5. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is 10. Half of 10 is 5; hence $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ has amplitude 5.

(d) Because the graph of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ right by $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ units, the graph of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ repeats its behavior in intervals of the same size as the graph of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$. Thus the period of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ equals the period of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$, which equals the period of $\sin\frac{x}{2}$ (because changing the amplitude does not change the period). The function $\sin\frac{x}{2}$ has period 4π, because its graph is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of $\sin x$ (which has period 2π) by a factor of 2. Thus $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ has period 4π.

The phase shift of $\frac{1}{6}$ of the period obtained here seems about right when looking at the graphs above.

(e) The graph of the function $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ is shifted right by $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ units to obtain the graph of $5\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$. The period of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ is 4π. Thus the fraction of the period of $5\sin\frac{x}{2}$ by which the graph has been shifted is $\frac{2\pi/3}{4\pi}$, which equals $\frac{1}{6}$.

Fitting Transformations of Trigonometric Functions to Data

We now know how to modify a trigonometric function by modifying its amplitude, period, and/or phase shift. These tools give us enough flexibility to model periodic events using transformations of trigonometric functions.

Although we use a transformation of the cosine in the next example, we could have used the sine with a different phase shift. The identities $\sin x = \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ and $\cos x = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$ allow us to switch easily between cosine and sine.

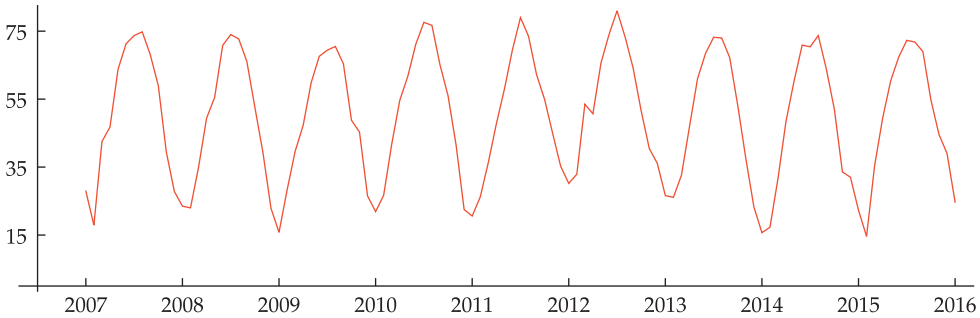
The next example shows a typical real-world payoff for thinking about amplitude, period, and phase shift.

Example 8

The graph below shows the average monthly temperature in Chicago for the nine years ending in January 2016 (the twelve data points for each year have been joined by line segments). Find a function of the form

$$a\cos(bx + c) + d$$

that models the temperature in Chicago, where x is measured in years (thus $x = 2010.5$ would correspond to the time halfway through the year 2010).



Average monthly temperature in Chicago, January 2007 – January 2016. Not surprisingly, this graph appears to be somewhat periodic.

solution As we have seen from examples, the period of the function above is $\frac{2\pi}{b}$ (we plan to choose $b > 0$). Because this is temperature data, it is reasonable to assume the period is one year, as suggested by the graph above. Thus we want $\frac{2\pi}{b} = 1$, which means that $b = 2\pi$.

We know that the amplitude of the function above is a (we plan to choose $a > 0$). The yearly maximum temperature on this graph seems to average about 75; the yearly minimum temperature seems to average about 20. Thus our function should have amplitude $\frac{75-20}{2}$, which equals 27.5. Thus we take $a = 27.5$.

Here we have no data, only a graph from which to make approximations.

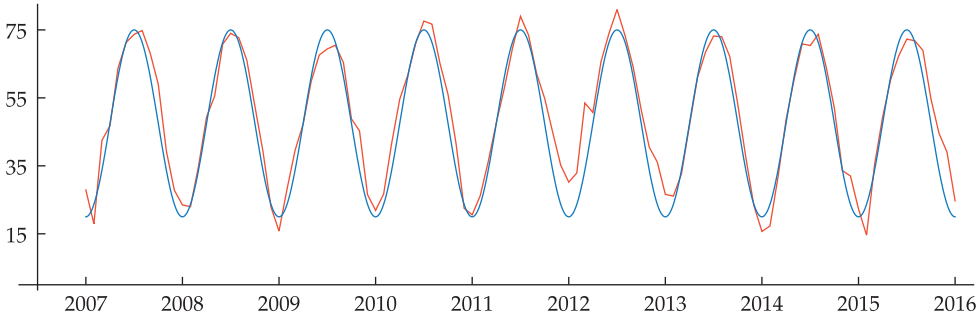
As we have seen, d should be chosen to be halfway between the minimum and maximum values of our function. Thus we should take $d = \frac{20+75}{2} = 47.5$.

In the graph above, we see that the annual minimum value of this function seems to occur most often at the very beginning of the year. Thus we want to choose c so that $\cos(2\pi x + c) = -1$ when x is an integer. Thus we take $c = \pi$.

Putting all this together, our function that models the temperature in Chicago is

$$27.5\cos(2\pi x + \pi) + 47.5,$$

whose graph is shown below along with our previous temperature graph for Chicago.



Average monthly temperatures in Chicago (orange) and the graph of $27.5\cos(2\pi x + \pi) + 47.5$ on the interval $[2007, 2016]$ (blue). Real data is messy. A mathematical model will not match real data exactly. The blue graph here does not perfectly reproduce the actual data in orange, but it gives a good approximation.

Exercises

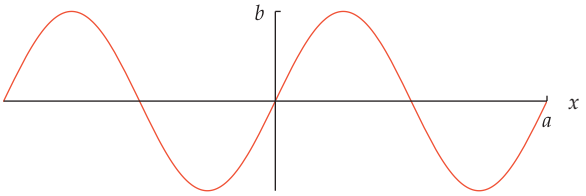
1 Let $f(x) = 4\sin x$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of f?
- (c) What is the amplitude of f?
- (d) What is the period of f?

2 Let $f(x) = -5\sin x$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of f?
- (c) What is the amplitude of f?
- (d) What is the period of f?

3 Let $g(x) = \sin(4x)$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of g?
- (c) What is the amplitude of g?
- (d) What is the period of g?

4 Let $g(x) = \sin(-5x)$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of g?
- (c) What is the amplitude of g?
- (d) What is the period of g?

Use the following graph for Exercises 5–12.



5 Suppose the figure above is part of the graph of the function $3\sin x$. What is the value of b?

6 Suppose the figure above is part of the graph of the function $4\sin(5x)$. What is the value of b?

7 Suppose the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\sin(7x)$. What is the value of a?

8 Suppose the figure above is part of the graph of the function $9\sin(6x)$. What is the value of a?

9 Find the smallest positive number c such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\sin(x + c)$.

10 Find the smallest positive number c such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\sin(x - c)$.

11 Find the smallest positive number c such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\cos(x - c)$.

12 Find the smallest positive number c such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\cos(x + c)$.

13 Let $f(x) = 2 + \cos x$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of f?
- (c) What is the amplitude of f?
- (d) What is the period of f?

14 Let $f(x) = 4 - \cos x$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of f?
- (c) What is the amplitude of f?
- (d) What is the period of f?

15 Let $g(x) = \cos(2 + x)$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of g?
- (c) What is the amplitude of g?
- (d) What is the period of g?

16 Let $g(x) = \cos(4 - x)$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.
- (b) What is the range of g?
- (c) What is the amplitude of g?
- (d) What is the period of g?

17 Let $h(x) = 5\cos(\pi x)$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of h on the interval $[-4, 4]$.
- (b) What is the range of h?
- (c) What is the amplitude of h?
- (d) What is the period of h?

18 Let $h(x) = 4\cos(3\pi x)$.
- (a) Sketch the graph of h on the interval $[-2, 2]$.
- (b) What is the range of h?
- (c) What is the amplitude of h?
- (d) What is the period of h?

19 Let $f(x) = 7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$.
- (a) What is the range of f?
- (b) What is the amplitude of f?
- (c) What is the period of f?
- (d) By what fraction of the period of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ should the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ be shifted left to obtain the graph of f?
- (e) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-8, 8]$.
- (f) Sketch the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5}) + 3$ on the interval $[-8, 8]$.

20 Let $f(x) = 6\cos(\frac{\pi}{3}x + \frac{8\pi}{5})$.
- (a) What is the range of f?
- (b) What is the amplitude of f?
- (c) What is the period of f?
- (d) By what fraction of the period of $6\cos(\frac{\pi}{3}x)$ should the graph of $6\cos(\frac{\pi}{3}x)$ be shifted left to obtain the graph of f?
- (e) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-9, 9]$.
- (f) Sketch the graph of $6\cos(\frac{\pi}{3}x + \frac{8\pi}{5}) + 7$ on the interval $[-9, 9]$.

For Exercises 21–30, assume f is the function defined by

$$f(x) = a\cos(bx + c) + d,$$

where a, b, c, and d are numbers.

21 Find two distinct values of a that give f amplitude 3.

22 Find two distinct values of a that give f amplitude $\frac{17}{5}$.

23 Find two distinct values for b so that f has period 4.

24 Find two distinct values for b so that f has period $\frac{7}{3}$.

25 Find values for a and d, with $a > 0$, so that f has range $[3, 11]$.

26 Find values for a and d, with $a > 0$, so that f has range $[-8, 6]$.

27 Find values for a, d, and c, with $a > 0$ and $0 \le c \le \pi$, so that f has range $[3, 11]$ and $f(0) = 10$.

28 Find values for a, d, and c, with $a > 0$ and $0 \le c \le \pi$, so that f has range $[-8, 6]$ and $f(0) = -2$.

29 Find values for a, d, c, and b, with $a > 0$ and $b > 0$ and $0 \le c \le \pi$, so that f has range $[3, 11]$, $f(0) = 10$, and f has period 7.

30 Find values for a, d, c, and b, with $a > 0$ and $b > 0$ and $0 \le c \le \pi$, so that f has range $[-8, 6]$, $f(0) = -2$, and f has period 8.

31 Let $g(x) = \sin^2 x$.

(a) What is the range of g?

(b) What is the amplitude of g?

(c) What is the period of g?

(d) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

32 Let $g(x) = \cos^2(3x)$.

(a) What is the range of g?

(b) What is the amplitude of g?

(c) What is the period of g?

(d) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$.

Hint for Exercises 33–34: Write $g(x)$ in the form $b\sin(x + c)$ for appropriate choices of b and c.

33 Let $g(x) = \cos x + \sin x$.

(a) What is the range of g?

(b) What is the amplitude of g?

(c) What is the period of g?

(d) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

34 Let $g(x) = \sqrt{3}\cos x + \sin x$.

(a) What is the range of g?

(b) What is the amplitude of g?

(c) What is the period of g?

(d) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

For Exercises 35–36, use the following information: In the northern hemisphere, the day with the longest daylight is June 21. Also, "day x of the year" means that $x = 1$ on January 1, $x = 2$ on January 2, $x = 32$ on February 1, etc.

35 Anchorage, Alaska, receives 19.37 hours of daylight on June 21. Six months later, on the day with the shortest daylight, Anchorage receives only 5.45 hours of daylight. Find a function of the form

$$a\cos(bx + c) + d$$

that models the number of hours of daylight in Anchorage on day x of the year.

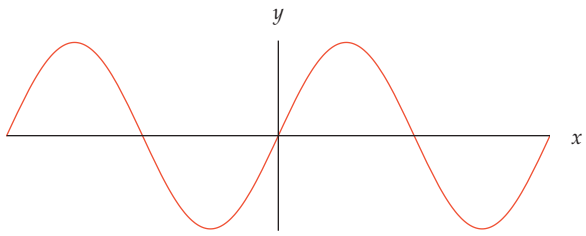
36 Phoenix, Arizona, receives 14.37 hours of daylight on June 21. Six months later, on the day with the shortest daylight, Phoenix receives only 9.93 hours of daylight. Find a function of the form

$$a\cos(bx + c) + d$$

that models the number of hours of daylight in Phoenix on day x of the year.

Problems

Use the following graph for Problems 37–39. Note that no scale is shown on the coordinate axes. Do not assume the scale is the same on the two coordinate axes.



37 Explain why, with no scale on either axis, it is not possible to determine whether the figure above is the graph of $\sin x$, $3\sin x$, $\sin(5x)$, or $3\sin(5x)$.

38 Suppose you are told that the function graphed above is either $\sin x$ or $3\sin x$. To narrow the choice down to just one of these two functions, for which axis would you want to know the scale?

39 Suppose you are told that the function graphed above is either $\sin x$ or $\sin(5x)$. To narrow the choice down to just one of these two functions, for which axis would you want to know the scale?

40 Suppose f is the function whose value at x is the cosine of x degrees. Explain how the graph of f is obtained from the graph of $\cos x$.

41 Explain how the sine function behaves with phase shifts of one-fourth its period, one-half its period, and all of its period, as was done for the cosine function in the bulleted list between Examples 6 and 7.

42 Explain why a function of the form

$$-5\cos(bx + c),$$

where b and c are numbers, can be rewritten in the form

$$5\cos(bx + \tilde{c}),$$

where $\tilde{c}$ is a number. What is the relationship between $\tilde{c}$ and c?

43 Explain why a function of the form

$$a\cos(-7x+c),$$

where a and c are numbers, can be rewritten in the form

$$a\cos(7x+\widetilde{c}),$$

where $\widetilde{c}$ is a number. What is the relationship between $\widetilde{c}$ and c?

44 Explain why a function of the form

$$a\cos(bx-4),$$

where a and b are numbers, can be rewritten in the form

$$a\cos(bx+\widetilde{c}),$$

where $\widetilde{c}$ is a positive number.

45 Explain why a function of the form

$$a\cos(bx+c),$$

where a, b, and c are numbers, can be rewritten in the form

$$\widetilde{a}\cos(\widetilde{b}x+\widetilde{c}),$$

where $\widetilde{a}$, $\widetilde{b}$, and $\widetilde{c}$ are nonnegative numbers. What is the relationship between $\widetilde{c}$ and c?

46 Explain why a function of the form

$$a\sin(bx+c),$$

where a, b, and c are numbers, can be rewritten in the form

$$a\cos(bx+\widetilde{c}),$$

where $\widetilde{c}$ is a number. What is the relationship between $\widetilde{c}$ and c?

47 Explain why a function of the form

$$a\sin(bx+c),$$

where a, b, and c are numbers, can be rewritten in the form

$$\widetilde{a}\cos(\widetilde{b}x+\widetilde{c}),$$

where $\widetilde{a}$, $\widetilde{b}$, and $\widetilde{c}$ are nonnegative numbers.

48 Suppose f is a function with period p. Explain why $f(x+2p)=f(x)$ for every number x in the domain of f.

49 Suppose f is a function with period p. Explain why $f(x-p)=f(x)$ for every number x such that $x-p$ is in the domain of f.

50 Suppose f is the function defined by $f(x)=\sin^4 x$. Is f a periodic function? Explain.

51 Suppose g is the function defined by $g(x)=\sin(x^4)$. Is g a periodic function? Explain.

52 Find a graph of real data that suggests periodic behavior and then find a function that models this behavior (as in Example 8).

53 Find some real data involving periodic behavior and then find a function that models this behavior (as in Exercise 35).

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Let $f(x)=4\sin x$.

(a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-\pi,\pi]$.

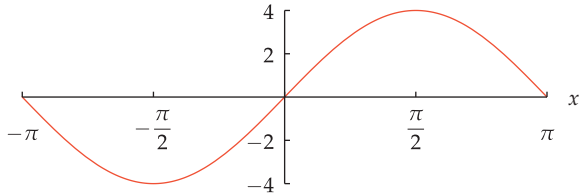
(b) What is the range of f?

(c) What is the amplitude of f?

(d) What is the period of f?

solution

(a) The graph of $4\sin x$ is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of $\sin x$ by a factor of 4.



The graph of $4\sin x$ *on the interval* $[-\pi,\pi]$.

(b) The range of $4\sin x$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\sin x$ by 4. Thus the range of $4\sin x$ is the interval $[-4,4]$.

(c) The function $4\sin x$ has a maximum value of 4 and a minimum value of -4. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $4\sin x$ is 8. Half of 8 is 4; hence the function $4\sin x$ has amplitude 4.

(d) The period of $4\sin x$ is the same as the period of $\sin x$. Thus $4\sin x$ has period 2π.

3 Let $g(x)=\sin(4x)$.

(a) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-\pi,\pi]$.

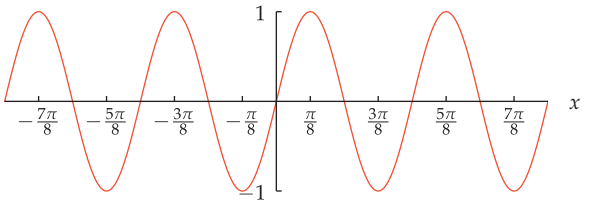
(b) What is the range of g?

(c) What is the amplitude of g?

(d) What is the period of g?

solution

(a) The graph of $\sin(4x)$ is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of $\sin x$ by a factor of $\frac{1}{4}$.



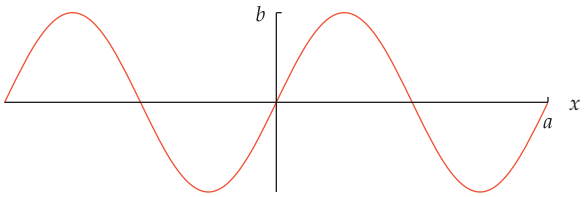
The graph of $\sin(4x)$ *on the interval* $[-\pi,\pi]$.

(b) As x ranges over the real numbers, $\sin x$ and $\sin(4x)$ take on the same values. Thus the range of $\sin(4x)$ is the interval $[-1,1]$.

(c) The function $\sin(4x)$ has a maximum value of 1 and a minimum value of -1. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $\sin(4x)$ is 2. Half of 2 is 1; hence the function $\sin(4x)$ has amplitude 1.

(d) The period of $\sin(4x)$ is the period of $\sin x$ divided by 4. Thus $\sin(4x)$ has period $\frac{2\pi}{4}$, which equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$. The figure above shows that $\sin(4x)$ indeed has period $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

Use the following graph for Exercises 5–12.



5 Suppose the figure above is part of the graph of the function $3\sin x$. What is the value of b?

solution The function shown in the graph has a maximum value of b. The function $3\sin x$ has a maximum value of 3. Thus $b = 3$.

7 Suppose the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\sin(7x)$. What is the value of a?

solution The function $\sin x$ has period 2π; thus the function $\sin(7x)$ has period $\frac{2\pi}{7}$. The function shown in the graph above has period a. Thus $a = \frac{2\pi}{7}$.

9 Find the smallest positive number c such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\sin(x + c)$.

solution The graph of $\sin(x + c)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\sin x$ left by c units. The graph above looks like the graph of $\sin x$ (for example, the graph goes through the origin and depicts a function that is increasing on an interval centered at 0).

The graph above is indeed the graph of $\sin x$ if we take $a = 2\pi$ and $b = 1$. Because $\sin x$ has period 2π, taking $c = 2\pi$ gives the smallest positive number such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\sin(x + c)$.

11 Find the smallest positive number c such that the figure above is part of the graph of the function $\cos(x - c)$.

solution The graph of $\cos(x - c)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\cos x$ right by c units. Shifting the graph of $\cos x$ right by $\frac{\pi}{2}$ units gives the graph of $\sin x$; in other words, $\cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \sin x$, as can be verified from the subtraction formula for cosine.

The graph above is indeed the graph of $\sin x$ if we take $a = 2\pi$ and $b = 1$. No positive number smaller than $\frac{\pi}{2}$ produces a graph of $\cos(x - c)$ that goes through the origin. Thus we must have $c = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

13 Let $f(x) = 2 + \cos x$.

(a) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

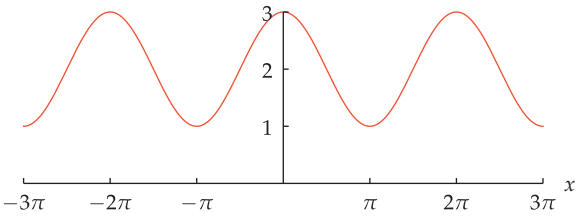
(b) What is the range of f?

(c) What is the amplitude of f?

(d) What is the period of f?

solution

(a) The graph of $2 + \cos x$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\cos x$ up 2 units.



The graph of $2 + \cos x$ *on the interval* $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

(b) The range of $2 + \cos x$ is obtained by adding 2 to each number in the range of $\cos x$. Thus the range of $2 + \cos x$ is the interval $[1, 3]$.

(c) The function $2 + \cos x$ has a maximum value of 3 and a minimum value of 1. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $2 + \cos x$ is 2. Half of 2 is 1; hence the function $2 + \cos x$ has amplitude 1.

(d) The period of $2 + \cos x$ is the same as the period of $\cos x$. Thus $2 + \cos x$ has period 2π.

15 Let $g(x) = \cos(2 + x)$.

(a) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

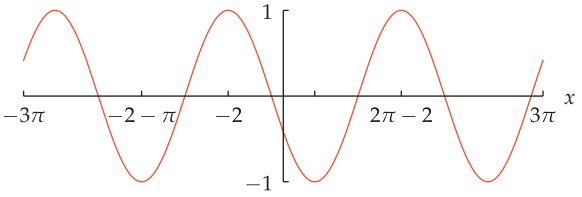
(b) What is the range of g?

(c) What is the amplitude of g?

(d) What is the period of g?

solution

(a) The graph of $\cos(2 + x)$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $\cos x$ left by 2 units.



The graph of $\cos(2 + x)$ *on the interval* $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

(b) As x ranges over the real numbers, $\cos(2 + x)$ and $\cos x$ take on the same values. Thus the range of $\cos(2 + x)$ is the interval $[-1, 1]$.

(c) The function $\cos(2 + x)$ has a maximum value of 1 and a minimum value of -1. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $\cos(2 + x)$ is 2. Half of 2 is 1; hence the function $\cos(2 + x)$ has amplitude 1.

(d) The period of $\cos(2 + x)$ is the same as the period of $\cos x$. Thus $\cos(2 + x)$ has period 2π.

17 Let $h(x) = 5\cos(\pi x)$.

(a) Sketch the graph of h on the interval $[-4, 4]$.

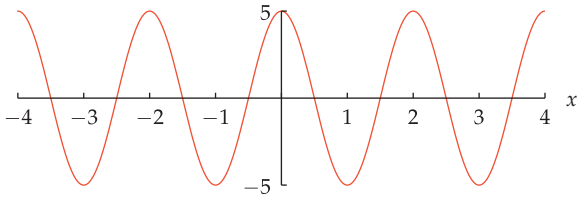
(b) What is the range of h?

(c) What is the amplitude of h?

(d) What is the period of h?

solution

(a) The graph of $5\cos(\pi x)$ is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of 5 and horizontally stretching by a factor of $\frac{1}{\pi}$.



The graph of $5\cos(\pi x)$ *on the interval* $[-4,4]$.

(b) The range of $5\cos(\pi x)$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\cos(\pi x)$ by 5. Thus the range of $5\cos(\pi x)$ is the interval $[-5,5]$.

(c) The function $5\cos(\pi x)$ has a maximum value of 5 and a minimum value of -5. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $5\cos(\pi x)$ is 10. Half of 10 is 5; hence the function $5\cos(\pi x)$ has amplitude 5.

(d) The period of $5\cos(\pi x)$ is the period of $\cos x$ divided by π. Thus $5\cos(\pi x)$ has period $\frac{2\pi}{\pi}$, which equals 2. The figure above shows that $5\cos(\pi x)$ indeed has period 2.

19 Let $f(x) = 7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$.

(a) What is the range of f?

(b) What is the amplitude of f?

(c) What is the period of f?

(d) By what fraction of the period of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ should the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ be shifted left to obtain the graph of f?

(e) Sketch the graph of f on the interval $[-8,8]$.

(f) Sketch the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5}) + 3$ on the interval $[-8,8]$.

solution

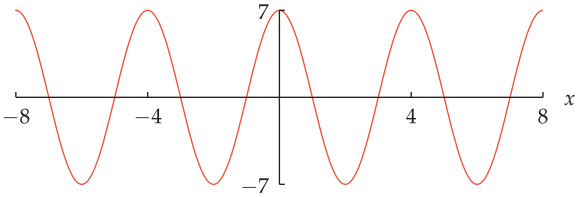
(a) The range of the function $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ by 7. Thus the range of the function $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ is the interval $[-7,7]$.

(b) The function $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ has a maximum value of 7 and a minimum value of -7. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ is 14. Half of 14 is 7; hence the function $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ has amplitude 7.

(c) The period of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ is the period of $\cos x$ divided by $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Thus $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ has period $(2\pi)/(\frac{\pi}{2})$, which equals 4. The figure below shows that $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ indeed has period 4.

(d) The graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ is shifted left by $\frac{12}{5}$ units to obtain the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$. The period of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ is 4. Thus the fraction of the period of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ by which the graph has been shifted is $\frac{12}{5}/4$, which equals $\frac{3}{5}$.

(e) The graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ is obtained by vertically stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of 7 and horizontally stretching by a factor of $\frac{2}{\pi}$.



The graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ *on the interval* $[-8,8]$.

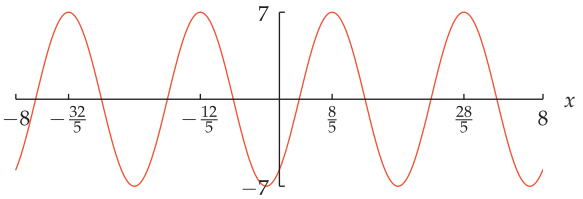
To see how to construct the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$, define a function f by

$$f(x) = 7\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x).$$

Now

$$7\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x + \tfrac{6\pi}{5}) = 7\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}(x + \tfrac{12}{5})) = f(x + \tfrac{12}{5}).$$

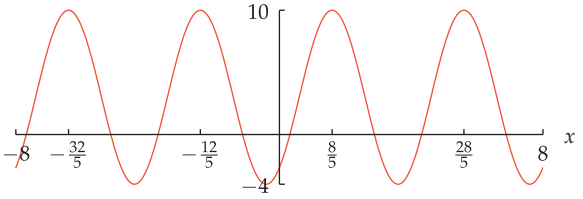
Thus the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ left by $\frac{12}{5}$ units.



The graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ *on the interval* $[-8,8]$.

Note that the peaks of the graph of the function $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x)$ that occur at $x = -4$, at $x = 0$, at $x = 4$, and at $x = 8$ have been shifted by $\frac{12}{5}$ units to the left, now occurring in the graph at $x = -4 - \frac{12}{5}$ (which equals $-\frac{32}{5}$), at $x = 0 - \frac{12}{5}$ (which equals $-\frac{12}{5}$), at $x = 4 - \frac{12}{5}$ (which equals $\frac{8}{5}$), and at $x = 8 - \frac{12}{5}$ (which equals $\frac{28}{5}$).

(f) The graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5}) + 3$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5})$ up 3 units. Shifting the graph obtained in part (e) up 3 units, we obtain the following graph.



The graph of $7\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + \frac{6\pi}{5}) + 3$ *on* $[-8,8]$.

For Exercises 21–30, assume f is the function defined by

$$f(x) = a\cos(bx + c) + d,$$

where a, b, c, and d are numbers.

21 Find two distinct values of a that give f amplitude 3.

solution The amplitude of a function is half the difference between its maximum and minimum values. The function $\cos(bx + c)$ has a maximum value of 1 and a minimum value of -1 (regardless of the values of b and c).

Thus the function $a\cos(bx + c)$ has a maximum value of $|a|$ and a minimum value of $-|a|$. Hence the function $a\cos(bx + c) + d$ has a maximum value of $|a| + d$ and a minimum value of $-|a| + d$. The difference between this maximum value and this minimum value is $2|a|$. Thus the amplitude of $a\cos(bx + c) + d$ is $|a|$ (notice that the value of d does not affect the amplitude).

Hence the function f has amplitude 3 if $|a| = 3$. Thus we can take $a = 3$ or $a = -3$.

23 Find two distinct values for b so that f has period 4.

solution The function $\cos x$ has period 2π. If $b > 0$, then the graph of $\cos(bx)$ is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of $\cos x$ by a factor of $\frac{1}{b}$. Thus $\cos(bx)$ has period $\frac{2\pi}{b}$.

The graph of $\cos(bx + c)$ differs from the graph of $\cos(bx)$ only by a phase shift, which does not change the period. Thus $\cos(bx + c)$ also has period $\frac{2\pi}{b}$.

The graph of $a\cos(bx + c)$ is obtained from the graph of $\cos(bx + c)$ by stretching vertically, which changes the amplitude but not the period. Thus $a\cos(bx + c)$ also has period $\frac{2\pi}{b}$.

The graph of $a\cos(bx + c) + d$ is obtained by shifting the graph of $a\cos(bx + c)$ up or down (depending on whether d is positive or negative). Adding d changes neither the period nor the amplitude. Thus $a\cos(bx + c) + d$ also has period $\frac{2\pi}{b}$.

We want $a\cos(bx + c) + d$ to have period 4. Thus we solve the equation $\frac{2\pi}{b} = 4$, getting $b = \frac{\pi}{2}$. In other words, $a\cos(\frac{\pi}{2}x + c) + d$ has period 4, regardless of the values of a, c, and d.

Note that

$$a\cos\left(-\tfrac{\pi}{2}x + c\right) + d = a\cos\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x - c\right) + d,$$

and thus $a\cos(-\frac{\pi}{2}x + c) + d$ also has period 4. Hence to make f have period 4, we can take $b = \frac{\pi}{2}$ or $b = -\frac{\pi}{2}$.

25 Find values for a and d, with $a > 0$, so that f has range $[3, 11]$.

solution Because f has range $[3, 11]$, the maximum value of f is 11 and the minimum value of f is 3. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of f is 8. Thus the amplitude of f is half of 8, which equals 4. Reasoning as in the solution to Exercise 21, we see that this implies $a = 4$ or $a = -4$. This exercise requires that $a > 0$, and thus we must take $a = 4$.

The function $4\cos(bx + c)$ has range $[-4, 4]$ (regardless of the values of b and c). Note that $[-4, 4]$ is an interval of length 8, just as $[3, 11]$ is an interval of length 8. We want to find a number d such that each number in the interval $[3, 11]$ is obtained by adding d to a number in the interval $[-4, 4]$. To find d, we can subtract either the left endpoints or the right endpoints of these two intervals. In other words, we can find d by evaluating $3 - (-4)$ or $11 - 4$. Either way, we obtain $d = 7$.

Thus the function $4\cos(bx + c) + 7$ has range $[3, 11]$ (regardless of the values of b and c).

27 Find values for a, d, and c, with $a > 0$ and $0 \le c \le \pi$, so that f has range $[3, 11]$ and $f(0) = 10$.

solution From the solution to Exercise 25, we see that we need to choose $a = 4$ and $d = 7$. Thus we have

$$f(x) = 4\cos(bx + c) + 7,$$

and we need to choose c so that $0 \le c \le \pi$ and $f(0) = 10$. Hence we need to choose c so that $0 \le c \le \pi$ and

$$4\cos c + 7 = 10.$$

Thus $\cos c = \frac{3}{4}$. Because $0 \le c \le \pi$, this means that $c = \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}$.

Thus the function $4\cos(bx + \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}) + 7$ has range $[3, 11]$ and $f(0) = 10$ (regardless of the value of b).

29 Find values for a, d, c, and b, with $a > 0$ and $b > 0$ and $0 \le c \le \pi$, so that f has range $[3, 11]$, $f(0) = 10$, and f has period 7.

solution From the solution to Exercise 27, we see that we need to choose $a = 4$, $c = \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}$, and $d = 7$. Thus we have

$$f(x) = 4\cos\left(bx + \cos^{-1}\tfrac{3}{4}\right) + 7,$$

and we need to choose $b > 0$ so that f has period 7. Because the cosine function has period 2π, this means that we need to choose $b = \frac{2\pi}{7}$.

Thus the function $4\cos(\frac{2\pi}{7}x + \cos^{-1}\frac{3}{4}) + 7$ has range $[3, 11]$, equals 10 when $x = 0$, and has period 7.

31 Let $g(x) = \sin^2 x$.

(a) What is the range of g?

(b) What is the amplitude of g?

(c) What is the period of g?

(d) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

solution

(a) The sine function takes on all the values in the interval $[-1, 1]$; squaring the numbers in this interval gives the numbers in the interval $[0, 1]$. Thus the range of $\sin^2 x$ is the interval $[0, 1]$.

(b) The function $\sin^2 x$ has a maximum value of 1 and a minimum value of 0. The difference between this maximum value and this minimum value is 1. Thus the amplitude of $\sin^2 x$ is $\frac{1}{2}$.

(c) We know that $\sin(x+\pi) = -\sin x$ for every number x (see Section 4.6). Squaring both sides of this equation, we get

$$\sin^2(x+\pi) = \sin^2 x.$$

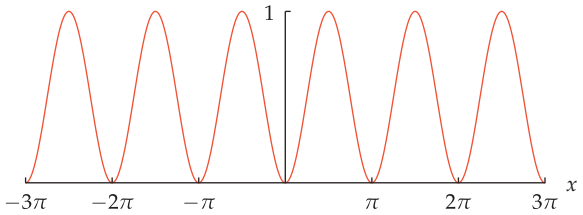
No positive number p smaller than π can produce the identity

$$\sin^2(x+p) = \sin^2 x,$$

as can be seen by taking $x = 0$, in which case the equation above becomes $\sin^2 p = 0$. The smallest positive number p satisfying this last equation is π.

Putting all this together, we conclude that the function $\sin^2 x$ has period π.

(d) The function $\sin^2 x$ takes on values between 0 and 1, has period π, equals 0 when x is an integer multiple of π, and equals 1 when x is halfway between two consecutive zeros of this function. Thus a sketch of the graph of $\sin^2 x$ should resemble the figure below.



The graph of $\sin^2 x$ *on the interval* $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

Hint for Exercises 33–34: Write $g(x)$ ***in the form*** $b\sin(x+c)$ ***for appropriate choices of*** b ***and*** c.

33 Let $g(x) = \cos x + \sin x$.

(a) What is the range of g?
(b) What is the amplitude of g?
(c) What is the period of g?
(d) Sketch the graph of g on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

solution Neither the range nor the amplitude of g is obvious. To answer the questions about g, we use a trick to rewrite g as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= \cos x + \sin x \\ &= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\cos x + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\sin x\right) \\ &= \sqrt{2}\left(\cos x \sin\tfrac{\pi}{4} + \sin x \cos\tfrac{\pi}{4}\right) \\ &= \sqrt{2}\sin\left(x + \tfrac{\pi}{4}\right). \end{aligned}$$

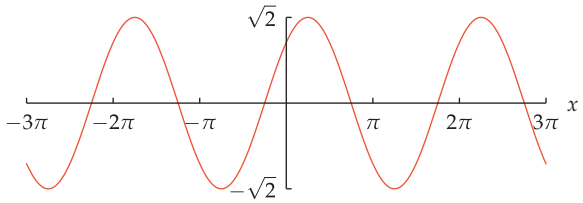
The expression above for g will now allow us to determine the properties of g.

(a) Using the formula $g(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$, we see that the range of g is obtained by multiplying each number in the range of $\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ by $\sqrt{2}$. Thus the range of g is the interval $[-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}]$.

(b) The function g has a maximum value of $\sqrt{2}$ and a minimum value of $-\sqrt{2}$. Thus the difference between the maximum and minimum values of g is $2\sqrt{2}$. Half of this amount equals $\sqrt{2}$, which is the amplitude of g.

(c) The formula $g(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ shows that the period of g is the same as the period of $\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$, which is 2π.

(d) The formula $g(x) = \sqrt{2}\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ shows that the graph of g is obtained from the graph of $\sin x$ by shifting left $\frac{\pi}{4}$ units and then vertically stretching the graph by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$. This produces the following graph.



The graph of $\cos x + \sin x$ *on the interval* $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

For Exercises 35–36, use the following information: In the northern hemisphere, the day with the longest daylight is June 21. Also, "day x ***of the year" means that*** $x = 1$ ***on January 1,*** $x = 2$ ***on January 2,*** $x = 32$ ***on February 1, etc.***

35 Anchorage, Alaska, receives 19.37 hours of daylight on June 21. Six months later, on the day with the shortest daylight, Anchorage receives only 5.45 hours of daylight. Find a function of the form

$$a\cos(bx+c)+d$$

that models the number of hours of daylight in Anchorage on day x of the year.

solution The period of the function above is $\frac{2\pi}{b}$ (here we are assuming that $b > 0$). Because a year has 365 days (we will ignore leap years), we want the period of our function to be 365. In other words, we want $\frac{2\pi}{b} = 365$, which means that $b = \frac{2\pi}{365}$.

As we have seen from examples, the amplitude of the function above is a (here we are assuming that $a > 0$). Our function should have amplitude $\frac{19.37-5.45}{2}$, which equals 6.96. In other words, we take $a = 6.96$.

As we have seen, d should be chosen to be halfway between the minimum and maximum values of our function. Thus we should take $d = \frac{19.37+5.45}{2} = 12.41$.

June 21 is day 172 of the year. Thus we want to choose c so that $\cos(bx+c)$ is largest when $x = 172$. We know that $b = \frac{2\pi}{365}$, so we want to choose c so that $\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{365}172 + c\right)$ is as large as possible. The largest value of cosine is 1, and $\cos 0 = 1$. Thus we choose c so that $\frac{2\pi}{365}172 + c = 0$. Thus we take $c = -\frac{2\pi}{365}172$.

Hence our function that models the number of daylight hours in Anchorage on day x of the year is

$$6.96\cos\left(2\pi\tfrac{x-172}{365}\right) + 12.41.$$

How well does this function model actual behavior? For January 21 ($x = 21$), the function above predicts 6.45 hours of daylight in Anchorage. The actual number is 6.87. Thus the model is off by about 6%, a decent but not spectacular performance.

For March 21 ($x = 80$), the model above predicts 12.32 hours of daylight in Anchorage. The actual amount is 12.33 hours. Thus in this case the model is extremely accurate.

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Give the domain and range of $\cos^{-1}$, $\sin^{-1}$, and $\tan^{-1}$.
- Find the angle a line with given slope makes with the horizontal axis.
- Compute the composition of a trigonometric function and an inverse trigonometric function.
- Compute the area of a parallelogram or a triangle given the lengths of two adjacent sides and the angle between them.
- Compute the area of a regular polygon.
- Explain why knowing the sine of an angle of a triangle is sometimes not enough information to determine the angle.
- Find all the angles and the lengths of all the sides of a triangle given only some of this data.
- Use the double-angle and half-angle formulas for cosine, sine, and tangent.
- Use the addition and subtraction formulas for cosine, sine, and tangent.
- Graph transformations of trigonometric functions that change the amplitude, period, and/or phase shift.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Find the angles (in radians) in a right triangle with a hypotenuse of length 7 and another side with length 4.

2 Find the angles (in degrees) in a right triangle whose nonhypotenuse sides have lengths 6 and 7.

3 Find the lengths of both circular arcs of the unit circle connecting the points $(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5})$ and $(\frac{5}{13}, \frac{12}{13})$.

4 Give the domain and range of each of the following functions: $\cos^{-1}$, $\sin^{-1}$, and $\tan^{-1}$.

5 Evaluate $\cos^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.

6 Evaluate $\sin^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.

7 Evaluate $\cos(\cos^{-1} \frac{2}{5})$.

8 Without using a calculator, sketch the radius of the unit circle corresponding to $\cos^{-1}(-0.8)$.

9 Explain why your calculator is likely to be unhappy if you ask it to evaluate $\cos^{-1} 3$.

10 Find the smallest positive number x such that

$$3 \sin^2 x - 4 \sin x + 1 = 0.$$

11 Evaluate $\sin^{-1}(\sin \frac{19\pi}{8})$.

12 Evaluate $\cos(\tan^{-1} 5)$.

13 Find the area of a triangle that has sides of length 7 and 10, with a 29° angle between those sides.

14 Find the area of a regular 9-sided polygon whose vertices are nine equally spaced points on a circle with radius 2.

15 Find the angles in a rhombus (a parallelogram whose four sides have equal length) that has area 19 and sides of length 5.

16 Find the perimeter of a regular 13-sided polygon whose vertices are 13 equally spaced points on a circle with radius 5.

17 Suppose two triangles have the same area, and each of the two triangles has one side of length 4 and one side of length 5. Must the two triangles be similar?

18 Suppose $\sin u = \frac{3}{7}$. Evaluate $\cos(2u)$.

19 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\sin\theta$ is a rational number. Explain why $\cos(2\theta)$ is a rational number.

20 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\tan\theta$ is a rational number other than 1 or -1. Explain why $\tan(2\theta)$ is a rational number.

21 Suppose θ is an angle such that $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ are both rational numbers, with $\cos\theta \neq -1$. Explain why $\tan\frac{\theta}{2}$ is a rational number.

For Questions 22–27, evaluate the given expression assuming that $\cos v = -\frac{3}{7}$, with $\pi < v < \frac{3}{2}\pi$.

22 $\cos(2v)$

23 $\sin(2v)$

24 $\tan(2v)$

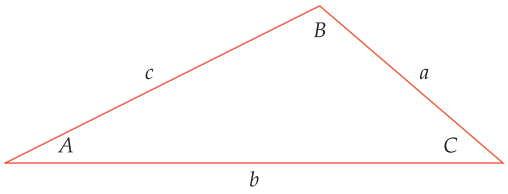
25 $\cos\frac{v}{2}$

26 $\sin\frac{v}{2}$

27 $\tan\frac{v}{2}$

28 Find an exact expression for $\sin 75°$.

In Questions 29–35 use the following figure (which is not drawn to scale). When a question requests that you evaluate an angle, give answers in both radians and degrees.



29 Suppose $a = 7$, $B = 35°$, and $C = 25°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) b (c) c

30 Suppose $a = 6$, $A = \frac{3\pi}{11}$ radians, and $B = \frac{5\pi}{11}$ radians. Evaluate:
(a) C (b) b (c) c

31 Suppose $a = 5$, $b = 7$, and $c = 11$. Evaluate:
(a) A (b) B (c) C

32 Suppose $a = 4$, $b = 7$, and $C = 41°$. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

33 Suppose $a = 3$, $b = 4$, and $C = 1.5$ radians. Evaluate:
(a) c (b) A (c) B

34 Suppose $a = 5$, $b = 4$, and $B = 30°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (assume $A < 90°$)
(b) C
(c) c

35 Suppose $a = 5$, $b = 4$, and $B = 30°$. Evaluate:
(a) A (assume $A > 90°$)
(b) C
(c) c

36 Starting with the formula for the cosine of the sum of two angles, derive the formula for the cosine of the difference of two angles.

For Questions 37–42, evaluate the given expression assuming that $\cos u = \frac{2}{5}$ ***and*** $\sin v = \frac{2}{3}$, ***with*** $-\frac{\pi}{2} < u < 0$ ***and*** $0 < v < \frac{\pi}{2}$.

37 $\cos(u+v)$

38 $\cos(u-v)$

39 $\sin(u+v)$

40 $\sin(u-v)$

41 $\tan(u+v)$

42 $\tan(u-v)$

43 Find a number b such that

$$\cos x + \sin x = b \sin\left(x + \tfrac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

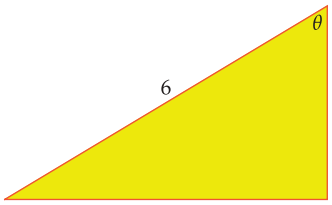
for every number x.

44 Find a formula for $\cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ in terms of $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$.

45 Show that if $|x|$ is small but nonzero, then

$$x \tan\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2} - x\right) \approx 1.$$

46 Explain why the right triangle below has area $9\sin(2\theta)$.



47 Give an example of a function that has amplitude 5 and period 3.

48 Give an example of a function that has period 3π and range $[2, 12]$.

49 Sketch the graph of the function

$$4\sin(2x+1) + 5$$

on the interval $[-3\pi, 3\pi]$.

For Questions 50–54, assume g is the function defined by

$$g(x) = a\sin(bx + c) + d,$$

where a, b, c, and d are numbers with $a \neq 0$ ***and*** $b \neq 0$.

50 Find two distinct values for a so that g has amplitude 4.

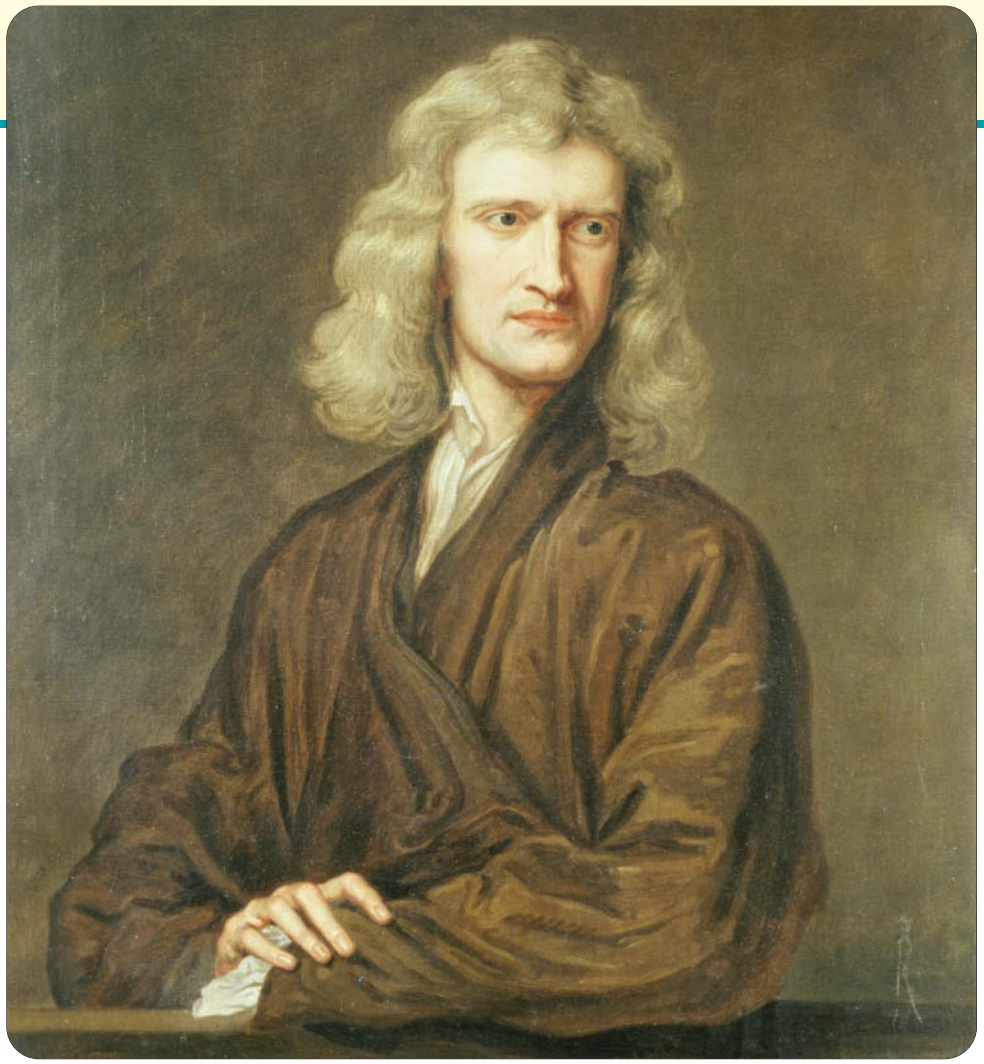
51 Find two distinct values for b so that g has period $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

52 Find values for a and d, with $a > 0$, so that g has range $[-3, 4]$.

53 Find values for a, d, and c, with $a > 0$ and with $0 \leq c \leq \pi$, so that g has range $[-3, 4]$ and $g(0) = 2$.

54 Find values for a, d, c, and b, with $a > 0$ and $b > 0$ and $0 \leq c \leq \pi$, so that g has range $[-3, 4]$, $g(0) = 2$, and g has period 5.

Chapter
6



Isaac Newton, as painted in 1689, two years after the publication of his monumental book Principia. *Newton made numerous discoveries connecting sequences, series, and limits.*

Sequences, Series, and Limits

This chapter begins by considering sequences, which are lists of numbers. We particularly focus on the following special sequences:

- arithmetic sequences—consecutive terms have a constant difference;
- geometric sequences—consecutive terms have a constant ratio;
- recursively defined sequences—each term is defined by previous terms.

Then we consider series, which are sums of numbers. Here you will learn about summation notation, which is used in calculus and many other parts of mathematics. We will derive formulas to evaluate arithmetic series and geometric series. We will also discuss the Binomial Theorem and Pascal's triangle.

Finally, the chapter concludes with an introduction to limits, one of the central ideas of calculus.

6.1 Sequences

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- use sequence notation;
- compute the terms of an arithmetic sequence;
- compute the terms of a geometric sequence;
- compute the terms of a recursively defined sequence.

Introduction to Sequences

Sequence

A **sequence** is an ordered list of numbers.

For example, $7, \sqrt{3}, \frac{5}{2}$ is a sequence. The first term of this sequence is 7, the second term of this sequence is $\sqrt{3}$, and the third term of this sequence is $\frac{5}{2}$.

Sequences differ from sets in that order matters and repetitions are allowed in a sequence. For example, $\{2,3,5\}$ and $\{5,3,2\}$ are the same set, but the sequences $2,3,5$ and $5,3,2$ are not the same.

Example 1

Two sequences are equal if and only if every term of the first sequence equals the corresponding term of the second sequence.

Explain why $\{8,8,4,5\}$ and $\{8,4,4,5\}$ are the same set, but the sequences $8,8,4,5$ and $8,4,4,5$ are not the same sequence.

solution The sets $\{8,8,4,5\}$ and $\{8,4,4,5\}$ are the same set because repetitions do not matter for sets; both these sets equal the set $\{8,4,5\}$.

The sequences $8,8,4,5$ and $8,4,4,5$ are different in their second terms (8 for the first sequence and 4 for the second sequence). Thus these are different sequences. (The two sequences are also different in their third terms, but we already know that these two sequences are not equal before considering their third terms.)

A sequence might end, as is the case with all the sequences mentioned above, or a sequence might continue indefinitely.

Finite sequence; infinite sequence

- A sequence that ends is called a **finite sequence**.
- A sequence that does not end is called an **infinite sequence**.

Example 2

"Infinity" is not a real number. The term "infinite sequence" can be regarded simply as an abbreviation for the phrase "sequence that does not end".

Describe the infinite sequence whose n^{th} term is $3n$.

solution The first term of this sequence is 3, the second term of this sequence is 6, the third term of this sequence is 9, and so on. Because this sequence does not end, the entire sequence cannot be written down. Thus we write this sequence as

$$3,\ 6,\ 9,\ \ldots,$$

where the three dots indicate that the sequence continues without end.

When using the three-dot notation to designate a sequence, information should be given about how each term of the sequence is determined. Sometimes this is done by giving an explicit formula for the n^{th} term of the sequence, as in the following example.

Example 3

Each of the equations below gives a formula for the n^{th} term of a sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$. Write each sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms of the sequence. Furthermore, describe each sequence in words.

(a) $a_n = n$ (c) $a_n = 2n - 1$ (e) $a_n = (-1)^n$

(b) $a_n = 2n$ (d) $a_n = 3$ (f) $a_n = 2^{n-1}$

The subscript notation a_n is often used to denote the n^{th} term of a sequence.

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = n$ is $1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots$.
This is the sequence of positive integers.

(b) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 2n$ is $2, 4, 6, 8 \ldots$.
This is the sequence of even positive integers.

(c) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 2n - 1$ is $1, 3, 5, 7 \ldots$.
This is the sequence of odd positive integers.

(d) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 3$ is $3, 3, 3, 3 \ldots$.
This is the sequence of all 3's.

(e) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = (-1)^n$ is $-1, 1, -1, 1 \ldots$.
This is the sequence of alternating -1's and 1's, beginning with -1.

(f) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 2^{n-1}$ is $1, 2, 4, 8 \ldots$.
This is the sequence of powers of 2, starting with 2 to the zeroth power.

Caution must be used when determining a sequence simply from the pattern of some of the terms, as illustrated by the following example.

Example 4

What is the fifth term of the sequence $1, 4, 9, 16, \ldots$?

solution This is a trick question. You may reasonably suspect that the n^{th} term of this sequence is n^2, which would imply that the fifth term equals 25.

However, the sequence whose n^{th} term equals

$$\frac{n^4 - 10n^3 + 39n^2 - 50n + 24}{4}$$

Problem 59 explains how this expression was found.

has as its first four terms $1, 4, 9, 16$, as you can verify. The fifth term of this sequence is 31, not 25.

Because we do not know whether the formula for the n^{th} term of the sequence $1, 4, 9, 16, \ldots$ is given by n^2 or by the formula above or by some other formula, we cannot determine whether the fifth term of this sequence equals 25 or 31 or some other number.

The easist solution to the dilemma posed by the example above is to assume the sequence is defined in the simplest possible way. Unless other information is given, you should make this assumption. This then raises another problem, because "simplest" is an imprecise notion and can be a matter of taste. However, in most cases almost everyone will agree. In Example 4 above, all reasonable people would agree that the expression n^2 is simpler than the expression $\frac{n^4-10n^3+39n^2-50n+24}{4}$.

Arithmetic Sequences

The sequence $1, 3, 5, 7 \ldots$ of odd positive integers has the property that the difference between any two consecutive terms is 2. Thus the difference between two consecutive terms is constant throughout the sequence. Sequences with this property are important enough to deserve their own name.

When we consider the difference between consecutive terms in a sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$, we will subtract each term from its successor. In other words, we consider the difference $a_{n+1} - a_n$.

Arithmetic sequence

An **arithmetic sequence** is a sequence such that the difference between two consecutive terms is constant throughout the sequence.

Example 5

For each of the following sequences, determine whether or not the sequence is an arithmetic sequence. If the sequence is an arithmetic sequence, determine the difference between consecutive terms in the sequence.

An arithmetic sequence can be either an infinite sequence or a finite sequence. All the sequences in this example are infinite sequences except the last one.

(a) The sequence $1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ of positive integers.

(b) The sequence $-1, -2, -3, -4, \ldots$ of negative integers.

(c) The sequence $6, 8, 10, 12, \ldots$ of even positive integers starting with 6.

(d) The sequence $-1, 1, -1, 1, \ldots$ of alternating -1's and 1's.

(e) The sequence $1, 2, 4, 8, \ldots$ of powers of 2.

(f) The sequence $10, 15, 20, 25$.

solution

(a) The sequence $1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ of positive integers is an arithmetic sequence. The difference between any two consecutive terms is 1.

(b) The sequence $-1, -2, -3, -4, \ldots$ of negative integers is an arithmetic sequence. The difference between any two consecutive terms is -1.

(c) The sequence $6, 8, 10, 12, \ldots$ of even positive integers starting with 6 is an arithmetic sequence. The difference between any two consecutive terms is 2.

(d) The difference between consecutive terms of the sequence $-1, 1, -1, 1, \ldots$ oscillates between 2 and -2. Because the difference between consecutive terms of the sequence $-1, 1, -1, 1, \ldots$ is not constant, this sequence is not an arithmetic sequence.

(e) In the sequence $1, 2, 4, 8, \ldots$, the first two terms differ by 1, but the second and third terms differ by 2. Because the difference between consecutive terms of the sequence $1, 2, 4, 8, \ldots$ is not constant, this sequence is not an arithmetic sequence.

(f) In the finite sequence $10, 15, 20, 25$, the difference between any two consecutive terms is 5. Thus this sequence is an arithmetic sequence.

When used in the phrase "arithmetic sequence", the word "arithmetic" is pronounced differently from the word used to describe the subject you started learning in elementary school. You should be able to hear the difference when your instructor pronounces "arithmetic sequence".

Consider an arithmetic sequence with first term b and difference d between consecutive terms. Each term of this sequence after the first term is obtained by adding d to the previous term. Thus this sequence is

$$b,\ b + d,\ b + 2d,\ b + 3d,\ \ldots.$$

The n^{th} term of this sequence is obtained by adding d a total of $n - 1$ times to the first term b. Thus we have the following result.

Formula for an arithmetic sequence

The n^{th} term of an arithmetic sequence with first term b and with difference d between consecutive terms is $b + (n-1)d$.

Example 6

Suppose at the beginning of the year your mobile phone contains 53 songs and that you purchase four new songs each week to place on your phone. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the number of songs on your phone at the beginning of the n^{th} week of the year.

(a) What are the first four terms of this sequence?

(b) What is the 30^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how many songs will be on your phone at the beginning of the 30^{th} week?

solution

(a) The first four terms of this sequence are $53, 57, 61, 65$.

(b) To find the 30^{th} term of this sequence, use the formula in the box above with $b = 53$, $n = 30$, and $d = 4$. Thus at the beginning of the 30^{th} week the number of songs on your phone will be $53 + (30-1) \cdot 4$, which equals 169.

Geometric Sequences

The sequence $1, 3, 9, 27 \ldots$ of powers of 3 has the property that the ratio of any two consecutive terms is 3. Thus the ratio of two consecutive terms is constant throughout the sequence. Sequences with this property are important enough to deserve their own name.

Geometric sequence

A **geometric sequence** is a sequence such that the ratio of two consecutive terms is constant throughout the sequence.

When we consider the ratio of consecutive terms in a sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$, we will divide each term into its successor. In other words, we consider the ratio a_{n+1}/a_n.

Example 7

For each of the following sequences, determine whether or not the sequence is a geometric sequence. If the sequence is a geometric sequence, determine the ratio of consecutive terms in the sequence.

(a) The sequence $16, 32, 64, 128, \ldots$ of the powers of 2 starting with 2^4.

(b) The sequence $3, 6, 12, 24, \ldots$ of 3 times the powers of 2 starting with $3 \cdot 2^0$.

(c) The sequence $-1, 1, -1, 1, \ldots$ of alternating -1's and 1's.

(d) The sequence $1, 4, 9, 16, \ldots$ of the squares of the positive integers.

(e) The sequence $2, 4, 6, 8, \ldots$ of even positive integers.

(f) The sequence $2, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{2}{9}, \frac{2}{27}$.

A geometric sequence can be either an infinite sequence or a finite sequence. All the sequences in this example are infinite sequences except the last one.

solution

(a) The sequence $16, 32, 64, 128, \ldots$ of the powers of 2 starting with 2^4 is a geometric sequence. The ratio of any two consecutive terms is 2.

(b) The sequence $3, 6, 12, 24, \ldots$ of 3 times the powers of 2 starting with $3 \cdot 2^0$ is a geometric sequence. The ratio of any two consecutive terms is 2.

(c) The sequence $-1, 1, -1, 1, \ldots$ of alternating -1's and 1's is a geometric sequence. The ratio of any two consecutive terms is -1.

This sequence is neither a geometric sequence nor an arithmetic sequence.

(d) In the sequence $1, 4, 9, 16, \ldots$, the second and first terms have a ratio of 4, but the third and second terms have a ratio of $\frac{9}{4}$. Because the ratio of consecutive terms of the sequence $1, 4, 9, 16, \ldots$ is not constant, this sequence is not a geometric sequence.

Although this sequence is not a geometric sequence, it is an arithmetic sequence.

(e) In the sequence $2, 4, 6, 8, \ldots$, the second and first terms have a ratio of 2, but the third and second terms have a ratio of $\frac{3}{2}$. Because the ratio of consecutive terms of the sequence $2, 4, 6, 8, \ldots$ is not constant, this sequence is not a geometric sequence.

(f) In the finite sequence $2, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{2}{9}, \frac{2}{27}$, the ratio of any two consecutive terms is $\frac{1}{3}$. Thus this sequence is a geometric sequence.

Consider a geometric sequence with first term b and ratio r of consecutive terms. Each term of this sequence after the first term is obtained by multiplying the previous term by r. Thus this sequence is

$$b, \ br, \ br^2, \ br^3, \ \ldots.$$

The n^{th} term of this sequence is obtained by multiplying the first term b by r a total of $n - 1$ times. Thus we have the following result.

Formula for a geometric sequence

The n^{th} term of a geometric sequence with first term b and with ratio r of consecutive terms is br^{n-1}.

Example 8

Suppose at the beginning of the year \$1000 is deposited in a bank account that pays 5% interest per year, compounded once per year at the end of the year. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the amount in the bank account at the beginning of the n^{th} year.

(a) What are the first four terms of this sequence?

(b) What is the 20^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how much will be in the bank account at the beginning of the 20^{th} year?

solution

As this example shows, compound interest leads to geometric sequences.

(a) Each term of this sequence is obtained by multiplying the previous term by 1.05. Thus we have a geometric sequence whose first four terms are

$$\$1000, \quad \$1000 \cdot 1.05, \quad \$1000 \cdot (1.05)^2, \quad \$1000 \cdot (1.05)^3.$$

These four terms can be rewritten as \$1000, \$1050, \$1102.50, \$1157.63.

(b) To find the 20^{th} term of this sequence, use the formula in the box above with $b = \$1000$, $r = 1.05$, and $n = 20$. Thus at the beginning of the 20^{th} year the amount of money in the bank account will be $\$1000 \cdot (1.05)^{19}$, which equals \$2526.95.

The next example shows how to deal with a geometric sequence when we have information about terms that are not consecutive.

Example 9

Find the tenth term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 7 and whose fifth term is 35.

solution Let r denote the ratio of consecutive terms of this geometric sequence. To get from the second term of this sequence to the fifth term, we must multiply by r three times. Thus

$$7r^3 = 35.$$

Solving the equation above for r, we have $r = 5^{1/3}$.

To get from the fifth term of this sequence to the tenth term, we must multiply by r five times. Thus the tenth term of this sequence is $35r^5$. Now

$$\begin{aligned} 35r^5 &= 35\left(5^{1/3}\right)^5 \\ &= 35 \cdot 5^{5/3} \\ &= 35 \cdot 5 \cdot 5^{2/3} \\ &= 175 \cdot 5^{2/3}. \end{aligned}$$

The tenth term of this sequence could also be obtained by multiplying the second term of the sequence by r^8. In other words, the tenth term equals $7r^8$ (which equals $35r^5$ when $r = 5^{1/3}$).

Thus the tenth term of this sequence is $175 \cdot 5^{2/3}$, which is approximately 511.703.

Recursively Defined Sequences

Sometimes the n^{th} term of a sequence is defined by a formula involving n. For example, we might have the sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ whose n^{th} term is defined by $a_n = 4 + 3n$. This is the arithmetic sequence

$$7,\ 10,\ 13,\ 16,\ 19,\ 22,\ \ldots$$

whose first term is 7, with a difference of 3 between consecutive terms.

Suppose we want to compute the seventh term of the sequence above, which has six terms displayed. To compute the seventh term we could use the formula $a_n = 4 + 3n$ to evaluate $a_7 = 4 + 3 \cdot 7$, or we could use the simpler method of adding 3 to the sixth term. Using this second viewpoint, we think of the sequence above as being defined by starting with 7 and then getting each later term by adding 3 to the previous term. In other words, we could think of this sequence as being defined by the equations

$$a_1 = 7 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = a_n + 3 \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

This viewpoint is sufficiently useful to deserve a name.

Recursively defined sequence

A **recursively defined sequence** is a sequence in which each term from some point on is defined by using previous terms.

In the definition above, the phrase "from some point on" means that some terms at the beginning of the sequence will be defined explicitly rather than by using previous terms. In a recursively defined sequence, at least the first term must be defined explicitly because it has no previous terms.

Perhaps the most famous recursively defined sequence is the Fibonacci sequence, which was defined by the Italian mathematician Leonardo Fibonacci over eight hundred years ago.

Statue of Fibonacci, whose book Liber Abaci (Book of Calculation) *introduced Europe in 1202 to the Indian-Arabic decimal system that we use today.*

Example 10

Each term of the Fibonacci sequence is the sum of the two previous terms (except the first two terms, which are defined to equal 1). Thus the Fibonacci sequence has the recursive definition

$$a_1 = 1, \quad a_2 = 1, \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+2} = a_n + a_{n+1} \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

Find the first ten terms of the Fibonacci sequence.

You may want to do a web search to learn about some of the ways in which the Fibonacci sequence arises in nature.

solution The first two terms of the Fibonacci sequence are 1, 1.

The third term of the Fibonacci sequence is the sum of the first two terms; thus the third term is 2. The fourth term of the Fibonacci sequence is the sum of the second and third terms; thus the fourth term is 3. Continuing in this fashion, we get the following as the first ten terms of the Fibonacci sequence.

$$1,\ 1,\ 2,\ 3,\ 5,\ 8,\ 13,\ 21,\ 34,\ 55$$

The next example shows how a geometric sequence can be thought of as a recursively defined sequence.

Example 11

Write the geometric sequence $6, 12, 24, 48 \ldots$ whose n^{th} term is defined by

$$a_n = 3 \cdot 2^n$$

as a recursively defined sequence.

solution Each term of this sequence is obtained by multiplying the previous term by 2. Thus the recursive definition of this sequence is given by the equations

$$a_1 = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = 2a_n \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

The notation $n!$ to denote n factorial was introduced in 1808 by the French mathematician Christian Kramp.

If n is a positive integer, then $n!$ (pronounced "n factorial") is defined to be the product of the integers from 1 to n. Thus

$$1! = 1, \quad 2! = 2, \quad 3! = 6, \quad 4! = 24, \quad 5! = 120,$$

and so on.

Example 12

Write the factorial sequence $1!, 2!, 3!, 4! \ldots$, whose n^{th} term is defined by $a_n = n!$, as a recursively defined sequence.

solution Note that $(n+1)!$ is the product of the integers from 1 to $n+1$. Thus $(n+1)!$ equals $n!$ times $n+1$. Hence the recursive definition of this sequence is given by the equations

$$a_1 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = (n+1)a_n \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

Recursive formulas provide a method for estimating square roots with remarkable accuracy. To estimate $\sqrt{c}$, the idea is to define a sequence recursively by letting a_1 be any crude estimate for $\sqrt{c}$; then use the recursive formula

This procedure is a special case of what is called **Newton's method**. *If you take calculus, you will learn about Newton's method.*

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{c}{a_n} + a_n\right).$$

The number a_n will be a good estimate for $\sqrt{c}$ even for small values of n; for larger values of n the estimate becomes extraordinarily accurate.

The next example illustrates this procedure to estimate $\sqrt{5}$. Note that we start with the first term $a_1 = 2$, which means that we are using the crude estimate $\sqrt{5} \approx 2$.

Example 13

Define a sequence recursively using the equations

$$a_1 = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{5}{a_n} + a_n\right) \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

(a) Compute a_4. For how many digits after the decimal point does a_4 agree with $\sqrt{5}$?

(b) Compute a_7. For how many digits after the decimal point does a_7 agree with $\sqrt{5}$?

solution

(a) Using the recursive formula above, we have

$$a_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{5}{2} + 2\right) = \frac{9}{4}.$$

Now

$$a_3 = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{5}{\frac{9}{4}} + \frac{9}{4}\right) = \frac{161}{72}.$$

Finally,

$$a_4 = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{5}{\frac{161}{72}} + \frac{161}{72}\right) = \frac{51841}{23184}.$$

Using a calculator, we see that

$$a_4 = \frac{51841}{23184} \approx 2.2360679779 \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{5} \approx 2.2360679774.$$

Your calculator almost certainly uses this procedure to calculate square roots.

Thus a_4, which is computed with only a small amount of calculation, agrees with $\sqrt{5}$ for nine digits after the decimal point.

(b) A typical calculator cannot handle enough digits to compute a_7 exactly. However, a computer algebra system such as *Mathematica* or *Maple* or *SageMath* can easily be used to compute that

$$a_5 = \frac{5374978561}{2403763488},$$

$$a_6 = \frac{57780789062419261441}{25840354427429161536},$$

$$a_7 = \frac{667723916935157870722535619367981879296 1}{298615213693887206778466919884601026675 2}.$$

Even though computing a_7 requires only three more calculations after computing a_4, the value for a_7 calculated above agrees with $\sqrt{5}$ for 79 digits after the decimal point! This remarkable level of accuracy is typical of this recursive method for computing square roots.

The number of accurate digits produced by this method roughly doubles with each recursion.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–8, a formula is given for the n^{th} term of a sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$.

(a) ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***

(b) ***Give the 100^{th} term of the sequence.***

1 $a_n = -n$

2 $a_n = \frac{1}{n}$

3 $a_n = 2 + 5n$

4 $a_n = 4n - 3$

5 $a_n = \sqrt{\frac{n}{n+1}}$

6 $a_n = \sqrt{\frac{2n-1}{3n-2}}$

7 $a_n = 3 + 2^n$

8 $a_n = 1 - \frac{1}{3^n}$

For Exercises 9–14, consider an arithmetic sequence with first term b and difference d between consecutive terms.

(a) ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***

(b) ***Give the 100^{th} term of the sequence.***

9 $b = 2, d = 5$

10 $b = 7, d = 3$

11 $b = 4, d = -6$

12 $b = 8, d = -5$

13 $b = 0, d = \frac{1}{3}$

14 $b = -1, d = \frac{3}{2}$

For Exercises 15–18, suppose at the beginning of the first day of a new year you have 3324 e-mail messages saved on your computer. At the end of each day you save only your 12 most important new e-mail messages along with the previously saved messages. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the number of e-mail messages you have saved on your computer at the beginning of the n^{th} day of the year.

15 What are the first, second, and third terms of this sequence?

16 What are the fourth, fifth, and sixth terms of this sequence?

17 What is the 100^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how many e-mail messages will you have saved on your computer at the beginning of the 100^{th} day of the year?

18 What is the 250^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how many e-mail messages will you have saved on your computer at the beginning of the 250^{th} day of the year?

For Exercises 19–24, consider a geometric sequence with first term b and ratio r of consecutive terms.

(a) ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***

(b) ***Give the 100^{th} term of the sequence.***

19 $b = 1, r = 5$

20 $b = 1, r = 4$

21 $b = 3, r = -2$

22 $b = 4, r = -5$

23 $b = 2, r = \frac{1}{3}$

24 $b = 5, r = \frac{2}{3}$

25 Find the fifth term of an arithmetic sequence whose second term is 8 and whose third term is 14.

26 Find the eighth term of an arithmetic sequence whose fourth term is 7 and whose fifth term is 4.

27 Find the first term of an arithmetic sequence whose second term is 19 and whose fourth term is 25.

28 Find the first term of an arithmetic sequence whose second term is 7 and whose fifth term is 11.

29 Find the 100^{th} term of an arithmetic sequence whose tenth term is 5 and whose eleventh term is 8.

30 Find the 200^{th} term of an arithmetic sequence whose fifth term is 23 and whose sixth term is 25.

31 Find the fifth term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 8 and whose third term is 14.

32 Find the eighth term of a geometric sequence whose fourth term is 7 and whose fifth term is 4.

33 Find the first term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 8 and whose fifth term is 27.

34 Find the first term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 64 and whose fifth term is 1.

35 Find the ninth term of a geometric sequence whose fourth term is 4 and whose seventh term is 5.

36 Find the tenth term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 3 and whose seventh term is 11.

37 Find the 100^{th} term of a geometric sequence whose tenth term is 5 and whose eleventh term is 8.

38 Find the 400^{th} term of a geometric sequence whose fifth term is 25 and whose sixth term is 27.

For Exercises 39–42, suppose your annual salary at the beginning of your first year at a new company is $38,000. Assume your salary increases by 7% per year at the end of each year of employment. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is your salary at the beginning of your n^{th} year at this company.

39 What are the first, second, and third terms of this sequence?

40 What are the fourth, fifth, and sixth terms of this sequence?

41 What is the 10^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, what will your salary be at the beginning of your 10^{th} year at this company?

42 What is the 15^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, what will your salary be at the beginning of your 15^{th} year at this company?

43 Suppose at the beginning of the year $3000 is deposited in a bank account that pays 2% interest per year, compounded four times per year. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the amount in the bank account at the beginning of the n^{th} year.

(a) What are the first four terms of this sequence?

(b) What is the 10^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how much will be in the bank account at the beginning of the 10^{th} year?

44 Suppose at the beginning of the year $2000 is deposited in a bank account that pays 3% interest per year, compounded twelve times per year. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the amount in the bank account at the beginning of the n^{th} year.

(a) What are the first four terms of this sequence?

(b) What is the 15^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how much will be in the bank account at the beginning of the 15^{th} year?

For Exercises 45–48, give the first four terms of the specified recursively defined sequence.

45 $a_1 = 3$ and $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1$ for $n \geq 1$.

46 $a_1 = 2$ and $a_{n+1} = 3a_n - 5$ for $n \geq 1$.

47 $a_1 = 2$, $a_2 = 3$, and $a_{n+2} = a_n a_{n+1}$ for $n \geq 1$.

48 $a_1 = 4$, $a_2 = 7$, and $a_{n+2} = a_{n+1} - a_n$ for $n \geq 1$.

For Exercises 49–50, let $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ be the sequence defined by setting a_1 equal to the value shown below and for $n \geq 1$ letting

$$a_{n+1} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{a_n}{2} & \text{if } a_n \text{ is even;} \\ 3a_n + 1 & \text{if } a_n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

49 Suppose $a_1 = 3$. Find the smallest value of n such that $a_n = 1$.
[*No one knows whether a_1 can be chosen to be a positive integer such that this recursively defined sequence does not contain any term equal to 1. You can become famous by finding such a choice for a_1. If you want to find out more about this problem, do a web search for "Collatz Problem".*]

50 Suppose $a_1 = 7$. Find the smallest value of n such that $a_n = 1$.

For Exercises 51–56, consider the sequence whose n^{th} term a_n is given by the indicated formula.

(a) ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***

(b) ***Give a recursive definition of the specified sequence.***

51 $a_n = 5n - 3$

52 $a_n = 1 - 6n$

53 $a_n = 3(-2)^n$

54 $a_n = 5 \cdot 3^{-n}$

55 $a_n = 2^n n!$

56 $a_n = \dfrac{3^n}{n!}$

57 Define a sequence recursively by

$$a_1 = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{7}{a_n} + a_n\right) \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

Find the smallest value of n such that a_n agrees with $\sqrt{7}$ for at least six digits after the decimal point.

58 Define a sequence recursively by

$$a_1 = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{17}{a_n} + a_n\right) \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

Find the smallest value of n such that a_n agrees with $\sqrt{17}$ for at least four digits after the decimal point.

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

59 For Example 4, the author wanted to find a polynomial p such that

$$p(1) = 1,\ p(2) = 4,\ p(3) = 9,\ p(4) = 16,\ p(5) = 31.$$

Carry out the following steps to see how that polynomial was found.

(a) Note that the polynomial

$$(x-2)(x-3)(x-4)(x-5)$$

is 0 for $x = 2, 3, 4, 5$ but is not zero for $x = 1$. By dividing the polynomial above by a suitable number, find a polynomial p_1 such that $p_1(1) = 1$ and

$$p_1(2) = p_1(3) = p_1(4) = p_1(5) = 0.$$

(b) Similarly, find a polynomial p_2 of degree 4 such that $p_2(2) = 1$ and

$$p_2(1) = p_2(3) = p_2(4) = p_2(5) = 0.$$

(c) Similarly, find polynomials p_j, for $j = 3, 4, 5$, such that each p_j satisfies $p_j(j) = 1$ and $p_j(k) = 0$ for values of k in $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ other than j.

(d) Explain why the polynomial p defined by

$$p = p_1 + 4p_2 + 9p_3 + 16p_4 + 31p_5$$

satisfies

$$p(1) = 1, p(2) = 4, p(3) = 9, p(4) = 16, p(5) = 31.$$

60 Explain why the polynomial p defined by

$$p(x) = \frac{x^4 - 10x^3 + 39x^2 - 50x + 24}{4}$$

is the only polynomial of degree 4 such that $p(1) = 1$, $p(2) = 4$, $p(3) = 9$, $p(4) = 16$, and $p(5) = 31$.

61 Explain why an infinite sequence is sometimes defined to be a function whose domain is the set of positive integers.

62 Find a sequence

$$3, -7, 18, 93, \ldots$$

whose 100^{th} term equals 29.
[*Hint:* A correct solution to this problem can be obtained with no calculation.]

63 Find all infinite sequences that are both arithmetic and geometric sequences.

64 Show that an infinite sequence $a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots$ is an arithmetic sequence if and only if there is a linear function f such that

$$a_n = f(n)$$

for every positive integer n.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

For Exercises 1–8, a formula is given for the n^{th} term of a sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$.

- **(a)** ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***
- **(b)** ***Give the 100^{th} term of the sequence.***

1 $a_n = -n$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = -n$ is $-1, -2, -3, -4, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is -100.

3 $a_n = 2 + 5n$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 2 + 5n$ is $7, 12, 17, 22, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $2 + 5 \cdot 100$, which equals 502.

5 $a_n = \sqrt{\frac{n}{n+1}}$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = \sqrt{\frac{n}{n+1}}$ is $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}, \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}, \sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}, \sqrt{\frac{4}{5}}, \ldots$. Note that $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}$ has not been simplified to $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$; similarly, $\sqrt{\frac{4}{5}}$ has not been simplified to $\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$. Making those simplifications would make it harder to discern the pattern in the sequence.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $\sqrt{\frac{100}{101}}$.

7 $a_n = 3 + 2^n$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 3 + 2^n$ is $5, 7, 11, 19, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $3 + 2^{100}$.

For Exercises 9–14, consider an arithmetic sequence with first term b and difference d between consecutive terms.

- **(a)** ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***
- **(b)** ***Give the 100^{th} term of the sequence.***

9 $b = 2, d = 5$

solution

(a) The arithmetic sequence with first term 2 and difference 5 between consecutive terms is $2, 7, 12, 17, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $2 + 99 \cdot 5$, which equals 497.

11 $b = 4, d = -6$

solution

(a) The arithmetic sequence with first term 4 and difference -6 between consecutive terms is $4, -2, -8, -14, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $4 + 99 \cdot (-6)$, which equals -590.

13 $b = 0, d = \frac{1}{3}$

solution

(a) The arithmetic sequence with first term 0 and difference $\frac{1}{3}$ between consecutive terms is $0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $0 + 99 \cdot \frac{1}{3}$, which equals 33.

For Exercises 15–18, suppose at the beginning of the first day of a new year you have 3324 e-mail messages saved on your computer. At the end of each day you save only your 12 most important new e-mail messages along with the previously saved messages. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the number of e-mail messages you have saved on your computer at the beginning of the n^{th} day of the year.

15 What are the first, second, and third terms of this sequence?

solution We have an arithmetic sequence whose first three terms are 3324, 3336, 3348; each term is the previous term plus 12.

17 What is the 100^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how many e-mail messages will you have saved on your computer at the beginning of the 100^{th} day of the year?

solution The 100^{th} term of this sequence is

$$3324 + (100 - 1) \cdot 12,$$

which equals 4512.

For Exercises 19–24, consider a geometric sequence with first term b and ratio r of consecutive terms.

- **(a)** ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***
- **(b)** ***Give the 100^{th} term of the sequence.***

19 $b = 1, r = 5$

solution

(a) The geometric sequence with first term 1 and ratio 5 of consecutive terms is $1, 5, 25, 125, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is 5^{99}.

21 $b = 3, r = -2$

solution

(a) The geometric sequence with first term 3 and ratio -2 of consecutive terms is $3, -6, 12, -24, \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $3 \cdot (-2)^{99}$, which equals $-3 \cdot 2^{99}$.

23 $b = 2, r = \frac{1}{3}$

solution

(a) The geometric sequence with first term 2 and ratio $\frac{1}{3}$ of consecutive terms is $2, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{2}{9}, \frac{2}{27} \ldots$.

(b) The 100^{th} term of this sequence is $2 \cdot (\frac{1}{3})^{99}$, which equals $2/3^{99}$.

25 Find the fifth term of an arithmetic sequence whose second term is 8 and whose third term is 14.

solution Because the second term of this arithmetic sequence is 8 and the third term is 14, we see that the difference between consecutive terms is 6. Thus the fourth term is $14 + 6$, which equals 20, and the fifth term is $20 + 6$, which equals 26.

27 Find the first term of an arithmetic sequence whose second term is 19 and whose fourth term is 25.

solution Because the second term of this arithmetic sequence is 19 and the fourth term is 25, and because the fourth term is two terms away from the second term, we see that twice the difference between consecutive terms is 6. Thus the difference between consecutive terms is 3. Thus 19, which is the second term, is 3 more than the first term. This implies that the first term equals 16.

29 Find the 100^{th} term of an arithmetic sequence whose tenth term is 5 and whose eleventh term is 8.

solution Because the tenth term of this arithmetic sequence is 5 and the eleventh term is 8, we see that the difference between consecutive terms is 3. To get from the eleventh term to the 100^{th} term, we need to add 3 to the eleventh term $100 - 11$ times, which equals 89 times. Thus the 100^{th} term is $8 + 89 \cdot 3$, which equals 275.

31 Find the fifth term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 8 and whose third term is 14.

solution The second term of this geometric sequence is 8, and the third term is 14. Hence the ratio of consecutive terms is $\frac{14}{8}$, which equals $\frac{7}{4}$. Thus the fourth term equals the third term times $\frac{7}{4}$. In other words, the fourth term is $14 \cdot \frac{7}{4}$, which equals $\frac{49}{2}$. Similarly, the fifth term is $\frac{49}{2} \cdot \frac{7}{4}$, which equals $\frac{343}{8}$.

33 Find the first term of a geometric sequence whose second term is 8 and whose fifth term is 27.

solution Let r denote the ratio of consecutive terms of this geometric sequence. Because the second term of this sequence is 8 and the fifth term is 27, and because the fifth term is three terms away from the second term, we have $8r^3 = 27$. Solving for r, we get $r = \frac{3}{2}$. Thus the ratio of consecutive terms is $\frac{3}{2}$. Thus 8, which is the second term, is $\frac{3}{2}$ times the first term. This implies that the first term equals $8 \cdot \frac{2}{3}$, which equals $\frac{16}{3}$.

35 Find the ninth term of a geometric sequence whose fourth term is 4 and whose seventh term is 5.

solution Let r denote the ratio of consecutive terms of this geometric sequence. To get from the fourth term of this sequence to the seventh term, we must multiply by r three times. Thus

$$4r^3 = 5.$$

Solving the equation above for r, we have $r = (\frac{5}{4})^{1/3}$.

To get from the seventh term of this sequence to the ninth term, we must multiply by r twice. Thus the ninth term of this sequence is $5r^2$. Now

$$5r^2 = 5\left((\tfrac{5}{4})^{1/3}\right)^2 = 5\left(\tfrac{5}{4}\right)^{2/3} \approx 5.80199.$$

Thus the ninth term of this sequence is approximately 5.80199.

37 Find the 100^{th} term of a geometric sequence whose tenth term is 5 and whose eleventh term is 8.

solution Because the tenth term of this geometric sequence is 5 and the eleventh term is 8, we see that the ratio of consecutive terms is $\frac{8}{5}$. To get from the eleventh term to the 100^{th} term, we need to multiply the eleventh term by $\frac{8}{5}$ a total of $100 - 11$ times, which equals 89 times. Thus the 100^{th} term is $8 \cdot (\frac{8}{5})^{89}$, which equals $8 \cdot 1.6^{89}$, which is approximately 1.2×10^{19}.

For Exercises 39–42, suppose your annual salary at the beginning of your first year at a new company is $38,000. Assume your salary increases by 7% per year at the end of each year of employment. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is your salary at the beginning of your n^{th} year at this company.

39 What are the first, second, and third terms of this sequence?

solution We have here a geometric sequence, with first term 38000 and with ratio 1.07 of consecutive terms. Each term is 1.07 times the previous term. Thus the first three terms are $38000, 38000 \times 1.07, 38000 \times 1.07^2$, which equals

$$38000, 40660, 43506.2.$$

41 What is the 10^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, what will your salary be at the beginning of your 10^{th} year at this company?

solution The 10^{th} term of this sequence is

$$38000 \times 1.07^9,$$

which equals 69861.45. In other words, your salary at the beginning of your 10^{th} year will be almost $70,000.

43 Suppose at the beginning of the year \$3000 is deposited in a bank account that pays 2% interest per year, compounded four times per year. Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is the amount in the bank account at the beginning of the n^{th} year.

(a) What are the first four terms of this sequence?

(b) What is the 10^{th} term of this sequence? In other words, how much will be in the bank account at the beginning of the 10^{th} year?

solution

(a) Because $1 + \frac{0.02}{4} = 1.005$, the amount in the account at the beginning of year n is

$$3000 \cdot (1.005)^{4(n-1)}$$

dollars. Thus the first four terms of this geometric series are

$$\$3000, \quad \$3060.45, \quad \$3122.12, \quad \$3185.03.$$

(b) Taking $n = 10$ in the formula above, we see that the amount in the account at the beginning of the 10^{th} year is \$3590.04.

For Exercises 45–48, give the first four terms of the specified recursively defined sequence.

45 $a_1 = 3$ and $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1$ for $n \geq 1$.

solution Each term after the first term is obtained by doubling the previous term and then adding 1. Thus the first four terms of this sequence are $3, 7, 15, 31$.

47 $a_1 = 2$, $a_2 = 3$, and $a_{n+2} = a_n a_{n+1}$ for $n \geq 1$.

solution Each term after the first two terms is the product of the two previous terms. Thus the first four terms of this sequence are $2, 3, 6, 18$.

For Exercises 49–50, let $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ be the sequence defined by setting a_1 equal to the value shown below and for $n \geq 1$ letting

$$a_{n+1} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{a_n}{2} & \text{if } a_n \text{ is even;} \\ 3a_n + 1 & \text{if } a_n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

49 Suppose $a_1 = 3$. Find the smallest value of n such that $a_n = 1$.

solution Using the recursive formula above, starting with $a_1 = 3$ we compute terms of the sequence until one of them equals 1. The first eight terms of the sequence are

$$3,\ 10,\ 5,\ 16,\ 8,\ 4,\ 2,\ 1.$$

The eighth term of this sequence equals 1, with no earlier term equal to 1. Thus $n = 8$ is the smallest value of n such that $a_n = 1$.

For Exercises 51–56, consider the sequence whose n^{th} term a_n is given by the indicated formula.

(a) ***Write the sequence using the three-dot notation, giving the first four terms.***

(b) ***Give a recursive definition of the specified sequence.***

51 $a_n = 5n - 3$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 5n - 3$ is $2, 7, 12, 17, \ldots$.

(b) We have

$$a_{n+1} = 5(n+1) - 3 = 5n + 5 - 3 = (5n - 3) + 5 = a_n + 5.$$

Thus this sequence is defined by the equations

$$a_1 = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = a_n + 5 \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

53 $a_n = 3(-2)^n$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 3(-2)^n$ is $-6, 12, -24, 48, \ldots$.

(b) We have

$$a_{n+1} = 3(-2)^{n+1} = 3(-2)^n(-2) = -2a_n.$$

Thus this sequence is defined by the equations

$$a_1 = -6 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = -2a_n \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

55 $a_n = 2^n n!$

solution

(a) The sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ defined by $a_n = 2^n n!$ is $2, 8, 48, 384, \ldots$.

(b) We have

$$a_{n+1} = 2^{n+1}(n+1)! = 2 \cdot 2^n n!(n+1) = 2(n+1)2^n n! = 2(n+1)a_n.$$

Thus this sequence is defined by the equations

$$a_1 = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = 2(n+1)a_n \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

57 Define a sequence recursively by

$$a_1 = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{7}{a_n} + a_n\right) \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

Find the smallest value of n such that a_n agrees with $\sqrt{7}$ for at least six digits after the decimal point.

solution A calculator shows that $\sqrt{7} \approx 2.6457513$. Using a calculator and the recursive formula above, we compute terms of the sequence until one of them agrees with $\sqrt{7}$ for at least six digits after the decimal point. The first four terms of the sequence are

$$3,\ 2.6666667,\ 2.6458333,\ 2.6457513.$$

The fourth term of this sequence agrees with $\sqrt{7}$ for at least six digits after the decimal point; no earlier term has this property. Thus $n = 4$ is the smallest value of n such that a_n agrees with $\sqrt{7}$ for at least six digits after the decimal point.

6.2 Series

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute the sum of a finite arithmetic sequence;
- compute the sum of a finite geometric sequence;
- use summation notation;
- use the Binomial Theorem.

Sums of Sequences

Series

A **series** is the sum of the terms of a sequence.

Example 1

What series corresponds to the finite sequence $1, 4, 9, 16$?

solution The corresponding series is $1 + 4 + 9 + 16$, which equals 30.

In this section we will deal only with the series that arise from finite sequences; in the next section we will investigate the intricacies of infinite series.

We can refer to the terms of a series using the same terminology as for a sequence. For example, the series $1 + 4 + 9 + 16$ has first term 1, second term 4, and last term 16.

The three-dot notation for infinite sequences was introduced in the previous section. Now we extend that notation so that it can be used to indicate terms in a finite sequence or series that are not explicitly displayed. For example, consider the geometric sequence with 100 terms, where the m^{th} term of this sequence is 2^m. We could denote this sequence by

$$2,\ 4,\ 8,\ \ldots,\ 2^{98},\ 2^{99},\ 2^{100}.$$

When three dots are used in a sequence, they are placed at the same vertical level as a comma.

Here the three dots denote the 94 terms of this sequence that are not explicitly displayed. Similarly, in the corresponding series

$$2 + 4 + 8 + \cdots + 2^{98} + 2^{99} + 2^{100},$$

When three dots are used in a series, they are vertically centered in the line.

the three dots denote the 94 terms that are not displayed.

Arithmetic Series

Arithmetic series

An **arithmetic series** is the sum obtained by adding up the terms of an arithmetic sequence.

The next example provides our model for evaluating an arithmetic series.

Example 2

Find the sum of all the odd numbers between 100 and 200.

solution We want to find the sum of the finite arithmetic sequence

$$101,\ 103,\ 105,\ \ldots,\ 195,\ 197,\ 199.$$

We could add up the numbers above by brute force, but that will become tiresome when we need to deal with sequences that have 50,000 terms instead of 50 terms.

Thus we employ a trick. Let s denote the sum of all the odd numbers between 100 and 200. Our trick is to write out the sum defining s twice, but in reverse order the second time:

$$s = 101 + 103 + 105 + \cdots + 195 + 197 + 199;$$
$$s = 199 + 197 + 195 + \cdots + 105 + 103 + 101.$$

Now add the two equations above, getting

$$2s = 300 + 300 + 300 + \cdots + 300 + 300 + 300.$$

The right side of the equation above consists of 50 terms, each equal to 300. Thus the equation above can be rewritten as $2s = 50 \cdot 300$. Solving for s, we have

$$s = 50 \cdot \frac{300}{2} = 50 \cdot 150 = 7500.$$

As you read this explanation of how to evaluate any arithmetic series, refer to the concrete example above to help visualize the procedure.

The trick used in the example above works with any arithmetic series. Let F denote the first term of the arithmetic series, L denote the last term, d denote the difference between consecutive terms, and s denote the sum. Write the arithmetic series twice, in reverse order the second time. Thus we have

$$s = F + (F + d) + (F + 2d) + \cdots + (L - 2d) + (L - d) + L,$$
$$s = L + (L - d) + (L - 2d) + \cdots + (F + 2d) + (F + d) + F.$$

Now add the two equations above, getting

$$2s = (F + L) + (F + L) + (F + L) + \cdots + (F + L) + (F + L) + (F + L).$$

If n denotes the number of terms in the series, then the equation above can be rewritten as $2s = n(F + L)$. Solving for s, we have the following simple formula for evaluating an arithmetic series.

The formula is presented here twice, once using symbols and once with just words. Use whichever version is easiest for you.

Arithmetic series

- The sum of a finite arithmetic sequence with n terms, first term F, and last term L is
$$n\left(\frac{F + L}{2}\right).$$
- The sum of a finite arithmetic sequence is the number of terms times the average of the first and last terms.

As a special case, take $F = 1$ and $L = n$ above to obtain the following formula.

Sum of the first n positive integers

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}.$$

Example 3

Evaluate the arithmetic series

$$3 + 8 + 13 + 18 + \cdots + 1003 + 1008.$$

solution The arithmetic sequence $3, 8, 13, 18, \ldots, 1003, 1008$ has first term 3 and a difference of 5 between consecutive terms. We need to determine the number n of terms in this sequence. Using the formula for the terms in an arithmetic sequence, we have

$$3 + (n-1)5 = 1008.$$

Solving this equation for n gives $n = 202$. Thus this series has 202 terms.

The average of the first and last terms of this series is $\frac{3+1008}{2}$, which equals $\frac{1011}{2}$. The formula for an arithmetic series tells us that $3 + 8 + 13 + 18 + \cdots + 1003 + 1008$ equals $202 \cdot \frac{1011}{2}$, which equals $101 \cdot 1011$, which equals 102111.

In the example above, we first had to find the number of terms. In the next example, we first have to find the last term.

Example 4

For your summer exercise, you rode your bicycle every day, starting with 5 miles on the first day of summer. You increased the distance you rode by 0.5 miles each day. How many miles total did you ride over the 90 days of summer?

solution The number of miles you rode increased by a constant amount of 0.5 miles each day; thus we have an arithmetic sequence with 90 terms. The last term in that arithmetic sequence is $5 + 89 \cdot 0.5$, which equals 49.5. Thus the sum of this arithmetic sequence is

$$90\left(\frac{5+49.5}{2}\right),$$

which equals 2452.5. Thus your summer bicycle riding totaled 2452.5 miles.

The author's bicycle with a twisted front wheel after a crash. The author once rode this bicycle from Missoula (Montana) to San Francisco in three weeks.

Geometric Series

Geometric series

A **geometric series** is the sum obtained by adding up the terms of a geometric sequence.

The next example shows how to evaluate a geometric series.

Example 5

Evaluate the geometric series $1 + 3 + 9 + \cdots + 3^{97} + 3^{98} + 3^{99}$.

solution We again employ a trick. Let s equal the sum above. Multiply s by 3, writing the resulting sum with terms aligned under the same terms of s:

$$s = 1 + 3 + 9 + \cdots + 3^{97} + 3^{98} + 3^{99};$$
$$3s = \quad 3 + 9 + \cdots + 3^{97} + 3^{98} + 3^{99} + 3^{100}.$$

The terms of s and $3s$ are the same, except for the first term of s and the last term of $3s$.

Now subtract the first equation from the second equation, getting

$$2s = 3^{100} - 1.$$

Thus $s = (3^{100} - 1)/2$.

The trick used in the last example works with any geometric series. Specifically, consider a geometric series with n terms, starting with first term b, and with ratio r of consecutive terms. Let s denote the sum. Multiply s by r, writing the resulting sum with terms aligned under the same terms of s, as follows:

$$s = b + br + br^2 + \cdots + br^{n-2} + br^{n-1};$$
$$rs = \quad br + br^2 + \cdots + br^{n-2} + br^{n-1} + br^n.$$

Now subtract the second equation from the first equation, getting

$$s - rs = b - br^n,$$

which can be rewritten as $(1-r)s = b(1-r^n)$. Dividing both sides by $1-r$ shows that $s = b(1-r^n)/(1-r)$. In other words, we have the following formula.

The case $r = 1$ is excluded to avoid division by 0.

Geometric series

The sum of a geometric sequence with first term b, ratio $r \neq 1$ of consecutive terms, and n terms is

$$b \cdot \frac{1-r^n}{1-r}.$$

In other words, if $r \neq 1$ then

$$b + br + br^2 + \cdots + br^{n-1} = b \cdot \frac{1-r^n}{1-r}.$$

Example 6

Suppose tuition during your first year in college is \$12,000. You expect tuition to increase 6% per year, and you expect to take five years total to graduate. What is the total amount of tuition you should expect to pay in college?

solution Tuition each year is 1.06 times the previous year's tuition; thus we have a geometric sequence. Using the formula above, the sum of this geometric sequence is

Here we have the first term $b = 12{,}000$, the ratio $r = 1.06$ of consecutive terms, and the number of terms $n = 5$.

$$12000 \cdot \frac{1-1.06^5}{1-1.06},$$

which equals 67645.1. Thus you should expect to pay a total of about \$67,645 in tuition during five years in college.

To express the formula

$$b + br + br^2 + \cdots + br^{n-1} = b \cdot \frac{1-r^n}{1-r}$$

in words, first rewrite the right side of the equation as

$$\frac{b - br^n}{1-r}.$$

The expression br^n would be the next term if we added one more term to the geometric sequence. Thus we have the following restatement of the formula.

Geometric series

This box allows you to think about the formula for a geometric series in words instead of symbols.

The sum of a finite geometric sequence equals the first term minus what would be the term following the last term, divided by 1 minus the ratio of consecutive terms.

Example 7

Evaluate the geometric series

$$\frac{5}{3}+\frac{5}{9}+\frac{5}{27}+\cdots+\frac{5}{3^{20}}.$$

solution The first term of this geometric series is $\frac{5}{3}$. The ratio of consecutive terms is $\frac{1}{3}$. If we added one more term to this geometric series, the next term would be $\frac{5}{3^{21}}$. Using the result in the last box, we see that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{5}{3}+\frac{5}{9}+\frac{5}{27}+\cdots+\frac{5}{3^{20}} &= \frac{\frac{5}{3}-\frac{5}{3^{21}}}{1-\frac{1}{3}}\\ &= \frac{\frac{5}{3}-\frac{5}{3^{21}}}{\frac{2}{3}}\\ &= \left(\frac{5}{3}-\frac{5}{3^{21}}\right)\cdot\frac{3}{2}\\ &= \frac{5}{2}-\frac{5}{2\cdot 3^{20}}.\end{aligned}$$

Summation Notation

The three-dot notation that we have been using has the advantage of presenting an easily understandable representation of a series. Another notation, called summation notation, is also often used for series. Summation notation has the advantage of explicitly displaying the formula used to compute the terms of the sequence. For some manipulations, summation notation works better than three-dot notation.

***Summation notation* Σ**

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k = a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \cdots + a_k.$$

The symbol Σ used in summation notation is an upper-case Greek sigma.

The following equation uses summation notation on the left side and three-dot notation on the right side:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{99} k^2 = 1 + 4 + 9 + \cdots + 98^2 + 99^2.$$

In spoken language, the left side of the equation above becomes "the sum as k goes from 1 to 99 of k^2". This means that the first term of the series is obtained by starting with $k = 1$ and computing k^2 (which equals 1). The second term of the series is obtained by taking $k = 2$ and computing k^2 (which equals 4), and so on, until $k = 99$, giving the last term of the series (which is 99^2).

If you take calculus, you will probably first encounter summation notation there when you reach the topic called Riemann integration.

Nothing is special about the use of k in the notation above. We could have used j or m or any other letter, as long as we consistently use the same letter throughout the notation. Thus

$$\sum_{j=1}^{99} j^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{k=1}^{99} k^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{m=1}^{99} m^2$$

all denote the same series $1 + 4 + 9 + \cdots + 98^2 + 99^2$.

Example 8

Usually the starting and ending values for a summation are written below and above the Σ. Sometimes to save vertical space this information appears alongside the Σ. For example, the sum here might be written as $\sum_{k=1}^{80} 3^k$.

Write the geometric series

$$3 + 9 + 27 + \cdots + 3^{80}$$

using summation notation.

solution The k^{th} term of this series is 3^k. Thus

$$3 + 9 + 27 + \cdots + 3^{80} = \sum_{k=1}^{80} 3^k.$$

You should also become comfortable translating in the other direction, from summation notation to either an explicit sum or the three-dot notation.

Example 9

As you can guess, $\sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k$ *(starting with* $k = 0$ *instead of* $k = 1$*) means* $a_0 + a_1 + \cdots + a_n$.

Write the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{3} (k^2 - 1)2^k$$

as an explicit sum.

solution In this case the summation starts with $k = 0$. When $k = 0$, the expression $(k^2 - 1)2^k$ equals -1, so the first term of this series is -1.

When $k = 1$, the expression $(k^2 - 1)2^k$ equals 0, so the second term is 0.
When $k = 2$, the expression $(k^2 - 1)2^k$ equals 12, so the third term is 12.
When $k = 3$, the expression $(k^2 - 1)2^k$ equals 64, so the fourth term is 64. Thus

$$\sum_{k=0}^{3} (k^2 - 1)2^k = -1 + 0 + 12 + 64 = 75.$$

Sometimes there is more than one convenient way to write a series using summation notation, as illustrated in the following example.

Example 10

Suppose $r \neq 0$. Write the geometric series

$$1 + r + r^2 + \cdots + r^{n-1}$$

using summation notation.

solution This series has n terms. The k^{th} term of this series is r^{k-1}. Thus

$$1 + r + r^2 + \cdots + r^{n-1} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} r^{k-1}.$$

We could also think of this series as the sum of powers of r, starting with r^0 (recall that $r^0 = 1$ provided $r \neq 0$) and ending with r^{n-1}. From this perspective, we could write

$$1 + r + r^2 + \cdots + r^{n-1} = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k.$$

Note that on the right side of the last equation, k starts at 0 and ends at $n - 1$.

Thus we have written this geometric series in two different ways using summation notation. Both are correct; the choice of which to use may depend on the context.

When using any kind of technology to evaluate a sum, you will probably need to convert the three-dot notation to the summation notation expected by the software, as shown in the next example.

Example 11

(a) Evaluate $1 + 4 + 9 + \cdots + 98^2 + 99^2$.

(b) Find a formula for the sum of the first n squares $1 + 4 + 9 + \cdots + n^2$.

solution

(a) Enter `sum k^2 for k = 1 to 99` in a *WolframAlpha* entry box to get

$$\sum_{k=1}^{99} k^2 = 328350.$$

The solution here uses WolframAlpha, but feel free to use your preferred technology instead.

(b) Enter `sum k^2 for k = 1 to n` in a *WolframAlpha* entry box to get

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}.$$

Pascal's Triangle

We now turn to the question of expanding $(x + y)^n$ into a sum of terms.

Example 12

Expand $(x + y)^n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$.

solution Each equation below (except the first) is obtained by multiplying both sides of the previous equation by $x + y$ and then expanding the right side.

$$(x+y)^0 = 1$$
$$(x+y)^1 = x + y$$
$$(x+y)^2 = x^2 + 2xy + y^2$$
$$(x+y)^3 = x^3 + 3x^2y + 3xy^2 + y^3$$
$$(x+y)^4 = x^4 + 4x^3y + 6x^2y^2 + 4xy^3 + y^4$$
$$(x+y)^5 = x^5 + 5x^4y + 10x^3y^2 + 10x^2y^3 + 5xy^4 + y^5$$

Here the terms in each expansion have been written in decreasing order of powers of x.

Some patterns are evident in the expansions above:

- Each expansion of $(x + y)^n$ above begins with x^n and ends with y^n.
- The second term in each expansion of $(x + y)^n$ is $nx^{n-1}y$.
- The second-to-last term in each expansion of $(x + y)^n$ is nxy^{n-1}.
- Each term in the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ is a number times $x^j y^k$, where j and k are nonnegative integers and $j + k = n$.
- In the expansion of $(x + y)^n$, the coefficient of $x^j y^k$ is the same as the coefficient of $x^k y^j$.

Example 13

Center the expansions above, then find a pattern for computing the coefficients.

solution Centering the expansions above gives the following display.

$$
\begin{aligned}
(x+y)^0 &= 1\\
(x+y)^1 &= x + y\\
(x+y)^2 &= x^2 + 2xy + y^2\\
(x+y)^3 &= x^3 + 3x^2y + 3xy^2 + y^3\\
(x+y)^4 &= x^4 + \textcircled{4x^3y} + \textcircled{6x^2y^2} + 4xy^3 + y^4\\
(x+y)^5 &= x^5 + 5x^4y + \textcircled{10x^3y^2} + 10x^2y^3 + 5xy^4 + y^5
\end{aligned}
$$

The highlighted coefficient 10 *is the sum of the coefficient* 4 *diagonally to the left and the coefficient* 6 *diagonally to the right in the row above* 10.

Consider, for example, the term $10x^3y^2$ (orange) in the last row above. The coefficient diagonally to the left in the row above $10x^3y^2$ is 4 (blue) and the coefficient diagonally to the right above $10x^3y^2$ is 6 (blue), and furthermore $10 = 4 + 6$.

The same pattern holds throughout the expansions above. As you should verify, each coefficient that is not 1 is the sum of the coefficient diagonally to the left and the coefficient diagonally to the right in the row above.

In the previous example we discovered that the coefficient 10 in the term $10x^3y^2$ is the sum of the coefficient diagonally to the left and the coefficient diagonally to the right in the row above. The next example explains why this happens.

Example 14

Explain why the coefficient of x^3y^2 in the expansion of $(x+y)^5$ is the sum of the coefficients of x^3y and x^2y^2 in the expansion of $(x+y)^4$.

solution Consider the following equations:

$$
\begin{aligned}
(x+y)^5 &= (x+y)^4(x+y)\\
&= (x^4 + \textcircled{4x^3y} + \textcircled{6x^2y^2} + 4xy^3 + y^4)(x+y).
\end{aligned}
$$

When the last line above is expanded using the distributive property, the only way that x^3y^2 terms can arise is when $4x^3y$ is multiplied by y (giving $4x^3y^2$) and when $6x^2y^2$ is multiplied by x (giving $6x^3y^2$). The sum of these two x^3y^2 terms is $10x^3y^2$.

Statue in France of Blaise Pascal. Pascal's triangle was used centuries before Pascal in India, Persia, China, and Italy.

The same idea as used in the example above explains why every coefficient in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ can be computed by adding together two coefficients from the expansion of $(x+y)^{n-1}$.

The pattern of coefficients in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ becomes more visible if we write just the coefficients from Example 13, leaving out plus signs and powers of x and y. We then have the following numbers, arranged in a triangular shape.

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
 & & & & & 1 & & & & & \\
 & & & & 1 & & 1 & & & & \\
 & & & 1 & & 2 & & 1 & & & \\
 & & 1 & & 3 & & 3 & & 1 & & \\
 & 1 & & 4 & & 6 & & 4 & & 1 & \\
1 & & 5 & & 10 & & 10 & & 5 & & 1
\end{array}
$$

This triangular array of numbers, with any number of rows, is called **Pascal's triangle**, in honor of Blaise Pascal, the 17th-century French mathematician who discovered important properties of this triangle of numbers.

Pascal's triangle

- **Pascal's triangle** is a triangular array with n numbers in the n^{th} row.
- The first and last entries in each row are 1.
- Each entry that is not a first or last entry in a row is the sum of the two entries diagonally above to the left and right.

The reasoning that was used in Example 14 now gives the following method for expanding $(x+y)^n$. Note that row 1 of Pascal's triangle corresponds to $(x+y)^0$, row 2 of Pascal's triangle corresponds to $(x+y)^1$, row 3 of Pascal's triangle corresponds to $(x+y)^2$, and so on.

Coefficients of $(x+y)^n$

Suppose n is a nonnegative integer. Then row $n+1$ of Pascal's triangle gives the coefficients in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$.

The coefficients correspond to terms in decreasing order of powers of x.

Example 15

Use Pascal's triangle to find the expansion of $(x+y)^7$.

To expand $(x+y)^7$, we find the eighth row of Pascal's triangle.

solution We already know the sixth row of Pascal's triangle, corresponding to the expansion of $(x+y)^5$. The sixth row of Pascal's triangle is listed as the first line below, then below it we do the usual addition to get the seventh row, and then below it we do the usual addition to get the eighth row.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc} & & & 1 & & 5 & & 10 & & 10 & & 5 & & 1 \\ & & 1 & & 6 & & 15 & & 20 & & 15 & & 6 & & 1 \\ 1 & & 7 & & 21 & & 35 & & 35 & & 21 & & 7 & & 1 \end{array}$$

The eighth row of Pascal's triangle (the last row above) now allows us to expand $(x+y)^7$ easily:

$$(x+y)^7 = x^7 + 7x^6y + 21x^5y^2 + 35x^4y^3 + 35x^3y^4 + 21x^2y^5 + 7xy^6 + y^7.$$

Here is another example showing how Pascal's triangle can help speed up a calculation.

Example 16

Use Pascal's triangle to simplify the expression $(2+\sqrt{3})^5$.

solution The sixth row of Pascal's triangle is

$$1 \quad 5 \quad 10 \quad 10 \quad 5 \quad 1.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} (2+\sqrt{3})^5 &= 2^5 + 5\cdot 2^4\sqrt{3} + 10\cdot 2^3\sqrt{3}^2 + 10\cdot 2^2\sqrt{3}^3 + 5\cdot 2\sqrt{3}^4 + \sqrt{3}^5 \\ &= 32 + 80\sqrt{3} + 80\cdot 3 + 40\cdot \sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3} + 10\cdot \sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3}^2 + \sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3} \\ &= 32 + 80\sqrt{3} + 80\cdot 3 + 40\cdot 3\sqrt{3} + 10\cdot 3\cdot 3 + 3\cdot 3\sqrt{3} \\ &= 32 + 80\sqrt{3} + 240 + 120\sqrt{3} + 90 + 9\sqrt{3} \\ &= 362 + 209\sqrt{3}. \end{aligned}$$

The Binomial Theorem

Suppose we want to find the coefficient of $x^{97}y^3$ in the expansion of $(x+y)^{100}$. We could calculate this coefficient using Pascal's triangle, but only after much work to get to row 101. Thus we now discuss binomial coefficients, which will give us a direct way to compute the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ without first having to compute the expansion for lower powers.

Recall that $n!$ is defined to be the product of the integers from 1 to n. We will also find it convenient to define 0! to be 1. Thus

$$0! = 1, \quad 1! = 1, \quad 2! = 2, \quad 3! = 2\cdot 3 = 6, \quad 4! = 2\cdot 3\cdot 4 = 24, \quad 5! = 2\cdot 3\cdot 4\cdot 5 = 120.$$

Now we can define binomial coefficients.

Binomial coefficient

Suppose n and k are integers with $0 \le k \le n$. The **binomial coefficient** $\binom{n}{k}$ is defined by

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!\,(n-k)!}.$$

Even though they look like fractions, each binomial coefficient is actually an integer.

Example 17

(a) Evaluate $\binom{10}{3}$.

(b) Evaluate $\binom{10}{7}$.

(c) Evaluate $\binom{n}{0}$.

(d) Evaluate $\binom{n}{1}$.

(e) Evaluate $\binom{n}{2}$.

(f) Evaluate $\binom{n}{3}$.

solution

(a) We do not actually need to compute 10! because the six terms from 7! in the denominator cancel the first six terms in the numerator, as shown below:

$$\begin{aligned}\binom{10}{3} &= \frac{10!}{3!\,7!}\\ &= \frac{2\cdot 3\cdot 4\cdot 5\cdot 6\cdot 7\cdot 8\cdot 9\cdot 10}{(2\cdot 3)(2\cdot 3\cdot 4\cdot 5\cdot 6\cdot 7)}\\ &= \frac{8\cdot 9\cdot 10}{2\cdot 3}\\ &= 4\cdot 3\cdot 10\\ &= 120.\end{aligned}$$

The large cancellation of the numbers in orange in this example often happens when working with binomial coefficients.

(b) We have $\binom{10}{7} = \frac{10!}{7!\,3!} = \frac{10!}{3!\,7!} = \binom{10}{3} = 120$, where the last equality comes from part (a).

(c) $\displaystyle\binom{n}{0} = \frac{n!}{0!\,n!} = \frac{n!}{n!} = 1$

(d) $\displaystyle\binom{n}{1} = \frac{n!}{1!\,(n-1)!} = \frac{(n-1)!\,n}{(n-1)!} = n$

(e) $\displaystyle\binom{n}{2} = \frac{n!}{2!\,(n-2)!} = \frac{(n-2)!\,(n-1)n}{2(n-2)!} = \frac{(n-1)n}{2}$

(f) $\displaystyle\binom{n}{3} = \frac{n!}{3!\,(n-3)!} = \frac{(n-3)!\,(n-2)(n-1)n}{3!\,(n-3)!} = \frac{(n-2)(n-1)n}{2\cdot 3}$

In part (b) of the example above, we saw that $\binom{10}{7} = \binom{10}{3}$. A similar result holds more generally, as follows.

Binomial coefficient identity

Suppose n and k are integers with $0 \le k \le n$. Then

$$\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}.$$

The result above holds because

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!\,(n-k)!} = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!\,k!} = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!\,(n-(n-k))!} = \binom{n}{n-k}.$$

The next result allows us to compute coefficients in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ without using Pascal's triangle.

Binomial Theorem

Suppose n is a positive integer. Then

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k.$$

In other words, the coefficient of $x^{n-k}y^k$ in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ is $\binom{n}{k}$.

The word binomial *means an expression with two terms, just as* polynomial *refers to an expression with multiple terms. For example, the expression $x+y$ is a binomial.*

Before explaining why the Binomial Theorem holds, let's look at two examples.

Example 18

Find the coefficient of $x^{97}y^3$ in the expansion of $(x+y)^{100}$.

solution According to the Binomial Theorem, the coefficient of $x^{97}y^3$ in the expansion of $(x+y)^{100}$ is $\binom{100}{3}$, which we compute as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\binom{100}{3} &= \frac{100!}{3!\,97!} \\ &= \frac{98 \cdot 99 \cdot 100}{2 \cdot 3} \\ &= 161700.\end{aligned}$$

The next example confirms our previous observation that the first term of the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ is x^n and the second term is $nx^{n-1}y$.

Example 19

Suppose $n \ge 4$. Explicitly display the first four terms in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$.

solution Using the Binomial Theorem and the results from Example 17, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(x+y)^n &= \binom{n}{0}x^n + \binom{n}{1}x^{n-1}y + \binom{n}{2}x^{n-2}y^2 + \binom{n}{3}x^{n-3}y^3 + \sum_{k=4}^{n}\binom{n}{k}x^{n-k}y^k \\ &= x^n + nx^{n-1}y + \frac{(n-1)n}{2}x^{n-2}y^2 + \frac{(n-2)(n-1)n}{2\cdot 3}x^{n-3}y^3 \\ &\quad + \sum_{k=4}^{n}\binom{n}{k}x^{n-k}y^k.\end{aligned}$$

The summation starts with $k=4$ because the terms for $k=0,1,2,3$ are explicitly displayed.

As another example, if $n = 20$ and y is replaced by $-z$, the expansion in the last example is

Notice the alternation of plus and minus signs in this expansion.

$$(x-z)^{20} = x^{20} - 20x^{19}z + 190x^{18}z^2 - 1140x^{17}z^3 + \sum_{k=4}^{20} \binom{20}{k} (-1)^k x^{20-k} z^k.$$

The identity in next example will be used to explain why the Binomial Theorem holds.

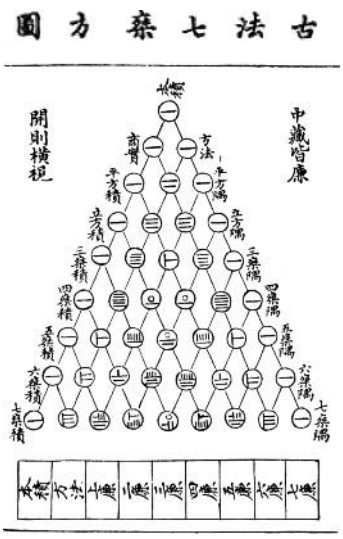
Example 20

Suppose n and k are positive integers with $k < n$. Show that

$$\binom{n-1}{k-1} + \binom{n-1}{k} = \binom{n}{k}.$$

solution We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n-1}{k-1} + \binom{n-1}{k} &= \frac{(n-1)!}{(k-1)!\,(n-k)!} + \frac{(n-1)!}{k!\,(n-k-1)!} \\
&= \frac{(n-1)!}{(k-1)!\,(n-k-1)!}\left(\frac{1}{n-k} + \frac{1}{k}\right) \\
&= \frac{(n-1)!}{(k-1)!\,(n-k-1)!} \cdot \frac{n}{(n-k)k} \\
&= \frac{(n-1)!\,n}{(k-1)!\,k\,(n-k-1)!\,(n-k)} \\
&= \frac{n!}{k!\,(n-k)!} \\
&= \binom{n}{k}.
\end{aligned}$$



A version of Pascal's triangle printed in China in 1303. The fourth entry in row 8 is 34 rather than the correct value of $\binom{7}{3}$, which is 35. All other entries are correct. The error is probably a typo.

The next result shows that Pascal's triangle consists of binomial coefficients.

Pascal's triangle and binomial coefficients

Suppose n is a nonnegative integer. Then row $n+1$ of Pascal's triangle is

$$\binom{n}{0} \quad \binom{n}{1} \quad \binom{n}{2} \quad \cdots \quad \binom{n}{n-2} \quad \binom{n}{n-1} \quad \binom{n}{n}.$$

To see why the result above holds, consider the triangular array with row $n+1$ as described above. Thus the first five rows of this triangular array are

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 & & & & \binom{0}{0} & & & & \\
 & & & \binom{1}{0} & & \binom{1}{1} & & & \\
 & & \binom{2}{0} & & \binom{2}{1} & & \binom{2}{2} & & \\
 & \binom{3}{0} & & \binom{3}{1} & & \binom{3}{2} & & \binom{3}{3} & \\
\binom{4}{0} & & \binom{4}{1} & & \binom{4}{2} & & \binom{4}{3} & & \binom{4}{4},
\end{array}$$

which equals

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 & & & & 1 & & & & \\
 & & & 1 & & 1 & & & \\
 & & 1 & & 2 & & 1 & & \\
 & 1 & & 3 & & 3 & & 1 & \\
1 & & 4 & & 6 & & 4 & & 1,
\end{array}$$

which are the same as the first five rows of Pascal's triangle. Example 20 shows that this new triangular array is constructed just as Pascal's triangle is constructed, with each entry equal to the sum of the two entries diagonally above to the left and right.

Because this new triangular array and Pascal's triangle have the same first few rows and the same method for determining further rows, these two triangular arrays are equal. Thus we have the desired result that the entries in Pascal's triangle are binomial coefficients.

We already know that the coefficients in the expansion of $(x+y)^n$ are given by row $n+1$ of Pascal's triangle. Our last result now gives the Binomial Theorem:

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k.$$

Exercises

In Exercises 1–10, evaluate the arithmetic series.

1 $1+2+3+\cdots+98+99+100$

2 $1001+1002+1003+\cdots+2998+2999+3000$

3 $302+305+308+\cdots+6002+6005+6008$

4 $25+31+37+\cdots+601+607+613$

5 $200+195+190+\cdots+75+70+65$

6 $300+293+286+\cdots+55+48+41$

7 $\displaystyle\sum_{m=1}^{80}(4+5m)$

8 $\displaystyle\sum_{m=1}^{75}(2+3m)$

9 $\displaystyle\sum_{k=5}^{65}(4k-1)$

10 $\displaystyle\sum_{k=10}^{900}(3k-2)$

11 Find the sum of all the four-digit positive integers.

12 Find the sum of all the four-digit odd positive integers.

13 Find the sum of all the four-digit positive integers whose last digit equals 3.

14 Find the sum of all the four-digit positive integers that are evenly divisible by 5.

15 Evaluate $1+8+27+\cdots+998^3+999^3$.

16 Evaluate $1+16+81+\cdots+998^4+999^4$.

For Exercises 17–20, suppose you started an exercise program by riding your bicycle 10 miles on the first day and then you increased the distance you rode by 0.25 miles each day.

17 How many total miles did you ride after 50 days?

18 How many total miles did you ride after 70 days?

19 What is the first day on which the total number of miles you rode exceeded 2000?

20 What is the first day on which the total number of miles you rode exceeded 3000?

In Exercises 21–30, evaluate the geometric series.

21 $1+3+9+\cdots+3^{200}$

22 $1+2+4+\cdots+2^{100}$

23 $\dfrac{1}{4}+\dfrac{1}{16}+\dfrac{1}{64}+\cdots+\dfrac{1}{4^{50}}$

24 $\dfrac{1}{3}+\dfrac{1}{9}+\dfrac{1}{27}+\cdots+\dfrac{1}{3^{33}}$

25 $1-\dfrac{1}{2}+\dfrac{1}{4}-\dfrac{1}{8}+\cdots+\dfrac{1}{2^{80}}-\dfrac{1}{2^{81}}$

26 $1-\dfrac{1}{3}+\dfrac{1}{9}-\dfrac{1}{27}+\cdots+\dfrac{1}{3^{60}}-\dfrac{1}{3^{61}}+\dfrac{1}{3^{62}}$

27 $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{40}\frac{3}{2^k}$

28 $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{90}\frac{5}{7^k}$

29 $\displaystyle\sum_{m=3}^{77}(-5)^m$

30 $\displaystyle\sum_{m=5}^{91}(-2)^m$

In Exercises 31–36, write the series explicitly and evaluate the sum.

31 $\displaystyle\sum_{m=1}^{4}(m^2+5)$

32 $\displaystyle\sum_{m=1}^{5}(m^2-2m+7)$

33 $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{3}\log(k^2+2)$

34 $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{4}\ln(2^k+1)$

35 $\displaystyle\sum_{n=2}^{5}\cos\frac{\pi}{n}$

36 $\displaystyle\sum_{n=2}^{5}\sin\frac{\pi}{n}$

In Exercises 37–40, write the series using summation notation (starting with $k=1$). Each series in Exercises 37–40 is either an arithmetic series or a geometric series.

37 $2+4+6+\cdots+100$

38 $1+3+5+\cdots+201$

39 $\dfrac{5}{9}+\dfrac{5}{27}+\dfrac{5}{81}+\cdots+\dfrac{5}{3^{40}}$

40 $\dfrac{7}{16}+\dfrac{7}{32}+\dfrac{7}{64}+\cdots+\dfrac{7}{2^{25}}$

For Exercises 41–44, consider the fable from the beginning of Section 3.4. In this fable, one grain of rice is placed on the first square of a chessboard, then two grains on the second square, then four grains on the third square, and so on, doubling the number of grains placed on each square.

41 Find the total number of grains of rice on the first 18 squares of the chessboard.

42 Find the total number of grains of rice on the first 30 squares of the chessboard.

43 Find the smallest number n such that the total number of grains of rice on the first n squares of the chessboard is more than 30,000,000.

44 Find the smallest number n such that the total number of grains of rice on the first n squares of the chessboard is more than 4,000,000,000.

For Exercises 45–46, use Pascal's triangle to simplify the indicated expression.

45 $(2-\sqrt{3})^5$

46 $(3-\sqrt{2})^6$

47 Find the ninth row of Pascal's triangle.

48 Find the tenth row of Pascal's triangle.

49 (a) Evaluate $\binom{9}{3}$. (b) Evaluate $\binom{9}{6}$.

50 (a) Evaluate $\binom{11}{4}$. (b) Evaluate $\binom{11}{7}$.

For Exercises 51–54, assume n is a positive integer.

51 Evaluate $\binom{n}{n}$.

52 Evaluate $\binom{n}{n-1}$.

53 Evaluate $\binom{n}{n-2}$.

54 Evaluate $\binom{n}{n-3}$.

55 Find the coefficient of t^{47} in the expansion of $(t+2)^{50}$.

56 Find the coefficient of w^{198} in the expansion of $(w+3)^{200}$.

Problems

57 Explain why the polynomial factorization

$$1-x^n=(1-x)(1+x+x^2+\cdots+x^{n-1})$$

holds for every integer $n \geq 2$.

58 Show that

$$\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}+\cdots+\frac{1}{n}<\ln n$$

for every integer $n \geq 2$.

[*Hint:* Draw the graph of the curve $y=\frac{1}{x}$ in the xy-plane. Think of $\ln n$ as the area under part of this curve. Draw appropriate rectangles under the curve.]

59 Show that

$$\ln n<1+\frac{1}{2}+\cdots+\frac{1}{n-1}$$

for every integer $n \geq 2$.

[*Hint:* Draw the graph of the curve $y=\frac{1}{x}$ in the xy-plane. Think of $\ln n$ as the area under part of this curve. Draw appropriate rectangles above the curve.]

60 Show that the sum of a finite arithmetic sequence is 0 if and only if the last term equals the negative of the first term.

61 Show that the sum of an arithmetic sequence with n terms, first term b, and difference d between consecutive terms is

$$n\left(b+\frac{(n-1)d}{2}\right).$$

62 Restate the symbolic version of the formula for evaluating an arithmetic series using summation notation.

63 Restate the symbolic version of the formula for evaluating a geometric series using summation notation.

64 Use technology to find a formula for the sum of the first n cubes $1+8+27+\cdots+n^3$.

65 Use technology to find a formula for the sum of the first n fourth powers $1+16+81+\cdots+n^4$.

66 For $n=0,1,2,3,4,5$, show that the sum of the entries in row $n+1$ of Pascal's triangle equals 2^n.

67 Show that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n}\frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}=2^n$$

for every positive integer n.
[*Hint:* Expand $(1+1)^n$ using the Binomial Theorem.]

68 Suppose n is a positive integer. Show that the sum of the entries in row $n+1$ of Pascal's triangle equals 2^n.
[*Hint:* Use the result from the previous problem.]

69 Explain why

$$\sum_{m=1}^{999}(m^5-2m+7)=\sum_{k=1}^{999}(k^5-2k+7).$$

70 Explain why

$$\sum_{m=1}^{1000}m^2=\sum_{m=0}^{999}(m^2+2m+1).$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

In Exercises 1–10, evaluate the arithmetic series.

1 $1+2+3+\cdots+98+99+100$

solution This series contains 100 terms.

The average of the first and last terms in this series is $\frac{1+100}{2}$, which equals $\frac{101}{2}$.

Thus $1+2+\cdots+99+100$ equals $100\cdot\frac{101}{2}$, which equals $50\cdot 101$, which equals 5050.

3 $302+305+308+\cdots+6002+6005+6008$

solution The difference between consecutive terms in this series is 3. We need to determine the number n of terms in this series. Using the formula for the terms of an arithmetic sequence, we have

$$302+(n-1)3=6008.$$

Subtracting 302 from both sides of this equation gives the equation $(n-1)3=5706$; dividing both sides by 3 then gives $n-1=1902$. Thus $n=1903$.

The average of the first and last terms in this series is $\frac{302+6008}{2}$, which equals 3155.

Thus $302+305+\cdots+6005+6008$ equals $1903\cdot 3155$, which equals 6003965.

5 $200+195+190+\cdots+75+70+65$

solution The difference between consecutive terms in this series is -5. We need to determine the number n of terms in this series. Using the formula for the terms of an arithmetic sequence, we have

$$200 + (n-1)(-5) = 65.$$

Subtracting 200 from both sides of this equation gives the equation

$$(n-1)(-5) = -135;$$

dividing both sides by -5 then gives $n - 1 = 27$. Thus $n = 28$.

The average of the first and last terms in this series is $\frac{200+65}{2}$, which equals $\frac{265}{2}$.

Thus $200 + 195 + 190 + \cdots + 75 + 70 + 65$ equals $28 \cdot \frac{265}{2}$, which equals 3710.

7 $\sum_{m=1}^{80} (4 + 5m)$

solution Because $4 + 5 \cdot 1 = 9$ and $4 + 5 \cdot 80 = 404$, we have

$$\sum_{m=1}^{80} (4 + 5m) = 9 + 14 + 19 \cdots + 404.$$

Thus the first term of this arithmetic sequence is 9, the last term is 404, and we have 80 terms. Hence

$$\sum_{m=1}^{80} (4 + 5m) = 80 \cdot \frac{9+404}{2} = 16520.$$

9 $\sum_{k=5}^{65} (4k - 1)$

solution Because $4 \cdot 5 - 1 = 19$ and $4 \cdot 65 - 1 = 259$, we have

$$\sum_{k=5}^{65} (4k - 1) = 19 + 23 + 27 + \cdots + 259.$$

Thus the first term of this arithmetic sequence is 19, the last term is 259, and we have $65 - 5 + 1$ terms, or 61 terms. Hence

$$\sum_{k=5}^{65} (4k - 1) = 61 \cdot \frac{19+259}{2} = 8479.$$

11 Find the sum of all the four-digit positive integers.

solution We need to evaluate the arithmetic series

$$1000 + 1001 + 1002 + \cdots + 9999.$$

The number of terms in this arithmetic series is $9999 - 1000 + 1$, which equals 9000.

The average of the first and last terms is $\frac{1000+9999}{2}$, which equals $\frac{10999}{2}$.

Thus the sum of all the four-digit positive integers equals $9000 \cdot \frac{10999}{2}$, which equals 49495500.

13 Find the sum of all the four-digit positive integers whose last digit equals 3.

solution We need to evaluate the arithmetic series

$$1003 + 1013 + 1023 + \cdots + 9983 + 9993.$$

Consecutive terms in this series differ by 10. We need to determine the number n of terms in this series. Using the formula for the terms of an arithmetic sequence, we have

$$1003 + (n-1)10 = 9993.$$

Subtracting 1003 from both sides of this equation gives the equation $(n-1)10 = 8990$; dividing both sides by 10 then gives $n - 1 = 899$. Thus $n = 900$.

The average of the first and last terms is $\frac{1003+9993}{2}$, which equals 5498.

Thus the sum of all the four-digit positive integers whose last digit equals 3 is $900 \cdot 5498$, which equals 4948200.

15 Evaluate $1 + 8 + 27 + \cdots + 998^3 + 999^3$.

solution Enter `sum k^3 for k = 1 to 999` in a *WolframAlpha* entry box to get

$$\sum_{k=1}^{999} k^3 = 249500250000.$$

Instead of *WolframAlpha*, you could use your preferred technology to obtain the same result.

For Exercises 17–20, suppose you started an exercise program by riding your bicycle 10 miles on the first day and then you increased the distance you rode by 0.25 miles each day.

17 How many total miles did you ride after 50 days?

solution Let the number of miles you rode on the n^{th} day be the n^{th} term of a sequence. This is an arithmetic sequence, with first term 10 and difference 0.25 between consecutive terms. The 50^{th} term of this sequence is

$$10 + 49 \cdot 0.25,$$

which equals 22.25. Thus the sum of the first 50 terms of this arithmetic sequence is

$$50\left(\frac{10+22.25}{2}\right),$$

which equals 806.25. Thus you rode a total of 806.25 miles after 50 days.

19 What is the first day on which the total number of miles you rode exceeded 2000?

solution On the n^{th} day, you rode

$$10 + 0.25(n-1)$$

miles, which equals $9.75 + 0.25n$ miles. Thus after n days, the total miles you rode is

$$n\left(\frac{10 + (9.75 + 0.25n)}{2}\right),$$

which equals $n(9.875 + 0.125n)$. To see when the total reaches 2000 miles, we solve the equation

$$n(9.875 + 0.125n) = 2000$$

for n (use the quadratic formula), getting a negative solution (which we discard because it makes no sense) and $n \approx 93.0151$. Thus the 94^{th} day was the first day that the total number of miles you rode exceeded 2000.

In Exercises 21–30, evaluate the geometric series.

21 $1+3+9+\cdots+3^{200}$

solution The first term of this series is 1. If we added one more term to this series, the next term would be 3^{201}. The ratio of consecutive terms in this geometric series is 3. Thus

$$1+3+9+\cdots+3^{200}=\frac{1-3^{201}}{1-3}=\frac{3^{201}-1}{2}.$$

23 $\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{16}+\frac{1}{64}+\cdots+\frac{1}{4^{50}}$

solution The first term of this series is $\frac{1}{4}$. If we added one more term to this series, the next term would be $1/4^{51}$. The ratio of consecutive terms in this geometric series is $\frac{1}{4}$. Thus

$$\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{16}+\frac{1}{64}+\cdots+\frac{1}{4^{50}}=\frac{\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{4^{51}}}{1-\frac{1}{4}}=\frac{1-\frac{1}{4^{50}}}{3},$$

where the last expression was obtained by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the previous expression by 4.

25 $1-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{8}+\cdots+\frac{1}{2^{80}}-\frac{1}{2^{81}}$

solution The first term of this series is 1. If we added one more term to this series, the next term would be $1/2^{82}$. The ratio of consecutive terms in this geometric series is $-\frac{1}{2}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}1-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{8}+\cdots+\frac{1}{2^{80}}-\frac{1}{2^{81}}&=\frac{1-\frac{1}{2^{82}}}{1-(-\frac{1}{2})}\\&=\frac{1-\frac{1}{2^{82}}}{\frac{3}{2}}=\frac{2-\frac{1}{2^{81}}}{3},\end{aligned}$$

where the last expression was obtained by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the previous expression by 2.

27 $\sum_{k=1}^{40}\frac{3}{2^k}$

solution The first term of the series is $\frac{3}{2}$. If we added one more term to this geometric series, the next term would be $\frac{3}{2^{41}}$. The ratio of consecutive terms in this geometric series is $\frac{1}{2}$. Putting all this together, we have

$$\sum_{k=1}^{40}\frac{3}{2^k}=\frac{\frac{3}{2}-\frac{3}{2^{41}}}{1-\frac{1}{2}}=3-\frac{3}{2^{40}}.$$

29 $\sum_{m=3}^{77}(-5)^m$

solution The first term of the series is $(-5)^3$, which equals -125. If we added one more term to this geometric series, the next term would be $(-5)^{78}$, which equals 5^{78}. The ratio of consecutive terms in this geometric series is -5. Putting all this together, we have

$$\sum_{m=3}^{77}(-5)^m=\frac{-125-5^{78}}{1-(-5)}=-\frac{125+5^{78}}{6}.$$

In Exercises 31–36, write the series explicitly and evaluate the sum.

31 $\sum_{m=1}^{4}(m^2+5)$

solution When $m=1$, the expression m^2+5 equals 6. When $m=2$, the expression m^2+5 equals 9. When $m=3$, the expression m^2+5 equals 14. When $m=4$, the expression m^2+5 equals 21. Thus

$$\sum_{m=1}^{4}(m^2+5)=6+9+14+21=50.$$

33 $\sum_{k=0}^{3}\log(k^2+2)$

solution When $k=0$, the expression $\log(k^2+2)$ equals $\log 2$. When $k=1$, the expression $\log(k^2+2)$ equals $\log 3$. When $k=2$, the expression $\log(k^2+2)$ equals $\log 6$. When $k=3$, the expression $\log(k^2+2)$ equals $\log 11$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=0}^{3}\log(k^2+2)&=\log 2+\log 3+\log 6+\log 11\\&=\log(2\cdot 3\cdot 6\cdot 11)=\log 396.\end{aligned}$$

35 $\sum_{n=2}^{5}\cos\frac{\pi}{n}$

solution If $n=2$, then $\cos\frac{\pi}{n}$ equals $\cos\frac{\pi}{2}$, which equals 0. If $n=3$, then $\cos\frac{\pi}{n}$ equals $\cos\frac{\pi}{3}$, which equals $\frac{1}{2}$. If $n=4$, then $\cos\frac{\pi}{n}$ equals $\cos\frac{\pi}{4}$, which equals $\sqrt{2}/2$. If $n=5$, then $\cos\frac{\pi}{n}$ equals $\cos\frac{\pi}{5}$, which equals $(\sqrt{5}+1)/4$ (from Exercise 9 in Section 5.5). Thus

$$\sum_{n=2}^{5}\cos\frac{\pi}{n}=0+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{4}=\frac{3+2\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{5}}{4}.$$

In Exercises 37–40, write the series using summation notation (starting with $k=1$). Each series in Exercises 37–40 is either an arithmetic series or a geometric series.

37 $2+4+6+\cdots+100$

solution The k^{th} term of this sequence is $2k$. The last term corresponds to $k=50$. Thus

$$2+4+6+\cdots+100=\sum_{k=1}^{50}2k.$$

39 $\frac{5}{9}+\frac{5}{27}+\frac{5}{81}+\cdots+\frac{5}{3^{40}}$

solution The k^{th} term of this sequence is $\frac{5}{3^{k+1}}$. The last term corresponds to $k=39$ (because when $k=39$, the expression $\frac{5}{3^{k+1}}$ equals $\frac{5}{3^{40}}$). Thus

$$\frac{5}{9}+\frac{5}{27}+\frac{5}{81}+\cdots+\frac{5}{3^{40}}=\sum_{k=1}^{39}\frac{5}{3^{k+1}}.$$

For Exercises 41–44, consider the fable from the beginning of Section 3.4. In this fable, one grain of rice is placed on the first square of a chessboard, then two grains on the second square, then four grains on the third square, and so on, doubling the number of grains placed on each square.

41 Find the total number of grains of rice on the first 18 squares of the chessboard.

solution The total number of grains of rice on the first 18 squares of the chessboard is

$$1+2+4+8+\cdots+2^{17}.$$

This is a geometric series; the ratio of consecutive terms is 2. The term that would follow the last term is 2^{18}. Thus the sum of this series is

$$\frac{1-2^{18}}{1-2},$$

which equals $2^{18}-1$.

43 Find the smallest number n such that the total number of grains of rice on the first n squares of the chessboard is more than 30,000,000.

solution The formula for a geometric series shows that the total number of grains of rice on the first n squares of the chessboard is 2^n-1. Thus we want to find the smallest integer n such that $2^n-1>30000000$, which is equivalent to the inequality

$$2^n>30000001.$$

Taking logs of both sides, we see that we need

$$n>\frac{\log 30000001}{\log 2}\approx 24.8.$$

The smallest integer satisfying this inequality is $n=25$.

For Exercises 45–46, use Pascal's triangle to simplify the indicated expression.

45 $(2-\sqrt{3})^5$

solution The sixth row of Pascal's triangle is 1 5 10 10 5 1. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}(2-\sqrt{3})^5&=2^5-5\cdot 2^4\sqrt{3}+10\cdot 2^3\sqrt{3}^2-10\cdot 2^2\sqrt{3}^3\\&\quad+5\cdot 2\sqrt{3}^4-\sqrt{3}^5\\&=32-80\sqrt{3}+80\cdot 3-40\cdot\sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3}\\&\quad+10\cdot\sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3}^2-\sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3}^2\sqrt{3}\\&=32-80\sqrt{3}+80\cdot 3-40\cdot 3\sqrt{3}\\&\quad+10\cdot 3\cdot 3-3\cdot 3\sqrt{3}\\&=32-80\sqrt{3}+240-120\sqrt{3}+90-9\sqrt{3}\\&=362-209\sqrt{3}.\end{aligned}$$

47 Find the ninth row of Pascal's triangle.

solution From Example 15, we know that the eighth row of Pascal's triangle is

1 7 21 35 35 21 7 1.

Doing the usual addition, we see that the ninth row of Pascal's triangle is

1 8 28 56 70 56 28 8 1.

49 (a) Evaluate $\binom{9}{3}$. (b) Evaluate $\binom{9}{6}$.

solution

(a) $\binom{9}{3}=\frac{9!}{3!\,6!}=\frac{7\cdot 8\cdot 9}{2\cdot 3}=84$

(b) $\binom{9}{6}=\frac{9!}{6!\,3!}=\frac{7\cdot 8\cdot 9}{2\cdot 3}=84$

For Exercises 51–54, assume n is a positive integer.

51 Evaluate $\binom{n}{n}$.

solution $\binom{n}{n}=\frac{n!}{n!\,0!}=1$

53 Evaluate $\binom{n}{n-2}$.

solution $\binom{n}{n-2}=\frac{n!}{(n-2)!\,2!}=\frac{(n-1)n}{2}$

55 Find the coefficient of t^{47} in the expansion of $(t+2)^{50}$.

solution The Binomial Theorem tells us that the coefficient of t^{47} in the expansion of $(t+2)^{50}$ is $2^3\binom{50}{47}$, which equals

$$8\tfrac{50\cdot 49\cdot 48}{2\cdot 3},$$

which equals 156800.

6.3 Limits

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- recognize the limit of a sequence;
- use partial sums to evaluate an infinite series;
- compute the sum of an infinite geometric series;
- convert repeating decimals to fractions.

Introduction to Limits

Consider the sequence

$$1,\ \tfrac{1}{2},\ \tfrac{1}{3},\ \tfrac{1}{4},\ \ldots;$$

here the n^{th} term of the sequence is $\frac{1}{n}$. For all large values of n, the n^{th} term of this sequence is close to 0. For example, all the terms after the one-millionth term of this sequence are within one-millionth of 0. We say that this sequence has limit 0. More generally, the following informal definition explains what it means for a sequence to have limit equal to some number L.

Limit of a sequence (less precise version)

A sequence has **limit** L if from some point on, all the terms of the sequence are very close to L.

This definition fails to be precise because the phrase "very close" is too vague. A more precise definition of limit will be given soon, but first we examine some examples to get a feel for what is meant by taking the limit of a sequence.

Example 1

What is the limit of the sequence whose n^{th} term equals $\sqrt{n^2+n}-n$?

solution The limit of a sequence depends on the behavior of the n^{th} term for large values of n. The table here shows the values of the n^{th} term of this sequence for some large values of n, calculated by a computer and rounded off to seven digits after the decimal point.

n	$\sqrt{n^2+n}-n$
1	0.4142136
10	0.4880885
100	0.4987562
1000	0.4998751
10000	0.4999875
100000	0.4999988
1000000	0.4999999

This leads us to suspect that this sequence has limit $\frac{1}{2}$. This suspicion is correct, as can be shown by rewriting the n^{th} term of this sequence as follows (see Problem 29 for a hint on how to do this):

$$\sqrt{n^2+n}-n=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{1}{n}}+1}.$$

This formula shows that every term in this sequence is less than $\frac{1}{2}$, as we should suspect from the table above.

If n is very large, then $1+\frac{1}{n}$ is very close to 1, and thus the right side of the equation above is very close to $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence the limit of the sequence in question is indeed equal to $\frac{1}{2}$.

Not every sequence has a limit, as shown by the following example of the sequence of alternating 1's and -1's.

Example 2

Consider the sequence whose n^{th} term is equal to $(-1)^{n-1}$. Explain why this sequence does not have a limit.

solution The sequence in question is the sequence of alternating 1's and -1's:

$$1, -1, 1, -1, \ldots.$$

If this sequence had a limit, then that limit would have to be very close to 1 and very close to -1. However, no number is close to both 1 and -1. Thus this sequence does not have a limit.

The next example shows why we need to be careful about the meaning of "very close".

Example 3

What is the limit of the sequence all of whose terms equal 10^{-100}?

solution The sequence in question is the constant sequence

$$10^{-100}, 10^{-100}, 10^{-100}, \ldots.$$

The limit of this sequence is 10^{-100}. Note, however, that all the terms of this sequence are within one-billionth of 0. Thus if "very close" were defined to mean "within one-billionth", then the imprecise definition above might lead us to conclude incorrectly that this sequence has limit 0.

In this section, we consider only infinite sequences. The notion of a limit for a finite sequence is not defined.

The example above shows that in our less precise definition of limit, we cannot replace "very close to L" by "within one-billionth of L". For similar reasons, no single positive number, no matter how small, can be used to define "very close". This dilemma is solved by considering all positive numbers, including those that are very small (whatever that means). The following more precise definition of limit captures the notion that a sequence gets as close as we like to its limit if we go far enough out in the sequence.

***Limit of a sequence* (*more precise version*)**

A sequence has **limit** L if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, from some point on all terms of the sequence are within ε of L.

As mentioned in Chapter 0, the Greek letter ε (epsilon) is often used when thinking about small positive numbers.

This definition means that for each possible choice of a positive number ε, there is some term of the sequence such that all following terms are within ε of L. How far out in the sequence we need to go (to have all the terms beyond there be within ε of L) can depend on ε.

For example, consider the sequence

$$-1, \tfrac{1}{2}, -\tfrac{1}{3}, \tfrac{1}{4}, \ldots;$$

here the n^{th} term of the sequence equals $\frac{(-1)^n}{n}$. This sequence has limit 0. If we consider the choice $\varepsilon = 10^{-6}$, then all terms after the millionth term of this sequence are within ε of the limit 0. If we consider the choice $\varepsilon = 10^{-9}$, then all terms after the billionth term of this sequence are within ε of the limit 0. No matter how small we choose ε, we can go far enough out in the sequence (depending on ε) so that all the terms beyond there are within ε of 0.

Because the limit of a sequence depends only on what happens "from some point on", changing the first five terms or even the first five million terms does not affect the limit of a sequence. For example, consider the sequence

$$10,\ 100,\ 1000,\ 10000,\ 100000,\ \tfrac{1}{6},\ \tfrac{1}{7},\ \tfrac{1}{8},\ \tfrac{1}{9},\ \tfrac{1}{10},\ \ldots;$$

here the n^{th} term of the sequence equals 10^n if $n \le 5$ and equals $\frac{1}{n}$ if $n > 5$. Make sure you understand why the limit of this sequence equals 0.

The notation commonly used to denote the limit of a sequence is introduced below.

Limit notation

The notation

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L$$

means that the sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$ has limit L. We say that the limit of a_n as n goes to infinity equals L.

Once again, remember that ∞ is not a real number. The symbol ∞ is used here to convey the notion that only large values of n matter.

For example, we could write

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0;$$

we would say that the limit of $\frac{1}{n}$ as n goes to infinity equals 0. As another example from earlier in this section, we could write

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} (\sqrt{n^2+n} - n) = \frac{1}{2};$$

we would say that the limit of $\sqrt{n^2+n} - n$ as n goes to infinity equals $\frac{1}{2}$.

Example 4

Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$.

solution This is the sequence whose first five terms are

$$2,\ \left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right)^2,\ \left(\tfrac{4}{3}\right)^3,\ \left(\tfrac{5}{4}\right)^4,\ \left(\tfrac{6}{5}\right)^5.$$

The one-hundredth term of this sequence, which is $\left(\frac{101}{100}\right)^{100}$, is approximately 2.705, which agrees with e only for the first two digits. Thus this sequence gets close to e slowly.

A computer can tell us that the one-millionth term of this sequence is approximately 2.71828, which you should recognize as the first six digits of e. Indeed, in Section 3.6 we saw that $\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n \approx e$ for large values of n. The precise meaning of that approximation is that $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = e$.

Consider the geometric sequence

$$\tfrac{1}{2},\ \tfrac{1}{4},\ \tfrac{1}{8},\ \tfrac{1}{16},\ \ldots.$$

Here the n^{th} term equals $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n$, which is very small for large values of n. Thus this sequence has limit 0, which we can write as $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n = 0$.

Similarly, multiplying any number with absolute value less than 1 by itself many times produces a number close to 0, as illustrated in the next example.

Example 5

In the decimal expansion of 0.99^{100000}, how many zeros follow the decimal point before the first nonzero digit?

Even though 0.99 is just slightly less than 1, raising it to a large power produces a very small number.

solution Calculators cannot evaluate 0.99^{100000}, so take its common logarithm:

$$\log 0.99^{100000} = 100000 \log 0.99 \approx 100000 \cdot (-0.004365) = -436.5.$$

This means that 0.99^{100000} is between 10^{-437} and 10^{-436}. Thus 436 zeros follow the decimal point in the decimal expansion of 0.99^{100000} before the first nonzero digit.

The example above should help convince you that if r is any number with $|r| < 1$, then $\lim_{n\to\infty} r^n = 0$.

Similarly, if $|r| > 1$, then r^n is very large for large values of n. Thus if $|r| > 1$, then the geometric sequence $r, r^2, r^3, \ldots$ does not have a limit.

If $r = -1$, then the geometric sequence $r, r^2, r^3, r^4 \ldots$ is the alternating sequence $-1, 1, -1, 1, \ldots$; this sequence does not have a limit. If $r = 1$, then the geometric sequence $r, r^2, r^3, r^4 \ldots$ is the constant sequence $1, 1, 1, 1, \ldots$; this sequence has limit 1.

Putting together the results above, we have the following summary concerning the limit of a geometric sequence.

Limit of a geometric sequence

Suppose r is a real number. Then the geometric sequence

$$r, r^2, r^3, \ldots$$

- has limit 0 if $|r| < 1$;
- has limit 1 if $r = 1$;
- does not have a limit if $r \le -1$ or $r > 1$.

Infinite Series

Addition is initially defined as an operation that takes two numbers a and b and produces their sum $a + b$. We can find the sum of a finite sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ by adding the first two terms a_1 and a_2, getting $a_1 + a_2$, then adding the third term, getting $a_1 + a_2 + a_3$, then adding the fourth term, getting $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4$, and so on. After n terms we will have found the sum for this finite sequence; this sum can be denoted

$$a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n \quad \text{or} \quad \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k.$$

Because of the associative property, we do not need to worry about putting parentheses in these sums.

Now consider an infinite sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots$. What does it mean to find the sum of this infinite sequence? In other words, we want to attach a meaning to the infinite sum

$$a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \cdots \quad \text{or} \quad \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k.$$

Such sums are called **infinite series**.

The problem with trying to evaluate an infinite series by adding one term at a time is that the process will never terminate. Nevertheless, let's see what happens when we add one term at a time in a familiar geometric sequence.

Example 6 What value should be assigned to the infinite series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^k}$?

solution We need to evaluate

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \cdots .$$

The sum of the first two terms equals $\frac{3}{4}$. The sum of the first three terms equals $\frac{7}{8}$. The sum of the first four terms equals $\frac{15}{16}$. More generally, the sum of the first n terms equals $1 - \frac{1}{2^n}$, as can be shown by using the formula from the previous section for the sum of a finite geometric series.

Although the process of adding terms of this series never ends, we see that after adding a large number of terms the sum is close to 1. In other words, the limit of the sum of the first n terms is 1. Thus we declare that the infinite series equals 1. Expressing all this in summation notation, we have

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^k} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{2^k} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^n}\right) = 1.$$

The last example provides motivation for the definition of an infinite series.

The numbers $\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k$ are called **partial sums** *of $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$. Thus the infinite series is the limit of the sequence of partial sums.*

To evaluate an infinite series, the idea is to add up the first n terms and then take the limit as n goes to infinity.

Infinite series

The infinite series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ is defined by

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k$$

if this limit exists.

Example 7 Evaluate the geometric series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{10^k}$.

solution According to the definition above, we need to evaluate the partial sums $\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{10^k}$ and then take the limit as n goes to infinity. Using the formula from the previous section for the sum of a finite geometric series, we have

Here the first term of the series is $\frac{1}{10}$ and what would be the term following the last term is $\frac{1}{10^{n+1}}$; the ratio of consecutive terms is $\frac{1}{10}$.

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{10^k} = \frac{\frac{1}{10} - \frac{1}{10^{n+1}}}{1 - \frac{1}{10}} = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{10^n}}{9},$$

where the last expression is obtained by multiplying the numerator and denominator of the middle expression by 10. Thus

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{10^k} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{10^k} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1 - \frac{1}{10^n}}{9} = \frac{1}{9}.$$

Some infinite sequences cannot be summed, because the limit of the sequence of partial sums does not exist. When this happens, the infinite series is left undefined.

Example 8

Explain why the infinite series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(-1)^k$ is undefined.

solution We are trying to make sense of the infinite series

$$-1+1-1+1-1+\cdots.$$

Following the usual procedure for infinite series, first we evaluate the partial sums $\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k$, getting

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^k=\begin{cases}-1 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd}\\ 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is even.}\end{cases}$$

Thus the sequence of partial sums is the alternating sequence of -1's and 0's. This sequence of partial sums does not have a limit. Thus the infinite series is undefined.

"If I have seen further, it is by standing on the shoulders of giants."
–Isaac Newton

We turn now to the problem of finding a formula for evaluating an infinite geometric series. Fix a number $r \neq 1$, and consider the geometric series

$$1+r+r^2+r^3+\cdots;$$

here the ratio of consecutive terms is r. The sum of the first n terms is

$$1+r+r^2+\cdots+r^{n-1}.$$

The term following the last term would be r^n; thus by our formula for evaluating a geometric series we have

$$1+r+r^2+\cdots+r^{n-1}=\frac{1-r^n}{1-r}.$$

By definition, the infinite series $1+r+r^2+r^3+\cdots$ equals the limit (if it exists) of the partial sums above as n goes to infinity. We already know that the limit of r^n as n goes to infinity is 0 if $|r|<1$ (and does not exist if $|r|>1$). Thus we get the following beautiful formula.

Evaluating an infinite geometric series

If $|r|<1$, then

$$1+r+r^2+r^3+\cdots=\frac{1}{1-r}.$$

If $|r| \geq 1$, then this infinite series is not defined.

Any infinite geometric series can be reduced to the form above by factoring out the first term. The following example illustrates the procedure.

Example 9

Evaluate the geometric series $\frac{7}{3}+\frac{7}{9}+\frac{7}{27}+\cdots$.

solution We factor out the first term $\frac{7}{3}$ and then apply the formula above, getting

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{7}{3}+\frac{7}{9}+\frac{7}{27}+\cdots&=\frac{7}{3}\left(1+\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{9}+\cdots\right)\\ &=\frac{7}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{1-\frac{1}{3}}\\ &=\frac{7}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

Decimals as Infinite Series

A **digit** is one of the numbers $0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9$. Each real number t between 0 and 1 can be expressed as a decimal in the form

$$t = 0.d_1d_2d_3\ldots,$$

where $d_1, d_2, d_3, \ldots$ is a sequence of digits. The interpretation of this representation is that

$$t = \frac{d_1}{10} + \frac{d_2}{100} + \frac{d_3}{1000} + \cdots,$$

which we can write in summation notation as

$$t = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{d_k}{10^k}.$$

If from some point on each d_k equals 0, then we have what is called a **terminating decimal**; *in this case we usually do not write the ending string of 0's.*

In other words, real numbers are represented by infinite series.

Example 10

Express 0.217 as a fraction.

solution In this case, the infinite series above becomes a finite series:

$$0.217 = \frac{2}{10} + \frac{1}{100} + \frac{7}{1000} = \frac{200}{1000} + \frac{10}{1000} + \frac{7}{1000} = \frac{217}{1000}.$$

A terminating decimal is a special case of a repeating decimal, with repetitions of 0 from some point on.

If the decimal representation of a number has a pattern that repeats from some point on, then we have what is called a **repeating decimal**.

Example 11

Express $0.11111\ldots$ as a fraction; here the digit 1 repeats forever.

solution Using the interpretation of the decimal representation, we have

$$0.11111\ldots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{10^k}.$$

The sum above is an infinite geometric series. As we saw in Example 7, this infinite geometric series equals $\frac{1}{9}$. Thus

$$0.11111\ldots = \frac{1}{9}.$$

A real number is rational if and only if it has a repeating decimal representation.

Any repeating decimal can be converted to a fraction by evaluating an appropriate infinite geometric series. However, the technique used in the following example is usually easier.

Example 12

Express

$$0.52473473473\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 473 repeat forever.

solution Let

$$t = 0.52473473473\ldots.$$

The trick is to note that

$$1000t = 524.73473473473\ldots.$$

Subtracting the first equation above from the last equation, we get

$$999t = 524.21.$$

Thus

$$t = \frac{524.21}{999} = \frac{52421}{99900}.$$

Special Infinite Series

Advanced mathematics produces many beautiful special infinite series. We cannot derive the values for these infinite series here, but they are so pretty that you should at least see a few of them.

Example 13

Evaluate $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}$.

solution A computer calculation can give a partial sum that leads to a correct guess. Specifically,

$$\sum_{k=0}^{1000} \frac{1}{k!} \approx 2.718281828459.$$

You may recognize the number above as the beginning of the decimal representation of e. It is indeed true that this infinite series equals e. In other words, we have the beautiful equation

$$e = 1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots .$$

This equation again shows how e magically appears throughout mathematics.

More generally, as you will learn if you take calculus, the following equation is true for every number x:

$$e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots .$$

The next example shows again that the natural logarithm deserves the word "natural".

Example 14

Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}$.

solution A computer calculation can give a partial sum that leads to a correct guess. Specifically,

$$\sum_{k=1}^{100000} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k} \approx 0.693142.$$

You may recognize the first five digits after the decimal point as the first five digits in the decimal expansion of $\ln 2$. The infinite series indeed equals $\ln 2$. In other words, we have the following delightful equation:

$$\ln 2 = 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6} + \cdots .$$

This equation again shows that the natural logarithm has special properties.

Example 15

This formula was discovered by the Indian mathematician Madhava around 1400 and then rediscovered in Europe about 275 years later.

Techniques from calculus show that

$$\tan^{-1} t = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{t^{2k+1}}{2k+1}$$

for every number t in the interval $[-1, 1]$. Explain how the formula above leads to the equation

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \cdots .$$

solution In the expression above for $\tan^{-1} t$, take $t = 1$ and recall that $\tan^{-1} 1 = \frac{\pi}{4}$. Thus we have

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{1}{2k+1},$$

which can be rewritten as

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \cdots .$$

remark Multiplying both sides of the equation above by 4, we get a beautiful and simple series for π. However, the partial sums of this series get close to π slowly. Thus this series does not lead to an efficient method for computing numerical approximations of π.

The next example presents another famous infinite series.

Example 16

Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2}$.

solution A computer calculation can give a partial sum. Specifically,

$$\sum_{k=1}^{1000000} \frac{1}{k^2} \approx 1.64493.$$

The value of this infinite series is hard to recognize even from this good approximation. In fact, the exact evaluation of this infinite series was an unsolved problem for many years, but the Swiss mathematician Leonard Euler showed in 1735 that this infinite series equals $\frac{\pi^2}{6}$. In other words, we have the beautiful equation

$$1 + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{16} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{6}.$$

Leonard Euler, the most important mathematician of the 18th century.

Euler also showed that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^4} = \frac{\pi^4}{90}$$

and

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^6} = \frac{\pi^6}{945}.$$

We end this chapter with a dramatic example showing that plenty of mathematics remains to be discovered. The next example is presented to show that there are still unsolved problems in mathematics that are easy to state.

Example 17

Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^3}$.

solution A computer calculation can give a partial sum. Specifically,

$$\sum_{k=1}^{1000000} \frac{1}{k^3} \approx 1.2020569.$$

No one knows an exact expression for the infinite series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^3}$. You will become famous if you find one!

Exercises

1 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{3n+5}{2n-7}$.

2 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{4n-2}{7n+6}$.

3 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2n^2+5n+1}{5n^2-6n+3}$.

4 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{7n^2-4n+3}{3n^2+5n+9}$.

5 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1+\frac{3}{n}\right)^n$.

6 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1-\frac{1}{n}\right)^n$.

7 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n(e^{1/n}-1)$.

8 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\ln\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)$.

9 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\left(\ln\left(3+\frac{1}{n}\right)-\ln 3\right)$.

10 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\left(\ln\left(7+\frac{1}{n}\right)-\ln 7\right)$.

11 Find the smallest integer n such that $0.8^n < 10^{-100}$.

12 Find the smallest integer n such that $0.9^n < 10^{-200}$.

13 In the decimal expansion of 0.87^{1000}, how many zeros follow the decimal point before the first nonzero digit?

14 In the decimal expansion of 0.9^{9999}, how many zeros follow the decimal point before the first nonzero digit?

15 Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{3}{7^k}$.

16 Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{8}{5^k}$.

17 Evaluate $\sum_{m=2}^{\infty} \frac{5}{6^m}$.

18 Evaluate $\sum_{m=3}^{\infty} \frac{8}{3^m}$.

19 Express

$$0.23232323\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 23 repeat forever.

20 Express

$$0.859859859\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 859 repeat forever.

21 Express

$$8.237545454\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 54 repeat forever.

22 Express

$$5.1372647264\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 7264 repeat forever.

23 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\sin\frac{1}{n}$.

24 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\tan\frac{1}{n}$.

25 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\ln\left(1+\frac{2}{n}\right)$.

26 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\left(e^{3/n}-1\right)$.

Problems

27 Give an example of a sequence that has limit 3 and whose first five terms are $2, 4, 6, 8, 10$.

28 Suppose you are given a sequence with limit L and that you change the sequence by adding 50 to the first 1000 terms, leaving the other terms unchanged. Explain why the new sequence also has limit L.

29 Show that

$$\sqrt{n^2+n}-n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{1}{n}}+1}.$$

[*Hint:* Multiply the expression $\sqrt{n^2+n}-n$ by $(\sqrt{n^2+n}+n)/(\sqrt{n^2+n}+n)$. Then factor n out of the numerator and denominator of the resulting expression.] [*This identity was used in Example 1.*]

30 Which arithmetic sequences have a limit?

31 Suppose x is a positive number.

(a) Explain why $x^{1/n} = e^{(\ln x)/n}$ for every nonzero number n.

(b) Explain why

$$n(x^{1/n} - 1) \approx \ln x$$

if n is very large.

(c) Explain why

$$\ln x = \lim_{n\to\infty} n(x^{1/n} - 1).$$

[*A few books use the last equation above as the definition of the natural logarithm.*]

32 Find the only arithmetic sequence $a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots$ such that the infinite series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ is defined.

33 Show that if $|r| < 1$, then

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} r^m = \frac{r}{1-r}.$$

34 Explain why 0.2 and the repeating decimal $0.199999\ldots$ both represent the real number $\frac{1}{5}$.

35 Learn about Zeno's paradox (from a book, a friend, or a web search) and then relate the explanation of this ancient Greek problem to the infinite series

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \cdots = 1.$$

36 Explain how the formula

$$e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

leads to the approximation $e^x \approx 1 + x$ if $|x|$ is small (which we derived by another method in Section 3.6).

37 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n^2\left(1 - \cos\frac{1}{n}\right)$.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{3n+5}{2n-7}$.

solution Dividing numerator and denominator of this fraction by n, we see that

$$\frac{3n+5}{2n-7} = \frac{3 + \frac{5}{n}}{2 - \frac{7}{n}}.$$

If n is very large, then the numerator of the fraction on the right is close to 3 and the denominator is close to 2. Thus $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{3n+5}{2n-7} = \frac{3}{2}$.

3 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2n^2+5n+1}{5n^2-6n+3}$.

solution Dividing numerator and denominator of this fraction by n^2, we see that

$$\frac{2n^2+5n+1}{5n^2-6n+3} = \frac{2 + \frac{5}{n} + \frac{1}{n^2}}{5 - \frac{6}{n} + \frac{3}{n^2}}.$$

If n is very large, then the numerator of the fraction on the right is close to 2 and the denominator is close to 5. Thus

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2n^2+5n+1}{5n^2-6n+3} = \frac{2}{5}.$$

5 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1 + \frac{3}{n}\right)^n$.

solution The properties of the exponential function imply that if n is very large, then $\left(1 + \frac{3}{n}\right)^n \approx e^3$; see Section 3.6. Thus $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1 + \frac{3}{n}\right)^n = e^3$.

7 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n(e^{1/n} - 1)$.

solution Suppose n is very large. Then $\frac{1}{n}$ is very close to 0, which means that $e^{1/n} \approx 1 + \frac{1}{n}$. Thus $e^{1/n} - 1 \approx \frac{1}{n}$, which implies that $n(e^{1/n} - 1) \approx 1$. Thus

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} n(e^{1/n} - 1) = 1.$$

9 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n\left(\ln\left(3 + \frac{1}{n}\right) - \ln 3\right)$.

solution Note that

$$\ln\left(3 + \frac{1}{n}\right) - \ln 3 = \ln\left(1 + \frac{1}{3n}\right).$$

Suppose n is very large. Then $\frac{1}{3n}$ is very close to 0, which implies $\ln\left(1 + \frac{1}{3n}\right) \approx \frac{1}{3n}$. Thus

$$n\left(\ln\left(3 + \frac{1}{n}\right) - \ln 3\right) = n\ln\left(1 + \frac{1}{3n}\right) \approx n \cdot \frac{1}{3n} = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Thus

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} n\left(\ln\left(3 + \frac{1}{n}\right) - \ln 3\right) = \frac{1}{3}.$$

11 Find the smallest integer n such that $0.8^n < 10^{-100}$.

solution The inequality $0.8^n < 10^{-100}$ is equivalent to the inequality

$$\log 0.8^n < \log 10^{-100},$$

which can be rewritten as $n \log 0.8 < -100$. Because 0.8 is less than 1, we know that $\log 0.8$ is negative. Thus dividing by $\log 0.8$ reverses the direction of the inequality, changing the previous inequality into the inequality

$$n > \frac{-100}{\log 0.8} \approx 1031.9.$$

The smallest integer that is greater than 1031.9 is 1032. Thus 1032 is the smallest integer n such that $0.8^n < 10^{-100}$.

13 In the decimal expansion of 0.87^{1000}, how many zeros follow the decimal point before the first nonzero digit?

solution Taking a common logarithm, we have

$$\log 0.87^{1000} = 1000 \log 0.87 \approx -60.5.$$

This means that 0.87^{1000} is between 10^{-61} and 10^{-60}. Thus 60 zeros follow the decimal point in the decimal expansion of 0.87^{1000} before the first nonzero digit.

15 Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{3}{7^k}$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{3}{7^k} &= \frac{3}{7} + \frac{3}{7^2} + \frac{3}{7^3} + \cdots \\ &= \frac{3}{7}\left(1 + \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{7^2} + \cdots\right) \\ &= \frac{3}{7} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{7}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\end{aligned}$$

17 Evaluate $\sum_{m=2}^{\infty} \frac{5}{6^m}$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{m=2}^{\infty} \frac{5}{6^m} &= \frac{5}{6^2} + \frac{5}{6^3} + \frac{5}{6^4} + \cdots \\ &= \frac{5}{36}\left(1 + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6^2} + \cdots\right) \\ &= \frac{5}{36} \cdot \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{6}} \\ &= \frac{1}{6}\end{aligned}$$

19 Express

$$0.23232323\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 23 repeat forever.

solution Let $t = 0.23232323\ldots$. Note that

$$100t = 23.23232323\ldots .$$

Subtracting the first equation above from the last equation, we get

$$99t = 23.$$

Thus $t = \frac{23}{99}$.

21 Express

$$8.237545454\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 54 repeat forever.

solution Let

$$t = 8.237545454\ldots .$$

Note that

$$100t = 823.754545454\ldots .$$

Subtracting the first equation above from the last equation, we get

$$99t = 815.517.$$

Thus

$$t = \frac{815.517}{99} = \frac{815517}{99000} = \frac{90613}{11000}.$$

23 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n \sin \frac{1}{n}$.

solution Recall from Section 5.3 that if $|\theta|$ is small, then $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} \approx 1$. If n is large, then $\frac{1}{n}$ is small. Thus if n is large, then

$$n \sin \frac{1}{n} = \frac{\sin \frac{1}{n}}{\frac{1}{n}} \approx 1.$$

Hence $\lim_{n\to\infty} n \sin \frac{1}{n} = 1$.

25 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} n \ln\left(1 + \frac{2}{n}\right)$.

solution Recall from Section 3.6 that if $|t|$ is small, then $\ln(1+t) \approx t$. If n is large, then $\frac{2}{n}$ is small. Thus if n is large, then

$$n \ln\left(1 + \frac{2}{n}\right) \approx n \cdot \frac{2}{n} = 2.$$

Hence $\lim_{n\to\infty} n \ln\left(1 + \frac{2}{n}\right) = 2$.

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Compute the terms of an arithmetic sequence given any term and the difference between consecutive terms.
- Compute the terms of an arithmetic sequence given any two terms.
- Compute the terms of a geometric sequence given any term and the ratio of consecutive terms.
- Compute the terms of a geometric sequence given any two terms.
- Compute the terms of a recursively defined sequence given the equations defining the sequence.
- Compute the sum of a finite arithmetic sequence.
- Compute the sum of a finite geometric sequence.
- Use summation notation.
- Use the Binomial Theorem.
- Explain the intuitive notion of limit.
- Compute the sum of an infinite geometric sequence.
- Evaluate elementary limits.
- Convert a repeating decimal to a fraction.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Explain why a sequence whose first four terms are $41, 58, 75, 94$ is not an arithmetic sequence.

2 Give two different examples of arithmetic sequences whose fifth term equals 17.

3 Explain why a sequence whose first four terms are $24, 36, 54, 78$ is not a geometric sequence.

4 Give two different examples of geometric sequences whose fourth term equals 29.

5 Find a number t such that the finite sequence $1, 5, t$ is an arithmetic sequence.

6 Find a number t such that the finite sequence $1, 5, t$ is a geometric sequence.

7 Find the fifth term of the sequence defined recursively by the equations

$$a_1 = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{a_n + 1} \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

8 Give a recursive definition of the sequence whose n^{th} term equals $4^{-n}n!$.

9 Find the sum of all the three-digit even positive integers.

10 Evaluate $\sum_{j=1}^{22} (-5)^j$.

11 Evaluate $\binom{8}{3}$.

12 What is the coefficient of $x^{48}y^2$ in the expansion of $(x+y)^{50}$?

13 Evaluate $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{4n^2+1}{3n^2-5n}$.

14 Evaluate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{6}{12^k}$.

15 Evaluate $\sum_{m=3}^{\infty} \frac{5}{4^m}$.

16 Express

$$0.417898989\ldots$$

as a fraction; here the digits 89 repeat forever.

Chapter
7

An airplane flying in the strong winds common at high altitudes. The airplane's speed and direction relative to the ground are calculated by adding the wind vector to the airspeed vector.

Polar Coordinates, Vectors, and Complex Numbers

Polar coordinates provide an alternative method of locating points in the coordinate plane. As we will see, converting between polar coordinates and rectangular coordinates requires a good understanding of the trigonometric functions.

Vectors can be used to model objects that have both magnitude and direction, such as the wind. Trigonometry will help us understand vectors in the second section of this chapter. We will see how the dot product provides a useful tool for finding the angle between two vectors.

The last two sections of this chapter deal with complex numbers and their representation in the complex plane. We will learn how De Moivre's Theorem uses trigonometry to find large powers and roots of complex numbers.

7.1 Polar Coordinates

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- locate a point from its polar coordinates;
- convert from polar to rectangular coordinates;
- convert from rectangular to polar coordinates;
- graph an equation given in polar coordinates.

The rectangular coordinates (x, y) of a point in the coordinate plane tell us the horizontal and vertical displacement of the point from the origin. In this section we discuss another useful coordinate system, called polar coordinates, that focuses more directly on the line segment from the origin to a point. The first polar coordinate tells us the length of this line segment; the second polar coordinate tells us the angle this line segment makes with the positive horizontal axis.

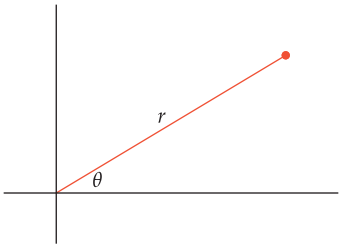
Defining Polar Coordinates

The two polar coordinates of a point are traditionally called r and θ. These coordinates have a simple geometric description in terms of the line segment from the origin to the point.

Polar coordinates

The **polar coordinates** (r, θ) of a point in the coordinate plane are characterized as follows:

- The first polar coordinate r is the distance from the origin to the point.
- The second polar coordinate θ is the angle between the positive horizontal axis and the line segment from the origin to the point.



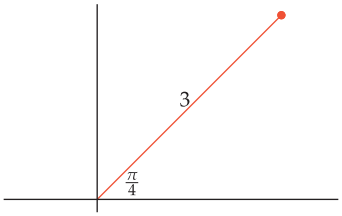
As usual, positive angles are measured in the counterclockwise direction starting at the positive horizontal axis; negative angles are measured in the clockwise direction.

Example 1

(a) Sketch the line segment from the origin to the point with polar coordinates $(3, \frac{\pi}{4})$.

(b) Describe the location of a point whose second polar coordinate equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

(c) Describe the location of a point whose second polar coordinate equals $-\frac{\pi}{2}$.



The endpoint of this line segment has first polar coordinate $r = 3$ and second polar coordinate $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

solution

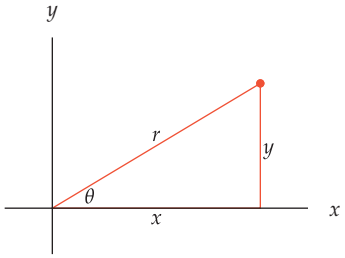
(a) The line segment is shown in the figure here. The length of the line segment is 3, and the line segment makes an angle of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians (which equals 45°) with the positive horizontal axis.

(b) A point whose second polar coordinate equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$ is on the positive vertical axis, which makes an angle of $\frac{\pi}{2}$ with the positive horizontal axis.

(c) A point whose second polar coordinate equals $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ is on the negative vertical axis, which makes an angle of $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ with the positive horizontal axis.

Converting from Polar to Rectangular Coordinates

To obtain a formula for converting from polar to rectangular coordinates in the xy-plane, draw the line segment from the origin to the point in question, and then form the right triangle shown in the figure here.



Looking at this right triangle, we see that

$$\cos\theta = \frac{x}{r} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta = \frac{y}{r}.$$

Solving for x and y gives the following formulas.

Converting from polar to rectangular coordinates

A point with polar coordinates (r, θ) has rectangular coordinates

$$(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta).$$

In the xy-plane, this conversion is expressed by the following equations:

$$x = r\cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad y = r\sin\theta.$$

The term coordinates *with no adjective in front refers to rectangular coordinates. Use the phrase* polar coordinates *when an ordered pair should be interpreted as polar coordinates.*

Example 2

Find the rectangular coordinates of the point with polar coordinates $(5, \frac{\pi}{3})$.

solution This point has rectangular coordinates $(5\cos\frac{\pi}{3}, 5\sin\frac{\pi}{3})$, which equals $(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2})$.

Converting from Rectangular to Polar Coordinates

We know how to convert from polar coordinates to rectangular coordinates. Now we take up the question of converting in the other direction. In other words, given rectangular coordinates (x, y), how do we find the polar coordinates (r, θ)?

Recall that the first polar coordinate r is the distance from the origin to the point (x, y). Thus

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}.$$

Given rectangular coordinates (x, y), there is no choice about the polar coordinate r; we must choose r as in the equation above. For example, the point with rectangular coordinates $(3, 4)$ has polar coordinate $r = 5$ because $5 = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}$.

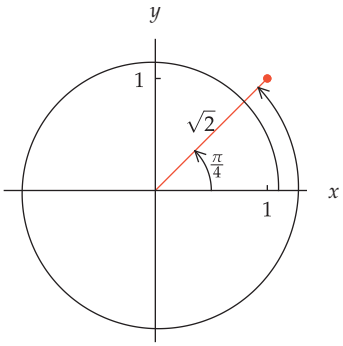
To see how to choose the second polar coordinate θ given the rectangular coordinates (x, y), look again at the standard figure above showing the relationship between polar coordinates and rectangular coordinates. The figure above shows that $\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$. Thus it is tempting to choose

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}.$$

However, there are two problems with the formula $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$. We now turn to a discussion of these problems.

The first problem involves the lack of uniqueness for the polar coordinate θ, as shown by the next example. Recall that adding any integer multiple of 2π to an angle does not change the cosine or sine of the angle. Thus the polar coordinates of a point are not unique.

Example 3



The point with rectangular coordinates $(1,1)$ has polar coordinates $r=\sqrt{2}$ and $\theta=\frac{\pi}{4}$. However, $\theta=\frac{\pi}{4}+2\pi$ is also a valid choice.

Find polar coordinates for the point with rectangular coordinates $(1,1)$.

solution There is no choice about the first polar coordinate r—we must take

$$r=\sqrt{1^2+1^2}=\sqrt{2}.$$

If we use the formula $\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ to obtain the second polar coordinate θ for the point with rectangular coordinates $(1,1)$, we get

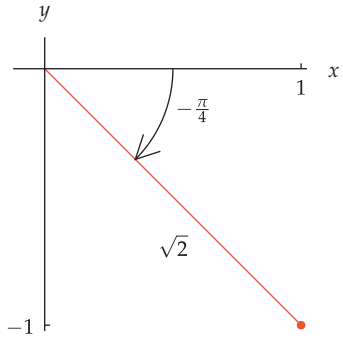
$$\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{1}=\tan^{-1}1=\frac{\pi}{4}.$$

The point with polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ indeed has rectangular coordinates $(1,1)$.

However, the point with polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},\frac{\pi}{4}+2\pi\right)$ also has rectangular coordinates $(1,1)$, as shown here, as does the point with polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},\frac{\pi}{4}+4\pi\right)$. Or we could choose the second polar coordinate to be $\frac{\pi}{4}+2\pi n$ for any integer n. Thus using the arctangent formula for the second polar coordinate θ produced a correct answer in this case, but if we had been seeking one of the other correct choices for θ, the arctangent formula would not have provided it.

The second problem with the formula $\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ is more serious. To see how this problem arises, we will look at two more examples.

Example 4



The point with rectangular coordinates $(1,-1)$ has polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

Find polar coordinates for the point with rectangular coordinates $(1,-1)$.

solution Using the formula for the first polar coordinate r, we get

$$r=\sqrt{1^2+(-1)^2}=\sqrt{2}.$$

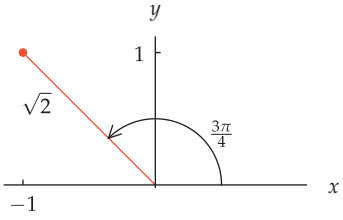
If we use the formula $\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ to obtain the second polar coordinate θ for the point with rectangular coordinates $(1,-1)$, we get

$$\theta=\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{-1}{1}\right)=\tan^{-1}(-1)=-\frac{\pi}{4}.$$

The point with polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ indeed has rectangular coordinates $(1,-1)$. Thus in this case the formula $\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ has worked (although it ignored other possible correct choices for θ).

The formula $\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ can be wrong, as shown in the next example.

Example 5



The point with rectangular coordinates $(-1,1)$ has polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$ (along with other possible correct choices for θ).

Find polar coordinates for the point with rectangular coordinates $(-1,1)$.

solution Using the formula for the first polar coordinate r, we get

$$r=\sqrt{(-1)^2+1^2}=\sqrt{2}.$$

If we use the formula $\theta=\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ to obtain the second polar coordinate θ, we get

$$\theta=\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{-1}\right)=\tan^{-1}(-1)=-\frac{\pi}{4}.$$

However, the point with polar coordinates $\left(\sqrt{2},-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ has rectangular coordinates $(1,-1)$, not $(-1,1)$. The figure shows that the correct choice of the second polar coordinate θ for the point $(-1,1)$ is $\theta=\frac{3\pi}{4}$ (or $\theta=\frac{3\pi}{4}+2\pi n$ for any integer n).

The formula $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ produced an incorrect answer when applied to the point $(-1,1)$ in the last example. To understand why this happened, recall that $\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ is the angle in the interval $\left(-\frac{\pi}{2},\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ whose tangent equals $\frac{y}{x}$. For the point with rectangular coordinates $(-1,1)$, the formula $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} = \tan^{-1}(-1)$ produced the angle $-\frac{\pi}{4}$, which indeed has tangent equal to -1. However, the angle $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ is an incorrect choice for the second polar coordinate of $(-1,1)$, as shown in the last example.

Example 5 should help reinforce the idea that the equation $\tan\theta = t$ is not equivalent to the equation $\theta = \tan^{-1} t$.

To find a correct way to find the second polar coordinate θ, note that although there are many angles θ satisfying

$$\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x},$$

we will need to have

$$x = r\cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad y = r\sin\theta.$$

Because r is positive, this means that $\cos\theta$ will need to have the same sign as x and $\sin\theta$ will need to have the same sign as y. If we pick θ accordingly from among the angles whose tangent equals $\frac{y}{x}$, then we will have a correct choice of polar coordinates.

Converting from rectangular to polar coordinates

A point with rectangular coordinates (x,y), with $x \neq 0$, has polar coordinates (r,θ) that satisfy the equations

$$r = \sqrt{x^2+y^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\theta = \frac{y}{x},$$

where θ must be chosen so that $\cos\theta$ has the same sign as x and $\sin\theta$ has the same sign as y.

When converting from rectangular coordinates to polar coordinates, there is more than one correct choice for the second polar coordinate θ. However, there is only one correct choice in each half-open interval of length 2π. The interval $(-\pi,\pi]$ or the interval $[0,2\pi)$ is often selected as the half-open interval to contain θ.

In the box above, we excluded the case where $x = 0$ (in other words, points on the vertical axis) to avoid division by 0 in the formula $\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$. To convert $(0,y)$ to polar coordinates, you can choose $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ if $y > 0$ and you can choose $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{2}$ if $y < 0$. The origin has polar coordinates $(0,\theta)$, where θ can be chosen to be any number.

For example, the point with rectangular coordinates $(0,5)$ has polar coordinates $(5,\frac{\pi}{2})$. The point with rectangular coordinates $(0,-5)$ has polar coordinates $(5,-\frac{\pi}{2})$.

Example 6

Find polar coordinates for the point with rectangular coordinates $(-3,4)$. For the second polar coordinate θ, choose θ to be in the interval $(-\pi,\pi]$.

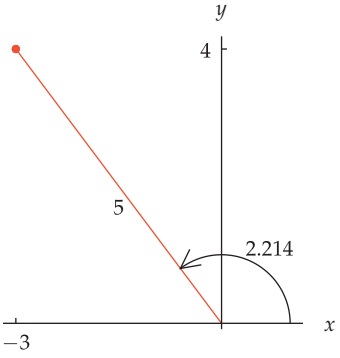
solution Using the formula for the first polar coordinate r, we have

$$r = \sqrt{(-3)^2+4^2} = \sqrt{9+16} = \sqrt{25} = 5.$$

Because the first coordinate of $(-3,4)$ is negative and the second coordinate is positive, the polar coordinate θ should be in the interval $\left(\frac{\pi}{2},\pi\right)$. However, $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{4}{-3}\right)$ is in the interval $\left(-\frac{\pi}{2},0\right)$. Hence we add π (which does not change the tangent), getting

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{4}{-3}\right) + \pi \approx 2.214.$$

With θ chosen as above, we have $\cos\theta < 0$ and $\sin\theta > 0$, as desired. Thus $(-3,4)$ has polar coordinates approximately $(5, 2.214)$, as shown in the figure here.



The point $(-3,4)$ has polar coordinates $(5, 2.214)$.

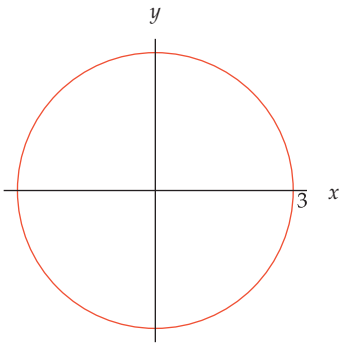
Graphs of Polar Equations

Some curves or regions in the coordinate plane can be described more simply by using polar coordinates instead of rectangular coordinates, as shown by the following example.

Example 7

(a) Find an equation in rectangular coordinates for the circle with radius 3 centered at the origin.

(b) Find an equation in polar coordinates for the circle with radius 3 centered at the origin.



The circle described by the polar equation $r = 3$.

solution

(a) In rectangular coordinates in the xy-plane, this circle can be described by the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 = 9.$$

(b) The first polar coordinate r measures the distance from the origin. Because the circle with radius 3 centered at the origin equals the set of points whose distance from the origin equals 3, this circle can be described in polar coordinates (r, θ) by the simple equation

$$r = 3.$$

More generally, we have the following result.

Polar equation of a circle

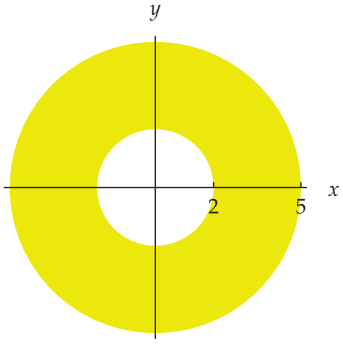
If C is a positive number, then the polar equation $r = C$ describes the circle with radius C centered at the origin.

Polar coordinates also lead to simple descriptions of annular regions centered at the origin, as shown in the next example.

Example 8

(a) Find inequalities in rectangular coordinates describing the region between the circles of radius 2 and 5, both centered at the origin.

(b) Find inequalities in polar coordinates describing the region between the circles of radius 2 and 5, both centered at the origin.



The region described by the polar inequalities $2 < r < 5$.

solution

(a) In rectangular coordinates in the xy-plane, this region can be described by the inequalities

$$4 < x^2 + y^2 < 25.$$

(b) In polar coordinates (r, θ), this region can be described by the inequalities

$$2 < r < 5.$$

As we have seen, the set of points where the first polar coordinate r equals some number is a circle. Now we look at the set of points where the second polar coordinate θ equals some number.

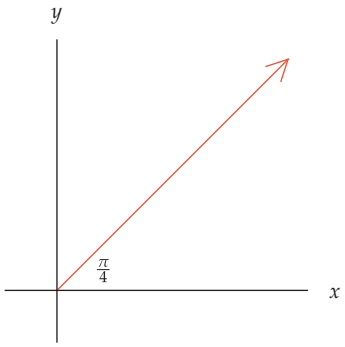
Example 9

Describe the set of points whose second polar coordinate θ equals $\frac{\pi}{4}$.

solution A point in the coordinate plane has second polar coordinate θ equal to $\frac{\pi}{4}$ if and only if the line segment from the origin to the point has an angle $\frac{\pi}{4}$ radians (or 45°) with the positive horizontal axis. Thus the equation

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

describes the ray shown here.



The ray described by the polar equation $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

More generally, we have the following result.

Polar equation of a ray

If C is a real number, then the polar equation $\theta = C$ describes the ray starting at the origin and making angle C with the positive horizontal axis.

So far our examples of equations in polar coordinates have involved only one of the two polar coordinates. Now we look at an example of a polar equation using both polar coordinates.

Example 10

Convert the polar equation

$$r = \sin\theta$$

to an equation in rectangular coordinates and describe its graph.

solution Because $y = r\sin\theta$, we multiply both sides of the equation $r = \sin\theta$ by r, getting

$$r^2 = r\sin\theta.$$

Convert this equation to rectangular coordinates by using the equations $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ and $r\sin\theta = y$, getting

$$x^2 + y^2 = y.$$

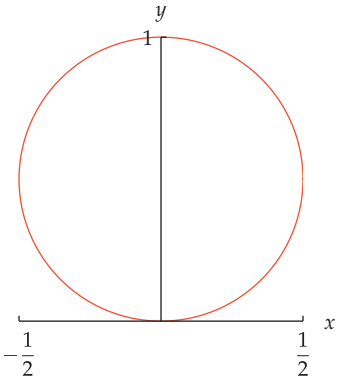
Subtract y from both sides, getting

$$x^2 + y^2 - y = 0.$$

Completing the square, we can rewrite this equation as

$$x^2 + \left(y - \tfrac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \tfrac{1}{4}.$$

Thus we see that the polar equation $r = \sin\theta$ describes a circle centered at $(0, \frac{1}{2})$ with radius $\frac{1}{2}$, as shown here.



The graph of the polar equation $r = \sin\theta$.

Because the first polar coordinate r is the distance from the origin to the point, r cannot be negative. For example, the equation $r = \sin\theta$ from the example above makes no sense when $\pi < \theta < 2\pi$ because $\sin\theta$ is negative in this interval. Thus the graph of $r = \sin\theta$ contains no points corresponding to values of θ between π and 2π (in other words, the graph contains no points below the horizontal axis, as can be seen from the figure above).

Some books allow r to be negative, which is contrary to the notion of r as the distance from the origin.

The restriction on θ in the last example to correspond to nonnegative values of r is similar to what happens when we graph the equation

$$y = \sqrt{x-3}.$$

In graphing this equation, we do not consider values of x less than 3 because the equation $y = \sqrt{x-3}$ makes no sense when $x < 3$. Similarly, the equation

$$r = \sin\theta$$

makes no sense when $\pi < \theta < 2\pi$.

Graphs of polar equations often lead to curves with unexpected shapes, as shown by the next two examples.

Example 11

Consider the polar equation

$$r = 1 - \cos\theta.$$

(a) For each angle θ, what are the corresponding rectangular coordinates of the point on this curve?

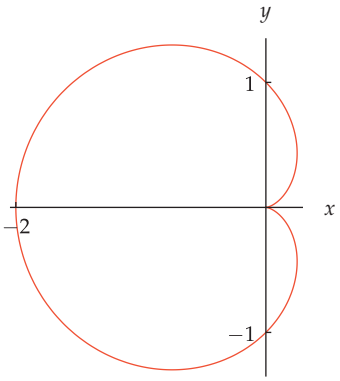
(b) Use technology to sketch the curve.

solution

(a) As usual, a point with polar coordinates (r,θ) has rectangular coordinates $(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)$. For points on the polar equation described above, we replace r by $1-\cos\theta$ in $(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)$. This substitution shows that the point on this curve corresponding to an angle θ is

$$\big((1-\cos\theta)\cos\theta, (1-\cos\theta)\sin\theta\big).$$

Note that the slope of the line from this point to the origin is $\frac{(1-\cos\theta)\sin\theta}{(1-\cos\theta)\cos\theta}$, which equals $\tan\theta$, which shows that the line from the point to the origin makes an angle of θ with the positive horizontal axis, as expected.



The graph of the polar equation $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.

(b) A graphing calculator or software that can plot using polar coordinates can produce the graph. For example, the graph shown here arises by entering

polar plot r = 1 - cos theta

in a *WolframAlpha* entry box.

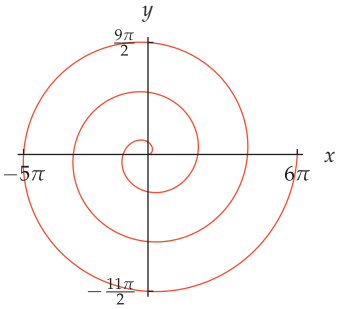
Example 12

Graph the polar equation $r = \theta$ for θ in $[0, 6\pi]$.

solution The graph of this polar equation can be obtained by entering

polar plot r = theta for theta=0 to 6pi

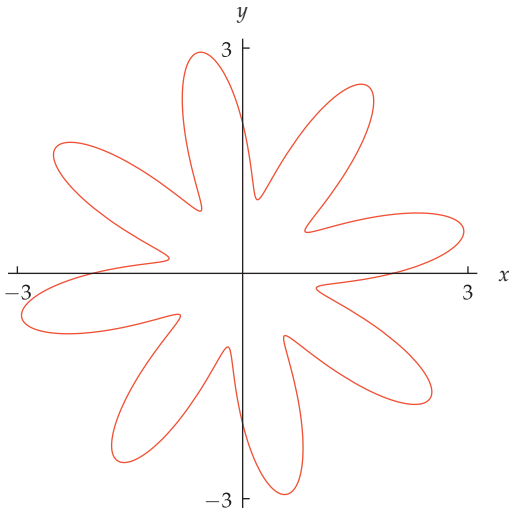
in a *WolframAlpha* entry box, or use the appropriate input in other software or on a graphing calculator that can handle polar equations. Doing so should produce the spiral graph shown here.



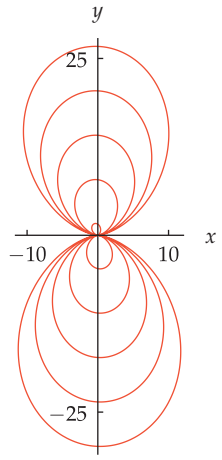
The graph of the polar equation $r = \theta$ for θ in $[0, 6\pi]$.

In Example 11, adding 2π to a number θ produces the same point in rectangular coordinates because $\cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta$. Thus in Example 11, the curve for θ in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ is the same as the curve for θ in the interval $[2\pi, 4\pi]$ or $[4\pi, 6\pi]$, and so on. In contrast, the curve in Example 12 does not repeat.

Polar equations can lead to beautiful curves, as shown in the two previous examples. You should use a graphing calculator or other technology or *WolframAlpha* to experiment. Surprisingly complex curves can arise from simple polar equations, as shown in the figures below.



The graph of the polar equation $r = 2 + \sin(8\theta)$ *for* θ *in* $[0, 2\pi]$.



The graph of the polar equation $r = \theta \sin^2\theta$ *for* θ *in* $[0, 10\pi]$.

Exercises

In Exercises 1–12, convert the point with the given polar coordinates to rectangular coordinates (x, y).

1 polar coordinates $(\sqrt{19}, 5\pi)$

2 polar coordinates $(3, 2^{1000}\pi)$

3 polar coordinates $(4, \frac{\pi}{2})$

4 polar coordinates $(5, -\frac{\pi}{2})$

5 polar coordinates $(6, -\frac{\pi}{4})$

6 polar coordinates $(7, \frac{\pi}{4})$

7 polar coordinates $(8, \frac{\pi}{3})$

8 polar coordinates $(9, -\frac{\pi}{3})$

9 polar coordinates $(10, \frac{\pi}{6})$

10 polar coordinates $(11, -\frac{\pi}{6})$

11 polar coordinates $(12, \frac{11\pi}{4})$

12 polar coordinates $(13, \frac{8\pi}{3})$

In Exercises 13–28, convert the point with the given rectangular coordinates to polar coordinates (r, θ). ***Always choose the angle*** θ ***to be in the interval*** $(-\pi, \pi]$.

13 $(2, 0)$

14 $(-\sqrt{3}, 0)$

15 $(0, -\pi)$

16 $(0, 2\pi)$

17 $(3, 3)$

18 $(4, -4)$

19 $(-5, 5)$

20 $(-6, -6)$

21 $(3, 2)$

22 $(4, 7)$

23 $(3, -7)$

24 $(6, -5)$

25 $(-4, 1)$

26 $(-2, 5)$

27 $(-5, -2)$

28 $(-3, -6)$

29 Find the center and radius of the circle whose equation in polar coordinates is $r = 3\cos\theta$.

30 Find the center and radius of the circle whose equation in polar coordinates is $r = 10\sin\theta$.

31 Write the polar equation for the circle centered at $(3, 0)$ with radius 3.

32 Write the polar equation for the circle centered at $(0, -5)$ with radius 5.

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

33 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $r = 4$.

34 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{4}$.

35 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $r = \cos\theta + \sin\theta$.

36 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $r = 1 + \sin(15\theta)$.

37 Use the law of cosines to find a formula for the distance (in the usual rectangular coordinate plane) between the point with polar coordinates (r_1, θ_1) and the point with polar coordinates (r_2, θ_2).

38 What is the relationship between the point with polar coordinates $(5, 0.2)$ and the point with polar coordinates $(5, -0.2)$?

39 What is the relationship between the point with polar coordinates $(5, 0.2)$ and the point with polar coordinates $(5, 0.2 + \pi)$?

40 Give a formula for the second polar coordinate θ corresponding to a point with rectangular coordinates (x, y) that always leads to a choice of θ in the interval $[0, 2\pi)$.

41 Describe the set of points whose polar coordinates are equal to their rectangular coordinates.

42 Show that the graph of the polar equation

$$r = \frac{1}{1 - \sin\theta}$$

is a parabola with vertex at $(0, -\frac{1}{2})$.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

In Exercises 1–12, convert the point with the given polar coordinates to rectangular coordinates (x, y).

1 polar coordinates $(\sqrt{19}, 5\pi)$

solution We have

$$x = \sqrt{19}\cos(5\pi) \quad \text{and} \quad y = \sqrt{19}\sin(5\pi).$$

Subtracting even multiples of π does not change the value of cosine and sine. Because $5\pi - 4\pi = \pi$, we have $\cos(5\pi) = \cos\pi = -1$ and $\sin(5\pi) = \sin\pi = 0$. Thus the point in question has rectangular coordinates $(-\sqrt{19}, 0)$.

3 polar coordinates $(4, \frac{\pi}{2})$

solution We have

$$x = 4\cos\frac{\pi}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad y = 4\sin\frac{\pi}{2}.$$

Because $\cos\frac{\pi}{2} = 0$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{2} = 1$, the point in question has rectangular coordinates $(0, 4)$.

5 polar coordinates $(6, -\frac{\pi}{4})$

solution We have

$$x = 6\cos(-\tfrac{\pi}{4}) \quad \text{and} \quad y = 6\sin(-\tfrac{\pi}{4}).$$

Because $\cos(-\frac{\pi}{4}) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin(-\frac{\pi}{4}) = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$, the point in question has rectangular coordinates $(3\sqrt{2}, -3\sqrt{2})$.

7 polar coordinates $(8, \frac{\pi}{3})$

solution We have

$$x = 8\cos\frac{\pi}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad y = 8\sin\frac{\pi}{3}.$$

Because $\cos\frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$, the point in question has rectangular coordinates $(4, 4\sqrt{3})$.

9 polar coordinates $(10, \frac{\pi}{6})$

solution We have

$$x = 10\cos\frac{\pi}{6} \quad \text{and} \quad y = 10\sin\frac{\pi}{6}.$$

Because $\cos\frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$, the point in question has rectangular coordinates $(5\sqrt{3}, 5)$.

11 polar coordinates $(12, \frac{11\pi}{4})$

solution We have

$$x = 12\cos\frac{11\pi}{4} \quad \text{and} \quad y = 12\sin\frac{11\pi}{4}.$$

Because $\cos\frac{11\pi}{4} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\sin\frac{11\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$, the point in question has rectangular coordinates $(-6\sqrt{2}, 6\sqrt{2})$.

In Exercises 13–28, convert the point with the given rectangular coordinates to polar coordinates (r, θ). Always choose the angle θ to be in the interval $(-\pi, \pi]$.

13 $(2, 0)$

solution The point $(2, 0)$ is on the positive x-axis, 2 units from the origin. Thus this point has polar coordinates $(2, 0)$.

15 $(0, -\pi)$

solution The point $(0, -\pi)$ is on the negative y-axis, π units from the origin. Thus this point has polar coordinates $(\pi, -\frac{\pi}{2})$.

17 $(3,3)$

solution We have

$$r = \sqrt{3^2+3^2} = \sqrt{3^2 \cdot 2} = \sqrt{3^2}\sqrt{2} = 3\sqrt{2}.$$

The point $(3,3)$ is on the portion of the line $y = x$ that makes a 45° angle with the positive x-axis. Thus $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

Hence this point has polar coordinates $\left(3\sqrt{2}, \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$.

19 $(-5,5)$

solution We have

$$r = \sqrt{5^2+(-5)^2} = \sqrt{5^2 \cdot 2} = \sqrt{5^2}\sqrt{2} = 5\sqrt{2}.$$

The point $(-5,5)$ is on the portion of the line $y = -x$ that makes a 135° angle with the positive x-axis. Thus $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{4}$.

Hence this point has polar coordinates $\left(5\sqrt{2}, \frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$.

21 $(3,2)$

solution We have

$$r = \sqrt{3^2+2^2} = \sqrt{13} \approx 3.61.$$

Because both coordinates of $(3,2)$ are positive, we have

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{2}{3} \approx 0.588 \text{ radians.}$$

Hence this point has polar coordinates approximately $(3.61, 0.588)$.

23 $(3,-7)$

solution We have

$$r = \sqrt{3^2+(-7)^2} = \sqrt{58} \approx 7.62.$$

Because the first coordinate of $(3,-7)$ is positive, we have

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{-7}{3}\right) \approx -1.166 \text{ radians.}$$

Hence this point has polar coordinates approximately $(7.62, -1.166)$.

25 $(-4,1)$

solution We have

$$r = \sqrt{(-4)^2+1^2} = \sqrt{17} \approx 4.12.$$

Because the first coordinate of $(-4,1)$ is negative and the second coordinate is positive, we have

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{-4}\right) + \pi = \tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{4}\right) + \pi$$

$$\approx 2.897 \text{ radians.}$$

Hence this point has polar coordinates approximately $(4.12, 2.897)$.

27 $(-5,-2)$

solution We have

$$r = \sqrt{(-5)^2+(-2)^2} = \sqrt{29} \approx 5.39.$$

Because both coordinates of $(-5,-2)$ are negative, we have

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{-2}{-5}\right) - \pi = \tan^{-1}\frac{2}{5} - \pi$$

$$\approx -2.761 \text{ radians.}$$

Hence this point has polar coordinates approximately $(5.39, -2.761)$.

29 Find the center and radius of the circle whose equation in polar coordinates is $r = 3\cos\theta$.

solution Multiply both sides by r, obtaining

$$r^2 = 3r\cos\theta.$$

Convert to rectangular coordinates, getting

$$x^2 + y^2 = 3x.$$

Subtract $3x$ from both sides, getting

$$x^2 - 3x + y^2 = 0.$$

Complete the square to rewrite this equation as

$$\left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + y^2 = \frac{9}{4}.$$

Thus the polar equation $r = 3\cos\theta$ describes a circle centered at $\left(\frac{3}{2}, 0\right)$ with radius $\frac{3}{2}$.

31 Write the polar equation for the circle centered at $(3,0)$ with radius 3.

solution In rectangular coordinates, the equation of this circle is

$$(x-3)^2 + y^2 = 9,$$

which can be rewritten as

$$x^2 - 6x + 9 + y^2 = 9.$$

Convert this equation to polar coordinates by using the equations $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ and $x = r\cos\theta$, getting

$$r^2 = 6r\cos\theta.$$

Divide both sides by r to get the simpler equation

$$r = 6\cos\theta.$$

7.2 Vectors

Learning Objectives

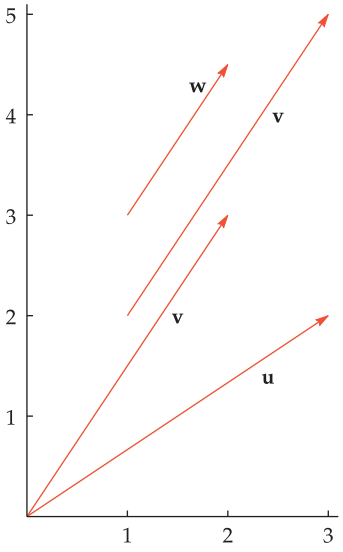
By the end of this section you should be able to

- determine whether two vectors are equal;
- find the magnitude and direction of a vector from its coordinates;
- add and subtract two vectors algebraically and geometrically;
- compute the product of a number and a vector algebraically and geometrically;
- compute the dot product of two vectors;
- compute the angle between two vectors.

An Algebraic and Geometric Introduction to Vectors

To see how vectors arise naturally, consider weather data at a specific location and at a specific time. One key item of weather data is the temperature, which is a number that could be positive or negative (for example, 14 degrees Fahrenheit or -10 degrees Celsius, depending on the units used). Another key item of weather data is the wind velocity, which consists of a magnitude that must be a nonnegative number (for example, 10 miles per hour) and a direction (for example, northwest).

Measurements that have both a magnitude and a direction are common enough to deserve their own terminology.



Vector

A **vector** is characterized by its magnitude and its direction. Usually a vector is drawn as an arrow:

- the length of the arrow is the **magnitude** of the vector;
- the direction of the arrowhead indicates the **direction** of the vector;
- two vectors are equal if and only if they have the same magnitude and the same direction.

Example 1

Symbols denoting vectors appear in boldface in this book to emphasize that they denote vectors, not numbers.

The figure above shows vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$.

(a) Explain why the two vectors labeled $\mathbf{v}$ are equal to each other.

(b) Explain why $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{v}$.

(c) Explain why $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{w}$.

solution

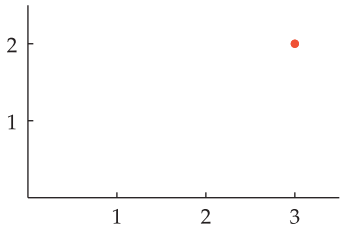
(a) The two vectors with the label $\mathbf{v}$ have the same length and their arrows are parallel and point in the same direction. Because these two vectors have the same magnitude and the same direction, they are equal vectors.

(b) The vector $\mathbf{u}$ shown above has the same magnitude as $\mathbf{v}$ but points in a different direction (the arrows are not parallel); thus $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{v}$.

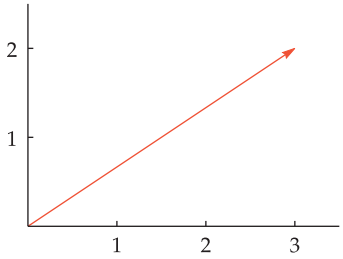
(c) The vector $\mathbf{v}$ shown above has the same direction as $\mathbf{w}$ (parallel arrows pointing in the same direction) but has a different magnitude; thus $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{w}$.

A vector is determined by its initial point and its endpoint. For example, the vector $\mathbf{u}$ shown eariler has initial point the origin $(0,0)$ and has endpoint $(3,2)$. One version of the vector $\mathbf{v}$ shown earlier has initial point the origin $(0,0)$ and has endpoint $(2,3)$; the other version of the vector $\mathbf{v}$ shown earlier has initial point $(1,2)$ and has endpoint $(3,5)$.

Sometimes a vector is specified by giving only the endpoint, with the assumption that the initial point is the origin. For example, the vector $\mathbf{u}$ shown earlier can be identified as $(3,2)$, with the understanding that the origin is the initial point. In other words, sometimes we think of $(3,2)$ as a point in the coordinate plane, and sometimes we think of $(3,2)$ as the vector from the origin to that point.



The notation $(3,2)$ can be used to denote the point shown above.



The notation $(3,2)$ can also be used to denote the vector shown above.

Notation for vectors with initial point at the origin

If a and b are real numbers, then (a,b) can denote either a point or a vector, depending on the context. In other words, (a,b) can be used as notation for either of the two following objects:

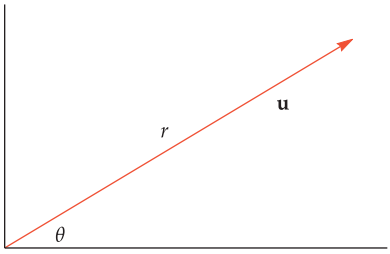
- the point in the coordinate plane whose first coordinate is a and whose second coordinate is b;
- the vector whose initial point is the origin and whose endpoint has first coordinate a and second coordinate b.

Polar coordinates allow us to be more precise about what we mean by the magnitude and direction of a vector.

Magnitude and direction of a vector

Suppose a vector $\mathbf{u}$ is positioned with its initial point at the origin. If the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$ has polar coordinates (r,θ), then

- the **magnitude** of $\mathbf{u}$, denoted $|\mathbf{u}|$, is defined to equal r;
- the **direction** of $\mathbf{u}$ is determined by θ, which is the angle that $\mathbf{u}$ makes with the positive horizontal axis.



The endpoint of this vector $\mathbf{u}$ has polar coordinates (r,θ).

The result below simply repeats the conversion from rectangular to polar coordinates that we saw in the previous section.

Computing the magnitude and direction of a vector

If $\mathbf{u} = (a,b)$, then

- $|\mathbf{u}| = \sqrt{a^2+b^2}$;
- an angle θ that determines the direction of $\mathbf{u}$ satisfies the equation $\tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}$, where θ must be chosen so that $\cos\theta$ has the same sign as a and $\sin\theta$ has the same sign as b.

Here we must exclude the case where $a = 0$ to avoid division by 0.

Example 2

Suppose $\mathbf{u}$ is the vector $(3,2)$ shown earlier. Find the magnitude of $\mathbf{u}$ and an angle that determines the direction of $\mathbf{u}$.

solution We have

$$|\mathbf{u}| = \sqrt{3^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{13} \approx 3.6$$

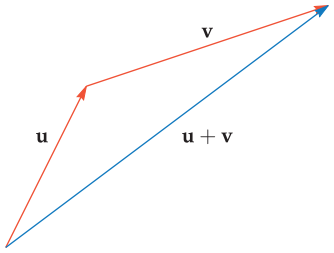
and

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{2}{3} \approx 0.59.$$

Because the second polar coordinate θ is not unique, we could also add any integer multiple of 2π to the value of θ chosen above.

Vector Addition

Two vectors can be added, producing another vector. The following definition presents vector addition from the viewpoint of a vector as an arrow and also from the viewpoint of identifying a vector with its endpoint (assuming that the initial point is the origin).



Vector addition

- If the endpoint of a vector $\mathbf{u}$ coincides with the initial point of a vector $\mathbf{v}$, then the vector $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}$ has the same initial point as $\mathbf{u}$ and the same endpoint as $\mathbf{v}$.
- If $\mathbf{u} = (a,b)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (c,d)$, then $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v} = (a+c, b+d)$.

Example 3

Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (1,2)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (3,1)$.

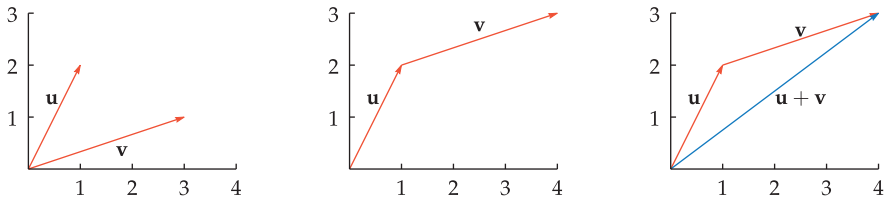
(a) Draw a figure illustrating the sum of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as arrows.

(b) Compute the sum $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

solution

To add two vectors as arrows, move one vector parallel to itself so that its initial point coincides with the endpoint of the other vector.

(a) The figure below on the left shows the two vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, both with their initial point at the origin. In the figure below in the middle, the vector $\mathbf{v}$ has been moved parallel to its original position so that its initial point now coincides with the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$. The figure below on the right shows that the vector $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}$ is the vector with the same initial point as $\mathbf{u}$ and the same endpoint as the second version of $\mathbf{v}$.



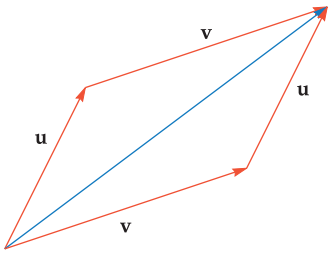
Here $\mathbf{v}$ *is moved parallel to itself so that the initial point of* $\mathbf{v}$ *coincides with the endpoint of* $\mathbf{u}$.

(b) The coordinates of $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}$ are obtained by adding the corresponding coordinates of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Thus $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v} = (1,2)+(3,1) = (4,3)$. Note that $(4,3)$ is the endpoint of the blue vector above on the right.

Vector addition satisfies the usual commutative and associative properties expected for an operation of addition:

$$\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u} \quad \text{and} \quad (\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v})+\mathbf{w}=\mathbf{u}+(\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w})$$

for all vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$. In other words, order and parentheses do not matter in vector addition. The figure here shows why vector addition is commutative.



The vector shown here as the blue diagonal of the parallelogram equals $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}$ and also equals $\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u}$.

The zero vector, denoted with boldface $\mathbf{0}$, is the vector whose magnitude is 0. The direction of the zero vector can be chosen to be anything convenient and is irrelevant because this vector has magnitude 0. In terms of coordinates, the zero vector equals $(0,0)$. For every vector $\mathbf{u}$, we have

$$\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{0}=\mathbf{0}+\mathbf{u}=\mathbf{u}.$$

An important application of vector addition is the computation of the effect of wind upon an airplane. Consider, for example, an airplane whose engines allow the airplane to travel at 500 miles per hour when there is no wind. With a 50 miles per hour headwind (winds are much stronger at airplane heights than at ground level), the airplane can travel only 450 miles per hour relative to the ground. With a 50 miles per hour tailwind, the airplane can travel 550 miles per hour relative to the ground.

The wind at airplane heights is usually from west to east. Thus, for example, flying from Miami to Los Angeles usually takes an hour longer than flying from Los Angeles to Miami.

If the wind direction is neither exactly in the same direction as the airplane's path nor exactly in the opposite direction, then vector addition is used to determine the effect of the wind upon the airplane. Specifically, the wind vector is added to the airspeed vector (the vector giving the airplane's speed and direction relative to the wind) to produce the groundspeed vector (the vector giving the airplane's speed and direction relative to the ground).

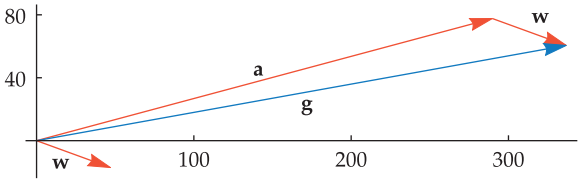
Example 4

Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 50 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 20° south of east. Relative to the wind, an airplane is flying at 300 miles per hour in a direction 35° north of the wind. Find the speed and direction of the airplane relative to the ground.

solution Call the wind vector $\mathbf{w}$. Thus $\mathbf{w}$ has magnitude 50 and direction $-20°$. This implies that the wind vector $\mathbf{w}$ has coordinates $(50\cos(-20°), 50\sin(-20°))$.

Let $\mathbf{a}$ denote the vector giving the motion of the airplane relative to the wind; this vector is called the **airspeed vector**. Relative to the wind, the airplane is heading 35° north, which means that $\mathbf{a}$ has magnitude 300 and direction 15°. Thus the airspeed vector $\mathbf{a}$ has coordinates $(300\cos 15°, 300\sin 15°)$.

Here $\mathbf{w}$ has an angle of $-20°$ measured from the positive horizontal axis and $\mathbf{a}$ has an angle of 15° measured from the positive horizontal axis.



The lower version of $\mathbf{w}$ has its initial point at the same location as the initial point of $\mathbf{a}$ (think of this point as the origin). The second version of $\mathbf{w}$ has its initial point at the endpoint of $\mathbf{a}$ so that we can visualize the sum $\mathbf{g}=\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{w}$.

Let $\mathbf{g}$ denote the vector giving the motion of the airplane relative to the ground; this vector is called the **groundspeed vector**. The properties of motion imply that the groundspeed vector equals the airspeed vector plus the wind vector. In other words, $\mathbf{g}=\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{w}$.

In terms of coordinates, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{g} &= \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{w} \\ &= (300\cos 15^\circ, 300\sin 15^\circ) + (50\cos 20^\circ, -50\sin 20^\circ) \\ &= (300\cos 15^\circ + 50\cos 20^\circ, 300\sin 15^\circ - 50\sin 20^\circ) \\ &\approx (336.762, 60.5447).\end{aligned}$$

Now the speed of the airplane relative to the ground is the magnitude of $\mathbf{g}$:

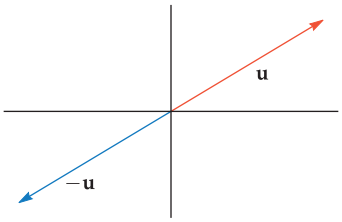
$$\begin{aligned}|\mathbf{g}| &\approx \sqrt{336.762^2 + 60.5447^2} \\ &\approx 342.2.\end{aligned}$$

The direction of the airplane relative to the ground is the direction of $\mathbf{g}$, which is approximately $\tan^{-1}\frac{60.5447}{336.762}$, which is approximately 0.178 radians, which is approximately 10.2°.

Conclusion: Relative to the ground, the airplane is traveling at approximately 342.2 miles per hour in a direction 10.2° north of east.

Vector Subtraction

Vectors have additive inverses, just as numbers do. The following definition presents the additive inverse from the viewpoint of a vector as an arrow and from the viewpoint of identifying a vector with its coordinates.



A vector $\mathbf{u}$ *and its additive inverse* $-\mathbf{u}$.

Additive inverse

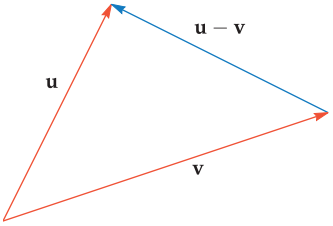
- If $\mathbf{u}$ is a vector, then $-\mathbf{u}$ has the same magnitude as $\mathbf{u}$ and has the opposite direction.
- If $\mathbf{u}$ has polar coordinates (r, θ), then $-\mathbf{u}$ has polar coordinates $(r, \theta + \pi)$.
- If $\mathbf{u} = (a, b)$, then $-\mathbf{u} = (-a, -b)$.

Make sure you understand why the definition above implies that

$$\mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{0}$$

for every vector $\mathbf{u}$.

Two vectors can be subtracted, producing another vector. The following definition presents vector subtraction from the viewpoint of a vector as an arrow and from the viewpoint of identifying a vector with its endpoint (assuming that the initial point is the origin).



To figure out in which direction the arrow for $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ *points, choose the direction that makes* $\mathbf{v} + (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v})$ *equal to* $\mathbf{u}$.

Vector subtraction

- If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, then the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ is defined by
$$\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{v}).$$
- If vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are positioned to have the same initial point, then $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ is the vector whose initial point is the endpoint of $\mathbf{v}$ and whose endpoint is the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$.
- If $\mathbf{u} = (a, b)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (c, d)$, then $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = (a - c, b - d)$.

Example 5

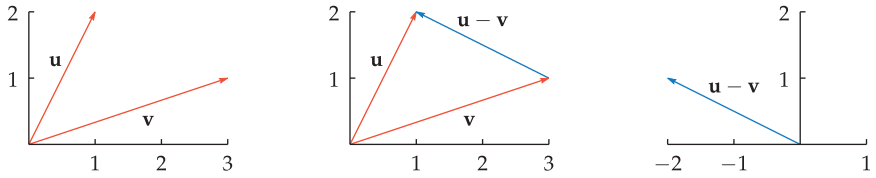
Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (1, 2)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (3, 1)$.

(a) Draw a figure using arrows illustrating the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$.

(b) Compute the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

solution

(a) The figure below on the left shows the two vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, both with their initial point at the origin. The figure below in the center shows that the vector $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ is the vector whose initial point is the endpoint of $\mathbf{v}$ and whose endpoint is the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$.



To subtract two vectors, position them to have the same initial point.

(b) The coordinates of $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ are obtained by subtracting the corresponding coordinates of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Thus $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = (1, 2) - (3, 1) = (-2, 1)$. The figure above on the right shows $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ with its initial point at the origin and its endpoint at $(-2, 1)$.

The next example shows a practical application of vector subtraction.

Example 6

Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 60 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 25° south of east. An airplane wants to fly northwest at 400 miles per hour relative to the ground. Find the speed and direction that the airplane must fly relative to the wind.

solution The wind vector $\mathbf{w}$ has coordinates $\big(60\cos(-25^\circ), 60\sin(-25^\circ)\big)$.

The northwest direction is halfway between north (90° measured from the positive horizontal axis) and west (180° measured from the positive horizontal axis). Thus the northwest direction is the average $\frac{90^\circ + 180^\circ}{2}$, which equals 135°, measured from the positive horizontal axis. Hence we want the groundspeed vector $\mathbf{g}$ to have coordinates $(400\cos 135^\circ, 400\sin 135^\circ)$.

Let $\mathbf{a}$ denote the airspeed vector, which shows the motion of the airplane relative to the wind. Thus $\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{w}$. Solving for the airspeed vector $\mathbf{a}$, we have

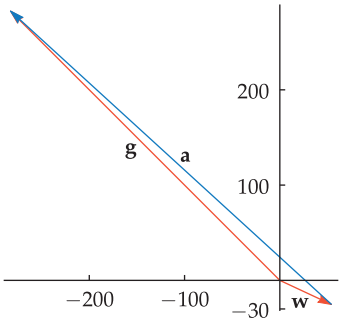
$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{g} - \mathbf{w} &= (400\cos 135^\circ, 400\sin 135^\circ) - \big(60\cos(-25^\circ), 60\sin(-25^\circ)\big)\\ &= (400\cos 135^\circ - 60\cos 25^\circ, 400\sin 135^\circ + 60\sin 25^\circ)\\ &\approx (-337.2, 308.2).\end{aligned}$$

The speed of the airplane relative to the wind is the magnitude of $\mathbf{a}$:

$$|\mathbf{a}| \approx \sqrt{(-337.2)^2 + 308.2^2} \approx 456.8.$$

As can be seen in the figure, the angle that $\mathbf{a}$ makes with the positive horizontal axis is in the interval $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$. Thus this angle is approximately $\pi + \tan^{-1}\frac{308.2}{-337.2}$, which is approximately 2.401 radians, which is approximately 137.6°.

Conclusion: Relative to the wind, the airplane must fly at approximately 456.8 miles per hour in a direction that makes an angle of 162.6° with the wind direction (because $25^\circ + 137.6^\circ = 162.6^\circ$), as measured counterclockwise from the wind vector.



Here $\mathbf{w}$ *has an angle of* -25° *measured from the positive horizontal axis and* $\mathbf{g}$ *has an angle of* 135° *measured from the positive horizontal axis.*

The angle $\tan^{-1}\frac{308.2}{-337.2}$ *is in the interval* $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, 0)$. *Thus we add* π *to it to obtain an angle in the interval* $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$ *with the same tangent.*

Scalar Multiplication

Often the word scalar *is used to emphasize that a quantity is a number rather than a vector.*

The word **scalar** is a fancy word for *number*. The term **scalar multiplication** refers to the operation defined below of multiplying a vector by a scalar, producing a vector.

Scalar multiplication

Suppose t is a real number and $\mathbf{u}$ is a vector.

- The vector $t\mathbf{u}$ has magnitude $|t|$ times the magnitude of $\mathbf{u}$; thus $|t\mathbf{u}| = |t||\mathbf{u}|$.
  - If $t > 0$, then $t\mathbf{u}$ has the same direction as $\mathbf{u}$.
  - If $t < 0$, then $t\mathbf{u}$ has the opposite direction of $\mathbf{u}$.
- Suppose $\mathbf{u}$ has polar coordinates (r, θ).
  - If $t > 0$, then tu has polar coordinates (tr, θ).
  - If $t < 0$, then tu has polar coordinates $(|t|r, \theta + \pi)$.
- If $\mathbf{u} = (a, b)$, then $t\mathbf{u} = (ta, tb)$.

Adding π to the second polar coordinate reverses the direction of the vector.

Example 7

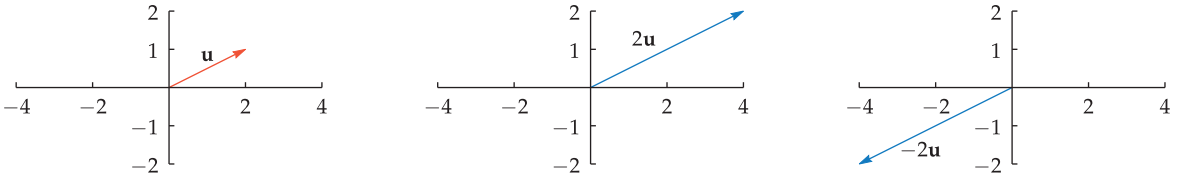
Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (2, 1)$.

(a) Draw a figure showing $\mathbf{u}$, $2\mathbf{u}$, and $-2\mathbf{u}$.

(b) Compute $2\mathbf{u}$ and $-2\mathbf{u}$ using coordinates.

solution

(a) The figure below on the left shows $\mathbf{u}$. The figure below in the middle shows that $2\mathbf{u}$ is the vector having twice the magnitude of $\mathbf{u}$ and having the same direction as $\mathbf{u}$. The figure below on the right shows that $-2\mathbf{u}$ is the vector having twice the magnitude of $\mathbf{u}$ and having the opposite direction of $\mathbf{u}$.



(b) The coordinates of $2\mathbf{u}$ are obtained by multiplying the corresponding coordinates of $\mathbf{u}$ by 2, and the coordinates of $-2\mathbf{u}$ are obtained by multiplying the corresponding coordinates of $\mathbf{u}$ by -2. Thus we have $2\mathbf{u} = (4, 2)$ and $-2\mathbf{u} = (-4, -2)$.

Dividing a vector by a nonzero scalar c is the same as multiplying by $\frac{1}{c}$. For example, $\frac{\mathbf{u}}{2}$ should be interpreted to mean $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{u}$. Note that division by a vector is not defined.

The Dot Product

We have defined the sum and difference of two vectors, and the scalar product of a number and a vector. Each of those operations produces another vector. Now we turn to another operation, called the dot product, that produces a number from two vectors. We begin with a definition in terms of coordinates; soon we will also see a formula from the viewpoint of vectors as arrows.

Dot product

Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (a, b)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (c, d)$. Then the **dot product** of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, denoted $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$, is defined by

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = ac + bd.$$

Thus to compute the dot product of two vectors, multiply together the first coordinates, multiply together the second coordinates, and then add these two products.

Always remember that the dot product of two vectors is a number, not a vector.

Example 8

Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (2, 3)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (5, 4)$. Compute $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$.

solution Using the formula above, we have

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 2 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 4 = 10 + 12 = 22.$$

The dot product has the following pleasant algebraic properties.

Algebraic properties of the dot product

Suppose $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are vectors and t is a real number. Then

- $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$ (commutativity);
- $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$ (distributive property);
- $(t\mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot (t\mathbf{v}) = t(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})$;
- $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{u}|^2$.

To verify the last property above, suppose $\mathbf{u} = (a, b)$. Then

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = a^2 + b^2 = \left(\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\right)^2 = |\mathbf{u}|^2,$$

as desired. The verifications of the first three properties are left as problems for the reader.

The next result gives a remarkably useful formula for computing $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ in terms of the magnitude of $\mathbf{u}$, the magnitude of $\mathbf{v}$, and the angle between these two vectors.

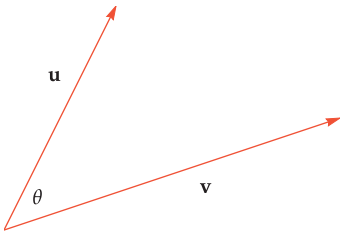
Computing the dot product geometrically

If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors with the same initial point, then

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}| \cos\theta,$$

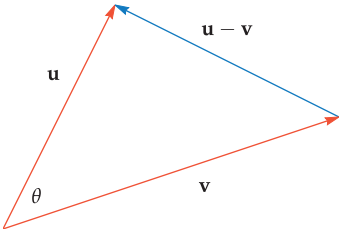
where θ is the angle between $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

In words instead of symbols, this formula can be stated follows: The dot product of two vectors with the same initial point is the length of the first vector times the length of the second vector times the cosine of the angle between them.



To verify the formula above, first use the algebraic properties of the dot product to compute a formula for $|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}|^2$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}|^2 &= (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= |\mathbf{u}|^2 - 2\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + |\mathbf{v}|^2. \end{aligned}$$



Now apply the law of cosines to the triangle formed by $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ (see the figure), getting

$$|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}|^2 = |\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta.$$

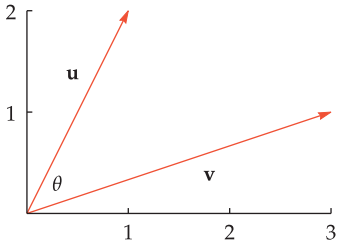
Finally, set the two expressions that we have obtained for $|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}|^2$ equal to each other, getting

$$|\mathbf{u}|^2 - 2\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} + |\mathbf{v}|^2 = |\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta.$$

Subtract $|\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2$ from both sides of the equation above, and then divide both sides by -2, getting $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta$, completing our derivation of this remarkable formula.

Example 9

Find the angle between the vectors $(1,2)$ and $(3,1)$.



Problem 36 gives a nice application of this example.

solution Let $\mathbf{u} = (1,2)$, let $\mathbf{v} = (3,1)$, and let θ denote the angle between these two vectors, as shown here.

We could solve this problem without using the dot product by noting that the angle between the positive horizontal axis and $\mathbf{u}$ equals $\tan^{-1} 2$ and the angle between the positive horizontal axis and $\mathbf{v}$ equals $\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$; thus $\theta = \tan^{-1} 2 - \tan^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$. Neither $\tan^{-1} 2$ nor $\tan^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$ can be evaluated exactly, and thus it appears that this expression for θ cannot be simplified.

However, we have another way to compute θ. Specifically, from the formula above we have

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|} = \frac{5}{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{10}} = \frac{5}{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{5}\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}.$$

The equation above now implies that $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

The formula for computing the dot product geometrically gives us an easy method to determine if two vectors are perpendicular.

Suppose θ is the angle between two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ with the same initial point. The vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are perpendicular if and only if θ equals $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians, which happens if and only if $\cos\theta = 0$, which happens (according to our formula for computing the dot product geometrically) if and only if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$. Thus we have the following result.

Perpendicular vectors

Two nonzero vectors with the same initial point are perpendicular if and only if their dot product equals 0.

Example 10

Find a number t such that the vectors $(3,-5)$ and $(4,2^t)$ are perpendicular.

solution The dot product of $(3,-5)$ and $(4,2^t)$ is

$$12 - 5\cdot 2^t.$$

For the vectors to be perpendicular, we want this dot product to equal 0. Thus we must solve the equation $12 - 5\cdot 2^t = 0$, which is equivalent to the equation $2^t = \frac{12}{5}$. Taking logs of both sides gives $t\log 2 = \log\frac{12}{5}$. Thus

$$t = \frac{\log\frac{12}{5}}{\log 2} \approx 1.26303.$$

Exercises

1 Find the magnitude of the vector $(-3, 2)$.

2 Find the magnitude of the vector $(-5, -2)$.

3 Find an angle that determines the direction of the vector $(-3, 2)$.

4 Find an angle that determines the direction of the vector $(-5, -2)$.

5 Find two distinct numbers t such that $|t(1, 4)| = 5$.

6 Find two distinct numbers b such that $|b(3, -7)| = 4$.

7 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (2, 1)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (3, 1)$.

(a) Draw a figure illustrating the sum of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as arrows.

(b) Compute the sum $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

8 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (-3, 2)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (-2, -1)$.

(a) Draw a figure illustrating the sum of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as arrows.

(b) Compute the sum $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

9 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (2, 1)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (3, 1)$.

(a) Draw a figure using arrows illustrating the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$.

(b) Compute the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

10 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (-3, 2)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (-2, -1)$.

(a) Draw a figure using arrows illustrating the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$.

(b) Compute the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

11 Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 40 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 15° north of east. Relative to the wind, an airplane is flying at 450 miles per hour 20° south of the wind. Find the speed and direction of the airplane relative to the ground.

12 Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 70 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 17° south of east. Relative to the wind, an airplane is flying at 500 miles per hour in a direction 200° measured counterclockwise from the wind. Find the speed and direction of the airplane relative to the ground.

13 Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 55 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 22° south of east. An airplane wants to fly directly north at 400 miles per hour relative to the ground. Find the speed and direction that the airplane must fly relative to the wind.

14 Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 60 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 16° east of north. An airplane wants to fly directly west at 500 miles per hour relative to the ground. Find the speed and direction that the airplane must fly relative to the wind.

15 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (3, 2)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (4, 5)$. Compute $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$.

16 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (-4, 5)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (2, -6)$. Compute $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$.

17 Find a number b such that $(3, 2) \cdot (4, b) = 1$.

18 Find a number c such that $(2c, 5) \cdot (3, 4) = c$.

19 Use the dot product to find the angle between the vectors $(2, 3)$ and $(3, 4)$.

20 Use the dot product to find the angle between the vectors $(3, -5)$ and $(-4, 3)$.

21 Find a number t such that the vectors $(6, -7)$ and $(2, \tan t)$ are perpendicular.

22 Find a number t such that the vectors $(2 \cos t, 4)$ and $(10, 3)$ are perpendicular.

Problems

23 Find coordinates for five different vectors $\mathbf{u}$, each of which has magnitude 5.

24 Find coordinates for three different vectors $\mathbf{u}$, each of which has a direction determined by an angle of $\frac{\pi}{6}$.

25 Suppose $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors with the same initial point. Explain why $|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}|$ equals the distance between the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$ and the endpoint of $\mathbf{v}$.

26 Using coordinates, show that if t is a scalar and $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, then

$$t(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = t\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}.$$

27 Using coordinates, show that if s and t are scalars and $\mathbf{u}$ is a vector, then

$$(s + t)\mathbf{u} = s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{u}.$$

28 Using coordinates, show that if s and t are scalars and $\mathbf{u}$ is a vector, then

$$(st)\mathbf{u} = s(t\mathbf{u}).$$

29 Show that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, then

$$2(|\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2) = |\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}|^2 + |\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}|^2.$$

[*The equation above is often called the Parallelogram Equality, for reasons that are explained by the next problem.*]

30 Draw an appropriate figure and explain why the result in the problem above implies the following result: In any parallelogram, the sum of the squares of the lengths of the four sides equals the sum of the squares of the lengths of the two diagonals.

31 Suppose $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector other than $\mathbf{0}$. Explain why the vector $\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$ has magnitude 1.

32 Show that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, then

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}.$$

33 Show that if $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are vectors, then

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}.$$

34 Show that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors and t is a real number, then

$$(t\mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot (t\mathbf{v}) = t(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}).$$

35 Suppose $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, neither of which is $\mathbf{0}$. Show that $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|$ if and only if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ have the same direction.

36 In Example 9 we found that the angle θ equals $\tan^{-1} 2 - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}$ and also that θ equals $\frac{\pi}{4}$. Thus

$$\tan^{-1} 2 - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

(a) Use one of the inverse trigonometric identities from Section 5.2 to show that the equation above can be rewritten as

$$\tan^{-1} 2 + \tan^{-1} 3 = \frac{3\pi}{4}.$$

(b) Explain how adding $\frac{\pi}{4}$ to both sides of the equation above leads to the beautiful equation

$$\tan^{-1} 1 + \tan^{-1} 2 + \tan^{-1} 3 = \pi.$$

[*Problem 61 in Section 5.6 gives another derivation of the equation above.*]

37 Suppose $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors. Show that

$$|\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}| \le |\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|.$$

[*This result is called the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality. Although this problem asks for a proof only in the setting of vectors in the plane, a similar inequality is true in many other settings and has important uses throughout mathematics.*]

38 Show that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, then

$$|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}|^2 = |\mathbf{u}|^2 + 2\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + |\mathbf{v}|^2.$$

39 Show that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors, then

$$|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}| \le |\mathbf{u}| + |\mathbf{v}|.$$

[*Hint:* Square both sides and use the two previous problems.]

40 Interpret the inequality in the previous problem (which is often called the Triangle Inequality) as saying something interesting about triangles.

41 In Example 9, draw the vector from the endpoint of $\mathbf{v}$ to the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$. Show that the resulting triangle (whose edges are $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$) is a right triangle.

42 Explain why there does not exist a number t such that the vectors $(2, t)$ and $(3, t)$ are perpendicular.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Find the magnitude of the vector $(-3, 2)$.

solution $|(-3,2)| = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{13}$

3 Find an angle that determines the direction of the vector $(-3, 2)$.

solution We want an angle θ such that $\tan\theta = -\frac{2}{3}$ and also such that $\cos\theta$ is negative and $\sin\theta$ is positive. The angle $\tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right)$ has the correct tangent, but its cosine and sine have the wrong sign. Thus the angle we seek is $\tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right) + \pi$.

5 Find two distinct numbers t such that $|t(1,4)| = 5$.

solution Because $t(1,4) = (t, 4t)$, we have

$$|t(1,4)| = |(t,4t)| = \sqrt{t^2 + 16t^2} = \sqrt{17t^2}.$$

We want this to equal 5, which means $17t^2 = 25$. Thus $t^2 = \frac{25}{17}$, which implies that $t = \pm\frac{5}{\sqrt{17}}$, which can be rewritten as $t = \pm\frac{5\sqrt{17}}{17}$.

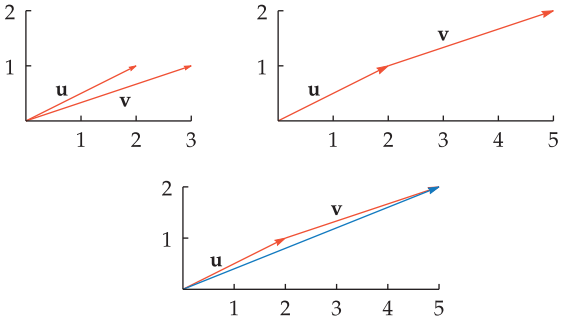
7 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (2, 1)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (3, 1)$.

(a) Draw a figure illustrating the sum of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as arrows.

(b) Compute the sum $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

solution

(a) The figure on the left shows $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ with their initial points at the origin. In the figure on the right, $\mathbf{v}$ has been moved parallel to its original position so that its initial point now coincides with the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$. The final figure shows that the vector $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is the vector with the same initial point as $\mathbf{u}$ and the same endpoint as the second version of $\mathbf{v}$.



(b) The coordinates of $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ are obtained by adding the corresponding coordinates of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Thus

$$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = (2,1) + (3,1) = (5,2).$$

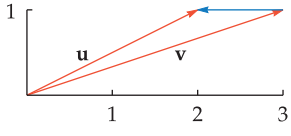
9 Suppose $\mathbf{u} = (2, 1)$ and $\mathbf{v} = (3, 1)$.

(a) Draw a figure using arrows illustrating the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$.

(b) Compute the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ using coordinates.

solution

(a) The figure below shows the two vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, both with their initial point at the origin. The vector $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ is the vector whose initial point is the endpoint of $\mathbf{v}$ and whose endpoint is the endpoint of $\mathbf{u}$.



(b) The coordinates of $\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}$ are obtained by subtracting the corresponding coordinates of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Thus

$$\mathbf{u}-\mathbf{v}=(2,1)-(3,1)=(-1,0).$$

11 Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 40 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 15° north of east. Relative to the wind, an airplane is flying at 450 miles per hour 20° south of the wind. Find the speed and direction of the airplane relative to the ground.

solution Let $\mathbf{w}$ denote the wind vector. Because $\mathbf{w}$ has magnitude 40 and direction 15°, the wind vector $\mathbf{w}$ has coordinates $(40\cos 15^\circ, 40\sin 15^\circ)$.

Let $\mathbf{a}$ denote the airspeed vector, which gives the motion of the airplane relative to the wind. The airspeed vector $\mathbf{a}$ has coordinates $\big(450\cos(-5^\circ), 450\sin(-5^\circ)\big)$.

Let $\mathbf{g}$ denote the groundspeed vector giving the motion of the airplane relative to the ground. The properties of motion imply that the groundspeed vector equals the airspeed vector plus the wind vector. In other words, $\mathbf{g}=\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{w}$.

In terms of coordinates, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{g}&=\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{w}\\&=\big(450\cos(-5^\circ),450\sin(-5^\circ)\big)\\&\qquad+(40\cos 15^\circ,40\sin 15^\circ)\\&\approx(486.925,-28.8673).\end{aligned}$$

Now the speed of the airplane relative to the ground is the magnitude of $\mathbf{g}$:

$$\begin{aligned}|\mathbf{g}|&\approx\sqrt{486.925^2+(-28.8673)^2}\\&\approx 487.8.\end{aligned}$$

The direction of the airplane relative to the ground is the direction of g, which is approximately $\tan^{-1}\frac{-28.8673}{486.925}$, which is approximately -0.0592 radians, which is approximately -3.4°.

Thus relative to the ground, the airplane is traveling at approximately 487.8 miles per hour in a direction 3.4° south of east.

13 Suppose the wind at airplane heights is 55 miles per hour (relative to the ground) moving 22° south of east. An airplane wants to fly directly north at 400 miles per hour relative to the ground. Find the speed and direction that the airplane must fly relative to the wind.

solution The data about the wind speed and direction imply that the wind vector $\mathbf{w}$ has coordinates $\big(55\cos(-22^\circ),55\sin(-22^\circ)\big)$, which equals $(55\cos 22^\circ,-55\sin 22^\circ)$.

We want the groundspeed vector $\mathbf{g}$ to have coordinates $(0,400)$.

Let $\mathbf{a}$ denote the airspeed vector, which gives the motion of the airplane relative to the wind. As usual, $\mathbf{g}=\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{w}$. Solving for the airspeed vector $\mathbf{a}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a}&=\mathbf{g}-\mathbf{w}\\&=(0,400)-(55\cos 22^\circ,-55\sin 22^\circ)\\&=(-55\cos 22^\circ,400+55\sin 22^\circ)\\&\approx(-50.9951,420.603).\end{aligned}$$

The speed of the airplane relative to the wind is the magnitude of $\mathbf{a}$:

$$\begin{aligned}|\mathbf{a}|&\approx\sqrt{(-50.9951)^2+420.603^2}\\&\approx 423.7.\end{aligned}$$

A figure shows that that the angle that $\mathbf{a}$ makes with the positive horizontal axis is in the interval $(\frac{\pi}{2},\pi)$. Thus the angle that $\mathbf{a}$ makes with the positive horizontal axis is $\pi+\tan^{-1}\frac{420.603}{-50.9951}$, which is approximately 1.69145 radians, which is approximately 96.9°, which is 6.9° west of north.

Conclusion: Relative to the wind, the airplane must fly at approximately 423.7 miles per hour in a direction that makes an angle of 118.9° with the wind direction (because $22^\circ+96.9^\circ=118.9^\circ$), as measured counterclockwise from the wind vector.

15 Suppose $\mathbf{u}=(3,2)$ and $\mathbf{v}=(4,5)$. Compute $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}$.

solution $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}=3\cdot 4+2\cdot 5=12+10=22$

17 Find a number b such that $(3,2)\cdot(4,b)=1$.

solution We can rewrite the equation $(3,2)\cdot(4,b)=1$ as

$$3\cdot 4+2b=1.$$

Solving this equation for b gives $b=-\frac{11}{2}$.

19 Use the dot product to find the angle between the vectors $(2,3)$ and $(3,4)$.

solution Note that $|(2,3)|=\sqrt{13}$, $|(3,4)|=5$, and $(2,3)\cdot(3,4)=18$. Thus the angle between $(2,3)$ and $(3,4)$ is

$$\cos^{-1}\frac{(2,3)\cdot(3,4)}{|(2,3)|\,|(3,4)|}=\cos^{-1}\frac{18}{5\sqrt{13}}\approx 0.0555.$$

21 Find a number t such that the vectors $(6,-7)$ and $(2,\tan t)$ are perpendicular.

solution The dot product of these two vectors is $12-7\tan t$. To make these two vectors perpendicular, we want $12-7\tan t=0$, which implies that we want $\tan t=\frac{12}{7}$. Thus we take $t=\tan^{-1}\frac{12}{7}$.

There are also other correct answers in addition to $\tan^{-1}\frac{12}{7}$ because there are other angles whose tangent equals $\frac{12}{7}$. Specifically, we could choose $t=\big(\tan^{-1}\frac{12}{7}\big)+n\pi$ for any integer n.

7.3 Complex Numbers

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- add, subtract, multiply, and divide complex numbers;
- compute the complex conjugate of a complex number;
- solve quadratic equations using complex numbers;
- explain why nonreal roots of real polynomials come in pairs;
- explain the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra.

The Complex Number System

The real number system provides a powerful context for solving a broad array of problems. Calculus takes place mostly within the real number system. However, some important mathematical problems cannot be solved within the real number system. This section provides an introduction to the complex number system, which is a remarkably useful extension of the real number system.

Consider the equation

$$x^2 = -1.$$

The equation above has no solutions within the system of real numbers, because the square of a real number is either positive or zero. There is no real number whose square equals -1.

The symbol i was first used to denote $\sqrt{-1}$ by the Swiss mathematician Leonard Euler in 1777.

Thus mathematicians invented a "number", called i, that provides a solution to the equation above. You can think of i as a symbol with the property that $i^2 = -1$. Numbers such as $2 + 3i$ are called **complex numbers**. We say that 2 is the **real part** of $2 + 3i$ and that 3 is the **imaginary part** of $2 + 3i$. More generally, we have the following definitions.

Complex numbers

- The symbol i has the property that

$$i^2 = -1.$$

- A **complex number** is a number of the form $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers.
- If $z = a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers, then a is called the **real part** of z and b is called the **imaginary part** of z.

Complex numbers were first used by 16^{th}-century Italian mathematicians who were trying to solve cubic equations.

The complex number $4 + 0i$ is considered to be the same as the real number 4. More generally, if a is a real number, then the complex number $a + 0i$ is considered to be the same as the real number a. Thus every real number is also a complex number.

In the next section, we will see how to identify complex numbers with points in the usual coordinate plane. This viewpoint will give us a nice graphical interpretation of complex numbers. For now, however, we deal with complex numbers algebraically.

Arithmetic with Complex Numbers

The sum and difference of two complex numbers are defined as follows.

Addition and subtraction of complex numbers

Suppose a, b, c, and d are real numbers. Then

- $(a+bi)+(c+di)=(a+c)+(b+d)i$;
- $(a+bi)-(c+di)=(a-c)+(b-d)i$.

The definition of complex addition in words rather than symbols: The real part of the sum is the sum of the real parts; the imaginary part of the sum is the sum of the imaginary parts.

Example 1

(a) Evaluate $(2+3i)+(4+5i)$.

(b) Evaluate $(6+3i)-(2+8i)$.

solution

(a)

$$\begin{aligned}(2+3i)+(4+5i) &= (2+4)+(3+5)i \\ &= 6+8i\end{aligned}$$

(b)

$$\begin{aligned}(6+3i)-(2+8i) &= (6-2)+(3-8)i \\ &= 4-5i\end{aligned}$$

In the last solution above, note that we have written $4+(-5)i$ in the equivalent form $4-5i$.

The product of two complex numbers is computed by using the property $i^2=-1$ and by assuming that we can apply the usual properties of arithmetic (commutativity, associativity, and the distributive property). The following example illustrates the idea.

The complex numbers satisfy the familiar rules of arithmetic.

Example 2

Evaluate $(3i)(5i)$.

solution The commutative and associative properties of multiplication state that order and grouping do not matter. Thus we can rewrite $(3i)(5i)$ as $(3\cdot 5)(i\cdot i)$ and then complete the calculation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}(3i)(5i) &= (3\cdot 5)(i\cdot i) \\ &= 15i^2 \\ &= 15(-1) \\ &= -15.\end{aligned}$$

After you become accustomed to working with complex numbers, you will do calculations such as the one above more quickly without the intermediate steps:

$$(3i)(5i)=15i^2=-15.$$

The next example shows how to compute a more complicated product of complex numbers. Again, the idea is to use the property $i^2=-1$ and the usual rules of arithmetic, starting with the distributive property.

Example 3

Evaluate $(2+3i)(4+5i)$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(2+3i)(4+5i) &= 2(4+5i)+(3i)(4+5i)\\ &= 2\cdot 4+2\cdot(5i)+(3i)\cdot 4+(3i)\cdot(5i)\\ &= 8+10i+12i-15\\ &= -7+22i\end{aligned}$$

We have the following formula for multiplication of complex numbers.

Multiplication of complex numbers

Suppose a, b, c, and d are real numbers. Then

$$(a+bi)(c+di) = (ac-bd)+(ad+bc)i.$$

Do not memorize this formula. Instead, when you need to compute the product of complex numbers, just use the property $i^2=-1$ and the usual rules of arithmetic.

Do not make the mistake of thinking that the real part of the product of two complex numbers equals the product of the real parts (but see Problem 51). In this respect, products do not act like sums.

Complex Conjugates and Division of Complex Numbers

Division of a complex number by a real number behaves as you might expect. In keeping with the philosophy that arithmetic with complex numbers should obey the same algebraic rules as arithmetic with real numbers, division by (for example) 3 should be the same as multiplication by $\frac{1}{3}$, and we already know how to do multiplication involving complex numbers. The following simple example illustrates this idea.

Example 4

Evaluate $\frac{5+6i}{3}$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{5+6i}{3} &= \tfrac{1}{3}(5+6i)\\ &= \tfrac{1}{3}\cdot 5+\tfrac{1}{3}(6i)\\ &= \tfrac{5}{3}+2i\end{aligned}$$

To divide a complex number by a real number, divide the real and imaginary parts of the complex number by the real number.

Division by a nonreal complex number is more complicated. Consider, for example, how to divide by $2+3i$. This should be the same as multiplying by $\frac{1}{2+3i}$, but what is $\frac{1}{2+3i}$? Again using the principle that complex arithmetic should obey the same rules as real arithmetic, $\frac{1}{2+3i}$ is the number such that

$$(2+3i)\left(\frac{1}{2+3i}\right) = 1.$$

If you are just becoming acquainted with complex numbers, you might guess that $\frac{1}{2+3i}$ equals $\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}i$ or perhaps $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{3}i$. However, neither of these guesses is correct, because neither $(2+3i)(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}i)$ nor $(2+3i)(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{3}i)$ equals 1 (as you should verify by actually doing the multiplications).

Thus we take a slight detour to discuss the complex conjugate, which will be useful in computing the quotient of two complex numbers.

Complex conjugate

Suppose a and b are real numbers. The complex conjugate of $a+bi$, denoted $\overline{a+bi}$, is defined by

$$\overline{a+bi} = a-bi.$$

For example,

$$\overline{2+3i} = 2-3i \quad \text{and} \quad \overline{2-3i} = 2+3i.$$

The next example hints at the usefulness of complex conjugates. Note the use of the key identity $(x+y)(x-y) = x^2 - y^2$.

Example 5

Evaluate $(2+3i)(\overline{2+3i})$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(2+3i)(\overline{2+3i}) &= (2+3i)(2-3i)\\ &= 2^2 - (3i)^2\\ &= 4-(-9)\\ &= 13\end{aligned}$$

Now we can find the multiplicative inverse of $2+3i$.

Example 6

Show that $\frac{1}{2+3i} = \frac{2}{13} - \frac{3}{13}i$.

solution The previous example shows that $(2+3i)(2-3i) = 13$. Dividing both sides of this equation by 13, we see that

$$(2+3i)\left(\frac{2}{13} - \frac{3}{13}i\right) = 1.$$

Thus $\frac{2}{13} - \frac{3}{13}i$ is the complex number that when multiplied by $2+3i$ gives 1. This means that

$$\frac{1}{2+3i} = \frac{2}{13} - \frac{3}{13}i.$$

Geometric interpretations of the complex number system and its arithmetic will be presented in the next section.

The next example shows the procedure for dividing by complex numbers.

Example 7

Evaluate $\frac{3+4i}{2-5i}$.

solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{3+4i}{2-5i} &= \frac{3+4i}{2-5i} \cdot \frac{2+5i}{2+5i}\\ &= \frac{(3+4i)(2+5i)}{(2-5i)(2+5i)}\\ &= \frac{(6-20)+(15+8)i}{2^2+5^2}\\ &= \frac{-14+23i}{29}\\ &= -\frac{14}{29} + \frac{23}{29}i\end{aligned}$$

The idea here is to multiply by 1, expressed as the complex conjugate of the denominator divided by itself.

We have the following formula for division of complex numbers.

Do not memorize this formula. To compute the quotient of complex numbers, just multiply numerator and denominator by the complex conjugate of the denominator; then compute as in the last example.

Division of complex numbers

Suppose a, b, c, and d are real numbers, with $c + di \neq 0$. Then

$$\frac{a+bi}{c+di} = \frac{ac+bd}{c^2+d^2} + \frac{bc-ad}{c^2+d^2}i.$$

Complex conjugation interacts well with algebraic operations. Specifically, the following properties hold.

Properties of complex conjugation

Suppose w and z are complex numbers. Then

- $\overline{\overline{z}} = z$;
- $\overline{w+z} = \overline{w} + \overline{z}$;
- $\overline{w-z} = \overline{w} - \overline{z}$;
- $\overline{w \cdot z} = \overline{w} \cdot \overline{z}$;
- $\overline{z^n} = (\overline{z})^n$ for every positive integer n;
- $\overline{\left(\frac{w}{z}\right)} = \frac{\overline{w}}{\overline{z}}$ if $z \neq 0$;
- $\frac{z+\overline{z}}{2}$ equals the real part of z;
- $\frac{z-\overline{z}}{2i}$ equals the imaginary part of z.

Example 8

Verify the last two properties for $z = 5 + 3i$.

solution We have $\overline{z} = 5 - 3i$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{z+\overline{z}}{2} &= \frac{(5+3i)+(5-3i)}{2} \\ &= \frac{10}{2} \\ &= 5 \\ &= \text{the real part of } z.\end{aligned}$$

The expression $\overline{z}$ is pronounced "z-bar".

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{z-\overline{z}}{2i} &= \frac{(5+3i)-(5-3i)}{2i} \\ &= \frac{6i}{2i} \\ &= 3 \\ &= \text{the imaginary part of } z.\end{aligned}$$

To verify the properties of complex conjugation in general, write the complex numbers w and z in terms of their real and imaginary parts and then compute, as shown in the next example.

Example 9

Show that if w and z are complex numbers, then $\overline{w+z} = \overline{w} + \overline{z}$.

solution Suppose $w = a + bi$ and $z = c + di$, where a, b, c, and d are real numbers. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{w+z} &= \overline{(a+bi)+(c+di)} \\ &= \overline{(a+c)+(b+d)i} \\ &= (a+c)-(b+d)i \\ &= (a-bi)+(c-di) \\ &= \overline{w}+\overline{z}.\end{aligned}$$

The other properties of complex conjugation can be verified in a similar fashion.

Zeros and Factorization of Polynomials, Revisited

In Section 2.2 we saw that the equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

has solutions

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

provided $b^2 - 4ac \geq 0$. If we are willing to consider solutions that are complex numbers, then the formula above is valid (with the same derivation) without the restriction that $b^2 - 4ac \geq 0$.

The following example illustrates how the quadratic formula can be used to find complex zeros of quadratic functions.

Example 10

Find the complex numbers z such that $z^2 - 2z + 5 = 0$.

solution Using the quadratic formula, we have

$$\begin{aligned}z &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{4 - 4 \cdot 5}}{2} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm \sqrt{-16}}{2} \\ &= \frac{2 \pm 4i}{2} \\ &= 1 \pm 2i.\end{aligned}$$

Note that $\sqrt{-16}$ has been simplified to $\pm 4i$, which is correct because $(\pm 4i)^2 = -16$.

In the example above, the quadratic polynomial has two zeros, namely

$$1 + 2i \quad \text{and} \quad 1 - 2i,$$

that are complex conjugates of each other. This behavior is not a coincidence, even for higher-degree polynomials where the quadratic formula plays no role, as shown by the following example.

Example 11

Let p be the polynomial defined by

$$p(z) = z^{12} - 6z^{11} + 13z^{10} + 2z^2 - 12z + 26.$$

Suppose you have been told (accurately) that $3 + 2i$ is a zero of p. Show that $3 - 2i$ is a zero of p.

solution We have been told that $p(3 + 2i) = 0$, which can be written as

$$0 = (3 + 2i)^{12} - 6(3 + 2i)^{11} + 13(3 + 2i)^{10} + 2(3 + 2i)^2 - 12(3 + 2i) + 26.$$

We need to verify that $p(3 - 2i) = 0$. This could be done by a long computation that would involve evaluating $(3 - 2i)^{12}$ and the other terms of $p(3 - 2i)$. However, we can get the desired result without calculation by taking the complex conjugate of both sides of the equation above and then using the properties of complex conjugation, getting

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \overline{(3 + 2i)^{12} - 6(3 + 2i)^{11} + 13(3 + 2i)^{10} + 2(3 + 2i)^2 - 12(3 + 2i) + 26} \\ &= \overline{(3 + 2i)^{12}} - \overline{6(3 + 2i)^{11}} + \overline{13(3 + 2i)^{10}} + \overline{2(3 + 2i)^2} - \overline{12(3 + 2i)} + \overline{26} \\ &= (3 - 2i)^{12} - 6(3 - 2i)^{11} + 13(3 - 2i)^{10} + 2(3 - 2i)^2 - 12(3 - 2i) + 26 \\ &= p(3 - 2i). \end{aligned}$$

The technique used in the example above can be used more generally to give the following result.

This result states that nonreal zeros of a polynomial p with real coefficients come in pairs. In other words, if a and b are real numbers and $a + bi$ is a zero of p, then so is $a - bi$.

Conjugate Zeros Theorem

Suppose p is a polynomial with real coefficients. If z is a complex number that is a zero of p, then $\overline{z}$ is also a zero of p.

We can think about five increasingly large number systems—the positive integers, the integers, the rational numbers, the real numbers, the complex numbers—with each successive number system viewed as an extension of the previous system to allow new kinds of equations to be solved:

- The equation $x + 2 = 0$ leads to the negative number $x = -2$. More generally, the equation $x + m = 0$, where m is a nonnegative integer, leads to the set of integers.
- The equation $5x = 3$ leads to the fraction $x = \frac{3}{5}$. More generally, the equation $nx = m$, where m and n are integers with $n \neq 0$, leads to the set of rational numbers.
- The equation $x^2 = 2$ leads to the irrational numbers $x = \pm\sqrt{2}$. More generally, the notion that the real line contains no holes leads to the set of real numbers.
- The equation $x^2 = -1$ leads to the complex numbers $x = \pm i$. More generally, the quadratic equation $x^2 + bx + c = 0$, where b and c are real numbers, leads to the set of complex numbers.

We already know that every polynomial with odd degree has a zero; see Section 2.4.

The progression above makes it reasonable to guess that we need to add new kinds of numbers to solve polynomial equations of higher degree. For example, there is no obvious solution within the complex number system to the equation $x^4 = -1$. Do we need to invent yet another new kind of number to solve this equation? And then yet another new kind of number to solve sixth-degree equations, and so on?

Somewhat surprisingly, rather than a continuing sequence of new kinds of numbers, we can stay within the complex numbers and still be assured that polynomial equations of every degree have solutions. We will soon state this result more precisely. However, first we turn to the next example, which shows that a solution to the equation $x^4 = -1$ does indeed exist within the complex number system.

Example 12

Verify that $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right)^4 = -1$.

solution We have

$$\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right)^2 = \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)^2 + 2 \cdot \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i - \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)^2$$
$$= i.$$

Thus

$$\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right)^4 = \left(\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right)^2\right)^2$$
$$= i^2$$
$$= -1.$$

The next result is so important that it is called the **Fundamental Theorem of Algebra**. The proof of this result requires techniques from advanced mathematics and thus cannot be given here.

The German mathematician Carl Friedrich Gauss, shown here on an old German 10-mark bill, proved the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra in 1799, when he was 22 years old.

Fundamental Theorem of Algebra

Suppose p is a polynomial of degree $n \geq 1$. Then there exist complex numbers $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n$ and a number c such that

$$p(z) = c(z - t_1)(z - t_2) \ldots (z - t_n)$$

for every complex number z.

The following remarks may help lead to a better understanding of the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra:

- The factorization above shows that $p(t_1) = p(t_2) = \cdots = p(t_n) = 0$. Thus each of the numbers $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n$ is a zero of p. Furthermore, p has no other zeros, as can be seen from the factorization above.

The complex numbers $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n$ in the factorization above are not necessarily distinct. For example, if $p(z) = z^2 - 2z + 1$, then $c = 1$, $t_1 = 1$, and $t_2 = 1$.

- The number c is the coefficient of z^n in the expression $p(z)$. Thus if z^n has coefficient 1, then $c = 1$.
- In the statement of the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, we have not specified whether the polynomial p has real coefficients or complex coefficients. The result is true either way. However, even if all the coefficients are real, then the numbers $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n$ cannot necessarily be assumed to be real numbers. For example, if $p(z) = z^2 + 1$, then the factorization promised by the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra is $p(z) = (z - i)(z + i)$.
- The Fundamental Theorem of Algebra is an existence theorem. It does not tell us how to find the zeros of p or how to factor p. Thus, for example, although we are assured that the equation $z^6 = -1$ has a solution in the complex number system (because the polynomial $z^6 + 1$ must have a complex zero), the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra does not tell us how to find a solution (but for this specific polynomial, see Problem 45).

The next section shows how to compute fractional powers using complex numbers.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–34, write each expression in the form $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers.

1 $(4+2i)+(3+8i)$

2 $(5+7i)+(4+6i)$

3 $(5+3i)-(2+9i)$

4 $(9+2i)-(6+7i)$

5 $(6+2i)-(9-7i)$

6 $(1+3i)-(6-5i)$

7 $(2+3i)(4+5i)$

8 $(5+6i)(2+7i)$

9 $(2+3i)(4-5i)$

10 $(5+6i)(2-7i)$

11 $(4-3i)(2-6i)$

12 $(8-4i)(2-3i)$

13 $(3+4i)^2$

14 $(6+5i)^2$

15 $(5-2i)^2$

16 $(4-7i)^2$

17 $(4+\sqrt{3}i)^2$

18 $(5+\sqrt{6}i)^2$

19 $(\sqrt{5}-\sqrt{7}i)^2$

20 $(\sqrt{11}-\sqrt{3}i)^2$

21 $(2+3i)^3$

22 $(4+3i)^3$

23 $(1+\sqrt{3}i)^3$

24 $\left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)^3$

25 i^{8001}

26 i^{1003}

27 $\overline{8+3i}$

28 $\overline{-7+\frac{2}{3}i}$

29 $\overline{-5-6i}$

30 $\overline{\frac{5}{3}-9i}$

31 $\frac{1+2i}{3+4i}$

32 $\frac{5+6i}{2+3i}$

33 $\frac{4+3i}{5-2i}$

34 $\frac{3-4i}{6-5i}$

35 Find two complex numbers z that satisfy the equation $z^2+4z+6=0$.

36 Find two complex numbers z that satisfy the equation $2z^2+4z+5=0$.

37 Find real numbers a and b such that $2+3i$ and $2-3i$ are roots of the polynomial x^2+ax+b.

38 Find real numbers a and b such that $5+4i$ and $5-4i$ are roots of the polynomial x^2+ax+b.

39 Find a complex number whose square equals $5+12i$.

40 Find a complex number whose square equals $21-20i$.

41 Find two complex numbers whose sum equals 7 and whose product equals 13.
[*Compare to Problem 99 in Section 2.2.*]

42 Find two complex numbers whose sum equals 5 and whose product equals 11.

Problems

43 Write out a table showing the values of i^n with n ranging over the integers from 1 to 12. Describe the pattern that emerges.

44 Verify that

$$(\sqrt{3}+i)^6=-64.$$

45 Explain why the previous problem implies that

$$\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}+\frac{1}{2}i\right)^6=-1.$$

46 Show that addition of complex numbers is commutative, meaning that

$$w+z=z+w$$

for all complex numbers w and z.
[*Hint:* Show that

$$(a+bi)+(c+di)=(c+di)+(a+bi)$$

for all real numbers a, b, c, and d.]

47 Show that addition of complex numbers is associative, meaning that

$$u+(w+z)=(u+w)+z$$

for all complex numbers u, w, and z.

48 Show that multiplication of complex numbers is commutative, meaning that

$$wz=zw$$

for all complex numbers w and z.

49 Show that multiplication of complex numbers is associative, meaning that

$$u(wz)=(uw)z$$

for all complex numbers u, w, and z.

50 Show that addition and multiplication of complex numbers satisfy the distributive property, meaning that

$$u(w+z)=uw+uz$$

for all complex numbers u, w, and z.

51 Suppose w and z are complex numbers such that the real part of wz equals the real part of w times the real part of z. Explain why either w or z must be a real number.

52 Suppose z is a complex number. Show that z is a real number if and only if $z=\overline{z}$.

53 Suppose z is a complex number. Show that $\overline{z}=-z$ if and only if the real part of z equals 0.

54 Show that $\overline{\overline{z}}=z$ for every complex number z.

55 Show that $\overline{w-z}=\overline{w}-\overline{z}$ for all complex numbers w and z.

56 Show that $\overline{w\cdot z}=\overline{w}\cdot\overline{z}$ for all complex numbers w and z.

57 Show that $\overline{z^n}=(\overline{z})^n$ for every complex number z and every positive integer n.

58 Show that if $a+bi\neq 0$, then

$$\frac{1}{a+bi}=\frac{a-bi}{a^2+b^2}.$$

59 Suppose w and z are complex numbers, with $z \neq 0$. Show that $\overline{\left(\frac{w}{z}\right)} = \frac{\overline{w}}{\overline{z}}$.

60 Suppose z is a complex number. Show that $\frac{z+\overline{z}}{2}$ equals the real part of z.

61 Suppose z is a complex number. Show that $\frac{z-\overline{z}}{2i}$ equals the imaginary part of z.

62 Show that if p is a polynomial with real coefficients, then

$$p(\overline{z}) = \overline{p(z)}$$

for every complex number z.

63 Explain why the result in the previous problem implies that if p is a polynomial with real coefficients and z is a complex number that is a zero of p, then $\overline{z}$ is also a zero of p.

64 Suppose f is a quadratic function with real coefficients and no real zeros. Show that the average of the two complex zeros of f is the first coordinate of the vertex of the graph of f.

65 Suppose

$$f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c,$$

where $a \neq 0$ and $b^2 < 4ac$. Verify by direct substitution into the formula above that

$$f\left(\frac{-b + \sqrt{4ac - b^2}i}{2a}\right) = 0$$

and

$$f\left(\frac{-b - \sqrt{4ac - b^2}i}{2a}\right) = 0.$$

66 Suppose $a \neq 0$ and $b^2 < 4ac$. Verify by direct calculation that

$$ax^2 + bx + c = a\left(x - \frac{-b + \sqrt{4ac - b^2}i}{2a}\right)\left(x - \frac{-b - \sqrt{4ac - b^2}i}{2a}\right).$$

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

For Exercises 1–34, write each expression in the form $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers.

1 $(4 + 2i) + (3 + 8i)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(4 + 2i) + (3 + 8i) &= (4 + 3) + (2 + 8)i \\ &= 7 + 10i\end{aligned}$$

3 $(5 + 3i) - (2 + 9i)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(5 + 3i) - (2 + 9i) &= (5 - 2) + (3 - 9)i \\ &= 3 - 6i\end{aligned}$$

5 $(6 + 2i) - (9 - 7i)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(6 + 2i) - (9 - 7i) &= (6 - 9) + (2 + 7)i \\ &= -3 + 9i\end{aligned}$$

7 $(2 + 3i)(4 + 5i)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(2 + 3i)(4 + 5i) &= (2 \cdot 4 - 3 \cdot 5) + (2 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 4)i \\ &= -7 + 22i\end{aligned}$$

9 $(2 + 3i)(4 - 5i)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(2 + 3i)(4 - 5i) &= (2 \cdot 4 + 3 \cdot 5) + \big(2 \cdot (-5) + 3 \cdot 4\big)i \\ &= 23 + 2i\end{aligned}$$

11 $(4 - 3i)(2 - 6i)$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}&(4 - 3i)(2 - 6i) \\ &\quad = (4 \cdot 2 - 3 \cdot 6) + \big(4 \cdot (-6) + (-3) \cdot 2\big)i \\ &\quad = -10 - 30i\end{aligned}$$

13 $(3 + 4i)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(3 + 4i)^2 &= 3^2 + 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4i + (4i)^2 \\ &= 9 + 24i - 16 \\ &= -7 + 24i\end{aligned}$$

15 $(5 - 2i)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(5 - 2i)^2 &= 5^2 - 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 2i + (2i)^2 \\ &= 25 - 20i - 4 \\ &= 21 - 20i\end{aligned}$$

17 $(4 + \sqrt{3}i)^2$

solution

$$\begin{aligned}(4 + \sqrt{3}i)^2 &= 4^2 + 2 \cdot 4 \cdot \sqrt{3}i + (\sqrt{3}i)^2 \\ &= 16 + 8\sqrt{3}i - 3 \\ &= 13 + 8\sqrt{3}i\end{aligned}$$

19 $(\sqrt{5}-\sqrt{7}i)^2$

solution

$$(\sqrt{5}-\sqrt{7}i)^2 = \sqrt{5}^2 - 2\cdot\sqrt{5}\cdot\sqrt{7}i + (\sqrt{7}i)^2$$
$$= 5 - 2\sqrt{35}i - 7$$
$$= -2 - 2\sqrt{35}i$$

21 $(2+3i)^3$

solution First we compute $(2+3i)^2$:

$$(2+3i)^2 = 2^2 + 2\cdot 2\cdot 3i + (3i)^2$$
$$= 4 + 12i - 9$$
$$= -5 + 12i.$$

Now

$$(2+3i)^3 = (2+3i)^2(2+3i)$$
$$= (-5+12i)(2+3i)$$
$$= (-10-36) + (-15+24)i$$
$$= -46 + 9i.$$

23 $(1+\sqrt{3}i)^3$

solution First we compute $(1+\sqrt{3}i)^2$:

$$(1+\sqrt{3}i)^2 = 1^2 + 2\cdot 1\cdot\sqrt{3}i + (\sqrt{3}i)^2$$
$$= 1 + 2\sqrt{3}i - 3$$
$$= -2 + 2\sqrt{3}i.$$

Now

$$(1+\sqrt{3}i)^3 = (1+\sqrt{3}i)^2(1+\sqrt{3}i)$$
$$= (-2+2\sqrt{3}i)(1+\sqrt{3}i)$$
$$= (-2-2\sqrt{3}^2) + (-2\sqrt{3}+2\sqrt{3})i$$
$$= -8.$$

25 i^{8001}

solution

$$i^{8001} = i^{8000}i = (i^2)^{4000}i$$
$$= (-1)^{4000}i = i$$

27 $\overline{8+3i}$

solution $\overline{8+3i} = 8-3i$

29 $\overline{-5-6i}$

solution $\overline{-5-6i} = -5+6i$

31 $\frac{1+2i}{3+4i}$

solution

$$\frac{1+2i}{3+4i} = \frac{1+2i}{3+4i}\cdot\frac{3-4i}{3-4i}$$
$$= \frac{(1+2i)(3-4i)}{(3+4i)(3-4i)}$$
$$= \frac{(3+8)+(-4+6)i}{3^2+4^2}$$
$$= \frac{11+2i}{25}$$
$$= \frac{11}{25} + \frac{2}{25}i$$

33 $\frac{4+3i}{5-2i}$

solution

$$\frac{4+3i}{5-2i} = \frac{4+3i}{5-2i}\cdot\frac{5+2i}{5+2i}$$
$$= \frac{(4+3i)(5+2i)}{(5-2i)(5+2i)}$$
$$= \frac{(20-6)+(8+15)i}{5^2+2^2}$$
$$= \frac{14+23i}{29} = \frac{14}{29} + \frac{23}{29}i$$

35 Find two complex numbers z that satisfy the equation $z^2+4z+6=0$.

solution By the quadratic formula, we have

$$z = \frac{-4\pm\sqrt{4^2-4\cdot 6}}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-4\pm\sqrt{-8}}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-4\pm\sqrt{8}i}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-4\pm\sqrt{4\cdot 2}i}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-4\pm 2\sqrt{2}i}{2}$$
$$= -2\pm\sqrt{2}i.$$

37 Find real numbers a and b such that $2+3i$ and $2-3i$ are roots of the polynomial x^2+ax+b.

solution The polynomial

$$\big(x-(2+3i)\big)\big(x-(2-3i)\big)$$

has $2+3i$ and $2-3i$ as its roots. The polynomial above is equal to

$$x^2 - 4x + 13.$$

Thus we take $a = -4$ and $b = 13$.

39 Find a complex number whose square equals $5 + 12i$.

solution We seek real numbers a and b such that

$$5 + 12i = (a + bi)^2 = (a^2 - b^2) + 2abi.$$

The equation above implies that

$$a^2 - b^2 = 5 \quad \text{and} \quad 2ab = 12.$$

Solving the last equation for b, we have $b = \frac{6}{a}$. Substituting this value of b in the first equation gives

$$a^2 - \frac{36}{a^2} = 5.$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation above by a^2 and then moving all terms to one side produces the equation

$$0 = (a^2)^2 - 5a^2 - 36.$$

Think of a^2 as the unknown in the equation above. We can solve for a^2 either by factorization or by using the quadratic formula. For this particular equation, factorization is easy; we have

$$0 = (a^2)^2 - 5a^2 - 36 = (a^2 - 9)(a^2 + 4).$$

The equation above shows that we must choose $a^2 = 9$ or $a^2 = -4$. However, the equation $a^2 = -4$ is not satisfied for any real number a, and thus we must choose $a^2 = 9$, which implies that $a = 3$ or $a = -3$. Choosing $a = 3$, we can now solve for b in the original equation $2ab = 12$, getting $b = 2$.

Thus $3 + 2i$ is our candidate for a solution. Checking, we have

$$(3 + 2i)^2 = 3^2 + 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2i - 2^2 = 5 + 12i,$$

as desired.

The other correct solution is $-3 - 2i$, which we would have obtained by choosing $a = -3$.

41 Find two complex numbers whose sum equals 7 and whose product equals 13.

solution Let's call the two numbers w and z. We want

$$w + z = 7 \quad \text{and} \quad wz = 13.$$

Solving the first equation for w, we have $w = 7 - z$. Substituting this expression for w into the second equation gives $(7 - z)z = 13$, which is equivalent to the equation

$$z^2 - 7z + 13 = 0.$$

Using the quadratic formula to solve this equation for z gives

$$z = \frac{7 \pm \sqrt{7^2 - 4 \cdot 13}}{2} = \frac{7 \pm \sqrt{-3}}{2} = \frac{7 \pm \sqrt{3}i}{2}.$$

Let's choose the solution $z = \frac{7+\sqrt{3}i}{2}$. Plugging this value of z into the equation $w = 7 - z$ then gives $w = \frac{7-\sqrt{3}i}{2}$. Thus two complex numbers whose sum equals 7 and whose product equals 13 are $\frac{7-\sqrt{3}i}{2}$ and $\frac{7+\sqrt{3}i}{2}$.

check To check that this solution is correct, note that

$$\frac{7 - \sqrt{3}i}{2} + \frac{7 + \sqrt{3}i}{2} = \frac{14}{2} = 7$$

and

$$\frac{7 - \sqrt{3}i}{2} \cdot \frac{7 + \sqrt{3}i}{2} = \frac{7^2 + \sqrt{3}^2}{4} = \frac{49 + 3}{4} = \frac{52}{4} = 13.$$

7.4 The Complex Plane

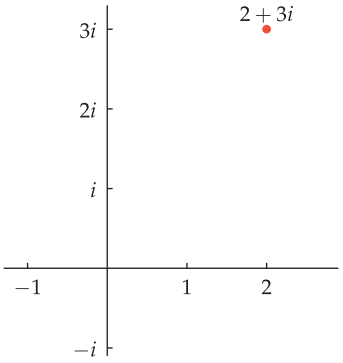
Learning Objectives

By the end of this section you should be able to

- compute the absolute value of a complex number;
- write a complex number in polar form;
- compute large powers of complex numbers using De Moivre's Theorem;
- compute roots of complex numbers using De Moivre's Theorem.

Complex Numbers as Points in the Plane

Recall that a complex number has the form $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers and $i^2 = -1$. We turn now to an interpretation of the coordinate plane that will help us better understand the complex number system.



The complex number $2 + 3i$ as a point in the complex plane.

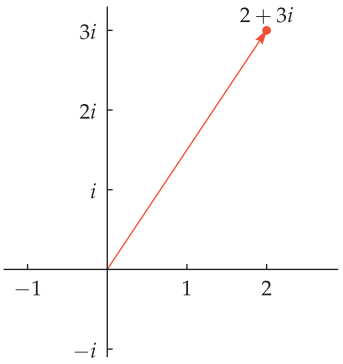
The complex plane

- Label the horizontal axis of a coordinate plane in the usual fashion but label the vertical axis with multiples of i, as shown in the figure.
- Identify the complex number $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers, with the point (a, b).
- The coordinate plane with this interpretation of points as complex numbers is called the **complex plane**.

We can think of the system of complex numbers as being represented by the complex plane, just as we can think of the system of real numbers as being represented by the real line.

Each real number is also a complex number. For example, the real number 3 is also the complex number $3 + 0i$, which we usually write as just 3.

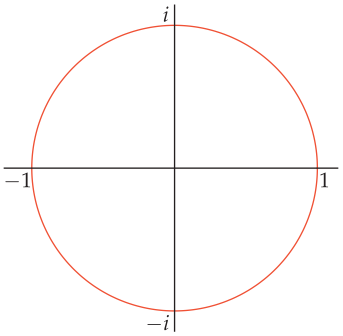
When we think of the real numbers also being the complex numbers, then the real numbers correspond to the horizontal axis in the complex plane. Thus the horizontal axis of the complex plane is sometimes called the **real axis** and the vertical axis is sometimes called the **imaginary axis**.



The complex number $2 + 3i$ as a vector in the complex plane.

Sometimes we identify a complex number $a + bi$ with the vector whose initial point is the origin and whose endpoint is located at the point corresponding to $a + bi$ in the complex plane, as shown here. Because complex numbers are added and subtracted by adding and subtracting their real and imaginary parts separately, complex addition and subtraction have the same geometric interpretation as vector addition and subtraction.

Recall that the absolute value of a real number is the distance from 0 to the number (when thinking of numbers as points on the real line). Similarly, the absolute value of a complex number is defined to be the distance from the origin to the complex number (when thinking of complex numbers as points on the complex plane). Here is the formal definition.



The unit circle in the complex plane is described by the equation $|z| = 1$.

Absolute value of a complex number

If $z = a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers, then the **absolute value** of z, denoted $|z|$, is defined by

$$|z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

When thinking of complex numbers as vectors in the complex plane, the absolute value of a complex number is simply the magnitude of the corresponding vector.

Example 1

Evaluate $|2+3i|$.

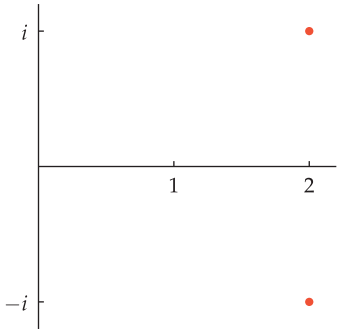
solution $|2+3i| = \sqrt{2^2+3^2} = \sqrt{13} \approx 3.60555$

Example 2

Show that $|\cos\theta + i\sin\theta| = 1$ for every real number θ.

solution $|\cos\theta + i\sin\theta| = \sqrt{\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta} = \sqrt{1} = 1$

Recall that the complex conjugate of a complex number $a+bi$, where a and b are real numbers, is denoted by $\overline{a+bi}$ and is defined by $\overline{a+bi} = a-bi$. In terms of the complex plane, the operation of complex conjugation is the same as flipping across the real axis. The figure here shows a complex number and its complex conjugate.



$2+i$ *and its complex conjugate* $2-i$.

A nice formula connects the complex conjugate and the absolute value of a complex number. To derive this formula, suppose $z = a+bi$, where a and b are real numbers. Then

$$z\bar{z} = (a+bi)(a-bi) = a^2 - b^2i^2 = a^2 + b^2 = |z|^2.$$

We record this result as follows.

Complex conjugates and absolute values

If z is a complex number, then

$$z\bar{z} = |z|^2.$$

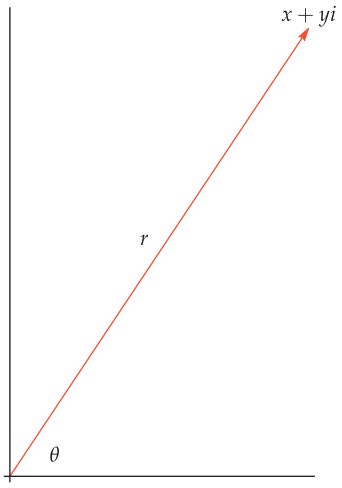
Geometric Interpretation of Complex Multiplication and Division

As we will soon see, using polar coordinates with complex numbers can bring extra insight into the operations of multiplication, division, and raising a complex number to a power.

Suppose $z = x+yi$, where x and y are real numbers. We identify z with the point (x,y) in the complex plane. If (x,y) has polar coordinates (r,θ), then $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$. Thus

Here we think of a complex number as a point in the complex plane and then use the polar coordinates that were developed in Section 7.1.

$$\begin{aligned} z &= x + yi \\ &= r\cos\theta + ir\sin\theta \\ &= r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta). \end{aligned}$$



The equation above leads to the following definition.

Polar form of a complex number

The **polar form** of a complex number z is an expression of the form

$$z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta),$$

where $r = |z|$ and θ, which is called the **argument** of z, is the angle that z (thought of as a vector) makes with the positive horizontal axis.

When writing a complex number z in polar form, there is only one correct choice for the number $r \geq 0$ in the expression above: we must choose $r = |z|$. However, given any correct choice for the argument θ, another correct choice can be found by adding an integer multiple of 2π.

Example 3

Write the following complex numbers in polar form.

(a) 2

(b) $3i$

(c) $1 + i$

(d) $\sqrt{3} - i$

(e) $-\sqrt{3} + i$

solution

(a) We have $|2| = 2$. Also, because 2 is on the positive horizontal axis, the argument of 2 is 0. Thus the polar form of 2 is

$$2 = 2(\cos 0 + i \sin 0).$$

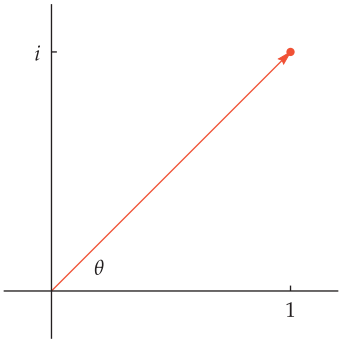
We could also write

$$2 = 2\big(\cos(2\pi) + i \sin(2\pi)\big) \quad \text{or} \quad 2 = 2\big(\cos(4\pi) + i \sin(4\pi)\big)$$

or use any integer multiple of 2π as the argument.

(b) We have $|3i| = 3$. Also, because $3i$ is on the positive vertical axis, the argument of $3i$ is $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Thus the polar form of $3i$ is

$$3i = 3(\cos \tfrac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \tfrac{\pi}{2}).$$



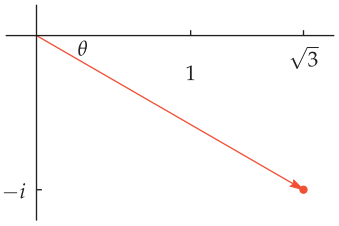
As usual, we could add any integer multiple of 2π to the argument $\frac{\pi}{2}$ to obtain other arguments.

(c) We have

$$|1 + i| = \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{2}.$$

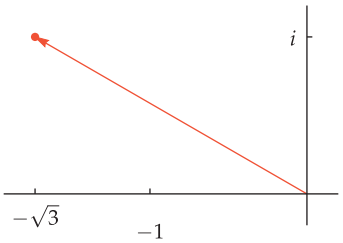
Also, the figure here shows that the argument θ of $1 + i$ is $\frac{\pi}{4}$. Thus the polar form of $1 + i$ is

$$1 + i = \sqrt{2}(\cos \tfrac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \tfrac{\pi}{4}).$$



(d) We have $|\sqrt{3} - i| = \sqrt{\sqrt{3}^2 + (-1)^2} = \sqrt{3+1} = 2$. Note that $\tan^{-1}(\frac{-1}{\sqrt{3}}) = -\frac{\pi}{6}$. Thus the figure here shows that the argument θ of $\sqrt{3} - i$ is $-\frac{\pi}{6}$. Thus the polar form of $\sqrt{3} - i$ is

$$\sqrt{3} - i = 2\big(\cos(-\tfrac{\pi}{6}) + i \sin(-\tfrac{\pi}{6})\big).$$



(e) We have $|-\sqrt{3} + i| = \sqrt{(-\sqrt{3})^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{3+1} = 2$. Note that $\tan^{-1}(\frac{1}{-\sqrt{3}}) = -\frac{\pi}{6}$. Although the angle $-\frac{\pi}{6}$ has the correct tangent, its cosine and sine have the wrong sign. As can be seen in the figure, the angle we seek is $-\frac{\pi}{6} + \pi$, which equals $\frac{5\pi}{6}$. Thus the polar form of $-\sqrt{3} + i$ is

$$-\sqrt{3} + i = 2(\cos \tfrac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \tfrac{5\pi}{6}).$$

This example shows that extra care must be used in finding the argument of a complex number whose real part is negative.

The multiplicative inverse of a complex number has a nice interpretation in polar form. Suppose $z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ is a nonzero complex number (from now on, whenever we write an expression like this, we will assume $r = |z|$ and that θ is a real number). We know that $|z|^2 = z\overline{z}$. Dividing both sides of this equation by $z|z|^2$ shows that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{z} &= \frac{\overline{z}}{|z|^2}\\ &= \frac{r(\cos\theta - i\sin\theta)}{r^2}\\ &= \frac{\cos\theta - i\sin\theta}{r}.\end{aligned}$$

We record this result as follows.

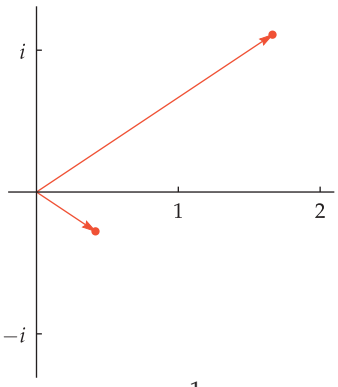
Multiplicative inverse of a complex number in polar form

If $z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ is a nonzero complex number, then

$$\frac{1}{z} = \frac{1}{r}(\cos\theta - i\sin\theta) = \frac{1}{r}\big(\cos(-\theta) + i\sin(-\theta)\big).$$

This result states that the polar form of $\frac{1}{z}$ is obtained from the polar form $r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ of z by replacing r by $\frac{1}{r}$ and replacing θ by $-\theta$.

The figure here illustrates the formula above for the inverse of a complex number. The longer vector represents a complex number z with $|z| = 2$. The shorter vector represents the complex number $\frac{1}{z}$; it has absolute value $\frac{1}{2}$, and its argument is the negative of the argument of z. Thus the angle from the shorter vector to the positive horizontal axis equals the angle from the positive horizontal axis to the longer vector.



z and $\frac{1}{z}$.

Complex multiplication also has a pretty expression in terms of polar form. Suppose

$$z_1 = r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1) \quad \text{and} \quad z_2 = r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2).$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}z_1z_2 &= r_1r_2(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1)(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2)\\ &= r_1r_2\big((\cos\theta_1\cos\theta_2 - \sin\theta_1\sin\theta_2) + i(\sin\theta_1\cos\theta_2 + \cos\theta_1\sin\theta_2)\big)\\ &= r_1r_2\big(\cos(\theta_1+\theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1+\theta_2)\big),\end{aligned}$$

where the addition formulas for cosine and sine from Section 5.6 gave the last simplification.

Thus we have the following result, expressed first as a formula and then in words.

Complex multiplication in polar form

- If $z_1 = r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1)$ and $z_2 = r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2)$, then

$$z_1z_2 = r_1r_2\big(\cos(\theta_1+\theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1+\theta_2)\big).$$

- The absolute value of the product of two complex numbers is the product of their absolute values.
- The argument of the product of two complex numbers is the sum of their arguments.

Example 4

Suppose $z_1 = 3(\cos\frac{\pi}{7} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{7})$ and $z_2 = 4(\cos\frac{3\pi}{7} + i\sin\frac{3\pi}{7})$. Find the polar form of $z_1 z_2$.

solution Using the formula above, we have

$$z_1 z_2 = 3 \cdot 4\big(\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{7} + \tfrac{3\pi}{7}) + i\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{7} + \tfrac{3\pi}{7})\big)$$
$$= 12(\cos\tfrac{4\pi}{7} + i\sin\tfrac{4\pi}{7}).$$

The quotient $\frac{z_1}{z_2}$ can be computed by thinking of division by z_2 as multiplication by $\frac{1}{z_2}$. We already know that the polar form of $\frac{1}{z_2}$ is obtained by replacing r_2 by $\frac{1}{r_2}$ and replacing θ_2 by $-\theta_2$. Thus combining our result on the multiplicative inverse and our result on complex multiplication gives the following result.

Complex division in polar form

- If $z_1 = r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1)$ and $z_2 = r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2)$, then

$$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}\big(\cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)\big).$$

Here we assume $z_2 \neq 0$.

- The absolute value of the quotient of two complex numbers is the quotient of their absolute values.
- The argument of the quotient of two complex numbers is the difference of their arguments.

De Moivre's Theorem

Suppose $z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$. Take $z_1 = z$ and $z_2 = z$ in the formula just derived for complex multiplication in polar form, getting

$$z^2 = r^2\big(\cos(2\theta) + i\sin(2\theta)\big).$$

Now apply the formula again, this time with $z_1 = z^2$ and $z_2 = z$, getting

$$z^3 = r^3\big(\cos(3\theta) + i\sin(3\theta)\big).$$

If we apply the formula once more, this time with $z_1 = z^3$ and $z_2 = z$, we get

$$z^4 = r^4\big(\cos(4\theta) + i\sin(4\theta)\big).$$

This pattern continues, leading to the beautiful result called De Moivre's Theorem.

De Moivre's Theorem

If $z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ and n is a positive integer, then

$$z^n = r^n\big(\cos(n\theta) + i\sin(n\theta)\big).$$

Abraham de Moivre first published this result in 1722.

De Moivre's Theorem is a wonderful tool for evaluating large powers of complex numbers.

Example 5

Evaluate $(\sqrt{3}-i)^{100}$.

solution As the first step in using De Moivre's Theorem, we must write $(\sqrt{3}-i)$ in polar form. However, we already did that in Example 3, getting

$$\sqrt{3}-i = 2\big(\cos(-\tfrac{\pi}{6})+i\sin(-\tfrac{\pi}{6})\big).$$

De Moivre's Theorem tells us that

$$(\sqrt{3}-i)^{100} = 2^{100}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{100}{6}\pi)+i\sin(-\tfrac{100}{6}\pi)\big).$$

Now $-\frac{100}{6}\pi = -\frac{50}{3}\pi = -16\pi - \frac{2}{3}\pi$. Because even multiples of π can be discarded when computing values of cosine and sine, we thus have

$$\begin{aligned}(\sqrt{3}-i)^{100} &= 2^{100}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{2}{3}\pi)+i\sin(-\tfrac{2}{3}\pi)\big)\\ &= 2^{100}(-\tfrac{1}{2}-\tfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i)\\ &= 2^{99}\cdot 2(-\tfrac{1}{2}-\tfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i)\\ &= -2^{99}(1+\sqrt{3}i).\end{aligned}$$

To solve this problem, one could write $(\sqrt{3}-i)^{100}$ as a product with 100 terms and then do the multiplications. However, errors can easily creep into such long and tedious calculations.

Abraham de Moivre, a French mathematician who lived his entire adult life in England, where he was a friend of Isaac Newton.

Finding Complex Roots

De Moivre's Theorem also allows us to find roots of complex numbers.

Example 6

Find three distinct complex numbers z such that $z^3 = 1$.

solution Clearly $z = 1$ is a complex number such that $z^3 = 1$. To find other complex numbers z such that $z^3 = 1$, suppose

$$z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta).$$

De Moivre's Theorem tells us that

$$z^3 = r^3\big(\cos(3\theta)+i\sin(3\theta)\big).$$

We want z^3 to equal 1. Thus we take $r = 1$. Now we must find values of θ such that $\cos(3\theta) = 1$ and $\sin(3\theta) = 0$. One choice is to take $\theta = 0$, which gives us

$$z = 1,$$

which we already knew was one choice for z.

Another choice of θ that satisfies $\cos(3\theta) = 1$ and $\sin(3\theta) = 0$ can be obtained by taking $3\theta = 2\pi$, which means $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$. This choice of θ gives

$$z = -\tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i.$$

Yet another choice of θ that satisfies $\cos(3\theta) = 1$ and $\sin(3\theta) = 0$ can be obtained by taking $3\theta = 4\pi$, which means $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$. This choice of θ gives

$$z = -\tfrac{1}{2}-\tfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i.$$

Thus three distinct values of z such that $z^3 = 1$ are 1, $-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$, and $-\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i$.

Another choice of θ that satisfies $\cos(3\theta) = 1$ and $\sin(3\theta) = 0$ can be obtained by taking $3\theta = 6\pi$, which means $\theta = 2\pi$. This choice of θ gives $z = 1$, which is a possibility that we had already found. Similarly, other choices of θ that satisfy $\cos(3\theta) = 1$ and $\sin(3\theta) = 0$ do not lead to new values for z beyond those we have found here.

Exercises

1 Evaluate $|4-3i|$.

2 Evaluate $|7+12i|$.

3 Find two real numbers b such that $|3+bi|=7$.

4 Find two real numbers a such that $|a-5i|=9$.

5 Write $2-2i$ in polar form.

6 Write $-3+3\sqrt{3}i$ in polar form.

7 Write

$$\frac{1}{6\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{11}+i\sin\frac{\pi}{11}\right)}$$

in polar form.

8 Write

$$\frac{1}{7\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{9}+i\sin\frac{\pi}{9}\right)}$$

in polar form.

9 Write

$$\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{7}+i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{7}\right)\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{9}+i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{9}\right)$$

in polar form.

10 Write

$$\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{5}+i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{5}\right)\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{11}+i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{11}\right)$$

in polar form.

11 Evaluate $(2-2i)^{333}$.

12 Evaluate $(-3+3\sqrt{3}i)^{555}$.

13 Find four distinct complex numbers z such that $z^4=-2$.

14 Find three distinct complex numbers z such that $z^3=4i$.

Problems

15 Explain why there does not exist a real number b such that $|5+bi|=3$.

16 Show that if z is a complex number, then the real part of z is in the interval $[-|z|,|z|]$.

17 Show that if z is a complex number, then the imaginary part of z is in the interval $[-|z|,|z|]$.

18 Show that

$$\frac{1}{\cos\theta+i\sin\theta}=\cos\theta-i\sin\theta$$

for every real number θ.

19 Suppose z is a nonzero complex number. Show that $\overline{z}=\frac{1}{z}$ if and only if $|z|=1$.

20 Suppose z is a complex number whose real part has absolute value equal to $|z|$. Show that z is a real number.

21 Suppose z is a complex number whose imaginary part has absolute value equal to $|z|$. Show that the real part of z equals 0.

22 Suppose w and z are complex numbers. Show that

$$|wz|=|w|\,|z|.$$

23 Suppose w and z are complex numbers. Show that

$$|w+z|\le|w|+|z|.$$

24 Describe the subset of the complex plane consisting of the complex numbers z such that z^3 is a real number.

25 Describe the subset of the complex plane consisting of the complex numbers z such that z^3 is a positive number.

26 Describe the subset of the complex plane consisting of the complex numbers z such that the real part of z^3 is a positive number.

27 Explain why $(\cos1^\circ+i\sin1^\circ)^{360}=1$.

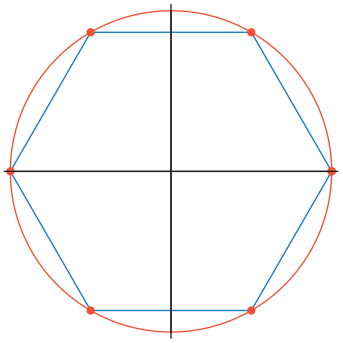
28 Explain why 360 is the smallest positive integer n such that $(\cos1^\circ+i\sin1^\circ)^n=1$.

29 In Example 6, we found cube roots of 1 by finding numbers θ such that

$$\cos(3\theta)=1 \quad\text{and}\quad \sin(3\theta)=0.$$

The three choices $\theta=0$, $\theta=\frac{2\pi}{3}$, and $\theta=\frac{4\pi}{3}$ gave us three distinct cube roots of 1. Other choices of θ, such as $\theta=2\pi$, $\theta=\frac{8\pi}{3}$, and $\theta=\frac{10\pi}{3}$, also satisfy the equations above. Explain why these choices of θ do not give us additional cube roots of 1.

30 Explain why the six distinct complex numbers that are sixth roots of 1 are the vertices of a regular hexagon inscribed in the unit circle.



The dots show the location in the complex plane of the six sixth roots of 1.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

1 Evaluate $|4-3i|$.

solution

$$|4-3i|=\sqrt{4^2+(-3)^2}=\sqrt{16+9}=\sqrt{25}=5$$

3 Find two real numbers b such that $|3+bi|=7$.

solution We have

$$7 = |3 + bi| = \sqrt{9 + b^2}.$$

Squaring both sides, we have $49 = 9 + b^2$. Thus $b^2 = 40$, which implies that

$$b = \pm\sqrt{40} = \pm\sqrt{4 \cdot 10} = \pm\sqrt{4} \cdot \sqrt{10} = \pm 2\sqrt{10}.$$

5 Write $2 - 2i$ in polar form.

solution First we compute $|2 - 2i|$:

$$|2 - 2i| = \sqrt{2^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{8} = \sqrt{4 \cdot 2} = 2\sqrt{2}.$$

The vector whose initial point is the origin and whose endpoint is $2 - 2i$ in the complex plane makes an angle of $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ with the positive horizontal axis. Thus

$$2 - 2i = 2\sqrt{2}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{\pi}{4}) + i\sin(-\tfrac{\pi}{4})\big)$$

gives the polar form of $2 - 2i$.

7 Write

$$\frac{1}{6\big(\cos\frac{\pi}{11} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{11}\big)}$$

in polar form.

solution From the formula for the polar form of the multiplicative inverse of a complex number, we have

$$\frac{1}{6\big(\cos\frac{\pi}{11} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{11}\big)} = \frac{1}{6}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{\pi}{11}) + i\sin(-\tfrac{\pi}{11})\big).$$

9 Write

$$\big(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{7} + i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{7}\big)\big(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{9} + i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{9}\big)$$

in polar form.

solution Because $\frac{\pi}{7} + \frac{\pi}{9} = \frac{16\pi}{63}$, the product above equals

$$\cos\tfrac{16\pi}{63} + i\sin\tfrac{16\pi}{63}.$$

11 Evaluate $(2 - 2i)^{333}$.

solution From Exercise 5 we know that

$$2 - 2i = 2\sqrt{2}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{\pi}{4}) + i\sin(-\tfrac{\pi}{4})\big).$$

Thus

$$(2 - 2i)^{333} = (2\sqrt{2})^{333}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{333}{4}\pi) + i\sin(-\tfrac{333}{4}\pi)\big).$$

Now

$$(2\sqrt{2})^{333} = 2^{333}2^{333/2} = 2^{333}2^{166}\sqrt{2} = 2^{499}\sqrt{2}.$$

Also,

$$-\tfrac{333}{4}\pi = -83\pi - \tfrac{1}{4}\pi = -82\pi - \tfrac{5}{4}\pi.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}(2\sqrt{2})^{333} &= 2^{499}\sqrt{2}\big(\cos(-\tfrac{5}{4}\pi) + i\sin(-\tfrac{5}{4}\pi)\big)\\ &= 2^{499}\sqrt{2}\big(-\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + i\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\big)\\ &= 2^{499}(-1 + i).\end{aligned}$$

13 Find four distinct complex numbers z such that $z^4 = -2$.

solution Suppose $z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$. Then

$$z^4 = r^4\big(\cos(4\theta) + i\sin(4\theta)\big).$$

We want z^4 to equal -2. Thus we need $r^4 = 2$, which implies that $r = 2^{1/4}$.

Now we must find values of θ such that $\cos(4\theta) = -1$ and $\sin(4\theta) = 0$. One choice is to take $4\theta = \pi$, which implies that $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$, which gives us

$$z = 2^{1/4}\big(\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\big).$$

Another choice of θ that satisfies $\cos(4\theta) = -1$ and $\sin(4\theta) = 0$ can be obtained by choosing $4\theta = 3\pi$, which means $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{4}$, which gives us

$$z = 2^{1/4}\big(-\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\big).$$

Yet another choice of θ that satisfies $\cos(4\theta) = -1$ and $\sin(4\theta) = 0$ can be obtained by choosing $4\theta = 5\pi$, which means $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$, which gives us

$$z = 2^{1/4}\big(-\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\big).$$

Yet another choice of θ that satisfies $\cos(4\theta) = -1$ and $\sin(4\theta) = 0$ can be obtained by choosing $4\theta = 7\pi$, which means $\theta = \frac{7\pi}{4}$, which gives us

$$z = 2^{1/4}\big(\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\big).$$

Thus four distinct values of z such that $z^4 = -2$ are $2^{1/4}(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i)$, $2^{1/4}(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i)$, $2^{1/4}(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i)$, and $2^{1/4}(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i)$.

Chapter Summary

To check that you have mastered the most important concepts and skills covered in this chapter, make sure that you can do each item in the following list:

- Convert from polar to rectangular coordinates.
- Convert from rectangular to polar coordinates.
- Graph a curve described by polar coordinates.
- Compute the sum, difference, and dot product of two vectors.
- Determine when two vectors are perpendicular.
- Find the polar form of a complex number.
- Use De Moivre's Theorem to compute powers and roots of complex numbers.

To review a chapter, go through the list above to find items that you do not know how to do, then reread the material in the chapter about those items. Then try to answer the chapter review questions below without looking back at the chapter.

Chapter Review Questions

1 Sketch the line segment from the origin to the point with polar coordinates $(3, \frac{\pi}{3})$.

2 Find the rectangular coordinates of the point whose polar coordinates are $(4, 2.1)$.

3 Find the polar coordinates of the point whose rectangular coordinates are $(5, 9)$.

4 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $r = 7$.

5 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{6}$.

6 Sketch the graph of the polar equation $r = 5\cos\theta$.

7 Find two numbers t so that there is a 60° angle between the vectors $(3, 4)$ and $(2, t)$.

8 Evaluate $\left|\cos\frac{\pi}{11} - i\sin\frac{\pi}{11}\right|$.

9 Write

$$\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{4} + i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{4}\right)\left(\cos\tfrac{\pi}{7} + i\sin\tfrac{\pi}{7}\right)$$

in polar form.

10 Write

$$\frac{2\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{3}\right)}{5\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{7} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{7}\right)}$$

in polar form.

11 Evaluate $(1+i)^{500}$.

12 Find three distinct complex numbers z such that $z^3 = -5i$.

Appendix: Area

You probably already have a good intuitive notion of area. In this appendix we will try to strengthen this intuition while finding formulas for the areas of some regions.

Circumference

A rigorous definition of the circumference of a region requires calculus, so we use the following intuitive definition.

Just for fun, here are the first 504 digits of π.

3.14159265358979323
846264338327950288
419716939937510582
097494459230781640
628620899862803482
534211706798214808
651328230664709384
460955058223172535
940812848111745028
410270193852110555
964462294895493038
196442881097566593
344612847564823378
678316527120190914
564856692346034861
045432664821339360
726024914127372458
700660631558817488
152092096282925409
171536436789259036
001133053054882046
652138414695194151
160943305727036575
959195309218611738
193261179310511854
807446237996274956
735188575272489122
793818301194912983

Circumference

The **circumference** of a region can be determined by placing a string on the curve that surrounds the region and then measuring the length of the string when it is straightened into a line segment.

Physical experiments show that the circumference of a circle is proportional to its diameter. For example, suppose you have a very accurate ruler that can measure lengths with 0.01-inch accuracy. If you place a string on top of a circle with diameter 1 inch, then straighten the string to a line segment, you will find that the string has length about 3.14 inches. Similarly, if you place a string on top of a circle with diameter 2 inches, then straighten the string to a line segment, you will find that the string has length about 6.28 inches. Thus the circumference of a circle with diameter two inches is twice the circumference of a circle with diameter 1 inch.

The circle on the left has been straightened into the line segment on the right. A measurement shows that this line segment is approximately 3.14 *times as long as the diameter of the circle, which is shown above in blue.*

Similarly, you will find that for any circle you measure, the ratio of the circumference to the diameter is approximately 3.14. The exact value of this ratio is so important that it gets its own symbol.

Does the decimal expansion of π contain one thousand consecutive 4's? No one knows, but mathematicians suspect that the answer is "yes".

π

The ratio of the circumference to the diameter of a circle is called π.

It turns out that π is an irrational number (see Problem 55 in Section 4.4). For most practical purposes, 3.14 is a good approximation of π—the error is about 0.05%. If more accurate computations are needed, then 3.1416 is an even better approximation—the error is about 0.0002%.

A fraction that approximates π well is $\frac{22}{7}$ (notice how page 22 is numbered in this book)—the error is about 0.04%. A fraction that approximates π even better is $\frac{355}{113}$—the error is extremely small at about 0.000008%.

The remarkable approximation $\pi \approx \frac{355}{113}$ was discovered over 1500 years ago by the Chinese mathematician Zu Chongzhi.

Keep in mind that π is not equal to 3.14 or 3.1416 or $\frac{22}{7}$ or $\frac{355}{113}$. All of these are useful approximations, but π is an irrational number that cannot be represented exactly as a decimal number or as a fraction.

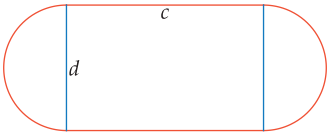
We have defined π to be the number such that a circle with diameter d has circumference πd. Because the diameter of a circle is equal to twice the radius, we have the following formula.

Circumference of a circle

A circle with radius r has circumference $2\pi r$.

Example 1

Suppose you want to design a 400-meter track consisting of two half-circles connected by parallel line segments. Suppose also that you want the total length of the curved part of the track to equal the total length of the straight part of the track. What dimensions should the track have?



solution Let c denote the length of one of the straight sides of the track, and let d denote the distance between the two straight sides, as shown in the figure here.

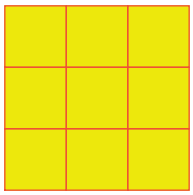
We want the total length of the straight part of the track to be 200 meters. Thus each of the two straight pieces must be 100 meters long. Hence we take $c = 100$ meters.

We also want the total length of the two half-circles to be 200 meters. Thus we want $\pi d = 200$. Hence we take $d = \frac{200}{\pi} \approx 63.66$ meters.

Squares, Rectangles, and Parallelograms

A 1-by-1 square.

The most primitive notion of area is that a 1-by-1 square has area 1. If we can decompose a region into 1-by-1 squares, then the area of that region is the number of 1-by-1 squares into which it can be decomposed, as shown in the next figure.



A 3-by-3 square can be decomposed into nine 1-by-1 squares. Thus a 3-by-3 square has area 9.

The expression m^2 is called "m squared" because a square whose sides have length m has area m^2.

If m is a positive integer, then an m-by-m square can be decomposed into m^2 squares of size 1-by-1. Thus the area of an m-by-m square equals m^2.

The same formula holds for squares whose side length is not necessarily an integer, as shown below.

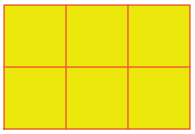
Four $\frac{1}{2}$-by-$\frac{1}{2}$ squares fill up a 1-by-1 square. Thus each $\frac{1}{2}$-by-$\frac{1}{2}$ square has area $\frac{1}{4}$.

More generally, we have the following formula.

Area of a square

A square whose sides have length ℓ has area ℓ^2.

Consider a rectangle with base 3 and height 2, as shown here. This 3-by-2 rectangle can be decomposed into six 1-by-1 squares. Thus this rectangle has area 6.



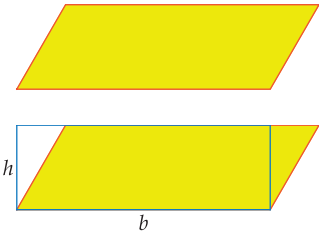
Similarly, if b and h are positive integers, then a rectangle with base b and height h can be composed into bh squares of size 1-by-1, showing that the rectangle has area bh. More generally, the same formula is valid even if the base and height are not integers.

Use the same units for the base and the height. The unit of measurement for area is then the square of the unit used for these lengths. For example, a rectangle with base 3 feet and height 2 feet has area 6 square feet.

Area of a rectangle

A rectangle with base b and height h has area bh.

A **parallelogram** is a quadrilateral (a four-sided polygon) in which both pairs of opposite sides are parallel, as shown here.



To find the area of a parallelogram, select one of the sides and call its length the **base**. The opposite side of the parallelogram will have the same length. The **height** of the parallelogram is then defined to be the length of a line segment that connects these two sides and is perpendicular to both of them. Thus in the figure shown here, the parallelogram has base b and both vertical line segments have length equal to the height h.

The yellow region is a parallelogram with base b and height h. The area of the parallelogram is the same as the area of the rectangle (outlined in blue) with base b and height h.

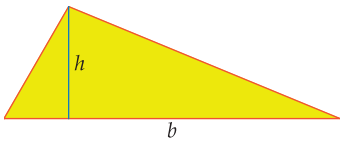
The two small triangles in the figure above have the same size and thus the same area. The rectangle in the figure above (outlined in blue) could be obtained from the parallelogram by moving the triangle on the right to the position of the triangle on the left. This shows that the parallelogram and the rectangle above have the same area. Because the area of the rectangle equals bh, we thus have the following formula for the area of a parallelogram.

Area of a parallelogram

A parallelogram with base b and height h has area bh.

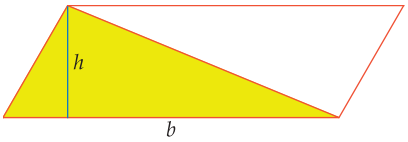
Triangles and Trapezoids

To find the area of a triangle, select one of the sides and call its length the **base**. The **height** of the triangle is then defined to be the length of the perpendicular line segment that connects the opposite vertex to the side determining the base, as shown in the figure here.



A triangle with base b and height h.

To derive the formula for the area of a triangle with base b and height h, draw two line segments, each parallel to and the same length as one of the sides of the triangle, to form a parallelogram as in the figure below.



The triangle has been extended to a parallelogram by adjoining a second triangle with the same side lengths as the original triangle.

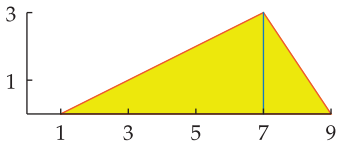
The parallelogram above has base b and height h and hence has area bh. The original triangle has area equal to half the area of the parallelogram. Thus we obtain the following formula.

Area of a triangle

A triangle with base b and height h has area $\frac{1}{2}bh$.

Example 2

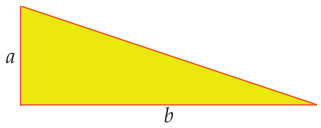
Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(1,0)$, $(9,0)$, and $(7,3)$.



solution Choose the side connecting $(1,0)$ and $(9,0)$ as the base of this triangle. Thus this triangle has base $9-1$, which equals 8.

The height of this triangle is the length of the blue line shown here; this height equals the second coordinate of the vertex $(7,3)$. Hence this triangle has height 3.

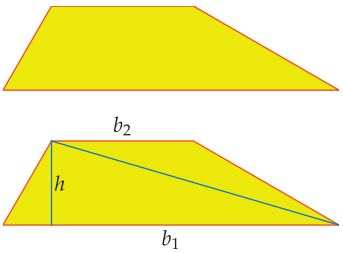
Thus this triangle has area $\frac{1}{2} \cdot 8 \cdot 3$, which equals 12.



A right triangle with area $\frac{1}{2}ab$.

Consider the special case where our triangle happens to be a right triangle, with the right angle between sides of length a and b. Choosing b to be the base of the triangle, we see that the height of this triangle equals a. Thus in this case the area of the triangle equals $\frac{1}{2}ab$.

A **trapezoid** is a quadrilateral that has at least one pair of parallel sides, as for example shown here. The lengths of a pair of opposite parallel sides are called the **bases**, which are denoted below by b_1 and b_2. The **height** of the trapezoid, denoted h below, is then defined to be the length of a line segment that connects these two sides and that is perpendicular to both of them.



A trapezoid with bases b_1 and b_2 and height h.

The diagonal in the figure here divides the trapezoid into two triangles. The lower triangle has base b_1 and height h; thus the lower triangle has area $\frac{1}{2}b_1h$. The upper triangle has base b_2 and height h; thus the upper triangle has area $\frac{1}{2}b_2h$. The area of the trapezoid is the sum of the areas of these two triangles. Thus the area of the trapezoid equals $\frac{1}{2}b_1h + \frac{1}{2}b_2h$. Factoring out the $\frac{1}{2}$ and the h in this expression gives the following formula.

Area of a trapezoid

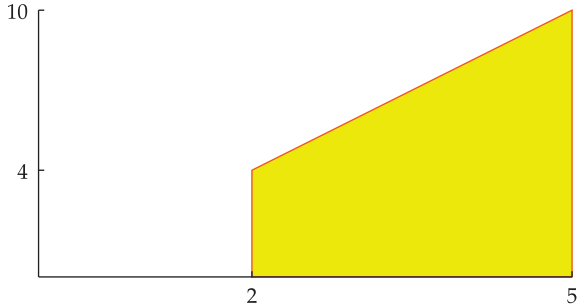
A trapezoid with bases b_1, b_2 and height h has area $\frac{1}{2}(b_1 + b_2)h$.

Note that $\frac{1}{2}(b_1 + b_2)$ is just the average of the two bases of the trapezoid. In the special case where the trapezoid is a parallelogram, the two bases are equal and we are back to the familiar formula that the area of a parallelogram equals the base times the height.

Example 3

Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the line $y = 2x$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 2$ and $x = 5$.

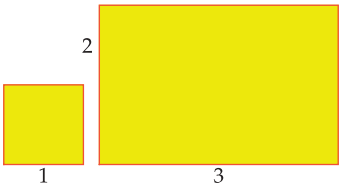
solution The line $x = 2$ intersects the line $y = 2x$ at the point $(2,4)$. The line $x = 5$ intersects the line $y = 2x$ at the point $(5,10)$, as shown in the figure below.



Thus the region in question is the trapezoid shown above. The parallel sides of this trapezoid (the two vertical sides) have lengths 4 and 10, and thus this trapezoid has bases 4 and 10. As can be seen from the figure above, this trapezoid has height 3 (note that in this trapezoid, the height is the length of the horizontal side).

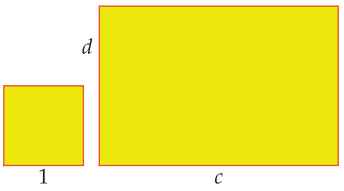
Thus the area of this trapezoid is $\frac{1}{2} \cdot (4 + 10) \cdot 3$, which equals 21.

Stretching

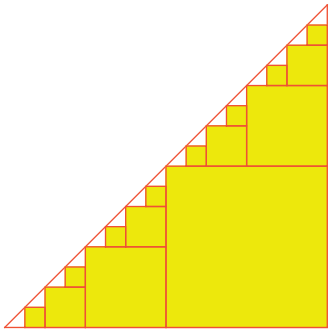


Suppose a square whose sides have length 1 is stretched horizontally by a factor of 3 and stretched vertically by a factor of 2. This transformation changes the square into a rectangle with base 3 and height 2, as shown here. Thus the area has been increased by a factor of 6.

More generally, suppose c, d are positive numbers, and consider the transformation that stretches horizontally by a factor of c and stretches vertically by a factor of d. This transformation changes a square whose sides have length 1 into a rectangle with base c and height d, as shown here. Thus the area has been increased by a factor of cd.



We need not restrict our attention to squares. The transformation that stretches horizontally by a factor of c and stretches vertically by a factor of d will change any region into a new region whose area has been changed by a factor of cd. This result follows from the result for squares, because any region can be approximated by a union of squares, as shown here for a triangle. Here is the formal statement of this result.



Area Stretch Theorem

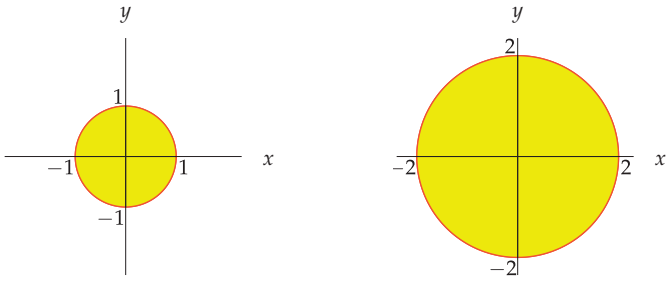
Suppose R is a region in the coordinate plane and c, d are positive numbers. Let R' be the region obtained from R by stretching horizontally by a factor of c and stretching vertically by a factor of d. Then

the area of R' equals cd times the area of R.

Circles and Ellipses

Consider the region inside a circle with radius 1 centered at the origin. If we stretch both horizontally and vertically by a factor of r, this region becomes the region inside the circle with radius r centered at the origin, as shown in the figure below for $r = 2$.

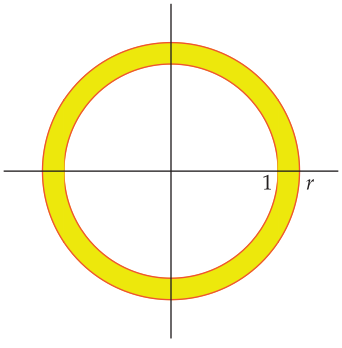
We will now derive the formula for the area inside a circle with radius r. You are surely already familiar with this formula. The goal here is to explain why it is true.



Stretching both horizontally and vertically by a factor of 2 *transforms a circle with radius* 1 *into a circle with radius* 2.

Let p denote the area inside a circle with radius 1. The Area Stretch Theorem implies that the area inside a circle with radius r equals $r^2 p$, which we write in the more familiar form pr^2. We need to find the value of p.

To find p, consider a circle with radius 1 surrounded by a slightly larger circle with radius r, as shown here. Cut out the region between the two circles, then cut a slit in it and unwind it into the shape of a trapezoid (this requires a tiny bit of distortion) as shown below.



The upper base of the trapezoid is the circumference of the circle with radius 1*; the bottom base is the circumference of the circle with radius r.*

The trapezoid has height $r-1$, which is the distance between the two original circles. The trapezoid has bases $2\pi r$ and 2π, corresponding to the circumferences of the two circles. Thus the trapezoid has area

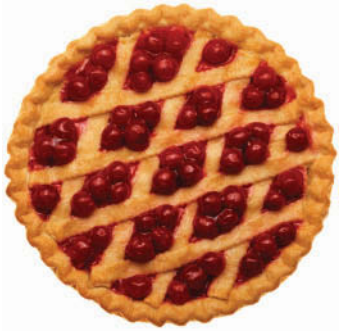
$$\tfrac{1}{2}(2\pi r + 2\pi)(r-1),$$

which equals $\pi(r+1)(r-1)$, which equals $\pi(r^2-1)$.

Our derivation of the formula for the area inside a circle shows the intimate connection between the area and the circumference of a circle.

The area inside the larger circle equals the area inside the circle with radius 1 plus the area of the region between the two circles. In other words, the area inside the larger circle equals $p + \pi(r^2-1)$. The area inside the larger circle also equals pr^2, because the larger circle has radius r. Thus we have

$$pr^2 = p + \pi(r^2-1).$$



Pie and π: The area of this pie with radius 4 inches is 16π square inches.

Subtracting p from both sides, we get

$$p(r^2-1) = \pi(r^2-1).$$

Thus $p = \pi$. In other words, the area inside a circle with radius r equals πr^2.

We have derived the following formula.

Area inside a circle

The area inside a circle with radius r is πr^2.

Thus to find the area inside a circle, we must first find the radius of the circle. Finding the radius sometimes requires a preliminary algebraic manipulation such as completing the square, as shown in the following example.

Example 4

Consider the circle described by the equation

$$x^2 - 8x + y^2 + 6y = 4.$$

(a) Find the center of this circle.

(b) Find the radius of this circle.

(c) Find the circumference of this circle.

(d) Find the area inside this circle.

solution To obtain the desired information about the circle, we put its equation in a standard form. This can be done by completing the square:

$$\begin{aligned} 4 &= x^2 - 8x + y^2 + 6y \\ &= (x-4)^2 - 16 + (y+3)^2 - 9 \\ &= (x-4)^2 + (y+3)^2 - 25. \end{aligned}$$

Adding 25 to the first and last sides above shows that the circle is described by the equation

$$(x-4)^2 + (y+3)^2 = 29.$$

(a) The equation above shows that the center of the circle is $(4, -3)$.

(b) The equation above shows that the radius of the circle is $\sqrt{29}$.

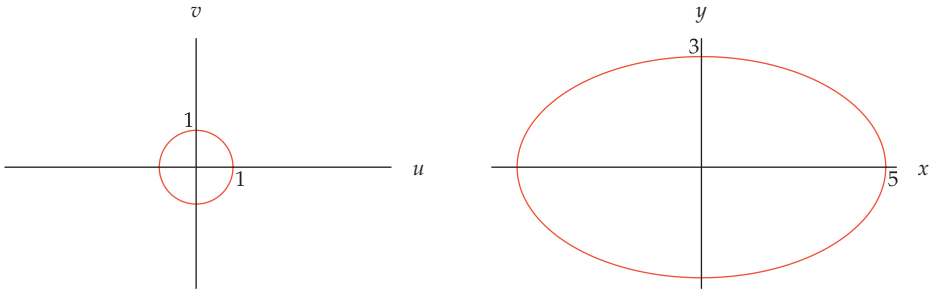
(c) Because the circle has radius $\sqrt{29}$, its circumference is $2\sqrt{29}\pi$.

(d) Because the circle has radius $\sqrt{29}$, its area is 29π.

In Section 2.2 we saw that the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$$

is obtained from the circle with radius 1 centered at the origin by stretching horizontally by a factor of 5 and stretching vertically by factor of 3.



Stretching horizontally by a factor of 5 and vertically by a factor of 3 transforms the circle on the left into the ellipse on the right.

Because $5 \cdot 3 = 15$, the Area Stretch Theorem tells us that the area inside this ellipse equals 15 times the area inside the circle with radius 1. Because the area inside a circle with radius 1 is π, we conclude that the area inside this ellipse is 15π.

More generally, suppose a and b are positive numbers. Suppose the circle with radius 1 centered at the origin is stretched horizontally by a factor of a and stretched vertically by a factor of b. As we saw in Section 2.2, the equation of the resulting ellipse in the xy-plane is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

The Area Stretch Theorem now gives us the following formula.

In addition to discovering that the orbits of planets are ellipses, Kepler also discovered that a line joining a planet to the sun sweeps out equal areas in equal times.

Area inside an ellipse

Suppose a and b are positive numbers. Then the area inside the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

is πab.

If $a = b$, then this ellipse is a circle and this formula gives the familiar formula for the area inside a circle.

Example 5

Find the area inside the ellipse $4x^2 + 5y^2 = 3$.

solution To put the equation of this ellipse in the form given by the area formula, begin by dividing both sides by 3, and then force the equation into the desired form, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= \tfrac{4}{3}x^2 + \tfrac{5}{3}y^2 \\ &= \frac{x^2}{\frac{3}{4}} + \frac{y^2}{\frac{3}{5}} \\ &= \frac{x^2}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2} + \frac{y^2}{\sqrt{\frac{3}{5}}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the area inside the ellipse is $\pi \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{3}{5}}$, which equals $\frac{3\sqrt{5}}{10}\pi$.

Exercises

1 Find the radius of a circle that has circumference 12 inches.

2 Find the radius of a circle that has circumference 20 feet.

3 Find the radius of a circle that has circumference 8 more than its diameter.

4 Find the radius of a circle that has circumference 12 more than its diameter.

5 Suppose you want to design a 400-meter track consisting of two half-circles connected by parallel line segments. Suppose also that you want the total length of the curved part of the track to equal half the total length of the straight part of the track. What dimensions should the track have?

6 Suppose you want to design a 200-meter indoor track consisting of two half-circles connected by parallel line segments. Suppose also that you want the total length of the curved part of the track to equal three-fourths the total length of the straight part of the track. What dimensions should the track have?

7 Suppose a rope is just long enough to cover the equator of the earth. About how much longer would the rope need to be so that it could be suspended seven feet above the entire equator?

8 Suppose a satellite is in orbit one hundred miles above the equator of the earth. About how much further does the satellite travel in one orbit than would a person traveling once around the equator on the surface of the earth?

9 Find the area of a triangle that has two sides of length 6 and one side of length 10.

10 Find the area of a triangle that has two sides of length 6 and one side of length 4.

11 (a) Find the distance from the point $(2,3)$ to the line containing the points $(-2,-1)$ and $(5,4)$.

(b) Use the information from part (a) to find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(2,3)$, $(-2,-1)$, and $(5,4)$.

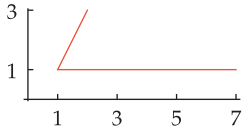
12 (a) Find the distance from the point $(3,4)$ to the line containing the points $(1,5)$ and $(-2,2)$.

(b) Use the information from part (a) to find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(3,4)$, $(1,5)$, and $(-2,2)$.

13 Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(2,0)$, $(9,0)$, and $(4,5)$.

14 Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(-3,0)$, $(2,0)$, and $(4,3)$.

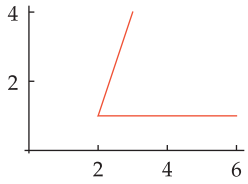
15 Suppose $(2,3)$, $(1,1)$, and $(7,1)$ are three vertices of a parallelogram, two of whose sides are shown here.



(a) Find the fourth vertex of this parallelogram.

(b) Find the area of this parallelogram.

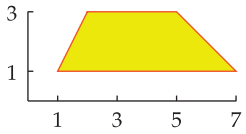
16 Suppose $(3,4)$, $(2,1)$, and $(6,1)$ are three vertices of a parallelogram, two of whose sides are shown here.



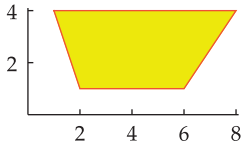
(a) Find the fourth vertex of this parallelogram.

(b) Find the area of this parallelogram.

17 Find the area of this trapezoid, whose vertices are $(1,1)$, $(7,1)$, $(5,3)$, and $(2,3)$.



18 Find the area of this trapezoid, whose vertices are $(2,1)$, $(6,1)$, $(8,4)$, and $(1,4)$.



19 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the line $y = \frac{x}{2}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 2$ and $x = 6$.

20 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the line $y = 3x + 1$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = 1$ and $x = 5$.

21 Let $f(x) = |x|$. Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the graph of f, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = -2$ and $x = 5$.

22 Let $f(x) = |2x|$. Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the graph of f, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = -3$ and $x = 4$.

23 Find the area inside a circle with diameter 7.

24 Find the area inside a circle with diameter 9.

25 Find the area inside a circle with circumference 5 feet.

26 Find the area inside a circle with circumference 7 yards.

27 Find the area inside the circle whose equation is

$$x^2 - 6x + y^2 + 10y = 1.$$

28 Find the area inside the circle whose equation is

$$x^2 + 5x + y^2 - 3y = 1.$$

29 Find a number t such that the area inside the circle

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 = t$$

is 8.

30 Find a number t such that the area inside the circle

$$5x^2 + 5y^2 = t$$

is 2.

Use the following information for Exercises 31–36:
A standard DVD disk has a 12-cm diameter (cm is the abbreviation for centimeters). The hole in the center of the disk has a 0.75-cm radius. About 50.2 megabytes of data can be stored on each square cm of usable surface of the DVD disk.

31 What is the area of a DVD disk, not counting the hole?

32 What is the area of a DVD disk, not counting the hole and the unusable circular ring with width 1.5 cm that surrounds the hole?

33 A movie company is manufacturing DVD disks containing one of its movies. Part of the surface of each DVD disk will be made usable by coating with laser-sensitive material a circular ring whose inner radius is 2.25 cm from the center of the disk. What is the minimum outer radius of this circular ring if the movie requires 3100 megabytes of data storage?

34 A movie company is manufacturing DVD disks containing one of its movies. Part of the surface of each DVD disk will be made usable by coating with laser-sensitive material a circular ring whose inner radius is 2.25 cm from the center of the disk. What is the minimum outer radius of this circular ring if the movie requires 4200 megabytes of data storage?

35 Suppose a movie company wants to store data for extra features in a circular ring on a DVD disk. If the circular ring has outer radius 5.9 cm and 200 megabytes of data storage is needed, what is the maximum inner radius of the circular ring for the extra features?

36 Suppose a movie company wants to store data for extra features in a circular ring on a DVD disk. If the circular ring has outer radius 5.9 cm and 350 megabytes of data storage is needed, what is the maximum inner radius of the circular ring for the extra features?

37 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ (with $-2 \le x \le 2$) and above the x-axis.

38 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = \sqrt{9 - x^2}$ (with $-3 \le x \le 3$) and above the x-axis.

39 Using the answer from Exercise 37, find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = 3\sqrt{4 - x^2}$ (with $-2 \le x \le 2$) and above the x-axis.

40 Using the answer from Exercise 38, find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = 5\sqrt{9 - x^2}$ (with $-3 \le x \le 3$) and above the x-axis.

41 Using the answer from Exercise 37, find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = \sqrt{4 - \frac{x^2}{9}}$ (with $-6 \le x \le 6$) and above the x-axis.

42 Using the answer from Exercise 38, find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = \sqrt{9 - \frac{x^2}{16}}$ (with $-12 \le x \le 12$) and above the x-axis.

43 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve

$$y = 1 + \sqrt{4 - x^2},$$

above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = -2$ and $x = 2$.

44 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve

$$y = 2 + \sqrt{9 - x^2},$$

above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = -3$ and $x = 3$.

In Exercises 45–50, find the area inside the ellipse in the xy-plane determined by the given equation.

45 $\frac{x^2}{7} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$

46 $\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{5} = 1$

47 $2x^2 + 3y^2 = 1$

48 $10x^2 + 7y^2 = 1$

49 $3x^2 + 2y^2 = 7$

50 $5x^2 + 9y^2 = 3$

51 Find a positive number c such that the area inside the ellipse

$$2x^2 + cy^2 = 5$$

is 3.

52 Find a positive number c such that the area inside the ellipse

$$cx^2 + 7y^2 = 3$$

is 2.

53 Find numbers a and b such that $a > b$, $a + b = 15$, and the area inside the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

is 36π.

54 Find numbers a and b such that $a > b$, $a + b = 5$, and the area inside the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

is 3π.

55 Find a number t such that the area inside the ellipse

$$4x^2 + 9y^2 = t$$

is 5.

56 Find a number t such that the area inside the ellipse

$$2x^2 + 3y^2 = t$$

is 7.

Problems

Some problems require considerably more thought than the exercises.

57 Explain why a square yard contains 9 square feet.

58 Explain why a square foot contains 144 square inches.

59 Find a formula that gives the area of a square in terms of the length of the diagonal of the square.

60 Find a formula that gives the area of a square in terms of the perimeter.

61 Suppose a and b are positive numbers. Draw a figure of a square whose sides have length $a+b$. Partition this square into a square whose sides have length a, a square whose sides have length b, and two rectangles in a way that illustrates the identity

$$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2.$$

62 Find an example of a parallelogram whose area equals 10 and whose perimeter equals 16 (give the coordinates for all four vertices of your parallelogram).

63 Show that an equilateral triangle with sides of length r has area $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}r^2$.

64 Show that an equilateral triangle with area A has sides of length $\frac{2\sqrt{A}}{3^{1/4}}$.

65 Suppose $0 < a < b$. Show that the area of the region under the line $y = x$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is $\frac{b^2-a^2}{2}$.

66 Show that the area inside a circle with circumference c is $\frac{c^2}{4\pi}$.

67 Find a formula that gives the area inside a circle in terms of the diameter of the circle.

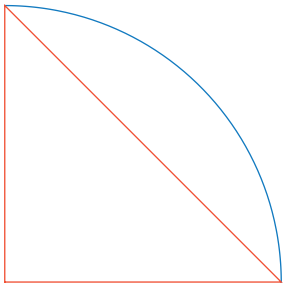
68 In ancient China and Babylonia, the area inside a circle was said to be one-half the radius times the circumference. Show that this formula agrees with our formula for the area inside a circle.

69 Suppose a, b, and c are positive numbers. Show that the area inside the ellipse

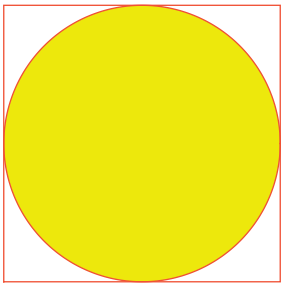
$$ax^2 + by^2 = c$$

is $\pi\frac{c}{\sqrt{ab}}$.

70 The figure below illustrates an isosceles right triangle with legs of length 1, along with one-fourth of a circle centered at the right-angle vertex of the triangle. Using the result that the shortest path between two points is a line segment, explain why this figure shows that $2\sqrt{2} < \pi$.

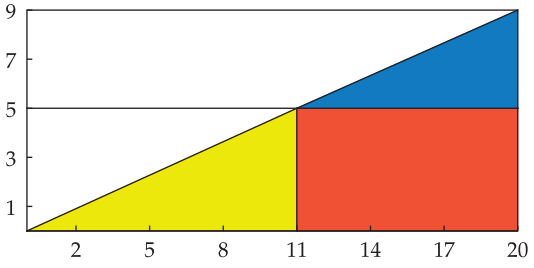


71 The figure below illustrates a circle with radius 1 enclosed within a square. By comparing areas, explain why this figure shows that $\pi < 4$.



72 The Rhind Mathematical Papyrus from ancient Egypt states that the area inside a circle with diameter d is $\left(\frac{8}{9}d\right)^2$. Show that this corresponds to the assumption that $\pi = \frac{256}{81}$.
[*Because* $\frac{256}{81} \approx 3.16$, *the error is about 0.6%.*]

73 Consider the following figure, which is drawn accurately to scale.



(a) Show that the right triangle whose vertices are $(0,0)$, $(20,0)$, and $(20,9)$ has area 90.

(b) Show that the yellow right triangle has area 27.5.

(c) Show that the orange rectangle has area 45.

(d) Show that the blue right triangle has area 18.

(e) Add the results of parts (b), (c), and (d), showing that the area of the colored region is 90.5.

(f) Seeing the figure above, most people expect that parts (a) and (e) will have the same result. Yet in part (a) we found area 90, and in part (e) we found area 90.5. Explain why these results differ.

Worked-Out Solutions to Odd-Numbered Exercises

Do not read these worked-out solutions before attempting to do the exercises yourself. Otherwise you may mimic the techniques shown here without understanding the ideas.

Best way to learn: Carefully read the section of the textbook, then do all the odd-numbered exercises and check your answers here. If you get stuck on an exercise, then look at the worked-out solution here.

1 Find the radius of a circle that has circumference 12 inches.

solution Let r denote the radius of this circle in inches. Thus $2\pi r = 12$, which implies that $r = \frac{6}{\pi}$ inches.

3 Find the radius of a circle that has circumference 8 more than its diameter.

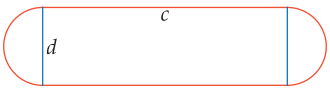
solution Let r denote the radius of this circle. Thus the circle has circumference $2\pi r$ and has diameter $2r$. Because the circumference is 8 more than diameter, we have $2\pi r = 2r + 8$. Thus $(2\pi - 2)r = 8$, which implies that $r = \frac{4}{\pi - 1}$.

5 Suppose you want to design a 400-meter track consisting of two half-circles connected by parallel line segments. Suppose also that you want the total length of the curved part of the track to equal half the total length of the straight part of the track. What dimensions should the track have?

solution Let t equal the total length of the straight part of the track in meters. We want the curved part of the track to have total length $\frac{t}{2}$. Thus we want

$$t + \frac{t}{2} = 400.$$

Solving this equation for t, we get $t = \frac{800}{3}$ meters. Thus each of the two straight pieces must be $\frac{400}{3}$ meters long. Hence we take $c = \frac{400}{3} \approx 133.33$ meters in the figure in the below.



We also want the total length of the two half-circles to be $\frac{400}{3}$ meters. Thus we want $\pi d = \frac{400}{3}$. Hence we take $d = \frac{400}{3\pi} \approx 42.44$ meters in the figure above.

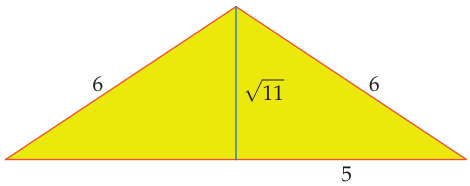
7 Suppose a rope is just long enough to cover the equator of the earth. About how much longer would the rope need to be so that it could be suspended seven feet above the entire equator?

solution Assume the equator of the earth is a circle. This assumption is close enough to being correct to answer a question that requires only an approximation.

Assume the radius of the earth is r, measured in feet (note that we do not need to know the value of r for this exercise). For a rope to cover the equator, it needs to have length $2\pi r$ feet. For a rope to be suspended seven feet above the equator, it would need to have length $2\pi(r + 7)$ feet, which equals $(2\pi r + 14\pi)$ feet. In other words, to be suspended seven feet above the equator, the rope would need to be only 14π feet longer than a rope covering the equator. Because $14\pi \approx 14 \cdot \frac{22}{7} = 44$, the rope would need to be about 44 feet longer than a rope covering the equator.

9 Find the area of a triangle that has two sides of length 6 and one side of length 10.

solution By the Pythagorean Theorem (see figure below), the height of this triangle equals $\sqrt{6^2 - 5^2}$, which equals $\sqrt{11}$.



A triangle that has two sides of length 6 *and one side of length* 10.

Thus the area of this triangle equals $5\sqrt{11}$.

11 (a) Find the distance from the point $(2, 3)$ to the line containing the points $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 4)$.

(b) Use the information from part (a) to find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(2, 3)$, $(-2, -1)$, and $(5, 4)$.

solution

(a) To find the distance from the point $(2, 3)$ to the line containing the points $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 4)$, we first find the equation of the line containing the points $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 4)$. The slope of this line equals

$$\frac{4-(-1)}{5-(-2)},$$

which equals $\frac{5}{7}$. Thus the equation of the line containing the points $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 4)$ is

$$\frac{y-4}{x-5} = \frac{5}{7},$$

which can be rewritten as

$$y = \frac{5}{7}x + \frac{3}{7}.$$

To find the distance from the point $(2, 3)$ to the line containing the points $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 4)$, we want to find the equation of the line containing the point $(2, 3)$ that is perpendicular to the line containing the points $(-2, -1)$ and $(5, 4)$. The equation of this line is

$$\frac{y-3}{x-2} = -\frac{7}{5},$$

which can be rewritten as

$$y = -\frac{7}{5}x + \frac{29}{5}.$$

To find where this line intersects the line containing the points $(-2,-1)$ and $(5,4)$, we need to solve the equation

$$\frac{5}{7}x+\frac{3}{7}=-\frac{7}{5}x+\frac{29}{5}.$$

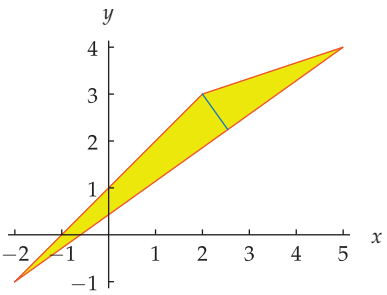
Simple algebra shows that the solution to this equation is $x=\frac{94}{37}$. Plugging this value of x into the equation of either line shows that $y=\frac{83}{37}$. Thus the two lines intersect at the point $(\frac{94}{37},\frac{83}{37})$.

Thus the distance from the point $(2,3)$ to the line containing the points $(-2,-1)$ and $(5,4)$ is the distance from the point $(2,3)$ to the point $(\frac{94}{37},\frac{83}{37})$. This distance equals

$$\sqrt{(2-\tfrac{94}{37})^2+(3-\tfrac{83}{37})^2},$$

which equals $\sqrt{\frac{32}{37}}$, which equals $4\sqrt{\frac{2}{37}}$.

(b) We will consider the line segment connecting the points $(-2,-1)$, and $(5,4)$ to be the base of this triangle. In part (a), we found that the height of this triangle equals $4\sqrt{\frac{2}{37}}$.



The triangle with vertices $(2,3)$, $(-2,-1)$, and $(5,4)$, with a line segment showing its height.

The base of the triangle is the distance between the points $(-2,-1)$ and $(5,4)$. This distance equals $\sqrt{74}$. Thus the area of the triangle (one-half the base times the height) equals

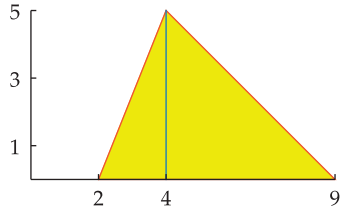
$$\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{74}\Big(4\sqrt{\tfrac{2}{37}}\Big),$$

which equals 4.

[There are easier ways to find the area of this triangle, but the technique used here gives you practice with several important concepts.]

13 Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are $(2,0)$, $(9,0)$, and $(4,5)$.

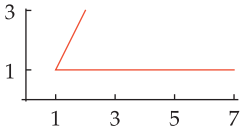
solution Choose the side connecting $(2,0)$ and $(9,0)$ as the base of this triangle. Thus the triangle below has base $9-2$, which equals 7.



The height of this triangle is the length of the blue line shown here; this height equals the second coordinate of the vertex $(4,5)$. In other words, this triangle has height 5.

Thus this triangle has area $\frac{1}{2}\cdot 7\cdot 5$, which equals $\frac{35}{2}$.

15 Suppose $(2,3)$, $(1,1)$, and $(7,1)$ are three vertices of a parallelogram, two of whose sides are shown here.



(a) Find the fourth vertex of this parallelogram.

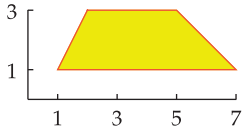
(b) Find the area of this parallelogram.

solution

(a) Consider the horizontal side of the parallelogram connecting the points $(1,1)$ and $(7,1)$. This side has length 6. Thus the opposite side, which connects the point $(2,3)$ and the fourth vertex, must also be horizontal and have length 6. Thus the second coordinate of the fourth vertex is the same as the second coordinate of $(2,3)$, and the first coordinate of the fourth vertex is obtained by adding 6 to the first coordinate of $(2,3)$. Hence the fourth vertex equals $(8,3)$.

(b) The base of this parallelogram is the length of the side connecting the points $(1,1)$ and $(7,1)$, which equals 6. The height of this parallelogram is the length of a vertical line segment connecting the two horizontal sides. Because one of the horizontal sides lies on the line $y=1$ and the other horizontal side lies on the line $y=3$, a vertical line segment connecting these two sides will have length 2. Thus the parallelogram has height 2. Because this parallelogram has base 6 and height 2, it has area 12.

17 Find the area of this trapezoid, whose vertices are $(1,1)$, $(7,1)$, $(5,3)$, and $(2,3)$.



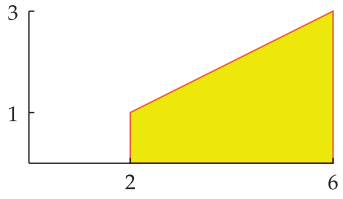
solution One base of this trapezoid is the length of the side connecting the points $(1,1)$ and $(7,1)$, which equals 6. The other base of this trapezoid is the length of the side connecting $(5,3)$ and $(2,3)$, which equals 3.

The height of this trapezoid is the length of a vertical line segment connecting the two horizontal sides. Because one of the horizontal sides lies on the line $y=1$ and the other horizontal side lies on the line $y=3$, a vertical line segment connecting these two sides will have length 2. Thus the trapezoid has height 2.

Because this trapezoid has bases 6 and 3 and has height 2, it has area $\frac{1}{2}(6+3)\cdot 2$, which equals 9.

19 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the line $y=\frac{x}{2}$, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x=2$ and $x=6$.

solution The line $x=2$ intersects the line $y=\frac{x}{2}$ at the point $(2,1)$. The line $x=6$ intersects the line $y=\frac{x}{2}$ at the point $(6,3)$.

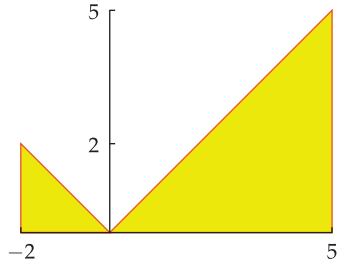


Thus the region in question is the trapezoid shown above. The parallel sides of this trapezoid (the two vertical sides) have lengths 1 and 3, and thus this trapezoid has bases 1 and 3. As can be seen from the figure above, this trapezoid has height 4. Thus the area of this trapezoid is $\frac{1}{2} \cdot (1+3) \cdot 4$, which equals 8.

21 Let $f(x) = |x|$. Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the graph of f, above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = -2$ and $x = 5$.

solution

The region under consideration is the union of two triangles, as shown here.



One of the triangles has base 2 and height 2 and thus has area 2. The other triangle has base 5 and height 5 and thus has area $\frac{25}{2}$. Thus the area of the region under consideration equals $2 + \frac{25}{2}$, which equals $\frac{29}{2}$.

23 Find the area inside a circle with diameter 7.

solution A circle with diameter 7 has radius $\frac{7}{2}$. Thus the area inside this circle is $\pi(\frac{7}{2})^2$, which equals $\frac{49\pi}{4}$.

25 Find the area inside a circle with circumference 5 feet.

solution Let r denote the radius of this circle in feet. Thus $2\pi r = 5$, which implies that $r = \frac{5}{2\pi}$. Thus the area inside this circle is $\pi(\frac{5}{2\pi})^2$ square feet, which equals $\frac{25}{4\pi}$ square feet.

27 Find the area inside the circle whose equation is

$$x^2 - 6x + y^2 + 10y = 1.$$

solution To find the radius of the circle given by the equation above, we complete the square, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= x^2 - 6x + y^2 + 10y \\ &= (x-3)^2 - 9 + (y+5)^2 - 25 \\ &= (x-3)^2 + (y+5)^2 - 34. \end{aligned}$$

Adding 34 to both sides of this equation gives

$$(x-3)^2 + (y+5)^2 = 35.$$

Thus we see that this circle is centered at $(3, -5)$ (which is irrelevant for this exercise) and that it has radius $\sqrt{35}$. Thus the area inside this circle equals $\pi\sqrt{35}^2$, which equals 35π.

29 Find a number t such that the area inside the circle

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 = t$$

is 8.

solution Rewriting the equation above as

$$x^2 + y^2 = \left(\sqrt{\tfrac{t}{3}}\right)^2,$$

we see that this circle has radius $\sqrt{\frac{t}{3}}$. Thus the area inside this circle is $\pi\left(\sqrt{\frac{t}{3}}\right)^2$, which equals $\frac{\pi t}{3}$. We want this area to equal 8, which means we need to solve the equation $\frac{\pi t}{3} = 8$. Thus $t = \frac{24}{\pi}$.

Use the following information for Exercises 31–36:
A standard DVD disk has a 12-cm diameter (cm is the abbreviation for centimeters). The hole in the center of the disk has a 0.75-cm radius. About 50.2 megabytes of data can be stored on each square cm of usable surface of the DVD disk.

31 What is the area of a DVD disk, not counting the hole?

solution The DVD disk has radius 6 cm (because the diameter is 12 cm). The area inside a circle with radius 6 cm is 36π square cm.

The area of the hole is $0.75^2\pi$ square cm, which is 0.5625π square cm.

Subtracting 0.5625π from 36π, we see that the DVD disk has area 35.4375π square cm, which is approximately 111.33 square cm.

33 A movie company is manufacturing DVD disks containing one of its movies. Part of the surface of each DVD disk will be made usable by coating with laser-sensitive material a circular ring whose inner radius is 2.25 cm from the center of the disk. What is the minimum outer radius of this circular ring if the movie requires 3100 megabytes of data storage?

solution Because 50.2 megabytes of data can be stored in each square cm of usable surface, the usable surface must have area at least $\frac{3100}{50.2}$ square cm, or about 61.753 square cm.

If the outer radius of the circular ring of usable area is r, then the usable area will be $\pi r^2 - 2.25^2\pi$. Thus we solve the equation

$$\pi r^2 - 2.25^2\pi = 61.753$$

for r, getting $r \approx 4.97$ cm.

35 Suppose a movie company wants to store data for extra features in a circular ring on a DVD disk. If the circular ring has outer radius 5.9 cm and 200 megabytes of data storage is needed, what is the maximum inner radius of the circular ring for the extra features?

solution Because 50.2 megabytes of data can be stored in each square cm of usable surface, the usable surface must have area at least $\frac{200}{50.2}$ square cm, or about 3.984 square cm.

If the inner radius of the circular ring of usable area is r, then the usable area will be $5.9^2\pi - \pi r^2$. Thus we solve the equation

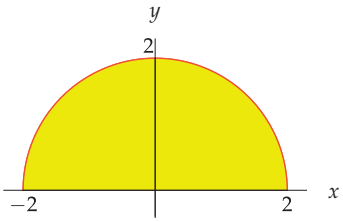
$$5.9^2\pi - \pi r^2 = 3.984$$

for r, getting $r \approx 5.79$ cm.

37 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ (with $-2 \le x \le 2$) and above the x-axis.

solution

Square both sides of the equation $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ and then add x^2 to both sides.

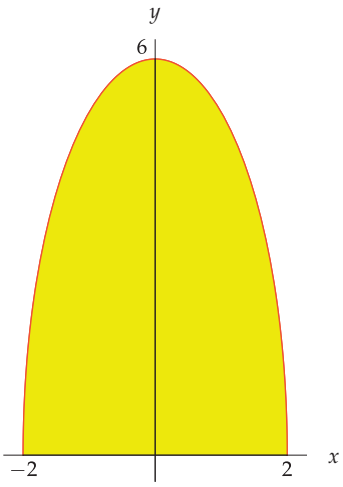


This gives the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 4$, which is the equation of a circle with radius 2 centered at the origin. However, the equation $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ forces y to be nonnegative, and thus we have only the top half of the circle. Thus the region in question, which is shown above, has half the area inside a circle with radius 2. Hence the area of this region is $\frac{1}{2}\pi \cdot 2^2$, which equals 2π.

39 Using the answer from Exercise 37, find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = 3\sqrt{4 - x^2}$ (with $-2 \le x \le 2$) and above the x-axis.

solution

The region in this exercise is obtained from the region in Exercise 37 by stretching vertically by a factor of 3. Thus by the Area Stretch Theorem, the area of this region is 3 times the area of the region in Exercise 37. Thus this region has area 6π.

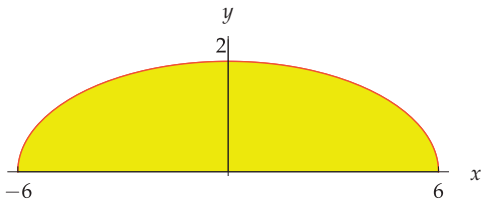


41 Using the answer from Exercise 37, find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve $y = \sqrt{4 - \frac{x^2}{9}}$ (with $-6 \le x \le 6$) and above the x-axis.

solution Define a function f with domain the interval $[-2, 2]$ by $f(x) = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$. Define a function h with domain the interval $[-6, 6]$ by $h(x) = f(\frac{x}{3})$. Thus

$$h(x) = f(\tfrac{x}{3}) = \sqrt{4 - (\tfrac{x}{3})^2} = \sqrt{4 - \tfrac{x^2}{9}}.$$

Hence the graph of h is obtained by horizontally stretching the graph of f by a factor of 3 (see Section 1.3). Thus the region in this exercise is obtained from the region in Exercise 37 by stretching horizontally by a factor of 3.



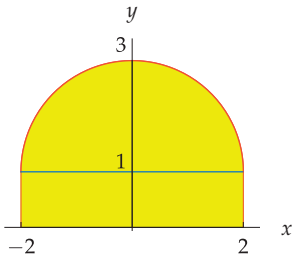
Thus by the Area Stretch Theorem, this region has area 6π.

43 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane under the curve

$$y = 1 + \sqrt{4 - x^2},$$

above the x-axis, and between the lines $x = -2$ and $x = 2$.

solution The curve $y = 1 + \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ is obtained by shifting the curve $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ up 1 unit.



Thus we have the region above, which should be compared to the region shown in the solution to Exercise 37.

To find the area of this region, we break it into two parts. One part consists of the rectangle shown above that has base 4 and height 1 (and thus has area 4); the other part is obtained by shifting the region in Exercise 37 up 1 unit (and thus has area 2π, which is the area of the region in Exercise 37). Adding together the areas of these two parts, we conclude that the region shown above has area $4 + 2\pi$.

In Exercises 45–50, find the area inside the ellipse in the xy-plane determined by the given equation.

45 $\frac{x^2}{7} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$

solution Rewrite the equation of this ellipse as

$$\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{7}^2}+\frac{y^2}{4^2}=1.$$

Thus the area inside this ellipse is $4\sqrt{7}\pi$.

47 $2x^2+3y^2=1$

solution Rewrite the equation of this ellipse in the form given by the area formula, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}1&=2x^2+3y^2\\&=\frac{x^2}{\frac{1}{2}}+\frac{y^2}{\frac{1}{3}}\\&=\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}^2}+\frac{y^2}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus the area inside the ellipse is $\pi\cdot\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}}$, which equals $\frac{\pi}{\sqrt{6}}$. Multiplying numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{6}$, we see that we could also express this area as $\frac{\sqrt{6}\pi}{6}$.

49 $3x^2+2y^2=7$

solution To put the equation of the ellipse in the form given by the area formula, begin by dividing both sides by 7, and then force the equation into the desired form, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}1&=\frac{3}{7}x^2+\frac{2}{7}y^2\\&=\frac{x^2}{\frac{7}{3}}+\frac{y^2}{\frac{7}{2}}\\&=\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{\frac{7}{3}}^2}+\frac{y^2}{\sqrt{\frac{7}{2}}^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus the area inside the ellipse is $\pi\cdot\sqrt{\frac{7}{3}}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{7}{2}}$, which equals $\frac{7\pi}{\sqrt{6}}$. Multiplying numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{6}$, we see that we could also express this area as $\frac{7\sqrt{6}\pi}{6}$.

51 Find a positive number c such that the area inside the ellipse

$$2x^2+cy^2=5$$

is 3.

solution To put the equation of the ellipse in the form given by the area formula, begin by dividing both sides by 5, and then force the equation into the desired form, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}1&=\frac{2}{5}x^2+\frac{c}{5}y^2\\&=\frac{x^2}{\frac{5}{2}}+\frac{y^2}{\frac{5}{c}}\\&=\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{\frac{5}{2}}^2}+\frac{y^2}{\sqrt{\frac{5}{c}}^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus the area inside the ellipse is $\pi\cdot\sqrt{\frac{5}{2}}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{5}{c}}$, which equals $\frac{5\pi}{\sqrt{2c}}$. We want this area to equal 3, so we must solve the equation $\frac{5\pi}{\sqrt{2c}}=3$. Squaring both sides and then solving for c gives $c=\frac{25\pi^2}{18}$.

53 Find numbers a and b such that $a>b$, $a+b=15$, and the area inside the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1$$

is 36π.

solution The area inside the ellipse is πab. Thus we need to solve the simultaneous equations

$$a+b=15\quad\text{and}\quad ab=36.$$

The first equation can be rewritten as $b=15-a$, and this value for b can then be substituted into the second equation, giving the equation

$$a(15-a)=36.$$

This is equivalent to the equation $a^2-15a+36=0$, whose solutions (which can be found through either factoring or the quadratic formula) are $a=3$ and $a=12$. Choosing $a=3$ gives $b=15-a=12$, which violates the condition that $a>b$. Choosing $a=12$ gives $b=15-12=3$. Thus the only solution to this exercise is $a=12$, $b=3$.

55 Find a number t such that the area inside the ellipse

$$4x^2+9y^2=t$$

is 5.

solution Dividing the equation above by t, we have

$$\begin{aligned}1&=\frac{4}{t}x^2+\frac{9}{t}y^2\\&=\frac{x^2}{\frac{t}{4}}+\frac{y^2}{\frac{t}{9}}\\&=\frac{x^2}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{t}}{2}\right)^2}+\frac{y^2}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{t}}{3}\right)^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus the area inside this ellipse is

$$\pi\frac{\sqrt{t}}{2}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{t}}{3},$$

which equals $\frac{\pi t}{6}$. Hence we want $\frac{\pi t}{6}=5$, which means that $t=\frac{30}{\pi}$.

Photo Credits

- page v: Jonathan Shapiro
- page x: SuperStock, Inc./SuperStock
- page xii: © North Wind Picture Archives/Alamy Stock Photo
- page 1: Goodshot/SuperStock
- page 3: *The School of Athens* (detail) by Raphael/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 14: Alfred Chalon, 1840/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 27: © Riccardo Bissacco/iStockphoto
- page 28: Conrad Fehr, 1895/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 37: Pierre Louis Dumesnil; 1884 copy by Nils Forsberg/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 94: Brand X/SuperStock
- page 94: © Gregory King/Alamy Stock Photo
- page 100: Luc-Olivier Merson, 1869/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 119: Mostafa Azizi/Public domain image from *Wikimedia*
- page 142: Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 144: NASA Jet Propulsion Laboratory/UCLA
- page 178: Science Source
- page 203: SuperStock, Inc./SuperStock
- page 207: age fotostock/SuperStock
- page 208: © Mary Evans Picture Library/Alamy Limited
- page 215: Culver Pictures, Inc./SuperStock
- page 216: Sheldon Axler
- page 225: AF archive/Alamy Stock Photo
- page 227: NASA, European Space Agency, and A. Simon (Goddard Space Flight Center)
- page 228: European Space Agency/Hubble & NASA, Judy Schmidt
- page 235: © Uyen Le/iStockphoto
- page 237: Charles Falco/Science Source
- page 239: CDC Evangeline Sowers, Janice Haney Carr
- page 240: © Alex Slobodkin/iStockphoto
- page 241: © Scott Adams/Distributed by United Features Syndicate, Inc.
- page 243: © Adam Kazmierski/iStockphoto
- page 258: © Jeremy Edwards/iStockphoto
- page 270: Corbis/SuperStock
- page 281: age fotostock/SuperStock
- page 285: Paul Kline/iStockphoto
- page 285: Sigrid Gombert/Science Source
- page 287: Bex Walton/Wikipedia Creative Commons License
- page 300: Paul Kline/iStockphoto
- page 301: Tetra Images/SuperStock
- page 303: FoodCollection/SuperStock
- page 312: © North Wind Picture Archives/Alamy Stock Photo
- page 320: Szczebrzeszynski/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 330: Dmitry Kalinovsky/Shutterstock
- page 332: Peter Mercator/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 335: Peter Mercator/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 343: *The School of Athens* (detail) by Raphael/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*

- page 351: © Peter Spiro/iStockphoto
- page 358: Wenceslas Hollar/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 366: Giovanni Dall'Orto/Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 378: © Peter Spiro/iStockphoto
- page 393: Middle Temple Library/Science Source
- page 404: Jon Callas, Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic license
- page 414: Gala Kan/Shutterstock
- page 423: Photodisc/SuperStock
- page 439: Christie's Images/SuperStock; painting by Godfrey Kneller
- page 445: Hans-Peter Postel/Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Generic license
- page 455: Sheldon Axler
- page 460: Hamelin de Guettelet/Wikimedia Creative Commons License
- page 464: Public domain image from *Wikipedia*
- page 478: Jaime Abecasis/SuperStock
- page 483: © Micha Krakowiak/iStockphoto
- page 513: Ingram Publishing/SuperStock
- page 523: © Photo Researchers, Inc./Alamy Stock Photo
- page 532: Christine Balderas/iStockphoto
- page 533: Manuela Miller/iStockphoto
- page 535: Sheldon Axler

Index

absolute value
  of complex number, 518–519
  of real number, 25–28
acknowledgments, xxi–xxii
acute angle, 303, 339, 377, 383, 385, 396
Adams, John, 159
additive inverse
  of a real number, 9, 20, 22
  of a vector, 498
Agnesi, Maria Gaetana, 366
al-Jayyānī, Ibn Mu'ādh, 388
algebraic operations, order of, 6–8
amplitude, 423–424
angle
  acute, 303, 339, 377, 383, 385, 396
  ambiguous, 376–377, 389–390
  corresponding to a radius, 286, 299
  greater than 2π, 298–299
  greater than 360°, 286
  in the unit circle, 283–286
  negative, 284–285, 298
  obtuse, 303, 377, 383, 385, 389
annual percentage yield, 244, 246
apparent magnitude, 227–228
approximation
  of 2^m, 235, 246
  of 2^t, 267
  of area, 250–252
  of $\cos\theta$, 381
  of e, 253, 268, 472
  of e^t, 263–264, 480
  of $\ln(1+t)$, 262–263
  of $\ln x$, 257, 480
  of $\log(1+t)$, 267
  of π, 527–528
  of $\sin\theta$, 380
  of $\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}$, 381
  of $\tan\theta$, 380
APY, *see* annual percentage yield
arc, *see* circular arc
arc length, 528
arccosine, 352–354, 409
  composition with trigonometric functions, 365–368
  graph, 354
  of $-t$, 369
  plus arcsine, 370–371
arcsine, 354–356, 409
  composition with trigonometric functions, 365–368
  graph, 356
  of $-t$, 369
  plus arccosine, 370–371
arctangent, 357–359
  composition with trigonometric functions, 365–368
  graph, 358
  of $-t$, 370
area
  inside circle, 531–533
  inside ellipse, 533
  of circular slice, 301
  of dodecagon, 383, 384
  of hendecagon, 378
  of heptagon, 384
  of hexagon, 383, 386
  of loonie, 378
  of octagon, 378
  of parallelogram, 377, 529
  of Pentagon, 379
  of polygon, 378–379, 384
  of rectangle, 529
  of square, 528
  of trapezoid, 384, 530
  of triangle, 375–376, 529–530
  under $y = \frac{1}{x}$, 250–254, 263, 265–266
Area Stretch Theorem, 265, 531, 533, 540
argument of complex number, 519–522
arithmetic sequence, 442–443
arithmetic series, 453
associativity, 6–7, 16, 35, 85–86, 497, 507, 514
asymptote, 192, 194
Axler, Sheldon, v

bacteria growth, 239, 271–272
base
  e, 254–256, 262–263
  of logarithm, 207
  of parallelogram, 529
  of trapezoid, 530
  of triangle, 529
  ten, 208–209
  two, 206
bees, 285
bell-shaped curve, 272
Bengal, 216
binary notation (base 2), 220
binomial coefficient, 462–465, 482
Binomial Theorem, 462–466, 482
black box, 40

calculator use, xvi–xvii, 13–14
carbon-14 dating, 216
Cartesian plane, 50–51, 56, 58
Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality, 504
Celsius temperature scale, 93–94, 124
Celsius, Anders, 124
chess, invention of, 235
Chicago temperature, 429
Christina, Queen of Sweden, 37
circle
  area inside, 531–533
  circumference of, 527–528
  equation of, 140–141
  polar equation, 488–489
  unit, *see* unit circle
circular arc, 287, 300, 303
circular slice, 301
circumference, 527–528
clockwise, 284
closed interval, 24, 30
coefficient of polynomial, 174
comet, 144
common logarithm, 208
  number of digits, 208–209
commutativity, 6, 35, 497, 501, 507, 514
completing the square, 135
complex conjugate, 508–509, 519
complex number
  absolute value, 518–519
  addition, 507, 514
  definition, 506
  division, 508–510, 522
  imaginary part, 506–507
  multiplication, 507–508, 514, 521–522
  multiplicative inverse, 514, 521
  polar form, 519–522
  power, 522–523
  real part, 506–507
  root, 523
  subtraction, 507

complex plane, 518–522
composition, 82–88
  decomposing functions, 85
  not commutative, 85
  of a function and its inverse, 98–99
  of a polynomial and a rational function, 196
  of a trigonometric function and an inverse trigonometric function, 365–368
  of increasing functions, 112
  of linear functions, 129
  of more than two functions, 85–86
  of one-to-one functions, 102
  of polynomials, 184
  of rational functions, 196
compound interest, 241–244, 246
  continuous compounding, 270–274
  doubling money, 272–274
conic section
  ellipse, 142–144, 533
  hyperbola, 144–146
  parabola, 63, 106, 139, 157, 175
Conjugate Roots Theorem, *see* Conjugate Zeros Theorem
Conjugate Zeros Theorem, 512
constant function, 124
continuous function, 181
continuous growth rate, 271–272
continuously compounded interest, 270–271
coordinate axes, 50–51
coordinate plane, 50–51, 56, 58
coordinates
  polar, 484–487
  rectangular, 50–51
Copernicus, Nicolaus, 320
cos, *see* cosine
$\cos^{-1}$, *see* arccosine
cosecant, 321–323, 326, 344
cosh, *see* hyperbolic cosine
cosine
  $\cos\frac{\pi}{17}$, 418
  $\cos(-\theta)$, 338–339
  $\cos 15^\circ$, 405, 416, 419
  $\cos 18^\circ$, 409
  $\cos(2\theta)$, 402–403
  $\cos(3\theta)$, 419
  $\cos(5\theta)$, 419
  $\cos(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta)$, 339–340
  $\cos(\theta + 2\pi)$, 342–343
  $\cos(\theta + \pi)$, 341
  $\cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2})$, 419, 422
  $\cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})$, 419, 422
  $\cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$, 404–405
  $\cos(u + v)$, 414–415
  $\cos(u - v)$, 415–416
  $\cos u \cos v$, 418
  $\cos u \sin v$, 419
  $\cos x + \cos y$, 419
  $\cos x - \cos y$, 419
  definition using unit circle, 307
  domain, 311
  graph, 312, 338, 340, 342, 352, 353, 423, 424, 427
  range, 311
  right triangle characterization, 327–329
  sign, 309–310
  special angles, 308
cot, *see* cotangent
cotangent, 321–323, 326, 344
counterclockwise, 283
csc, *see* cosecant
cube, 161
cube root, 161, 162, 167
cubic formula, 177, 506
Curie, Marie, 215

De Moivre's Theorem, 522–523
de Moivre, Abraham, 522–523
decibel, 226–227, 229, 230, 233, 279
decimal
  as infinite series, 476–477
  repeating, 476–477
  terminating, 476
decomposing functions, 85
decreasing function, 108–112, 116, 129, 158, 161, 363
degree
  Celsius, 93–94, 124
  Fahrenheit, 93–94, 124
  of a polynomial, 174–177
Descartes, René, 37, 50
difference
  of functions, 81–82
  of polynomials, 175–176
difference quotient, 16, 19, 45, 47, 182, 186, 195, 196, 198, 267, 269
digit, 476
Dilbert, 241, 246, 249, 279
direction of a vector, 494–496
distance
  between points, 140
distributive property, 8–9
division of polynomials, 188–190
dodecagon, 383, 384, 386
domain
  definition, 38
  from a graph, 54
  from a table, 44
  importance in function equality, 40
  not specified, 41–42
  of a composition, 82–83
  of a polynomial, 174
  of a rational function, 187
  of an inverse function, 97
  of cos, 311
  of $\cos^{-1}$, 354
  of e^x, 255
  of ln, 256
  of $\log_b$, 207
  of sin, 311
  of $\sin^{-1}$, 356
  of tan, 320
  of $\tan^{-1}$, 358
dot product, 500–502
double-angle formula
  for $\cos(2\theta)$, 402–403
  for $\sin(2\theta)$, 403
  for $\tan(2\theta)$, 404
doubling money, 272–274

e
  approximation of, 264
  as base for natural logarithm, 254
  definition, 253
  exponential function, 255–256, 275
  first 40 digits, 253
  series for, 477
earthquake, 225, 229, 230, 233, 279
Einstein, Albert, 193, 337
ellipse
  area inside, 533
  equation of, 142
  focus, 142–144
epsilon, 29, 471
Euclid, 343
Euler, Leonard, 478, 506
even function, 71, 73, 74, 80, 89, 90, 112, 129, 148, 210, 257, 338, 371
exponent
  0, 159–160
  complex number, 522–523
  negative integer, 160–161
  positive integer, 157–159
  rational number, 161–164
  real number, 163, 204
exponential function, 204–205, 255–256, 275
  approximation of, 263–264
  graph, 255
  in continuous compounding, 270–271
  in continuous growth rate, 271–272
  series for, 477
exponential growth, 235–244, 246, 275
  compound interest, 241–244, 246
  continuous compounding, 270–271
  continuous growth rate, 271–272
  Moore's Law, 237
  population growth, 239–240

factorial, 446, 462
Fahrenheit temperature scale, 93–94, 124
Fahrenheit, Daniel Gabriel, 94
Fermat's Last Theorem, 168
Fibonacci sequence, 445–446
Fibonacci, Leonardo, 445
finite sequence, 440, 442–444, 453, 473, 482
Flatiron Building, 396

flipping graph, *see* function transformation
focus
of ellipse, 142–144
of hyperbola, 145–146
Frankenstein, 176
function
constant, 124
decreasing, 108–112, 116, 129, 158, 161, 363
defined by table, 44
definition, 38
equality of, 40
even, 71, 73, 74, 80, 89, 90, 112, 129, 148, 210, 257, 371
increasing, 108–112, 116, 129, 147, 155, 158, 164, 255, 256, 316, 326, 433
inverse, 93–100
odd, 72–74, 80, 89, 90, 116, 129, 167, 210, 257, 371
one-to-one, 94–95
periodic, 425
piecewise-defined, 39, 45, 47, 101, 105
polynomial, 174
function transformation
as composition, 86–88
flipping graph across horizontal axis, 65–66
flipping graph across vertical axis, 68
horizontal combinations of, 71
of trigonometric functions, 423–428
shifting graph down, 64
shifting graph left, 66–67
shifting graph right, 66–67
shifting graph up, 63–64
stretching graph horizontally, 67
stretching graph vertically, 64–65
vertical combinations of, 68–71
Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, 513

Galileo, 143
Gauss, Carl Friedrich, 418, 513
geometric sequence, 443–445
limit of, 472–473
sum of, 455–459, 474–475
geometric series, 455–459, 474–475
Gilbert and Sullivan, 138
golden ratio, 149, 410
Google, 253
grad, 290, 303
graph
determining domain from, 54
determining range from, 54–55
flipping, *see* function transformation
horizontal line test, 107–108
of $1/x$, 161, 254, 262–263, 265–266
of $1/x^2$, 161
of 9^x, 236
of $\sqrt{x}$, 106
of $(1+1/x)^x$, 264
of $|x|$, 52
of a constant function, 124
of a function, 52
of cos, 312, 338, 340, 342, 352, 353, 423, 424, 427
of $\cos^{-1}$, 354
of decreasing function, 108–109
of even function, 71
of e^x, 255, 256, 263
of function, 52
of increasing function, 108–109
of inverse function, 106
of linear function, 121
of ln, 255, 256, 262
of log, 218
of $\log_2$, 206, 218
of odd function, 72–73
of one-to-one function, 107–108
of polar equation, 488–491
of polynomial, 181
of quadratic function, 138–139
of rational function, 194
of sin, 312, 339, 340, 342, 354, 355, 424
of tan, 320–321, 339, 342, 357
of $\tan^{-1}$, 358
of transformed function, 63–71
of x^2, 106, 205
of x^3, x^4, x^5, and x^6, 158
reflecting, *see* function transformation
shifting, *see* function transformation
stretching, *see* function transformation
vertical line test, 56

half-angle formula
for cos $\frac{\theta}{2}$, 404–405
for sin $\frac{\theta}{2}$, 405–406
for tan $\frac{\theta}{2}$, 406–407
half-life, 215–216
half-open interval, 24
height
of parallelogram, 529
of rectangle, 529
of trapezoid, 530
of triangle, 529–530
hendecagon, area of, 378
heptagon, area of, 384
hexagon, 383, 386
Hipparchus, 312
Holmes, Sherlock, 4
Hubble telescope, 228
hyperbola, 144–146
focus, 145–146
hyperbolic cosine, 257–258
hyperbolic sine, 257–258, 268

i, 506–513
identity
inverse trigonometric, 365–368
trigonometric, 336–343
identity function (I), 84–85, 98, 365
imaginary axis, 518
imaginary part, 506–507, 524
income tax function, 39, 101, 105, 112
increasing function, 108–112, 116, 129, 147, 155, 158, 164, 255, 256, 316, 326, 433
inequalities, 21–23
infinite sequence, 440–447
arithmetic sequence, 442–443
geometric sequence, 443–445
limit of, 470–473
recursively defined, 445–447
sum of, *see* infinite series
infinite series, 473
geometric series, 474–475
special, 477–479
infinity (∞), 24–25, 176, 179–181, 191–193, 440, 472
integer, 2
integrated circuit, 237
Intel, 237
interest
compound, 241–244
continuously compounded, 270–274
simple, 241–242
intersection, 29, 33
interval, 24–27
closed, 24, 30
half-open, 24
open, 24, 30
inverse function, 93–100
composition with, 98–99
domain of, 97
from table, 110–111
graph of, 106–107
notation, 99–100
of 2^x, 206
of a linear function, 102, 129
of b^x, 207–208
of cos, 352–354
of cosh, 258
of decreasing function, 109–110
of e^x, 256
of increasing function, 109–110
of sin, 354–356
of sinh, 258
of tan, 357–358
of x^m, 163–164
range of, 97
inverse trigonometric functions
$\cos^{-1}$, *see* arccosine
$\sin^{-1}$, *see* arcsine
$\tan^{-1}$, *see* arctangent
inverse trigonometric identities
$\cos^{-1} t + \sin^{-1} t$, 370–371

compositions of trigonometric and inverse trigonometric functions, 365–368
with $-t$, 369–370
iPhone, 321
irrational number, 4–5, 35, 46, 168, 204, 210, 239, 252, 253, 323, 409, 512, 527, 528
irrationality of $\sqrt{2}$, 3–4
irrationality of e, 253
irrationality of π, 323, 527
isosceles triangle, 3, 332, 335, 356, 360–362, 384, 396

Kepler, Johannes, 142, 533
Khayyam, Omar, 119
Knuth, Donald, xxi, 551
Kovalevskaya, Sofia, 414

Lambert, Johann, 323
Lamport, Leslie, xxi
law of cosines, 390–394, 402, 414–415, 492, 502
law of sines, 388–390, 393–394, 403
length
of a circular arc, 287, 300, 303
of a path or curve, 528
Libby, Willard, 216
limit, 470–479
linear function, 86, 123–124
lines
equation of, 121–122
parallel, 125
perpendicular, 126–127, 130
slope, 120–121
logarithm
any base, 207–208
base e, 254–256, 262–263
base ten, 208–209
base two, 206
change of base, 217–218
common, 208
number of digits, 208–209
natural, 254–256, 262–263
of 1, 207
of $1/y$, 224
of a power, 214–215
of a product, 223
of a quotient, 224
of the base, 207
London Eye, 287
loonie, 351, 378
loudness, 226–227, 229, 230, 233, 279
Lovelace, Ada, 14

Madhava, 478
magnitude
of a star, 227–228
of a vector, 494–496
Manhattan
alleged sale of, 243
real estate, 245, 249
Moore's Law, 237
Moore, Gordon, 237
multiplicative inverse
of a complex number, 514, 521
of a real number, 10–13

Napier, John, 208
natural logarithm
algebraic properties, 256
approximation of, 262–263
area interpretation, 254, 265–266
as inverse of exponential function, 256
definition, 254
graph, 255–256
inequalities with, 263, 466
series for $\ln 2$, 477–478
negative angle, 284–285, 298
negative horizontal axis, 283
negative number, 20
negative reciprocal, 126
negative vertical axis, 283
Newton's method, 446
Newton, Isaac, 143, 146, 439, 475
Nobel Prize, 215, 216
North Star, 227–228, 230, 234

obtuse angle, 303, 377, 383, 385, 389
octagon, area of, 378
odd function, 72–74, 80, 89, 90, 116, 129, 167, 210, 257, 339, 371
one-to-one, 95
horizontal line test, 107–108
open interval, 24, 30
origin, 50
Oughtred, William, 358

page number jokes, 4, 8, 16, 22, 32, 64, 128, 141, 256, 272, 314, 512
Palladio, 551
parabola, 63, 106, 139, 157, 175
parallel lines, 125
parallelogram, 377, 529
Parallelogram Equality, 503
Parthenon, 1
partial sum, 474
Pascal's triangle, 459–461, 464–466
Pascal, Blaise, 460
Pentagon
area of, 379
perimeter, 383, 384, 386, 437, 536
period, 425–426
periodic function, 425
perpendicular lines, 126–127, 130
perpendicular vectors, 502
pH scale, 230
phase shift, 426–428
Philippides, 100
photo credits, 543–544
pi (π)
area inside circle, 531–533, 536
area inside ellipse, 533, 536
definition, 527
first 504 digits, 527
irrational, 323, 527
rational approximation, 527–528
series for, 478
piecewise-defined function, 39, 45, 47, 101, 105
Pitiscus, Bartholomeo, 336
polar coordinates
converting from rectangular coordinates, 485–487
converting to rectangular coordinates, 485
definition, 484
graph of polar equation, 488–491
polar equation, 488–491
circle, 488–489
ray, 489
polar form of complex number, 519–522
division, 522
multiplication, 521–522
multiplicative inverse, 521
Polaris, 227–228, 230
polygon, area of, 378–379
polynomial
behavior near $\pm\infty$, 179–181
complex conjugate of a zero, 512
definition, 174
degree, 174–177
division of, 188–190
factorization, 179, 513
Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, 513
graph, 181
number of zeros, 179
root of, 177
zero of, 177–179, 511–513
population growth, 239–240
positive horizontal axis, 283
positive number, 20
positive vertical axis, 283
power, *see* exponent
preface
to the instructor, xv–xix
to the student, xxiii
prime number, 219–221, 253, 278
principal, 241
product
of functions, 81–82
of polynomials, 175–177
Pythagoras, 3
Pythagorean Theorem, 3, 130, 140, 155, 288, 327–328, 332–334, 368, 374, 390, 391, 537

quadrant, 309
quadratic formula, 136–137, 179, 511
quadratic function
definition, 138

graph of, 138
maximum or minimum value, 139
quotient
of functions, 81–82
of polynomials, 187–190

radians
converting from degrees, 297
converting to degrees, 297
definition, 295
length of circular arc, 300
radioactive decay, 215–216
radius corresponding to an angle, 283–284, 298
range
definition, 42
from a graph, 54–55
from a table, 44
of an inverse function, 97
of cos, 311
of $\cos^{-1}$, 354
of cosh, 258
of e^x, 255
of ln, 256
of $\log_b$, 207
of sin, 311
of $\sin^{-1}$, 356
of sinh, 258
of tan, 320
of $\tan^{-1}$, 358
Raphael, 3, 343
rational exponent, 164
rational function
behavior near $\pm\infty$, 191–194
definition, 187
domain, 187
graph of, 194
rational number, 2–5, 476
Rational Roots Theorem, 184
Rational Zeros Theorem, 184
ray, polar equation of, 489
real axis, 518
real exponent, 163, 204
real line, 2–3, 35
real number, 3
real part, 506–507
reciprocal, 10
rectangular coordinates
converting from polar coordinates, 485
converting to polar coordinates, 485–487
definition, 50–51
recursively defined sequence, 445–447, 449, 452, 482
reflecting graph, *see* function transformation
regular polygon, 378, 384
repeating decimal, 476–477
reviewers, xxii
Rhind Mathematical Papyrus, 536
Richter magnitude, 225, 229, 230, 233, 279
Richter, Charles, 225
right triangle
30°-60°-90°, 287–288
area, 530
characterization of trigonometric functions, 327–329
root
of a function, 177
of a number, 161
as inverse function, 163
notation, 162
Russell, Bertrand, 120
Ryff, Peter, 393

scalar, 500
scalar multiplication, 500
School of Athens, 3, 343
sec, *see* secant
secant, 321–323, 326, 337, 344
sequence
arithmetic, 442–443
Fibonacci, 445–446
finite, 440, 442–444, 453, 473, 482
geometric, 443–445
infinite, 440–447
limit of, 470–473
recursively defined, 445–447, 449, 452, 482
series
arithmetic, 453
definition, 453
geometric, 455–457, 475
infinite, 473–475
special, 477–479
summation notation, 457–459
set, 23–24
Shelley, Mary, 176
shifting graph, *see* function transformation
Sigma (Σ), 457–459
simple interest, 241–242
sin, *see* sine
$\sin^{-1}$, *see* arcsine
sine
approximation of, 380
$\cos u \sin v$, 419
definition using unit circle, 307
domain, 311
graph, 312, 339, 340, 342, 354, 355, 424
range, 311
right triangle characterization, 327–329
sign, 309–310
$\sin\frac{\pi}{8}$, 406
$\sin(-\theta)$, 338–339
$\sin 15^\circ$, 323, 325, 408, 412
$\sin 18^\circ$, 409
$\sin(2\theta)$, 403
$\sin(3\theta)$, 419
$\sin(5\theta)$, 419
$\sin(\frac{\pi}{2}-\theta)$, 339–340
$\sin(\theta+2\pi)$, 342–343
$\sin(\theta+\pi)$, 341
$\sin(\theta+\frac{\pi}{2})$, 419
$\sin(\theta-\frac{\pi}{4})$, 419
$\sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$, 405–406
$\sin(u+v)$, 416
$\sin(u-v)$, 416–417
$\sin u \sin v$, 419
$\sin x+\sin y$, 420
$\sin x-\sin y$, 420
special angles, 308
sinh, *see* hyperbolic sine
slope
definition, 120–121
equation of a line, 121–124
parallel lines, 125
perpendicular lines, 126–127, 130
sound intensity, 226–227, 229, 230, 233, 279
square root
definition, 162–163
graph of, 106
of 2 is irrational, 3–5
St. Louis Gateway Arch, 258
star brightness, 227–228
Starry Night, 203
stretching and area, *see* Area Stretch Theorem
stretching graph, *see* function transformation
sum
of functions, 81–82
of polynomials, 175–176
summation notation, 457–459

table
determines domain, 44
determines range, 44
for a function, 44
for an inverse function, 110–111
tan, *see* tangent
$\tan^{-1}$, *see* arctangent
tangent
approximation of, 380
definition using unit circle, 317–319
domain, 320
graph, 320–321, 339, 342, 357
range, 320
right triangle characterization, 327–329
sign, 318
special angles, 318
$\tan\frac{\pi}{8}$, 343
$\tan(-\theta)$, 338–339
$\tan(2\theta)$, 404
$\tan(\frac{\pi}{2}-\theta)$, 339–340
$\tan(\theta+2\pi)$, 342–343
$\tan(\theta+\pi)$, 341–342

$\tan(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2})$, 419, 422
$\tan(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})$, 419, 422
$\tan(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2})$, 419
$\tan(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4})$, 419
$\tan(\frac{\theta}{2})$, 406–407
$\tan(u + v)$, 417
$\tan(u - v)$, 417
Tartaglia, Niccolò , 178
terminating decimal, 476
Transamerica Pyramid, 281
transit level, 330
transitivity, 21
trapezoid
area of, 384, 530
bases of, 530
height of, 530
triangle
30°-60°-90°, 287–288
area of, 375–376, 529–530
Triangle Inequality, 504
trigonometric approximations, 380–382
trigonometric functions
cos, *see* cosine
cot, *see* cotangent
csc, *see* cosecant
sec, *see* secant
sin, *see* sine
tan, *see* tangent
transformations, 423–428
trigonometric identities
relationship between cos, sin, and tan, 336–337
with $-\theta$, 338–339
with $\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta$, 339–340
with $\pi - \theta$, 344
with $\theta + 2\pi$, 342
with $\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}$, 344
with $\theta + \pi$, 341–342
with $\theta + n\pi$, 343–344
Turing, Alan, 404

union, 25, 29–31, 33, 35, 115, 195, 196, 202
unit circle
definition, 282
special points on, 287–288, 301–302

Van Gogh, Vincent, 203
vector
addition, 496–497
additive inverse, 498
definition, 494
direction of, 494–496
dot product, 500–502
magnitude of, 494–496
notation, 495
scalar multiplication, 500
subtraction, 498–499
zero, 497–498
vertex of parabola
definition, 138
finding by completing the square, 138
vertical line test, 56

WebAssign, xvi
Weierstrass, Karl, 28
WileyPLUS, xvi
WolframAlpha, 14
distance, 149
expand, 14
graph, 52, 175
polar plot, 490
simplify, 15, 189
solve, 177
sum, 459, 467

x-axis, 51
x-coordinate, 51

y-axis, 51
y-coordinate, 51

Zeno's paradox, 480
zero
of a function, 177
of a polynomial, 177–179, 511–513
of a quadratic function, 136–137, 511
$\zeta(2)$, 478
$\zeta(3)$, 479
$\zeta(4)$, 478
$\zeta(6)$, 478
Zu Chongzhi, 527

Colophon: Notes on Typesetting

These notes apply only to the print version of this book and to electronic versions that are exact replicas of the print version.

- This book was typeset in pdfLaTeX by the author, who wrote the LaTeX code to implement the book's design. The book was printed from the pdf file generated by pdfLaTeX.
- The main text font is URW Palladio, which is a legal clone of Palatino, which was created by Hermann Zapf around 1948.

The Palatino font was named in honor of Giambattista Palatino, a sixteenth-century Italian calligrapher.

- The math fonts are various versions of URW Palladio, Pazo Math, and Computer Modern. Pazo Math was created by Diego Puga; Computer Modern was created by Donald Knuth.
- The san serif font used for chapter titles, section titles, and page numbers is NimbusSanL.
- The figures in the book were produced by *Mathematica*, using *Mathematica* code written by the author.
- The *Mathematica* package MaTeX, written by Szabolcs Horvát, was used to place LaTeX-generated labels in the *Mathematica* figures.
- The LaTeX package graphicx, written by David Carlisle and Sebastian Rahtz, was used to integrate photos and the figures produced by *Mathematica* into the manuscript.
- The LaTeX package mparhack, written by Tom Sgouros and Stefan Ulrich, was used to make marginal notes show up in the correct places.
- The LaTeX package multicol, written by Frank Mittelbach, was used to get around LaTeX's limitation that two-column format must start on a new page (needed when the Exercises do not start on a new page).
- The LaTeX packages Ti*k*Z, written by Till Tantau, and tcolorbox, written by Thomas Sturm, were used to produce the definition boxes, result boxes, learning objectives boxes, example label boxes, and chapter summary boxes.
- The LaTeX package color, written by David Carlisle, was used to add appropriate color to subsection titles, the lines before and after each example, and other design elements.
- The LaTeX package microtype, written by Robert Schlicht, was used to reduce hyphenation and produce more pleasing right justification.

WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Go to www.wiley.com/go/eula to access Wiley’s ebook EULA.